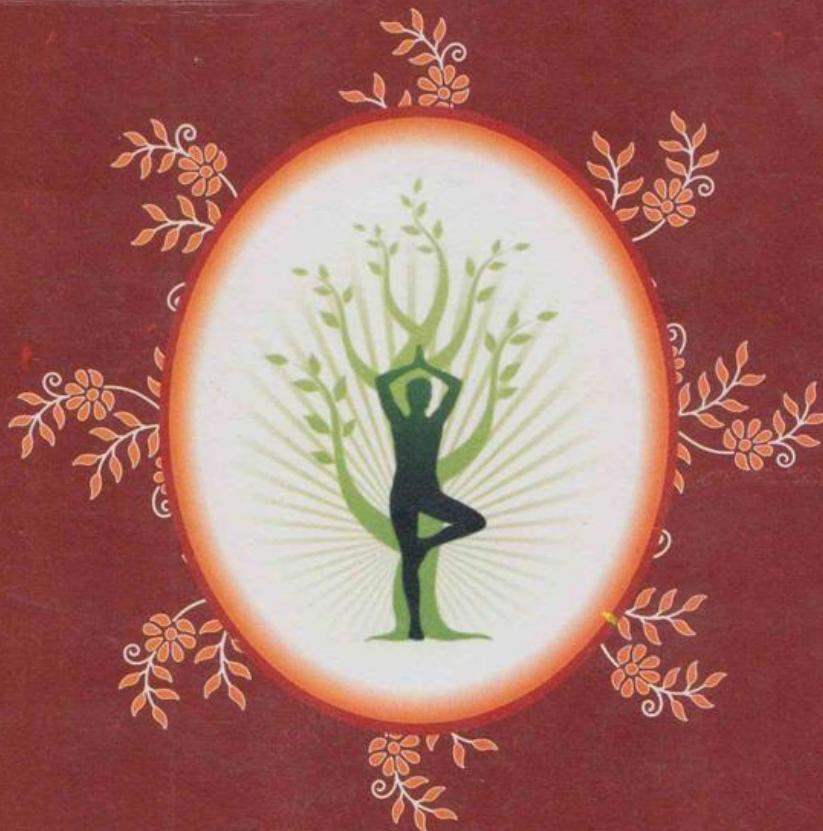


ILLUSTRATED **Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya**

TEXT WITH ENGLISH TRANSLATION AND APPENDICES



Dr. R. VIDYANATH



Foreword by
Prof. R. H. SINGH



Illustrated
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya
of Vāgbhaṭa

SŪTRA-STHĀNA

Text with English Translation



including

MAULIKA SIDDHĀNTA

[as per CCIM Syllabus 2012]

by

Dr. R. VIDYANATH

MD (Ayu); PhD

Professor & HOD

P G Dept. of Ayurveda Samhita

Dr. B R K R Govt. Ayurvedic College

HYDERABAD-500038 (A.P.)

foreword by

Prof. R.H. SINGH

Late Dr. R. SATYA NARAYANA SACHARYA



Chaukhamba Surbharati Prakashan
Varanasi

© All right reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or any information storage or retrieval system, without prior permission in writing from the Publisher.

Illustrated Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

ISBN : 978-93-82443-86-5

Published by :

CHAUKHAMBA SURBHARATI PRAKASHAN

(Oriental Publishers or Distributors)

K 37/117, Gopal Mandir Lane

Post Box No. 1129

Varanasi 221001 (India)

Tel. : +91-542-2335263

e-mail : csp_naveen@yahoo.co.in

website : www.chaukhamba.co.in

© All Rights Reserved

First Edition : 2013

₹ 500.00

Distributor :

CHAUKHAMBA PUBLISHING HOUSE

4697/2, Ground Floor, Street No. 21-A

Ansari Road, Daryaganj

New Delhi 110002

Tel : +91-11-32996391, +91-11-23286537

e-mail : chaukhampublishinghouse@gmail.com

Also can be had from :

CHAUKHAMBA SANSKRIT PRATISHTHAN

38 U. A. Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar

Post Box No. 2113

Delhi 110007

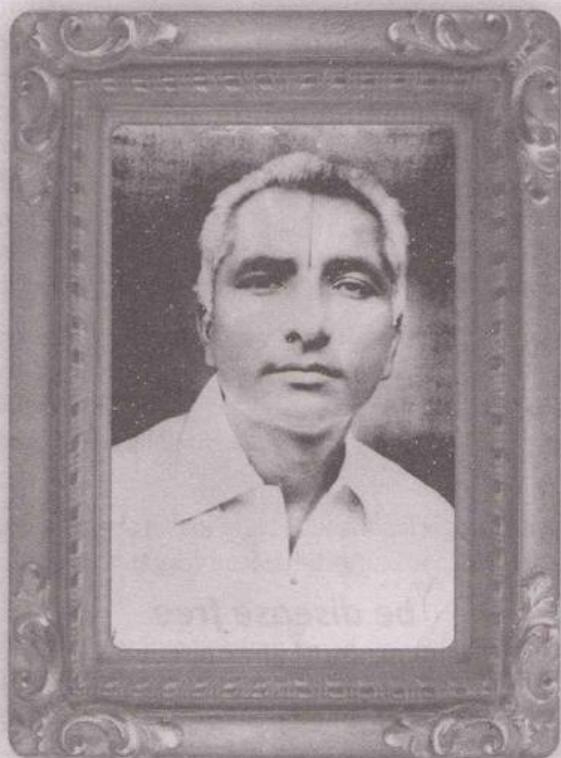
CHOWKHAMBA VIDYABHAWAN

Chowk (Behind Bank of Baroda Building)

Post Box No. 1069

Varanasi 221001

DEDICATION



My Beloved Father
Late Dr. R. SATYANARAYANACHARYULU

Ayurveda Vaidya Vidwan

Illustrated: Anilika Nigam

ISBN: 978-93-86413-36-7

DEDICATION

Dedicated to

CHAKRA VYAVHARA

Chakras, Ayurveda

K. J. T. T. S. S. S.

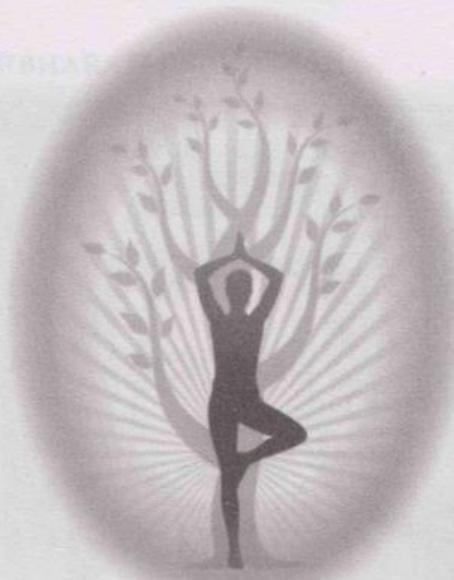
Deepak Chawla

Vaidika Bhawan

Tel: 0941-422-2222

E-mail: vaidikabhawan@gmail.com

Website:



be disease free

नित्यं हिताहारविहारसेवी समीक्ष्यकारी विषयेष्वसत्तः ॥
दाता समः सत्यपरः क्षमावानाप्तोपसेवी च भवत्यरोगः ॥

One, who always resorts to desirable food and regimen, is objective, uninterested to sensual affairs, generous, straight forward, honest, having patience and who values traditional wisdom will never be affected by diseases.

-*Vāgbhaṭa Sūtra (4:36)*

Foreword

रागादिरोगान् सततानुषक्तानशेषकायप्रसृतानशेषान् ।
औत्सुक्यमोहारतिदाङ्घान, योऽपूर्ववैद्याय नमोऽस्तुतस्मै ॥

*Rāgādirogān satatānuṣaktānaśeṣakāyaprasṛtānaśeṣān;
Āutsukyamohāratidāñjaghāna yo'pūrvavaidyāya namo'astu tasmai.*

It was really a pleasure to review and to write a few words as foreword on the press copy of the book 'Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya : Sūstrasthāna' authored by Dr. R. Vidyanath. The book comprises of the text and the translation with detailed comments and updated information on different aspects which are very useful for the present generation of readership today. The efforts to add the botanical names and photographs of many medicinal plants to provide useful lead to correlate the same with the classical Sanskrit names are commendable. The designed diagrams of some surgical instruments and certain treatment procedures are really interesting particularly in the context of the study of a Saṁhitā Grantha. This effort obviously adopts the message of Vāgbhaṭa himself who stated at the very outset of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, that this treatise is being created to make Āyurveda Śāstra *yugānurūpa*.

The language of the write-up and the overall presentation of the book is easy to go through for a maiden reader. The entire approach appears critical and creative exercising adequate care to conserve the originality of the book and its contemporary readability. I hope this new addition to the contemporary Āyurvedic literature will benefit the students and teachers of Āyurveda in pursuing the subject in a right perspective.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya is an important classic text of great educational significance as it is prescribed as a text book for graduate students in view of its easy accessibility and because it is a better organized text than the Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha.

The galaxy of Foundation texts of Āyurveda comprise of two sets of authentic texts fondly called 1. Bṛhattrayī and 2. Laghutrayī. Bṛhattrayī texts are 1. Caraka Saṁhitā, 2. Suśruta Saṁhitā and 3. The Saṁhitās of Vāgbhaṭa (Saṅgraha and Hṛdaya). Most often the Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya is counted among the Bṛhattrayī, not so often the Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha. However many scholars believe that Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha is the prime text of Vāgbhaṭa.

The Laghutrayī texts are 1. Mādхava Nidāna (900 AD), 2. Śāringadhara Saṁhitā (1300 AD) and 3. Bhāvaprakāśa (1600 AD). The historians consider the Bṛhattrayī texts, especially Caraka and Suśruta, as the pre-Christian texts while Laghutrayī are the medieval texts.

In Indian historical traditions there have been several scholars holding the name of Vāgbhaṭa. The famous Āyurvedic texts Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha and Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya are also authored by the one or the other Vāgbhaṭa. Vāgbhaṭa represents the golden age of the Indian history, i.e. Gupta period and hence it gives a literary glimpse of the Āyurvedic tradition and cultural status of that period in India. There has been a controversy where the author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha and Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya is the same Vāgbhaṭa or they are two different persons. However, considering many facts, it is largely believed that they were two different persons and the two treatises were written in two different periods of history by two different authors.

There are controversies about the period of Vāgbhaṭa. It seems the author of the Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, Vāgbhaṭa's time was somewhere between the period of Vātsyāyana (500 AD) and Varāhamihira (600 AD). Vātsyāyana was an expert of Kāmaśāstra while Varāhamihira dealt with another branch of knowledge viz. Jyotiṣa and Vāgbhaṭa was a physician, besides being an erudite poet. The Vāgbhaṭa's classics are largely the collection and codification of facts discovered through the works of Agniveśa - Caraka, and Suśruta - Nagarjuna and their contemporaries, besides certain new ideas and facts to update the knowledge which seems to be the theme of Vāgbhaṭa as is evident by his own statement in the text:

युगानुरूपसन्दर्भे विभागेन करिष्यते ।

Yugānurūpasandarbhō vibhāgena kariṣyate. (Vāgbhaṭa Sū. 1:20)

सर्वतन्त्राण्यतः प्रायः संहत्याऽष्टांगसंग्रहः ।

अस्थानविस्तराक्षेपुनरुक्तादिवर्जितः ॥

Sarvatantrānyataḥ prāyah sañhṛtyā'ṣṭāṅgasanagrahah;

Asthānavistarākṣepah punaruktādivarjitaḥ. (Vāgbhaṭa Sū. 1:18)

It seems Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya was compiled by another author later in order to make the subject more concise and easy to handle. The author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha is believed to have greater impact of Buddhism as is evident by author's own omissions to Buddha. The critical comparative study of the two texts in terms of the impact of earlier classics like Caraka and Suśruta, it is believed that Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha has more Caraka's impact while Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya carries an impact of Suśruta. The style and approach of the two texts becomes obvious if one compares the depth and girth of the two texts. Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha has 150 chapters and Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya has 120 chapters displayed in different divisions as described in the following table which reflects the preferential inclusion and exclusion of the subject matter and the size of the texts. It will be interesting to undertake a critical comparative study of all the Saṁhitās in relation to the period of compilation and the reason of such differences.

Sthāna	Bhela	Caraka	Kāśyapa	Suśruta	Vāgbhaṭa (A.Saṅ.)	Vāgbhaṭa (A.Hṛd.)
Sūtra	30	30	30	46	40	30
Nidāna	08	08	08	16	16	16
Vimāna	08	08	08	-	-	-
Śārīra	08	08	08	10	12	06
Indriya	12	12	12	-	-	-
Cikitsā	30	30	30	40	24	22
Kalpa	12	12	12	08	08	06
Siddhi	12	12	12	-	-	-
Khila/Uttara	-	-	80	66	50	40
Total	120	120	200	186	150	120

The Saṅgraha and the Hṛdaya texts of Vāgbhaṭa written dominantly in prose and poetry respectively representing a glimpse of the Śāstriya tendency of Vibhāga vs Samyoga, Vigraha vs Saṅgraha and

Vistāra vs Saṅkṣepa. Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha is the leading text of Saṅgraha style which incorporates the subject matter from different Tantras and reproduces the same in a summarized form with greater clarity, while Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya adopts different style. Further it is obvious that ancient classics like Caraka and Suśruta deliberated more on the fundamental and philosophic aspects of the subject while the later texts diverted them from philosophy towards practical aspects.

The present volume under publication by Dr. R. Vidyanath presently limits itself to the Sūtra Sthāna of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya which contains 30 chapters namely 1. Āyuṣkāmīya, 2. Dinacaryā, 3. Rtucaryā, 4. Rogānupādanīya, 5. Drava-dravya Vijñānīya, 6. Annaswarūpa Vijñānīya, 7. Annarakṣā, 8. Mātrāśītiya, 9. Dravyādi Vijñānīya, 10. Rasabhedīya, 11. Doṣādi Vijñānīya, 12. Doṣabhedīya, 13. Doṣopakramāṇīya, 14. Dwividhopakramāṇīya, 15. Śodhanādi-gaṇa Saṅgraha, 16. Sneha-vidhi, 17. Sweda-vidhi, 18. Vamana-virecana-vidhi, 19. Vasti-vidhi, 20. Nasya-vidhi, 21. Dhūmapāna-vidhi, 22. Gaṇḍūṣādi-vidhi, 23. Āścotana-añjana-vidhi, 24. Tarpaṇa-puṭapāka-vidhi, 25. Yantra-vidhi, 26. Sastra-vidhi, 27. Sirāvyadha-vidhi, 28. Śalyāharāṇa-vidhi, 29. Sastrakarma-vidhi, 30. Kṣāra-agnikarma-vidhi.

Each of these 30 chapters have been presented in this volume with original Sanskrit text followed by descriptive interpretation and author's reader-friendly comments in a lucid style, not caring critically about the mere literary translation. He follows an illustrated style of presentation taking help of a number of photographs and diagrams for the purpose of comparative study in the present day perspective especially about medicinal plants, blunt and sharp surgical instruments and certain therapeutic procedures. However, the authenticity of these illustrations will have to be validated and verified in subsequent editions of this book after inputs from the readers.

Summarily, this book is a student-friendly scholarly work of great value. This is an important addition to the contemporary literature in Āyurveda. I have known the author of this book Dr. Vidyanath for many years. He is an erudite scholar of Āyurveda and is an activist and an enthusiast in his field. I congratulate the author for this good work and wish this publication a grand success.

निदाने माधवः श्रेष्ठः सूत्रस्थाने तु वाग्भटः ।
शारीरे सुश्रूतः प्रोक्तः चरकस्तु चिकित्सिते ॥

*Nidāne mādhavaḥ śreṣṭhaḥ sūtrasthāne tu vāgbhaṭaḥ;
Śārīre suśrūtaḥ proktaḥ carakastu cikitsite.*

Prof. R.H. Singh

Distinguished Professor

Department of Kayachikitsa, IMS, BHU, Varanasi

Formerly Professor-Head & Dean

Faculty of Ayurveda, BHU

Vice-Chancellor, RAU Jodhpur

Jan. 10, 2013

PREFACE

During the ancient times, Ācāryas of Āyurveda had written voluminous works on different specialties, which were not tangible to mediocre students. So, the time demanded in writing concise books, which cover the essentials of all the eight branches of Āyurveda.

Vāgbhaṭa was the first person who composed a treatise entitled *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* by bringing together the relevant medical knowledge contained in Caraka Saṁhitā, Suśruta Saṁhitā, Hārīta Saṁhitā, Bhela Saṁhitā, Kāśyapa Saṁhitā etc.

The author himself says “By churning the great ocean of medical science, a great store of nectar by name *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* was obtained. From that store of nectar, a short treatise entitled *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya* was written for the benefit of mediocre students”.

Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa was the son of Śimhagupta and the grand son of Vāgbhaṭa belongs to the region of river Sindhu. His fore fathers were also great scholars of Āyurveda. He was the disciple of Avalokita, the chief monk of Mahāyāna Buddhism. Basing on the internal and external evidences the date of Vāgbhaṭa can be fixed between 4th and 5th century AD.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya is one of the most celebrated and most often studied treatises on Indian Medicine, after Caraka Saṁhitā and Suśruta Saṁhitā. The work significantly begins with an aphoristic preface “What follows is what was said by great sages, Ātreya and others.” This work generally follows the general plan of *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* and divided into six sections, 120 chapters. The total number of verses is 7120 in the extant edition.

Sūtra Sthāna is the first section contains 30 chapters dealing with Basic principles of Āyurveda, preventive measures, diet and dietetics, classification of diseases and methods of treatments etc. *Sārīra Sthāna* is the second section contains 6 chapters dealing with embryology, anatomy, physiology, physical and psychological constitutions, auspicious and inauspicious dreams and omens, signs of bad prognosis etc. *Nidāna Sthāna* is the third section contains 16 chapters dealing with etiological factors, signs and symptoms, pathogenesis and prognosis of important diseases etc. *Cikitsā Sthāna* is the fourth section contains 22 chapters dealing with the line of treatment of various diseases including *pathyāpathya*. *Kalpa-Siddhi Sthāna* is the fifth section contains 6 chapters dealing with formulations and methods pertaining to elimination therapy, management of complications, principles of pharmacy etc. *Uttara Tantra* is the sixth section contains 40 chapters dealing with the remaining seven branches of Āyurveda.

This work has as many as 37 commentaries, the largest number for any early medical classics. It has been translated into many languages viz. Tibetan, Arabic, German etc. In the Tibetan canon, *Tangyur* (8 AD) is included a translation of this work along with Caraka Saṁhitā and

Suśruta Saṁhitā. It was also translated into Arabic about the same time under orders from Baghdad Caliphs. Another translation was available into German, which was taken up by Luise Hilgenburg & Wilibald Kirfel. The following is the list of commentaries available on Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya either fully or partially.

1. Sarvāṅga Sundarā by Aruṇa Datta (1200 AD) was edited by Vijaya Ratna Sena Gupta, Calcutta in the year 1888, and by Aṇṇā Moreśwara Kuṇṭe, Bombay in the year 1889.
2. Āyurveda Rasāyana by Hemādri (1271-1309) was edited by Hari Śāstrī Parādakara, Nirnayasagar Press, Bombay in the year 1939.
3. Padārtha Candrikā by Candranandana (10th Cent. AD)
4. Hṛdaya Bodhikā by Śrīdāsa Paṇḍita (14th Cent. AD)
5. Nidāna Cintāmaṇi by Todaramalla (14th Cent.-15th AD)
6. Tattwa Bodha by Śivadāsa Sena (15th Cent. AD)
7. Vāgbhaṭa Maṇḍana by Bhaṭṭa Narahari (15th Cent. AD)

There is a compilation of drugs mentioned in this work, giving also synonyms, Aṣṭāṅga Nighaṇṭu of uncertain date. It contains a Telugu gloss. Another compilation of technical terms used in this work is Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Koṣa by Valapad K.M. Vaidya (1936).

Early editions of this work:

1. Aṇṇā Moreśwara Kuṇṭe (1880)
2. Jivānanda Vidyāsāgara (1882)
3. Gaṇeśa Sakhārāma Śarmā (1890)
4. G.K. Garde (1891)
5. Śaṅkaradājī Śāstrī Pade (1900) (Nirnaya Sagar Press, Bombay)

Only Sūtra Sthāna of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya was prescribed by CCIM as a one of the subjects in the curriculum of BAMS course in the first profession. As on today sufficient number of Hindi as well as Regional language translations are available in the market. As a teacher of the concerned subject for the past decade, I have identified the necessity of proper study material in English language to cater the needs of freshly joined students of Āyurveda. Keeping this in view I have made an attempt to incorporate the translation of the text along with the related matter compiled from various resources in the form of notes. For a better comprehension, the book is supplemented with full of illustrations. In the annexure the following material is incorporated.

1. Important Essay & Short Questions
2. Important Ślokas to be learnt by heart
3. Table of Weights and Measures
4. Glimpse of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya
5. Alphabetical Index of the Herbs mentioned in the book
6. Glossary of Sanskrit Terms

It may not be an exaggeration if I quote that this is the first illustrated book on Āyurvedic Saṁhitās. Though the present book is primarily written for undergraduate students of Āyurveda, it is hoped that Teachers, P.G. Scholars and General Practitioners would also find it useful as a reference book. Keeping the latest CCIM syllabus 2012 in view, Maulika Siddhānta part has also been incorporated at the end.

At this juncture I am expressing the pure, warm, sweet and bright flame of gratefulness to my mother Mrs. Rajyalakshmi and to my father Late Dr. R. Satyanarayanacharyulu. I record my thanks to my life partner Mrs. Padma Vani and my beloved son Satya Teja for their unbounded affection and encouragement. Without whose infinite inspiration and co-operation, I could not have completed this work so smoothly within the stipulated time.

I am extremely grateful to my beloved Guide, revered Preceptor, Versatile Scholar, Dr. K. Nishteswar, Professor & HOD Dravyaguna, IPGT & RA Gujarat Ayurveda University, Jamnagar for his continuous support and encouragement in all my activities.

On this happiest occasion I would like to express my heartfelt thanks to Prof. R.H. Singh, Ex. Dean, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi; Vice-chancellor, Rajasthan Ayurveda University, Jodhpur, a Versatile Scholar and an experienced teacher of Kāyacikitsā for his acceptance to pen the foreword.

I would like to express my sincere thanks to all my teachers, students and friends Dr. K.V. Ramana Raj, Dr. C.N. Murthy, Dr. Ch. Ramakrishna, Dr. D.A.P. Reddy, Dr. S. Venkat, Dr. Sarvesh, Dr. B. Ramarao, Dr. P. Manohar, Dr. P. Gayatri Devi, Dr. N. Srilakshmi, Dr. D. Vijay Ganeswara Reddy & Dr. K.J. Lavanya Lakshmi who helped me directly or indirectly for taking up this project.

My special thanks are due to Dr. Mallu Prasad CCIM Member & President, A.P. Ayurvedic Medical Officers' Association and Dr. G. Ramachandra Reddy, General Secretary, A.P. Ayurvedic Medical Officers' Association for their constant encouragement and support in every phase of my service activities.

At the end I wish to acknowledge my heartfelt thanks to Mr. N.D. Gupta, Chaukhamba Surbharati Prakashan, Varanasi for taking up the publication of this work.

Station: Hyderabad

Dr. R. Vidyanath

Date: 4th Feb. 2013

CONTENTS

AŚTĀNGA HRDAYA

(Sūtra Sthāna)

1. Āyuṣkāmiya Adhyāya		Types of deśa and their relationship with doṣas	19
(Quest for Long Life)	1	Types of kāla (time)	19
Preamble	1	Types of treatment	19
Māngalācaraṇa	2	General line of treatment for psycho-somatic disorders	20
Reasons for writing the text,		Pāda-catuṣṭaya	20
Aśtāṅga Hṛdaya	2	Qualities of an ideal physician	20
Definition of āyu	3	Qualities of an ideal drug	20
Purpose of Āyurveda	3	Qualities of an ideal attendant	21
Āyurvedāvatarāṇa	4	Qualities of an ideal patient	21
Description of tridoṣa	6	Types of diseases	21
Distinct places of tridoṣa	7	Factors influencing good prognosis	22
Relationship between the doṣas and the age, day, night and diet	8	Factors responsible for bad prognosis	22
Agni (power of digestion)	9	Palliable diseases	22
Koṣṭha (bowels)	9	Factors determining the incurability of diseases	23
Prakṛti (constitution)	9	Varjanīya roga lakṣaṇa (signs of diseases to be rejected for treatment)	23
Attributes of tridoṣa	10	Varjanīya rogī lakṣaṇa (features of the patients to be discarded for treatment)	23
Definition of saṁsargaja and sannipātaja (combination of any two or three doṣas)	10	Adhyāya saṅgraha (enumeration of chapters of this treatise)	23
Description of dhātus (body tissues) and malas (waste products)	11	Chapters of Sūtra sthāna	23
Functions of seven body tissues	12	Chapters of Śārīra sthāna	24
Vṛddhi and kṣaya	13	Chapters of Nidāna sthāna	24
Rasa (taste)	13	Chapters of Cikitsā sthāna	24
Influence of rasas over doṣas	14	Chapters of Kalpa-Siddhi sthāna	24
Three types of dravyas	14	Chapters of Uttaratantra	25
Viryā	15	Total number of chapters and sections of this treatise	25
Vipāka	15		
Dravyaguṇa (gurvādi guṇa)	15		
Hetu (causative factors for diseases)	16		
Triskandha	16		
Disease and health	18		
Classification of diseases according to origin	18		
Receptacles of diseases	18		
Rogī-roga parīkṣā (examination of the patient and the disease)	18		
		2. Dinacaryā Adhyāya	
		(Daily Regimen)	26
		Pratahkālotthāna (wakeup time)	26

Sauca vidhi (measures of cleansing)	27	Visarga kāla (nourishing period)	44
Danta-dhāvana (cleaning the teeth)	27	Differences between ādāna kāla and visarga kāla	45
Twigs useful for cleaning the teeth	27	Nature of body strength according to the seasons	45
Features of twigs useful for brushing	27	Hemanta ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	46
How & when to brush?	28	Śiśira ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	47
Advantages of tongue scraping	30	Vasanta ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	47
Contraindications for cleaning the teeth	30	Grīṣma ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	48
Añjana (collyrium)	31	Varṣa ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	50
Advantages of souvīrañjana (antimony sulphide)	31	Śarad ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	51
Nasya (nasal drops)	31	Indication of the substances having specific taste in specific season	52
Advantages of nasal drops	31	Necessity of consuming all the six tastes in all the six seasons	52
Gaṇḍūṣa and kavala dhāraṇa (mouth gargles)	32	Rtu sandhi (seasonal juncture)	53
Advantages of gargles	32	4. Rogānutpādaniya Adhyāya	55
Duration of gaṇḍūṣa & kavala dhāraṇa	32	(Prevention of Diseases)	55
Tāmbūla-sevana-niṣedha (contra- indications for betel chewing)	33	Preamble	55
Abhyaṅga (oil massage)	33	Dhāraṇīya vega (suppressible urges)	55
Advantages of body massage	33	Adhāraṇīya vega (non-suppressible urges)	55
Advantages of head massage	34	Effects of suppression of natural urges and their management	56
Advantages of eardrops	34	Adhovāta (flatus)	56
Advantages of foot massage	34	Sakṛt (faeces)	56
Vyāyāma (exercises)	34	Mūtra (urine)	56
Advantages of exercises	34	Udgāra (eructation/belching)	57
Contraindicated persons for doing exercises	35	Kṣavathu (sneezing)	57
Disadvantages of excessive exercises	35	Trṣṇā (thirst)	57
Udvartana (powder massage)	36	Kṣudhā (hunger)	58
Snāna (bath)	36	Nidrā (sleep)	58
Advantages of bath	36	Kāsa (cough)	58
Contraindication for bath	37	Śramaśwāsa (dyspnoea on exertion)	58
Sadvṛttā (regimen of right conduct)	37	Jṛmbhā (yawning)	58
Daśa vidha pāpa (ten sinful acts)	37	Aśru (tears)	59
Regimen of right conduct	38	Chardi (vomiting)	59
3. Ṛtucaryā Adhyāya		Śukra (semen)	59
(Seasonal Regimen)	43	Persons not eligible for treatment	60
Kāla (time)	43	Factors responsible for the manifesta- tion of all the diseases	60
Kāla bheda (divisions of time)	43	General line of treatment	60
Ṣaḍṛtus (six seasons)	44	Dhāraṇīya vega	60
Ādāna kāla (debilitating period)	44		

Necessity of purificatory therapy	60	Nārī kṣīra (breast milk)	72
Importance of śodhana therapy	60	Avika kṣīra (sheep's milk)	72
Administration of rasāyana and vājikaraṇa yoga	60	Hasti (aibha) kṣīra (elephant's milk)	72
Regimen to be adopted after purificatory measures	61	Ekaśapha kṣīra (single hooved animals milk)	72
Effects of treatment	61	Dadhi (curd)	73
Āgantuja roga	61	Takra (buttermilk)	74
Procedures to be adopted for the management of nija & āgantuja roga	61	Types of buttermilk	74
Suitable time for the elimination of vitiated doṣas	61	Navanīta (butter)	75
Regimen for promotion of health	62	Gṛhṭa (ghee)	75
5. Drava-Dravya Vijñāniya Adhyāya		Ikṣu varga (group of different types of sugarcanes)	76
(Knowledge of Liquid Substances)	63	Phāṇita	77
Jala varga (group of different types of water)	63	Guḍa (jaggery)	77
Classification of water	63	Śarkarā (sugar)	77
Gaṅgāmbu (uncontaminated rain water)	65	Yava śarkarā	78
Test for identification of gaṅgāmbu & sāmudrodaka	66	Madhu (honey)	78
Properties of water available from different soils	66	Madhu śarkarā	79
Properties of water due to the dominancy of 5 basic elements	66	Types of honey	79
Properties of water according to the source of availability	67	Taila varga (group of different types of oils)	80
Pāna anārha jala (water not suitable for drinking)	67	Tila taila (gingili oil)	80
Nadī jala (river water)	67	Eraṇḍa taila (castor oil)	80
Jalapāna varjya	68	Sarṣapa taila (mustard oil)	81
Jalapāna phala	68	Akṣa taila (oil of vibhītaka)	81
Śītalā jala	69	Nimba taila (neem oil)	82
Hot water	69	Umā-kusumbha taila	82
Ākāśodaka (antarikṣa jala)	69	Vasā (muscle fat) and majjā (bone marrow)	82
Nārikelodaka (coconut water)	70	Madya varga (group of different types of alcoholic beverages)	82
Kṣīra varga (group of different types of milk)	70	Surā	83
General properties of milk	71	Vārunī surā	83
Gokṣīra (cow's milk)	71	Vibhītaka surā	83
Māhiṣa kṣīra (buffalo's milk)	71	Yava surā	83
Ajā kṣīra (goat's milk)	71	Ariṣṭa	84
Uṣṭra kṣīra (camel's milk)	71	Mārdvīka	84

Dhānyāmla	85	Saktu	97
Mūtra varga (group of different types of urine)	86	Piṇyāka -vesavāra	97
6. Annaswarūpa Vijñāniya Adhyāya (Knowledge of Food Substances)	88	Different measures of preparing various food items	98
Śūkadhbhānya varga (group of cereals or corn with bristles)	88	Khala-kāmbalika	98
General properties of śāli dhānya	89	Raga-śāḍava	98
Rakta śāli	89	Māṁsa varga (group of different types of meat/flesh)	99
Yavaka and other varieties of śāli dhānya	89	Mr̄ga	99
Śaṣṭika dhānya	89	Viśkira	99
Tr̄ṇa dhānya	90	Pratuda	100
Priyaṅgu-koradūṣa	90	Bileśaya	101
Yava	91	Prasaha	101
Anuyava	91	Mahāmṛga	103
Godhūma	91	Jalacara	103
Śimbīdhānya varga (group of pulses)	92	Matsya	104
Simbī dhānya	92	Jāngala māṁsa guṇa	105
Mudga, kalāya, rājamāṣa	92	Śāṣa (rabbit) māṁsa	105
Kulattha	92	Vārtaka (male bustard) & tittiri (partridge) māṁsa	106
Niṣpāva	92	Śikhī (peacock) māṁsa	106
Māṣa	93	Kukkuṭa, krakara, upacakraka & kāṇakapota māṁsa	106
Kākāndola-ātmaguptā	93	Caṭaka māṁsa	106
Tila	93	Mahāmṛga māṁsa	107
Umā-kusumbha bīja	93	Ajā māṁsa	107
Māṣa-yavaka	94	Avi māṁsa	107
Discrimination of dhānya	94	Go-māṁsa	107
Kṛtānna varga (group of food preparation)	94	Mahiṣa māṁsa	107
Maṇḍa (gruel water)	94	Varāha māṁsa	107
Peyā (thin gruel)	95	Matsya & cilacīma māṁsa	107
Vilepi (thick gruel)	95	Description of lāva and others	108
Odana (rice)	95	The best meat to be taken and the meat to be discarded	108
Māṁsa rasa (mutton soup)	96	Properties of the flesh obtained from different body parts	108
Mudga yūṣa	96	Śāka varga (group of different types of vegetables)	109
Kulattha yūṣa	96	General properties of pāṭhā and other vegetables	109
Tila, piṇyāka etc.	96	Suniṣaṇṇa	109
Rasālā (śrīkhaṇḍa)	96	Rājakṣava, vāstūka	109
Pānaka	96	Kākamācī	110
Lājā	97	Cāṅgerī	110
Pṛthukā	97		
Dhāna	97		

General properties of paṭola and others	110	Dādīma	121
Paṭola	110	General properties moca and other fruits	121
Bṛhatī dwaya	111	Tāla phala, kāśmarī phala	122
Vṛṣa (vāsā)	111	Bādāma	122
Kāravellaka	111	Priyāla	122
Vārtāka	111	Kola majjā	123
Karīra	111	Bilwa	123
Kośātakī & avalgujā	112	Kapittha	123
Taṇḍulīyaka	112	Jambū	123
Muñjāta	112	Āmra	124
Pālañkyā	112	Vṛkṣāmla	124
Upodikā & cuñcu	113	Śamī phala	124
Vidārī	113	Pīlu phala	124
Jīvantī	113	Mātuluṅga	125
General properties kuṣmāṇḍa and others	113	Bhallaṭaka	125
Kuṣmāṇḍa & trapuṣa	113	Pālevata	125
Tumba, kaliṅga etc	114	Āruka	126
Mṛṇāla, bisa etc	114	Properties of ārdra drākṣā etc	126
General properties of kalamba etc	115	Properties of kola & other fruits	126
Cillī	115	Amlikā and kola phala	126
Tarkārī & varuṇa	115	Lakuca	126
Varṣābhvau & kālaśāka	116	Dhānya, śāka and phala to be avoided	127
Ciribilwāṅkura	116	Ouṣadha varga (group of drugs)	127
Śatāvarī	116	General properties of lavaṇa	127
Vamśakarīra	116	Saindhava lavaṇa	127
Pattūra	116	Souvarcalā lavaṇa	127
Kāsamarda	117	Viḍa lavaṇa	128
Kusumbha śāka	117	Sāmudra lavaṇa	128
Sarṣapa śāka	117	Oudbhida lavaṇa	128
Mūlaka	117	Kṛṣṇa lavaṇa	128
Properties of mūlaka according to the change of its state	118	Romaka lavaṇa	128
Piṇḍālu	118	Yavakṣāra	128
General properties of kuṭhera etc	118	General properties of all kṣāras	129
Surasā, sumukha, dhānyaka	118	Hingu	129
Laśuna	119	Triphalā	129
Palāṇḍu	119	Harītakī	129
Sūraṇa, bhūkanda	119	Āmalakī	130
Heaviness of leaves, flowers etc. among vegetables in their succeeding order	120	Vibhītakī	130
Superior and inferior varieties among vegetables	120	Trijātaka-caturjātaka	130
Phala varga	120	Marica	131
Drākṣā	120	Pippalī	131
		Śunṭhī	131
		Ārdraka and trikaṭu	132

Cavikā & pippalīmūla	132	Method of discarding unwholesome diet	147
Citraka	132	Three secondary supporters of life	147
Pañcakola	132	Nidrā (sleep)	148
Bṛhat pañcamūla	132	Effects of proper sleep	148
Laghu pañcamūla	133	Effects of vigil, day sleep & dosing	149
Madhyama pañcamūla	133	Indications of day sleep	149
Jīvanīya pañcamūla	135	Contraindications for day sleep	149
Tṛṇa pañcamūla	135	Complications of akāla śayana	149
Vallī pañcamūla	136	Features of nidrānāśa	150
Kanṭakā pañcamūla	137	Instructions regarding sleep	150
7. Annarakṣā Adhyāya		Measures to get good sleep	150
(Protection of Food Substances)	138	Classification of sleep	151
Appointment of prāṇācārya	138	Instructions regarding copulation	151
Duties and responsibilities of prāṇācārya	138	Regimen after copulation	152
Qualities of prāṇācārya	138	Conclusion	153
Features of poisonous foods	139	8. Mātrāsitiya Adhyāya	
Features of poisonous curries or side dishes	139	(Partaking Proper Quantity of Food)	154
Specific features of various poisonous food items	139	Mātrā depends upon agni & dravya swabhāva	154
Viṣa dātā (features of the person administering poison)	140	Āhāra mātrā lakṣaṇa (features of proper quantity of food)	155
Features of poisonous food when thrown into fire	140	Features of inadequate quantity of food	155
Features of poisonous food taken by the birds and animals	140	Features of excessive quantity of food	155
Complications of touching poisonous food and the management	141	Clinical features of alasaka	155
Effects of poisonous food in the mouth and their management	141	Clinical features of visūcikā	156
Signs and symptoms of poisonous substances when reaches the stomach and intestines	142	Features of visūcikā manifested by tridoṣa	156
Treatment	142	Special features of alasaka	156
Hṛdviśodhana	142	Dandālasaka	156
Administration of tāmra bhasma & swarṇa bhasma	142	Āma viṣa	156
Viruddhāhāra	143	Treatment for alasaka	157
Definition of viruddhāhāra	145	Treatment for visūcikā	157
Line of treatment	146	Treatment for ajirṇa	157
		Apatarpaṇa in āma	157
		Types of apatarpaṇa	158
		Laṅghana (fasting)	158
		Laṅghana-pācana (fasting & digestive drugs)	158
		Doṣāvasecana (elimination therapy)	158
		Hetuviparīta & vyādhiviparīta cikitsā	158

Ubhayārthakāri cikitsā	159	Dominancy of mahābhūta and the drug action	168
Types of ajīraṇa	159	Vīrya (potency)	168
Symptoms of āmājīraṇa	159	Aṣṭavidha vīrya	168
Symptoms of viṣṭabdhājīraṇa	159	Opinion of Caraka on vīrya	169
Symptoms of vidagdhājīraṇa	159	Doctrine of eight folds potency	169
Ajīraṇa cikitsā	159	Two types of vīrya	169
Vilambikā	160	Effects of usṇa & śīta vīrya dravya	170
Rasaśeṣajīraṇa	160	Vipāka	170
Ajīraṇa sāmānya lakṣaṇa	160	Vipākaja rasa-bheda	170
Some other causes for indigestion	160	Drug action depends on either rasa or guṇa or vīrya or vipāka or prabhāva	171
Three types of food to be discarded	161	Powerful one only comes into action among rasa etc.	171
Recommended or ideal regimen for the consumption of food	161	Natural order of strength of rasa and others	171
Other food to be discarded	162	Prabhāva	171
Food not to be taken on regular basis	162	Vicitrā pratyayārabdha dravya	172
Recommended food to be taken daily	162		
Recommended food during night hours	163		
Recommended tastes of food substances to be taken at the start, middle and end of meal	163		
Capacity of the stomach and the allotment of food	163		
Anupāna (postprandial drinks)	163		
Ideal anupāna	163		
Anupāna guṇa	164		
Contraindications	164		
Recommended or ideal time for the consumption of food	164		
Regimen after taking food	165		
9. Dravyādi Vijnāniya Adhyāya	166		
(Knowledge of Rasa Pañcaka)			
Importance, nature and origin of dravya	166	Rasa-utpatti (formation of taste)	173
Rasa (taste)	166	Relationship of pañca mahābhūtas with the tastes	173
Rasa and anurasa	167	Madhura rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Pārthiva dravya guṇa	167	Amla rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Jalīya dravya guṇa	167	Lavāṇya rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Āgneya dravya guṇa	167	Tikta rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Vāyavīya dravya guṇa	168	Kaṭu rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Ākāśiya dravya guṇa	168	Kaṣāya rasa lakṣaṇa	174
All the substances are medicines	168	Madhura rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	174
		Amla rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	175
		Lavāṇya rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	175
		Tikta rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	176
		Kaṭu rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	176
		Kaṣāya rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	177

Madhura gaṇa	177	Features of increased mala	190
Amla gaṇa	179	Features of increased mūtra	190
Lavaṇa gaṇa	180	Features of increased sweda	190
Tikta gaṇa	180	Kṣīṇa doṣa karma	190
Katu varga	182	Functions of decreased vata	190
Kaṣāya varga	182	Functions of decreased pitta	190
General properties of the six tastes and their exceptions	183	Functions of decreased kapha	191
Relationship between rasa & vīrya and rasa & guṇa	184	Kṣīṇa dhātu karma	191
57 combinations & 63 kinds of tastes	184	Features of decreased rasa dhātu	191
Without any combination (6)	185	Features of decreased rakta dhātu	191
By the combination of two rasas (15)	185	Features of decreased māṁsa dhātu	191
By the combination of three rasas (20)	185	Features of decreased medo dhātu	191
By the combination of four rasas (15)	185	Features of decreased asthi dhātu	191
By the combination of five rasas (6)	185	Features of decreased majjā dhātu	191
By the combination of all the six rasas (1)	186	Features of decreased śukra dhātu	191
Innumerable combinations of tastes	186	Kṣīṇa mala karma	192
11. Doṣādi Vijñāniya Adhyāya	187	Features of decreased mala	192
(Knowledge of Doṣa, Dhātu & Mala)		Features of decreased mūtra	192
Chief constituents of the body	187	Features of decreased sweda	192
Prākṛta doṣa karma (normal functions of doṣas)	187	Vṛddhi-kṣaya	192
Functions of normal vāta	187	Āśraya-āśrayī bhāva (relationship of dhātus and doṣas)	192
Functions of normal pitta	187	Causes for the increase/decrease of the tissues and the treatment	193
Functions of normal kapha	188	Line of treatment for increased and decreased state of rakta etc	194
Prākṛta dhātu karma (functions of normal dhātus)	188	Reason for increase or decrease of body tissues	195
Prākṛta mala karma (functions of normal malas)	188	Doṣa, dhātu, mala and sroto duṣṭi	195
Vṛddha doṣa karma	188	Ojas : definition	195
Functions of aggravated vāta	188	Features, importance, cause for the decrease of ojas	195
Functions of aggravated pitta	189	Signs & symptoms of diminution of ojas and its management	196
Functions of aggravated kapha	189	Line of treatment for vṛddhi & kṣaya	196
Vṛddha dhātu karma	189	Reasons for paying interest and hatredness of substances	196
Features of increased rasa dhātu	189	Action of doṣas according to their state	196
Features of increased rakta dhātu	189	Keep doṣas under control	197
Features of increased māṁsa dhātu	189		
Features of increased medo dhātu	189		
Features of increased asthi dhātu	189		
Features of increased majjā dhātu	190		
Features of increased śukra dhātu	190		
Vṛddha mala karma	190		
12. Doṣabhediya Adhyāya	198		
(Classification of Doṣas)		Relationship between doṣas and pañcamahābhūta	
			198

Seats of doṣas	198	Madhyama rogamārga	207
Seats of vāta	198	Features of increased vāta	207
Seats of pitta	198	Features of increased pitta	207
Seats of kapha	198	Features of increased kapha	208
Doṣa bheda	198	Importance of practical knowledge	208
Pañcavidha vāta	199	Trividha roga (three types of diseases)	208
Prāṇa vāta	199	Features of three types of diseases	208
Udāna vāta	199	Doṣotha vyādhi	209
Vyāna vāta	199	Karmaja vyādhi	209
Samāna vāta	199	Doṣakarmaja vyādhi	209
Apāna vāta	199	Line of treatment for the above	
Pañcavidha pitta	200	3 types of diseases	209
Pācaka pitta	200	Dwividha roga	209
Rañjaka pitta	200	Swatantra-paratantra roga	209
Sādhaka pitta	200	Daśavidha parīkṣā	210
Ālocaka pitta	200	Examination of intensity of disease	210
Bhrājaka pitta	200	Ill effects of wrong prescription	211
Pañcavidha kapha	201	Physician's responsibility	211
Avalambaka śleṣmā	201	Sixty two (+one) types of combinations of doṣas	211
Kledaka śleṣmā	201		
Bodhaka śleṣmā	201		
Tarpaka śleṣmā	201		
Śleṣaka śleṣmā	201		
Factors responsible for the accumulation, aggravation and alleviation of doṣas	201	13. Doṣopakramaniya Adhyāya	
Caya	202	(General Line of Treatment for Tridoṣa)	214
Prakopa	202	General line of treatment for vāta disorders	214
Praśamana	202	General line of treatment for pitta disorders	214
Relationship between doṣas and seasons	203	General line of treatment for kapha disorders	215
Nature of aggravation and subsidence of doṣas	203	Treatment for saṁsargaja and sannipātaja doṣa	215
Doṣa vaiṣamya is the chief cause for the manifestation of all diseases	204	Directions for treatment of different doṣas	215
Three types of etiological factors	204	Procedure of treating doṣas according to their stages	216
Asātmendriyārtha saṁyoga	204	Ideal treatment	216
Kāla/Parināma	205	Factors responsible for roaming doṣas from koṣṭha to śākhā and śākhā to koṣṭha	216
Karma/Prajñāparādha	205	Line of treatment for sthānika (local) and sthānagata (non local) doṣa	216
Trividha rogamārga (three pathways of diseases)	206	Line of treatment for tiryaggata doṣa	217
Bāhya rogamārga	206		
Ābhyantara rogamārga	207		

Features of śāma and nirāma doṣa	217	Kārṣya is better than sthoulya and its reasons	230
Āma and sāma doṣa cikitsā	218	Treatment for emaciation	230
Procedure to eliminate dosas	218	Suitable diet for sthūla and kṛṣṇa	230
Suitable season for elimination of doṣas	219	All the therapies can be included under laṅghana and bṛīhaṇa	231
Relationship between doṣas and seasons	219		
Ouṣadha sevana kāla	219		
Abhakta	220		
Prāgbhakta	221		
Madhyabhakta	221	Chardana gaṇa dravyas (group of emetic drugs)	232
Adhobhakta	221	Virecana gaṇa dravyas (group of purgative drugs)	233
Sabhakta/Samabhakta	222	Nirūha gaṇa dravyas (group of drugs useful for decoction enemata)	235
Anantara bhakta	222	Śirovirecana gaṇa dravyas (group of drugs useful for nasal administration)	236
Sāmudga	222	Vatahara dravya gaṇa (group of drugs useful to mitigate vāta)	237
Muhurmuhu	222	Pittahara dravya gaṇa (group of drugs useful to mitigate pitta)	238
Sagrāsa	222	Kaphahara dravya gaṇa (group of drugs useful to mitigate kapha)	238
Grāsāntara	222	Jīvanīya gaṇa (invigorators)	240
Niśi	223	Vidāryādi gaṇa	240
14. Dwividhopakramāṇiya Adhyāya (Two Kinds of Therapies)	224	Sārivādi gaṇa	241
Two kinds of treatment	224	Padmakādi gaṇa	241
Bṛīhaṇa	224	Parūṣakādi gaṇa	241
Laṅghana	224	Añjanādi gaṇa	241
Dominancy of mahābhūta	224	Paṭolādi gaṇa	242
Ṣaḍūpakrama	225	Gudūcyādi gaṇa	242
Types of laṅghana	225	Āragwadhādi gaṇa	242
Śodhana	225	Asanādi gaṇa	243
Śamana	225	Varuṇādi gaṇa	243
Persons eligible for nourishing therapy	226	Ūṣakādi gaṇa	244
Persons eligible for reducing therapy	226	Viratarādi gaṇa	245
Different types of laṅghana therapies indicated in various conditions	226	Rodhrādi gaṇa	245
Advantages of nourishing therapy	227	Arkādi gaṇa	246
Advantages of reducing therapy	227	Surasādi gana	246
Obesity and its causes	228	Muṣkakādi gaṇa	247
Signs and symptoms of obesity	228	Vatsakādi gana	247
Atibṛīhaṇa (features of excessive nourishing therapy)	228	Vacā-haridrādi gaṇa	248
Treatment for obesity	228		
Vyoṣādi yoga	229		
Atilaṅghana (features of excessive reducing therapy)	229		

Priyaṅgu-ambaṣṭhādi gaṇa	249	Jīryamāṇa lakṣaṇa	262
Mustādi gaṇa	250	Jīrṇa lakṣaṇa	262
Nyagrodhādi gaṇa	250	Paścāt karma	262
Elādi gaṇa	251	Signs & symptoms of proper, improper and excessive oleation	262
Śyāmādi gaṇa	251	Complications of oleation therapy and their management	263
16. Sneha Vidhi Adhyāya		Features of drying therapy	263
(Oleation Therapy)	254	Procedure for virecana	263
Śodhana therapy	254	Procedure for vamana	264
Qualities of oleating drugs	255	Sadyo-sneha yoga (recipes for instant oleation)	264
Best oleating substances	255	Advantages of oleation therapy	265
Eligible persons for oleation therapy	256		
Persons not eligible for oleation therapy	256		
Indications of different unctuous substances in various disease	256		
Indications of different unctuous substances according to seasons	257		
Suitable time for oleation therapy	257		
Mode of administration of oleating substances	258		
Sneha vicāraṇā	258		
Dosage of oleating substances	258		
Hraswa mātrā	258		
Madhyama mātrā	259		
Uttama mātrā	259		
Classification of sneha dravyas according to their mode of action	259		
Śodhana sneha	259		
Śamana sneha	259		
Bṛīhaṇa sneha	259		
Eligible persons for bṛīhaṇa sneha	259		
Effects of snehapāna	260		
Anupāna for different unctuous substances	260		
Test to know the given oil is digested or not	260		
Recommended diet during oleation therapy	260		
Paścāt karma (postoperative care)	260		
Snehapāna vidhi	261		
Signs and symptoms during the process of digestion and after the completion of digestion	262		
Jīryamāṇa lakṣaṇa	262		
Jīrṇa lakṣaṇa	262		
Paścāt karma	262		
Signs & symptoms of proper, improper and excessive oleation	262		
Complications of oleation therapy and their management	263		
Features of drying therapy	263		
Procedure for virecana	263		
Procedure for vamana	264		
Sadyo-sneha yoga (recipes for instant oleation)	264		
Advantages of oleation therapy	265		
17. Sweda Vidhi Adhyāya			
(Sudation Therapy)	266		
Definition	266		
Types of sudation therapy	266		
Thermal sudation	267		
Non thermal sudation	267		
Tāpa sweda	267		
Upanāha sweda	267		
Uṣma sweda	268		
Drava sweda	268		
Pariṣeka sweda	268		
Avagāha sweda	269		
Eight types of uṣma sweda	269		
Pīḍa sweda	269		
Sāṁstara sweda	270		
Nādi sweda	270		
Ghanāṣma sweda	271		
Kumbhī sweda	271		
Kūpa sweda	271		
Kuṭī sweda	272		
Jentāka sweda	272		
Sweda vidhi	273		
Signs and symptoms of proper sudation	273		
Signs and symptoms of excessive sudation and its management	274		
Properties of swedana and sthambhana drugs	274		
Signs and symptoms of proper and excessive astringent therapy	274		

Persons not eligible for sudation therapy	274	Reasons for administration of mild drugs to the weak persons etc.	289
Persons eligible for sudation therapy	275	Procedure of elimination in case of mandagni and krūra koṣṭha	290
Types of non-thermal sudation	275	Administer vasti before purgation in case of rükṣa and others	290
Advantages of sudation therapy	276	Administer purgative drug after mild oleation	290
18. Vamana-Virecana Vidhi Adhyāya		Conduct oleation and sudation in between purificatory measures	290
(Emesis and Purgation Therapies)	277	Importance of sneha and sweda—a simile	291
Definition of vamana and virecana	277	Advantages of sneha and sweda	291
Mode of action of emetics and purgatives	277	Benefits of purificatory therapies	291
Emesis and purgation according to doṣas	278		
Indications and contraindications for emesis	278	19. Basti Vidhi Adhyāya	292
Indications and contraindications for purgation	279	(Medicated Enemata)	292
Vamana vidhi	279	Vasti—definition	292
Suitable emetic drug according to doṣa	282	Importance and types of vasti	292
Maximum limit for emesis	282	Āsthāpāna vasti	292
Useful drugs in the state of absence or insufficient bouts	282	Indications for āsthāpana vasti	293
Signs and symptoms of insufficient emesis	282	Contraindications for āsthāpana vasti	293
Signs and symptoms of proper emesis	283	Indications for anuvāsana vasti	293
Signs and symptoms of excessive emesis	283	Contraindications for anuvāsana vasti	294
Saṁsarjana karma	283	Vasti yantra	294
Peyā, vilepi etc. are the diet regimen	284	Vastinatra	294
Vamana and virecana vega and parimāṇa (no. of bouts & the quantity of vomitus and purgative material)	285	Shape and size of vastinatra according to age	294
Virecana vidhi	286	Vasti puṭaka	295
Suitable purgative drug according to doṣa	286	Preparation of vasti yantra	295
Measures to be followed in the absence of bouts	287	Dosage of āsthāpana vasti dravya	295
Replication of purgative drug administration	287	Dosage of anuvāsana vasti dravya	296
Signs and symptoms of improper, proper and excessive purgation	287	Anuvāsana vasti	296
Necessity of peyādi krama	289	Types of anuvāsana vasti	297
Ineligible for peyādi krama	289	Anuvāsana vidhi	297
Commencement of drug action	289	Paścāt karma	298
		Diet schedule after anuvāsana vasti	298
		Measures to be taken if the given drug is not expelled	298
		Special treatment	298
		Time schedule for the administration of another anuvāsana vasti	299
		Favorable instance to administer āsthāpana vasti	299

Nirūha vasti vidhi	299	Time schedule for different śodhana procedures	309
Nirūha vasti kalpanā	300	Importance of vasti	310
Dosage of āsthāpana vasti dravya according to some other authorities	301	Importance of sirāvedhana	311
Order of mixing āsthāpana vasti dravya	301	20. Nasya Vidhi Adhyāya	
Nirūha vastidāna vidhi	302	(Nasal Administration) 312	
Immediate steps to be taken after vastidāna	302	Definition of nasya	312
Vasti pratyāgama kāla	302	Types of nasya	312
Administration of another nirūha vasti	302	Virecana nasya	312
Surveillance of improper signs	302	Bṛīhaṇa nasya	312
Post-operative care	303	Śamana nasya	313
Management of complications	303	Drugs useful for virecana nasya	313
Anuvāsana after āsthāpana	303	Drugs useful for bṛīhaṇa nasya	313
Samyak yoga lakṣaṇa	303	Drugs useful for śamana nasya	313
Number of anuvāsana according to doṣa	303	Classification of nasya according to the type of drug used	313
Diet according to doṣa	304	Mode of administration of dhmāna nasya	313
Vātahara vasti	304	Nasya mātrā	314
Pittahara vasti	304	Dosage of different types of nasya	314
Kaphahara vasti	304	Contraindications for nasya	314
Tridoṣahara vasti	304	Times of administration of nasya	315
Vastis are three only	304	Nasya vidhi	315
Three kinds of vasti according to their action	305	Management of murcchā	316
Maximum limit to conduct nirūha vasti	305	Administer sneha nasya after virecana nasya	316
Classification of vasti according to number	305	Dhūmapāna prayoga	317
Karma vasti	305	Proper signs and symptoms of— snigdha nasya, insufficient snigdha nasya and excessive snigdha nasya	317
Kāla vasti	305	Signs and symptoms of proper, insufficient & excessive virecana nasya	317
Yoga vasti	305	Pratimarśa nasya indications and contraindications	317
Either sneha vasti or nirūha vasti should not be given continuously	306	Fifteen times of administration of pratimarśa nasya	318
Mātrā vasti	306	Suitable age for conducting various śodhana procedures	318
Uttara vasti	306	Importance of taila as nasya dravya	319
Uttara vasti netra	307	Effects of marśa and pratimarśa	319
Dosage of uttara vasti dravya	307	Preparation of anutaila	319
Uttara vasti in males	307	Advantages of nasya	320
Uttara vasti in females	308		
Uttara vasti netra parimāṇa	308		
Quantity of uttara vasti dravya	308		
Uttara vasti vidhi	309		

21. Dhūmapāna Vidhi Adhyāya			
(Inhalation of Medicated Fumes)	321		
Dhūmapāna-prayojana	321	Hina mātrā (minimum dose) 331	
Types of dhūmapāna	321	Pratisāraṇa 332	
Contraindications	322	Mukhālepa 332	
Complications and their management	322	Six recipes of mukhālepa 333	
Different times of administration		Hemanta ṛtu—kolamajjādi mukhālepa 333	
of dhūmapāna	322	Śiśira ṛtu—śimhimūlādi mukhālepa 333	
Dhūmanetra (smoke pipe)	323	Vasanta ṛtu—darbhamulādi mukhālepa 333	
Dhūmapāna vidhi	323	Grīṣma ṛtu—kumudādi mukhālepa 333	
Snaihika dhūmapāna	324	Varṣa ṛtu—kaliyakādi mukhālepa 333	
Madhyama/Prāyogika dhūmapāna	324	Śarad ṛtu—tālīsādi mukhālepa 333	
Tīkṣṇa dhūmapāna	324	Mūrdha taila 334	
Dhūma dravya	325	Abhyaṅga 334	
Drugs useful for sneha dhūmapāna	325	Pariṣeka or śirahṣeka 334	
Drugs useful for madhyama dhūmapāna	325	Picu 335	
Drugs useful for tīkṣṇa dhūmapāna	325	Śirovasti 335	
Preparation of dhūmavarti	325	Śirovasti vidhi 335	
Kāsaghna dhūmapāna (anti tussive)	326	Time limit to conduct śirovasti in different disorders 336	
Vamana dhūma (emetic smoke)	326	Karṇapūraṇa 336	
Vraṇa dhūma (fumigation of ulcers)	326	Mātrākāla 337	
Insufficient, excessive and proper signs & symptoms of dhūmapāna	326	Advantages of mūrdha taila 337	
Benefits of dhūmapāna	327		
22. Gaṇḍūṣādi Vidhi Adhyāya			
(Mouth Gargles and Others)	328		
Types of gaṇḍūṣa	328	23. Āścotanāñjana Vidhi	
Drugs useful in various types of gaṇḍūṣa	328	(Eye-drops and collyrium) 338	
Snigdha or snehika gaṇḍūṣa	328	Āścotana (eye drops) 338	
Śamana gaṇḍūṣa	329	Time of administration 338	
Śodhana gaṇḍūṣa	329	Āścotana dravya according to doṣa 338	
Ropāṇa gaṇḍūṣa	329	Procedure of āścotana 338	
Useful liquids in gaṇḍūṣa	329	Post-operative care 339	
Gaṇḍūṣa in different conditions	329	Contraindications 339	
Procedure of gaṇḍūṣa dhāraṇa	330	Advantages of āścotana 339	
Maximum limit to conduct gaṇḍūṣa and kavala	330	Indications for añjana 339	
Definition of gaṇḍūṣa and kavala	331	Types of añjana 340	
Benefits of kavala	331	Lekhanāñjana 340	
Pravara mātrā (maximum dose)	331	Ropāñjana 340	
Madhyama mātrā (medium dose)	331	Prasādanāñjana 340	
		Pratyāñjana 340	
		Essential equipment and instruments for añjana 341	
		Gharṣaṇa śilā 341	
		Añjana śalākā 341	
		Three types of añjana according to mode of preparation 341	

Dosage	341	Śalya nirghātanī yantra	355
Suitable time for administration of añjana	341	Arśa yantra	355
Suitable time for tīkṣṇāñjana	342	Śamī yantra	356
Simile regarding metals and eyes	342	Bhagandara yantra	356
Unsuitable conditions for tīkṣṇāñjana	342	Ghrāṇa-arśo-arbuda yantra	356
Contraindications	342	Aṅguli-trāṇaka yantra	356
Añjana vidhi	343	Yoni-vraṇa-darśana yantra	356
Procedure of washing eyes	343	Nādī-vraṇa yantra	357
Procedure of cleaning eyes	343	Udakodara yantra	357
Rationality in washing eyes	344	Śrīga yantra	357
Pratyāñjana	344	Ālābu yantra	357
24. Tarpaṇa-Puṭapāka Vidhi Adhyāya	345	Ghaṭī yantra	358
(Satiating Therapies to the Eye)		Śalākā yantra	358
Akṣi tarpaṇa	345	Gaṇḍūpada-mukha yantra	358
Tarpaṇa vidhi	346	Masūradāla-mukha yantra	358
Duration	347	Śaṅku yantra	358
Proper, insufficient and excessive signs and symptoms	347	Garbha śaṅku	359
Puṭapāka	347	Sarpaphaṇamukhī yantra	359
Types of puṭapāka	347	Danta-pātana yantra	359
Snehana puṭapāka	347	Pramārjanī śalākā yantra	359
Lekhana puṭapāka	348	Karṇa-śodhana śalākā	359
Prasādana puṭapāka	348	Jāmbavouṣtha śalākā	360
Puṭapāka vidhi	348	Anu yantra	360
Dhāraṇa kāla	349	Yantra karma	360
Paścāt karma	349	Specialty of kaṇkamukha yantra	361
Contraindicated for tarpaṇa and puṭapāka	349		
Parihāra kāla	349		
Necessity of protecting eyes	350		
25. Yantra Vidhi Adhyāya			
(Application of Blunt Instruments)	351		
Definition of śalya	351	26. Sastra Vidhi Adhyāya	
Different kinds of instruments	351	(Application of Sharp Instruments)	362
Swastika yantra	352	Śastra-lakṣaṇa	362
Sandariṣa yantra	353	Description of sharp instruments	363
Mucuṭī or mucusī yantra	353	Maṇḍalāgra śastra	363
Tāla yantra	354	Vṛddhipatra śastra	363
Nādī yantra	354	Utpalapatra śastra & adhyardhadhārā śastra	364
Kaṇṭha-śalya-darśana nādī yantra	354	Sarpavaktra śastra	364
Pañcamukha and trimukha yantra	354	Eṣaṇī	364

Baḍīśa Śāstra	366	Suitable conditions for the application of śṛṅga yantra	376
Karapatra Śāstra	366	Śṛṅgāvacāraṇa	376
Kartarī	366	Ālābū	376
Nakha Śāstra	367	Ghaṭī yantra	376
Dantalekhana Śāstra	367	Pracchāna	376
Suci	367	Different types of bloodletting in different conditions	377
Kurca Śāstra	367	Complications and their management	377
Khaja Śāstra	368		
Karṇapāli vyadhana Śāstra	368		
Ārā Śāstra	368		
Anu Śāstra	368		
Functions of sharp instruments	369		
Śastra doṣa (defects of sharp instruments)	369		
Śastra grahaṇa vidhi	369		
Śastra koṣa (surgical instrument case)	370		
Śastra pāyanā (tempering)	370		
Ways of gaining practical knowledge	370		
Bloodletting	370		
Jaloukāvacāraṇa	371		
Indications	371		
Features of poisonous leaches	371		
Complications of poisonous leach application and their management	372		
Features of non-poisonous leaches	372		
Measurement of leaches	373		
Collection and preservation of leaches	373		
Leaches to be discarded for therapeutic use	373		
Jaloukāvacāraṇa vidhi (procedure of leach application)	373		
Sucking of vitiated blood	373		
Moment to remove the leach	374		
Action to be taken to protect from blood intoxication	374		
Features of proper, excessive and insufficient vomiting	375		
Method of preservation	375		
Management of bleeding	375		
Effects of bloodletting	375		
Need of bloodletting for a second time	375		
Quantity of blood to be extracted	375		
Suitable conditions for the application of ālābū and ghaṭī yantra	376		
		Sirāvyadha	378
		Importance of venesection	378
		Features of pure blood	378
		Diseases caused by vitiation of blood	379
		Contraindications for venesection	379
		Site of venesection in various diseases	380
		Procedure of venesection	381
		Method of giving incision	382
		Upanāsikā sirāvedhana	382
		Jihwā sirāvedhana	382
		Grīvā sirāvedhana	383
		Bāhu sirāvedhana	383
		Pārśwa, mehana and jaṅghā sirāvedhana	383
		Pāda sirāvedhana	383
		Procedure of sirāvedhana at other places not mentioned in the text	383
		Instrument differs with musculature	384
		Signs of proper, inadequate and excessive incision	384
		Reasons for not flowing of the blood freely even after giving proper incision	384
		Management	384
		Complications and their management	384
		Features of vitiated blood	385
		Quantity of blood to be flown	385
		Paścāt karma	385
		Sirāvedhana for the second time	385
		Caution regarding sirāvedhana	386
		Measures to treat residual blood	386
		Drugs required to stop bleeding	386

Diet regimen	386	Use of different instruments for the removal of various types of foreign bodies	392
Features of the persons having pure blood	387	Post operative procedure	392
28. Śalyāharāṇa Vidhi Adhyāya	388	Removal of sirā & snāyugata śalya	392
(Removal of Foreign Bodies)		Removal of hṛdayagata śalya	393
Śalyagati	388	Removal of asthigata śalya	393
Features of wounds having a foreign body	388	Removal of pakwāśayagata śalya	394
General features	388	Removal of vāta and others	394
Special features of twag-gata śalya lakṣaṇa	388	Removal of kanṭha srotogata śalya	394
Mārīṣagata śalya lakṣaṇa	388	Removal of jatuṣa śalya	394
Snāyugata śalya lakṣaṇa	389	Removal of kanṭhagata śalya	394
Sirāgata śalya lakṣaṇa	389	Treatment for throat obstruction	395
Srotogata śalya lakṣaṇa	389	Methods of removal of foreign bodies from the eyes	395
Dhamanīgata śalya lakṣaṇa	389	Treatment for drowning	395
Asthi-sandhigata śalya lakṣaṇa	389	Removal of water from the ears	395
Koṣṭhagata & marmagata śalya lakṣaṇas	389	Removal of the insects from the ear	395
Identification of the site of the foreign body	390	Absorption of foreign bodies	395
If the foreign body is in the skin	390	Unabsorbed foreign bodies and their effects	396
If the foreign body is in the muscles	390	Steps to be followed for the removal of deeply lodged foreign bodies	396
If the foreign body is in the G.I. tract, boney joints and muscles	390	General instructions for the removal of foreign bodies	396
If the foreign body is in the bones	390		
If the foreign body is in the joints	391		
If the foreign body is in the veins, arteries, internal channels and tendons	391		
If the foreign body is in the vital points	391		
Four kinds of foreign bodies according to the shape	391		
Methods of removal of foreign bodies	391		
Pratiloma	391		
Anuloma	391		
Removal of tiryaggata śalya	391		
Śalya that should not be hammered or removed	391		
Method of removal of foreign body	392		
Removal of invisible foreign bodies	392		
		29. Śastrakarma Vidhi Adhyāya	397
		(Surgical Procedure)	397
		Śastrakarma	397
		Indication of surgical therapy	397
		Measures to be taken for the management of inflammation before surgery	397
		Śopha (swelling)	397
		Features of āma śopha	397
		Features of pacyamāna śopha	398
		Features of pakwa śopha	398
		Relationship of tridoṣas and swelling	398
		Features of ati pakwa śopha	399
		Raktapāka	399
		Dāraṇa-pātana	399
		Incision is contraindicated in āma śopha	399
		Ignorant physician	399
		Śastrakarma vidhi	400

Pre-operative care	400	Yamaka bandha	407
Operative procedure	400	Maṇḍala bandha	408
Length of incision	400	Pañcāṅgī bandha	408
Ideal qualities of a surgeon	401	Type of bandage differs from the site	408
Suitable areas for horizontal incision	401	Complications of wounds, if not bandaged	409
Unsuitable places for horizontal incision	401	Advantages of the bandage	409
Post-operative care	401	Bandage with leaves	410
Features of suitable bandage cloth	402	Contraindications for applying bandage	410
Measures to protect the wound	402	Worms in wounds	410
Instruction to wear herbs on the head	402	Wounds associated with dosas should not be made to heal	410
Post-operative regimen	402	Regimen after wound healing	411
Contraindications	402	Conclusion	411
Diet schedule	402		
Contraindicated foods	403		
Vraṇopacāra	403		
Dressing schedule	404		
Suitable gauze pack	404		
Management of the complications arises due to the incision given to apakwa śopha	404	30. Kṣāra-Agnikarma Vidhi Adhyāya	
Suturing	404	(Preparation and Application of Caustic Alkalies and Thermal Cautery)	412
Suitable places for suturing	405		
Contraindicated areas for suturing	405	Kṣāra (caustic alkalies) & its properties	412
Suturing procedure	405	Supremacy of caustic alkalies	412
Types of sutures	405	Types of kṣāra	412
Post-operative care of suturing	405	Ābhyanṭara parimārjana	413
Method of suturing the dry wound	405	Bāhya parimārjana	413
Bandaging methods	406	Contraindications for kṣāra-prayoga	413
Fifteen types of bandages	406	Contraindicated places and seasons	413
Kośa bandha	406	Kṣārapāka vidhi	413
Swastika bandha	406	Types of bāhya parimārjana according to the mode of preparation	414
Pratolī/Muttolī bandha	406	Madhyama kṣārapāka vidhi	414
Cīna bandha	407	Mrdu kṣārapāka vidhi	414
Dāma bandha	407	Tikṣṇa kṣārapāka vidhi	414
Anuvellita bandha	407	Indications of different types of kṣāra	415
Khatwa bandha	407	Method of potentiating kṣāra	415
Vibandha	407	Kṣāra guṇa	415
Sthagikā bandha	407	Kṣāra doṣa	415
Vitāna bandha	407	Equipment required for kṣāra karma	416
Utsaṅga bandha	407	Kṣāra karma	416
Gosphaṇā bandha	407	Guda-arśas	416
		Vartma roga	416
		Nāsā roga & karṇa roga	416

Samyak dagdha lakṣaṇa	417	Dagdha bheda	420
Durdagdha lakṣaṇa	417	Durdagdha & atidagdha lakṣaṇa	420
Ati dagdha lakṣaṇa	417	Tuccha dagdha lakṣaṇa	420
Management of complications due to ati dagdha	417	Durdagdha lakṣaṇa	420
Agnikarma (thermal cautery)	418	Ati dagdha lakṣaṇa	421
Thermal cautery is superior to caustic alkalies	418	Treatment for tuccha dagdha	421
Suitable places for thermal cautery	418	Treatment for durdagdha	421
Indications of thermal cautery on the skin and the equipment required	418	Treatment for samyak dagdha	421
Indications of thermal cautery on the muscle and the equipment required	418	Treatment for ati dagdha	421
Indications of thermal cautery on the veins and the equipment required	419	Treatment for sneha dagdha	421
Contraindicated for thermal cautery	419		
Agnikarma vidhi	419		
Proper signs and symptoms of thermal cauterization	420		
		ANNEXURE	
		Important essay & short questions	425
		Important ślokas to be learnt by heart	427
		Table of weights and measures	442
		Glimpse of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya	443
		Alphabetical index of the herbs	473
		Glossary of Sanskrit terms	485

MAULIKA SIDDHĀNTA

1. Aṣṭavidha prakṛti	509	Aprasiddha śabdam	515
Sṛṣṭi-utpatti	509	Duṣprāṇitam	515
Creation of universe	509	Asaṅgatārtham	516
Sṛṣṭi-utpatti karma	509	Asukhārohī padam	516
Synonyms of prakṛti	510	Viruddham	516
Avyakta	510	Ati-vistrtam	516
Mahat tattva	510	Ati-saṅkṣiptam	516
Ahaṅkāra	510	Aprayojanam	517
Classification of tattwas	511	Bhinnakramam	517
Prakṛti	511	Sandigdham	517
Vikṛti	511	Punaruktam	517
Prakṛti-vikṛti	511	Niśpramāṇam	518
Na prakṛti-na vikṛti	511	Asamāptyartham	518
Aṣṭavidha prakṛti	511	Apārthakam/Anarthakam	518
Similarities and dissimilarities between prakṛti & puruṣa	512	Vyāhatam	518
		Compositional devices other than tantrayuktis	518
		Vyākhyā (explanation)	518
2. Tantrayuktis Vicāra	513	Pindā vyākhyā	518
Tantrayuktis (major devices)	513	Pada vyākhyā	519
Enumeration of tantrayuktis	513	Padārtha vyākhyā	519
Śāstra lakṣaṇa/Tantra guṇa	514	Adhikaraṇa vyākhyā	519
Tantra doṣa	515		

Prakaraṇa vyākhyā	519
Artha vyākhyā	520
Kṛcchra vyākhyā	520
Phala vyākhyā	520
Uccitaka vyākhyā	520
Nyāsa vyākhyā	520
Prayojana vyākhyā	520
Anuloma vyākhyā	520
Pratiloma vyākhyā	520
Sūtra vyākhyā	521
Samasta vyākhyā	521
Saptavidha kalpanā	521
Pradhānasya kalpanā	521
Pradhānena kalpanā	521
Guṇa kalpanā	521
Leśa kalpanā	522
Vid्यā kalpanā	522
Bhakṣya kalpanā	522
Ājñā kalpanā	522
Saptadaśa tācchīlya	522
Tācchīlya	523
Avayava	523
Vikāra	523
Sāmīpya	523
Bhūyastwa	524
Prakāra	524
Guṇīguṇa vibhava	524
Saṁsaktatā	524
Taddharmatā	524
Sthāna	524

Sāhacarya	525
Tādarthyā	525
Sāhacarya	525
Karma	525
Guṇa-nimittatā	525
Ceṣṭā-nimittatā	525
Mūlasamjnā	526
Tātsthyaṁ	526
Ārthāśrayas (supporting devices)	526
Ādi lopa	526
Madhya lopa	527
Anta lopa	527
Ubhayapada lopa	527
Ādimadhyānta lopa	527
Upadhā lopa	527
Varṇopajanana	527
Rṣi kliṣṭa	528
Tantraśīla	528
Tantrasamjnā	528
Prākṛtakhyā	528
Samāna tantra pratyaya	528
Paratantra pratyaya	528
Hetu hetuka dharma	529
Kārya-kāraṇa dharma	529
Ādyanta viparyaya	529
Śabdānyatwa	529
Pratyaya dharma	529
Upanaya	530
Sambhava	530
Vibhava	530

1 AYUSKAMYA A DHYAYA

[Quest for Long Life]



(Volume V) 755

Preamble:	in ग	a ः	o ॒	u ॑	i ॒	ɛ ॑	e ॒	ɪ ॑

Though there are a number of religious syllables in the Ayurvedic literature, the popular texts are known as Caraka Saṃhitā, Sushruta Saṃhitā and Asaṅga Hṛdaya. Asaṅga Saṃgraha and these texts are much more familiar in the name of Asaṅga Hṛdaya, i.e., greater than Nidamayoddhanī, Śvapnadarśi Saṃhitā and Bhūṣṇḍitī Saṃhitā or in English as Asaṅga Hṛdaya.

The texts mentioned above are the most popular and widely used texts—so called as *Akara grāmīas*. That means Asaṅga Hṛdaya can be called as *Prakarana grāmīa* or *Asaṅga Hṛdaya*—the most popular and well-known text.

Out of all eight syllables, the first four are considered top priority to Asaṅga Hṛdaya. The second and third are also important. The fourth aspect is also important in Asaṅga Hṛdaya. So, the first four aspects are given equal importance in Asaṅga Hṛdaya.

ASTĀNGA HRDAYA

Sūtrasthāna

(AN ANCIENT TEXT OF AYURVEDA)

Asaṅga Hṛdaya is the most popular and well-known text of Ayurveda. It is a collection of various chapters on different periods on different topics—yoga, ayurveda, pharmacology, gynaecology, etc.—and it is mainly a text of Ayurveda.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 20 chapters under 1000 stanzas. It is divided into 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

Asaṅga Hṛdaya consists of 10 chapters under 500 stanzas each.

KEY TO TRANSLITERATION

स्वर (Vowels)

a	ā	i	ī	u	ū	e	ai
	ओ	औ	अं	अः	ऋ	ऋै	

व्यञ्जन (Consonents)

k ka क् क	kh kha ख् ख	g ga ग् ग	gh gha घ् घ	ñ ña ङ् ङ
c ca च् च	ch cha छ् छ	j ja ज् ज	jh jha झ् झ	ñ ña ज् ज
t ṭa ट् ट	th tha ठ् ठ	d da ड् ड	dh dha ঢ্ ঢ	ñ ña ণ্ ণ
t̤ t̤a ত্ ত	th̤ tha থ্ থ	d̤ da দ্ দ	dh̤ dha ধ্ ধ	n na ন্ ন
p pa প্ প	ph pha ফ্ ফ	b ba ব্ ব	bh bha ভ্ ভ	m ma ম্ ম
y ya য্ য	r ra র্ র	l la ল্ ল	v va ব্ ব	ś śa শ্ শ
	ṣ ṣa ষ্ ষ	s sa স্ স	h ha হ্ হ	
	kṣ kṣa ক্ষ্ ক্ষ	tr tra ত্ ত্	jñ jñā জ্ জ্	

1 ĀYUŞKĀMĪYA ADHYĀYA

[Quest for Long Life]



Preamble:

Though there are a number of treatises available in the Ayurvedic literature, the popular texts are known as Caraka Saṁhitā, Suśruta Saṁhitā and Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya/Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha and these texts are much more familiar in the name of *Bṛhatṭrayī*, i.e. greater trio. Mādhavanidāna, Śāriṅgadhara Saṁhitā and Bhāvaprakāśa became popular as *Laghutrayī*, i.e. lesser trio.

The texts mentioned in greater trio i.e. Caraka Saṁhitā and Suśruta Saṁhitā are called as *Ākara granthas*. That means they are self-authentic where as Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya can be called as *Prakaraṇa granthai* i.e., which has been written by quoting the references from other texts.

Out of all eight branches of Ayurveda, Maharṣi Caraka has been given top priority to *Kāyacikitsā* i.e. general medicine, where as Maharṣi Suśruta discussed the surgical aspects in detail in his text Suśruta Saṁhitā. Keeping this in view Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa has given equal importance to all the eight branches and written this present text entitled Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya.

Though various authors have written many a number of commentaries at different periods on Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, Aruṇadutta's 'Sarvāṅgasundarī' and Hemādri's 'Āyurveda Rasāyana' are the popular and available commentaries as on today.

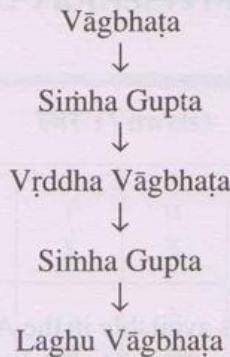
The text Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya consists 6 divisions and 120 chapters as under:

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. Sūtra Sthāna : | 30 Chapters |
| 2. Śārīra Sthāna : | 6 Chapters |
| 3. Nidāna Sthāna : | 16 Chapters |
| 4. Cikitsā Sthāna : | 22 Chapters |
| 5. Kalpa Sthāna : | 6 Chapters |
| 6. Uttara Tantra : | 40 Chapters |
| <hr/> | |
| | 120 Chapters |

In the literature of Ayurveda, four persons were seen by name Vāgbhaṭa as under:

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. Vṛddha Vāgbhaṭa | : Author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha. |
| 2. Madhya Vāgbhata | : Known through the commentary
‘Ratnaprabhā’ of Niścalakara. |
| 3. Laghu Vāgbhaṭa | : Author of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya. |
| 4. Rasa Vāgbhaṭa | : Author of Rasaratna Samuccaya. |

Vāgbhaṭa's Geneological Tree
(Varṇa Vṛkṣa)



By seeing the geneological tree of Vāgbhaṭa, it can be observed that the father of Vṛddha Vāgbhaṭa is Siṁha Gupta and the son of Vṛddha Vāgbhaṭa is also Siṁha Gupta which shows the Indian tradition of naming the forefathers name to the grandsons.

Māngalācaraṇa:

रागादिरोगान् सततानुषक्तानशेषकायप्रसृतानशेषान् ।
औत्सुक्यमोहारतिदाङ्गधान योऽपूर्ववैद्याय नमोऽस्तु तस्मै ॥१॥

In Indian tradition there is a strong belief that for successful completion of any work taken up by them should be preceded by offering prayers to their beloved deity. Similarly Vāgbhaṭa also after praying his favorite God only, started writing the text entitled, Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya.

Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa believed that God is the unique physician who is potential in eliminating all sorts of psychosomatic disorders such as passion, greed, lust, jealousy, anxiety, delusion, dissatisfaction, fever, diarrhoea etc. from this universe and bows his head to that supreme power and prayed that the ongoing work should not get any obstacles.

Reasons for Writing the Text : Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Due to the short span of life in the present era, it is not possible for the human beings to study the various texts of Ayurvedic literature in detail. So, Vāgbhaṭa thought that the acuteness of necessity of the summarized text book which caters the medical needs of the humanity. That may be the reason to compile all the eight branches of Ayurveda from the Ayurvedic texts like Caraka Saṁhitā, Suśruta Saṁhitā etc. and arranged the subject matter in a systematic way and presented the comprised, full-fledged Ayurvedic text named Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya to the universe.

All the available texts of Ayurveda have been taken into consideration by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa and compiled the essence of eight branches of Ayurveda and presented in the form of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, which is neither too abridged nor too elaborated.

अथात आयुष्कामीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

Atha + atah means afterwards-after praying the God, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter named Āyuṣkāmīyam (Quest for Long Life), thus said Ātreyya and other great sages.

Āyuṣkāmīya means Āyuḥ kāmebhyaḥ hitaḥ. This chapter is intended to those persons, who desire to have a long life.

Both the words ‘aum’ and ‘atha’ did come out from the throat of the creator of universe, Lord Brahmā initially. So, there is a strong belief that these two words are auspicious. That may be the reason to start the text, Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya by Vāgbhaṭa with the word ‘atha’.

Definition of āyu:

शरीरेन्द्रियसत्त्वात्मसंयोगे धारि जीवितम् । नित्यगशानुबन्धश्च पर्यायैरायुरुच्यते ॥ (C.S.Sū. 1:41)

Life is nothing but the combination of the body, sense organs, mind and soul. As long as these four are combined together life exists.

Dhāri, jīvitam, nityagam and *anubandham* are the synonyms of life.

Dhāri: ‘धारयति शरीरमिति धारि’—the one that prevents the body from decay.

Jīvitam: ‘जीवयति प्राणान् इति जीवीतम्’—which keeps alive.

Nityagam: ‘नित्यं गच्छति (शरीरस्य क्षणिकत्वेनेति) नित्यगः’—which serves as permanent substratum of this body.

Anubandham: ‘अनुबन्धाति (शरीराणि परम्परया जन्मेभेदेनेति) अनुबन्धः’— which transmigrates from one body to another.

Definition of Ayurveda:

‘आयुरनेन वेति इत्यायुर्वेदः ।’ (Śabdakalpadruma)

Āyuranena vetti iti Ayurvedah— ‘āyu’ means life, ‘vetti’ means science or knowledge.

The science of life or knowledge of life is known as Ayurveda.

Purpose of Ayurveda

According to Indian Philosophers’ view human beings are superior to any other living beings and there are certain aims and objectives for human beings. viz. *dharma, artha, kāma* and *mokṣa*.

Dharma: *Dharma* is nothing but to determine the paths of life correctly and what ought to do and what should not be done and also renounce the deeds which are harmful to others.

Artha: *Artha* means money. Money is definitely essential for human life, but money is not the only essential thing. Earn money, but not at the cost of others. Select the right path, to earn money and one should not eager to earn.

Kāma: *Kāma* means desire. One should renounce the unlawful desires and fulfil the psychosomatic desires by selecting the right path only .

Mokṣa: The ultimate aim of the human beings is to attain *mokṣa*. He, who follows the instructions of the Indian philosophers, will definitely attain liberation.

आयुः कामयमानेन धर्मार्थसुखसाधनम् । आयुर्वेदोपदेशेषु विधेयः परमादरः ॥२॥

To achieve these four aims and objectives of human life, healthy and long life is essential. Ayurveda teaches us how to lead a healthy, happy and long life. Hence the persons who desire to achieve the goals of human life should have faith in the teachings of Ayurveda.

Ayurvedāvataranā (Origin of Ayurveda):

ब्रह्मा स्मृत्वाऽयुषो वेदं प्रज्ञापतिमज्ज्रहत् । सोऽश्विनौ तौ सहस्राक्षं सोऽत्रिपुत्रादिकान्मुनीन् ॥३॥
तेऽग्निवेशादिकांस्ते तु पृथक् तन्त्राणि तेनिरे । तेभ्योऽतिविप्रकीर्णेभ्यः प्रायः सारतरोच्चयः ॥४॥
क्रियतेऽष्टाङ्गहृदयं नातिसङ्घेपविस्तरम् ।

The Hindūs believe the Science of Medicine to be of divine origin. According to this tradition Brahmā the creator of the universe having known the immortal and eternal science of Ayurveda in full, taught it to Dakṣa Prajāpati and Dakṣa taught to Aświns, the vedic Gods of medicine who inturn taught to Indra.

All schools of Ayurveda agree with the divine geneology upto Indra, but give different versions regarding the transmission of the science among the mortals.

When diseases began troubling the human beings and causing obstacles for the acquisition of *puruṣārthas* (i.e. *dharma*, *artha*, *kāma* and *mokṣa*) sages like Dhanvantari, Bhāradwāja, Nimi, Kaśyapa and others went to Indra and prayed for the mankind to get relief from different psychosomatic disorders. Then Indra pleased and taught *Aṣṭāṅga* (eight branches) Ayurveda to the sages.

Aṣṭāṅga Ayurveda (Eight Branches of Ayurveda):

कायबालग्रहोद्धर्वाङ्गशल्यदण्डाजरावृत्तान् ॥५॥
अष्टावङ्गानि तस्याहुश्चिकित्सा येषु संत्रिता ।

1. *Kāya-cikitsā* (General Medicine)
2. *Bāla-cikitsā/Kaumārabhṛtya* (Pediatrics)
3. *Graha-cikitsā/Bhūta-vidyā* (Demonology)
4. *Ūrdhvāṅga/Sālākya-cikitsā* (E. N. T. & Ophthalmology)
5. *Śalya-cikitsā* (Surgery)
6. *Daiñstrā-cikitsā/Agada tantra* (Toxicology)
7. *Jarā/Rasāyana* (Geriatrics)
8. *Vṛṣa/Vājikaraṇa* (Aphrodisiacs)

The management of diseases depends upon these eight branches i.e. *Aṣṭāṅga Ayurveda*.

The sages having learnt the science and exchanged views among them and taught to their disciples like Agniveśa, Bhela, Jatukarṇa etc. They inturn wrote treatises and became popular in their names like Agniveśa Samhitā, Bhela Samhitā etc.

In this way Ayurveda transmitted from the creator of the universe to the mortals.



Vṛṣa/Vājikaraṇa



Kāya-cikitsā



Bāla-cikitsā



Jarā

Aṣṭāṅga Āyurveda



Graha-cikitsā



Damṣṭrā-cikitsā



Śalya-cikitsā



Ūrdhvāṅga

Preceptors of Ayurveda

BRAHMĀ



DAKṢA PRAJĀPATI



AŚWINS



INDRA

(Acc. to Caraka)

Bhāradvāja



Ātreya Punaravasu



Agniveśa

Bhela

Parāśara

Hārīta

Kṣārapāṇi etc.

(Acc. to Suśruta)

Divodāsa

Dhanvantari

Suśruta

Aupadhenava

Pauṣkalāvata

Karavīrya

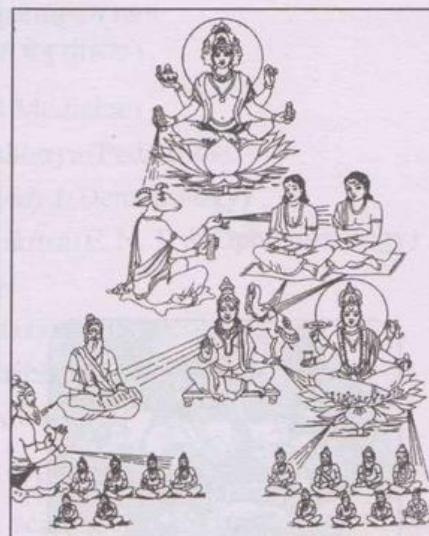
Gopura Rakṣita etc.

(Acc. to Kāśyapa)

Kāśyapa



Vaśiṣṭha, Atri & Bhṛgu

Their sons
and disciples.**Description of doṣas:**

वायुः पित्तं कफश्चेति त्रयो दोषाः समासतः ॥१६॥
विकृताऽविकृता देहं घन्ति ते वर्तयन्ति च ।

Briefly saying, *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* are the three *doṣas* (functional units or biological forces) which are existing in the body. These three *doṣas* keeps the body in the healthy condition when they are in the equilibrium state, and causes diseases in the vitiated state.

Notes :

These three *doṣas* have been divided into 3 types as:

1. *Vṛddhi* (increased state)
2. *Kṣaya* (decreased state)
3. *Sāmya* (balanced or equilibrium state)

Both *vṛddhi* and *kṣaya* have been further classified as mild, moderate and severe:

- | | | | | | |
|----------------------|---|--------------------------|---------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>Vṛddhi</i> | : | <i>Alpa</i> (mild) | 4. <i>Kṣīṇa</i> | : | <i>Alpa</i> (mild) |
| 2. <i>Vṛddhitara</i> | : | <i>Madhya</i> (moderate) | 5. <i>Kṣīṇatara</i> | : | <i>Madhya</i> (moderate) |
| 3. <i>Vṛddhitama</i> | : | <i>Utkṛṣṭa</i> (severe) | 6. <i>Kṣīṇatama</i> | : | <i>Utkṛṣṭa</i> (severe) |

Briefly saying there are three *doṣas* only. That means on an elaboration, more than three must be there.

Basing on the site and functions of these *doṣas*, they have been further classified as:

Five types of *vāta* : *Prāṇa*, *udāna*, *vyāna*, *samāna* and *apāna*.

Five types of *pitta* : *Pācaka*, *rañjaka*, *sādhaka*, *ālocaka bhrājaka*.

Five types of *kapha* : *Kledaka*, *avalambaka*, *bodhaka*, *tarpaka* and *śleṣaka*.

This classification has been made only for the practical convenience. Some *ācāryas* categorised the *rakta* as the 4th *doṣa* basing on the following reasons:

1. *Sthāna* (site/place) : *Yakṛt*, *plihā* (liver & spleen).
2. *Lakṣana* (qualities) : *Padmalaktuka sannibham̄ indragopa-pratikasam*. (Color of blood resembles lotus flower, lac and the insect *indragopa*).
3. *Kriyā* (function) : Supporting life and nourishing the body.
4. *Vikāra* (diseases) : *Visarpa*, *plihā*.
5. *Cikitsā* (treatment) : *Sirā-vedhana* (venesection).

By the above reasons blood may be grouped under *doṣas*. But it is not correct because as per the definition of *doṣa*—‘*rakta*’ is not vitiating any other *dhātus*, but itself is being vitiated by the three *doṣas*. So, *rakta* cannot be called as *doṣa*. Hence the *doṣas* existing in the body are three only.

Site of *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*:

ते व्यापिनोऽपि हृत्राभ्योरधोमध्योर्धर्वसंश्रयाः ॥७॥

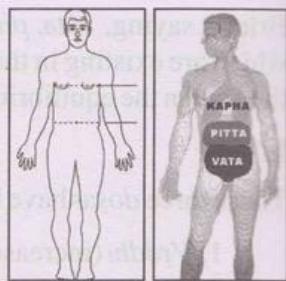
Though the three *doṣas*—*vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* spreads all over the body, they are found predominantly in the following places:

- Vāta* : Below the naval region.
Pitta : In between the heart & umbilicus.
Kapha : Above the heart region.

Relationship between the dosas and the age, day, night and diet:

वयोऽहोरात्रिभुक्तानां तेऽन्तमध्यादिगः क्रमात् ।

Vāta, *pitta* and *kapha* are predominantly present in the last, middle and first stages of age, day, night and diet respectively.



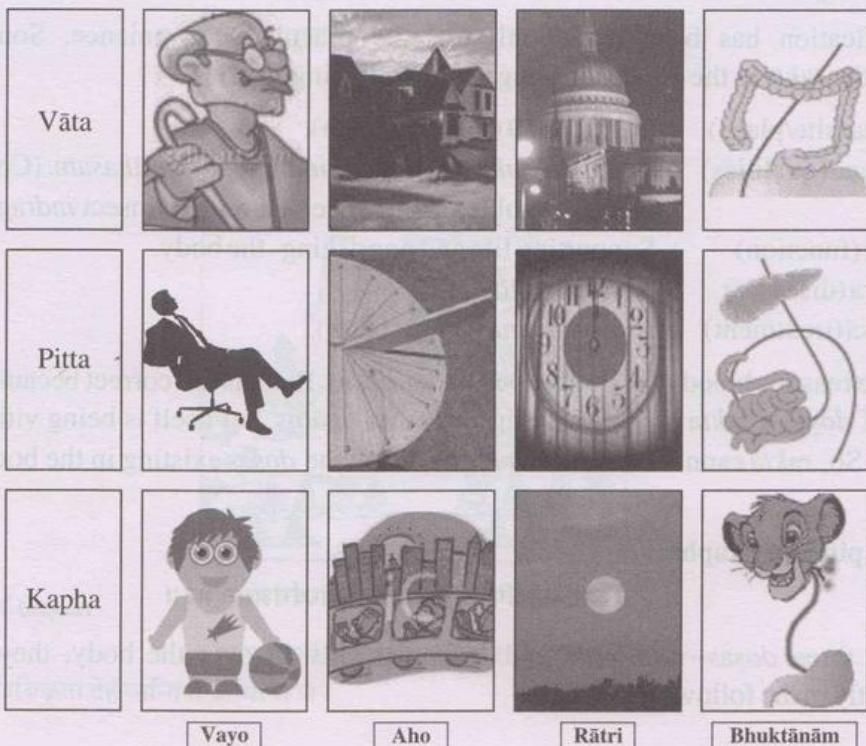
That means —

Vāta is predominantly present in the:

1. Last stage of the age : Old age
2. Last stage of the day : Evening hours
3. Last stage of the night : Ending hours of the night
4. Last stage of the diet : End of digestion.

Pitta is predominantly present in the:

1. Middle stage of the age : Middle age
2. Middle stage of the day : Midday
3. Middle stage of the night : Midnight
4. Middle stage of the diet : During the process of digestion.



Similary *kapha* is predominant in the:

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. First stage of the age | : | Childhood |
| 2. First stage of the day | : | Morning hours |
| 3. First stage of the night | : | Starting of night hours |
| 4. First stage of the diet | : | Beginning of the digestion. |

Relationship between agni (power of digestion) & doṣas:

तैर्भवेद्विषमस्तीक्ष्णो मन्दश्चापिनः समैः समः ॥८॥

Basing on the dominancy of *tridoṣas* power of digestion has been classified as under:

Due to the predominance of—

1. *Vāta* causes *viśamāgni* : Unsteady or erratic digestive activity.
2. *Pitta* causes *tīkṣṇāgni* : Increased digestive activity.
3. *Kapha* causes *mandāgni* : Decreased digestive activity.
4. *Tridoṣas* causes *samāgni* : Normal digestive activity.

Influence of doṣas on koṣṭha (Bowels):

कोष्ठः क्रूरो मृदुमध्यो मध्यः स्यात्तैः समैरपि ।

Bowels also having the direct relationship with the dominancy of *doṣas*.

Due to the:

1. *Vāta* dominancy : *Krūra koṣṭha* (hard bowels)
2. *Pitta* dominancy : *Mṛudu koṣṭha* (soft bowels)
3. *Kapha* dominancy : *Madhyama koṣṭha* (moderate bowels).

In the equilibrium state also *madhyama koṣṭha* (moderate bowels) will be seen.

Deha prakṛti (Body constitution):

शुक्रतर्वस्थैर्जन्मादौ विषेणेव विषक्रिमे: ॥९॥
तैश्च तिस्रः प्रकृतयो हीनमध्योत्तमाः पृथक् ।

The constitution of the body will be formed at the time of the union of spermatozoa and the ovum, due to the dominancy of the *doṣa* having at that time, just as the poisonous worms developed from the poisonous material. The constitution of the body is of 7 types according to the combination of *doṣas*.

Due to the dominancy of single *doṣa*:

1. *Vāta prakṛti* : *Hina* (poor)
2. *Pitta prakṛti* : *Madhyama* (moderate)
3. *Kapha prakṛti* : *Uttama* (good).

समधातुः समस्तासु श्रेष्ठा, निन्द्या द्विदोषजा: ॥१०॥



Due to the combination any of the 2 *doṣas*:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------|
| 4. <i>Vāta-pitta</i> | } | <i>Nindya</i> (bad) |
| 5. <i>Vāta-kapha</i> | | |
| 6. <i>Pitta-kapha</i> | | |

Due to the combination of 3 *doṣas*:

7. *Vāta, pitta and kapha* : *Śreṣṭha*(best)

Attributes of tridoṣas:

तत्र रुक्षो लघुः शीतः खरः सूक्ष्मश्वलोऽनिलः ।
पित्तं सस्नेहतीक्षणोष्णं लघु विस्तं सरं द्रवम् ॥1 1॥
स्निग्धः शीतो गुरुमन्दः श्लक्षणो मृत्स्नः स्थिरः कफः ।

In general *vāta* consists the following 6 qualities where as *pitta* and *kapha* are having the 7 qualities as under:

Qualities of *vāta*:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Rukṣha guṇa</i> (dryness) | 4. <i>Khara guṇa</i> (roughness) |
| 2. <i>Laghu guṇa</i> (lightness) | 5. <i>Sūksma guṇa</i> (minuteness) |
| 3. <i>Śīta guṇa</i> (coldness) | 6. <i>Calā guṇa</i> (mobility) |

Qualities of *pitta*:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Sneha</i> (unctuousness) | 5. <i>Visra gandha</i> (putrefied smell) |
| 2. <i>Tikṣṇa</i> (sharpness) | 6. <i>Sara</i> (mobile) |
| 3. <i>Uṣṇa</i> (hot) | 7. <i>Drava</i> (liquid) |
| 4. <i>Laghu</i> (light) | |

Qualities of *kapha*:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Snigdha</i> (unctuousness) | 5. <i>Ślakṣṇa</i> (smoothness) |
| 2. <i>Śīta</i> (cold) | 6. <i>Mṛtsna</i> (shining) |
| 3. <i>Guru</i> (heaviness) | 7. <i>Stira</i> (immobile) |
| 4. <i>Manda</i> (dull) | |

Definition of samsarga & sannipāta:

संसर्गः सन्त्रिपातश्च तद्द्वित्रिक्षयकोपतः ॥1 2॥

The vitiation of any of the two *doṣas* i.e. either *vṛddhi* or *kṣaya* can be called as *samsarga* and the vitiation of all the 3 *doṣas* can be termed as *sannipāta*.

Notes:

Such combinations are 6 and 10 depending upon the decrease and increase of the *doṣas* as under.

Six types of samsargaja:

- Increased one *doṣa* and decreased the other one/balanced state.

2. One *doṣa* in the balanced state and the other in the increased state.
3. Both the *doṣas* are in the increased state.
4. Both are in the decreased state.
5. Both are in the moderately increased state.
6. One *doṣa* decreased and the other is in the increased state.

Ten types of sannipātaka combinations:

1. One *doṣa* is in the increased and the other two are moderately increased.
2. One *doṣa* is in the increased and the other two are in the decreased state.
3. One *doṣa* is in the moderate state and the other two are in the decreased state.
4. Two *doṣas* are in the increased state and other one is in the moderate state.
5. Two *doṣas* are in the moderate state and the other one is in the decreased state.
6. Two *doṣas* are in the increased state and the other one is in the decreased state.
7. All the three *doṣas* are in the increased state.
8. All the three *doṣas* are in the moderate state.
9. All the three *doṣas* are in the decreased state.
10. One *doṣa* is in the increased state, the second *doṣa* is in the moderate state and the third *doṣa* is in the decreased state.

Description of dhātus and malas:

रसासृङ्गमांसमेदोऽस्थिमज्जशुक्राणि धातवः । सप्त दूष्या-

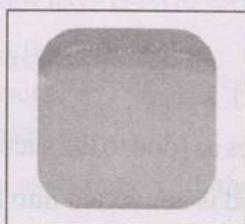
After that *sapta dhātus* (seven tissues) and *trimalas* (three waste products) and their functions have been discussed as under.

Seven tissues of the body:

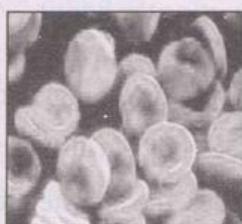
1. *Rasa dhātu* (plasma)
2. *Rakta dhātu* (blood)
3. *Māṁsa dhātu* (muscle tissue)
4. *Medo dhātu* (fatty tissue)
5. *Asthi dhātu* (bony tissue)
6. *Majjā dhātu* (bone marrow)
7. *Śukra dhātu* (semen, reproductive elements).

Three malas:

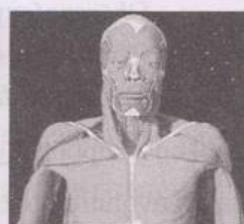
-मला मूत्रशकृत्स्वेदादयोऽपि च ॥1 3 ॥



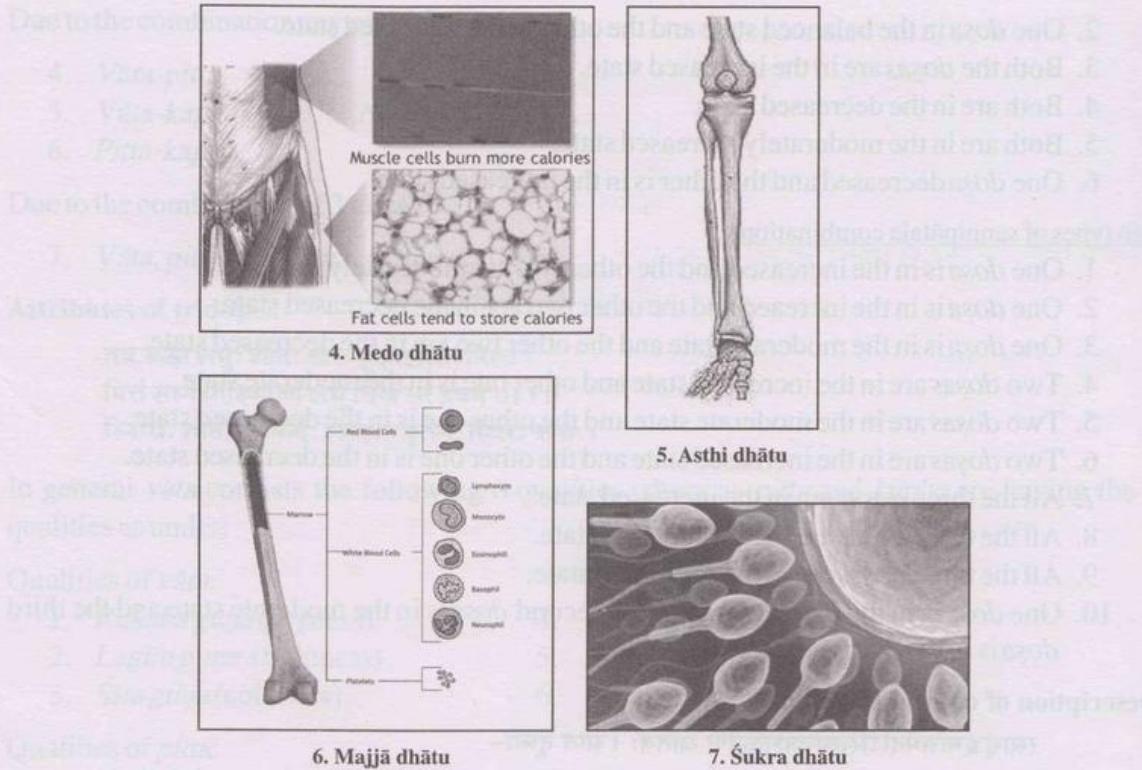
1. *Rasa dhātu*



2. *Rakta dhātu*



3. *Māṁsa dhātu*

1. *Mūtra*(urine)2. *Sakṛit*(faeces)3. *Sveda*(sweat).

Dhātus are so named because they support the body all through the life and they gets vitiated by the three *doṣas* and are called as *dūṣyas*.

Malas also gets vitiated by the three *doṣas*, so that they are also included under the category of *dūṣyas*.

Notes:

Functions of the seven tissues:

1. *Rasa dhātu* : *Prīṇana* (satisfaction to the mind and nourishing)
2. *Rakta dhātu* : *Jīvana* (supporting life)
3. *Māṁsa dhātu* : *Lepa* (covering the body)
4. *Medo dhātu* : *Sneha* (lubrication/oleation)
5. *Asthi dhātu* : *Dhāraṇa* (supporting the body)
6. *Majjā dhātu* : *Pūraṇa* (filling the bone cavities)
7. *Śukra dhātu* : *Garbhotpādana* (getting pregnancy).

These tissues are not only supporting the body but also serves as food to the succeeding tissues.

During the process of evolution of tissues, the ingested food is converted into *rasa dhātu* after the completion of the process of digestion.

Then *rasa dhātu* divides into 3 parts as under:

- First part helps for the construction of the own tissue.
- Second part will be useful for the nourishment of the succeeding tissue i. e. blood.
- The third part becomes the waste product.

Similarly all the tissues are divided into 3 parts and the second part will be useful for the nourishment of the succeeding tissues.

In this way the preceding tissues produces food for the succeeding ones.

Vṛddhi and kṣaya:

वृद्धिः समानैः सर्वेषां विपरीतैर्विपर्ययः ।

Due to the ingestion of the food having similar qualities *vṛddhi* (increase) will be taken place in the body and *kṣaya* (decrease) will be seen while taking the opposite qualities of food substances.

Notes:

Both *vṛddhi* (increase) and *kṣaya* (decrease) are of 3 kinds according to *dravya* (substance), *guṇa* (qualities) and *karma* (function).

1. *Dravya sāmānya* : Intake of mutton increases the muscle tissue due to the similar substances.
2. *Guṇa sāmānya* : Sweet and heavy substances increases *kapha doṣa* due to the similar qualities.
3. *Karma sāmānya* : Exercise increases *vāta doṣa* by similar action.
4. *Dravya viśeṣa* : Intake of food prepared by wheat decreases muscle tissue.
5. *Guṇa viśeṣa* : *Kṣāra* (alkalines) decreases *kapha doṣa*.
6. *Karma viśeṣa* : Excessive exercises leads *kapha-kṣaya*.

Rasa:

रसः स्वादुम्लवणतिक्तोषणकषायकाः ॥१४॥

षड् द्रव्यमाश्रितास्ते च यथापूर्वं बलावहाः ।

Rasa is nothing but the taste which is being perceived by the tongue.

In Ayurveda 6 tastes have been described as under:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Madhura rasa</i> (sweet) | 4. <i>Tikta rasa</i> (bitter) |
| 2. <i>Amla rasa</i> (sour) | 5. <i>Ūṣāṇa/Kaṭu rasa</i> (pungent) |
| 3. <i>Lavapa rasa</i> (salt) | 6. <i>Kaṣāya rasa</i> (astringent). |

These 6 tastes are associated with the substances and having more strength in their preceding order.

Influence of rasas over doṣas:

तत्राद्या मारुतं घन्ति त्रयस्तिक्तादयः कफम् ॥१५॥

कषायतिक्तमधुरा: पित्तमन्ये तु कुर्वते ।

The first mentioned three tastes of the above i.e. *madhura*, *amla*, *lavaṇa* rasas mitigates *vāta* and increases *kapha doṣa*. While the rest of the three tastes *tikta rasa*, *ūṣaṇa rasa*, *kaṣāya rasa* mitigates *kapha* and increases *vāta doṣa*. *Kaṣāya*, *tikta*, *madhura* rasas mitigate *pitta* and *katu*, *amla*, *lavaṇa* rasas increase *pitta doṣa*.

Vātahara & kapha-vardhaka rasas	Vāta-vardhaka & kaphahara rasas	Pittahara rasas	Pitta-vardhaka rasas
<i>Madhura</i>	<i>Tikta</i>	<i>Kaṣāya</i>	<i>Katu</i>
<i>Amla</i>	<i>Katu</i>	<i>Tikta</i>	<i>Amla</i>
<i>Lavaṇa</i>	<i>Kaṣāya</i>	<i>Madhura</i>	<i>Lavaṇa</i>

Rasa	Relationship with Pañcamahābhūtas	Doṣahara	Doṣa-vardhaka
1. <i>Madhura</i>	<i>Pr̥thivī + ap</i>	<i>Vāta, pitta</i>	<i>Kapha</i>
2. <i>Amla</i>	<i>Pr̥thivī + agni</i>	<i>Vāta</i>	<i>Pitta, kapha</i>
3. <i>Lavaṇa</i>	<i>Ap + agni</i>	<i>Vāta</i>	<i>Pitta, kapha</i>
4. <i>Tikta</i>	<i>Ākāśa + vāyu</i>	<i>Kapha, pitta</i>	<i>Vāta</i>
5. <i>Katu</i>	<i>Agni + vāyu</i>	<i>Kapha</i>	<i>Vāta, pitta</i>
6. <i>Kaṣāya</i>	<i>Pr̥thivī + vāyu</i>	<i>Kapha, pitta</i>	<i>Vāta</i>

Three types of dravyas:

शमनं कोपनं स्वस्थहितं द्रव्यमिति त्रिधा ॥१६॥

The above-mentioned tastes are associated with the substances. Those substances are of 3 kinds viz.,

1. *Śamana dravyas* : Alleviates *doṣas*
2. *Kopana dravyas* : Vitiates *dhātus*
3. *Swastha-hita* : Which maintains the normalcy.

Eg. Drugs having sweet in taste, unctuous & heaviness in qualities reduces the vitiated *vāta* due to the opposite qualities.

Gṛhita reduces *pitta* due to *madhura rasa* & other *guṇas*.

Similary, honey reduces *kapha* due to the astringent taste and dryness.

The combination of milk and fish increases the *doṣas* due to the incompatibility.

The food items, which are taking regularly i.e. barley, wheat, *śāli* rice, milk etc., are suitable for the maintenance of the positive health.

Virya:

उष्णशीतगुणोत्कर्षात्तत्र वीर्यं द्विधा स्मृतम् ।

Vīrya means potency which exists in a substance. Basing on the dominancy of the qualities of a substance 2 types of *vīrya* has been described as—1. *uṣṇa vīrya* (hot in potency), 2. *sīta vīrya* (cold in potency).

Vipāka:

त्रिधा विपाको द्रव्यस्य स्वाद्वास्तकटुकात्मकः ॥1 7॥

After the completion of the process of digestion, all the substances (either *aushadha dravyas* or *āhāra dravyas*) will be converted into one of the 3 tastes viz., sweet, sour or pungent. The process of transformation is called as *vipāka*.

Madhura, lavaṇa rasa dravyas will be converted into *madhura vipāka*.

Amla rasa dravyas will be converted into *amla vipāka*.

Where as *kaṭu, tikta, kaṣāya rasa dravyas* will be converted into *kaṭu vipāka*, after the completion of the digestion.

Guṇa:

In total 41 *guṇas* (qualities) have been enumerated in Ayurveda as under:

<i>Artha(5)</i>	: Objects of sense organs—
<i>(indriyārtha)</i>	[<i>śabda</i> (sound), <i>sparṣa</i> (touch), <i>rūpa</i> (vision), <i>rasa</i> (taste) and <i>gandha</i> (smell)]
<i>Gurvādi*</i> (20)	: <i>Dravya guṇa</i> or <i>dwandwa guṇa</i>
<i>Ātma gunas</i> (6)	: <i>Buddhi</i> (intellect), <i>sukha</i> (happiness), <i>duḥkha</i> (misery), <i>icchā</i> (desire), <i>dveṣa</i> (hatred) and <i>prayatna</i> (efforts).
<i>Parādi guṇa</i> (10)	: <i>Para</i> (predominance), <i>apara</i> (subordination), <i>yukti</i> (propriety) <i>saṅkhyā</i> (number), <i>samyoγa</i> (combination), <i>vibhāga</i> (division), <i>pṛthaktwa</i> (separation), <i>parimāṇa</i> (measurement), <i>saṁskāra</i> (transformation) and <i>abhyāsa</i> (repetition).

Gurvādiguṇa:

गुरुमन्दहिमस्तिर्गदश्लक्षणसान्द्रमृदुस्थिराः । गुणाः ससूक्ष्मविशदा विंशतिः सविपर्याः ॥1 8॥

* The above 20 *gurvādi guṇas* are also called as *dravya gunas*. The respective opposites of these *guṇas* are as follows:

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Guru</i> (heaviness) | x | <i>Laghu</i> (lightness) |
| 2. <i>Manda</i> (dullness) | x | <i>Tikṣṇa</i> (sharpness) |
| 3. <i>Hima/Sīta</i> (cold) | x | <i>Uṣṇa</i> (hot) |

4. <i>Snigdha</i> (unctuousness)	x <i>Rūkṣa</i> (dryness)
5. <i>Ślakṣṇa</i> (smooth)	x <i>Khara</i> (rough)
6. <i>Sāndra</i> (solid)	x <i>Drava</i> (liquid)
7. <i>Mṛdu</i> (soft)	x <i>Kathina</i> (hard)
8. <i>Sthira</i> (immobile)	x <i>Sara</i> (mobile)
9. <i>Sūkṣma</i> (minute)	x <i>Sthūla</i> (bulk)
10. <i>Viśada</i> (clarity/non sliminess)	x <i>Picchila</i> (slimness)

Along with the above 20 qualities some drugs contain *vyavāyī* and *vikāsī guṇas* also.

Vyavāyī: Which spreads all over the body initially and undergoes digestion later.

Vikāsī: Which harms the tissues of the body and causes loosening of the joints.

Some ācāryas quoted that *vyavāyī* and *vikāsī dravya* are those, which consists *sara* (mobile) and *tikṣṇa* (sharpness) *guṇas* respectively.

Hetu (Causative factors for diseases):

कालार्थकर्मणं योगो हीनमिथ्यातिमात्रकः । सम्यग्योगश्च विज्ञेयो रोगारोग्यैककारणम् ॥1 9॥

The present verse represents an exposition of causative factors responsible for the production of all most all diseases pertaining to the body and mind.

The 3-fold causes are:

- Insufficient utilisation (*hīna yoga*),
- Wrong utilisation (*mithyā yoga*) and
- Excessive utilisation (*atiyoga*)

of time (*kāla*), objects of the sense organs (*indriyārthas*) and the activities of the body, mind and speech (*karma*).

Where as the proper utilisation (*samyak yoga*) of the above factors results in healthy state.

Notes:

Triskandhas:

Ayurveda is based on *tri-skandhas* viz.,

- *Hetu skandha*(causative factors/aetiology)
- *Litiṅga skandha*(signs and symptoms/symptomatology)
- *Aushadha skandha*(drugs/treatment/knowledge of therapeutics).

Hetu skandha:

1. *Kāla*(time) : *Parināma*
2. *Artha* : *Asātmyendriyārtha samyoga*
3. *Karma* : *Prajñāparādhā*.

Hetu skandha	Linga skandha	Auśadha skandha
<u>Asātmendriyārtha saṃyoga:</u> <i>Hīna yoga, mithyā yoga, ati yoga.</i>	<i>Pūrvva rūpa, rūpa, upaśaya, anupaśaya, samprāpti.</i>	<i>Doṣa śamana, kopana, swasta-hita.</i>
<u>Prajñāparādha:</u> <i>Hīna yoga, mithyā yoga, ati yoga.</i>		
<u>Parināma:</u> <i>Jarā(aging), kṣut(hunger), pipāsā(thirst).</i>		

Due to the above causative factors *doṣas* gets vitiated and various signs and symptoms will be formed as shown in *linga skandha*. By selecting the appropriate drugs from *auśadha skandha*, which brings the vitiated *doṣas* to the normalcy, is one of the aims and objectives of Ayurveda.

Kāla (Time):

Hīnayoga : Heat in summer, cold in winter is decreased than the normal condition.

Mithyā yoga : Cold in summer, and heat in winter.

Ati yoga : More heat in summer and more cold in winter than the normal climatic condition.

Artha/Indriyārtha (Objects of sense organs):

Hīnayoga : Insufficient utilisation of sense organs.

Śabda—hearing very low sound/not hearing any sound.

Śparśa—not touching anything.

Rūpa—seeing objects in dimlight.

Rasa—not tasting.

Gandha—not smelling.

Mithyā yoga : Seeing unnatural objects.

Hearing harsh, unpleasant sounds.

Smelling unpleasant, putrefying smells.

Tasting undesirable. Contact of hard, dirty and harmful things.

Ati yoga : Seeing very bright objects.

Hearing very loud sounds.

Smelling powerful pungent smells.

Eating large quantities of substances.

Touching too much cold and hot substances.

Karma (Activities of body, mind and speech):

Hīnayoga: Not doing any activity or doing very little of it physically, mentally or vocally.

Mithyāyoga: Doing unusual activities like suppression of natural urges, falling from great height etc.

Atiyoga: Indulging in activities more than usual like excessive exercises, coitus, riding, talking, thinking etc.

Disease-health:

रोगस्तु दोषवैषम्यं दोषसाम्यमरोगता ।

Disease is nothing but the vitiation of the *doṣas* and their equilibrium state can be termed as health.

Classification of disease according to origin:

निजागन्तुविभागेन तत्र रोगा द्विधा स्मृता: ॥२०॥

According to the origin, diseases can be classified into 2 groups as under:

1. *Nija rogas* (endogenous)
2. *Āgantuja rogas* (exogenous).

Nija rogas: In *nija rogas*, due to the irregular diet, dietetics and activities, *doṣas* gets vitiated at first and then signs and symptoms of the disease condition will be seen.

Āgantuja roga: Where as in *āgantuja rogas* due to *ābhigṛhāta* (accident) signs and symptoms of the disease will be seen first and then followed the vitiation of the *doṣas*.

Receptacles of diseases:

तेषां कायमनोभेदादधिष्ठानमपि द्विधा ।

Both the body and the mind are the receptacles of the diseases.

रजस्तमश्च मनसो द्वौ च दोषावुदाहृतौ ॥२१॥

Sattva, rajas and *tamas* are the qualities of *manas* (mind) and can be called as *maha guṇas*. Out of the *triguṇas*, *sattva guṇa* being good, is conducive to health, but *rajas* and *tamas* are considered as the two *doṣas* of the mind causes the psychological disorders.

Rogi-roga parikṣā:

दर्शनस्पर्शनप्रश्नैः परीक्षेत च रोगिणम् ।

Patient is to be examined by the following methods:

1. *Darśana parikṣā* (inspection),
2. *Sparśana parikṣā* (palpitation),
3. *Praśna parikṣā* (interrogation).

रोगं निदानप्रागूपलक्षणोपशयाप्तिभिः ॥२ २ ॥

And the diseases can be diagnosed with the help of *Nidāna pañcaka*.

1. *Nidāna* (causative factors)

2. *Prāg/Pūrva rūpa* (prodromal symptoms)

3. *Lakṣaṇa/Rūpa* (signs and symptoms)

4. *Upaśaya/Anupaśaya* (therapeutic test)

5. *Samprapti* (pathogenesis)

Types of deśa and their relationship with doṣas:

भूमिदेहप्रभेदेन देशमाहरिह द्विधा । जाङ्गलं वातभूयिष्ठमनूपं तु कफोल्बणम् ॥२ ३ ॥

साधारणं सममलं त्रिधा भूदेशमादिशेत् ।

Here *deśa* denotes two meanings viz.

1. *Bhūmi* (region)

2. *Deha* (human body)

Jāngala deśa, *ānūpa* and *sādhāraṇa* are of 3 types of regions.

In *jāngala deśa vāta doṣa* is predominantly present and in *ānūpa deśa kapha doṣa* is predominant. Whereas in *sādhāraṇa deśa* normalcy of *doṣas* will be seen.

Types of kāla:

क्षणादिव्याध्यवस्था च कालो भेषजयोगकृत् ॥२ ४ ॥

Kāla (time) is divided into two kinds:

1. *Kṣaṇādi kāla* (moment, second, minute, hour, etc.)

2. *Vyādhyāvasthā kāla* (6 stages of the disease i.e. *satkriyā kālas*).

Types of therapies:

शोधनं शमनं चेति समासादौषधं द्विधा ।

Briefly saying the therapies are of 2 types as:

1. *Śodhana* (elimination therapy)

2. *Śamana* (palliative measures)

Śodhana: Bringing normalcy of *doṣas* by eliminating the vitiated *doṣas* from the body with the help of the five therapeutic procedures (*Pañcakarmas*) can be called as *śodhana* therapy.

Śamana: To bring normalcy without eliminating the vitiated *doṣas* and simply by adopting the palliative measures can be termed as *śamana* therapy.

Out of these two types of treatments *śodhana* therapy is superior to *śamana* therapy. Because *doṣas* do at times gets aggravated by adopting palliative measures but there is no chance of relapsation by treating the vitiated *doṣas* with *śodhana* therapy.

General line of treatment for psychosomatic disorders:

शरीरजानं दोषाणां क्रमेण परमौषधम् ॥२ ५ ॥
बस्तिविरेको वमनं तथा तैलं घृतं मधु ।

This verse represents an exposition of the general line of treatment for *śārīraka* and *mānasika* *doṣas*.

The best line of treatment for *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* is *vasti* (medicated enemata), *vireka* (purgation therapy) and *vamana* (emesis) and the best drugs of choice is *taila* (sesame oil), *ghṛta* (ghee) and *madhu* (honey) respectively.

Doṣa	Best śodhana therapy	Best śamana drug
1. <i>Vāta</i>	<i>Vastikarma</i>	<i>Taila</i>
2. <i>Pitta</i>	<i>Vireka</i>	<i>Ghṛta</i>
3. <i>Kapha</i>	<i>Vamana</i>	<i>Madhu</i>

धीर्धैर्यात्मादिविज्ञानं मनोदोषौषधं परम् ॥२ ६ ॥

Dhī (discrimination), *dhairyā* (courage) and *ātmādi vijñāna* (spiritual teachings) are the best medicines for psychological disorders (or) *mānasika doṣas*.

Pāda catuṣṭaya (Four limbs of treatment):

भिषग्द्रव्याण्युपस्थाता रोगी पादचतुष्टयम् । चिकित्सितस्य निर्दिष्टं, प्रत्येकं तच्चतुर्गुणम् ॥२ ७ ॥

The four limbs of treatment are:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Bhiṣak</i> (the physician) | 3. <i>Upasthātā</i> (the attendant) |
| 2. <i>Dravya</i> (the drug) | 4. <i>Rogī</i> (the patient) |

Each one has four qualities and these 4 limbs are responsible for the cure of diseases.

Qualities of an ideal physician:

दक्षस्तीर्थात्तशास्त्रार्थो दृष्टकर्मा शुचिर्भिषक् ।

- * Possessing the professional efficiency.
- * Having sound knowledge in theory.
- * Vast experience in the practical aspects, and
- * Having sanctity or purity in the acts of mind, body and speech are the four qualities of the physician.



Qualities of an ideal drug:

बहुकल्पं बहुगुणं सम्पन्नं योग्यमौषधम् ॥२ ८ ॥

Bahukalpam: Drug should be useful to formulate various pharmaceutical preparations like *swarasa* (fresh juice of leaves), *kalka* (paste), *cūrṇa* (powder), *kwātha* (decoction) etc. according to the choice of the patient and the need of the hour.



Bahuguṇam: Drug also should contain highest number of qualities (*gurvadi gunas*). So that the same drug can be utilised in a number of disease conditions by altering *anupāna*.

Sampannam: Drugs should be potent and free from infection and moisture.

Yogym: And also suitable to the patient and diseases according to the region and season.

Qualities of an ideal attendant:

अनुरक्तः शुचिर्दक्षो बुद्धिमान् परिचारकः ।

Anurakta (Affection): Attendant should have utmost affection and service motto towards the patient.

Suci (Purity): Purity or sanctity in all aspects means physical as well as psychological. Attendant should have the devotion and dedication towards the profession and should not consider any evil thoughts.

Dakṣatā (Skill): Attendant must be perfectly trained and should have skill and the knowledge of nursing.

Buddhimān: And also must have intelligence.

Qualities of an ideal patient:

आढयो रोगी भिसगवश्यो ज्ञापकः सत्त्ववानपि ॥२९॥

Ādhya (Wealthy): Patient must be wealthy. Then only he is able to purchase the equipment and drugs required for the treatment.

Bhisagvaśya (Obedient to the physician): Patient must be obedient and should follow the instructions of the physician.

Jñāpaka (Memory): Patient should have memory to narrate the sequence of historical events pertaining to his ailments, which is essential for proper diagnosis and treatment.

Sattvawān (Strong will): *Sattva* means manas or mind. *Sattvawān* means having strong will power. Patients who are having strong will power can tolerate miserable situations also.

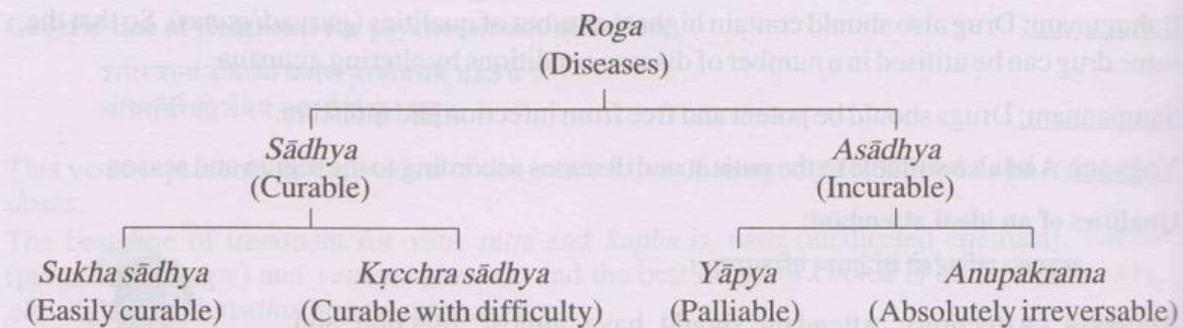
Though the remaining limbs are equipped with all qualities, it is useless, if the physician is inefficient. But if the physician is efficient, he can manage the treatment even though the other limbs are not equipped with their full qualities.

Hence the physician occupies the most important position among the four limbs of treatment by virtue of his knowledge, administrative position and by prescribing capacity.

Types of diseases:

(साध्योऽसाध्य इति व्याधिर्द्विधा, तौ तु पुनर्द्विधा । सुसाध्यः कृच्छ्रसाध्यश्च याप्यो यश्चानुपक्रमः ॥)





Diseases are of two types as curable and incurable.

Curable diseases are again classified into 2 types viz. easily curable and curable with difficulty.

Similary incurable diseases are also of 2 types viz. palliable and absolutely irreversible.

Factors influencing good prognosis:

सर्वोषधक्षमे देहे यूनः पुंसो जितात्मनः । अमर्मगोऽल्पहेत्वग्रस्तपर्सोऽनुपद्रवः ॥३०॥
अतुल्यदूष्यदेशर्तुप्रकृतिः पादसम्पदिः । ग्रहेष्वनुगुणेष्वेकदोषमार्गो नवः सुखः ॥३१॥

- * Body is capable of withstanding all types of treatments.
- * If the patient is young and male.
- * Having control over sense organs.
- * Not striking the vital organs.
- * Causes, premonitory symptoms, other signs and symptoms are mild and devoid of complications.
- * *Doṣa*, *dūṣya*, *deśa*, *kāla* and *prakṛti* are all dissimilar.
- * Fourfold therapeutic measures are available along with beneficial planetary constellations.
- * Only one *doṣa* is involved in the pathogenesis of the diseases and manifested in one path way.
- * Recent onset etc. are the factors influencing the good prognosis.

Factors responsible for bad prognosis:

शस्त्रादिसाधनः कृच्छ्रः सङ्क्लरे च ततो गदः ।

- * Diseases which require more than one difficult methods of treatment like medicine, surgery, applications of alkalines and cauterization.
- * Long duration (chronicity).
- * Having incurable symptoms.

Palliable diseases:

शेषत्वादायुषो याप्यः पथ्याभ्यासाद्विपर्यये ॥३२॥

- * *Yāpya roga* are possessing opposite features of easily curable diseases.
- * In this condition, the individual is surviving only due to the length of his life still exists and also taking wholesome diet regularly.

Notes:

- * The patient survives and gets relief for a certain period by following the wholesome regimen and may flare up with even a slightest unwholesome regimen.
- * Death is certain in this state but to drag on the time, suitable drugs and food will be given just as the ruined house supported by the pillars.

Factors determining the incurability of diseases:

अनुपक्रम एव स्यात्स्थितोऽत्यन्तविपर्यये । औत्सुक्यमोहारतिकृद् दृष्टरिष्टोऽक्षनाशनः ॥३ ३ ॥

- * Possessing entire opposite characters of easily curable diseases.
- * Causing complications like excitement, restlessness and unconsciousness.
- * Bad prognostic signs and affect of sense organs will be seen.
- * In which all treatments fail so as to be rejected.

Varjaniya roga lakṣaṇa (Signs of diseases to be rejected for treatment):

Diseases having—

- * Exact opposite qualities of curable diseases.
- * Involved in vital tissues and organs.
- * Anxiety, confusion, absence of pleasure.
- * Exhibited fatal signs.
- * Lost sensory organ normal functions etc. should not be treated because they are sure to cause death.

Varjaniya rogi lakṣaṇa (Features of the patients to be discarded for treatment):

त्वजेदार्ता भिषग्भूपैद्विष्टं तेषां द्विषं द्विषम् । हीनोपकरणं व्यग्रमविधेयं गतायुषम् ॥३ ४ ॥
चण्डं शोकातुरं भीरुं कृतधनं वैद्यमानिनम् ।

Patients—

- * Who hates as well as hated by the physician and the king.
- * Who are not having sufficient equipment and instruments for proper treatment.
- * Who are busily engaged with other activities and not paid attention towards treatment.
- * Who are disobedient towards physician.
- * Having short span of life.
- * Who are violent, grief, fearful, ungrateful and who feels himself, as a doctor and not following the instructions given by the physician etc. should not be treated.

Adhyāya-saṅgraha:

तन्त्रस्यास्य परं चातो वक्ष्यते ऽध्यायसङ्ग्रहः ॥३ ५ ॥

For easy understanding the treatise, chapters pertaining to the text Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya is enumerated here as under:

Śūtra Sthāna (30 Chapters):

आयुष्कामदिनत्वहिरोगानुत्पादनद्रवाः । अन्नज्ञानान्नसंरक्षामात्राद्रव्यरसाश्रयाः ॥३ ६ ॥

दोषादिज्ञानतद्वेदतच्चकित्साद्वयुपक्रमा:। शुद्ध्यादिस्नेहनस्वेदरेकास्थापननावनम् ॥३ ७ ॥
 धूमगण्डुषद्वक्षेकतृपियन्त्रकशस्त्रकम् । शिराविधि: शल्यविधि: शस्त्रक्षाराग्निकर्मिकौ ॥३ ८ ॥
 सूत्रस्थानमिमेऽध्यायालिङ्गत-

1. Āyuṣkāmīya, 2. Dinacaryā, 3. Rtucaryā, 4. Rogānutpādanīya, 5. Drava-dravya vijñānīya,
6. Anna-swarūpa vijñānīya, 7. Annarakṣā vidhi, 8. Mātrāśitīya, 9. Dravyādi vijñānīya, 10. Rasabhedīya,
11. Doṣādi vijñānīya, 12. Doṣabhedīya, 13. Doṣopakramaṇīya, 14. Dwividhopakramaṇīya,
15. Śodhanādi-gaṇa saṅgrahaṇīya, 16. Sneha vidhi, 17. Sweda vidhi,
18. Vamana-virecana vidhi, 19. Vasti vidhi, 20. Nasya vidhi, 21. Dhūmapāna vidhi, 22. Gandūṣa vidhi,
23. Āścotana-añjana vidhi, 24. Tarpaṇa-putapāka vidhi, 25. Yantra vidhi, 26. Śastra vidhi,
27. Sirāvyadha vidhi, 28. Śalyāharaṇa vidhi, 29. Śastrakarma vidhi, 30. Kṣarāgnikarma vidhi.

Śārīra Sthāna (6 Chapters):

-शारीर शारीर मुच्यते । गर्भावक्रान्तितद्व्यापदङ्गमर्मविभागिकम् ॥३ ९ ॥
 विकृतिरूपतं घटं-

1. Garbhāvkrāntīya, 2. Garbha-vyāpad, 3. Aṅgavibhāga, 4. Marmavibhāga, 5. Vikṛti vijñānīya, 6. Dūtādi vijñānīya.

Nidāna Sthāna (16 Chapters):

-निदानं सार्वरोगिकम् । ज्वरासृक्श्वासयक्षमादिमदाद्यर्शोऽतिसारिणाम् ॥४ ० ॥
 मूत्राधातप्रमेहाणां विद्रध्याद्युदरस्य च । पाण्डुकुष्ठानिलार्तानां वातास्त्रस्य च घोडश ॥४ १ ॥

1. Sarvaroga nidāna, 2. Jwara nidāna, 3. Raktapitta nidāna, 4. Śwāsa nidāna, 5. Rājayakṣmādi nidāna, 6. Madātyaya nidāna, 7. Arśa nidāna, 8. Atisāra nidāna, 9. Mūtrāghāta nidāna, 10. Prameha nidāna, 11. Vidradhi nidāna, 12. U dara nidāna, 13. Pāṇḍu nidāna, 14. Kuṣṭha nidāna, 15. Vāta-vyādhī nidāna, 16. Vātaśoṇita nidāna.

Cikitsā Sthāna (22 Chapters):

चिकित्सितं ज्वरे रक्ते कासे श्वासे च यक्ष्मणि । वर्मौ मदात्ययेऽर्शःसु, विशि द्वौ, द्वौ च मूत्रिते ॥४ २ ॥
 विद्रधौ गुल्मजठरपाण्डुशोफविसर्पिषु । कुष्ठश्वित्रानिलव्याधिवातास्त्रेषु चिकित्सितम् ॥४ ३ ॥
 द्वाविंशतिरिमेऽध्यायाः-

1. Jwara cikitsā, 2. Rakta-pitta cikitsā, 3. Kāsa cikitsā, 4. Śwāsa cikitsā, 5. Rājayakṣmā cikitsā,
6. Chardi cikitsā, 7. Madātyaya cikitsā, 8. Arśa cikitsā, 9. Atisāra-roga cikitsā, 10. Grahanīroga cikitsā, 11. Mūtrāghāta cikitsā, 12. Prameha cikitsā, 13. Vidradhi cikitsā, 14. Gulmaroga cikitsā, 15. Udararoga cikitsā, 16. Pāṇḍu cikitsā, 17. Śopha cikitsā, 18. Visrapa cikitsā, 19. Kuṣṭharoga cikitsā, 20. Świtraroga cikitsā, 21. Vātavyadhi cikitsā, 22. Vātaśoṇita cikitsā.

Kalpa-Siddhi Sthāna (6 Chapters):

-कल्पसिद्धिरतः परम् । कल्पो वर्मेविरिकस्य तत्सिद्धिर्बस्तिकल्पना ॥४ ४ ॥
 सिद्धिर्बस्त्यापदां घटो द्रव्यकल्पः-

1. Vamana kalpa, 2. Virecana kalpa, 3. Vamana-virecana vyāpat-siddhi, 4. Vasti kalpa, 5. Vasti-vyāpat siddhi, 6. Dravya kalpa.

Uttara Tantra (40 Chapters):

—अत उत्तरम् । बालोपचारे तदव्याधौ तदग्रहे, द्वौ च भूतगे ॥४५॥
 उन्मादेऽथ स्मृतिश्चंशे, द्वौ द्वौ वर्तमसु सन्धिषु । इक्तमोलिङ्गनाशेषु त्रयो, द्वौ द्वौ च सर्वंगे ॥४६॥
 कर्णनासामुखशिरोवरणे, भङ्गे भगन्दरे । ग्रन्थ्यादौ क्षुद्ररोगेषु गुह्यरोगे पृथग्द्वयम् ॥४७॥
 विषे भुजङ्गे कीटेषु मूषकेषु रसायने । चत्वारिंशोऽनपत्यानामध्यायो बीजपोषणः ॥४८॥

1. *Bālopacāraṇīya*, 2. *Bālāmaya pratiṣedha*, 3. *Bālagraha pratiṣedha*, 4. *Bhūta vijñānīya*, 5. *Bhūta pratiṣedha*, 6. *Unmāda pratiṣedha*, 7. *Apasmāra pratiṣedha* 8. *Vartmaroga vijñānīya*, 9. *Vartmaroga pratiṣedha*, 10. *Sandhisitāsita-roga vijñānīya*, 11. *Sandhisitāsita-roga pratiṣedha*, 12. *Dṛṣṭiroga vijñānīya*, 13. *Timira pratiṣedha*, 14. *Linganāśa pratisedha*, 15. *Sarvākṣiroga vijñānīya*, 16. *Sarvākṣiroga pratiṣedha*, 17. *Karṇaroga vijñānīya*, 18. *Karṇaroga pratiṣedha*, 19. *Nāsāroga vijñānīya*, 20. *Nāsāroga pratiṣedha*, 21. *Mukharoga vijñānīya*, 22. *Mukharoga pratiṣedha*, 23. *Śiroroga vijñānīya*, 24. *Śiroroga pratiṣedha*, 25. *Vraṇa vijñānīya*, 26. *Sadyovraṇa pratiṣedha*, 27. *Bhaṅga pratiṣedha*, 28. *Bhagandara pratiṣedha*, 29. *Granthi*, arbuda, ślīpada, apacī, nādī vijñānīya, 30. *Granthi*, arbuda, ślīpada, apacī, nādī pratiṣedha, 31. *Kṣudraroga vijñānīya*, 32. *Kṣudraroga pratiṣedha*, 33. *Guhyaroga vijñānīya*, 34. *Guhyaroga pratiṣedha*, 35. *Viṣa pratiṣedha*, 36. *Sarpaviṣa pratiṣedha*, 37. *Kīṭa-lūtādi viṣa pratiṣedha*, 38. *Mūṣika-alarka viṣa pratiṣedha*, 39. *Rasāyana vidhi*, 40. *Vājikaraṇa (Bijaposaṇa) vidhi*.

इत्यध्यायशतं विंशं षड्भिः स्थानैरुदीरितम् ॥

In this way Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya consists 120 chapters and is divided into six sections viz. Sūtra Sthāna, Śārīra Sthāna, Nidāna Sthāna, Cikitsā Sthāna, Kalpa-siddhi Sthāna and Uttara Tantra.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसंहगुप्तसनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने आयुष्कामीयो नाम प्रथमोऽध्यायः ॥१॥

Thus ends the first chapter entitled Āyuśkāmīya Adhyāya of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Sirinagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained constituents of the body *doṣas*, *dhātu*, *malas*; types of *doṣas*—śārīrika, *mānasika*, their places, general qualities, main functions of the *dhātus* and *malas* and also explained the equilibrium state of the constituents keeps the body in healthy condition and any disturbance leads to diseases; receptacles of the diseases—body & mind; types of diseases—*nija*, *āgantuja*—their treatment with similar and dissimilar; qualities of drugs—*rasa* (6), *guṇa* (20), *vīrya* (2), *vipāka* (3); examination of the patient with *darśana*, *sparśana* and *praśna*; types of treatment—śodhana and śamana, four limbs of treatment; classification of diseases—curable and incurable, discarded patients and the diseases for treatment, general line of treatment for psychosomatic diseases etc. have been discussed. At the end the sage has enumerated total number of sections and the chapters pertaining to Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā.

2 DINACARYĀ ADHYĀYA [Daily Regimen]



अथातो दिनचर्याध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After 'Āyuskāmīya Adhyāya', Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter named 'Dinacaryā' (Daily Regimen) thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Maintain the positive health in the healthy individuals and treating the diseased persons are the two main aims of Ayurveda. Keeping this in view Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa emphasized the importance of preventive aspect and allocated separate chapters like *Dinacaryā*, *Rtucaryā* etc.

Healthy person should have the equilibrium state of the three humors of the body, seven tissues, three waste products and the power of digestion along with pleasant mind, soul and sense organs.

Prātaḥkālotthāna (Wakeup time):

ब्राह्मे मुहूर्तं उत्तिष्ठेत् स्वस्थो रक्षार्थमायुषः ।

In order to protect his life, healthy person should get up from the bed in *brāhma muhūrta*.

Notes:

Basing on the above statement it is inferred that unhealthy or diseased person need not wakeup early in the morning and has to follow the instructions of the physician concerned. *Brāhma muhūrta* is the time, which is second half of the last *yama* (3 hours) of the night or early hours of the dawn i.e. approximately at about 4.24 A.M.

Aruṇadatta in his 'Sarvāṅgasundari' commentary on *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya* it is clearly stated as—

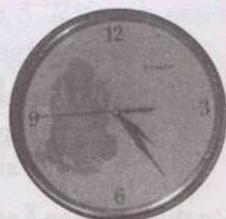
रात्रेश्वर्तुदशो मुहूर्ते ब्रह्मे मुहूर्तः ।

That means *brāhma muhūrta* is the 14th *muhūrta kāla* of the night. One *muhūrta* is equivalent to 48 minutes.

Whole night consists $15 \text{ muhūrtas} = 15 \times 48 = 720$ minutes.

Brāhma muhūrta is the time, which is after the completion of 13 *muhūrtas* in the night time i.e. $13 \times 48 = 624$ minutes.

$720 - 624 = 96$ minutes.



Brāhma muhūrta

Hence one has to getup from the bed early in the morning 96 minutes before sunrise i.e. at about 4.24 a.m.

It is the suitable time to study and obtain knowledge. It is also the time when all the three *doṣas* are in the equilibrium state.

Śauca vidhi (Cleansing):

शरीरचिन्तां निर्वर्त्य कृतशौचविधिस्ततः ॥1॥

After considering the condition of the body (such as food taken in the previous night has been fully digested or not etc.), one has to attend for the natural urges and clean the parts well.

Notes:

- * Healthy persons should eliminate the natural urges like faeces and urine etc. facing north in the morning hours and south in the night.
- * During defecation one should be silent, sit and cover the head with a cloth.
- * Avoid forceful expulsion.
- * Avoid defecating at dirty places, center of the road, heaps of ash, cowshed, burial ground, sacred places, in front of women and respectable persons, facing sun and moon etc.
- * But at times of fear and sick persons may void the excrements as they wish.
- * At the time of urge, one should not attend any other work.
- * Suppressing the natural urges leads vitiation of *vāta*, which in turn causes many a number of diseases.

Danta-dhāvana (Cleaning the teeth):

अर्कन्यग्रोधखदिकरञ्जककुभादिजम् । प्रातर्भुक्त्वा च मृद्घं कषायकटुतित्तकम् ॥2॥
कनीन्यग्रसमस्थौल्यं सुकूर्च द्वादशाङ्गुलम् । भक्षयेहन्तधवनं दन्तमांसान्यबाधयन् ॥3॥

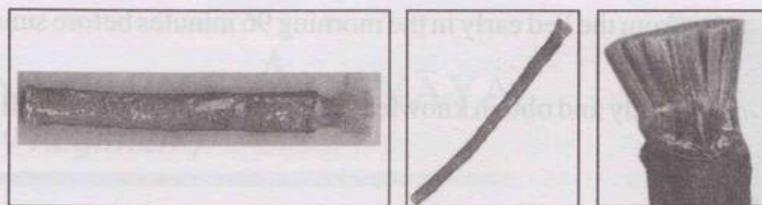
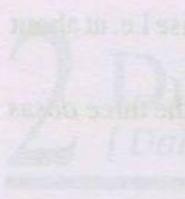
Twigs useful for cleaning of the teeth:

- * *Arka* (*Calotropis procera*)
- * *Nyagrodha* (*Ficus bengalensis*)
- * *Khadira* (*Acacia catechu*)
- * *Karañja* (*Pongamia pinnata*)
- * *Kakubha* (*Terminalia arjuna*) and other herbs such as—
- * *Karavīra* (red) (*Nerium indicum*)
- * *Sarja* (*Vateria indica*)
- * *Irimeda* (*Acacia farnesiana*)
- * *Apāmārga* (*Achyranthus aspera*)
- * *Mālatī* (*Jasminum grandiflorum*)

Features of twigs useful for brushing:

Twigs useful for brushing should have—

- * 12 inches of length with the circumference of a little finger.



- * Should be straight and devoid of nodes.
- * Collected from sacred places.
- * And also having *katu*, *tikta* and *kaṣāya rasas* (i.e. pungent, bitter and astringent tastes) are good for brushing.

How & when to brush?

- * One should brush the teeth early in the morning as well as immediately after having food without causing pain or injury to the gums.



Arka →



← Nyagrodha



Khadira →



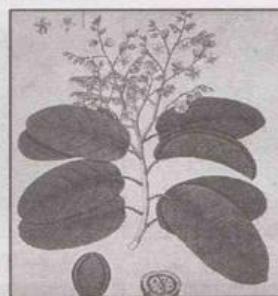
Karañja →



← Kakubha



Karavira →



← Sarja



Irimeda



Apāmārga



Mālati

Notes:

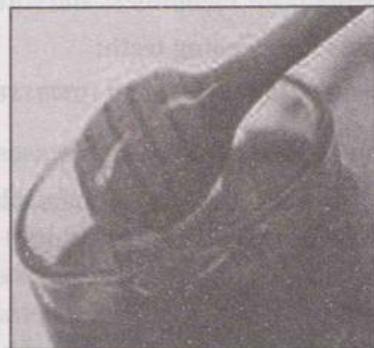
In Asṭāṅga Saṅgraha, the following procedure is given for brushing the tooth. viz. 'वाप्य त्रिवर्गं त्रितया.....' Vāpya means *kuṣṭha* (*Saussurea lappa*), trivarga, tritaya means three groups of 3-3 drugs viz:

1. *Trikaṭu* (*śunṭhī, marica, pippalī*)
2. *Triphalā* (*hariṭakī, āmalakī, vibhītakī*)
3. *Trijātaka* (*twak, elā, patrī*)

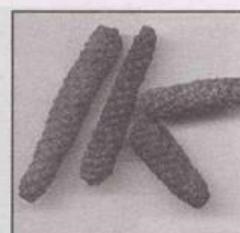
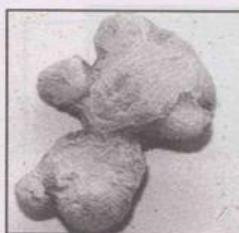
* Take the fine powders of the above drugs and prepare paste by mixing honey. Then use the paste for brushing the tooth with the help of twigs by rubbing without causing injury to the gums. The lower row of teeth should be brushed initially and then the upper row is to be followed.



Kuṣṭha



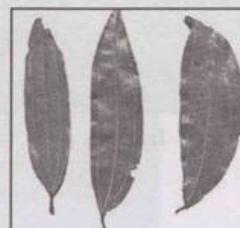
Madhu



← Trikaṭu →



← Triphalā →



← Trijātaka →

- * Twigs having sweet, sour and salt tastes should not be used for brushing.
- * Dry, hallow, putrefied twigs also should not be used.

Even though tongue scraping is not mentioned in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, it is clearly stated in Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, Caraka Saṁhitā and Suśruta Saṁhitā as under—

*After brushing teeth, scrape the tongue with the help of tongue cleaners, which should not be sharp edged and is curved, made of metals like gold, silver, copper etc.

Advantages of tongue scraping:

- * Removes the dirt of the tongue, bad taste and foul smell of tongue, mouth and teeth.
- * Produces better taste, cleanliness and softness of the mouth.

Contraindications for cleaning teeth:

नाद्यादजीर्णवमथुश्वासकासञ्चरादिति । तृष्णाऽस्यपाकहन्त्रेत्रशिरःकर्णामयी च तत् ॥४॥

Patients suffering with the following diseases are contra-indicated for cleaning teeth:

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| • Ajīrṇa (indigestion) | • Arditā (facial paralysis) |
| • Vamathu (vomitings) | • Trṣṇā (thirst) |
| • Śvāsa (dyspnoea) | • Asyapāka (stomatitis) |
| • Kāsa (cough) | • Hṛdaya, netra, śiro, karṇa roga
(diseases of heart, eyes, head and ears). |
| • Jwara (fever) | |

Añjana (Collyrium):

सौवीरमञ्जनं नित्यं हितमक्षणोस्ततो भजेत् ।

After *danta-dhāvana* daily use of *sauvīrāñjana* (Anatimony sulphide) as collyrium is excellent for protecting eyes.

Notes:Advantages of sauvīrāñjana:

- * Eyes become lovely and clean.
- * Able to see even minute objects.
- * All the three colored parts of the eyes will become well defined.
- * Eyelashes become smooth and firm.

चक्षुस्ते जो मयं तस्य विशेषात् श्लेष्मतो भयम् ॥५॥
योजयेत्सप्तरात्रेऽस्मात् स्नावणार्थं रसाञ्जनम् ।

- * As eyes are associated with *tejo* (*agni*) *mahābhūta* predominantly, continuous use of *sauvīrāñjana* provokes *kapha doṣa*.
- * Therefore *rasāñjana* (prepared from *darvī kvātha*-Berberis aristata) is to be applied once in a week to alleviate the vitiated *kapha* for keeping the vision clear.

ततो नावनगण्डूषधूमताम्बूलभागभवेत् ॥६॥

After *añjana vidhi*, *nāvana karma* (*nasya* or nasal administration), *gaṇḍūṣa* (mouth gargles), *dhūmapāna* (inhalation of medicated fumes) and *tāmbūla-sevana* (*pāna* chewing) are to be conducted.

Notes:Nasya (Nasal drops):

अणुतैलं ततो नस्यं ततो गण्डूषधारणम् ॥

After the use of collyrium application of nasal drops with *aṇu taila* and then gargling is advised.

Advantages of nasal drops:

घनोत्रतप्रसन्नत्वकस्त्रीवाऽस्यवक्षसः ।
सुगन्धिवदना: स्त्रिगन्धनिः स्वना विमलेन्द्रियाः ॥
निर्वलीपलितव्यज्ञा भवेयुर्नस्यशीलिनः ।



Añjana



Nasya

Regular use of *aṇutaila* as *pratimarsha nasya* (administering 2-2 drops in each nostril)—

- * Keeps the shoulders, neck and chest strong.
- * Voice becomes sweet.
- * Mouth becomes fresh and free from foul smell.
- * All the sense organs become clear and strengthy.

- * Skin becomes wrinkle free.
- * Hair never becomes grey.

Gandūṣa-kavala-dhāraṇa (Gargles):

- * Holding the liquid drugs in buccal cavity for a specific period without moving the drug is known as *gandūṣa*.
- * Whereas in *kavala dhāraṇa*, *kalka dravya* is used and it is allowed to move in the oral cavity for a specific period.

Both *gandūṣa* and *kavala* are of four types as under—



Gandūṣa

1. Snehīka gandūṣa: In which unctuous drugs will be used and is indicated for *vāta* disorders.
 2. Śamana gandūṣa: Drugs having sweet taste and cold are used and is indicated in *pitta* disorders.
 3. Śodhana gandūṣa: Pungent, sour, salt drugs will be used in *śodhana gandūṣa* and is indicated for *kapha* disorders.
 4. Ropana gandūṣa: Astringent, bitter and sweet drugs are used and it is indicated for *vranā ropanā*.
- * Mutton juice and gingly oil can be used for *gandūṣa* regularly.

Advantages of gargles:

- * Gives strength to the mandibular joints.
- * Voice will be cleared.
- * Gives strength to the mouth.
- * Dryness in the mouth and cracks in the lips are relieved.
- * Relieves toothache and strengthens the gums.
- * *Khadira*, *ksīrī vṛkṣa*, *irimeda* etc. are the drugs of choice for *kavala-dhāraṇa*.
- * Anorexia, foul smell of the mouth, salivation etc. will be relieved.
- * *Gandūṣa* with luke warm water will make the mouth clean and cheerful.

Duration of gandūṣa/kavala-dhāraṇa:

Gandūṣa and *kavala* should be done till the person gets watery discharge from the nose and eyes.

प्रायोगिकं ततो धूमं गन्धमाल्यादि चाचरेत् ।
धूमादस्योर्ध्वजत्रूत्या न स्युर्वातिकफामया: ॥

- * After nasal drops and gargles, inhalation of smoke (*prāyogika dhūma*), use of perfumes and garlands are advised.
- * By the use of *prāyogika dhūmapāna*, diseases pertaining to E. N. T. (ear, nose and throat) originated by *vāta* and *kapha* will be relieved.

अञ्जनोत्क्लेशितं नस्यैः कवलैनविनेरितम् ।
धूमेन कवलोत्क्लिष्टं क्रमाद्वातकं जयेत् ॥

Aggravated *kapha* due to *añjana* (collyrium) will be relieved by *nasya*.

And the increased *vāta* due to *nasya* can be over come by *kavala*.

Similarly aggravated *kapha* caused by the use *kavala* can be relieved by *prāyogika dhūmapāna*.

* Therefore after *añjana*; *nasya* is to be done then *kavala-graha* and at the end *prāyogika dhūmapāna* should be conducted in the specific order only.

Tāmbūla-sevana-niṣedha (Contra-indications for betel chewing):

ताम्बूलं क्षतिपित्तास्त्ररुक्तोक्तपित्तचक्षुषाम् । विषमूर्च्छामदार्तानामपथ्यं शोषणामपि ॥7॥

The following persons are contraindicated for *pāna* chewing—

- * *Kṣata* (*urahksata*/injury to the chest)
- * *Pittāsra* (*raktagrīva*/bleeding disorders)
- * *Rükṣa* (dryness in the body)
- * *Kupita cakṣu* (eye diseases)
- * *Viṣa duṣṭa* (poisonous conditions)
- * *Mūrcchā* (syncope/epilepsy)
- * *Madārta* (alcoholic intoxication)
- * *Śoṣa* (dryness of mouth and tuberculosis) etc.



Tāmbūla

Notes:

By chewing the tender betel leaves (*Piper betle*) along with betel nut (*Areca catechu*), *jātīphala* (*Myristica fragrans*), *lavaṅga* (*Syzygium aromaticum*), *karpūra* (*Cinnamomum camphora*), *kaṇikola* (*Piper cubeba*), *pudīnā* etc. keeps the mouth fresh, tasty and good smell.

Ideal combination:

Chewing of *pāna* by taking two betel leaves along with one betel nut, slaked lime and the extract of *khadira* is beneficial to the persons—after getting from sleep, having food, taking bath and after vomiting.

Abhyanga (Oil massage):

अभ्यङ्गमाचरेन्ति॑ं, स जराश्रमवातहा । दृष्टिप्रसादपुष्ट्यायुः स्वप्नसुत्वक्त्वदार्थ्यकृत् ॥8॥

शिरःश्रवणपादेषु तं विशेषेण शीलयेत् । वज्रेऽभ्यङ्गः कफग्रस्तकृतसंशुद्ध्यजीर्णिभिः ॥9॥

Conducting body massage on a regular basis will be beneficial. It:

- * Delays aging, relieves fatigue and mitigates *vāta*. Imparts good vision and promotes strength. Increases lifespan and relieves insomnia.
- * Bestows toughness as well as prettiness to the skin and body becomes strong.
- * Oil should be applied especially to the head (head massage), ears (ear drops) and foot (massage on the soles), along with the whole body.



Abhyanga

Contra indication:

Massage should not be conducted to:

- * The persons suffering with *kapha* disorders.
- * During the course of *sodhana* therapy.
- * And also in the state of indigestion.

Notes:

After the completion of the process of digestion of the food taken in the previous day, body massage should be conducted with the oils, which mitigate *vāta* and are perfumed and also suitable to seasons.

Such as *candanabalā lākṣādi taila*, *candanādi tailas* in summer and *agurvādi taila* in winter which are having *śīta* and *uṣṇa guṇas* respectively.

As the application of oil to the axis of the vehicle, animal skin and the pot becomes smooth and shiny; so also the human body becomes smooth and strong by the application of oil massage.

Vāta is predominantly present in the tactile sensory organ and is lodged in the skin. Massaging body with oil is good and hence it should be conducted regularly.

Advantages of head massage:

- * Relieves headache, baldness, graying and falling of hair.
- * Strengthens the sense organs.

Advantages of eardrops:

- * Prevents lock jaw.
- * Hardness of hearing and deafness.
- * Ache in the ears.

Advantages of foot massage:

- * Foot becomes strong.
- * Promotes sleep and vision.
- * Relieves numbness, stiffness, contractures and cracks on the soles.

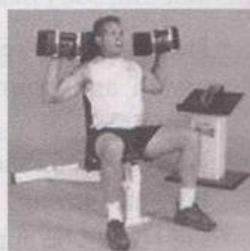
Vyāyāma (Exercise):

लाघवं कर्मसामर्थ्यं दीप्तोऽग्निर्मेदसः क्षयः । विभक्तघनगात्रत्वं व्यायामादुपजायते ॥१०॥

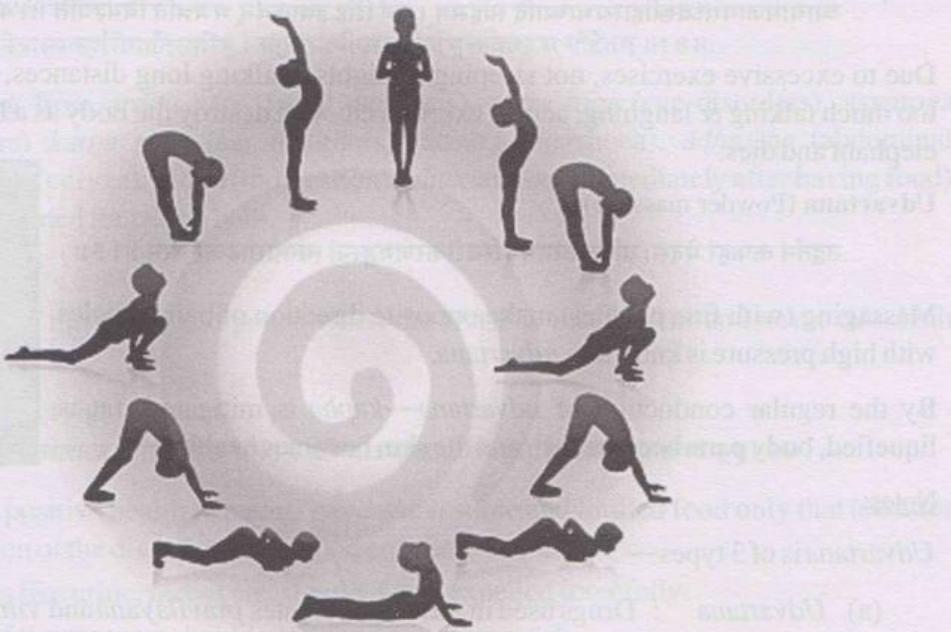
Activities, which produces tiredness to the body is known as *vyāyāma*.

Advantages of exercise:

- * Body becomes light.
- * Able to perform normal duties with enthusiasm.
- * Increases the power of digestion.
- * Reduces the fat and body parts become distinct and firm.



Vyāyāma



Sūrya Namaskāra
(Sun Salutation)

Contraindicated persons for doing exercise:

वातपित्तामयी बालो वृद्धोऽजीर्णी च तं त्यजेत् ।

* Patients suffering from *vāta* and *pitta* disorders.

* Children, aged persons and persons suffering from indigestion.

अर्धशक्त्या निषेव्यस्तु बलिभिः स्नाधभोजिभिः ॥१ १ ॥

शीतकाले वसन्ते च, मन्दमेव ततोऽन्यदा ।

Strong persons, those who are habituated to take unctuous food and in cold and spring seasons (*hemanta*, *śīśira* and *vasanta* ḥtu) do exercises to half of their capacity. Others and in other seasons (*grīṣma*, *varṣā* and *śarad* ḥtu) it should be done still less.

तं कृत्वाऽनुसुखं देहं मर्दयेच्च समन्ततः ॥१ २ ॥

After doing exercises, whole body should be gently massaged.

Disadvantages of excessive exercises:

तृष्णा क्षयः प्रतमको रक्तपित्तं श्रमः क्लमः । अतिव्यायामतः कासो ज्वरश्छर्दिश्च जायते ॥१ ३ ॥

Excessive exercises leads to the following complications like *trṣṇā* (thirst), *kṣaya* (emaciation), *pratamaka* (severe dyspnoea), *raktapitta* (haemorrhage), *śrama* (exhaustion), *klama* (tiredness), *kāsa* (cough), *jwara* (fever), *chardi* (vomitings) etc.

व्यायामजागराध्वस्त्रीहास्यभाष्यादि साहसम् । गजं सिंहं इवाकर्बन् भजन्नति विनश्यति ॥1 4॥

Due to excessive exercises, not sleeping in nights, walking long distances, excessive coitus, too much talking & laughing, acts of exertion etc. will destroy the body as a lion fights with an elephant and dies.

Udvartana (Powder massage):

उद्वर्तनं कफहरं मेदसः प्रविलायनम् । स्थिरीकरणमङ्गानं त्वक्प्रसादकरं परम् ॥1 5॥

Massaging (with fine powder) in the opposite direction of hair follicles with high pressure is known as *udvartana*.

By the regular conduction of *udvartana*—*kapha* is mitigated, fat is liquefied, body parts became firm and the skin becomes healthy.



Udvartana

Notes:

Udvartana is of 3 types—

- (a) *Udvartana* : Drugs used in *udvartana* creates *pravilayana* and *vimlāpana*.
- (b) *Udgharṣaṇa* : Here dry and rough drugs are used.
- (c) *Utsādana* : Unctuous pastes are used.

Uses: These help to dilate the channels and increase the power of *bhrājaka pitta* in the skin. So that the complexion is enhanced.

Utsādana is indicated to enhance the beauty of females.

Snāna (Bath):

दीपनं वृष्ट्यमायुष्यं स्नानमूर्जाबलप्रदम् । कण्डूमलश्रमस्वेदतन्नातृडाहपाप्मजित् ॥1 6॥

Advantages of bath:

- * Increases appetite. Heat exerting from the body through sweat pores is being obstructed and sends back to the original place and enhances the power of digestion.
- * Improves sexual vigor.
- * Enhances the life span.
- * Improves body strength.
- * Removes itching, dirt, exertion, sweat, fatigue, thirst, burning sensation etc.



Snāna

उष्णाम्बुनाऽधःकायस्य परिषेको बलावहः । तेनैव तूतमाङ्गस्य बलहक्षेशचक्षुषाम् ॥1 7॥

Normal bath with hot water gives strength to the body but head bath decreases the strength of the hair follicles and eyes. Hence head bath with hot water is contra-indicated.

Contraindication of bath:

स्नानमर्दितनेत्रास्यकर्णरोगातिसारिषु । आध्मानपीनसाजीर्णभुक्तवत्सु च गर्हितम् ॥1 8॥

Persons suffering from *ardita vāta* (facial paralysis), *netra roga* (eye disorders), *āsyaroga* (mouth disorders) *karṇa roga* (ear disorders), *atisāra* (diarrhoea), *ādhmāna* (abdominal distension), *pīnasa* (coryza), *ajīrṇa* (indigestion), *bhuktavastu* (immediately after having food) etc. are contraindicated for taking bath.

Notes:

Don't have bath in the rivers and ponds when the water is insufficient and never take bath nakedly.

Sadvṛtta (Regimen of right conduct):

जीर्णं हितं प्रितं चाद्यान्नं वेगानीरयेद्वलात् । न वेगितोऽन्यकार्यः स्यान्नाजित्वा साध्यमामयम् ॥1 9॥

- * To maintain positive health one must have wholesome and limited food only that too after the completion of the digestion of the food consumed earlier.
- * Natural urges like urine, faeces etc. should not be expelled forcefully.
- * At the time of the urge one should not attend any other work.
- * Initially treat the curable diseases.

सुखार्थाः सर्वभूतानां मताः सर्वाः प्रवृत्तयः । सुखं च न विना धर्मात्तस्माद्धर्मपरो भवेत् ॥2 0॥

All the activities of the human beings are meant for happiness only. Such happiness will not be happened without *dharma* (right moral conduct). Therefore one must always pursue right conduct.

भक्त्या कल्याणमित्राणि सेवेतेरदूरगः ।

Take care of the friends with a sense of devotion and good fortune and others (wicked persons) should be kept at a far distance.

Daśavidha pāpa (Ten sinful acts):

हिंसास्तेयान्यथाकामं पैशुन्यं परुषानृते ॥2 1॥

सम्भिन्नालापं व्यापादमभिध्यां दृग्विपर्ययम् । पापं कर्मेति दशधा कायवाङ्मानसैस्त्यजेत् ॥2 2॥

One should avoid the ten sinful acts (pertaining the mind, speech and body)—mentally, orally and physically.

Sinful acts of the body: 1. *Himsā* (cruelty), 2. *steya* (stealing), 3. *anyathā kāma* (unlawful sex).

Sinful acts of the speech: 4. *Paiśunya* (slander), 5. *paruṣa vacana* (abusive/harsh words), 6. *anyta vacana* (false) and 7. *sambhinna ālāpa* (dissention).

Sinful acts of the mind: 8. *Vyāpada* (hatredness), 9. *abhidhya* (jealousy) and 10. *drg viparyaya* (misunderstanding).

Regimen of right conduct:

अवृत्तिव्याधिशोकार्तननुवर्तेत शक्तिः ।

One must help the persons, those who are struggling for their livelihood, suffering from diseases and afflicted with sorrows according to one's own capacity. They are all to be looked upon with sympathy, consoled and helped.

आत्मवत्सततं पश्येदपि कीटपिणीलिकम् ॥2 3॥

Consider as ourselves even insects and ants. A compassionate attitude towards all the living beings is the hallmark of a civilized man.

अर्चयेदेवगोविप्रवृद्धवैद्यनृपातिथीन् ।

Pay homage to gods, cows, *brāhmins*, elders, *vaidyas*, kings and guests.

विमुखान्नार्थिनः कुर्यान्नावमन्येत नाक्षिपेत् ॥2 4॥

Never be indifferent to those approaching with real need or desires anything. Don't disappoint, disrespect or insult such persons who ever come to us with requests.

उपकारप्रधानः स्यादपकारपरेऽप्यरौ । सम्पद्विपत्स्वेकमना, हेतावीर्येत्कले न तु ॥2 5॥

One must be cooperative and helpful to others even to those who are non-cooperative and also to their enemies.

One must have same mental attitude during prosperous and disastrous state and should not be disturbed through the ups and downs of life. Be jealous towards the cause and not the result.

काले हितं मितं ब्रूयादविसंवादि पेशलम् ।

One must speak at appropriate time, with decent words and in brief, true and in a pleasing manner.

पूर्वभिभाषी, सुमुखः सुशीलः करुणामृदुः ॥2 6॥

नैकः सुखी, न सर्वत्र विश्रब्धो, न च शङ्कितः ।

One must take initiation in greeting friends, relatives or others. Greet every one with a pleasant, polite, kind and soft face. Share your joy with others. One should neither believe nor suspect every body.

न कञ्चिदात्मनः शत्रुं नात्मानं कस्यचिद्द्रिपुम् ॥2 7॥

प्रकाशयेन्नापमानं न च निःस्नेहतां प्रभोः ।

Don't reveal the enmity towards some one or some one's enmity towards you.

Don't reveal the insult inflicted upon you or your superior's dislike for you.

जनस्याशयमालक्ष्य यो यथा परितुष्टि ॥2 8॥

तं तथैवानुवर्तेत पराराधनपण्डितः ।

Be an expert in propitiating others by understanding the ideas of the people and pleasing by appropriate means.

न पीडयेदिन्द्रियाणि न चैतान्यति लालयेत् ॥२९॥

One should neither afflict the sense organs (eyes, ears etc.) too much nor let them remain inert.

त्रिवर्गशून्यं नारम्भं भजेतं चाविरोधयन् ।

All enterprises are to be pursued with any one of the three pursuits of life i.e *dharma*, *artha* and *kāma*. Pursue them without being mutually contradictory.

अनुयायात्प्रतिपदं सर्वधर्मेषु मध्यमाम् ॥३०॥

In all actions follow an inclination to be in the middle way. Keep away from over attachment and indifferences. One has to do his work with a sense of duty without ambition or hatred. Hence follow the middle way, which is always the safest way.

नीचरोमनखश्मश्रुर्निर्मलाङ्गमलायनः । स्नानशीलः सुसुरभिः सुवेषोऽनुल्बण्णोज्ज्वलः ॥३१॥

* One has to cut his hair, nails and beard at regular intervals.

* Clean the feet and all the orifices of waste products.

* Keep the habit of taking daily bath.

* Put on scents and good dress, which is bright and not gaudy.

धारयेत्सतं रत्नसिद्धमन्त्रमहौषधीः । सातपत्रपदत्राणो विचरेद्युगमात्रदृक् ॥३२॥

निशि चात्ययिके कार्ये दण्डी मौली सहायवान् ।

* One should always wear precious gems and amulets filled with potent and divine medicines.

* Wear chappals and umbrella while walking and observe in front of the path at least two meters of distance.

* Only in an emergency one must go outside during night hours that too by holding a stick in the hand, wrapping the head with a cloth along with an assistant.

चैत्यपूज्यधर्वजाशस्तच्छायाभरमतुषाशुचीन् ॥३३॥

नाकामेच्छकरालोष्टबलिस्नानभुवो न च ।

One should not pass through the shade of—

1. *Caitya* (trees considered to be the seats of *grahas*).
2. Persons to be worshipped.
3. Pillars of flagstaffs.
4. Unholy things.

One should not step on ash heaps, heaps of grain husks, dirt, gravels, stone heaps, place where sacrificial rituals (*bali*) are performed and places for bath.

नदीं तरेन्न बाहुभ्यां, नागिनस्कन्धमभिन्नजेत् ॥३४॥

सन्दिग्धनावं वृक्षं च नारोहेदुष्ट्यानवत् ।

One should not—

* Swim across rivers only with hands.

- * Approach burning fire heaps.
- * Board on a boat or climb on a tree whose strength is doubtful.
- * Ride on uncontrollable animals.

नासंवृतमुखः कुर्यात्क्षुतिहास्यविजृम्भणम् ॥३ ५ ॥

नासिकां न विकुण्ठीयान्नाकस्माद्विलिखेद्वयम् । नाड्धैश्वेषेत विगुणं, नासीतोत्कटकश्चिरम् ॥३ ६ ॥

- * One must cover the face while sneezing, laughing and yawning.
- * Don't dilate nostrils.
- * Don't scratch on earth without any purpose.
- * Don't perform any disorderly gestures with body parts.
- * Don't sit on a squatting position for a long time.

देहवाक्येतसां चेष्टा: प्राक् श्रमाद्विनिवर्तयेत् । नोर्धर्वजानुश्चिरं तिष्ठेत्-

One should withdraw all the activities of body, speech and mind before getting tired. Don't stand long with knees raised up.

-नक्तं सेवेत न द्रुमम् ॥३ ७ ॥
तथा चत्वरचैत्यान्तश्चतुष्पथसुरालयान् ।

Should not take shelter during night time—

- * Beneath the trees.
- * *Catwara* (junction of 3 ways where people assemble for recreation).
- * *Caitya* (trees considered to be seat of *grahas*).
- * *Catuspatha* (junction of four roads).
- * *Surālaya* (temples or bar).

सूनाटवीशून्यगृहशमशानानि दिवाऽपि न ॥३ ८ ॥

The following places not at all suitable to reside even daytime.

Sūna (slaughtering houses), *aṭavī* (forests), *śūnya gṛha* (ruined houses) and *śmaśāna* (grave-yards).

सर्वथेष्टेत नादित्यं, न भारं शिरसा वहेत् । नेक्षेत प्रततं सूक्ष्मं दीप्तामेध्याप्रियाणि च ॥३ ९ ॥

- * One should not look at the sun at any time.
- * Should not carry heavy loads on head.
- * Very minute objects, very bright objects, dirty and unpleasant things should not be seen constantly.

मद्यविक्रियसन्धानदानादानानि नाचरेत् ।

One should not trade, manufacture, supply or receive intoxicating alcohols.

पुरोवातातपरजस्तुषारपरुषानिलान् ॥४ ० ॥

अनृजुः क्षवथूद्वारकासस्वन्नान्नमैथुनम् । कूलच्छायां नृपद्विष्टं व्यालदंश्रिविषाणिनः ॥४ १ ॥

हीनानार्यातिनिपुणसेवां विग्रहमुत्तमैः । सन्ध्यास्वभ्यवहारक्षीस्वप्नाध्ययनचिन्तनम् ॥4 2॥
शत्रुसत्रगणाकीर्णगणिकापणिकाशनम् । गात्रवक्त्रनखैर्वद्यं हस्तकेशावधूननम् ॥4 3॥

- * One should avoid direct breeze, heat of the sun of the first part of the day, dust, mist and rough winds.
- * Sneezing, belching, coughing, sleeping, eating and mating should not perform with disordered body.
- * Avoid taking rest in the shade of the trees growing on the riverbanks.

तोयारिनपूज्यमध्येन यानं धूमं शवाश्रयम् । मद्यातिसक्तिं विश्रम्भस्वातन्त्र्ये स्त्रीषु च त्यजेत् ॥4 4॥

- * Avoid people, whom the king hates.
- * Avoid wild, poisonous and horned animals.
- * Avoid wicked, disgraceful, uncivilized, over smart persons.
- * Avoid taking meal, mating, sleeping, reading, thinking etc. during *sandhyā kāla* (dusk & dawn).
- * Avoid the food offered by enemies, served at sacrificial ceremony, offered by large group of donors, supplied by prostitutes and food sold in the market.
- * Avoid producing sound using body, mouth and nails.
- * Avoid shaking hands and hair.
- * Avoid moving in between two receptacles of water, fire and respectable persons.
- * Keep away from the fumes of the dead body, addicting alcohol.
- * Avoid in believing women and giving independence.

आचार्यः सर्वचेष्टासु लोक एव हि धीमतः । अनुकूर्यात्मेवातो लौकिकेऽर्थं परीक्षकः ॥4 5॥

For an intelligent person the whole world is a guide or a teacher. Therefore follow the world as an evaluator of the performance of the worldly affairs.

आर्द्रसन्तानता त्यागः कायवाक्यचेतसां दमः । स्वार्थबुद्धिः परार्थेषु पर्याप्तमिति सद्व्रतम् ॥4 6॥

Compassion towards all living beings; attitude for sacrificing for others; controlling the activities of body, words and mind and feeling of selfishness in the interests of others are sufficient for good conduct.

नक्तंदिनानि मे यान्ति कथम्भूतस्य सम्प्रति । दुःखभाङ्गं भवत्येवं नित्यं सन्त्रिहितस्मृतिः ॥4 7॥

He who daily bearing in mind what he is and how is spending the days is not affected by sorrow.

इत्याचारः समासेन, यं प्राप्नोति समाचरन् । आयुरारोग्यमैश्वर्यं यशो लोकांश्च शाश्वतान् ॥4 8॥

In this way rule of right conduct has been briefly discussed. One who adheres to the above rules will have long life, health, prosperity, fame and also the eternal world.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने दिनचर्या नाम द्वितीयोऽध्यायः ॥12॥

Thus ends the second chapter entitled *Dinacaryā Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

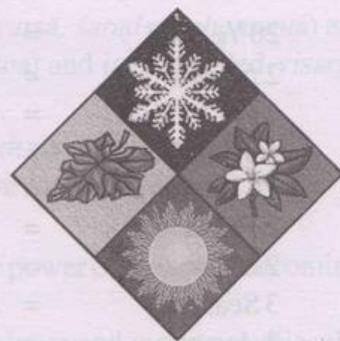
In the chapter *Dinacaryā*—Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the daily regimen of the individual (systematically) to maintain the positive health.

Time to get up from the bed, *śauca vidhi*; cleaning the teeth with different types of twigs, tongue cleaning—advantages, contraindicated, twigs for brushing; collyrium to prevent eye diseases; nasal drops for preventing E. N. T. disorders; gargling for oral cavity; and then explained inhalation of smoke; *pāna* chewing; advantages of different types of massages and contraindications, exercises; advantages and contraindications of bath; taking food; regimen of right conduct etc. are explained in detail.

*

3 RTUCARYĀ ADHYĀYA

[Seasonal Regimen]



अथात ऋतुचर्याध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After 'Dinacaryā Adhyāya' Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter 'Rtucaryā' (Seasonal Regimen), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Preamble:

In Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha Sūtrasthāna 4th chapter detailed description about *kāla* has been delineated as under:

Kāla (Time):

कालो हि नाम भगवाननादिनिधनो यथोपचितकर्मानुसारी यदनुरोधादित्यादयः खादयश्च महाभूतविशेषासतथा तथा विपरिणमन्तो जन्मवतां जन्ममरणस्यर्तुरसवीर्यदोषदेह-बलव्यापत्सम्पदां च कारणत्वं प्रत्ययतां प्रतिपद्यन्ते ।

- * *Kāla* is divinity and it has neither a beginning nor an end. Time follows the accumulated effect of actions of the past.
- * Basing on the time only, the movement of the sun, the moon and other planets and also the transformation of five basic elements take place.
- * It is also the causative factor for the birth and the death of all the creatures.
- * Similarly, the increase and decrease of the seasons, tastes and potency of the substances, strength of the *doṣas* and the body depends upon the time only.

Kāla-bheda (Division of time):

स मात्राकाष्ठाकलानाडिकामुहूर्त्यामाहोरात्रपक्षमासर्त्यनवर्षभेदेन द्वादशधा विभज्यते ।

Kāla is divided into the following 12 divisions:

1. <i>Mātrā</i>	4. <i>Nādikā</i>	7. <i>Ahorātra</i>	10. <i>Rtu</i>
2. <i>Kāsthā</i>	5. <i>Muhūrta</i>	8. <i>Pakṣa</i>	11. <i>Ayana</i>
3. <i>Kalā</i>	6. <i>Yāma</i>	9. <i>Māsa</i>	12. <i>Varṣa</i>

तत्राक्षिनिमेषो मात्रा । ता: पञ्चदश काष्ठा । ताखिंशत् कला । ता: सदशभागा विंशतिनाडिका । नाडिकाद्वयं मुहूर्तश्च । ते तुल्यगत्रिन्दिवे राशिभागे चत्वारः पादोना यामः । तैश्चतुर्भिरहोरात्रिश्च । पञ्चदशाहोरात्राः पक्षः । पक्षद्वयं मासः । स शुक्लान्तः ।

<i>Aksinimeṣa</i> (time taken for blinking the eyelid)	=	1 <i>Mātrā</i>
15 <i>Mātrā</i>	=	1 <i>Kāsthā</i>
30 <i>Kāsthā</i>	=	1 <i>Kalā</i>

$20 \frac{1}{10}$ Kalā	=	1 Nāḍikā
2 Nāḍikā	=	1 Muhūrta (48 minutes)
$3 \frac{3}{4}$ Muhūrta	=	1 Yāma (3 hours)
4 Yāma	=	1 Ahaḥ (day) or rātri (night)
15 Ahorātris	=	1 Pakṣa (fortnight)
2 Pakṣa	=	1 Māsa (month)
2 Māsa	=	1 Season (2 months)
3 Seasons	=	1 Ayana (6 months)
2 Ayana	=	1 Varṣa (one year)

Ṣadṛtus (Six seasons):

मासैर्द्विसङ्ग्यैर्मध्यादौः क्रमात् षट्वत्वः स्मृताः । शिशिरोऽथ वसन्तश्च ग्रीष्मो वर्षा शरद्विमाः ॥१॥
शिशिराद्यास्त्रिभिस्तैस्तु विद्यादयनमुत्तरम् । आदानं च, तदादत्ते नृणां प्रतिदिनं बलम् ॥२॥

The months starting with *māgha*, in combination of two, two succeeding months constitute the 6 seasons as *śiśira*, *vasanta*, *grīṣma*, *varṣā*, *śarad* and *hemanta* respectively.

Ādāna kāla — the three of them commencing with *śiśira* ṛtu (i. e. *śiśira*, *vasanta* and *grīṣma*) are characterised by the northern movement of the sun and is also called *uttarāyana* or *ādāna kāla*, because sun absorbs strength from living beings daily.

Notes:

Rtu (Seasons)	Māsa (Indian)	Month (Western)	Svarūpa (Features)	Rāśi (Zodiac signs)
Śiśira	<i>Māgha-phālguna</i>	Jan 22nd to Mar 21st	Cool in nature	Kumbha, mīna
Vasanta	<i>Caitra-vaiśākha</i>	Mar 22nd to May 21st	Flowering season	Mēṣa, vṛśabha
Grīṣma	<i>Jyeṣṭha-āṣāḍha</i>	May 22nd to July 21st	Heat is high	Mithuna, karkaṭaka
Varṣā	<i>Śrāvaṇa-bhādrapada</i>	July 22nd to Sept 21st	Rains are heavy	Siṁha, kanyā
Śarad	<i>Āśvayuja-kārtika</i>	Sept 22nd to Nov 21st	Moonlight	Tulā, vṛścika
Hemanta	<i>Mārgaśīrṣa-pūṣya</i>	Nov 22nd to Jan 21st	Snow falls	Dhanu, makara

Ādāna kāla:

तस्मिन् ह्यत्यर्थतीक्ष्णोष्णारुक्षा मार्गस्वभावतः । आदित्यपवनाः सौम्यान् क्षपयन्ति गुणान् भुवः ॥३॥
तिक्तः कषायः कटुको बलिनोऽत्र रसाः क्रमात् । तस्मादादानमाग्नेयम्-

- * Since the northward movement of the sun naturally increases the heat of the places it approaches, the cooling properties are weakened.
- * During this period the sun with his severe hot rays and the winds with their sharp velocity and dryness absorb the moisture from the earth.
- * Due to the progressive dryness in the atmosphere during the seasons of *śiśira*, *vasanta* and *grīṣma*, which enhances *tikta*, *kaṣāya* and *kaṭu rasas* respectively and results in the human beings become weak. Therefore *ādāna* (*āgneya*) is sweltering by nature.

Visarga kāla:

—ऋतवो दक्षिणायनम् ॥४॥
वर्षादयो विसर्गश्च—

The remaining three seasons commencing from *varṣā ṛtu* (i.e. *varṣā*, *śarad* and *hemanta*) are characterized by the southern movement of the sun (*dakṣiṇāyana*) and is also called *visarga kāla*.

-यद्वलं विसृजत्ययम् । सौम्यत्वादत्र सोमो हि बलवान् हीयते रविः ॥५॥

मेघवृष्ट्यनिलैः शीतैः शान्ततापे महीतले । स्निग्धाश्वेहाम्ललवणमधुरा बलिनो रसाः ॥६॥

- * All the living beings gains strength during this period.
- * *Visarga* is *saumya*. Moon is dominating in this period and the power of the sun is becoming weak.
- * Due to clouds, cold breeze and rain, the power of the sun reduces and moon occupies the driving seat.
- * Due to the power of moon with its cold rays unctuousness increases gradually in the nature during the seasons of *varṣā*, *śarad* and *hemanta*, which enhances *amla*, *lavanya* and *madhura rasas* respectively and results in the human beings become strong and potent.

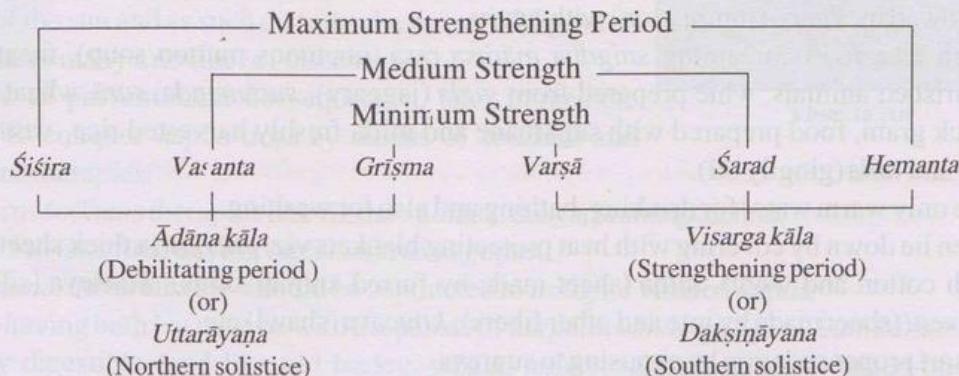
Differences between *ādāna kāla* and *visarga kāla*:

<i>Ādāna kāla</i>	<i>Visarga kāla</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Decreased digestive power. * Sun moving towards north. * <i>Agni prādhānya kāla</i>. * Debilitating period. * <i>Uttarāyana</i>. * <i>Śiśira-vasanta-grīṣma</i>. * <i>Tikta-kaṣāya-katu</i>. * <i>Rūkṣa-guṇa</i>. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Increased digestive power. * Sun moving towards south. * <i>Soumya kāla</i>. * Strengthening period. * <i>Dakṣiṇāyana</i>. * <i>Varṣā-Śarad-hemanta</i>. * <i>Amla-madhura-lavanya</i>. * <i>Snigdha guṇa</i>.

Nature of body strength according to season:

शीतेऽत्यं वृष्टिघर्षेऽल्पं बलं मध्यं तु शेषयोः ।

Maximum strength will be seen in *hemanta* and *śiśira ṛtus*, medium strength in *śarad* and *vasanta ṛtus* where as in *grīṣma* and *varṣā ṛtus* the people will have minimum strength.



Hemanta ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā (Features & regimen during winter):

बलिनः शीतसंरोधाद्वेमन्ते प्रबलोऽनलः ॥७॥

भवत्यल्पेन्धनो धातून् स पचेद्वायुनेरितः । अतो हिमेऽस्मिन्से वेत स्वाद्वम्ललवणान्नसान् ॥८॥

- * In *hemanta ṛtu* due to the cold breeze the body temperature is obstructed and enters deep into the body and increases digestive fire in the strong persons and able to digest hard food substances also.
- * If the proper food is not supplied to the body in winter, it might even burn body tissues.
- * Hence in winter it is advised to consume more *snigdha* (unctuous), *madhura*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasa* (sweet, sour and salt *dravyas*).



Hemanta ṛtu

दैर्घ्यान्निशानामेतर्हि प्रातरेव बुभुक्षितः । अवश्यकार्यं सम्भाव्य यथोक्तं शीलयेदनु ॥९॥

वातघ्नतैलैरभ्यङ्गं मूर्धिं तैलं विमर्दनम् । नियुद्धं कुशलैः सार्धं पादाधातं च युक्तिः ॥१०॥

- * During winter as the nights are longer every body feels hunger immediately after getting up from the bed. Hence after attending the nature calls, whoever feel hungry, take the food substances containing *madhura*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasas*.
- * In this season one has to perform *abhyanga* (body massage) with *vātahara tailas*, *mūrdha taila* (head massage), wrestling with skilled persons to half of his strength and *pādāghāta* (foot massage) etc. regularly.

कषायापहृतस्नेहस्ततः स्नातो यथाविधि । कुड़कुमेन सदर्पेण प्रदिग्धोऽगुरुधूपितः ॥११॥

रसान् स्निग्धान् पलं पुष्टं गौडमच्छसुरां सुराम् । गोधूमपिष्ठमाषेक्षुक्षीरोत्थविकृतीः शुभा: ॥१२॥

नवमन्नं वसां तैलं, शौचकार्यं सुखोदकम् । प्रावाराजिनकौशेयप्रवेणीकौचवास्तृतम् ॥१३॥

उष्णस्वभावैतर्थुभिः प्रावृतः शयनं भजेत् । युक्त्याऽकर्किरणान् स्वेदं पादत्राणं च सर्वदा ॥१४॥

- * Afterwards clean the oil applied over the body with the powders or decoctions of *kaṣāya rasa* (astringent) drugs and then have bath systematically.
- * Later on apply pastes of *kumkuma* (saffron) and *darpa/kastūrī* (musk) on the body followed by *dhūpa* (fumigation) with *aguru*.
- * Then take food containing *snigdha māṁsa rasa* (unctuous mutton soup), meat of well nourished animals, wine prepared from *gūḍa* (jaggery), *surāmaṇḍa*, *surā*, wheat powder, black gram, food prepared with sugarcane and milk, freshly harvested rice, *vasā* (muscle fat) and *taila* (gingily oil).
- * Use only warm water for drinking, bathing and also for washing.
- * Then lie down by covering with heat protecting blankets viz. *prāvāra* (a thick sheet made of cotton and wool), *ājina* (sheet made by furred animal skins), *kouṣeya* (silk cloth), *praveṇī* (sheet made by jute and other fibers), *koucava* (shawl) etc.
- * Resort proper sudation by exposing to sunrays.
- * It is specially recommended to wear footwear always.

पीवरोस्तनश्रोण्यः समदाः प्रमदाः प्रियाः । हरन्ति शीतमुष्णाङ्ग्यो धूपकुड़कमयौवनैः ॥१ ५ ॥

Indulge sex with the woman having well developed thighs, breast and buttocks, delighted with wine, in a playful mood, body warmed with fragrant fumes and youthfulness and got relief from cold.

अङ्गारतापसन्तप्तगर्भभूवेशमचारिणः । शीतपारुष्यजनितो न दोषो जातु जायते ॥१६॥

Those who are residing in the underground houses or rooms which are equipped with room heaters will not be affected by the troubles caused by the dryness and roughness of the cold.

Śiśira rtu laksana & caryā (Features & regimen during late winter):

अयमेव विधि: कार्यः शिशिरेऽपि विशेषतः । तदा हि शीतमधिकं रौक्ष्यं चादानकालजम् ॥१ ७ ॥

- * As it is the beginning of *ādāna kāla*, dryness will be very less and coldness is high due to the clouds, breeze and rain.
 - * Instead of the features of *ādāna kāla*, *visarga kāla* features are more prominently seen in *śīśira ṛtu*, the same dietetics and regimen of *hemanta ṛtu* should be adopted in *śīśira ṛtu* also.



Šisira rtu

Vasanta rtu laksana & caryā (Features & regimen during spring season):

कफश्चितो हि शिशिरे वसन्तेऽर्काशुतापितः । हत्वाऽग्निं कुरुते रोगानतस्तं त्वरया जयेत् ॥१८॥

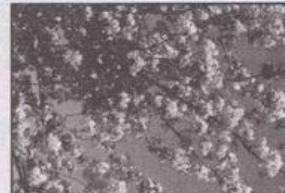
तीक्ष्णैर्वमननस्याद्यैर्लघुरक्षैश्च भोजनैः । व्यायामोद्वर्तनाधातैर्जित्वा श्लेष्माणमुल्बणम् ॥1 9॥

स्नातोऽनुलिप्तः कर्परचन्दनागुरुकुड़कुमैः । पुराणयवगोधूमक्षीद्रजाङ्गलशूल्यभुक् ॥२०॥

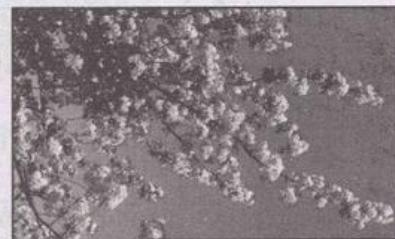
सहकाररसोन्मिश्रानास्वाद्य प्रिययाऽपितान् । प्रियास्यसङ्गसुरभीन् प्रियानेत्रोत्पलाङ्कृतान् ॥२१॥

सौमनस्यकृतो हृद्यान्वयस्यैः सहितः पिबेत् । निर्गदानासवारिष्टसीधुमाद्विकमाधवान् ॥२२॥

शृङ्गबेराम्बु साराम्बु मध्वम्बु जलदाम्बु च ।

- * Due to the ingestion of the foods having *madhura rasa* and *snigdha guṇas* and also the nature of the season *kapha doṣa* was accumulated in *śiśira ṛtu*.
 - * In *vasanta ṛtu* the accumulated *kapha* is liquefied by the heat of the sun and as such disturbs the power of digestion and cause many a number of diseases.
 - * Hence to prevent such consequences, take immediate steps to conquer *kapha doṣa* by means of *śodhana* and *śamana* therapies.
 - * Perform *śodhana* therapies like *tīkṣṇa vamana*, *nasya*, *dhūmapāna* etc.
 - * Advise to take food having *laghu* and *rūkṣa guṇas*.
 - * *Vyāyāma*, *udvartana* etc. should be conducted to mitigate vitiated *kapha*.
 - * After having bath besmeared with the pastes of *karpūra*, *candana*, *aguru*, *kumkuma* etc.
 - * Easily digestible food like old barley, wheat, honey, *jāṅgala māṁsa* roasted on fire is prescribed, which is suitable for this season.

Vasanta ṛtu



Vasanta rtu

- * After having such diet healthy people are recommended to enjoy alcoholic preparations like *mārdvīka* (prepared from grapes), *āsava*, *ariṣṭa*, *mādhava* (prepared from honey), *sīdhu* (prepared from sugar cane) in company of friends.
- * To make it more hilarious and fascinating they are mixed with sweet mango juices.
- * Beautiful women who sweeten these by the touch of their lips serve these wines. This increases their flavor and it is made more charming by the glances of their beautiful eyes resembling the petals of blue lotus.
- * Those who are averse to wine or prohibited from using them can enjoy other beverages prepared by boiling *āsava*, *musta*, dry ginger or honey with water.

दक्षिणानिलशीतेषु परितो जलवाहिषु ॥२ ३ ॥

अदृष्टनष्टसूर्येषु मणिकुट्टिमकान्तिषु । परपुष्टविद्युतेषु कामकर्मान्तभूमिषु ॥२ ४ ॥

विचित्रपुष्पवृक्षेषु काननेषु सुगन्धिषु । गोष्ठीकथाभिश्चित्राभिर्मध्याहं गमयेत्सुखी ॥२ ५ ॥

In the after noon hours spend the time in the gardens with various colourful flowers and plants having water pools around, cooled by wind from southern direction and where the sun is sometimes seen but often hidden behind the clouds and where the earth shines with beauty like jewls creating an amorous air and is pleasant by the melodious voice of koels (cuckoo) in happiness. Spend the time happily with the company of friends engaged in useful discussion, useful information and attractive stories etc.

गुरुशीतिदिवास्वप्नस्निग्धामधुरांस्त्यजेत् ।

One should not take the food substances containing *guru*, *sīta*, *snigdha guṇa* and *madhura*, *amla rasas* etc. during this season and also avoid sleeping in daytime.

Griṣma ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā (Features & regimen during summer):

तीक्ष्णांशुरतीक्ष्णांशुग्रीष्मे सङ्क्षिप्तीय यत् ॥२ ६ ॥

प्रत्यहं क्षीयते प्रलेष्मा तेन वायुश्च वर्धते । अतोऽस्मिन्यदुक्टव्यम्लव्यायामार्ककरांस्त्यजेत् ॥२ ७ ॥

- * As sun is very hot and the rays are sharp, *kapha* decreases and *vāta* increases during summer season.
- * Hence one should not take the food substances having the tastes of *lavaṇa*, *kaṭu* and *amla*.
- * Avoid exercises and exposing to sun in this season.

भजेन्मधुरमेवान्नं लघु स्निग्धं हिमं द्रवम् ।



Griṣma ṛtu

Foods having *madhura rasa*, *laghu*, *snigdha*, *sīta* and *drava guṇas* should be taken in summer.

सुशीततोयसित्काङ्गो लिह्यात्सकून् सर्शकरान् ॥२ ८ ॥

After having bath with cold water, take thin gruels prepared with corn flour and sugar.

मद्यं न पेयं, पेयं वा स्वल्पं, सुबहुवारि वा । अन्यथा शोषशैथिल्यदाहमोहान् करोति तत् ॥२ ९ ॥

During summer alcoholic drinks are generally prohibited. Those who are habituated, smaller quantity are prescribed that too diluted with plenty of water. Otherwise complications like emaciation, looseness of joints, burning sensation, delusion etc. may be arising.

कुन्देन्दुधवलं शालिमश्नीयाज्जाङ्गलैः पलैः ।

Śāli rice, which is as white as flower *kunda* (*Jasminum multiflorum*) and *indu* (moon) should be taken along with *jāṅgala mārīsa rasa* during summer season. Take only thin mutton soup.

पिबेद्रसं नातिघनं रसालां रागखाण्डवौ ॥3 0॥

पानकं पञ्चसारं वा नवमृद्धाजने स्थितम् । मोचचोचदलैर्युक्तं साप्लं मृन्ययशुक्तिभिः ॥3 1॥

पाटलावासितं चाम्भः सकर्पूरं सुशीतलम् ।

- * Drink *rasālā* (curds churned without any water and mixed with sugar, pepper, dry ginger and cumin), *rāga* (a decoction of grapes with *śāli*, *saktū*, honey, sugar, powder of arrow root, cardamom, cinnamon and coriander), *khāṇḍava* (prepared with sour and sweet fruits) during summer season.
- * Prepare *pañcasāra* (a type of *mantha* prepared with *drākṣā*, *madhūka*, *kharjūra*, *kāśmarya* and *parūṣaka*) in fresh earthenware. It will get flavor of *moca* (*kadalī*) and *coca* (*panasa*) due to the association of the above leaves while cooling *mantha*. Afterwards it should be mixed with some sour substances and serve in a mud pot.
- * Cooled water flavored with *pāṭalā* flower and mixed with *karpūra* (camphor) is also good for drinking during summer.

शशाङ्ककिरणान् भक्ष्यान् रजन्यां भक्षयन् पिबेत् ॥3 2॥

ससितं माहिषं क्षीरं चन्द्रनक्षत्रशीतलम् ।

Take the food known as *śāśāṅka-kirāṇa* (prepared with the flakes of *tālīsa* powder mixed with camphor and sugar candy) at night. Then mix sugar in *māhiṣa kṣīra* (buffalo's milk) that was cooled by the rays of moon and stars is to be given as drink.

अभ्रङ्गषमहाशालतालरुद्धोष्णारशिमषु ॥3 3॥

वनेषु माधवीशिलष्ट्राक्षास्तबकशालिषु । सुगन्धिहिमपानीयसिच्यमानपटालिके ॥3 4॥

कायमाने चिते चूतप्रवालफलतुम्बिभिः । कदलीदलकहारमृणालकमलोत्पलैः ॥3 5॥

कोमलैः कल्पिते तल्पे हसत्कुसुमपल्लवे । मध्यन्दिनेऽकर्तापार्तः स्वप्याद्वारागृहेऽथवा ॥3 6॥

पुस्तखीस्तनहस्तास्यप्रवृत्तोशीरवारिणि ।

- * Ideal location to spend day time in summer is in the parks where the tall trees like pines (*śāla*) and palms (*tāla*) embrace the sky that will prevent the hot rays of the sun.
- * Or spend in the houses around which bunches of flowers like jasmine and grapes are hanging from their creepers, curtains made of clothes wetted by scented, cool water, mango trees bearing fruits and tender leaves all around. In such a place set up a soft bed for sleeping in noon hours with the petals of flowers of *kadalī*, *kalhāra* and *mṛñāla* etc.
- * Sleep in a house cooled by water fountains where statues are exhibited with water being scented with *uśīra* and springing from the breasts, hands and mouth.

निशाकरकरकीर्णे सौधपृष्ठे निशासु च ॥3 7॥

आसना-

It is suggested to spend nights on terraces enjoying the cool rays of moon.

—स्वस्थचित्तस्य चन्दनार्द्रस्य मालिनः । निवृत्तकामतन्त्रस्य सुसूक्ष्मतनुवाससः ॥३ ८ ॥
जलाद्र्विस्तालवृत्तानि विस्तृताः पद्मिनीपुटा । उत्क्षेपाश्च मृदूत्क्षेपा जलवर्धिहिमानिला ॥३ ९ ॥
कर्पूरमल्लिकामाला हारा । सहरिचन्दना । मनोहरकलालापा । शिशवः सारिका । शुका ॥४ ० ॥
मृणालवलया । कान्ता । प्रोतफुल्लकमलोज्ज्वला । जङ्गमा इव पद्मिन्यो हरन्ति दयिता । क्लमम् ॥४ १ ॥

Fatigue due to the season will be relieved by—composure of the mind, besmearing the body with sandal wood pastes, wearing garlands, avoiding sexual activities, wearing light dresses, fanning with fans made of leaves of *tāla* or *padminī* (lotus) made wet and also with peacock feathers, wearing garlands of *karpūra* and *mallikā*, and also pearl chains dipped in *haricandana* (white paste of sandal).

Spending with children prattling with pretty joyful accents, colorful and pretty birds like parrots, beautiful women wearing lotus stalk bangles and moving lotus lakes around etc. will remove fatigue.

Varṣā ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā (Features & regimen during rainy season):

आदानग्लानवपुषामग्निः सन्नोऽपि सीदति । वर्षासु दोषैर्दुष्यन्ति तेऽम्बुलम्बाम्बुदेऽम्बरे ॥४ २ ॥

Body is naturally exhausted in *ādāna kāla* and the power of digestion is also diminished. It is further weakened in rainy season due to the vitiation of three *doṣas*.

सतुधारेण मरुता सहसा शीतलेन च ।
भूबाष्येणाम्लपाकेन मलिनेन च वारिणा ॥४ ३ ॥

Vāta gets vitiated due to the sky hung with long clouds filled with water and also due to humidity. *Pitta* is vitiated due the vapor of the earth and *amla vipāka* and *kapha* is vitiated because of dirty water and *agnimāndya*.

वह्नैव च मन्देन, तेष्वित्यन्योऽन्यदूषिषु । भजेत्साधारणं सर्वमूष्मणस्तेजनं च यत् ॥४ ४ ॥

Hence one should take necessary steps to pacify the vitiated three *doṣas* and also take measures to increase the power of digestion simultaneously.

आस्थापनं शुद्धतनुर्जर्जन्धान्यं रसान् कृतान् । जाङ्गलं पिशितं यूधान् मध्वरिष्टं चिरन्तनम् ॥४ ५ ॥
मस्तु सौवर्चलाढ्यं वा पञ्चकोलावचूर्णितम् । दिव्यं कौपं शृतं चाम्भो भोजनं त्वतिदुर्दिने ॥४ ६ ॥
व्यक्ताम्ललवणस्नेहं संशुक्कं क्षौद्रवल्लघु ।



Varṣā ṛtu

- * Due to the vitiation of all the *tridoṣas* *vasti karma* is to be conducted after performing *vamana karma* and *virecana karma* systematically.
- * In order to maintain the power of digestion old cereals like *yava*, *godhūma* and *śāli* rice are to be given along with the processed *jāṅgala mārīsa rasa*.
- * One should drink *mārdwika* or *ariṣṭa* type of liquors; *dadhimastu* (whey) mixed with *souvarcala lavaṇa* and *pañcakola cūrṇa*, rainwater, well water and boiled water.
- * On the day when the sun is completely hidden in the clouds, take only the food having the dominance of *amla*, *lavaṇa rasa* and *sneha* and *śuṣka guṇa*.

- * During rainy season use honey in general for preparing diet, drinks and other food substances.

अपादचारी सुरभिः सततं धूपिताम्बरः ॥४७॥

हर्ष्यपृष्ठे वसेद्वाष्पशीतशीकरवर्जिते ।

- * As far as possible try to avoid walking with bear foot in rainy season.

- * Wear always scented and well-fumed dress and reside in such a place that is free from moisture and cold weather.

नदीजलोदमन्थाहः स्वप्नायासातपांस्त्यजेत् ॥४८॥

Avoid to drink river water, *udamantha* (parched paddy flour mixed with water and ghee), sleeping in daytime, exertion and exposing to sun during rainy season.

Śarad ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā (Features & regimen during autumn):

वर्षाशीतोचिताङ्गानां सहसैवाकरशिमभिः । तप्तानां सञ्चितं वृष्टौ पित्तं शरदि कुप्यति ॥४९॥
तज्जयाय धूतं तिक्तं विरेको रक्तमोक्षणम् ।



Śarad ṛtu

- * By the influence of the season, *pitta* is accumulated in *varṣā* ṛtu will be aggravated in śarad ṛtu due to the hotness of sunrays.
- * To conquer the vitiated *pitta*, *tikta ghṛtapāna* (administration of bitter medicated ghee internally), *virecana karma* (purgation therapy), *raktamokṣaṇa* (bloodletting) are advised.

तिक्तं स्वादु कषायं च क्षुधितोऽन्नं भजेल्लघु ॥५०॥

शालिमुद्रसिताधात्रीपटोलमधुजाङ्गलम् ।

- * Food substances containing *tikta*, *madhura* and *kaṣāya rasas* and also *laghu guṇa dravyas* are to be taken in this season.
- * *Śāli dhānya*, *mudga*, *sitā* (sugar), *dhātri/āmalakī*, *paṭola*, *madhu* (honey), *jāngala māṁsa rasa* etc. are good for those who are in hungry.

तप्तं तप्तांशुकिरणैः शीतं शीतांशुरशिमभिः ॥५१॥

समन्तादप्यहोरात्रमगस्त्योदयनिर्विषम् । शुचि हंसोदकं नाम निर्मलं मलजिज्जलम् ॥५२॥

नाभिष्यन्दि न वा रुक्षं पानादिष्वपृतोपमम् ।

The water is exposed to the heat of the sun during the daytime and to the cool rays of the moon during night. It is also purified by time and is detoxicated by *agastya nakṣatra*. This is known as ‘*haṁsodaka*’, which is spotlessly clear and is as beneficial as nectar. Such water doesn’t provoke *kapha* as well as *vāta*.

चन्दनोशीरकपूरमुक्तास्वगवसनोज्ज्वलः ॥५३॥

सौधेषु सौधधवलां चन्द्रिकां रजनीमुखे ।

Spend the evening time by enjoying moonlight seated on the radiant terrace after decorating and besmeared the body with neat dress, flower & pearl garlands, with the pastes of *candana*, *uśīra* and *karpūra*.

तुषारक्षारसौहित्यदधितैलवसातपान् ॥५ ४ ॥
तीक्ष्णमद्यदिवास्वप्नपुरोवातान् परित्यजेत् ।

Exposure to dew and mist, taking alkaline substances, excessive eating of curds, oils & fats, exposing to sunlight, intake of strong alcoholic drinks, sleeping in daytime, exposing the wind coming from eastern direction or blowing towards the face etc. should be avoided during *śarad ṛtu*.

Indication of the substances having specific taste in specific season:

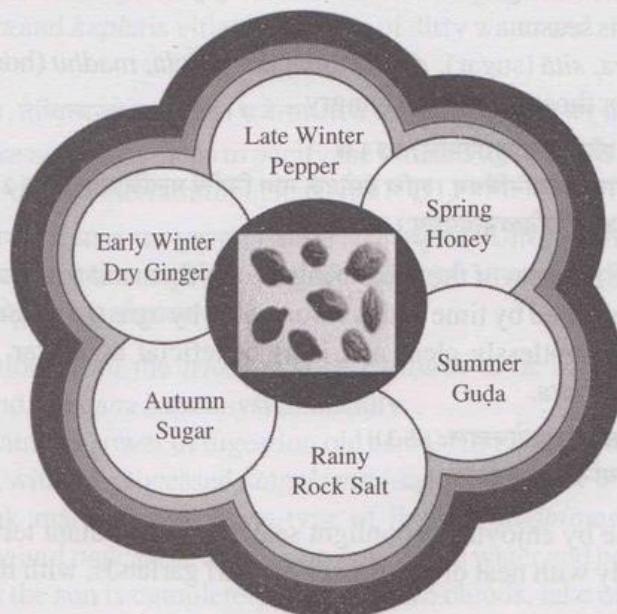
शीते वर्षासु चाद्यांस्त्रीन् वसन्तेऽन्त्यान् रसान् भजेत् ॥५ ५ ॥
स्वादुं निदाधे, शरदि स्वादुतिक्तकथायकान् । शरद्वसन्तयो रूक्षं शीतं घर्मघनान्तयोः ॥५ ६ ॥
अन्नपानं समासेन विपरीतमतोऽन्यदा ।

- * During *hemanta*, *śīśira* and *varṣā ṛtu*s take food substances having the first three tastes i.e. *madhura*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasa*.
- * Where as in *vasanta ṛtu* take the food substances having the last three tastes known as *tikta*, *kaṭū* and *kaṣāya rasa dravyas*.
- * In *grīṣma ṛtu*, especially *madhura rasa dravyas* should be taken.
- * During *śarad ṛtu*; *madhura*, *tikta* and *kaṣāya rasa* substances are advised to take.
- * In *śarad* and *vasanta ṛtu*, consume foods having *rūkṣa guṇa* and in *grīṣma ṛtu* one should take *śīta guṇa dravyas* only, where as in the remaining three seasons viz. *hemanta*, *śīśira* and *varṣā ṛtu*s; *snigdha* and *uṣṇa guṇa dravyas* are agreeable for diet.

Neccessity of consuming all the six tastes in all the six seasons :

नित्यं सर्वरसाभ्यासः स्वस्वाधिक्यमृतावृतौ ॥५ ७ ॥

To maintain the equilibrium state of the *doṣas*, presence of six tastes in a proportionate order is



essential. Hence practice to consume all tastes of diet every day by changing their ratio according to the season.

Notes:

Rtu harītakī: Internal administration of *harītakī* by altering *anupāna* can prevent many a number of diseases occurs in different seasons.

'सिन्धूथ शर्करा शुण्ठी कणामधुगुड़ैः क्रमात् वर्षादिव्यभयाप्रश्या रसायनगुणैषिणा ।'

—Vaṅgasena Rasāyanādhikāra

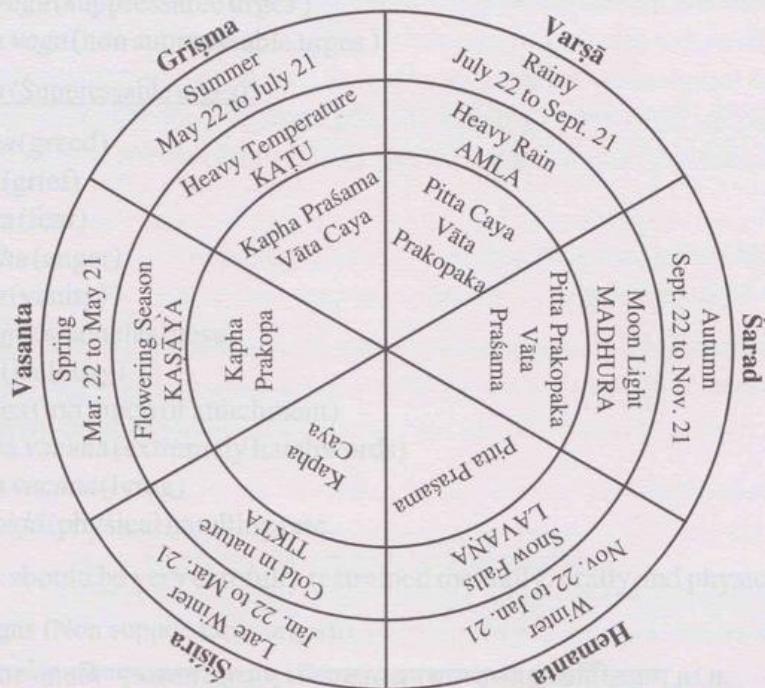
Harītakī should be taken along with the following substances in different seasons to obtain *rasāyana* effect.

S.No.	Name of the season	Anupāna
1.	Varṣā ṛtu (Rainy season)	Sindhūttha (Rock salt)
2.	Śarad ṛtu (Autumn)	Śarkarā (Sugar)
3.	Hemanta (Early winter)	Śunṭhī (Dry ginger)
4.	Śiśira (Late winter)	Kaṇā (Pippalī)
5.	Vasanta ṛtu (Spring)	Madhu (Honey)
6.	Grīṣma (Summer)	Guḍa (Jaggery)

Rtu sandhi:

ऋत्वोरन्त्यादिसप्ताहावृत्तुसन्धिरिति सृतः । तत्र पूर्वो विधिस्त्याज्यः सेवनीयोऽपरः क्रमात् ॥५८॥
असात्यजा हि रोगा: स्युः सहसा त्यागशीलनात् ॥५९॥

The last and first seven days of the preceding and following two seasons together can be called



r̥tu sandhi (or) seasonal juncture. During this period the regimen of previous season should be gradually withdrawn and those of the coming season should be adopted slowly. If on the other hand, sudden withdrawn or adoption leads diseases due to unaccustomed foods and activities.

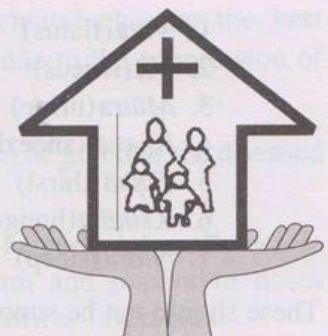
इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगप्तसुनश्रीमद्वाभट्टविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने ऋत्तचर्या नाम तृतीयोऽध्यायः ॥१३॥

Thus ends the third chapter entitled *Rtucaryā Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhata son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In the chapter *Rtucaryā*, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the definition of *ādāna kāla* and *visarga kāla* and their features. Six seasons and the features of different seasons and the dietetics and regimen. Seasonal juncture and its importance in preventing diseases etc. have been discussed.

4 ROGĀNUTPĀDANIYA ADHYĀYA [Prevention of Diseases]



अथातो रोगानुत्पादनीयाध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Rtucaryā Adhyāya*’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Rogānupādanīya*’ (Prevention of Diseases), thus said Ātreya and other great sages.

Preamble:

In the present chapter Vāgbhaṭa stressed that all the diseases will be manifested due to the forceful expulsion and voluntary suppression of the natural urges only.

Hence for the prevention of the diseases one should not suppress the natural urges like urine, faeces, semen etc. and suppress the urges relating to rashness and evil deeds physically, mentally and orally.

These urges are of 2 types:

- (a) *Dhāraṇīya vega* (suppressable urges)
- (b) *Adhāraṇīya vega* (non suppressable urges).

Dhāraṇīya vegas (Suppressable urges):

1. *Lobha* (greed)
2. *Śoka* (grief)
3. *Bhaya* (fear)
4. *Krodha* (anger)
5. *Māna* (vanity)
6. *Nirlajjā* (shamelessness)
7. *Īrṣyā* (jealousy)
8. *Atirāga* (too much of attachment)
9. *Paruṣa vacana* (extremely harsh words)
10. *Anṛta vacana* (lying)
11. *Parapiḍā* (physical handling) etc.

These activities should be very carefully restrained mentally, orally and physically.

Adhāraṇīya vegas (Non suppressable urges):

वेगान् नधारयेद्वात्किञ्चूत्रक्षवत्तद्क्षुधाम् । निद्राकासश्रमश्वासजृम्भाशुच्छदिरितसाम् ॥1॥

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Vāta</i> (flatus) | 8. <i>Kāsa</i> (cough) |
| 2. <i>Vīṭ</i> (faeces) | 9. <i>Śrama-śvāsa</i> (dyspnoea on exertion) |
| 3. <i>Mūṭra</i> (urine) | 10. <i>Jṛmbhā</i> (yawning) |
| 4. <i>Kṣavat</i> (sneezing) | 11. <i>Aśru</i> (tears) |
| 5. <i>Trṣṇā</i> (thirst) | 12. <i>Chardi</i> (vomiting) |
| 6. <i>Kṣudhā</i> (hunger) | 13. <i>Retas</i> (semen) & |
| 7. <i>Nidrā</i> (sleep) | 14. <i>Udgāra</i> (belching/eructation) |

These should not be suppressed and it is necessary that the needs of these natural urges are satisfied instantaneously i.e. as soon as they are explicit.

Effects of Suppression of Natural Urges and Their Treatment

1. Adhvātā (Flatus):

अधोवातस्य रोधेन गुल्मोदावर्तरुक्क्लमा: । वातमूत्रशकृत्सङ्घट्यग्निवधहृद्दाः ॥१२॥

Gulma (abdominal tumor), *udāvarta* (upward movement of *vāta*), *ruk/vedanā* (pain abdomen), *klama* (debility), *vāta*, *mūṭra*, *śakṛt saṅga* (retention of faeces, urine and flatus), *dr̥ṣti-vadha* (loss of vision), *agni-vadha/mandāgni* (decreased digestive power), *hṛdgada* (diseases of heart) etc. will be caused due to the suppression of *adhovātā* (flatus).

2. Sakṛt (Faeces):

शकृतः पिण्डिकोद्देष्टप्रतिश्यायशिरोरुजः । ऊर्ध्ववायुः परीकर्तो हृदयस्योपरोधनम् ॥३॥

मुखेन विद्प्रवृत्तिश्च पूर्वक्ताश्चामया: स्मृताः ।

Piṇḍikodveṣṭa (twisting pain or cramps in the calf muscle), *pratiśyāya* (running nose), *śiroruja* (head ache), *ūrdhvavāyū* (upward movement of *vāta*), *parikarta* (cutting pain in the rectum), *hṛdayoparodhana* (oppression in the region of heart), *mukhena vīṭpravṛtti* (faeces coming from the mouth) etc. are the signs and symptoms caused due to the suppression of the urge of faeces along with the diseases mentioned earlier in respect of the suppression of flatus.

3. Mūṭra (Urine):

अङ्गभङ्गाश्मरीबस्तिमेद्रवंक्षणवेदनाः ॥४॥

मूत्रस्य रोधात् पूर्वे च प्रायो रोगाः—

Due to the suppression of the urge of urine results in *aṅgabhaṅga* (splitting pain all over the body), *aśmarī* (stone in bladder), *vasti-medhra-vaṅkṣaṇa-vedanā* (pain in the bladder, penis and in the groin region) and also the diseases mentioned in respect of the suppression of the flatus and stools.

Treatment:

—तदौषधम् । वर्त्यभङ्गावगाहाश्च स्वेदनं बस्तिकर्म च ॥५॥

अन्नपानं च विडभेदि विडोधोत्थेषु यक्षमसु । मूत्रजेषु तु पाने च प्रायभक्तं शस्यते घृतम् ॥६॥

जीर्णान्तिकं चोत्तमया मात्रया योजनाद्वयम् । अवपीडकमेतच्च संज्ञितं-

Varti/phala vari (rectal suppositories), *abhyāṅga* (body massage with oils), *avagāha* (sitz

bath), *svedana* (sudation therapy), *vasti karma* (medicated enemata) etc. are the best treatments, indicated for the management of the diseases caused due to the suppression of flatus, faeces and urine.

Special food and drinks which eliminates the obstructed faeces is to be given in the diseased condition, due to the suppression of faeces.

In the diseases, due to the suppression of urine medicated ghee is to be given internally before food and after the digestion of food in a quantity of minimum and maximum doses respectively. This method of administration of medicated ghee is known as ‘*avapīdaka*’.

4. Udgāra (Eruption/Belching):

—धारणात् पुनः ॥७॥

उद्गारस्यारुचिः कम्पो विबन्धो हृदयोरसो । आध्मानकासहिध्माश्च हिध्मावत्त्र भेषजम् ॥८॥

Due to the suppression of eruption the following diseases may occur—*aruci* (anorexia), *kampa* (tremor), *vibandho hṛdayoraso* (obstruction in the proper function of heart and lungs), *ādhmāna* (abdominal distensions), *kāsa* (cough), *hidhma* (hiccough).

Treatment is similar to hiccough.

5. Kṣavathu (Sneezing):

शिरोऽतीन्द्रियदौर्बल्यमन्यास्तम्भादितं क्षुतेः । तीक्ष्णधूमाङ्गनाद्याणनावनार्कविलोकनैः ॥९॥

प्रवर्तयेत् क्षुतिं सक्तां स्नेहस्वेदौ च शीलयेत् ।

Sirorti (headache), *indriya dourbalya* (debility of sense organs), *manyā stambha* (stiffness of the neck), *ardita vāta* (facial paralysis) etc. occurs due to the suppression of sneezing.

Treatment:

- * Induce sneezing with *tikṣṇa dhūmapāna* (inhalation of fumes with pungent substances), *tikṣṇa añjana* (collyrium), *tikṣṇa dravya aghrāṇa*, *tikṣṇa nasya* (nasal drops), *tikṣṇārka vilokana* (looking at the sun).
- * *Snehakarma* (oleation therapy) and *svedakarma* (sudation therapy).
- * *Vātahara āhāra sevana* (consuming the foods which mitigate *vāta*), administration of ghee internally after food is also indicated by the author of *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha*.

6. Trṣṇā (Thirst):

शोषाङ्गसादबाधिर्यसम्मोहभ्रमहृगदा: ॥१०॥

तृष्णाया निग्रहात्त्र शीतः सर्वो विधिर्हितः ।

Suppression of thirst leads to *śoṣa* (emaciation), *aṅgasāda* (debility), *bādharya* (deafness), *sammoha* (delusion), *bhrama* (giddiness) and *hṛgada* (cardiac pain).

Treatment:

Use cold water for drinking and bathing. Manage the condition by the intake of cold substances like foods & drinks.

7. Kṣudhā (Hunger):

अङ्गभङ्गारुचिग्लानिकाशर्यशूलभ्रमा: क्षुधः ॥1 1॥
तत्र योज्यं लघु स्निग्धमुष्णमल्पं च भोजनम् ।

Suppression of hunger leads to *aṅgabhaṅga* (splitting pain all over the body), *aruci* (anorexia), *glāni* (exhaustion), *kārṣya* (emaciation), *sūla* (pain) and *bhrama* (giddiness).

Treatment:

Light, unctuous, warm & limited food is the best treatment to be given.

8. Nidrā (Sleep):

निद्राया मोहमूर्धाक्षिगौरवालस्यजृम्भिका: ॥1 2॥
अङ्गमर्दश्च, तत्रेषु: स्वप्नः संवाहनानि च ।

Suppression of urge for sleep causes—*moha* (delusion), *mūrdhā*, *akṣi gaurava* (heaviness of head and eyes), *ālasya* (lassitude), *jṛimbhā* (yawning), *aṅgamarda* (body pains). etc.

Treatment:

To overcome the above symptoms it is advised to sleep for some time and conduct light body massage.

9. Kāsa (Cough):

कासस्य रोधात्तदवृद्धिः श्वासारुचिह्नामया: ॥1 3॥
शोषो हिध्मा च कार्योऽत्र कासहा सुतरां विधिः ।

By the suppression of cough leads to *kāsādhikya* (cough increases), *śvāsa* (dyspnoea), *aruci* (anorexia), *hṛdaya roga* (cardiac problems), *śoṣa* (emaciation) and *hikkā* (hiccough).

Treatment:

Manage the symptoms as per the line of treatment advised in *kāsa roga*.

10. Śramaśvāsa (Dyspnoea on exertion):

गुल्महृद्रोगसम्प्रोहा: श्रमश्वासाद्विधारितात् ॥1 4॥
हितं विश्रमणं तत्र वातद्वश्च क्रियाक्रमः ।

Due to the suppression of the dyspnoea caused on exertion, leads to *gulma* (abdominal tumors), *hṛdroga* (cardiac problems) and *sammoha* (delusions).

Treatment:

Rest and anti *vātika* treatments are advised.

11. Jṛimbhā (Yawning):

जृम्भाया: क्षववद्रोगा:, सर्वश्वानिलजिद्विधिः ॥1 5॥

Due to the suppression of yawning the same symptoms will be seen which will be found while suppressing the urge of sneezing.

Treatment:

All the anti *vātika* treatments will be helpful to manage the above symptoms.

12. Aśru (Tears):

पीनसाक्षिशिरोहृद्गङ्गमन्यास्तम्भारुचिभ्रमा: । सगुल्मा बाध्यतस्तत्र स्वप्नो मद्यं प्रिया: कथा: ॥1 6॥

Suppression of tears leads to *pīnasa* (running nose), *akṣi*, *śiro*, *hṛdrik* (pain in the eyes, head and heart), *manyāstambha* (stiffness of the neck), *aruci* (anorexia), *bhrama* (giddiness) and *gulma* (abdominal tumor).

Treatment:

Sleeping, drinking alcohol, company of friends and hearing pleasant stories etc. should be done.

13. Cardi (Vomiting):

विसर्पकोठकुष्टाक्षिकण्डूपाण्डिवामयज्वरा: । सकासश्वासहृल्लासव्यङ्गश्वयथवो वमे: ॥1 7॥

गण्डूषधूमानहारा रुक्षं भुक्त्वा तदुद्ध्रमः । व्यायामः स्तुतिरस्त्वय शस्तं चात्र विरेचनम् ॥1 8॥

सक्षारलवणं तैलमध्यङ्गार्थं च शस्यते ।

Suppression of the urge of vomiting leads to *visarpa* (erysipelas), *kotha* (urticaria), *kuṣṭa* (skin disorder), *akṣi roga* (eye diseases), *kaṇḍu* (itching), *pāṇḍu* (anaemia), *jwara* (fever), *kāsa* (cough), *śvāsa* (dyspnoea), *hṛyllāsa* (nausea), *vyāṅga* (discoloured patches on the face) and *śvayathu* (oedema).

Treatment:

Gaṇḍūṣa (mouth garglings), *dhūmapāna* (inhalation of medicated fumes) and *vamana* (induce vomiting) after consuming dry foods, *vyāyāma* (exercises), *raktamokṣāna* (blood letting), *virecana* (purgation) and body should be massaged with oil mixed with *sarjakṣāra* (alkalies) and *saindhava lavaṇa* (rock salt).

14. Śukra (Semen):

शुक्रात्तत्ववणं गुह्यवेदनाश्वयथुज्वरा: ॥1 9॥

हृद्यथामूत्रसङ्गाङ्गभङ्गवृद्ध्यशमषण्ठता: । ताम्रचूडसुराशालिबस्त्यभ्यङ्गावगाहनम् ॥2 0॥

बस्तिशुद्धिकरैः सिद्धं भजेत् क्षीरं प्रिया: स्त्रियः ।

Suppression of semen leads to—*vīryasrāva* (increased flow of semen often), *guhya-vedanā* (pain in the penis), *śvayathu* (oedema), *jvara* (fever), *hṛdvyathā* (cardiac pain), *mūtrasaṅga* (anuria), *aṅgabhaṅga* (splitting pain all over the body), *vardhma* (pain in the scrotum), *aśmarī* (stone) and *sañḍhatā* (impotence).

Treatment:

Food with chicken, alcohol and red *śāli* rice is advised. *Vasti* (medicated enemata), *abhyāṅga* (body massage) and *avagāhana* (tub bath), milk processed with the drugs, which are good for urinary bladder and sexual intercourse with the women best liked.

Persons not eligible for treatment:

तृदशूलार्तं त्यजेत् क्षीणं विद्वमं वेगरोधिनम् ॥2 1॥

Persons habituated for suppressing the above natural urges and suffering with complications like faecal vomiting, emaciated, severe thirsty and pain abdomen are not eligible to get treatment.

Factors responsible for the manifestation of all the diseases:

रोगः सर्वेऽपि जायन्ते वेगोदीरणधारणैः ।

All the diseases will be manifested due to the forceful expulsion and voluntary suppression of the natural urges only.

General line of treatment:

निर्दिष्टं साधनं तत्र भूयिष्ठं ये तु तान् प्रति ॥2 2॥

ततश्चानेकधा प्रायः पवनो यत्प्रकृष्टति । अन्नपानौषधं तस्य युज्ञीतातोऽनुलोमनम् ॥2 3॥

Effects of the suppression of natural urges and their treatment have been explained till now.

Since *vāta* is provoked by various causes and in multiple forms everywhere, select foods, drinks and food substances aiming at pacifying the *dosas* as well as downward movement of *vāta*. This is the basic principle for treating diseases.

Dhāraṇiya vega:

धारयेत् सदा वेगान् हितैषी प्रेत्य चेह च । लोभेष्वाद्विषमात्सर्यरागादीनां जितेन्द्रियः ॥2 4॥

For the benefit of being happy in both the worlds (*iha-loka* - in this life and *para-loka* - life in the other world) one should always control the senses (mind and the five sense organs) and also should suppress the urges like *lobha*, *īrṣyā*, *dweṣa*, *mātsarya* and *rāga* etc.

Necessity of purification therapy:

यतेत च यथाकालं मलानां शोधनं प्रति । अत्यर्थसञ्चितास्ते हि क्रुद्धाः स्युर्जीवितच्छदः ॥2 5॥

Always try to purify *malas* from the body at the proper times. If *malas* gets accumulated extremely, leads to their aggravation and do at times causes threat of life.

Importance of śodhana therapy:

दोषाः कदाचित् कुप्यन्ति जिता लङ्घनपाचनैः । ये तु संशोधनैः शुद्धा न तेषां पुनरुद्धवः ॥2 6॥

Dosas do at times gets aggravated by treating them with fasting and digestive drugs but there is no chance of relapsation by treating with purificatory measures. Hence *śodhana* therapy is superior to *śamana* drugs.

Administration of rasāyana & vājikaraṇa yoga:

यथाक्रमं यथायोगमत ऊर्ध्वं प्रयोजयेत् । रसायनानि सिद्धानि वृद्ध्ययोगांश्च कालवित् ॥2 7॥

So, after adopting eliminating techniques according to the season, rejuvenation tonics and aphrodisiacs should be administered to lead a healthy, happy and long life.

Regimen to be adopted after purificatory measures:

भेषजक्षपिते पथ्यमाहारैर्वृहणं क्रमात् । शालिषष्टिकगोधूममुद्रमांसघृतादिभिः ॥२८॥
हृदीपनभैषज्यसंयोगाद्वृचिपक्तिदैः । साभ्यङ्गोद्वर्तनस्नाननिरूहस्नेहबस्तिभिः ॥२९॥

By purification or reduction therapies and with constant use of medicines body will become weak naturally. So, the following steps should be taken to regain the strength.

- * Foods like *sāli*, *śaṣṭika*, *godhūma*, *mudga*, *māṁsa*, *ghṛta* made appetizing and digestible by combining with palatable and digestive drugs are to be given.
- * *Abhyāṅga*, *udvartana*, *snāna*, *nīrūha vasti* and *sneha vasti* are also to be administered.

Effects of treatment:

तथा स लभते शर्म सर्वपाचकपाटवम् । धीवर्णेन्द्रियवैमल्यं वृषतां दैर्घ्यमायुषः ॥३०॥

By the above steps, one gets health, increase of all sorts of digestive powers, intelligence, body complexion, sensory perception, virility and increases life span.

Āgantuja roga:

ये भूतविषवाच्चग्निक्षतभङ्गादिसम्भवाः । रागद्वेषभयाद्याश्च ते स्युरागन्तवो गदाः ॥३१॥

Diseases those caused by *bhūta* (demons), *viṣa* (poisons), *vāyu*, *agni*, *kṣata* (wound), *bhaṅga* (fractures) and by *rāga*, *dweṣa*, *bhaya* etc. are known as *āgantuja roga* or exogenous disorders.

Procedures to be adopted for the management of nija & āgantuja roga:

त्यागः प्रज्ञापराधानामिन्द्रियोपशमः स्मृतिः । देशकालात्मविज्ञानं सदवृत्तस्यानुवर्तनम् ॥३२॥
अथर्वविहिता शान्तिः प्रतिकूलग्राहार्चनम् । भूताद्यस्पर्शनोपायो निर्दिष्टश्च पृथक् पृथक् ॥३३॥
अनुत्पत्त्यै समासेन विधिरेषः प्रदर्शितः । निजागन्तुविकाराणामुत्पन्नानां च शान्तये ॥३४॥

Avoidance of improper activities of the body, mind and speech by willful transgression of rules, control over senses, remembering the previous experiences, knowledge pertaining to place, time and constitution, adherence to the rules of good conduct as prescribed in Atharva-veda propitiating the unfavorable *grahas* (planets), adopting ways to keep away from demons etc. is the treatment in general for the management of both exogenous and endogenous diseases.

Suitable time for the elimination of vitiated *doṣas*:

शीतोद्धवं दोषचयं वसन्ते विशोधयन् ग्रीष्मजमभ्रकाले ।
घनात्यये वार्षिकमाशु सम्यक् प्राप्नोति रोगानृतुजान्र जातु ॥३५॥

The accumulated *doṣas* of cold seasons (*hemanta* and *śiśira*) should be purified in *vasanta ṛtu*. Similarly those accumulated in *grīṣma ṛtu* should be eliminated during *varṣā ṛtu* and the *doṣas*

accumulated in *varṣā ṛtu* also should be expelled from the body during *śarad ṛtu*. By this one can avoid seasonal diseases.

Regimen for promotion of health:

नित्यं हिताहारविहारसेवी समीक्ष्यकारी विषयेष्वसत्तः ।
दाता समः सत्यपरः क्षमावानाप्नोपसेवी च भवत्यरोगः ॥३६॥

The following persons will be disease free:

- * Who are adopting the rules and regulations of wholesome diet and good conduct.
- * Doing all activities carefully after thinking twice.
- * Having control over senses.
- * Treating all living beings equally.
- * Speaking truth.
- * Having patience and forgiving the mistakes of others.
- * Keeping the company of good learned men etc.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने रोगानुत्पादनीयो नाम चतुर्थोऽध्यायः ॥१४॥

Thus ends the fourth chapter entitled *Rogānupṭādāniya Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In the chapter *Rogānupṭādāniya*, Ācārya Vāgbhata explained methods of preventing diseases; 14 types of suppressible natural urges; the effects of suppression and the treatment also narrated; persons not eligible for treatment; importance of seasonal regimen and the elimination therapies etc. and at the end the features of a disease free person has been presented.

*

5 DRAVA-DRAVYA VIJÑĀNIYA ADHYĀYA

[Knowledge of Liquid Substances]



अथातो द्रवद्रव्यविज्ञानीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ॥

After the chapter ‘*Rogānutpādāniya*’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Drava-dravya Vijñāniya*’ (Knowledge of Liquid Substances), thus said Lord Ātreyā and other great sages.

In the previous three chapters preventive measures to maintain the positive health has been detailed.

The present chapter deals with the liquid substances, available in the nature and their properties have been described. All the liquid substances have been grouped as under:

1. *Jala varga* (Group of different types of water)
2. *Kṣīra varga* (Group of different types of milk)
3. *Ikṣu varga* (Group of different types of sugarcane)
4. *Madhu varga* (Group of different types of honey)
5. *Taila varga* (Group of different types of oils)
6. *Madya varga* (Group of different types of alcohols)
7. *Mūtra varga* (Group of different types of urine) etc.

अथ तोयवर्गः

1. Jala Varga (Group of Different Types of Water)

Classification of water:

A. According to the nature, water is of 2 types:

- (a) *Gāṅgāmbu* (rain water without contamination)
- (b) *Sāmudrodaka* (rain water contaminated by dust and poison etc.)

B. According to processing, it is of 5 types:

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| (a) <i>Kevala</i> | (c) <i>Pakwa</i> | (e) <i>Uṣṇa</i> . |
| (b) <i>Sauṣadha</i> | (d) <i>Āma</i> | |

C. According to the types of soil, 6 types:

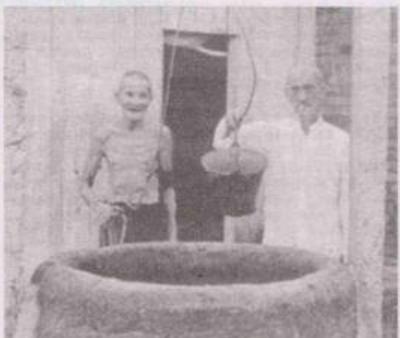
- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| (a) <i>Śveta mṛt</i> (white soil) | (d) <i>Nīla</i> (blue soil) |
| (b) <i>Kṛṣṇa mṛt</i> (black soil) | (e) <i>Ūṣara</i> (saline soil) |
| (c) <i>Pāṇḍu</i> (yellowish white soil) | (f) <i>Miśra</i> (mixed soil) |

D. Due to the dominancy of 5 basic elements:

- | |
|---|
| (a) <i>Pārthiva guṇādhikya jala</i> (land having the <i>pr̥thivī mahābhūta</i> dominancy) |
| (b) <i>Ambu guṇādhikya jala</i> (land having <i>jala mahābhūta</i> dominency) |
| (c) <i>Tejo guṇādhikya jala</i> (land having <i>agni mahābhūta</i> dominancy) |
| (d) <i>Vāyu guṇādhikya jala</i> (land having <i>vāyu mahābhūta</i> dominancy) |
| (e) <i>Ākāśa guṇādhikya jala</i> (land having <i>ākāśa mahābhūta</i> dominancy) |

E. According to the source, it is of 8 types:

- | |
|---|
| (a) <i>Koupya</i> (well water) |
| (b) <i>Sārasa</i> (natural lake) |
| (c) <i>Tāṭaka</i> (artificial ponds) |
| (d) <i>Cauṇḍya</i> (water collected in pits of rocks) |
| (e) <i>Prāsravaṇa</i> (flown down from mountains) |
| (f) <i>Audbhida</i> (natural springs) |
| (g) <i>Vāpi</i> (well with flights of steps) |
| (h) <i>Nadī</i> (river) |



Koupya



Sārasa



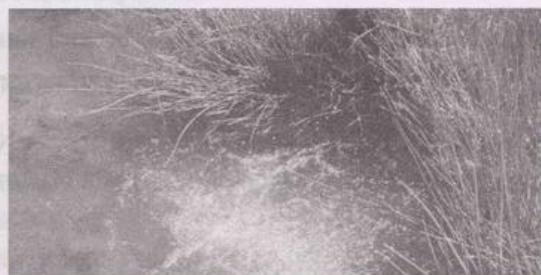
Tāṭaka



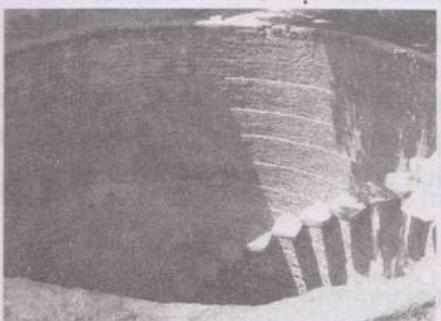
Cauṇḍya



Prāsravāna



Audbhida



Vāpi



Nadi

F. Warm water:

- (a) *Kṣīṇapāda* (boiled and reduced to 1/4th of the total quantity).
- (b) *Tribhāga* (reduced to 1/3rd of the total quantity).
- (c) *Ardha bhāga* (reduced to 1/2 of the quantity).
- (d) *Kvathita* (boiled until the boiling point).

G. Types of ākāśodaka:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (a) <i>Dhāra</i> (rain water) | (c) <i>Tauśāra</i> (water from dew) |
| (b) <i>Kṣāra</i> (hail stone) | (d) <i>Haima</i> (snow water) |

Gaṅgāmbu (Uncontaminated rain water):

जीवनं तर्पणं हृदयं ह्रादि बुद्धिप्रबोधनम् । तन्वव्यक्तरसं मृष्टं शीतं लघ्वमृतोपमम् ॥1॥

गङ्गाम्बु नभसो भ्रष्टं स्पृष्टं त्वर्केन्दुमारुतैः । हिताहितत्वे तद्भूयो देशकालावपेक्षते ॥2॥

The rainwater, which is not contaminated with dust and poison:

- * Enlivening the living beings, generates satiation, gives pleasure to the heart, refreshing and stimulates the mind. It is thin, cold in potency, clear and not having any perceptible taste, and is equivalent to nectar.
- * Seawater is being absorbed by the sunrays and fall from the sky in the form of rain after coming in contact with sunrays, moon light and wind and is known as *gaṅgāmbu* which is easily digestible and alleviates *vāta* and *kapha*.
- * Due to *sīta vīrya* it cures the diseases of *pitta*, *rakta* and *viṣa*.
- * The variations of the seasons like winter, summer etc. and also in particular place of soil where the rain falls, affect the properties of *gaṅgāmbu*.

Test for the identification of gaṅgāmbu and sāmudrodaka:

येनाभिवृद्धममले शाल्यं राजते स्थितम् । अक्षिलग्नमविवर्णं च तत्पेत्रं गाङ्गम्-

Rice cooked with rainwater and kept in a silver bowl, which neither makes too slimy nor changes its colour is to be considered as *gaṅgāmbu* also known as *aindrāmbu* and is the best one for drinking purpose.

Samudrāmbu (Contaminated water):

-अन्यथा ॥३॥

सामुद्रं, तत्र पातव्यं मासादाश्वयुजाद्विना ।

Except *gaṅgāmbu* all other kinds of water are known as *sāmudra-jala*. These water should not be used for drinking except in *āśvayuja māsa* (autumn/September-October) because of the presence of the star *Agastya* i.e., the star canopus, which de-toxicates the poison existing in other types of water.

ऐन्द्रमध्यु सुपाप्रस्थमविपन्नं सदा पिबेत् ॥४॥

तदभावे च भूमिष्ठमान्तरिक्षानुकारि यत् । शुचिपृष्ठसितक्षेत्रे देशोऽकीपवनाहतम् ॥५॥

Drink always *akaśodaka* (*gaṅgāmbu*) as it is not contaminated and that is preserved in a neat and clean vessel made up of silver or gold. If *gaṅgāmbu* is not available, water obtainable from the soil (resembles rainwater in its qualities) that is clean, black and whitish color and is exposed to sunlight and gentle wind should be used for drinking.

Notes:

Properties of the water available from different soils:

- | | | |
|--|---|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Śveta mṛt</i> (white soil) | : | <i>Kaṣāya</i> |
| 2. <i>Kṛṣṇa mṛt</i> (black soil) | : | <i>Madhura</i> |
| 3. <i>Pāṇḍura mṛt</i> (yellowish white soil) | : | <i>Tikta</i> |
| 4. <i>Nīla mṛt</i> (blue soil) | : | <i>Kaṣāya, madhura</i> |
| 5. <i>Ūṣara mṛt</i> (saline soil) | : | <i>Lavapa</i> |
| 6. <i>Miśra mṛt</i> (mixed soil) | : | Mixed properties. |

Properties of the water due to the dominancy of 5 basic elements:

- | | | |
|---|---|---------------------------|
| 1. Water from the land having <i>pṛthivī guṇādhikya</i> | : | <i>Lavapa, amla rasas</i> |
| 2. Water from the land having <i>ap bhūtādhikya</i> | : | <i>Madhura rasa</i> |
| 3. Water from the land having <i>teja guṇādhikya</i> | : | <i>Tikta, katu rasas</i> |
| 4. Water from the land having <i>vāyu guṇādhikya</i> | : | <i>Kaṣāya rasa</i> |
| 5. Water from the land having <i>ākāśa guṇādhikya</i> | : | <i>Avyakta rasa</i> |

Water obtained from the soil having the dominancy of *ākāśa mahabhūta* is not having any perceptible taste. So it can be used as a substitute for *gaṅgāmbu*.

According to the source of availability:

Water is divided in eight types as under:

1. *Koupyajala* : Well water—alkaline in nature and vitiates *pitta doṣa*.
2. *Sārasajala* : Natural lake—sweet in taste and light, increases digestive power and not vitiates *vāta*.
3. *Tāṭakajala* : Artificial pond water—heavy and vitiates *vāta*.
4. *Caṇḍya* : Water collected in pits of rocks vitiates *pitta*.
5. *Prāśravaṇa* : Mitigates all the *tridosas*.
6. *Audbhida* : Sweet in taste and alleviates *pitta*.
7. *Vāpijala* : Sweet in taste and light.
8. *Nadijala* : *Kaṭu rasa, rūkṣa guṇa, vāta vardhaka*.

Pāna-anārha jala (Water not suitable for drinking):

न पित्तेत्पद्मशैवालपुण्यादिलासृतम् । सूर्येन्दुपवनादृष्टमभिवृष्टे घने गुरु ॥६॥

फेनिले जन्तुमत्तप्ते दन्तग्राह्यतिशीत्यतः । अनातर्वे च परिव्यमार्तवे प्रथमे च यत् ॥७॥

लूटादितन्तुविषपूर्वविषसंश्लेषवद्वितम् ।

Water which is dirty, mixed with algae & grass, turbid, not exposed to sun, moon and gentle wind rained at that time, having *guru guṇa*, frothy, contaminated by bacteria, unable to drink and causing tingling sensation of teeth due to its severe coldness, unseasonal rain water or in the beginning of the season, contaminated by the webs, urine, excreta of spiders and other insects should not be used for drinking.

Notes:

The urine, excreta and the decomposed bodies of the insects, and other animals live in water will contaminate water. Plants growing in water cover the entire surface, and obstruct the passage of sunlight and air results in the contamination of water.

Fresh rainwater also may be polluted with urine, excreta and poisonous matter from spiders and other insects. All these kinds of water are not suitable for drinking and even for bathing.

Filtering, heated by fire, exposing to sunlight or by immersing the red-hot iron balls etc. will purify such contaminated water.

Similarly by putting the tubers of lotus plant, seeds of *kataka* (*Strychnos potatorum*), roots of sacred grass, *gomedaka* (Dolomite stone) etc. into the water also purifies water. To remove the bad smell of the water, put the flowers of *pāṭalā*, *karavīra* etc. into the water.

Nadi jala (River water):

पश्चिमोदधिगः शीघ्रवहा धाक्षामलोदकः ॥८॥

पश्चिमा: समासात्ता नद्यो विपरीतास्वतोऽन्यथा ।

Briefly saying water of rivers, which flow towards the western ocean and travels swiftly and

also having pure water is wholesome and suitable for drinking. And the others means the rivers flows towards the eastern direction, running slowly and contaminated are not suitable for drinking.

उपलास्फालनाक्षेपविच्छेदैः खेदितोदकाः ॥१९॥

हिमवन्मलयोद्भूताः पथ्यास्ता एव च स्थिराः । कृमिश्लीपदहृत्कण्ठशिरोरोगान् प्रकुर्वते ॥१०॥

Water running from Himālaya and Malaya mountains are good for health where as the same water if gets stagnated causes *kṛmi* (intestinal parasites), *ślipada* (filariasis), *hṛdroga* (heart disease), *kañtharoga* and *śiroroga* (diseases of throat and head).

प्राच्यावन्त्यपरान्तोत्था दुर्नामानि, महेन्द्रजाः । उदरश्लीपदातङ्कान्, सह्यविन्ध्योद्भवाः पुनः ॥११॥

कुष्ठपाण्डुशिरोरोगान्, दोषद्वयः पारियात्रजाः । बलपौरुषकारिण्यः, सागराभ्यन्निदोषकृत् ॥१२॥

- * Water obtained from Prāchya (Gauḍa), Avantī (Mālwā) and Aparāntā (Koṅkaṇa) regions and also from Mahendra mountain causes *arśas*, (piles) *udara roga* (abdominal disorders) and *ślipada*(filariasis).
- * Where as the water obtained from Sahya and Vindhya mountains causes *kuṣṭha*, (skin disorders), *pāṇḍu* (anaemia) and *śiroroga*. (diseases of the head).
- * Water running from Pariyātra mountain mitigates all the three *doṣas*, nourishes the body and increases vigor.
- * But *sāmudrodaka* vitiates all the three *doṣas*.

विद्यात्कूपतडागादीन् जाङ्गलानूपशैलतः ।

Water available from various resources like *kūpa*, *tadāga*, *counḍya*, *sārasa*, *prāsravaṇa*, *oudbhida*, *vāpī*, *nadī* of different regions like *jāṅgala deśa*, *āñūpa deśa* and *parvaṭa deśa* are also having similar qualities and properties of those places respectively.

Jalapāna varjya (Avoiding of drinking water):

नाम्बु पेयमशक्त्या वा स्वल्पमल्पाग्निगुल्मभिः ॥१३॥

पाण्डुदरातिसाराशर्शेग्रहणीशोषशोथिभिः । ऋते शरन्निदाघाभ्यां पिबेत्स्वस्थोऽपि चाल्पशः ॥१४॥

- * One should not drink water more than his normal capacity.
- * Those who are suffering from *agnimāndya*, *gulma*, *pāṇḍu*, *udara*, *atisāra*, *arśas*, *grahaṇī doṣa*, *śoṣa*, *śopha* etc. should drink little quantity of water than their usual capacity.
- * Except in *śarad* and *grīṣma* ṛtu healthy persons also should drink water in a limited quantity.

Jalapāna phala (Effects of drinking water):

समस्थूलकृशा भुक्तमध्यान्तप्रथमाम्बुपाः ।

- * Water taken in the middle of meals, maintains the normalcy of tissues and easy digestion.
- * Water consumed immediately after meals leads to obesity and accumulation of fat into abdominal region.
- * Drinking water before meals leads to indigestion and thereby emaciation of body.

Śitalajala (Cold water):

शीतं मदात्ययग्लानिमूर्च्छाच्छर्दिश्रमभ्रमान् ॥1 5॥
तृष्णोष्णादाहपित्तास्वविषाण्यम्बु नियच्छति ।

Cold water relieves *madātyaya*, *glāni*, *mūrcchā*, *chardi*, *śrama*, *bhrama*, *trṣṇā*, *uṣna*, *dāha*, *rakta-pitta*, *viṣa* etc.

Uṣnajala (Hot water):

दीपनं पाचनं कण्ठं लघूष्णं बस्तिशोधनम् ॥1 6॥
हिध्माध्मानानिलश्लेष्मसद्यःशुद्धिनवज्वरे । कासामपीनसश्वासपार्श्वरुक्षु च शस्यते ॥1 7॥

- * Hot water increases the power of digestion, cooks undigested food material, good for throat diseases, easy to digest and purifies the urinary bladder.
- * Hot water is indicated in hiccup, abdominal distension, *vāta* and *kapha* disorders, after *sodhana* therapy, acute fever, cough, *āma* condition, running nose, dyspnoea, pain in the flanks.

Notes:

Hot water: Basing on the variation of seasons like summer, winter, place of soil and also heaviness and lightness, hot water is to be prepared in the following ways:

1. *Kṣīṇapāda* : Take 4 parts of water and boiled then reduced till 3 parts remained.
2. *Tribhāga* : Water boiled and reduced to 1/3rd of the original quantity.
3. *Ardhabhāga* : Water boiled and reduced till the half of the quantity remained.
4. *Kvathita* : Water boiled till the boiling point.

Water heated by immersing red-hot iron balls, gold, silver, mud or bitumen with water, or by exposing to sunlight, either hot or cold, mitigates all the *tridoṣas*.

Such water is easily digestible and is ideal for *samsarga* and *śannipātaja rogas*.

Boiled water lost the properties of *dīpana* and *pācana* and increases all the *tridoṣas*, when stored for 2-3 days. Hence boiled water is to be prepared daily and should not be stored.

Hot water is also having the similar properties of cold water like sweet in taste and cold in potency. Hence it is advisable to take hot water in thirst and fever.

In *āmājīrṇa* and *viṣṭabdha-ajīrṇa* also, hot water is advisable.

Ākāśodaka (Antarikṣa jala):

It is of 4 types:

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dhārā</i> (rain water) | 3. <i>Tauṣāra</i> (water from dew) |
| 2. <i>Kṣāra</i> (hailstone) | 4. <i>Haima</i> (snow water) |

Out of the 4 types, rainwater is good because it is easily digestible.

Water from hailstones is very cold and heavy and increases *vāta* and *kapha dosas*.

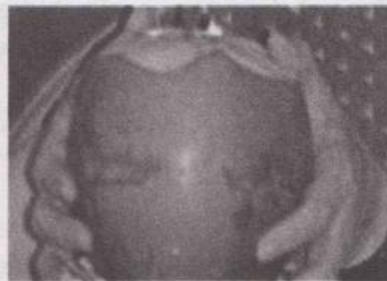
Water obtained from *candrakānta* stones is sweet, cold and easily digestible which removes the evil spirits, *visha* disorders and also fevers caused by *pitta doṣa*.

अनभिष्यन्दि लघु च तोषे व्यवस्थितशीतलम् । पित्तपुरुते हिते दोषे, व्युषिते तत्रिदोषकृत् ॥1 8॥

Water which is boiled and cooled doesn't cause *abhiṣyandi* and is easily digestible and such water is wholesome in a condition where *pitta* is vitiated and associated with other *doṣas*. Where as the same stored over night (stale water) causes the aggravation of all the *tridoṣas*.

Nārikelodaka (Coconut water):

नारिकेलोदकं स्नाधे स्वादु शृङ्खे हिमे लघु । वृष्णापित्तानिलहरे दीपने वस्तिशोधनम् ॥1 9॥



Nārikelodaka

Coconut water consists of *madhura rasa* (sweet in taste), *snigdha*, *laghu guṇa* (unctuous & lightness in quality) and *śīta vīrya* (cold in potency), acts as aphrodisiac, mitigates thirst and *vāta*, *pitta* disorders. It increases digestive power and purifies the urinary bladder.

वर्षासु दिव्यनादेष्ये परे तोषे वरावरे ।

During rainy season uncontaminated rainwater is the best and river water is the worst for drinking.

इति तोषवर्गः ।

Thus ends *Toya varga*.

अथ क्षीरवर्गः ।

2. Kṣīra Varga

(Group of Different Types of Milk)

Milk is of 8 types:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Go kṣīra</i> (Cow's milk) | 5. <i>Mahiṣa kṣīra</i> (Buffalo's milk) |
| 2. <i>Ajā kṣīra</i> (Goat's milk) | 6. <i>Aśva kṣīra</i> (Horse's milk) |
| 3. <i>Uṣṭra kṣīra</i> (Camel's milk) | 7. <i>Nārī kṣīra</i> (Breast milk) |
| 4. <i>Avi kṣīra</i> (Sheep's milk) | 8. <i>Aibha kṣīra</i> (Elephant's milk) |

General properties of the milk:

स्वातुपाकरसे स्निग्धमोजस्य धातुवर्धनम् ॥२०॥
बातपित्तहरे वृद्धे श्लेष्मले गुरु शीतलम् । प्राप्तः पथः:-

- * Milk in general consists *madhura rasa*, *madhura vipāka* and *snigdha guṇa*.
- * Improves the *ojas* and promotes the growth of the tissues and acts as an aphrodisiac.
- * Due to heaviness and cool in potency, mitigates *vāta*, *pitta* and increases *kapha*.

Go-kṣīra (Cow's milk):

-अप्र गच्छं तु जीवनीयं रसायनम् ॥२१॥
क्षतक्षीणहिते मेध्ये बल्ये स्तन्यकरे सरम् । अमध्यमदालक्ष्मीश्वासकासातिवृद्ध्युधः ॥२२॥
जीर्णज्वरे मूत्रकृच्छ्रे रक्तपित्ते च नाशयेत् ।

- * Cow's milk sustains life.
- * Acts as a rejuvenator.
- * Indicated in injury to chest and emaciation.
- * Improves the intelligence and strength of the body.
- * Increases breast milk.
- * Spreads all over the body due to mobile quality.
- * Relieves fatigue, giddiness, toxicity, inauspiciousness, dyspnoea, cough, excessive thirst and hunger.
- * Cures fevers of long duration, difficulty in urination and bleeding disorders.

Mahiṣa-kṣīra (Buffalo's milk):

हितमत्यान्वनिष्ठेभ्यो गरीयो माहिषं हिमम् ॥२३॥

- * Buffalo's milk is indicated for the persons having increased power of digestion and insomnia.
- * Buffalo's milk is heavy in quality and cold in potency.

Ajū-kṣīra (Goat's milk):

अस्पाम्बुपानव्यायामकदुतिक्ताशनेलंषु । आजे शोषज्वरशासररक्षितातिसारजित् ॥२४॥

Goats usually drink less water, doing heavy exercise and eat plants and the leaves having pungent and bitter in taste.

Hence goats' milk is easily digestible and is indicated in tuberculosis, chronic fevers, dyspnoea, hemorrhage and diarrhoea.

Uṣṭra-kṣīra (Camel's milk):

इष्टुक्षोषालवणमौड्के दीपने लघु । शस्ते बातकफानाहक्षिमिशोफोदराश्चसाम् ॥२५॥

- * Camel's milk is slightly dryness in quality, hot in potency, and salt in taste.
- * Increases the power of digestion, easily digestable.

- * Indicated in *vāta* and *kapha* disorders, abdominal distension, worm infestation, oedema, ascitis and piles etc.

Nāri-kṣira (Breast milk):

मानुषं वातपित्तासृगभिघाताक्षिरोगजित् । तर्पणाश्वेतनैर्नस्यैः-

Breast milk is indicated in eye disorders caused by the vitiation of *vāta*, *pitta*, *asrk/rakta* (blood) and *abhighāta* (injury) being used as *tarpaṇa*, *āścotana* and *nasya*.

Avika-kṣira (Sheep's milk):

-अहृद्यं तूष्णामाविकम् ॥२ ६ ॥
वातव्याधिहरं हिध्माश्वासपित्तकफ्रदम् ।

- * Sheep's milk is hot in potency and not good for heart.
- * Relieves *vāta* disorders.
- * Increases hiccup, dyspnoea, *pitta* and *kapha*.

Hasti (Aibha)-kṣira (Elephant's milk):

हस्तिन्या: स्थैर्यकृत्-

Elephant's milk gives good strength to the body.

Ekaśapha-kṣira (Single hooved animals' milk):

-बाढमुष्णं त्वैकशकं लघु ॥२ ७ ॥
शाखावातहरं साम्ललवणं जडताकरम् ।

- * Single hooved animals (like horse, donkey etc.) milk is easily digestible.
- * Cures *vāta dosa* of tissue level.
- * Having sour and salt in taste.
- * Produces laziness.

Āma, śrta, dhāroṣṇa kṣira guna

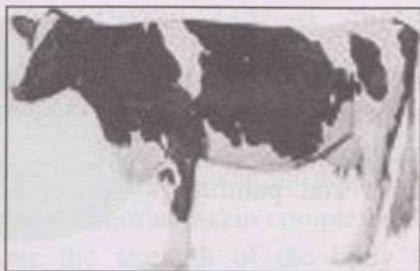
(Properties of unboiled, boiled and directly collected fresh milk):

पयोऽभिष्वन्दि मुर्वामं, युक्त्या शृतमतोऽन्यथा ॥२ ८ ॥
भवेदगरीयोऽतिशृतं, धारोष्णाममृतोपमम् ।

- * Unboiled milk is difficult to digest and causes *abhiṣyandi*; produces excess secretion in the tissue-pores and causing their blockage. Where as appropriately boiled milk is easily digestible. Over boiled milk becomes indigestible.
- * Warm fresh milk collected directly from the udder is having similar qualities of nectar.

Notes:

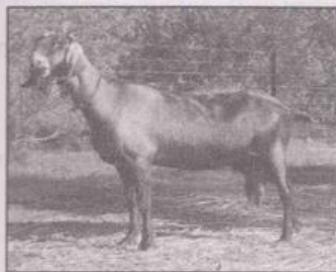
- * Milk of animals fed on oil cake of sesamum and sour substances are difficult to digest and cause *abhiṣyandi*.



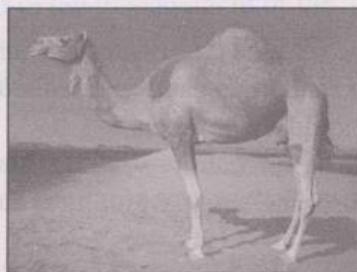
Go



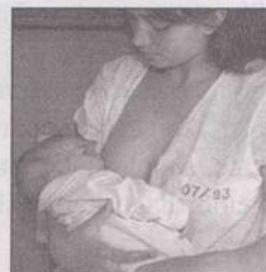
Māhiṣa



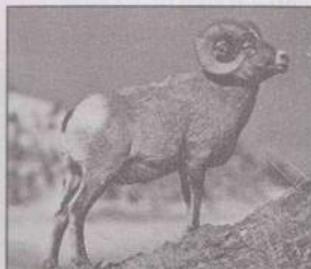
Ajā



Uṣṭra



Nāri



Avika



Hasti (aibha)



Ekaśapha

- * Milk of animals, which fed on light substances, is easily digested.
- * Due to the influence of the moon and lack of exercise in the night time, milk collected in the morning hours is somewhat hard to digest in comparison with the milk drawn in the evening hours.

Dadhi (Curd/Coagulated milk):

अम्लपाकरसं ग्राहि गुरुष्णां दधि वातजित् ॥२ ९॥

मेदःशुक्रबलश्लेष्मपित्तरक्ताग्निशोफकृत् । रोचिष्णु शस्तमरुचौ शीतके विषमज्वरे ॥३ ०॥

पीनसे मूत्रकृच्छ्रे च, रुक्षं तु ग्रहणीगदे । नैवाद्यान्त्रिशि नैवोष्णां वसन्तोषाशरत्सु न ॥३ १॥

नामुद्द्रसूपं नाक्षौद्रं तन्नाधृतसितोपलम् । न चानामलकं नापि नित्यं नो मन्दमन्यथा ॥३ २॥

ज्वरासूक्ष्मित्वीसर्पकुष्ठपाण्डुभ्रमप्रदम् ।

- * Curds in general is sour in taste and also at the end of digestion.

- * Constipating, difficult to digest, hot in potency.

- * Mitigates *vāta*.
- * Increases fat, semen, strength, *kapha*, *pitta*, *rakta*, digestive power and oedema.
- * Relieves anorexia as it increases the taste of perception.
- * Indication in intermittent fevers, nasal catarrh and painful micturition.
- * It is given in dysentery after removing cream.
- * Should not eat curds during night time.
- * Should not heat curds.
- * Curds should not be used in the seasons like *vasanta*, *grīṣma* and *śarad*. Without adding green gram, honey, ghee, *āmalakī* and sugar candy curds should not be taken.
- * Curds yet to be prepared should not be taken.
- * One should take the above precautions while consuming curds. Otherwise fever, hemorrhage, herpes skin diseases, anemia, giddiness etc. may be happened.



Dadhi

Takra (Buttermilk):

तत्रं लघु कथायाम्लं दीपनं कफवातजित् ॥३ ३ ॥
शोफोदरार्शेग्रहणीदोषमूत्रग्रहारुचीः। प्लीहगुल्मधृतव्यापदग्रपाण्डवामयान् जयेत् ॥३ ४ ॥

- * Buttermilk is easy to digest and contains astringent and sour tastes.
- * It increases digestive power and mitigates *kapha* and *vāta*.
- * Indicated in oedema, ascitis, piles, disorders of duodenum, anurea, anorexia, abdominal tumors, spleenic enlargement, complications of oleation therapy, artificial poisoning, anemia etc.

तद्वन्मस्तु सरं स्रोतःशोधि विष्टम्भजिल्लघु ।



Takra

Dadhi mastu (whey) also having the similar qualities of buttermilk. In addition to that it is having *sara*, *laghu gunas*, cleans the channels and acts as a laxative.

Notes:

Types of buttermilk:

In Dhalhaṇa's commentary, three types of buttermilk will be seen as under:

1. Buttermilk prepared and removed the butter completely—vitiates *doṣas*.
2. Buttermilk with half of the quantity of butter removed—increases digestive power.
3. Without removing the butter—gives strength to the body.

In Dhanavantari Nighaṇṭu, four types of buttermilk has been described:

1. *Ghola* : churned the curd without adding any water.
2. *Mathita* : adding equal quantity of water.
3. *Udasvit* : adding half of the quantity of water.
4. *Takra* : adding 1/4th quantity of water.

Navanita (Butter):

नवनीतं नवं वृष्णं शीतं वर्णबलाग्निकृत् ॥३ ५ ॥
सङ्घ्राहि वातपित्तासुक्षयार्शोर्दितकासजित् । क्षीरोद्धवं तु सङ्घ्राहि रक्तपित्ताक्षिरोगजित् ॥३ ६ ॥



Navanita

- * Fresh butter is aphrodisiac and cold in potency.
- * It imparts colour and skin complexion. It is also useful to improve the strength of the body and the power of digestion.
- * It absorbs water. It is indicated in the management of the diseases caused by the vitiation of *vāta*, *pitta* and *rakta* and also tuberculosis, haemorrhoides, facial paralysis and cough.
- * Butter obtained directly from milk is also absorbs water. It is useful for the management of haemorrhagic as well as eye disorders.

Gṛīta (Ghee or clarified butter):

शस्तं धीस्मृतिमेधानिबलायुःशुक्रचक्षुषाम् । बालवृद्धप्रजाकान्तिसौकुमार्यस्वरार्थिनाम् ॥३ ७ ॥
क्षतक्षीणपरीसर्पशस्त्राग्निग्लपितात्मनाम् । वातपित्तविषोन्मादशोषालक्ष्मीज्वरापहम् ॥३ ८ ॥
स्नेहानामुत्तमं शीतं वयसः स्थापनं परम् । सहस्रवीर्यं विधिभिर्घृतं कर्मसहस्रकृत् ॥३ ९ ॥



Gṛīta

- * *Gṛīta* increases intelligence, memory and cleverness.
- * Power of digestion improves and life span increases.
- * Increases sexual vigor and good for eyes.
- * Wholesome for aged and children.
- * Skin complexion enhances, body becomes soft and imparts pleasant voice.
- * Indicated for injury to chest, herpes, injury caused by weapons, burns, *vāta* and *pitta* disorders, poisonous state, insanity, emaciation, inauspiciousness (witchcraft) and chronic fevers.
- * Ghee is the best among the four prominent oleating (fatty) substances. It is cold in potency.
- * It is the best one to postpone the onset of old age.
- * Properly processed ghee possesses a number of good qualities.

मदापस्मारमूर्च्छायशिरःकर्णाक्षियोनिजान् । पुराणं जयति व्याधीन् ब्रणशोधनरोपणम् ॥४ ० ॥

- * *Purāṇa gṛīta* i.e. ten years old ghee cures intoxication, epilepsy, fainting, head, ear and eye disorders and vaginal disorders. It also cleans and heals the ulcers.
- * Old ghee consists of all the properties of fresh ghee along with the special qualities. Hence it is so similar to nectar.

बल्या: किलाटपीयूषकूर्चिकामोरणादयः । शुक्रनिद्राकफकरा विषभिंगुरुदोषला: ॥४ १ ॥

Kilāta, pīyūsa, kūrcikā, moraṇa etc. increases strength, semen, sleep, and also *kapha*. It causes constipation, difficult to digest and vitiates *dosas*.

Notes:

Preserving the ghee for:

More than 100 years in the under ground is called	:	kaumbha
Up to 10 years is called	:	purāṇa ghṛta
More than 10 years is called	:	prapūraṇa ghṛta

Kilāta is the solid portion obtained after heating the milk.

Pīyūṣa is the milk of cow which has just given birth to a calf upto a period of 3 days.

Kūrcikā is commonly known as *kova*.

Moraṇa/moraṇa is the milk of a cow seven days after calving.

गच्छे क्षीरघृते श्रेष्ठे निन्दिते चाविसम्भवे ।

Cow's milk and ghee are the best and those of sheep's are the worst.

इति क्षीरवर्गः ।

Thus ends *Kṣīra varga*.

*

अथेक्षुवर्गः

3. Ikṣu Varga

(Group of Different Types of Sugarcanes)

Ikṣu or sugercane is of 12 types as under:

- | | | |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. Paṇḍraka | 5. Naipāla | 9. Sūciपatraka |
| 2. Varīśa | 6. Dirghapatraka | 10. Tāpasekṣu |
| 3. Śataparva | 7. Nīlapīra | 11. Keśakrūra |
| 4. Kāntāra | 8. Kāṣṭhekuṣu | 12. Bhīruka. |

इक्षो रसो गुरुः स्निग्धो बृहणः कफमूत्रकृत् ॥४ २ ॥

वृष्यः शीतोऽस्त्रपित्तधनः स्वादुपाकरसः सरः ।

Sugarcane juice contains:

- * *Madhura rasa, madhura vipāka, guru* (heavy), *snigdha, sara guṇa* (laxative) and *śīta vīrya*.
- * Gives strength to the body. Increases *kapha* and *mūtra*. It is an aphrodisiac and mitigates *vāta*.

- * Sugarcane juice taken after meals increases *vāta*.
- * Indicated in hemorrhagic disorders.

सोऽग्रे सलवणो, दन्तपीडितः शर्करासमः ॥४ ३ ॥

मूलाग्रजन्तु जग्धादिपीडनान्मलसङ्करात् ।

किञ्चित्कालं विधृत्या च विकृतिं याति यान्त्रिकः ॥४ ४ ॥

विदाही गुरुविषष्टभी तेनासौ-



- * Sugarcane juice from the top of the cane is slightly salty, after crushing with teeth it becomes equivalent to sugar.

Ikṣu

- * Juice obtained through crushing machines becomes abnormal quickly due to crushing of the root tip and worm infested cane, which causes burning sensation in the stomach, difficult in digestion and causes constipation.

-तत्र पौण्ड्रकः । शैत्यप्रसादमाधुर्यैर्वरस्तमनु वांशिकः ॥४ ५ ॥

शतपर्वककान्तारनैपालाद्यास्ततः क्रमात् । सक्षाताः सकषायाश्च सोष्णाः किञ्चिद्दिद्विहिनः ॥४ ६ ॥

Among all varieties of *ikṣu*, *pauṇḍraka* type of sugarcane is the best one due to cool in potency, pleasing and sweet in taste and *vāṁśika* is inferior to it followed by *śataparvā*, *kāntāra*, *naipālā* etc. in their succeeding order as they are slightly alkaline and astringent in taste, hot in potency and cause burning sensation.

Phāṇita (Half-cooked molasses):

फाणितं गुर्वभिष्यन्दि चयकृन्मूत्रशोधनम् ।

Phāṇita (half cooked molasses) is having *guru* and *abhisyandī guna* and vitiates *dosas*. It also acts as *mūtra śodhaka*.

Guḍa (Jaggery):

नातिश्लेष्मकरो धौतः सृष्टमूत्रशकृदगुडः ॥४ ७ ॥

प्रभूतकृमिमज्जासृङ्गेदोमांसकफोऽपरः । हृद्यः पुराणः पथ्यश्च, नवः श्लेष्माग्निसादकृत् ॥४ ८ ॥

- * Purified jaggery (washed well and made white) slightly increases *kapha dosha* and eliminates urine and faeces.
- * Unpurified jaggery increases intestinal worms, disorders of bone marrow, blood, fat and *kapha*.
- * Old jaggery is good for health and fresh one increases *kapha* and causes indigestion.

Śarkarā (Sugar):

वृष्ण्याः क्षीणक्षतहिता रक्तपित्तानिलापहाः ।

मत्स्यपिण्डकाखण्डसिताः क्रमेण गुणवत्तमाः ॥४ ९ ॥

- * *Matsyandikā* (crude sugar), *khanda* (sugar candy) and *sitā* (fine sugar) are good in their succeeding order.
- * Sugar is aphrodisiac, good for those injury to chest, hemorrhage and mitigates *vāta*.



Guḍa



Śarkara

Yāsa śarkarā:

तदगुणा तिक्तमधुरा कषाया यासशक्तरा ।

Yāsa śarkarā (prepared from the plant *Alhagi maurorum* is also similar in properties and contains *tikta*, *madhura* and *kaṣāya rasa*.

दाहतृट्च्छर्दिमूर्च्छासृक्पित्तध्यः सर्वशक्तरा: ॥5 0 ॥

All types of sugars are indicated in burning sensation, thirst, vomiting, fainting and bleeding disorders.

शर्करेक्षुविकाराणां फाणितं च वरावरे ।

Sugar is the best and *phāṇita* (half cooked molasses) is the worst among sugarcane products.

इतीक्षुवर्गः

Thus ends *Isku varga*.

*

अथ मधुवर्गः

Madhu Varga

(Group of Different Types of Honey)

Madhu (Honey):

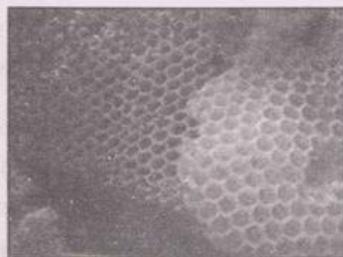
चक्षुष्यं छेदि तृट्श्लेष्यविषहिध्मास्त्रपित्तनुत् ॥5 1 ॥

मेहकुष्ठकृमच्छर्दिश्वासकासातिसारजित् । व्रणशोधनसन्धानरोपणं वातलं मधु ॥5 2 ॥

रुक्षं कषायमधुरं, तनुल्या मधुशक्तरा ।

* Honey is *caksusya* (good for eyes). It breaks up the solidified materials inside the body.

* Indicated in thirst, *kapha* and poisonous disorders, hiccough, bleeding disorders.



Honey Comb



Madhu

- * Cures skin disorders, diabetes, worm infestations, vomiting, dyspnoea, cough & diarrhoea.
- * Cleans and heals the wounds and unifies fractures.
- * Increases *vāta* and mitigates *kapha*.
- * Consists astringent and sweet in taste, dry and becomes pungent after digestion.

Madhu śarkarā:

By keeping the honey in a bottle for few months, sedimentation will be formed. Such sedimentation is called *madhu śarkarā*, which is having the similar qualities of honey.

उष्णमुष्णार्तमुष्णे च युक्तं चोष्णीर्निहन्ति तत् ॥५ ३ ॥

- * Honey should not be used after heating as the poisonous bees have collected it from various flowers that are having different tastes, qualities and potencies.
- * Hence the persons dominated by *pitta* constitution mixed with hot substances in summer season and the area where the temperature is so high should not use the honey as it (is not good for health) kills them quickly, similar to that of poison.

प्रच्छर्दने निरुहे च मधूष्णां न निवार्यते । अलब्धपाकमाश्वेव तयोर्यस्मान्त्रिवर्तते ॥५ ४ ॥

But the honey can be used after heating in the therapeutic procedures like emesis and medicated enemata with decoctions as it comes out of the body quickly without undergoing digestion.

Notes:

- * As the honey is hard to digest, dry, hot and astringent in taste, it should be used in smaller quantities. Higher doses leads to indigestion.
- * Generally to treat indigestion hot substances and hot water are to be given. But this general line of treatment is contrary to treat the indigestion, caused by excessive consumption of honey. Because hot water and hot substances should not be given with honey and the cold substances are unwholesome in indigestion.
- * Honey being a combination of different tastes, qualities and potencies, is the best *yogavāhi*. Hence, when honey is used along with aphrodisiac drugs, it helps in the increase of sexual vigor.

Types of honey:

आमरं पौत्रिकं क्षीरं माक्षिकं च यथोत्तरम् ।

Honey is of 4 types and is good in the order of succession.

1. *Bhrāmara* : Honey collected by the bees looks like large sized black carpenter bees and such honey is whitish in colour.
2. *Pauttika* : Honey collected by yellowish big bees and the colour of honey resembles ghee.
3. *Kṣaudra* : Collected by small bees and the honey is dark brown in colour.
4. *Māksika* : Honey collected by big sized honey coloured poisonous bees. The colour of the honey resembles oil.

Out of the 4 types of honey it is good in the order of succession, that too old.

Ksaudra and *māksika* varieties of honey should be used as far as possible.

इति मधुवर्गः

Thus ends *Madhu varga*.

अथ तैलवर्गः

5. Taila Varga

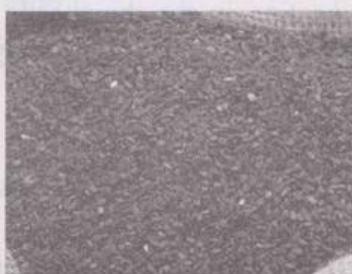
(Group of Different Types of Oils)

Tila taila (Gingili oil):

तैलं स्वयोनिवत्त्र मुख्यं तीक्ष्णं व्यवायि च । त्वगदोषकृदचक्षुष्णं सूक्ष्मोष्णं कफक्रन्न च ॥५५॥
कृशानां बृहणायालं स्थूलानां कर्शनाय च । बद्धविद्कं कृमिघ्नं च संस्कारात्सर्वरोगजित् ॥५६॥



Tila



Tila Seeds



Tila taila

- * Generally oils are having the similar properties of the substances from which they are obtained.
- * Gingili oil is the best among the group of oils.
- * Due to *tikṣṇa* and *vyavāyī guṇas*, it penetrates into minute channels also.
- * Regular use of gingili oil produces skin diseases and also not good for eyes. It is hot in potency and not increases *kapha*.
- * It makes lean persons fatty and fatty persons lean.
- * Constipating and kills worms.
- * After processing properly, it is indicated in several diseases.

Eraṇḍa taila (Castor oil):

सतित्कोषणमैरण्डं तैलं स्वादु सरं गुरु । वर्ध्मगुल्मानिलकफानुदरं विषमज्वरम् ॥५७॥
रुक्षोफौ च कटीगुह्यकोषपृष्ठाश्रयौ जयेत् ।

- * Castor oil consists *tikta*, *kaṭu* and *madhura rasa*; and *sara* and *guru guṇa*.



Eranđa Plant



Eranđa Seeds

- * It cures *vardhma* (scrotal enlargement, abdominal tumors, *kapha* and *vāta* disorders, ascitis and malarial fevers.
- * Relieves the pain and swelling pertaining to hip, scrotum, abdomen and back.

Rakta eranđa taila:

तीक्ष्णोष्णं पिच्छिलं विस्रं, रक्तैरण्डोद्धवं त्वति ॥५ ८ ॥

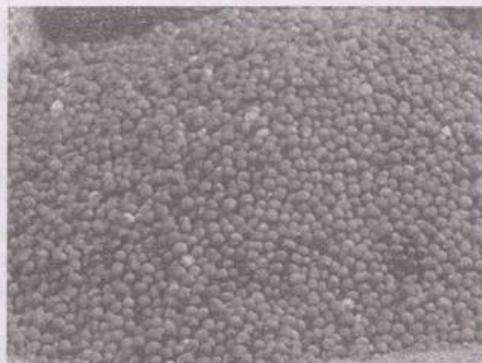
Oil obtained from red variety of castor seeds is having the qualities of *tīkṣṇa*, *uṣṇa* and *picchila*. It also consists *visra gandha* (putrefied smell).

Sarṣapa taila (Mustard oil):

कटूष्णं सार्षपं तीक्ष्णं कफशुक्रानिलापहम् । लघु पित्तास्वकृत् कोठकुष्ठार्शोन्निजन्तुजित् ॥५ ९ ॥



Sarṣapa



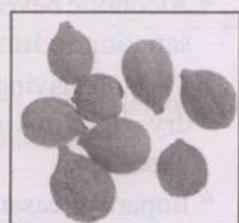
Sarṣapa Seeds

Mustard oil is having *katu rasa* and contains *tīkṣṇa*, *laghu guṇas* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It mitigates *vāta* and *kapha doṣas* and decreases *śukra dhātu* in the body. It is useful to relieve *kotha*, *kuṣṭha*, *arśas*, *vraṇa*, *krimi roga* and causes *raktapitta*.

Akṣa taila (Oil of vibhītaka):

आक्षं स्वादु हिमं केशं गुरु पित्तानिलापहम् ।

Vibhītaka taila is having *madhura rasa*; *sīta* and *guru guṇa*. It acts as hair tonic. It is useful to mitigate *pitta* and *vāta*.



Akṣa seeds

Nimba taila (Neem oil):

नात्युष्णं निम्बजं तिक्तं कृमिकुष्ठकफप्रणुत् ॥६०॥

Nimba taila is possessing *tikta rasa* and not having excessive *uṣṇa guṇa*. It is useful in the management of *krimi roga* and *kuṣṭha*. It mitigates *kapha doṣa*.



Nimba seeds

Umā-kusumbha taila (Linseed oil and safflower oil):

उमाकुसुम्भजं चोष्णं त्वगदोषकफपित्तकृत् ।

Oil obtained from the seeds of *umā* (*Linum usitatissimum*), *kusumbha* (*Carathamus tinctorius*) are having *uṣṇa guṇa* and produces skin diseases. It also increases *kapha* and *pitta doṣas*.

Vāsā (Muscle fat) and Majjā (Bone marrow):

वसा मज्जा च वातद्वौ बलपित्तकफप्रदौ ॥६१॥

मांसानुगस्वरूपौ च, विद्यान्मेदोऽपि ताविव ।

- * Both muscle fat and bone marrow decreases *vāta* and increases *kapha*, *pitta* and also gives strength to the body.
- * Muscle fat and bone marrow are also having the similar qualities of the mutton from which they are obtained. Similarly fat also consists of the same qualities of the above.

इति तैलवर्गः

Thus ends *Taila varga*.

*

अथ मद्यवर्गः

6. Madya Varga

(Group of Alcoholic Beverages)

दीपनं रोचनं मद्यां तीक्ष्णोष्णां तुष्टिपुष्टिदम् ॥६२॥

सस्वादुतिक्तकटुकमम्लपाकरसं सरम् । सकषायं स्वरारोग्यप्रतिभावर्णकृलघु ॥६३॥

नष्टनिश्चित्तनिश्चित्त्यो हितं पित्तास्वदूषणम् । कुशस्थूलहितं रूक्षं सूक्ष्मं स्रोतोविशेधनम् ॥६४॥

वातश्लेष्महरं युक्त्या पीतं विषवदन्यथा ।

- * Alcoholic beverages increases the appetite and perception of taste. Gives satiation and nourishes the body.
- * They are having sweet, bitter, pungent, sour and astringent in taste; sharp, dry, light and mobile; hot in potency and become sour at the end of digestion.
- * Imparts pleasant voice, good health, intelligence and complexion to the skin.



Madya

- * Beneficial for both the conditions such as sleeplessness and excessive sleep.
- * Vitiates *pitta* and *rakta doṣa*.
- * Judicious intake of alcoholic beverages moulds the lean persons as stout and viceversa.
- * Cleans the body channels and mitigates *vāta* and *kapha doṣa*.
- * Consumption of alcohol as per the guidelines given in the classics bestows all these benefits, otherwise it acts as a poison.

गुरु तद्वोषजननं नवं, जीर्णमतोऽन्यथा ॥६ ५ ॥

Fresh alcohols are not easy to digest and increase all the three *doṣas*, whereas old wines are having exactly opposite qualities, that means they are easy to digest and decreases the vitiated *tridoṣas*.

Contraindications:

पेयं नोषोपचारेण न विरक्तक्षुधातुरैः । नात्यर्थतीक्षणमृद्गल्पसम्भारं कलुषं न च ॥६ ६ ॥

- * Alcoholic drinks should not be taken, those who are consuming hot substances along with hot comforts.
- * Alcoholic drinks should not be taken by persons if they are suffering from diarrhoea or they had undergone purgative therapy.
- * It is also contraindicated when the individuals are suffering from hunger.
- * Wines, which are very strong or very weak, and are very thin or turbid and spoiled, should not be used for drinking.

Surā (Beer):

गुल्मोदराशर्णग्रहणीशोषहृत् स्नेहनी गुरुः । सुराऽनिलधी मेदोऽसृक्स्तन्यमूत्रकफावहा ॥६ ७ ॥

Surā is having *sneha* and *guru guṇas*. It is indicated in *gulma*, *udara*, *arśas*, *grahaṇī* and *śoṣa*. It is useful to mitigate *vāta*. It increases *medas*, *rakta*, *stanya*, *mūtra* and *kapha*.

Vāruṇī surā:

तदगुणा वारुणी हृद्या लघुस्तीक्ष्णा निहन्ति च । शूलकासवभिश्वासविबन्धाध्मानपीनसान् ॥६ ८ ॥

Vāruṇī is having similar qualities to that of *surā*. In addition to the above, it is having *laghu* and *tikṣṇa guṇas*. It gives strength to the heart. It is useful to relieve *śūla*, *kāsa*, *chardi*, *śwāsa*, *vibandha*, *ādhmāna* and *pīnasa*.

Vibhitaka surā:

नातितीव्रमदा लघ्वी पथ्या बैभीतकी सुरा । व्रणे पाण्डवामये कुष्ठे न चात्यर्थं विरुद्धते ॥६ ९ ॥

Vibhitakī surā is not causing severe toxicity. It is light and wholesome. It is not so harmful in the conditions like *vraṇa*, *pāṇḍu*, *kuṣṭha* etc. as that of other alcoholic preparations.

Yava surā:

विष्टभिनी यवसुरा गुर्वी रूक्षा त्रिदोषला ।

Yava surā (alcohol prepared from barley) is having *guru* and *rūkṣa guṇa*. It aggravates all the three *doṣas* and causes constipation.

Ariṣṭa (Fermented decoctions):

यथाद्रव्यगुणोऽरिष्टः सर्वमद्यगुणाधिकः ॥70॥

ग्रहणीपाण्डुकुष्ठर्शःशोफशोदरज्वरान् । हन्ति गुलमकृमिलीहः कषायकटुवातलः ॥71॥

- * Generally *ariṣṭas* are having similar properties of the drugs, which are used for their preparation.
- * Hence *ariṣṭas* are superior in quality among other types of alcoholic preparations.
- * They are useful in the management of *grahaṇī-roga*, *pāṇḍu*, *kuṣṭha*, *arśas*, *śopha*, *śoṣa*, *udara*, *jwara*, *gulma*, *kṛmi* and *pliḥā*.
- * They are having *kaṣāya*, *kaṭu rasas* and aggravate *vāta doṣa*.

Mārdvika (Wine prepared from grapes):

मार्द्विकं लेखनं हृद्यं नात्युच्चं मधुरं सरम् । अल्पपित्तानिलं पाण्डुमेहार्शःकृमिनाशनम् ॥72॥

Mārdvika surā (alcohol prepared from *drākṣa*) is having *madhura rasa*, *lekhana* & *sara guṇa* and slightly *uṣṇa vīrya*. It is good for the heart. It increases *pitta* and *vāta* slightly. It is indicated in *pāṇḍu*, *meha*, *arśas* and *kṛmi*.

Kharjūra (Wine prepared from dates):

अस्मादल्पान्तरगुणं खार्जूरं वातलं गुरु ।

Khārjūra surā (alcohol prepared from dates) is inferior to *mārdvika surā* in its properties. It is also having *guru guṇa* and aggravates *vāta*.

Sārkara (Wine prepared from sugar):

शार्करः सुरभिः स्वादुहृद्यो नातिमदो लघुः ॥73॥

Sārkara surā (alcohol prepared from sugar) is having *madhura rasa* and *laghu guṇa*. It contains pleasant smell and is wholesome for the heart. It is not so toxic.

Gouḍa (Wine prepared from molasses):

सृष्टमूत्रशक्त्वातो गौडस्तर्पणदीपनः ।

Gouḍa surā (alcohol prepared from *guḍa/jaggery*) is useful for the proper elimination of urine, faeces and flatus from the body. It also gives satiation and increases the power of digestion.

Sidhu (Wine of sugarcane juice):

वातपित्तकरः सीधुः स्नेहश्लेष्मविकारहा ॥74॥

मेदःशोफोदरार्शोऽन्तत्र पक्वरसो वरः ।

Sidhu (alcohol prepared from sugarcane juice) aggravates *vāta* and *pitta*. It is indicated in the

diseases caused due to excessive oleation and due to the vitiation of *kapha*, *medoroga*, *śopha*, *udara* and *arśas*.

Sīdhu is of two types:

1. Prepared by boiling sugarcane juice (*pakwa rasa*).
2. Without boiling sugarcane juice (*sīta rasa*).

Out of these two varieties *pakwa rasa* is superior to *sīta rasa* in its quality.

Madhvāsava (Wine prepared from honey):

छेदी मध्वासवस्तीक्ष्णो मेहपीनसकासजित् ॥७ ५ ॥

Madhvāsava (alcohol prepared from honey) is having *tīkṣṇa guṇa* and is useful to break the solidified materials like *kapha*, *mala* etc. in the body. It is indicated in the management of *prameha*, *pīnasa* and *kāsa*.

Śukta (Wine prepared from tubers):

रक्तपित्तकफोत्कलेदि शुक्तं वातानुलोमनम् । भृशोष्णातीक्षणरूक्षाम्लं हृदयं रचिकरं सरम् ॥७ ६ ॥
दीपनं शिशिरस्पर्शं पाण्डुदृक्कृमिनाशनम् ।

Śukta (alcohol prepared from tubers) increases the moisture of *rakta*, *pitta* and *kapha*. It is useful for the downward movement of *vāta*. It contains *amla rasa* and *uṣṇa*, *tīkṣṇa*, *rūkṣa* and *sara guṇas*. It is wholesome to the heart and increases the perception of the taste. It also increases the power of digestion. It is cold in touch. It is indicated in the management of *pāṇḍu roga*, *netra roga* and *kṛmi roga*.

गुडेक्षुमद्यमाद्वीकिशुक्तं लघु यथोत्तरम् ॥७ ७ ॥

Śukta prepared from *guḍa*, *ikṣurasa*, *madya* and *mārdwīka* are superior to one another and easy to digestd in their succeeding order.

कन्दमूलफलाद्यं च तद्विद्यात्तदासुतम् ।

Alcohols prepared from tubers, roots and fruits are also having similar properties of those from which they are being prepared.

Śāṇḍāki:

शाण्डाकी चासुतं चान्यत् कालाम्लं रोचनं लघु ॥७ ८ ॥

Śāṇḍāki (fried paddy spicy balls, dried and deep fried in oil) as well as *śukta*, which became sour by preserving certain time, are useful to increase the perception of taste and also easy to digest.

Dhānyāmla:

धान्याम्लं भेदि तीक्ष्णोष्णं पित्तकृत्स्पर्शशीतलम् । श्रमक्लमहरं रुच्यं दीपनं बस्तिशूलनुत् ॥७ ९ ॥
शस्तमास्थापने हृदयं लघु वातकफापहम् । एभिरेव गुणैर्युक्ते सौवीरकतुषोदके ॥८ ० ॥
कृमिहृद्रोगगुल्मार्शःपाण्डुरोगनिबर्हणे । ते क्रमाद्वितुष्ठैर्विद्यात्सतुष्ठैश्च यवैः कृते ॥८ १ ॥

Dhānyāmla—an alcoholic preparation prepared by fermenting the water in which rice and other grains are cooked is having *tikṣṇa*, *laghu guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It acts as a purgative. It increases *pitta*. It is cold to touch. It is useful to relieve fatigue and exhaustion. It increases the perception of taste as well as power of digestion. It is useful in the management of pain in the urinary bladder. *Dhānyāmla* is the best drug useful for conducting *āsthāpana vasti*. It is good for heart. It is useful to mitigate *vāta* and *kapha*.

Souvīraka and *tuṣodaka* also possess similar properties of *dhānyāmla*.

Both of them are useful for the management of *kṛmi roga*, *hṛdroga*, *gulma*, *arśas* and *pāṇḍuroga*.

They are prepared from dehusked barley and barley grains with husk respectively.

इति मद्यवर्गः

Thus ends *Madya varga*.

*

अथ मूत्रवर्गः

7. Mūtra Varga

(Group of Urines)

मूत्रं गोऽजाविमहिषीगजाश्वोषुखरोद्धवम् । पित्तलं रुक्षतीक्षणोष्णं लवणानुरसं कटु ॥8 2॥

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Gomūtra</i> | 5. <i>Gaja mūtra</i> |
| 2. <i>Ajā mūtra</i> | 6. <i>Aśva mūtra</i> |
| 3. <i>Avi mūtra</i> | 7. <i>Uṣṭra mūtra</i> |
| 4. <i>Mahiśī mūtra</i> | 8. <i>Khara mūtra</i> |

Generally all the above eight types of urines are having *lavana*, *katu rasa*; *rūkṣa*, *tikṣṇa* and *uṣṇa guṇas*.

कृमिशोफोदरानाहशूलपाण्डुकफानिलान् ।
गुल्मासुचिविषश्चित्रकुष्ठाशास्फिसि जयेल्लघु ॥8 3॥



Gomūtra

* Increases *pitta doṣa*; indicated in *kṛmiroga* (worm infestation), *śopha* (oedema), *udara* (ascitis), *ānāha*, *śūla*, *vāta* and *kapha* disorders, *gulma*, *aruci*, *viṣa* (poisonous cases), *świtra* (leucoderma), *kuṣṭha* (skin disorders) and *arśas* (piles).

Notes:

- * Urine can be used in the therapeutic procedures like purgation therapy, medicated enemata with decoctions, sudation therapy and also for external applications like *ālepa* etc.
- * Increases appetite, digests the undigested food material, breaks the solidified material in the body.

Out of all the above cow's urine is the best.

'Goumutra can cure kidney failure'

EXPRESS NEWS SERVICE
JANUARY 13

AFTER her recovery from kidney failure with the help of 'goumutra therapy,' 10-year-old Shalini Srivastava has started a mission to stop cow slaughter in the country.

Speaking at a press meet, Shalini, a Patna resident, said she after she discovered she had kidney failure, she met several top doctors who suggested that she should be taken to Bangalore, where treatment would cost around Rs eight lakh. Unable to afford this treatment, she and her

parents came to Kalikamata temple in New Delhi, where they met the temple priest. He advised her to take *goumutra*, and she began improving in a few days, the girl said. She recovered completely in a period of one month. She has ever since travelled nearly 6,251 kms all over the country to propagate the benefits of *goumutra*. She is presently in the city to protest cow slaughter at Deonar abattoir.

According to Madhuben Joshi, who runs a treatment centre at Ghatkopar, *goumutra* and other products are highly beneficial in the treatment of asthma, headache and even tooth problems.

Human urine is anti poisonous.

तोयक्षिरेक्षुतैलानां वर्गमद्यस्य च क्रमात् । इति द्रवैकदेशोऽयं यथास्थूलमुदाहृतः ॥८४॥

In this way it was described in brief pertaining to various types of liquid substances like *Toya varga*, *Kṣīra varga*, *Ikṣu varga*, *Taila varga*, *Madya varga*, *Mūtra varga* etc. in a systematic way.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसनुश्रीमद्भाग्मटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने द्रवद्रव्यविज्ञानीयो नाम पञ्चमोऽध्यायः ॥१५॥

Thus ends the fifth chapter entitled *Drava-dravya Vijñāniya Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Samhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In the chapter *Drava-dravya Vijñāniya*, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the different types of liquid substances and classified them chiefly under 7 groups as under:

1. *Jala varga*, 2. *Kṣīra varga*, 3. *Ikṣu varga*, 4. *Madhu varga*, 5. *Taila varga*, 6. *Madya varga*, 7. *Mūtra varga*.

Out of all these liquid substances, water is the most important one and so, it has been given the top priority. Though the group consists of various types of water, the entire water is ultimately of one type i.e. one which falls from the sky. Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa classified the rainwater as *garigāmbu* and *sāmudrodaka* and then discussed the properties, test for the identification of the 2 types of water, properties of the water, types of hot water etc. Then the group consisting different types of milk and milk products like curd, buttermilk, butter, ghee etc. their properties were explained. Sugarcane varieties, properties, jaggery, sugar etc. Honey—properties, types, different oils and alcohols and 8 types of urines and their properties etc have been detailed.

6 ANNASVARŪPA VIJÑĀNĪYA ADHYĀYA

[Knowledge of Food Substances]



अथातोऽन्रस्वरूपविज्ञानीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः ।

इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After 'Drava-dravya Vijñānīya' Ācārya Vāghbaṭa expounded the chapter 'Annasvarūpa Vijñānīya' (Knowledge of Food Substances), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

In this chapter, all the food substances have been classified into 7 groups as under:

1. *Śukadhānya varga* (Group of cereals)
2. *Śimbī varga* (Group of pulses)
3. *Kṛtānna varga* (Group of food preparations)
4. *Mārīha varga* (Group of meat)
5. *Śāka varga* (Group of leafy and other vegetables)
6. *Phala varga* (Group of fruits)
7. *Ouṣadha varga* (Group of drugs)

अथ शूकधान्यवर्गः

1. Śūkadadhānya Varga

(Group of Cereals or Corn with Bristles)



Śūkadadhānya

रत्को महान् सकलमस्तूर्णकः शकुनाहृतः । सारामुखो दीर्घशूको रोधशूकः सुगन्धिकः ॥1॥

पुण्ड्रः पाण्डुः पुण्डरीकः ग्रमोदो गौरसारिवौ । काञ्चनो महिषः शूको दूषकः कुसुमाण्डकः ॥2॥

लाङ्गला लोहवालाख्या: कर्दमा: शीतभीरुकाः । पतङ्गास्तपनीयाश्च ये चान्ये शालयः शुभाः ॥3॥

1. <i>Rakta śāli</i>	10. <i>Puṇḍra</i>	19. <i>Dūṣaka</i>
2. <i>Mahā śāli</i>	11. <i>Pāṇḍu</i>	20. <i>Kusumāṇḍaka</i>
3. <i>Kalama</i>	12. <i>Puṇḍarīka</i>	21. <i>Lāṅgalā</i>
4. <i>Tūrṇaka</i>	13. <i>Pramoda</i>	22. <i>Lohavāla</i>
5. <i>Śakunāhṛta</i>	14. <i>Gaura</i>	23. <i>Kardama</i>
6. <i>Sārāmukha</i>	15. <i>Sāriva</i>	24. <i>Śītabhīru</i>
7. <i>Dirghaśūka</i>	16. <i>Kāñcana</i>	25. <i>Pataṅga</i>
8. <i>Rodhra śūka</i>	17. <i>Mahiṣa</i>	26. <i>Tapanīya etc.</i>
9. <i>Sugandhika</i>	18. <i>Śūka</i>	

The above varieties of *śāli* rice are the best ones, described by Vāgbhaṭa.

In general all the varieties of *śūka* rice consists the following qualities.

General properties of *śāli dhānya*:

स्वादुपाकरसाः स्निग्धा वृद्धा बद्धाल्पवर्चसः । कषायानुरसाः पथ्या लघवो मूत्रला हिमाः ॥४॥

- * *Madhura* and associated with *kaṣāya rasa*, *snigdha* and *laghu guṇa*, *śīta vīrya* and *madhura vipāka*.
- * Aphrodisiac.
- * Slightly constipated.
- * Diuretic and it is a wholesome diet.

Rakta śāli:

शूकजेषु वरस्तत्र रक्तस्तृष्णात्रिदोषहा । महांस्तमनु कलमस्तं चाप्यनु ततः परे ॥५॥

- * Among all the varieties of cereals *rakta śāli* rice is the best one, which relieves thirst and subsides all the three *doṣas*.
- * The above mentioned 26 varieties (other than *rakta śāli*) of rice are inferior to one another in their succeeding order. That means *mahā śāli* is inferior to *rakta śāli* and superior to *kalama śāli*. Hence *rakta śāli* is the best one and *tāpanīya* is the least one in their properties.

Yavaka and other varieties of śāli dhānya:

यवका हायना: पांसुबाध्यनैषधकादयः । स्वादूष्णा गुरवः स्निग्धा: पाकेऽम्ला: श्लेष्मपित्तला: ॥६॥

सृष्टमूत्रपुरीषाश्च पूर्वं पूर्वं च निन्दिताः ।

- * *Yavaka*, *hāyana*, *pāṁśu*, *bāspa*, *naiṣadhaka* etc. are some varieties of *śāli* rice. Out of these five *naiṣadhaka* is the best variety and the remaining four are bad in their preceding order. Hence *yavaka* is the worst variety in the group of *śāli* rice.
- * These are having *madhura rasa*, *snigdha* and *guru guṇa*, *uṣṇa vīrya* and *amla vipāka*. Increases *kapha* and *pitta*, eliminates urine and faeces.

Saṣṭika dhānya:

स्निग्धो ग्राही लघुः स्वादुस्त्रिदोषधनः स्थिरो हिमः ॥७॥

षष्ठिको व्रीहिषु श्रेष्ठो गौरशासितगौरतः । ततः क्रमान्महाव्रीहिकृष्णाव्रीहिजटूमुखाः ॥८॥

कुकुटाण्डकलावाख्यपारावतकशूकराः । वरकोद्दालकोज्ज्वालचीनशारदर्दुर्गः ॥९॥

गन्धना: कुरुविन्दाश्च गुणैरल्पान्तरा: स्मृताः ।

- * In all the varieties of *vrīhi* (paddy), *śaṣṭika dhānya* is the best one (which gives crop with in 60 days).
- * *Śaṣṭika dhānya* consists *madhura rasa*, *snigdha*, *grāhī*, *laghu* and *sthira guṇa*. It is useful to mitigate all the *tridoṣas*.
- * It is of 2 types viz.—(a) *gaura* and (b) *asita gaura*.
- * Among them *gaura* is superior to *asita gaura*.
- * *Mahā vrīhi*, *kṛṣṇa vrīhi*, *jatumukha*, *kukkuṭāṇḍaka*, *lāvaka*, *pārāvataka*, *śūkara*, *varaka*, *uddālaka*, *ujjwāla*, *cīna*, *śārada*, *dardura*, *gandhana*, *kuruvinda* etc. are the other varieties of *vrīhi dhānya*, which are inferior to one another in their succeeding order.

स्वादुरम्लविपाकोऽन्यो व्रीहिः पित्तकरो गुरुः ॥1 0 ॥
बहुमूत्रपुरीषोष्मा, त्रिदोषस्त्वेव पाटलः ।

Above mentioned other varieties of *vrīhi dhānya* are having *madhura rasa*, *guru guṇa* and *amla vīpāka*. They increase *pitta doṣa*, *mūtra*, *puriṣa* and also body temperature. *Pāṭala* variety of rice aggravates all the *tridoṣas*.

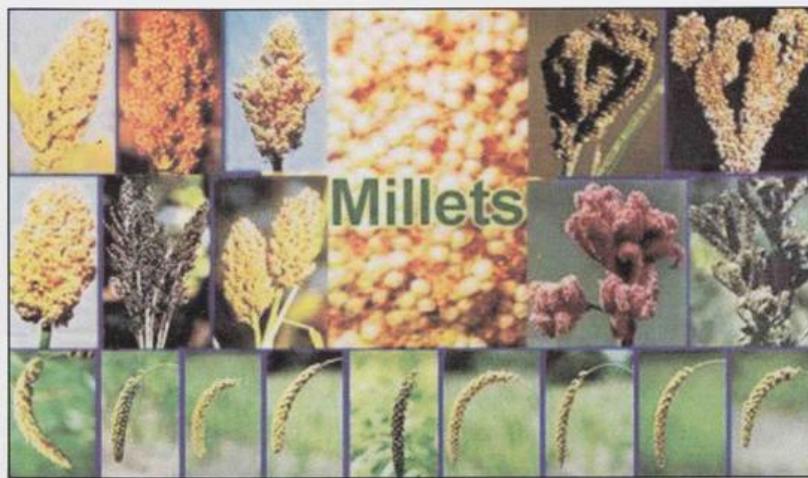
Tr̥ṇa dhānya:

कड़गुकोद्रवनीवारश्यामाकादि हिमं लघु ॥1 1 ॥
तृणधान्यं पवनकूललेखनं कफपित्तहन् ।

Kaigu, *kodrava*, *nīvāra*, *śyamaka* etc. are having *laghu* & *lekhana guṇa* and *sīta vīrya*. They increase *vāta* and mitigate *kapha* and *pitta*.

Priyaṅgu-koradūṣa:

भग्नसन्धानकृत्तत्र प्रियड़गुवृहणी गुरुः ॥1 2 ॥
कोरदूषः परं ग्राही स्पर्शे शीतो विषापहः ।



Tr̥ṇa dhānya

Priyaṅgu variety of rice is having *guru guṇa* and is useful to nourish the body. It is also useful to

join the fractured bones. *Koradūṣa* variety of rice is cold in touch and acts as anti-poisonous. It is the best one to absorb fluids from the intestines.

Yava:

रूक्षः शीतो गुरुः स्वादुः सरो विद्वातकृद्यवः ॥१ ३ ॥

वृष्यः स्थैर्यकरो मूत्रमेदः पित्तकफान् जयेत् । पीनसश्वासकासो रुस्तम्भकण्ठत्वगामयान् ॥१ ४ ॥

- * Yava contains *madhura rasa*, *rūkṣa*, *guru* & *sara guṇa* and *śīta vīrya*.
- * It increases faeces and flatus.
- * It acts as an aphrodisiac and increases body strength.
- * It is an anti-diuretic and also decreases excessive fat from the body.
- * It mitigates *pitta* and *kapha* and is useful in the management of *pīnasa*, *śwāsa*, *kāsa*, *ūrusthambha*, *kaṇṭharoga* and *twakroga*.



Yava

Anuyava:

न्यूनो यवादनुयवः रूक्षोष्णो वंशजो यवः ।

Anuyava (small variety of barley) is inferior to *yava* in its properties where as *vāriṣāja yava* is having *rūkṣa guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*.



Anuyava

Godhūma:

वृष्यः शीतो गुरुः स्निग्धो जीवनो वातपित्तहा ॥१ ५ ॥

सन्धानकारी मधुरो गोधूपः स्थैर्यकृत्सरः ।



Godhūma

- * *Godhūma* contains *madhura rasa*, *guru*, *snigdha* and *sara guṇa* and *śīta vīrya* and it acts as an aphrodisiac, nourishes and increases body strength, and reduces *vāta*, *pitta*.
- * It is also useful to join the fractured bones.

पथ्या नन्दीमुखी शीता कषायमधुरा लघुः ॥१ ६ ॥

Nandīmukha variety of wheat is wholesome and having *kaṣāya*, *madhura rasa*, *laghu guṇa* and *śīta vīrya*.

इति शूकधान्यवर्गः ।

Thus ends group of cereals or corn with bristles.

अथ शिम्बीधान्यवर्गः

2. Śimbidhānya Varga (Group of Pulses)

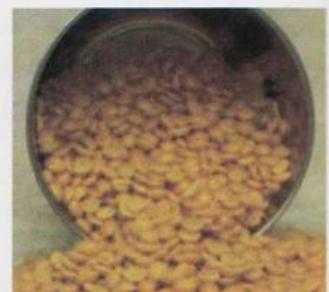
Śimbī dhānya:

मुद्राढकीमसूरादि शिम्बीधान्यं विबन्धकृत् । कषायं स्वादु सङ्घ्राहि कटुपाकं हिमं लघु ॥1 7॥
मेदःश्लेष्मास्त्रपित्तेषु हितं लेपोपसेकयोः ।

- * *Mudga* (*Phaseolus radiatus*), *ādhakī* (*Cajanus cajan*), *masūraka* (*Lens culinaris*) are some of the varieties of pulses available in the nature.
- * They are generally having *kaśāya*, *madhura rasa*; *grāhī*, *laghu guṇa*; *sīta virya* and *kaṭu vipāka*.
- * Produce constipation and useful to reduce *medas*, *kapha* and *raktapitta*.
- * They are suitable for the use of *lepa* (external application) and *upaseka* (food preparation such as soup).



Mudga



Ādhakī

Mudga, kalāya, rājamāṣa:

वरोऽत्र मुद्रोऽल्पचलः, कलायस्त्वतिवातलः ॥1 8॥
राजमाषोऽनिलकरो रूक्षो बहुशकृदगुरुः।

- * Among *śimbī dhānya*, *mudga* (*Phaseolus radiatus*) is the best one and increases *vāta* (*cala*) slightly.
- * *Kalāya* (*Lathyrus sativus*) vitiates *vāta* excessively where as *rājamāṣa/alasanda* (*Vigna cylindrical*) also aggravates *vāta* and is having *rūkṣa* and *guru guṇa*. It produces more faeces.

Kulattha:

उष्णाः कुलत्थाः पाकेऽम्लाः शुक्राश्मश्वासपीनसान् ॥1 9॥
कासार्शः कफवातांश्च धन्ति पित्तास्त्रदाः परम् ।

Kulattha/horse gram (*Dolichos biflorus*) is having *kaśāya*, *madhura rasa*; *uṣṇa virya* and *amla vipāka*. It is useful in the management of *śukra doṣa*, *āśmarī*, *śwāsa*, *pīnasa*, *kāsa*, *arśas*, *kapha* and *vāta roga*. Excessive use of horse gram leads to *raktapitta*.



Kulattha

Niṣpāva:

निष्पावो वातपित्तास्तन्यमूत्रकरो गुरुः ॥2 0॥
सरो विदाही दृक्शुक्रकफशोफविषापहः ।

Niṣpava (*Dolichos lablab*) increases *vāta*, *pitta*, *rakta*, *stanya* and *mūtra*. It is having *guru* (heavy), *sara* (laxative) and *vidāhī* (burning sensation) *guṇa*. It is useful in the management of *netra roga*, *śukra doṣa*, *kapha roga*, *śopha* and *viṣa doṣa*.

Māṣa:

माषः स्निग्धो बलश्लेष्ममलपित्तकरः सरः ॥२ १ ॥
गुरुष्णोऽनिलहा स्वादुः शुक्रवृद्धिविरेककृत् ।

Māṣa (*Phaseolus mungo*) is possessing *madhura rasa*, *snigdha*, *guru guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It gives strength and increases *kapha*, *pitta* and alleviates *vāta*. It produces a large quantity of semen and also ejaculates it in high quantity.



Māṣa

Kākāṇḍola-ātmaguptā:

फलानि माषवद्विद्यात्काकाण्डोलात्मगुप्तयोः ॥२ २ ॥

Fruits of *kākāṇḍola* (edible & cultivated variety of *ātmaguptā*) and *ātmagupta* (*Mucuna pruriens*) are also having the properties similar to *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*).



Ātmaguptā

Tila:

उष्णास्त्वच्यो हिमः स्पर्शे केश्यो बल्यस्तिलो गुरुः ।
अल्पमूत्रः कटुः पाके मेधाऽग्निकफपित्तकृत् ॥२ ३ ॥

Tila (*Sesamum indicum*) seeds are having *guru guṇa*; *uṣṇa vīrya* and *kaṭu vipāka*. They are cold in touch and useful for skin and hair. Promotes strength and produces little quantity of urine. Increases intelligence, power of digestion, *kapha* and *pitta*.



↑ Tila ↑

**Umā-kusumbha bija:**

स्निग्धोमा स्वादुतित्तकोष्णा कफपित्तकरी गुरुः । दृक्शुक्रहृत्कटुः पाके, तद्वद्बीजं कुसुम्भजम् ॥२ ४ ॥

Umā seeds (*Linum usitatissimum*) are having *madhura*, *tikta rasa*; *snigdha*, *guru guṇa*; *uṣṇa vīrya* and *kaṭu vipāka*. Increases *kapha* and *pitta*. They also cause vision defects and decreases semen. *Kusumbha bija* (*Carathamus tinctorius*) are also having the properties similar to *umā bija*.



Umā (Linseed)

Māṣa-yavaka:

माषोऽत्र सर्वेष्ववरो, यवकः शूकजेषु च ।

Māṣa (black gram) among the pulses and *yavaka* among cereals are inferior in respect of their qualities.

Discrimination of dhānya:

नवं धान्यमभिष्यन्दि, लघु संवत्सरोषितम् ॥२५॥

शीघ्रजन्म तथा सूच्यं निस्तुष्टं युक्तिभर्जितम् ।

Recently harvested (fresh) grains increase *kapha* and causes *abhisyandī guna*.

Whereas one year old grains (*śūka* as well as *śimbī dhānya*), those grown quickly (*sāṣṭika dhānya*), those removed their husk and those grains which are properly fried with oil and ghee are having *laghu guna* and easily digestible.

इति शिष्टीधान्यवर्गः ।

Thus ends group of pulses.

*

अथ कृतान्नवर्गः

3. Kṛtānna Varga

(Group of Food Preparations)

Māṇḍa (Gruel water):

मण्डपेयाविलेपीनामोदनस्य च लाघवम् ॥२६॥

यथापूर्वं शिवस्त्र मण्डो वातानुलोभनः । तृङ्गलानिदोषेषोष्णः पाचनो धातुसाम्यकृत् ॥२७॥

स्रोतोमार्दवकृत्वेदी सञ्चुक्षयति चानलम् ।

* *Māṇḍa*, *peyā*, *vilepī* and *odana* are easily digested in their preceding order. Among the four, *māṇḍa* (gruel water) is the best.

* It causes the downward movement of *vāta*.

* Relieves thirst, exhaustion and eliminates the residual *doṣas* after *sodhana* therapy.

* Digest the undigested material in the body and keeps the body humors and tissues in the equilibrium state.



Māṇḍa

- * Softens the channels and tissue pores of the body.
- * Induces sweating and increases the power of digestion.

Peyā (Thin gruel):

शुक्त्रष्णाग्लानिदौर्बल्यकुक्षिरोगज्वरापहा ॥२८॥
मलानुलोमनी पथ्या पेया दीपनपाचनी ।

- * Relieves hunger, thirst, exhaustion, weakness, abdominal disorders and fever.
- * Moves *vāta* in the downward direction.
- * Increases the appetite and helps in digestion.
- * It is a wholesome diet to all.

Vilepi (Thick gruel):

विलेपी ग्राहिणी हृद्या तृष्णाधी दीपनी हिता ॥२९॥
ब्रणाक्षिरोगसंशुद्धुर्बलस्नेहपायिनाम् ।

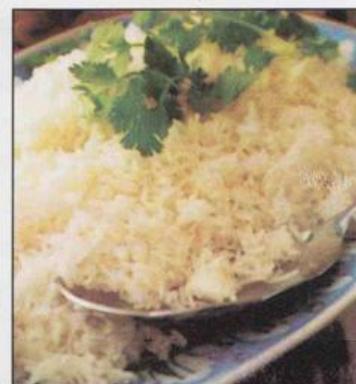
- * Solidifies the faeces and good for heart.
- * Relieves thirst and increases appetite.
- * Indicated in ulcers and eye disorders.
- * It is also indicated to the persons who are weak after *sodhana* therapy and after oleation therapy (administration of medicated oils internally).

Odana (Rice):

सुधौतः प्रस्तुतः स्विन्नोऽत्यन्तोष्मा चौदनो लघुः ॥३०॥
यश्चानेयौषधक्वाथसाधितो भृष्टतण्डुलः । विपरीतो गुरुः क्षीरमांसाद्यैर्यश्च साधितः ॥३१॥

- * *Odana* is the preparation of the rice with grains after washing and the entire water is to be evaporated while cooking. It is easily digestible.
- * Similarly rice prepared and processed with the substances having hot in potency like *śunṭhī* (*Zingiber officinalis*) and *citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*) is also easily digestible.
- * Rice prepared with fried grains is easier to digest.
- * On the other hand rice prepared with the addition of milk, mutton etc. is not easily digestible.

इति द्रव्यक्रियायोगमानादैः सर्वमादिशेत् ।



Odana

In this way one should know the attributes such as *guru* and *laghu* of various food substances by the variation of *dravya*, *kriyā*, *samīyoga*, *parimāṇa* and the type of *deśa*.

Examples:

Dravya: Food prepared with *rakta śāli* rice is having *laghu guṇa* where as it is *guru* which is prepared with *yavaka*.

Kriyā: Śūlya māṁsa is *laghu* and the others are *guru*.

Saṁyoga: Rice prepared and processed with the substances having hot in potency like *śunthī* (*Zingiber officinalis*) and *citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*) is easily digestible.

Deśa: Rice harvested in *jāṅgala deśa* is having *laghu guṇa* where as it is *guru*, which is harvested in *ānūpa deśa*.

Māṁsa rasa (Mutton soup):

बृंहणः प्रीणनो वृष्ट्यश्वस्थो ब्रणहा रसः ॥३ २ ॥

Mutton soup is best suited for the persons suffering with emaciation. It nourishes the body, best aphrodisiac, excellent for eyes and heals ulcers.

Mudga yūṣa:

मौद्रस्तु पथ्यः संशुद्धवणकण्ठाक्षिरोगिणाम् ।

Mudga yūṣa (soup of green gram) is the best wholesome diet and is advised to take after *sodhana* therapy. It is also indicated to the persons suffering from ulcers, throat and eye disorders.

Kulattha yūṣa:

वातानुलोभी कौलत्थो गुल्मतूनीप्रतूनिजित् ॥३ ३ ॥

Kulattha yūṣa (soup of horse gram) moves *vāta* in the downward direction. It is indicated in abdominal tumors, *tūnī* and *pratūnī*.

Tila, pinyāka etc:

तिलपिण्याकविकृतिः शुष्कशाकं विरूढकम् । शाण्डाकीवटकं दृग्घनं दोषलं ग्लपनं गुरु ॥३ ४ ॥

Food products prepared from *tila* such as *pinyāka* (cake obtained after extracting sesame oil) and others, dried leafy vegetables, germinated grains, *śāṇḍākīvaṭaka* causes vision defects, vitiates all the three *doṣas*. They also cause weakness and not easily digestible.

Rasālā (Śrīkhaṇḍa):

रसाला बृंहणी वृष्ट्या स्निग्धा बल्या रुचिप्रदा ।

* Take the fresh curd in a thick cloth and make it a bolus. Keep it by hanging throughout night, so that the liquid is being completely filtered. Then add fine powder of sugar candy, *elā* and other spices and can be used.

* *Rasālā* is having *snigdha guṇa* and nourishes the body. It acts as an aphrodisiac, gives strength and increases the perception of taste.

Pānaka:

श्रमक्षुत्तद्वक्त्वमहरं पानकं प्रीणनं गुरु ॥३ ५ ॥

विष्टम्भि मूत्रलं हृद्यं यथाद्रव्यगुणं च तत् ।

Pānaka is having *guru guṇa* and gives satisfaction. It relieves tiredness, appetite, thirst and

fatigue. It causes *vistambha*. It is a diuretic and makes the mind pleasant. Usually it is having the similar properties of the same drugs from which it is being prepared.

Lājā:

लाजास्तृद्धर्दीतीसारमेहमेदः कफच्छिदः ॥३ ६ ॥
कासपित्तोपशमना दीपना लघवो हिमाः ।

Lājā (fried paddy) is having *laghu guṇa* and *śīta vīrya*. It is indicated to relieve thirst, vomiting, diarrhoea, polyurea, obesity, cough, *kapha* and *pitta doṣa*. It also acts as digestive stimulant.

Pṛthukā:

पृथुका गुरवो बल्याः कफविष्टभकारिणः ॥३ ७ ॥

Pṛthukā (rice parched and flattened) is having *guru guṇa* and gives strength to the body. It also increases *kapha* and causes constipation.

Dhāna:

धाना विष्टभिनी रूक्षा तर्पणी लेखनी गुरुः ।

Dhāna (fried barley and other grains) is having *rūkṣa*, *lekhana* and *guru guṇa*. It gives satisfaction and causes constipation.

Saktu:

सक्तवो लघवः क्षुत्रट्ट्रमनेत्रामयव्रणान् ॥३ ८ ॥
घन्ति सन्तर्पणाः पानात्सद्य एव बलप्रदाः । नोदकान्तरितान्न द्विन्न निशायां न केवलान् ॥३ ९ ॥
न भुक्त्वा न द्विजैश्चित्त्वा सकूनद्यान्न वा बहून् ।

- * *Saktu* (barley flour initially fried and then ground) is having *laghu guṇa*.
- * It relieves appetite, thirst, fatigue, eye disorders and wounds.
- * It gives satiation and also gives strength instantaneously.
- * One should not drink water while eating *saktu*.
- * It should not be taken twice during day time.
- * *Saktu* should not be taken in the nighttime as well as after having food.
- * It should not be taken exclusively without adding salt or jaggery.
- * It should not be taken by hard chewing and also heavy in quantity.

Pinyāka-vesavāra:

पिण्याको ग्लपनो रूक्षो विष्टभी दृष्टिदूषणः ॥४ ० ॥
वेसवारो गुरुः स्निग्धो बलोपचयवर्धनः । मुद्रादिजास्तु गुरवो यथाद्रव्यगुणानुगाः ॥४ १ ॥

- * *Pinyāka* causes fatigue, dryness, constipation and defective vision.
- * *Vesavāra* is having *guru* and *snigdha guṇa* and is responsible for increasing strength and builds up the body.
- * *Vesavāra* prepared with green gram and others is having *guru guṇa* and also having similar properties of the drugs from which it is being prepared.

Different measures of preparing various food items:

कुकूलकर्परभ्राष्टकन्द्वारविपाचितान् । एकयोनील्लघून्विद्यादपूपानुत्तरोत्तरम् ॥४.२॥

Kukūla (fire made of cow dung cakes), *karpara* (an iron sauce pan), *bhrāṣṭra* (a frying pan), *kanduka* (a boiler or oven) and *aṅgāra* (charcoal)—food items prepared from the above measures are superior to one another and easily digestible in their succeeding order.

Notes:

In addition to the above, Vṛddha Vāgbhaṭa, the author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha explained some more food preparations viz. *khala* and *kāmbalika*, *rāga* and *śādava* etc. in the group of *kṛtānna varga*.

Khala and kāmbalika:

- * Both *khala* and *kāmbalika* processed with medicated drugs are good for heart.
- * Soup prepared from mutton is called *rasa* where as it is prepared with pulses are known as *yūṣa*.
- * Prepared with fruits of jujube and others is called *khala*.
- * Prepared with the paste of gingili seeds, roots and then made sour by adding lemon juice, pomegranate etc. is known as *kāmbalika*.
- * Soup prepared by adding oil, salt, pepper etc. is known as *kṛta yūṣa/rasa* and without adding the above substances are called *akṛta yūṣa/rasa*.
- * Soup prepared with little quantity of mutton and spices, which is very clear like water is known as ‘*dakalāvanīka*’.
- * *Yūṣa, rasa, sūpa* and *śāka* are hard to digest in their succeeding order.

Rāga and śādava:

- * Which are prepared with sweet substances like sugar candy and honey are known as *rāga* where as the substances prepared with the sour fruits like jujube are called as *śādava*.
- * *Rāga* and *śādavas* are good for heart.
- * Acts as aphrodisiac.
- * Increases the perception of taste.
- * Hard to digest, gets satisfaction.
- * Indicated in giddiness, thirst, vomiting, alcoholic toxicity, fainting & fatigue.

Vesavāra is the meat cut into minute pieces added with ginger, coriander, cumin etc. and roasted or fried.

- * Increases strength and builds body.

इति कृतान्न (पक्वान्न) वर्गः ।

Thus ends group of food preparations.

अथ मांसवर्गः

4. Māṁsa Varga

(Group of Different Types of Meat/Flesh)

The group of animals whose meat is commonly used as food is enumerated under the following eight categories.

(A) Jāṅgala (animals dwelling in dry land forests):

1. *Mṛga* : *Hariṇa, eṇa, kuraṅga* etc. 20 animals.
2. *Viśkira* : (Gallinaceous birds)
Lāvā, tittira, śikhī, dakṣa(21).
3. *Pratuda* : (Packer birds)
Parrot, sparrow, pigeon etc (35).



(B) Sādhāraṇa (animals living in the normal land):

4. *Vileśaya* : Animals who live in burrows in earth.
Eg. rat, snake, mongoose.
5. *Prasaha* : Animals and birds who eat by snatching.
Eg. cow, ass, camel, horse, tiger, lion, crow, vulture, owl etc.

Māṁsa

(C) Ānūpa (animals inhabitating marshy land):

6. *Mahā mṛga* : Animals of huge body, eg. buffalo, elephant, pig, rhinoceros.
7. *Jalacara* : Birds moving in water, eg. swan, crane, domicille crane.
8. *Matsya* : Aquatic animals, eg. rohita fish, tortoise, crocodile, crab, whale, etc.

1. Mṛga:

हरिणैणकुरङ्क्षगोकर्णमृगमातृकाः । शशशम्बरचारुष्कशरभाद्या मृगाः स्मृताः ॥४ ३ ॥

Hariṇa (deer, fawn), *eṇa* (black buck), *kuraṅga* (roe deer), *rksa* (bear), *gokarna* (deer antelope), *mṛgamātṛkā* (red colored hare like deer), *śaśa* (hare), *śambara* (deer with branched horns), *cāruṣka*, *śarabha* etc. are the animals enumerated in this group.



Hariṇa



Eṇa



Kuraṅga



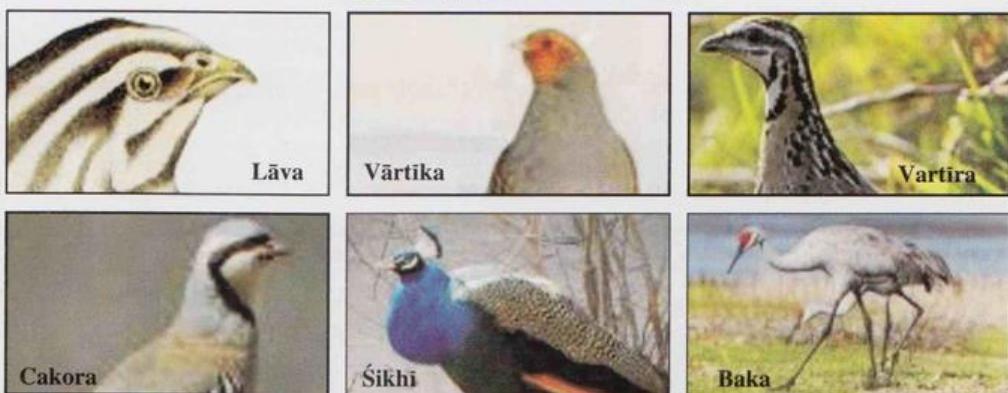
Gokarna

2. Viśkira:

लाववार्तीकिवर्तीरत्कवर्त्मककुकुभाः । कपिञ्जलोपचक्राख्यचकोरकुरुवाहवः ॥४ ४ ॥

वर्तको वर्तिका चैव तिन्निरि: क्रकरः शिखी । ताम्रचूडाख्यबकरगोनर्दगिरिवर्तिकाः ॥४ ५ ॥

तथा शारपदेन्नाभवरटाद्याश्च विष्किरा ।



Lāva (common quail), *värtīka* (gray partridge), *vartīra* (rain quail), *rakta vartma* (red jungle fowl), *kukkubha* (crow pheasant), *kapiñjala* (jungle bush quail), *upacakra* (sushi chukor), *cakora* (chukor), *kuruvāhava*, *vartaka* (male bustard), *vartikā* (female bustard), *tittiri* (partridge), *krakara* (snipe), *śikhi* (peacock), *tāmracūḍa* (cock), *bakara* (crane), *gonarda* (hill partridge), *girivartikā* (mountain quail), *śārapada* (stark), *indrābha* (anjutant), *varaṭa* (spoonbill) etc. are the birds, which scratch the soil with their legs to acquire food, are known as *viśkira*.

3. Pratuda:

जीवञ्जीवकदात्यूहभृङ्गाह्नशुकसारिका: ॥४६॥

लट्वाकोकिलहारीतकपोतचटकादयः । प्रतुदा:-



Jīvañjīvaka (common mynah), *dātyūha*, *bhṛngāhwa* (king bird of paradise), *śuka* (parrot), *sārikā* (shama thrush), *laṭwā* (scarlet minivet), *kokila* (koel), *hārīta*, *kapota* (dove), *caṭaka*

(sparrow) etc. are the birds, which strike at the food article before taking it, are known as *pratuda*.

4. Bileśaya:

—भेकगोधाहिश्चविदाद्या बिलेशयाः ॥४७॥

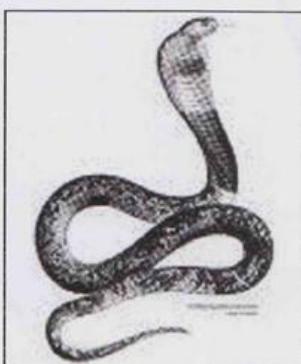
Bheka (frog), *godha* (iguana lizard), *ahi* (snake), *swavid* (hedgehog) etc. are the animals, which are residing in the burrows in the earth and are known as *bileśaya*.



Bheka



Godha



Ahi



Śwavida

5. Prasaha:

गोखराश्वतरोष्ट्राश्वद्वीपिसिंहक्षवानरा: । मार्जारमूषकव्याघ्रवृकब्धुतरक्षवः ॥४८॥

लोपाकजम्बुकश्येनचाषवान्तादवायसाः । शशधीभासकुररण्घोलूककुलिङ्गकाः ॥४९॥

धूमिका मधुहा चेति प्रसहा मृगपक्षिणः ।

Go (cow), *khara* (ass), *aśwatara* (mule), *uṣṭra* (camel), *aśwa* (horse), *dwīpi* (panther), *śimha* (lion), *rksa* (bear), *vānara* (monkey), *mārjāra* (cat), *mūṣaka* (mouse), *vyāghra* (tiger), *vṛka* (wolf), *babhru* (large brown mongoose), *tarakṣu* (hyena), *lopāka* (fox), *jambuka* (jackel), *śyena* (hawk), *cāṣa* (blue jay), *vāntāda* (dog), *vāyasā* (crow), *śaśaghni* (golden eagle), *bhāsa* (beard vulture), *kurara* (fish eagle), *ghṛdhra* (vulture), *ulūka* (owl), *kuliṅgaka* (sparrow hawk), *dhūmikā* (owlet), *madhuhā* (honey buzzard) etc. are the animals and birds who take their food by snatching and are known as *prasaha*.



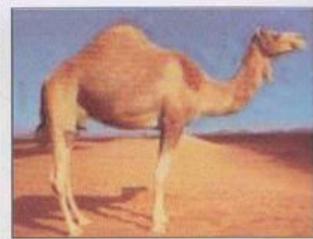
Go



Khara



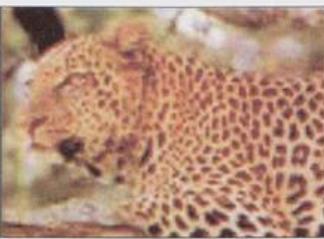
Aśwatra



Uṣṭra



Aśwa



Dwipi



Siṁha



Rkṣa



Vānara



Mārjāra



Mūṣaka



Vyāghra



Vṛka



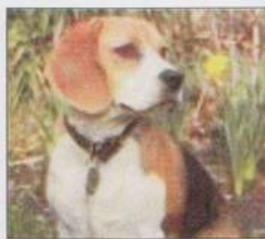
Babhu



Tarakṣu



Lopāka



Vāntāda



Vāyasa



Śaśaghni



Ghṛdhra



Ulūka



Kuliṅgaka



Madhuhā

6. Mahāmṛga:

वराहमहिषन्यङ्कुरुरुरोहितवारणा: ॥५०॥

सृमरश्वमरः खड्गो गवयश्च महामृगाः ।

Varāha (hog), *mahiṣa* (buffalo), *nyaiku* (antelope), *ruru* (swamp deer), *rohita* (big deer), *vāraṇa* (elephant), *sṛmara* (wild boar), *camara* (yak), *khadga* (rhinoceros), *gavaya* (gayal cow) etc. are the animals having huge body and are known as *mahāmṛga*.



Varāha



Mahiṣa



Vāraṇa



Sṛmara



Camara



Khadga

7. Jalacara:

हंससारसकादम्बबककारण्डवप्लवा: ॥५१॥

बलाकोत्क्रोशचक्राह्मदगुक्रौञ्चादयोऽप्चरा: ।

Harīsa (swan), *sārasa* (sarasa crane), *kādamba* (whistling teal), *baka* (common crane), *kāraṇḍava* (goose), *plava* (pelican), *balāka* (snow wreath crane), *utkroṣa* (trumpeter),



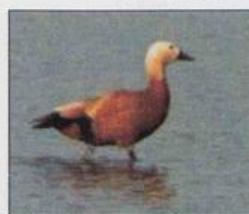
Hamsa



Kāraṇḍava



Plava



Cakrāhwa



Krouñca

cakrāhwa (ruddy sheldrake), *madgu* (little cormorant), *krouñca* (demoiselle crane) etc. are the birds moving in the water and are known as jalacara .

8. Matsya (Aquatic animals):

मत्स्या रोहितपाठीनकूर्मकृष्णरक्कटाः ॥५ २ ॥

शुक्तिशङ्खोद्रशम्बूकशफरीवर्षिचन्द्रिकाः । चुलूकीनक्रमकरशिशुमारतिमिह्निलाः ॥५ ३ ॥

राजीचिलिचिमाद्याश्व-



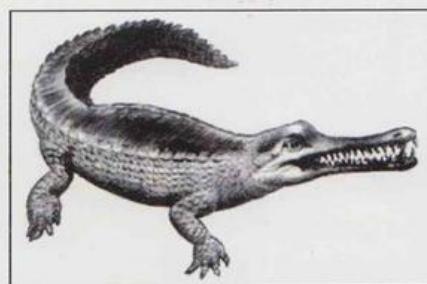
Makara



Kurma



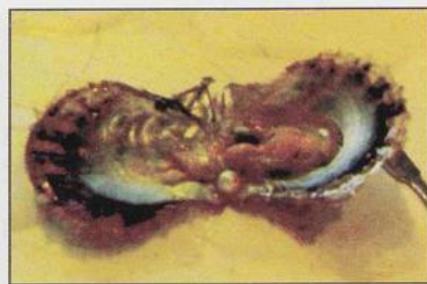
Karkaṭa



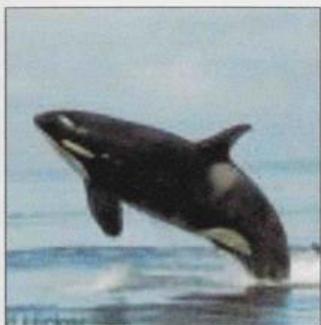
Kumbhira



Culuki



Śukti



Timiṅgīlā



Śaṅkha



Cilicima

Rohita (red fish), *pāthīna* (boal), *kūrma* (tortoise), *kumbhīra* (gavial), *karkaṭa* (crab), *śukti* (pearl oyster), *śaṅkha* (conch snail), *udra* (cat-fish), *śambūka* (common snail), *śapharī* (small glistening fish), *varmi candrikā* (a kind of cat-fish), *culūkī* (gangetic dolphin), *nakra* (crocodile), *makara* (great Indian crocodile), *sīśumāra* (esturine crocodile), *timiṅgīlā* (whale), *rājī* (snake fish), *cilicima* (red striped fish) etc. belongs to the group of *matsya*.

—मांसमित्याहुरष्टधा ।

(मृगं वैष्णविक्रिं किञ्च प्रातुदं च बिलेशयम् । प्रासहं च महामृग्यमप्यचरं मात्स्यमष्टधा ॥1॥)

Eight types of meat/flesh viz. *mṛga māṁsa*, *viṣkira māṁsa*, *pratuda māṁsa*, *vileśaya māṁsa*, *prasaha māṁsa*, *mahā mṛga māṁsa*, *jalacara māṁsa*, *matsya māṁsa* etc. are enumerated in this way.

योनिष्वजावी व्यामिश्रगोचरत्वादनिश्चिते ॥5 4॥

In the above described eight types of *māṁsa* goat and sheep cannot be categorized solely either *jāṅgala* or *ānūpa* as they belongs to both the groups.

आद्यान्त्या जाङ्गलानूपा मध्यौ साधारणौ स्मृतौ ।

Out of the eight groups, the first three viz. *mṛga*, *viṣkira* and *pratuda* belongs to *jāṅgala deśa* and the last three viz. *mahā mṛga*, *jalacara* and *matsya* belongs to *ānūpa deśa*. Where as the middle two groups viz. *vileśaya* and *prasaha* belongs to *sādhāraṇa deśa*.

Jāṅgala māṁsa guṇa :

तत्र बद्धमला: शीता लघवो जाङ्गला हिताः ॥5 5॥

पित्तोन्तरे वातमध्ये सन्निपाते कफानुगे ।

Jāṅgala māṁsa is having *laghu guṇa* and *śīta vīrya*. It causes constipation. It is best suited in such a condition of *sannipāta* where *pitta* is vitiated excessively, *vāta* moderately and *kapha* slightly.

Śaśa (rabbit) māṁsa :

दीपनः कटुकः पाके ग्राही रुक्षो हिमः शशः ॥5 6॥

Meat of rabbit is having *rūkṣa guṇa*, *śīta vīrya* and *kaṭu vipāka*. It acts as digestive stimulant and water absorbent.



Vartaka (male bustard) and **tittiri** (partridge) māṁsa:

इष्टदुष्णागुरुस्तिंग्धा बृहणा वर्तकादयः । तिन्निरिस्तेष्वपि वरो मेधाग्निबलशुक्रकृत् ॥5 7॥
ग्राही वर्ण्योऽनिलोद्रिक्तसन्निपातहरः परम् ।

Meat of *vartaka* (male bustard) and other animals belongs to *jāṅgala deśa* is generally having *guru*, *snigdha guṇa* and somewhat *uṣṇa vīrya* and makes the body stout.

Meat of *tittiri* (partridge) is superior to the rest of the birds pertaining to its group. It is useful to increase intelligence, digestive power, body strength and semen. It also absorbs water and enhances color complexion. It is specially indicated in *sannipāta*, where *vāta* is vitiated predominantly.

Sikhi (peacock) māṁsa:

नातिपथ्यः शिखी पथ्यः श्रोत्रस्वरवयोदृशाम् ॥5 8॥

Generally meat of peacock is not completely wholesome, but it is good for ears, eyes and voice. It is also useful to arrest aging.

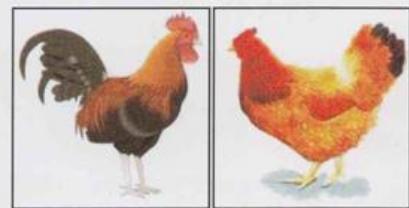


Sikhi

Kukkuṭa, krakara, upacakraka and kāṇakapota māṁsa:

तद्वच्च कुक्कुटो वृष्ट्यः ग्राम्यस्तु श्लेष्मलो गुरुः ।
मेधाऽनलकरा हृद्या: क्रकरा: सोपचक्रका: ॥5 9॥
गुरुः सलवणः काणकपोतः सर्वदोषकृत् ।

Meat of *kukkuṭa* (wild cock) is also having similar properties to that of peacock and acts as an aphrodisiac. Where as the cock dwelling in villages is having *guru guṇa* and increases *kapha*.



Kukkuṭa

(Cock & hen)

Meat of *krakara* and *upacakraka* (a species of duck) are delightful and increases intelligence as well as power of digestion.

Meat of *kāṇakapota* is having *lavaṇa rasa*, *guru guṇa* and vitiates all the three *doṣas*.

Caṭaka māṁsa:

चटका: श्लेष्मलाः स्तिंग्धा वातघ्नाः शुक्रलाः परम् ॥6 0॥

Caṭaka māṁsa (flesh of sparrow) is having *snigdha guṇa*. It vitiates *kapha* and mitigates *vāta*. Especially it is useful to increase semen.

गुरुस्त्वास्तिंग्धमधुरा वर्गाश्वातो यथोत्तरम् ।
मूत्रशुक्रकृतो बल्या वातघ्नाः कफपित्तलाः ॥6 1॥

Meat of the animals pertaining to *vileśaya* and the other succeeding groups are generally having *madhura rasa*, *guru*, *snigdha guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. Increases urine and semen and also gives strength to the body. It is useful to mitigate *vāta* and increase *kapha* and *pitta*.



Caṭaka

Mahāmṛga māṁsa:

शीता महामृगास्तेषु क्रव्यादप्रसहा: पुनः । लवणानुरसाः पाके कटुका मांसवर्धनाः ॥६ २ ॥
जीर्णाशर्ऊग्रहणीदोषशोषार्तानां परं हिताः ।

Meat of *mahā mṛga* is generally having *śīta vīrya*. Among them the meat of carnivorous and *prasaha* animals is having somewhat *lavaṇa rasa* and *kaṭu vipāka*. It increases musculature in the body. It is specially indicated in chronic piles, *grahaṇī doṣa* and tuberculosis.

Ajā māṁsa:

नातिशीतगुरुस्निग्धं मांसमाजमदोषलम् ॥६ ३ ॥
शरीरधातुसामान्यादनभिष्यन्दि बृंहणम् ।

Meat of *ajā* (goat) is having *guru*, *snigdha guṇa* and not having too much *śīta vīrya*. Hence it doesn't aggravate *tridoṣas*. As it is having similar attributes to that of human body tissues, it is useful to nourish the body and doesn't cause *abhisyandī* (increase of secretions in the tissue channels).

Avi māṁsa:

विपरीतमतो ज्ञेयमाविकं बृंहणं तु तत् ॥६ ४ ॥

Avi's (sheep's) meat is having exactly opposite qualities to that of goat's meat and it is also useful to increase body strength.

Go-māṁsa:

शुष्ककासश्रमात्यग्निविषमज्वरपीनसान् । काशर्यं केवलवातांश्च गोमांसं सन्त्रियच्छति ॥६ ५ ॥

Meat of cow is useful in the management of *śuṣka kāsa* (dry cough), *śrama* (tiredness), *atyagni* (excessive digestive power), *viṣama jwara* (intermittent fevers), *pīnasa* (running nose), *kārṣya* (emaciation) and also the disease caused due to *vāta* especially.

Mahiṣa māṁsa:

उष्णो गरीयान्महिषः स्वप्नदाढ्यबृहत्त्वकृत् ।

Buffalo's meat is having *guru guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It causes sleep, strength and stoutness of the body.

Varāha māṁsa:

तद्व्युराहः श्रमहा रुचिशुक्रबलप्रदः ॥६ ६ ॥

Varāha māṁsa is also having similar properties to that of *mahiṣa māṁsa*. It is useful to relieve fatigue. It increases the perception of taste and also useful to increase semen and strength.

Matsya & cilicīma māṁsa:

मत्स्याः परं कफकराः चिलिचीमस्त्रिदोषकृत् ।

Generally fish increases *kapha* excessively where as *cilicīma* vitiates all the *tridoṣas*.

Description of lāva and others:

लावरोहितगोदैणा: स्वे स्वे वर्गे वरा: परम् ॥6 7 ॥

Lāva, rohita, godha and *eṇa* are the best in their respective groups. That means:

- * *Lāvaka* is the best among *viśkira*.
- * *Rohitaka* is the best one in *matsya* group.
- * *Grdhra* (eagle) is the best one among *prasaha*.
- * *Eṇa* is the best among the group of *mrga*.

The best meat to be taken and the meat to be discarded:

मांसं सद्योहतं शुद्धं वयःस्थं च भजेत्-

One should take the meat of the animals; those have been just killed, purified and youthful only.

-त्यजेत् । मृतं कृशं भृशं मेद्यं व्याधिवारिविषैर्हतम् ॥6 8 ॥

Meat of dead animals, emaciated, full of fat, diseased, drowned and poisoned should not be taken as food.

Properties of the flesh obtained from different body parts:

पुंस्क्रियोः पूर्वपश्चार्थं गुरुणी, गर्भिणी गुरुः । लघुर्योष्टिच्चतुष्पात्सु, विहङ्गेषु पुनः पुमान् ॥6 9 ॥
 शिरःस्कन्धोरुपृष्ठस्य कट्ट्याः सक्थनोश्च गौरवम् । तथाऽमपक्वाशययोर्यथापूर्वं विनिर्दिशेत् ॥7 0 ॥
 शोणितप्रभृतीनां च धातूनामुत्तरोत्तरम् । मांसाद्वारीयो वृषणमेद्वृक्कयकृदगुदम् ॥7 1 ॥

- * Meat obtained from the upper part of the body of the male animals as well as the lower part of the body of the female animals is not easily digestible.
- * Similarly meat of the pregnant animals is also having *guru guṇa* and not easily digestible.
- * Meat obtained from female quadrupeds as well as male birds are having *laghu guṇa* and easily digestible.
- * Meat of various body parts of the animals like head, shoulders, thighs, back, hip, fore limbs, stomach and intestines is also not easily digestible.
- * Tissues such as blood and others are also hard to digest in their succeeding order.
- * Testicles, penis, kidneys, liver and rectum of the animals are also not easily digestible in comparison with the meat.

इति मांसवर्गः ।

Thus ends group of meats.

अथ शाकवर्गः

5. Śāka Varga (Group of Vegetables)

General properties of pāṭhā & other vegetables:

शाकं पाठाशठीसूषासुनिषण्णसतीनजम् । त्रिदोषधनं लघु ग्राहि सराजक्षववास्तुकम् ॥7 2 ॥

Pāṭhā (*Cissampelos pariera*), śaṭhī/karcūra (*Hedychium spicatum*), sūṣā (*Momordica charantia*), suniṣaṇṇaka (*Marsilea minuta*), satīnaja (*Pisum sativum*) and other leafy vegetables mitigates all the *tridosas*. They are having *laghu guṇa* and easily digestible. As they are having *grāhī guṇa*, they absorb water and stop the elimination of fluids from the body.



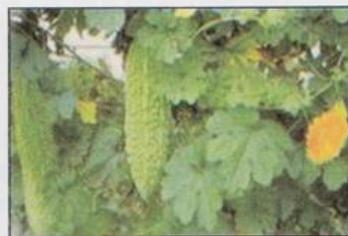
Śāka



Pāṭhā



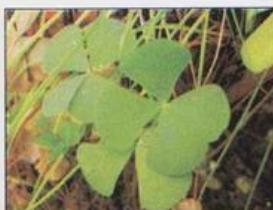
Śaṭhī/karcūra



Sūṣā



Satīnaja



Suniṣaṇṇaka



Vāstūka

Suniṣaṇṇa:

सुनिषण्णोऽग्निकृद्वृष्टस्तेषु-

Suniṣaṇṇaka (*Marsilia minuta*) increases appetite and also acts as an aphrodisiac.

Rājakṣva:

-राजक्षवः परम् ।

ग्रहणशोर्प्रविकारध्यः-

Rājakṣva (*Euphorbia microphylla*) is indicated in amoebiasis and hemorrhoids.

Vāstūka:

-वर्चोभेदि तु वास्तुकम् ॥7 3 ॥

Vāstūka (*Chenopodium album*) breaks up the hard stools.

Kākamācī:

हन्ति दोषत्रयं कुष्ठं वृष्या सोष्णा रसायनी । काकमाची सरा स्वर्या—

Kākamācī (*Solanum nigrum*) is having *sara guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It mitigates all the *tridoṣas* and cures skin diseases, increases semen, rejuvenator, and excellent for maintenance of accurate voice.



Kākamācī

Cāngeri:

—चाङ्गेर्यम्लाऽग्निदीपनी ॥७४॥
ग्रहण्यशर्तोऽनिलश्लेष्महितोष्णा ग्राहिणी लघुः ।

Cāngeri (*Oxalis corniculata*) is having *amla rasa*, *laghu*, *grāhī guṇa* (stops the elimination of fluids from the body) and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It increases digestive power. It is indicated in dysentery, piles, *vāta* and *kapha* disorders.



Cāngeri

General properties of pāṭola and others:

पटोलसप्तलारिष्टशार्ङ्गेश्वल्युजाऽमृताः ॥७५॥
वेत्राग्रबृहतीवासाकुतिलीतिलपर्णिकाः । मण्डूकपण्डिकर्कोटकारवेल्लकपर्पटाः ॥७६॥
नाडीकलायगोजिह्वावार्तांकं वनतिक्तकम् । करीरं कुलकं नन्दी कुचैला शकुलादनी ॥७७॥
कटिल्लं केम्बुकं शीतं सकोशातककर्कशम् । तिक्तं पाके कटु ग्राहि वातलं कफपित्तजित् ॥७८॥

1. *Pāṭola* (*Trichosanthus diocia*), 2. *Saptalā* (*Acacia sinuata*), 3. *Ariṣṭa* (*Azadirachta indica*), 4. *Śāringeṣṭhā* (*Cardiospermum halicacabum*), 5. *Avalgujā* (*Psoralea corylifolia*), 6. *Amṛtā* (*Tinospora cordifolia*), 7. *Vetrāgra* (*Calamus tenuis*), 8. *Bṛihatī* (*Solanum indicum*), 9. *Vāsā* (*Adathoda vasaka*), 10. *Kuntalī* (*Corchorus sp*), 11. *Tilaparnīkā* (*Gynondropsis pentaphylla*), 12. *Maṇḍūkaparṇī* (*Centella asiatica*), 13. *Karkoṭa* (*Momordica dioica*), 14. *Kāravellaka* (*Momordica charantia*), 15. *Parpaṭa* (*Mollugo cerviana*), 16. *Nāḍikālāya* (*Corchorus capsularis*) 17. *Gojihwā* (*Launaceae asplenifolia*), 18. *Vārtāka* (*Solanum melongena*), 19. *Vanatiktaka* (*Mollugo sp*), 20. *Karīra* (*Capparis deciduas*), 21. *Kulaka* (Variety of *pāṭola*/ *Trichosanthes sp*.), 22. *Nandī* (*nandī sāka*), 23. *Kucailā* (a variety of *pāṭhā*), 24. *Śakulādanī* (*Alternanthera sessilis*), 25. *Katilla* (*punarnavā*) (*Boerhaavia diffusa*), 26. *Kembuka* (*Costus speciosus*), 27. *Kośātaka* (*Luffa acutangula*), 28. *Karkaśa* (bitter fruit vegetable belongs to cucurbitaceae family).

In this way 28 vegetables have been enumerated.

In general, they are all having *tikta rasa*, *śīta vīrya* and *kaṭu vipāka*. As they are having *grāhī guṇa*, stops the eliminations of fluids from the body. They increase *vāta* and mitigate *kapha* and *pitta*.

Pāṭola (*Trichosanthes diocia*):

हृद्यं पटोलं कृमिनुत्स्वादुपाकं रुचिप्रदम् ।

Paṭola is delightful, cures worm infestations, became sweet at the end of digestion (*madhura vipāka*) and increases the perception of taste.

Bṛhatidvaya (*Solanum indicum* & *Solanum xanthocarpum*):

पित्तलं दीपनं भेदि वातधनं बृहतीद्वयम् ॥7 9 ॥



Paṭola



Bṛhatī



Kaṇṭkāri

Bṛhatīdwaya increase *pitta* and relieves *vāta*. Also increases digestive powder and break up the hard stools.

Vṛṣa (Vāsā) (*Adathoda vasica*):

वृषं तु वमिकासधनं रक्तपित्तहरं परम् ।

Vāsā does cure vomiting and cough. It is specially indicated in bleeding disorders.

Kāravellaka (*Momordica charantia*):

कारवेलं सकटुं दीपनं कफजित्परम् ॥8 0 ॥

Kāravellaka is having *tikta rasa* and *katu vipāka*. It increases digestive power and it is one of the best drugs of choice to mitigate *kapha*.

Vārtāka (*Solanum melongena*):

वार्तांकं कटु तिक्तोष्णं मधुरं कफवातजित् । सक्षारमनिजननं हृद्यं रुच्यमपित्तलम् ॥8 1 ॥

Vārtāka is of two types. One is having *katu*, *tikta rasa* and the other variety consists *madhura rasa* and *kṣāra anurasa*. Both of them are having *uṣṇa vīrya*. It mitigates *kapha*, *vāta* and slightly increases *pitta*. It is delightful and increases digestive power as well as the perception of taste.

Karīra:

करीरमाध्मानकरं कषायं स्वादु तिक्तकम् ।

Karīra (*Capparis deciduas*) is having *kaṣāya*, *madhura* and *tikta rasa* and produces abdominal distension.



Vāsā



Kāravellaka



Vārtāka



Karīra

Kośātaki & avalgujā:

कोशातकावल्युजकौ भेदिनावग्निदीपनौ ॥8 2॥

Both *kośātaki* (*Luffa acutangula*) and *avalgujā/bākucī* (*Psoralia corylifolia*) are useful to break up solidified stool as well as to increase digestive power.



Kośātaki



Avalgujā

Taṇḍuliya:

तण्डुलीयो हिमो रूक्षः स्वादुपाकरसो लघुः । मदपित्तविषास्त्रधनः—

Taṇḍuliya (*Amaranthus spinosus*) is having *madhura rasa*; *rūkṣa*, *laghu guṇa*; *sīta vīrya* and *madhura vipāka*. It is useful in the management of alcoholic intoxication, *pitta roga*, poisonous disorders and diseases pertaining to blood.



Taṇḍuliya

Muñjāta:

—मुञ्जातं वातपित्तजित् ॥8 3॥

स्निग्धं शीतं गुरु स्वादु बृंहणं शुक्रकृत्परम् ।

Muñjāta (*Orchis latifolia*) is having *madhura rasa*; *snigdha*, *guru guṇa* and *sīta vīrya*. It mitigates *vāta* and *pitta*. It nourishes the body and increases semen.

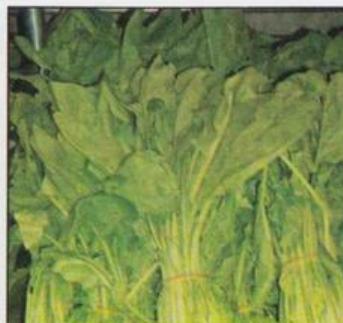
Pālaṅkyā:

गुर्वा सरा तु पालङ्क्या—

Pālaṅkyā (*Spinacia oleracea*) is having *guru* and *sara guṇa*.

—मदधनी चाप्युपोदका ॥8 4॥

पालङ्क्यावत्सृतश्चूः स तु सङ्ग्रहणात्मकः ।



Pālaṅkyā



Upodikā

Upodikā & cañcu:

Upodikā (*Basella rubra*) relieves alcoholic intoxication.

Cañcu (*Corchorus sp.*) is also having similar properties to that of *pālaṅkyā*. As it is also having *sāṅgrāhī guṇa* it arrests the elimination of body fluids.

Vidāri:

विदारी वातपित्तद्वी मूत्रला स्वादुशीतला ॥८५॥
जीवनी बृंहणी कण्ठ्या गुर्व्व वृष्ट्या रसायनम् ।

Vidārī (*Pueraria tuberosa*) is having *madhura rasa*; *guru guṇa* and *śīta vīrya*. It is useful to mitigate *vāta* and *pitta*. It is diuretic, enlivening and nourishing. It is wholesome to the throat. It acts as an aphrodisiac as well as rejuvenator.

Jivanti:

चक्षुष्या सर्वदोषधनी जीवन्ती मधुरा हिमा ॥८६॥

Jivanti (*Leptadenia reticulata*) is having *madhura rasa* and *śīta vīrya*. It is good for the eyes and mitigates all the *tridoṣas*.



Vidārī



Jivanti

General properties of kūṣmāṇḍa & others:

कूष्माण्डतुम्बकालिङ्गकर्विर्वासुतिपिण्डशम् । तथा त्रपुसचीनाकचिर्भट्टं कफवातकृत् ॥८७॥
भेदि विष्टम्भ्यभिष्यन्दि स्वादुपाकरसं गुरु ।

Kūṣmāṇḍa (*Cucurbita pepo*), *tumba* (*Lagenaria siceraria*), *kāliṅga* (*Citrullus vulgaris*), *karkāru* (a variety of *kūṣmāṇḍa*), *urvāru* (*Cucumis utilissimus*), *tiṇḍīśa* (*Citrullus vulgaris* Var. *fistulosus*), *trapusa* (*Cucumis sativus*), *cīnāka* (*Panicum milliaceum*) and *cirbhāṭa* (*Cucumis melo*) are having *madhura rasa*, *guru guṇa* and *madhura vipāka*. Increases *kapha* and *vāta* and causes *viṣṭambha* and *abhiṣyanda*. Also break the solidified stool in the body as they are having *bhedī* property.

Kūṣmāṇḍa & trapusa:

वल्लीफलानां प्रवरं कूष्माण्डं वातपित्तजित् ॥८८॥
बस्तिशुद्धिकरं वृष्ट्यम् त्रपुसं त्वतिमूत्रलम् ।

Kuṣmāṇḍa (*Cucurbita pepo*) is the best one among the creepers and it mitigates *vāta* as well as *pitta doṣa*. It is useful to clean urinary bladder and also acts as an aphrodisiac. Where as *trapusa* (*Cucumis sativus*) is having excessive diuretic action.

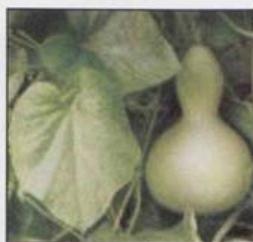


Tumba, kaliṅga etc:

तुम्बं रूक्षतरं ग्राहि कालिङ्गवारुचिर्भटम् ॥८९॥
बालं पित्तहरं शीतं विद्यात्पक्वमतोऽन्यथा ।

Tumba (*Lagenaria siceraria*) is having excessive *rūkṣa guṇa* as well as *grāhī guṇa*.

Tender fruits of *kaliṅga* (*Citrullus vulgaris*), *ervāru* (*Cucumis utilissimus*) and *cirbhāṭa* (*Cucumis melo*) are having *śīta vīrya* and mitigate *pitta doṣa*, where as the ripened fruits are having exactly opposite qualities.



Tumba



Cirbhāṭa



Kaliṅga

शीर्णवृत्तं तु सक्षारं पित्तलं कफवातजित् ॥९०॥
रोचनं दीपनं हृद्यमष्टीलाऽनाहनुल्लघु ।

Sīrṇavṛta (a variety of cucumber which, when ripe, separates from the stalk) is alkaline in taste and having *laghu guṇa*. Increases *pitta doṣa* and mitigates *vāta* and *kapha*. It is delightful, increases the perception of taste, digestive power and relieves *aṣṭhilā* and *ānāha*.



Sīrṇavṛta

Mṛṇāla, bisa etc:

मृणालविसशालूककुमुदोत्पलकन्तकम् ॥९१॥
नन्दीमाषककेलूटशृङ्गाटककसेरुकम् । क्रौञ्चादनं कलोडयं च रूक्षं ग्राहि हिमं गुरु ॥९२॥

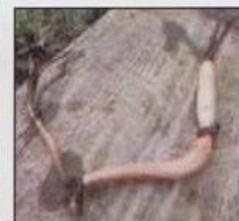
Mṛṇāla (lotus stalk), *bisa* (lotus root), *śālūka* (lotus tuber), *kumuda* (*Nymphaea alba*), *utpala kanda* (*Nymphaea stellata*), *nandī* (*Ficus sp.*), *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*), *keluṭa* (tuberous plant



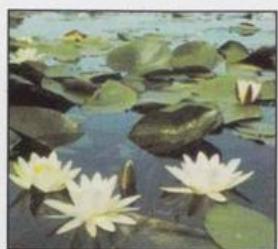
Mṛṇāla



Śālūka



Bisa



Kumuda



Utpala kanda

yet to be identified), śrīgātaka, kaseruka (*Scirpus kysoor*), krauñcādana (*Scirpus articulatus*) and kalodya are having *rūkṣa*, *grāhī*, *guru guṇa* and *sīta vīrya*.

General properties of kalamba etc:

कलम्बनालिकामार्षकुटिञ्चरकुतुम्बकम् । चिल्लीलद्वाकलोणीकाकुरूटकगवेधुकम् ॥९ ३ ॥
जीवन्तझुञ्ज्वेडगजयवशाकसुवर्चला । आलुकानि च सर्वाणि तथा सूप्यानि लक्ष्मणम् ॥९ ४ ॥
स्वादु रुक्षं सलवणं वातश्लेष्मकरं गुरु । शीतलं सृष्टविष्मूत्रं प्रायो विष्टभ्य जीर्यति ॥९ ५ ॥
स्विन्नं निष्ठीडितरसं स्नेहाढ्यं नातिदोषलम् ।

Kalamba (*Ipomoea reptans*), *nālikā* (*Ipomoea aquatica*), *mārṣa* (*Amaranthus blitum*), *kutīñjara* (*Digera muricata*), *kutumbaka/droṇapuṣpī* (*Lucas sp.*), *cillī/vāstūka* (*Chenopodium album*), *laṭvāka/kusumbha* (*Carathamus tinctorius*), *Ioñīkā* (*Portulaca quadrifida*), *kurūṭaka* (*Celosia argentea*), *gavedhuka* (*Coix lachrymajobi*), *jīvanta* (unidentified vegetable), *jhuñjhū* (unidentified vegetable), *edagaja/cakramarda* (*Cassia tora*), *yavaśāka/vāstuka* (*Chenopodium album*), *suvarcalā* (not identified), *aluka* (*Dioscorea sp.*), *lakṣmaṇa* (*Aralia quinquefolia*), etc. are having *madhura-lavaṇa rasa*; *rūkṣa-guru guṇa*; *sīta vīrya*. They increase *vāta* and *kapha*. Usually eliminates faeces and urine and causes some times constipation. Juice extracted after steaming and then processed with oils are not harmful.

Cilli:

लघुपत्रा तु या चिल्ली सा वास्तुकसमा मता ॥९ ६ ॥

Cilli, which bears small leaves, is also having similar properties to *vāstuka* (*Chenopodium album*).

Tarkāri & varuṇa:

तर्कारीवरुणं स्वादु सतित्तं कफवातजित् ।

Tarkāri/agnimantha (*Clerodendron phlomidis*) and *varuṇa* (*Crataeva nurvala*) are having *madhura*, *tikta rasa* and they mitigate *kapha*, *vāta doṣa*.



Tarkāri



Varuṇa

Varṣābhvau & kālaśāka:

वर्षाभ्वौ कालशाकं च सक्षारं कटुतित्तकम् ॥९७॥
दीपनं भेदनं हन्ति गरशोफकफानिलान् ।

Varṣābhvou (2 kinds of Trianthemum portulacastrum) and *kālaśāka* (Corchorus capsularis) are having *kṣāra*, *kaṭu* and *tikta rasa*. Increases digestive power and break up the solidified stools. Indicated in the management of *garaviṣa*, *śopha*, *kapha* and *vāta doṣa*.



Varṣābhū

Kālaśāka

Ciribilwa:

दीपनः कफवातध्वाश्चिरिबिल्वाङ्कुरा: सरा: ॥९८॥

Tender leaves of *ciribilwa* (Holoptelia integrifolia) increase digestive power and mitigate *kapha* and *vāta*. It is also having *sara guṇa*.



Ciribilwa

Śatāvari:

शतावर्यङ्कुरास्तित्ता वृष्या दोषत्रयापहा: ।

Sprouts of *Śatāvarī* (Asparagus racemosus) are having *tikta rasa* and aphrodisiac in property. It mitigates all the three *doṣas*.

Vamśa:

रुक्षो वंशकरीरस्तु विदाही वातपित्तलः ॥९९॥

Vamśakarīra (tender shoots of bamboo) are having *rūkṣa* and *vidāhī guṇa* and increases *vāta* and *pitta doṣa*.

Pattūra:

पत्तूरो दीपनस्तित्तः प्लीहार्शः कफवातजित् ।

Pattūra (Aerva lanata) is having *tikta rasa* and increases digestive power. It is useful in the management of *plīhā*, *arśas*, *kapha* and *vāta roga*.



Vamśa



Pattūra

Kāsamarda:

कृमिकासकफोत्क्लेदान् कासमर्दो जयेत्सरः ॥१००॥

Kāsamarda (*Cassia occidentalis*) is useful in the management of *kṛmi roga*, *kāsa*, *kaphotkleśa*. It is also having *sara guṇa*.

Kusumbha:

रुक्षोष्णामम्लं कौसुम्भं गुरु पित्तकरं सरम् ।

Kusumbha (*Carathamus tinctorius*) is having *amla rasa*; *rūkṣa*, *guru*, *sara guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It increases *pitta doṣa*.

Sarṣapa:

गुरुष्णं सार्षपं बद्धविण्मूत्रं सर्वदोषकृत् ॥१०१॥

Sarṣapa (*Brassica campestris* var. *sarson* prain) is having *guru guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It causes the obstruction of faeces and urine. Increases all the three *doṣas*.

Mūlaka:

यद्वालमव्यक्तरसं किञ्चित्क्षारं सतिक्तकम् । तन्मूलकं दोषहरं लघु सोष्णं नियच्छति ॥१०२॥
गुल्मकासक्षयश्वासव्रणनेत्रगलामयान् । स्वराग्निसादोदावर्तपीनसांश-

Tender root of *mūlaka* (*Raphanus sativus*) is not having definite taste and is slightly *ksāra*, *tikta rasa*; *laghu guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It mitigates all the three *doṣas* and is indicated in the management of *gulma*, *kāsa*, *kṣaya*, *śvāsa*, *vraṇa*, *śleṣmā*, *gala roga*, *swarasāda*, *agnisāda*, *udāvarta* and *pīnasa*.



Kāsamarda



Kusumbha



Mūlaka



Sarṣapa

Properties of mūlaka acc. to the change of state:

—महत्पुनः ॥१०३॥

रसे पाके च कटुकमुष्णावीर्यं त्रिदोषकृत् । गुर्वभिष्यन्दि च-

Mature root of *mūlaka* (*Raphanus sativus*) is having *katu rasa*; *guru guṇa*; *uṣṇa vīrya* and *katu vipāka*. It increases all the *tridosas* and causes *abhiṣyandī*.

—स्नाधसिद्धं तदपि वातजित् ॥१०४॥

वातश्लेष्महरं शुष्कं सर्वम् आमं तु दोषलम् ।

Mūlaka (*Raphanus sativus*) when processed with oil is useful to mitigate *vāta*, where as the dried one mitigates *vāta* and *kapha*. Raw one causes increase of the *doṣas*.

Pīṇḍālu:

कटूष्णो वातकफहा पिण्डालुः पित्तवर्धनः ॥१०५॥

Pīṇḍālu (*Dioscorea* sp. or *Colocasia esculenta*) is having *katu rasa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It mitigates *vāta*, *kapha* and increases *pitta doṣa*.

General properties of kuṭhera etc:

कुठेराशिग्नुसुरससुमुखासुरिभूस्तृणम् । फणिज्जार्जकजम्बीरप्रभृति ग्राहि शालनम् ॥१०६॥

विदाहि कटु रुक्षोष्णं हृदयं दीपनरोचनम् । दृक्शुक्रकृमिहत्तीक्ष्णं दोषोत्क्लेशकरं लघु ॥१०७॥

Kuṭhera (*Orthosiphon* sp.), *śigru* (*Moringa pterygosperma*), *surasa* (*Ocimum sanctum*), *sumukha* (*Ocimum* sp.), *āsuri* (*Brassica nigra*), *bhūtṛṇa* (*Cymbopogon spreng*), *phaṇijja* (*Ocimum basilicum*), *ārjaka* (*Orthosiphon pallidus*) and *jambīra* (*Cymbopogon citratus*).

Leafy vegetables prepared with the above drugs are having *katu rasa*; *rūkṣa*, *grāhī*, *vidāhī*, *tīkṣṇa*, *laghu guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. They are delightful and increase digestive power as well as perception of taste. Destroys vision and decreases semen. Kills worms and increases *doṣas*.



Śigru



Bhūtṛṇa



Jambīra



Surasā (Tulasi)

Surasā, sumukha & dhānyaka:

हिंसाकासविषश्वासपार्श्वरूपूतिगन्धहा । सुरसः—

Surasā (*Ocimum sanctum*) is useful in the management of *hikkā*, *kāsa*, *viṣa*, *śwāsa*, *pārśwaśūla* and *pūtigandha* (bad smell from mouth and nose).

—सुमुखो नातिविदाही गरशोफहा ॥१०८॥

Sumukha (*Ocimum sp.*) doesn't cause much burning sensation and cures *gara viṣa* and *śopha*.

आर्द्रिका तिक्तमधुरा मूत्रला न च पित्तकृत् ।

Ārdrikā (*dhānyaka* wet form/*Coriandrum sativum*) is having *tikta*, *madhura rasa*. It is a diuretic and doesn't increase *pitta*.



Ārdrikā

Laśuna:

लशुनो भृशतीक्ष्णोष्णः कटुपाकरसः सरः ॥१०९॥

हृद्यः केश्यो गुरुवृद्ध्यः स्निग्धो रोचनदीपनः । भग्नसन्धानकृद्वल्यो रक्तपित्तप्रदूषणः ॥११०॥

किलासकुष्ठगुल्मार्शोमेहक्रिमिकफानिलान् । स हिघ्मापीनसश्वासकासान् हन्ति रसायनम् ॥१११॥

Laśuna (*Allium sativum*) is having *kaṭu rasa*, excessive *tikṣṇa*, *sara*, *guru*, *snigdha guṇa*, *uṣṇa vīrya* and *kaṭu vipāka*. It is a cardiac tonic and increases hair growth. It is an aphrodisiac. Increases the perception of taste as well as digestive power. It is useful to join the fractured bones and also gives strength to the body. Vitiates *rakta* as well as *pitta doṣa*. It is indicated in the management of *kilāsa*, *kuṣṭha*, *gulma*, *arśas*, *meha*, *kṛmi*, *kapha*, *vāta*, *hikkā*, *pīnasa*, *śwāsa*, *kāsa*. It is a *rasāyana*.

Palāṇḍu:

पलाण्डुस्तदगुणन्यूनः श्लेष्मलो नातिपित्तलः ।

Palāṇḍu (*Allium cepa*) is inferior to *laśuna* in its properties. It increases *kapha* but doesn't increase *pitta* excessively.

कफवातार्शसां पथ्यः स्वेदेऽभ्यवहृतौ तथा ॥११२॥

तीक्ष्णो गृज्जनको ग्राही पित्तिनां हितकृत्र सः ॥

Gr̥ñjanaka/Palāṇḍu-bheda (*Allium ascelonicum*) is having *tikṣṇa* and *grāhī guṇa*. It is suitable for those suffering from *arśoroga* originated from *kapha* and *vāta* for fomentation as well as internal administration. It is not suitable for those suffering from *pitta doṣa*.

Sūraṇa & bhūkanda:



Laśuna



Palāṇḍu



Gr̥ñjanaka

दीपनः सूरणो रुच्यः कफघ्नो विशदो लघुः ॥११३॥

विशेषादर्शसां पथ्यः:-

Sūraṇa (Amorphophallus campanulatus) increases digestive power as well as perception of taste and mitigates *kapha doṣa*. It is having *viśada* and *laghu guṇa*. It is especially wholesome for *arśoroga*.

—भूकन्दस्त्वतिदोषलः ।

Bhūkanda (Terrestrial mushrooms) causes excessive increase of *tridoṣas*.



Sūraṇa

Heaviness of leaves, flowers etc. in their succeeding order:

पत्रे पुष्पे फले नाले कन्दे च गुरुता क्रमात् ॥१ १ ४॥

Patra śāka, *puṣpa śāka*, *phala śāka*, *nāla śāka* and *kanda śāka* are having excessive *guru guṇa* in their succeeding order.

Superior and inferior varieties among vegetables:

वरा शाकेषु जीवन्ती सार्षपं त्वबरं परम् ।

Jīvantī (Leptadenia reticulata) is the best one and *sarṣapa* (Brassica campestris var. sarson prain) is the worst one in the group of leafy vegetables.

इति शाकवर्गः ।

Thus ends the group of vegetables.

*

अथ फलवर्गः

6. Phala Varga (Group of Fruits)

Drākṣā:

द्राक्षा फलोत्तमा वृष्ट्या चक्षुष्या सुष्टूप्रविट् ॥१ १ ५॥

स्वादुपाकरसा स्निग्धा सकषाया हिमा गुरुः । निहन्त्यनिलपित्तास्वतिक्तास्यत्वमदात्ययान् ॥१ १ ६॥
तुष्णाकासश्रमश्वासस्वरभेदक्षतक्षयान् ।



Drākṣā

- * *Drākṣā* (*Vitis vinifera*) is the best among the group of fruits. It increases semen, good for eyes and eliminates the urine and faeces freely from the body.
- * Grapes are having *madhura*, *kaṣāya rasa*; *snigdha*, *guru guṇa*; *śīta vīrya* and *madhura vipāka*.
- * Cures *vāta* and bleeding disorders.
- * Relieves bitter taste in the mouth.
- * Indicated in alcoholic toxicity, thirst, cough, dyspnoea on exertion, hoarseness of voice and injury to the chest.

Dādima:

उद्रित्तपित्ताञ्जयति त्रीन्दोषान्स्वादु दाडिमम् ॥११७॥
पित्ताविरोधि नात्युष्णमस्त्वं वातकफापहम् । सर्वं हृदयं लघु स्निग्धं ग्राहि रोचनदीपनम् ॥११८॥

- * Sweet pomegranate (*Punica granatum*) is specially indicated in *pitta* dominant sannipāta disorders.
- * Sour pomegranate is not vitiates *pitta*. Slightly hot in potency and mitigates *vāta* and *kapha*.
- * Sweet and sour fruit is good for heart. Light and unctuous, increases the perception of taste and appetite, constipated.

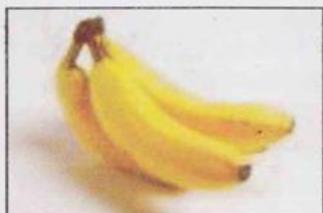


Dādima

General properties of moxa and other fruits:

मोचखर्जूरपनसनारिकेलपरुषकम् । आग्राततालकाशर्मर्याजादनमधूकजम् ॥११९॥
सौवीरबदराङ्कोल्लफलनुश्लेष्मातकोद्भवम् । वातामाभिउकाक्षोडमुकूलकनिकोचकम् ॥१२०॥
उरुमाणं प्रियालं च बृंहणं गुरु शीतलम् । दाहक्षतक्षयहरं रक्तपित्तप्रसादनम् ॥१२१॥
स्वादुपाकरसं स्निग्धं विष्टम्भि कफशुककृत् ।

- * *Moca/plantain* (*Musa paradisiaca*), *kharjūra/dates* (*Phoenix sylvestris*), *panasa/jackfruit* (*Artocarpus heterophyllus*), *nārikela/coconut* (*Cocos nucifera*), *parūṣaka* (*Grewia asiatica*), *āmrātaka* (*Spondias pinnata*), *tāla* (*Borassus flabellifer*), *kāśmarya* (*Gmelina*



Moca (Kadalī)



Kharjūra



Panasa



Nārikela



Parūṣaka



Karamarda



Āmrātaka



Madhūka



Badara

arborea), *rājādāna* (*Mimusops hexandra*), *madhūka* (*Madhuca indica*), *badara* (*Zizyphus jujuba*), *aikola* (*Alangium lamarckii*), *phalgu* (*Ficus hispida*), *śleṣmātaka* (*Cordia myxa*), *bādāma* (*Prunus amygdalus*), *abhiṣuka* (*Pistacia vera*), *akṣoda* (*Juglans regia*), *mukūlaka* (a variety of edible fruit of North Himalayas), *nikocaka* (*Aesculus indicus*), *urumāṇa* (Northern Himalayan zone fruit i.e. *Prunus armeniaca*), *priyāla* (*Buchanania lanzan*) etc. are having *madhura rasa*, *guru guṇa*, *śīta vīrya* and *madhura vipāka*.

* Gives strength to the body.

* Relieves the burning sensation, indicated in injury to the chest, bleeding disorders and increases *kapha* and semen. Causes constipation.

Tālaphala & kāśmarya:

फलं तु पित्तलं तालं सरं काश्मर्यजं हिमम् ॥१ २२ ॥

शकृन्मूत्रविबन्धनं केशं मेध्यं रसायनम् ।



Tāla phala



Tāla Vṛkṣa

* *Tāla phala* (*Borassus flabellifer*) is having *sara guṇa* and increases *pitta*.

* *Kāśmarya* (*Gmelina arborea*) is having *śīta vīrya* and is useful to relieve *mala*, *mūtrabandha*. It is also useful to grow hair, increase intelligence and acts as a rejuvenator.

Bādāma:

वातामाद्युष्णावीर्यं तु कफपित्तकरं सरम् ॥१ २३ ॥

Bādāma (*Prunus amygdalus*) is having *sara guṇa* and *uṣna vīrya* and is useful to increase *kapha* and *pitta*.

Priyāla:

परं वातहरं स्निग्धमनुष्णं तु प्रियालजम् । प्रियालमज्जा मधुरो वृष्यः पित्तानिलापहः ॥१ २४ ॥

Priyāla (*Buchanania lanza*) is having *snigdha guṇa* and *anusṭna vīrya*. It is especially useful to mitigate *vāta*.

Priyāla fruit pulp is having *madhura rasa* and is used as an aphrodisiac. It is also useful to mitigate *pitta* and *vāta*.

Kola majjā:

कोलमज्जा गुणैस्तद्वच्छर्दिः कासजिच्च सः ।

Kola majjā (fruit pulp of *Zizyphus jujuba*) is also having similar properties to that of *priyāla majjā* and is useful to relieve *trṣṇā*, *chardi* and *kāsa*.

Bilwa:

पक्वं सुदुर्जरं बिल्वं दोषलं पूतिमारुतम् ॥1 2 5॥

दीपनं कफवातधनं बालं, ग्राह्यभयं च तत् ।

Ripened fruit of *bilwa* (*Aegle marmelos*) is not easily digestible and increases all the three *dosas*. It causes putrefied smell in the flatus.

Where as tender fruits increase digestive power and mitigate *kapha* and *vāta*. Both of them are useful to absorb water as they contain *grāhī guṇa*.



Bādāma



Priyāla



Bilwa

Kapittha:

कपित्थमामं कण्ठधनं दोषलं, दोषघाति तु ॥1 2 6॥

पक्वं हिघ्मावमथुजित, सर्वं ग्राहि विषापहम् ।

Unripened fruit of *kapittha* (*Feronia limonia*) is harmful to the throat and increases all the three *dosas*. Where as ripened one is useful to mitigate all the *tridosas* and also indicated in the management of hiccup and vomiting. Both are having *grāhī guṇa* and will be useful as anti-poisonous.

Jambū:

जाम्बवं गुरु विष्टम्भ शीतलं भृशवातलम् ॥1 2 7॥

सङ्ग्राहि मूत्रशक्तोरकण्ठं कफपित्तजित् ।

Jambū (*Syzygium cumini*) is having *guru*, *grāhī guṇa* and *sīta vīrya*. It especially causes *vāta*

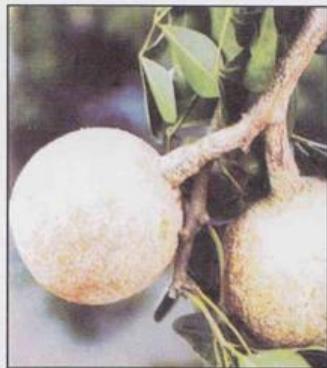
doṣa and mitigates *kapha* and *pitta*. It causes constipation. It obstructs free flow of urine and faeces. It is harmful to the throat.

Āmra:

वातपित्तास्त्रकृद्वालं, बद्धास्थि कफपित्तकृत् ॥1 2 8 ॥
गुर्वाप्त्रं वातजित्पक्वं स्वाद्वस्तं कफशुक्रकृत् ।

Tender fruits of *āmra* (*Magnifera indica*) increase *vāta*, *pitta* and *rakta*.

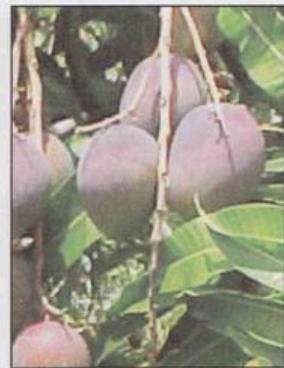
Mango fruit after forming seed causes *kapha* and *pitta doṣa*. Ripened mango fruit is having *guru guṇa* and mitigates *vāta doṣa* where as the fruit having *madhura* and *amla rasa* increases *kapha* and *śukra*.



Kapittha



Jambū



Āmra

Vṛkṣāmla:

वृक्षाम्लं ग्राहि रूक्षोष्णं वातश्लेष्महरं लघु ॥1 2 9 ॥

Vṛkṣāmla (*Garcinia indica*) is having *laghu*, *rūkṣa guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It is useful to mitigate *vāta* and *kapha* and also absorbs water as it is having *grāhī guṇa*.

Śamī phala:

शम्या गुरुष्णं केशधनं रूक्षम्-

Śamī (*Prosopis spicigera*) is having *guru*, *rūkṣa guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. It is not easily digestable and harmful for hair.

Pilu phala:

-पीलु तु पित्तलम् ।
कफवातहरं भेदि प्लीहार्शःकुमिगुल्मनुत् ॥1 3 0 ॥
सतिक्तं स्वादु यत्पीलु नात्युष्णं तत्त्रिदोषजित् ।

*Pilu** (*Salvadora persica*) fruits increase *pitta* and mitigate *kapha* and *vāta*. It breaks the solidified faeces and is indicated in the management of *kṛmi* and *gulma*. The fruits, which are having *tikta* and *madhura rasa* are not so hot in potency and mitigates all the *tridoshas*.

* It is commonly known as toothbrush tree.



Vṛkṣāmla



Pilu

Mātuluṅga:

त्वक्तिकट्टकटुका स्निग्धा मातुलुङ्गस्य वातजित् ॥1 3 1॥

बृंहणं मधुरं मांसं वातपित्तहरं गुरु । लघु तक्तेसरं कासश्चासहिध्मामदात्ययान् ॥1 3 2॥

आस्यशोषानिलश्लेष्मविबन्धच्छर्द्यरोचकान् । गुल्मोदराशःशूलानि मन्दगिनत्वं च नाशयेत् ॥1 3 3॥

Epicarp of *mātuluṅga* fruit (external cover of *Citrus medica*) is having *tikta*, *kaṭu rasa* and *snigdha guṇa*. It mitigates *vāta*.

Mesocarp of *mātuluṅga* (fleshy part) is having *madhura rasa* and *guru guṇa* and is useful to make the body stout. It is useful to mitigate *vāta* and *pitta*.

Where as its stamens are having *laghu guṇa* and is indicated in the management of *kāsa*, *śwāsa*, *hikkā*, *madātyaya*, *āsyāśoṣa*, disorders of *vāta*, *kapha*, *vibandha*, *chardi*, *arochaka*, *gulma*, *udara*, *arśas*, *sūla* and *agnimāndya*.

Bhallaṭaka:

भल्लातकस्य त्वडमांसं बृंहणं स्वादु शीतलम् ।

तदस्थ्यग्निसमं मेध्यं कफवातहरं परम् ॥1 3 4॥

Bhallaṭaka (*Semecarpus anacardium*) fruit's outer layer and fleshy part is having *madhura rasa* and *śīta vīrya* and makes the body stout, where as its seed is similar to fire in properties and increases intelligence and mitigates *kapha* and *vāta* especially.

Pālevata:

स्वाद्वस्त्रं शीतमुष्णं च द्विधा पालेवतं गुरु । रुच्यमत्यग्निशमनं—

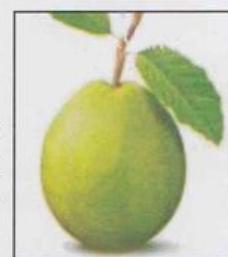
Pālevata/*guava* (*Psidium guajava*) fruit is of two types viz. one having *madhura rasa* contains *śīta vīrya* where as the other having *amla rasa* contains *uṣṇa vīrya*. Both are having *guru guṇa* and useful to increase the perception of taste as well as to cure the diseases caused due to the excessive digestive fire.



Mātuluṅga



Bhallaṭaka



Pālevata

Āruka:

—रुच्यं मधुरमारुकम् ॥१३५॥
पक्वमाशु जरां याति नात्युष्णागुरुदोषलम् ।

Āruka (*Prunus* sp.) is having *madhura rasa* and increases the perception of taste. Ripened fruit will be digested quickly and is not having much *uṣṇa vīrya* and increases all the *tridoṣas*.

Properties of ārdra drākṣā etc:

द्राक्षापरस्तकं चार्द्रमम्लं पित्तकफप्रदम् ॥१३६॥
गुरुष्णावीर्यं वातघ्नं सरं सकरमर्दकम् ।

Drākṣā (*Vitis vinifera*), *parūṣaka* (*Grewia asiatica*) and *karamardaka* (*Carissa carandas*) when they are in the green state they are having *amla rasa*, *guru* & *sara guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. They are useful to mitigate *vāta* and increase *pitta* and *kapha*.

Properties of kola & other fruits:

तथाऽम्लं कोलकर्कन्धुलकुचाप्रातकारुकम् ॥१३७॥
ऐरावतं दन्तशठं सतूदं मृगलिण्डिकम् । नातिपित्तकरं पक्वं शुष्कं च करमर्दकम् ॥१३८॥

Kola (*Zizyphus jujuba*), *karkandhu* (*Zizyphus* sp.), *lakuca* (*Artocarpus lakoocha*), *āmrataka* (*Spondias pinnata*), *āruka* (*Prunus* sp.), *airāvata* (*Grewia* sp.), *dantaśatha* (*Citrus limon*), *tūda* (*Morus indica*), *mṛgaliṇḍika/vibhītaka* (*Terminalia belerica*) and also ripened & dried fruits of *karamarda* (*Carissa carandas*) are having *amla rasa* and increases *pitta* slightly. They are having similar properties to that of *drākṣā* and other fruits mentioned in the above text.

Amlikā & kola phala:

दीपनं भेदनं शुष्कमम्लीकाकोलयोः फलम् ।
तृष्णाश्रमक्लमच्छेदिलघ्विष्टं कफवातयोः ॥

Dried fruits of *amlikā* (*Tamarindus indica*) and *kola* (*Zizyphus jujuba*) increase the power of digestion and acts as purgative. They are having *laghu guṇa* and useful in the management of *trṣṇā* (thirst), *śrama* (fatigue), *klama* (exhaustion). They are wholesome for *kapha*, *vāta roga*.



Dantaśatha



Lakuca



Amlikā

Lakuca:

फलानामवरं तत्र लकुचं सर्वदोषकृत् ।

Lakuca phala (*Artocarpus lakoocha*) is the worst one among the group of fruits as it increases all the *tridoṣas*.

Dhānya, śāka and phala to be avoided:

हिमानलोष्णादुर्वातव्याललालादिदूषितम् ॥140॥
जन्तुजुष्टं जले मग्नमभूमिजमनार्तवम् । अन्यधान्ययुतं हीनवीर्यं जीर्णतयाऽति च ॥141॥
धान्यं त्वजेत्तथा शाकं रूक्षसिद्धमकोमलम् । असञ्चातरसं तद्वच्छुष्कं चान्यत्र मूलकात् ॥142॥
प्रायेण फलमध्येवं तथाऽमं बिल्ववर्जितम् ।

Grains, which have been spoiled by frost, fire, sunlight, wind, saliva of snake and other reptiles, worms, drowned in water, germinated in unsuitable land, unsuitable season, mixed with other grains, which have lost their properties and old one should be rejected.

Similarly vegetables prepared and processed without oils and are not easily digested even after cooking should be rejected.

Except *mūlaka* (*Raphanus sativus*), vegetables, which have not matured and taste is not fully formed and became dry also should not be used. Similarly except *bilwa phala* (*Aegle marmelos*) all the other tender fruits should be avoided.

इति फलवर्गः ।

Thus ends the group of fruits.

*

अथौषधवर्गः

7. Ouṣadha Varga (Group of Drugs)

General properties of lavaṇa:

विष्वन्दिलवणं सर्वं सूक्ष्मं सृष्टमलं मृदु ॥143॥
वातघ्नं पाकि तीक्ष्णोष्णं रोचनं कफपित्तकृत् ।

All the salts are having *sūkṣma*, *mṛdu*, *tikṣṇa*, *uṣṇa* and *viṣyandi guṇa*. Useful to pass stools easily. Increases digestion and also the perception of taste. Mitigates *vāta* and aggravates *kapha* and *pitta*.

Saindhava lavaṇa:

सैन्धवं तत्र सस्वादु वृष्यं हृद्यं त्रिदोषनुत् ॥144॥
लघुनुष्णं दृशः पथ्यमविदाह्यग्निदीपनम् ।

Among them *saindhava lavaṇa* is having *lavana* and slightly *madhura rasa*; *laghu guṇa* and slightly *uṣṇa vīrya*. It is useful as an aphrodisiac, delightful and mitigates all the *tridoṣas*. It is wholesome, doesn't cause burning sensation and increases digestive power.



Saindhava lavaṇa

Sauvarcala lavaṇa:

लघु सौवर्चलं हृद्यं सुगन्ध्युदगारशोधनम् ॥145॥
कटुपाकं विबन्धघ्नं दीपनीयं रुचिप्रदम् ।

Sauvarcala lavaṇa is having *laghu guṇa* and *katu vipāka*. It is delightful, aromatic and is useful to purify belching. It is also useful to relieve constipation, and to increases digestive power as well as perception of taste.

Vida lavaṇa:

ऊर्ध्वाधःकफवातानुलोमनं दीपनं विडम् ॥1 4 6॥
विबन्धानाहविष्टभ्यशूलगौरवनाशनम् ।

Vida lavaṇa is useful for the upward as well as downward movement of *kapha* and *vāta*. It increases digestive power and relieves constipation. It is indicated for the management of *ānāha*, *viṣṭambha*, *śūla* and *gaurava*.

Sāmudra lavaṇa:

विपाके स्वादु सामुद्रं गुरु श्लेष्मविवर्धनम् ॥1 4 7॥

Sāmudra lavaṇa is having *guru guṇa*, *madhura vipāka* and aggravates *kapha*.

Oudbhida lavaṇa:

सतिक्तकटुकक्षारं तीक्ष्णमुत्क्लेदि चौद्दिदम् ।

Oudbhida lavaṇa is having *tikta*, *katu*, *kṣāra rasa* and *tīkṣṇa guṇa*; and is useful to increase secretions in the body.

Kṛṣṇa lavaṇa:

कृष्णे सौवर्चलगुणा लवणे गन्धवर्जिताः ॥1 4 8॥

Kṛṣṇa lavaṇa is also having similar properties to that of *sauvarcala lavaṇa*, except the odor.



Sāmudra lavaṇa



Kṛṣṇa lavaṇa

Romaka lavaṇa:

रोमकं लघु, पांसूत्थं सक्षारं श्लेष्मलं गुरु ।

Romaka lavaṇa is having *laghu guṇa* where as *pāṁśuka lavaṇa* is slightly *kṣāra rasa* and *guru guṇa* and aggravates *kapha*.

लवणानां प्रयोगे तु सैन्धवादि प्रयोजयेत् ॥1 4 9॥

Saindhava lavaṇa is to be preferred whenever salts are used in the formulations.

Yavakṣāra:

गुल्महृदग्रहणीपाण्डुप्लीहानाहगलामयान् । श्वासार्शःकफकासांश्च शमयेद्यवशूकजः ॥1 5 0॥

Yavaśūkaja (*yavakṣāra*) is indicated in the management of *gulma*, *hṛdroga*, *grahaṇī*, *pāñdu*, *plihā*, *ānāha*, *galaroga*, *śwāsa*, *arśas* and *kaphaja kāsa*.

General properties of all kṣāras:

क्षारः सर्वश्च परमं तीक्ष्णोष्णः कृमिजिल्लघुः । पित्तासृगदूषणः पाकी छेद्याहृद्यो विदारणः ॥१५१॥
अपथ्यः कटुलावण्याच्छुक्रौजः केशचक्षुषाम् ।

All *kṣāras* are generally having *katu*, *lavaṇa rasa*; *tikṣṇa*, *laghu guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. Useful to kill worms, vitiates *pitta* and *rakta*. Digests other substances, also useful to excise hard masses and puncture the tissues. They are not good for the heart, semen, *ojas*, hair and eyes.

Hīngu:

हिङ्गु वातकफानाहशूलघनं पित्तकोपनम् ॥१५२॥
कटुपाकरसं रुच्यं दीपनं पाचनं लघु ।

Hīngu (*Ferula foetida*) is having *katu rasa*, *laghu guṇa* and *katu vīpāka*. It is useful to mitigate *vāta* and *kapha*. It is indicated in the management of *ānāha* and *sūla*. It aggravates *pitta*. It increases the perception of taste, digestive power and process of digestion.



Hīngu

Tripalā:

कषाया मधुरा पाके रुक्षा विलवणा लघुः ॥१५३॥
दीपनी पाचनी मेध्या वयसः स्थापनी परम् । उष्णावीर्या सराऽयुष्मा बुद्धीन्द्रियबलप्रदा ॥१५४॥
कुष्ठवैवर्ण्यवैस्वर्यपुराणविषमञ्चरान् । शिरोऽक्षिपाण्डुहृद्रोगकामलाग्रहणीगदान् ॥१५५॥
सशोषशोफातीसारमेदमोहवमिक्रिमीन् । श्वासकासप्रसेकार्शः प्लीहानाहगरोदरम् ॥१५६॥
विबन्धस्त्रोतसां गुल्मूरूस्तम्भमरोचकम् । हरीतकी जयेद्वयार्धीस्तांस्तांश्च कफवातजान् ॥१५७॥
तद्वामलकं शीतमप्लं पित्तकफापहम् । कटु पाके हिमं केश्यमक्षमीषच्च तदगुणम् ॥१५८॥
इयं रसायनवरा त्रिफलाऽक्ष्यामयापहा । रोपणी त्वग्गदक्लेदमेहकफास्त्रजित् ॥१५९॥

Haritakī (*Terminalia chebula*):

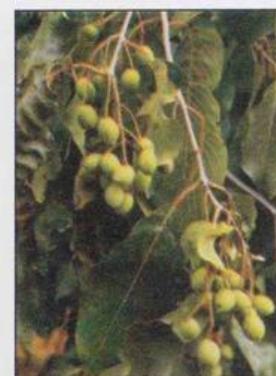
Rasa : Consists all the six tastes except *lavaṇa* and *kaṣāya rasa* is predominant.

Guṇa : *Rūkṣa*, *laghu*, *sara*.

Vīrya : *Uṣṇa*.

Vipāka : *Madhura*.

- * Increases the power of digestion and digested the undigested food substances.
- * Increases the I. Q. & stops ageing. Enhances the life span.
- * Strengthens the mind and sense organs.
- * Indicated in skin diseases, discoloration, hoarseness of voice, chronic and intermittent fevers, diseases of head and eyes, anemia, heart diseases, jaundice, amoebiasis, emaciation, oedema, diarrhoea, diabetes, fainting, vomiting, worm infestation, dyspnoea, cough, salivation, hemorrhoids, enlargement of spleen, distension of abdomen, artificial poisoning, ascitis, blockage of channels, tumors, anorexia, *ūrustambha* etc., and also for *kaphaja* and *vātaja rogas*.



Haritakī

Āmalakī (Emblica officinalis):

Rasa : *Pañca rasa* except *lavaṇa*. *Amla rasa* is predominant.

Guṇa : *Guru, rūkṣa, śīta*.

Vīrya : *Śīta*.

Vipāka : *Madhura*.

- * It is also having the similar qualities of *harītakī*.
- * As it is having *madhura rasa* and *śīta vīrya*, mitigates *pitta* and *kapha* due to its *kaṭu vipāka* and also *vāta* due to the *amla rasa*.
- * Good for the throat, eyes and heart.
- * Relieves thirst and fever.



Āmalakī

Vibhītakī (Terminalia bellerica):

It is somewhat inferior to *āmalakī* in its qualities.

Rasa : *Kaṣāya, madhura*.

Guṇa : *Laghu, rūkṣa*.

Vīrya : *Śīta, uṣṇa*.

Vipāka : *Madhura*.

- * Relieves cough, dyspnoea and throat infections.
- * Mitigates *kapha* & *pitta*.
- * Fruit pulp is useful for the growth of the body.
- * And if used as collyrium cures corneal ulcer.



Vibhitaki

General properties of triphalā:

- * *Harītakī, āmalakī* and *vibhītakī* are together called as *triphalā*, which is a very good rejuvenator.
- * Cures the eye disorders & skin diseases.
- * Heals the ulcers.
- * Dries up the moisture in the ulcers.
- * Indicated in obesity, diabetes, *kapha* and *rakta* disorders.

Trijātaka and Caturjātaka:

सकेसरं चतुर्जातं त्वक्पत्रैलं त्रिजातकम् । पित्तप्रकोपि तीक्ष्णोष्णं रूक्षं रोचनदीपनम् ॥160॥



Twak



Patra



Elā



Nāgakeśara

- * *Twak* (*Cinnamomum zeylanicum*), *patra* (*Cinnamomum tamala*) and *elā* (*Elattaria cardamomum*) are together called as *trijātāka*.
- * *Trijātāka* along with *nāgakeśara* (*Mesua ferrea*) is known as *caturjātāka*.
- * They are having *tikṣṇa*, *rūkṣa* *guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*; and aggravate *pitta*. Increases the perception of taste as well as digestive power.

Marica:

रसे पाके च कटुकं कफधनं मरिचं लघु ।

Rasa : *Katu* *Guna* : *Laghu*

Vīrya : *Uṣṇa* *Vipāka* : *Katu*.

Increases *pitta* and mitigates *kapha*.

Pippali:

श्लेष्मला स्वादुशीताऽऽद्र्वा गुर्वी स्निग्धा च पिप्पली ॥1 6 1॥

सा शुष्का विपरीताऽतः स्निग्धा वृष्या रसे कटुः । स्वादुपाकाऽनिलश्लेष्मश्वासकासापहा सरा ॥1 6 2॥

न तामत्युपयुज्जीत रसायनविधिं विना ।

Unripened (tender/green) *pippalī* increases *kapha*.

Rasa : *Madhura* *Guṇa* : *Guru, snigdha*

Vīrya : *Sīta* *Vipāka* : *Madhura*.

Dried *pippalī* is having exactly opposite qualities of unripened ones.

Rasa : *Katu* *Vipāka* : *Madhura*.

Guṇa : *Snigdha*

* Good aphrodisiac.

* Mitigates *vāta* and *kapha*.

* Relieves cough and dyspnoea.

* *Pippalī* should not be used excessively other than in *rasāyana* therapy.



Marica



Pippali

Śunṭhi:

नागरं दीपनं वृष्यं ग्राहि हृद्यं विबन्धनुत् ॥1 6 3॥

रुच्यं लघु स्वादुपाकं स्निग्धोष्णं कफवातजित् ।

Rasa : *Katu*

Vīrya : *Uṣṇa*

Guṇa : *Laghu, snigdha*

Vipāka : *Madhura*.

- * Increases appetite.
- * Aphrodisiac.
- * Absorbs water in the body.
- * Good for heart.
- * Relieves constipation.
- * Increases the taste.
- * Mitigates *kapha* and *vāta*.



Śunṭhi

Ārdraka and trikaṭu:

तद्वदाद्रकमेतच्च त्रयं त्रिकटुं जयेत् ॥1 6 4॥

स्थौल्याग्निसदनश्वासकासश्लीपदर्पीनसान् ।

Zinger also having the similar qualities of *śunṭhi*.

Śunṭhi (Zingiber officinale), *marica* (Piper nigrum) and *pippalī* (Piper longum) are collectively known as *trikaṭu*.

Trikaṭu is indicated in obesity, indigestion, cough & dyspnoea, filariasis and coryza.

Cavika & pippalimūla:

चविकपिण्डलीमूलं मरिचाल्पान्तरं गुणैः ॥1 6 5॥

Cavika (Piper chaba) and *pippalimūla* (root of Piper longum) are also having somewhat lesser properties to that of *marica* (Piper nigrum).

Citraka:

चित्रकोऽग्निसमः पाके शोफार्शः कृमिकुष्ठहा ।

Citraka (Plumbago zeylanica) is similar in properties of *agni* as it digests and is indicated in the management of *śopha*, *arśas*, *kṛmi* and *kuṣṭha*.



Citraka

Pañcakola:

पञ्चकोलकमेतच्च मरिचेन विना स्मृतम् ॥1 6 6॥

गुल्मप्लीहोदरानाहशूलधनं दीपनं परम् ।

The above five drugs except *marica* i.e. *pippalī*, *pippalimūla* (*modī*), *cavya* (*cavikā*), *citraka* and *nagara* (*śunṭhi*) are collectively known as *pañcakola*.

Pañcakolas are indicated in tumors, disorders of spleen, *udararoga*, abdominal distention, colic and best stimulator of digestion.

Bṛhat pañcamūla:

बिल्वकाशमर्यतकीरीपाटलाटिण्टुकैर्महत् ॥1 6 7॥

जयेत्कषायतित्तोष्णं पञ्चमूलं कफानिलौ ।



Bilwa



Kāśmarī



Tarkārī



Pāṭalā



Tinṭuka

1. *Bilwa* (*śrīphala*) (*Aegle marmelos*)
2. *Kāśmarī* (*gambhārī*) (*Gmelina arbora*)
3. *Tarkārī* (*agnimanda*) (*Clerodendron phlomidis*)
4. *Pāṭalā* (*amogha*) (*Stereospermum sauveolens*)
5. *Tinṭuka* (*śyonāka*) (*Oroxylum indicum*)

* *Kaṣāya, tikta rasa, uṣṇa vīrya.*

* Mitigates *kapha* and *vāta*.

Laghu pañcamūla:

हस्वं बृहत्यंशुमतीद्वयगोक्षुरकैः स्मृतम् ॥१६८॥

स्वादुपाकरसं नातिशीतोष्णं सर्वदोषजित् ।

Bṛhatī dwaya i.e.

1. *Bṛhatī* (*Solanum indicum*)
2. *Kaṇṭakārī* (*Solanum xanthocarpum*)

Amśumatī dwaya i.e.

3. *Śāliparṇī* (*Desmodium gangeticum*)
4. *Prśni parṇī* (*Uraria picta*)
5. *Gokṣura* (*Tribulus terrestris*)

* *Madhura rasa, madhura vipāka.*

* Neither cold nor hot in potency.

* Mitigates all the *tridoṣas*.

Madhyama pañcamūla:

बलापुनर्नवैरण्डशूर्पपर्णाद्वयेन तु ॥१६९॥

मध्यमं कफवातघ्नं नातिपित्तकरं सरम् ।



Bṛhatī



Śāliparṇī



Pṛśni parṇī



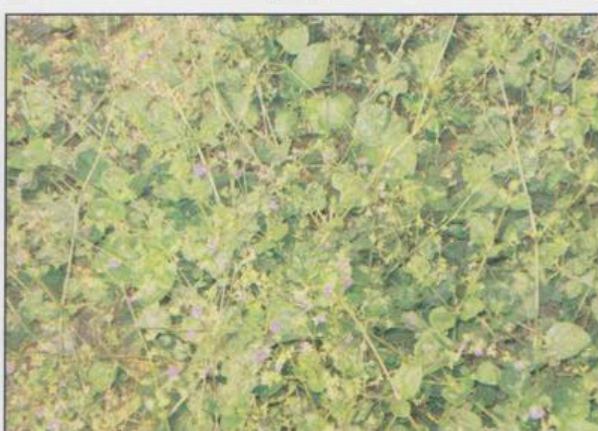
Kanṭakārī



Gokṣura



Balā



Punarnavā



Eranđa



Mudga parṇī



Māṣa parṇī

1. *Balā*(*Sida cordifolia*)
2. *Punarnavā*(*Boerhavia diffusa*)
3. *Eranđa*(*Ricinus communis*)

Sūrpa parṇīdwaya—

4. *Mudga parṇī*(Phaseolus trilobus)
5. *Māṣa parṇī*(Phaseolus labialis)

Sara guṇa, slightly increases *pitta* and mitigates *vāta* and *kapha*.

Jivaniya pañcamūla:

अभीरुवीराजीवन्तीजीवकर्षभकैः स्मृतम् ॥१७०॥
जीवनाख्यं तु चक्षुष्वं वृष्ट्वं पित्तानिलापहम् ।

1. *Abhīrū*(Asparagus racemosus)
2. *Vīrā*(Vetiveria zizanoides)
3. *Jīvantī*(Letpadenia reticulata)
4. *Jīvaka*(one of the *aṣṭa varga*)
5. *Rṣabhaka*(one of the *aṣṭa varga*)

Good for eyes. Aphrodisiac, mitigates *pitta* and *vāta*.



Abhīrū



Vīrā



Jīvantī

Trṇa pañcamūla:

तुणाख्यं पित्तजिह्वर्भकासेक्षुशरशालिभिः ॥१७१॥

1. *Darbhā*(Desmostachya bipinnata)
2. *Kāsa*(Saccharum spontaneum)
3. *Ikṣu*(Sachharum officinarum)

4. Šara(a variety of Desmostachya bipinnata)
5. Šāli(Oryza sativa)

Mitigates *pitta doṣa*.



Darbhā



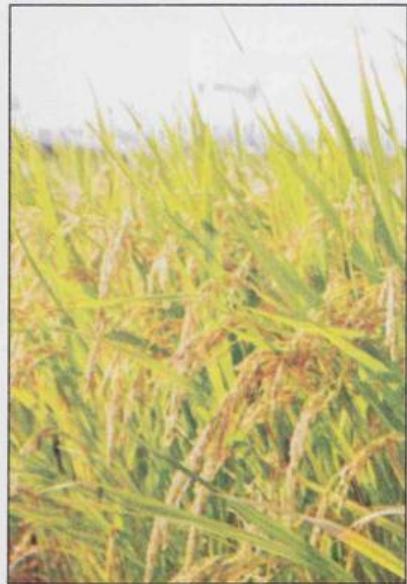
Kāsa



Ikṣu



Šara



Šāli

इत्यौषधवर्गः ।

Thus ends the group of drugs.

Notes:

In Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha seven types of *pañcamūlas* have been described as under:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Bṛhat pañcamūla</i> | 5. <i>Trīṇa pañcamūla</i> |
| 2. <i>Laghu pañcamūla</i> | 6. <i>Vallī pañcamūla</i> |
| 3. <i>Madhyama pañcamūla</i> | 7. <i>Kaṇṭaka pañcamūla</i> |
| 4. <i>Jīvanīya pañcamūla</i> | |

In addition to the above five types *vallī pañcamūla* and *kaṇṭaka pañcamūla* have been additionally enumerated.

Vallī pañcamūla:

1. *Ajasṛigī*(Gymnema sylvestre)
2. *Haridrā*(Curcuma longa)
3. *Vidārī*(Pueraria tuberosa)
4. *Sāribā*(Hemidesmus indicus)
5. *Amṛtā*(Tinospora cordifolia)

Mitigates all the *tridoṣas*.

Kaṇṭaka pañcamūla:

1. *Swadairistrā* (*Tribulus terrestris*)
2. *Abhīrū* (*Asparagus racemosa*)
3. *Saireyaka* (*Barleria prionitis*)
4. *Himsra* (*Capparis sepiaria*)
5. *Karamardaka* (*Carrissa carandas*)

Mitigates all the *tridosas*.

शूकशिर्मीजपकवान्नमांसशाकफलौषधैः । वर्गितैन्नेशोऽयमुक्तो नित्योपयोगिकः ॥१७२॥

Different groups of food substances viz: *śūka varga*, *śimbī varga*, *kṛtānna varga*, *māṁsa varga*, *śāka varga*, *phala varga* and medicinal substances in *ouṣadha varga* have been enumerated in brief, which are very much needful for everybody in their daily life.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनश्रीमद्भाग्भविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थानेऽन्नस्वरूपविज्ञानीयो नाम षष्ठोऽध्यायः ॥१६॥

Thus ends the sixth chapter entitled *Annasvarūpa Vijñāniya Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In the chapter *Annasvarūpa Vijñāniya*, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa classified the food substances in to 7 groups as—*Śūka varga*, *Śimbī varga*, *Kṛtānna varga*, *Māṁsa varga*, *Śāka varga*, *Phala varga* and *Ouṣadha varga*. In *śūka varga* different varieties of corns with bristles and their properties have been discussed. Among them *rakta śāli* is superior and *yavaka* is inferior in their qualities. Different types of pulses like green gram, black gram, red gram, horse gram and their properties were discussed in *śimbī varga*. Vāgbhaṭa stated that green gram is the best for preparation of *dāla* and red gram for external application, black gram is not good among the pulses. Different types of food preparations like *maṇḍa*, *peyā*, *vilepī*, *yūṣa*, *māṁsa rasa* etc. and their properties and indications were mentioned in *kṛtānna varga*. In *māṁsa varga* 8 groups of animals like *mṛga*, *viṣkira*, *pratuda*, *vileśaya*, *prasaha*, *mahāmṛga*, *jalacara* and *matsya* and also their properties were discussed. In *śāka varga* different types of leafy vegetables and other vegetables used in daily life have been discussed. In *phala varga*, *drākṣa* (grapes), *dādima* (pomegranate), plantain, dates, wood apple etc. have been discussed. Among them grapes are the best and *likuca* is the worst. In the end Vāgbhaṭa described some of the drugs useful as medicine in a separate group known as *ouṣadha varga*. Hence one must know the properties of various substances individually and the combination of other substances to get the desired effects.

7

ANNARAKṢĀ ADHYĀYA

[Protection of Food Substances]

अथातोऽन्नरक्षाध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।



After ‘*Annasvarūpa Vijnānīyam*,’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter entitled ‘*Annarakṣā*’ (Protection of Food Substances), thus said Lord Ātreyā and other great sages.

In this chapter Vāgbhaṭa stressed the importance of protecting the food from poisoning and to whom it is necessary to make the food become poisonous, how to test the poisonous food, how to protect the food from poisoning and the preparation of various antitoxic formulations etc. have been discussed.

Usually wealthy persons, landlords and kings will have more enemies rather than friends. So, there is every possibility of poisoning the food and other substances by the close associates of the lords and others, to kill them and snatch the wealth.

Hence the lords should be cautious in this regard and appoint the royal physicians to look after their health and wealth.

Appointment of prāṇācārya (Royal physician):

राजा राजगृहासन्ने प्राणाचार्यं निवेशयेत् । सर्वदा स भवत्येवं सर्वत्र प्रतिजागृतिः ॥१॥

The king should arrange the residence for the royal physician very nearer to his palace so that he will be watchful in each and every aspect round the clock.

Duties and responsibilities of prāṇācārya:

अन्नपानं विषाद्रक्षेद्विशेषेण महीपते: । योगक्षेमौ तदायत्तौ धर्माद्या यज्ञिबन्धनाः ॥२॥

The foods and drinks taken by the kings should be carefully protected by the royal physicians from poisoning, because the security of the people, and attaining the four pursuits of life depends upon the healthiness and happiness of the lord.

Notes:

The author of *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* has delineated the qualities of royal physician as under:

Qualities of prāṇācārya (Royal physician):

- * Royal physicians should have good family background.
- * Should be affectionate and friendly.
- * Having faith in God, soft in nature and should have good conduct and character.
- * Should be skillful.

- * Should take quick and firm decisions.
- * Should be pious physically, mentally and orally and be obedient.
- * Should not have any bad habits and should be courageous.
- * Perfectly trained in all eight branches of Āyurveda.
- * Should have all types of antitoxic and efficacious drugs.

Features of poisonous foods:

ओदनो विषवान् सान्द्रो यात्पविस्त्राव्यतामिव । चिरेण पच्यते पक्वो भवेत्पर्युषितोपमः ॥३॥
मयूरकण्ठतुल्योष्मा मोहमूर्छाप्रसेककृत् । हीयते वर्णगत्यादैः किलद्यते चन्द्रिकाचितः ॥४॥

- * Food mixed with poison will become thick and the grains of boiled rice cannot be separated.
- * It takes long time to cook. Even cooked, becomes moist and loses hotness in a short time.
- * If thrown the poisonous food into fire, it emits peacock neck colored flames and causes delusion, fainting and salivation.
- * Loses the natural color, smell & taste. It becomes watery and full of shiny particles.

Features of poisonous curries or side dishes:

व्यञ्जनान्याशु शुष्पन्ति ध्यामक्वाथानि तत्र च । हीनाऽतिरिक्ता विकृता छाया दृश्येत नैव वा ॥५॥
फेनोर्धर्वराजीसीमन्ततन्तुबुद्धुदसम्भवः । विच्छिन्नविरसा रागाः खाण्डवाः शाकमामिषम् ॥६॥

- * Curries or side dishes will become dry quickly and also looks dirty when they get poisoned.
- * Foods prepared with poisonous decoction become black.
- * In the poisonous decoctions, one's image appears without head and other organs, abnormal or altered and sometimes not seen at all.
- * Frothy and lines appear on the surface and edges, threads and bubbles also seen.
- * *Rāga*, *sādava*, vegetables and meat will be separated and lost their taste.

Specific features of various poisonous food items:

नीला राजी रसे, ताम्रा क्षीरे, दधनि दृश्यते । श्यावाऽपीतासिता तक्रे, घृते पानीयसन्निभा ॥७॥
मस्तुनि स्यात्कपोताभा, राजी कृष्णा तुषोदके । काली मद्याभ्यसोः, क्षौद्रे हरित्तलेऽरुणोपमा ॥८॥
पाकः फलानामामानां पक्वानां परिकोथनम् । द्रव्याणामार्द्रशुष्काणां स्यातां म्लानिविवरण्ते ॥९॥
मृदूनां कठिनानां च भवेत्स्पर्शविपर्ययः । माल्यस्य स्फुटिताग्रत्वं म्लानिर्गत्यान्तरोद्धवः ॥१०॥
ध्यामण्डलता वस्त्रे, शदनं तन्तुपक्षमणाम् । धातुमौक्तिककाष्ठाशमरत्नादिषु मलाक्तता ॥११॥
स्नेहस्पर्शप्रभावानिः, सप्रभृत्वं तु मृण्ये ।

Different types of colored lines will be seen on different food items when they are poisoned as follows:

- | | | |
|---------------|---|-------------------------|
| * Mutton soup | - | bluish lines |
| * Milk | - | copper colored lines |
| * Curd | - | blackish lines |
| * Buttermilk | - | yellowish white |
| * Ghee | - | lines resembling water. |

- * Whey - pigeon colour.
- * Tuṣodaka - blackish lines.
- * Alcohol, water - blackish
- * Honey - greenish lines
- * Oil - reddish colored lines.
- * Unripe fruits ripen very quickly.
- * Ripe fruits undergo putrefaction.
- * Wet substances become dull and dried ones become discolored.
- * Soft and hard substances change their attributes exactly opposite in nature.
- * Flower garland tips will split, fade and alter their smell.
- * Dirty patches will appear on clothes and the threads will be peeling off automatically.
- * Vessels prepared from metals, pearls, wood, stones and precious gems etc. become dirty and lose their smoothness and luster.
- * Earthen wares assume luster.

Viṣa-dātā (Features of the person administering poison):

विषदः श्यावशुष्कास्यो विलक्षो वीक्षते दिशः ॥१ २ ॥
स्वेदवेपथुमांस्त्रस्तो भीतः स्खलति जृम्भते ।

Person who administered the poison will have discolored face, appears miserable, mouth become dried, looks in and around, frightened, sweating and shivering, becomes shy and coward, afraid of being detected, irrelevant in giving answers and yawns too much.

Features of the poisonous food when thrown into fire:

प्राप्यात्रं सविषं त्वग्निरेकावर्तः स्फुटत्यति ॥१ ३ ॥
शिखिकण्ठाभधूमार्चिरनर्चिर्वौग्रगन्धवान् ।

- * When poisonous food is thrown into fire it burns with a single point of flame.
- * Makes cracking sounds.
- * Emits flame and smoke resembling the color of peacock neck.
- * At times the flame is sharp and some times it is slow.
- * Emits pungent smell.

Features of the poisonous food taken by the birds and animals:

प्रियन्ते मक्षिकाः प्राश्य काकः क्षामस्वरो भवेत् ॥१ ४ ॥
उत्क्रोशन्ति च दृष्टवैतच्छुकदात्यूहसारिकाः । हंसः प्रसखलति, ग्लानिर्जीवञ्जीवस्य जायते ॥१ ५ ॥
चकोरस्याऽक्षिवैराग्यं, क्रौञ्चस्य स्यान्मदोदयः । कपोतपरभृदक्षचक्रवाका जहत्यसून् ॥१ ६ ॥
उद्देगं याति मार्जारः, शकुन्मुञ्चति वानरः । हृष्णेन्मयूरस्तददृष्ट्या मन्दतेजो भवेद्विषम् ॥१ ७ ॥
इत्यन्नं विषवज्ज्ञात्वा त्यजेदेवं प्रयत्नतः । यथा तेन विपद्येत्रन्नपि न क्षुद्रजन्तवः ॥१ ८ ॥

- * Flies don't reach the food, if at all they will die.
- * If the crows eat the poisonous food, lose their voice.

- * By seeing the poisonous food, parrot, *dātyūha* (gallinule bird) and *sārikā* (mynah) etc. make long, loud sounds.
- * Swan loses its gait.
- * *Jīvañjīva* (chukur) become exhausted.
- * *Cakora* bird eyes become red.
- * *Krouñca* (heron) becomes intoxicated.
- * Pigeon, cuckoo, cock and *cakravāka* will die.
- * Cat becomes shivered.
- * Monkey passes stools.
- * Peacock by its mere look the poison becomes weak.

By the above tests it should be identified that the food is poisoned and should be disposed off in such a place where minute insects and other animals should not be affected.

Complications of touching poisonous food and the management:

स्पृष्टे तु कण्डूदाहोषाज्वरार्तिस्फोटसुप्तयः । नखरोमच्युतिः शोफः, सेकाद्या विषनाशनाः ॥1 9॥
शस्तास्त्र प्रलेपाश्च सेव्यचन्दनपद्मकैः । ससोमवल्कतालीसपत्रकुष्ठामृतानतैः ॥2 0॥

Touch of poisonous food causes itching, burning sensation, fever, pain, eruptions, tingling sensation, falling of nails and hair, swelling etc.

Treatment:

- * *Parisheka* with anti-poisonous decoctions.
- * *Pralepa* with—*sevya/uśīra* (*Vetiveria zizanioides*), *candana* (*Santalum album*), *padmaka* (*Prunus cerasoides*), *soma-valkakhadira* (*Acacia catechu*), *tālisapatra* (*Taxus baccata*), *kuṣṭa* (*Saussurea lappa*), *amṛtā* (*Tinospora cordifolia*) and *nata/granthitagara* (*Valeriana wallichii*).

Effects of poisonous food in the mouth and their management:

लाला जिह्वौष्ठयोर्जाङ्घमूषा चिमिचिमायनम् । दन्तहर्षो रसाज्ञत्वं हनुस्तम्भश्च वक्त्रगे ॥2 1॥
सेव्याद्यस्त्र गण्डूषाः सर्वं च विषजिद्धितम् ।

If the poisonous food is consumed and the poison is in the mouth causes:

- * Salivation.
- * Loss of sensation in the tongue and lips.
- * Burning sensation in the mouth.
- * *Danta-harṣa* (morbid sensitiveness of the teeth).
- * Unable to perceive the taste.
- * Lockjaw.

Treatment:

- * *Gandūṣa* with the decoction of *sevya* (*Vetiveria zizanioides*) and other drugs mentioned above.
- * Anti-poisonous therapies pertaining to the mouth.

**Signs and symptoms of poisonous substances when reaches
the stomach & intestines:**

आमाशयगते स्वेदमूर्च्छाधमानमदध्रमा: ||2 2||
 रोमहर्षे वर्मिर्दहशक्षुर्हदयरोधनम् । बिन्दुभिश्चाचयोऽङ्गानां, पवाशयगते पुनः ||2 3||
 अनेकवर्णं वर्मति मूत्रयत्यतिसार्वते । तन्ना कृशत्वं पाण्डुत्वमुदरं बलसङ्घ्रयः ||2 4||
 तयोर्वान्तविरित्तस्य हरिद्रे कटभीं गुडम् । सिन्दुवारितनिष्पावबाध्यिकाशतपर्विका: ||2 5||
 तण्डुलीयकमूलानि कुकुटाण्डमवल्लुजम् । नावनाञ्जनपानेषु योजयेद्विषशान्तये ||2 6||

If the poison is in the stomach, the following signs and symptoms will be seen:

- * Severe perspiration all over the body.
- * Fainting, abdominal distention, toxicity and giddiness.
- * Horripilations.
- * Vomiting and burning sensation.
- * Obstruction to the vision and functioning of the heart.
- * Rash all over the body.

If the poisonous food reaches the intestines:

- * Vomit multi colored material.
- * Poly urea.
- * Diarrhoea.
- * Lethargy.
- * Emaciation.
- * Paleness.
- * Abdominal distension.
- * Loss of strength.

Treatment:

1. *Vamana* (emesis): Induce vomiting.
2. *Virecana* (purgation): Then administer the purgative drugs. Followed by—
3. *Nasya* (nasal administration)
4. *Añjana* (collyrium)
5. *Pāna* (drinking) with the decoction of the drugs mentioned below.

Haridrā (*Curcuma longa*), *dāruharidrā* (*Berberis aristata*), *kaṭabhiśirīṣa* (*Albizzia procera*), *guḍa* (*Jaggery*), *sinduvārita* (*Vitex negundo*), *niśpāva* (*Dolichos lablab*), *bāṣpika/hingu-parvika* (*Gardenia gummifera*), *śataparvika* (one type of sugarcane), *tandulīyaka mūla* (*Amaranthus spinosus*), *kukkuṭāṇḍa* (hen's egg), *avalgujā* (*Psoralia corylifolia*).

Hṛdvīśodhana (Purification of heart):

विषभुत्ताय दद्याच्य शुद्धायोर्धमस्तथा । सूक्ष्मं ताप्ररजः काले सक्षीङ्गं हृद्विशोधनम् ||2 7||
 शुद्धे हृदि ततः शाणं हेमचूर्णस्य दापयेत् । न सज्जते हेमपाङ्गे पदापत्रेऽम्बुवद्विषम् ||2 8||
 जायते विपुलं चायुग्रिऽप्येष विधिः स्मृतः ।

- * After conducting *vamana* and *virecana*, administer fine powder of copper mixed with honey internally for the purification of heart.
- * Afterwards administer *swarna bhasma* in a dose of one *śāṇa* (3 gms.) by observing time and place in divided doses over a period of time.
- * Whoever is taking gold internally, poison doesn't adhere their body similar to water and the lotus leaf and they will also get long life.
- * The same line of treatment is suitable even for artificial poisoning.

Viruddhāhāra:

विरुद्धमपि चाहारं विद्याद्विषगरोपमम् ॥२९॥

Incompatible foods also can be treated as poison and artificial poisoning.

आनूपमामिषं माषक्षीत्रक्षीरविरुद्धकैः । विरुद्ध्यते सह बिसैमूलकेन गुडेन वा ॥३०॥
विशेषात्पयसा मत्स्ये विषपि चिलीचिमः ।

- * Meat of marshy animals taken together with *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*), *kṣoudra* (honey), *kṣīra* (milk), *virūḍhaka* (germinated seeds), *bisa* (stalks of lotus), *mūlaka/radish* (*Raphanus sativus*), *guḍa* (jaggery) is incompatible.
- * Especially fish and milk should not be taken together as both the substances are having *madhura rasa* and *madhura vipāka*, which cause the obstruction of the channels. Similarly fish and milk are opposite in their potency i.e. hot and cold respectively. Due to the dissimilarity of their potencies they will become incompatible food.
- * Out of all types of fish particularly '*cilicima*' variety should not be taken together with milk.

विरुद्धमस्तं पयसा सह सर्वं फलं तथा ॥३१॥
तद्वक्तुलत्थवरककड़गुवल्लमकुष्टकाः ।

- * Sour substances as well as sour fruits should not be taken together with milk.
- * Similarly *kuluttha* (*Dolichos biflorus*), *varaka* (a variety of coarse cereal grain), *kaigu* (cereal), *valla/niśpāva* (*Dolichos lablab*), *makuṣṭaka* (*Phaseolus aconitifolius*) also should not eat along with milk.

भक्षयित्वा हरितकं मूलकादि पयस्यजेत् ॥३२॥

Milk should be avoided while consuming *haritaka* (green leafy vegetables) *mūlaka/radish* (*Raphanus sativus*) and other vegetables.

वाराहं श्वाविधा नाद्याद्धना पृष्ठतकुक्कुटौ । आममांसानि पित्तेन, माषसूपेन मूलकम् ॥३३॥
अविं कुसुम्भशाकेन, बिसैः सह विरुद्धकम् । माषसूपगुडक्षीरदध्याज्यैर्लाकुचं फलम् ॥३४॥
फलं कदल्यास्तक्रेण दध्ना तालफलेन वा । कणोषणाभ्यां मधुना काकमार्चीं गुडेन वा ॥३५॥
सिद्धां वा मत्स्यपचने पचने नागरस्य वा । सिद्धामन्यत्र वा पात्रे कामात्तामुषितां निशाम् ॥३६॥

- * Meat of *vārāha* (boar) should not be taken along with meat of *śvāvidhā* (porcupine).
- * Meat of *pṛṣata* (spotted deer) and *kukkuta* (hen) should not be taken with *dadhi* (curd).
- * *Āma māṁsa* (raw or uncooked meat) should not be taken with *pitta* (bile juice).

- * Soup of *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*) should not be taken with *mūlaka* (radish).
- * Meat of *avi* (sheep) should not be taken with *kusumbha* (*Carathamus tinctorius*).
- * *Virūḍhaka* (germinated seeds) should not be taken with *bisa* (stalks of lotus).
- * *Lakuca phala* (*Artocarpus lakoocha*) should not be taken with either *māṣa sūpa* or *guḍa* (jaggery) or *ksīra* (milk) or *dadhi* (curd) or with *ājya* (ghee).
- * *Kadalī phala* (*Musa paradisiaca*) should not be taken either with buttermilk or with curd or along with *tāla phala* (*Borassus flabellifer*).
- * *Kākamācī* (*Solanum nigrum*) should not be taken with *kañā/pippalī* (*Piper longum*) and *ūṣāṇa/marica* (*Piper nigrum*) or with *madhu* (honey) and *guḍa* (jaggery).
- * *Kākamācī* also should not be taken when it is processed in a vessel in which fish or *śuṇṭhī* is cooked.
- * Similarly *kākamācī* becomes incompatible even though it is prepared in a separate vessel and was kept overnight.

मत्स्यनिस्तलनस्नेहे साधिता: पिप्पलीस्त्यजेत् । कांस्ये दशाहमुषितं सर्पिरुष्णं त्वरुष्करे ॥३ ७ ॥

- * *Pippalī* (*Piper longum*) processed with the oil in which fish is fried should not be taken.
- * Ghee preserved for more than ten days in a bronze vessel should be discarded.
- * Hot substances as well as hot comforts should be avoided while using *aruṣkara/bhallātaka* (*Semecarpus anacardium*) internally.

भासो विरुद्धयते शूल्यः कम्पिल्लस्तक्रसाधितः ।

- * Meat of *bhāsa* bird fried with the help of a rod is incompatible.
- * Similarly *kampillaka* (*Mallotus philippinensis*) processed with buttermilk is also incompatible.

ऐकध्यं पायससुराकृशरा: परिवर्जयेत् ॥३ ८ ॥

Pāyasa (milk pudding), *surā* (alcohol) and *krśarā* (*khicadī*) etc. should not be eaten together.

मधुसर्पिर्वसातैलपानीयानि द्विशस्त्रिशः । एकत्र वा समांशानि विरुद्ध्यन्ते परस्परम् ॥३ ९ ॥

Honey, ghee, muscle fat, oil and water should not be taken in equal quantity in combination of any two of the above substances or any three or all the five substances, as such combination is incompatible.

भिन्नांशे अपि मध्वाज्ये दिव्यवार्यनुपानतः । मधुपुष्करबीजं च, मधुमैरेयशार्करम् ॥४ ० ॥

मन्थानुपानः क्षेरेयो, हारिद्रः कटुतैलवान् ।

- * Unequal quantity of honey and ghee is also becomes incompatible when rainwater is consumed as *anupāna* (post-prandial drink).
- * Honey and *puṣkara bija/kamala bija* (*Nelumbo nucifera*) should not be taken together.
- * *Madhvāsava*, *maireyāsava* and *śarkārāsava* (alcohol prepared from honey, dates and sugar) should not be taken together.
- * Milk products should not be taken along with *mantha* (*saktū*) as they are incompatible.

* *Haridraka* (yellow colored mushroom) processed with *kaṭu taila/sarṣapa taila* (*Brassica campestris* Var. *sarson* Prain.) is also incompatible.

उपोदकाऽतिसाराय तिलकल्केन साधिता ॥४१॥

Upodaka (*Basella rubra*) leaves processed with *tila kalka* (*Sesamum indicum*) are incompatible and cause *atisāra* (diarrhoea).

बलाका वारुणीयुक्ता कुल्माषैश्च विरुद्ध्यते । भृष्टा वराहवसया सैव सद्यो निहन्त्यसून् ॥४२॥

* Meat of *balākā* (demoiselle crane) and *vāruṇī* (a type of alcohol) as well as *kulmāsa* (Bengal gram, green gram, peas etc. cooked over steam) are incompatible.

* Meat of *balākā* (demoiselle crane) taken when fried with *varāha vasā* (muscle fat of boar) cause death instantaneously.

तद्वत्तिरिपत्राद्यगोधालावकपिञ्जलाः । ऐरण्डेनाग्निना सिद्धास्ततैलेन विमूच्छिताः ॥४३॥

Consumption of meat of *tittiri* (black partridge), *patrādhyā* (peacock), *godhā* (iguana lizard), *lava* (common quail) and *kapiñjala* (gray partridge), if cooked with the firewood of *eraṇḍa* (*Ricinus communis*) or processed with *eraṇḍa taila* (castor oil) also cause instantaneous death.

हरीतमांसं हारिद्रशूलकप्रोतपाचितम् । हरिद्रावहिना सद्यो व्यापादयति जीवितम् ॥४४॥

Consumption of meat of *hārīta* (a kind of yellow bird) by piercing it with the sticks of *haridrā/dāruharidrā* (*Berberis aristata*) and cooked it with the firewood of *dāruharidrā* also cause death immediately.

भस्मपांशुपरिध्वस्तं तदेव च समाक्षिकम् ।

Similarly consumption of meat of *harita* (a kind of yellow bird), which is stained by dust and sand or taken along with honey also cause death immediately.

Definition of *viruddhāhara*:

यत्किञ्चिद्द्विषेषमुत्क्लेश्य न हरेत्तसमासतः ॥४५॥

The food substances which dislodge the vitiated *doṣas* from their places and unable to expel them out of the body and acts as antagonistic to the tissues are known as *viruddhāhara*.

Notes:

Such drugs and diets are unwholesome for the normal tissue elements, which opposes in proper growth of the tissues; some act due to their mutually contradictory qualities; some by combination; some by the method of preparation; some by virtue of place, time and dose; some drugs by their inherent nature.

1. Milk and horse gram taken together becomes incompatible due to the cold and hot in potency respectively. This is an example for mutually contradictory qualities.
2. Milk and jackfruit should not be taken together. Even though both are having sweet in taste, cold in potency and becomes sweet at the end of digestion, the combination of these two becomes unwholesome. This is an example of incompatible food having similar qualities.

3. Milk and fish should not be taken together. Milk is sweet in taste, cold in potency and becomes sweet at the end of digestion whereas fish is also sweet in taste and becomes sweet at the end of digestion but hot in potency. This is an example of incompatible food having similar and dissimilar qualities.
4. Curds should not be taken after heating. Eg. for method of preparation.
5. Honey and ghee should not be taken in equal quantity. Eg. for dosage.
6. Water obtained from saline soil is incompatible. Eg. for place.
7. *Saktū* (flour made into thick solution with water) should not be taken in the night time. Eg. for time.
8. Water should not be taken before and immediately after having *saktū*. Eg. for combination.
9. *Yavaka* (small variety of barley) itself is incompatible due to the inherent nature.

For an intelligent person the examples cited are enough to understand. By applying mind one can identify the various other incompatible foods and should avoid in taking such substances.

Line of treatment:

विरुद्धं शुद्धिरत्रेषा शापो वा तद्विरोधिभिः ।

Complications arise due to the consumption of incompatible foods should be treated in the following ways.

- * Eliminate the vitiated *doṣas* with emesis, purgation and other *sodhana* therapies.
- * Treat the complications by administering the drugs having opposite qualities.

द्रव्यैस्तैरेव वा पूर्वं शरीरस्याभिसंस्कृतिः ॥४ ६ ॥

Or make them accustomed to the body by the regular use of incompatible foods.

व्यायामस्निग्धदीप्ताग्निवयःस्थबलशालिनाम् । विरोध्यपि न पीडायै सात्प्यमल्पं च भोजनम् ॥४ ७ ॥

In compatible foods do not cause harm to the persons doing regular exercises and taking unctuous substances, having increased digestive power, middle aged and strong persons. Similarly foods which have become accustomed and which are in lesser quantity are also not harmful.

Notes:

The use of incompatible foods causes boils, oedema, toxicity, abscess, tumor, tuberculosis, loss of vigor, strength, memory, intelligence, sense perceptions etc. and also *aṣṭa-mahārogas* like *jwara*, *rakta-pitta*, *vāta-vyādhi*, *kuṣṭa*, *prameha*, *udara*, *bhagandara* and *grahaṇī*.

Even though regular intake of unwholesome foods, becoming wholesome, originally they are unwholesome.

Hence it is instructed that accustomed incompatible food substances also should be discarded gradually in the following way.

Method of discarding unwholesome diet:

पादेनापश्यमध्यस्तं पादपादेन वा त्यजेत् । निषेवेत हिंतं तद्वदेकद्विन्यन्तरीकृतम् ॥४८॥

Day

1st	unwholesome	unwholesome	unwholesome	wholesome
2nd	unwholesome	unwholesome	unwholesome	wholesome
3rd	unwholesome	unwholesome	wholesome	wholesome
4th	unwholesome	unwholesome	wholesome	wholesome
5th	unwholesome	wholesome	wholesome	wholesome
6th	unwholesome	wholesome	wholesome	wholesome
7th	unwholesome	wholesome	wholesome	wholesome
8th	wholesome	wholesome	wholesome	wholesome

Take 3 parts of unwholesome and one part of wholesome diet in the first 2 days. On 3rd and 4th day 2 parts unwholesome and 2 parts wholesome diet; 5th, 6th and 7th day. 1 part unwholesome and 3 parts wholesome diet is to be given. From 8th day onwards complete wholesome diet is to be given. In this way unwholesome food substances should be discarded.

अपश्यमपि हि त्वक्तं शीलितं पश्यमेव वा । सात्प्यासात्प्यविकाराय जायते सहसाऽन्यथा ॥४९॥

Discarding unwholesome diet suddenly, and adopting unaccustomed wholesome diet spontaneously also cause diseases due to habituation and non-habituation of such substances.

क्रमेणापचिता दोषाः क्रमेणोपचिता गुणाः । सन्तो यान्त्यपुनर्भाविमप्रकम्प्या भवन्ति च ॥५०॥

Ill effects will be reduced by gradual discontinuation of unwholesome foods and good effects will increase by gradual intake of wholesome foods. In course of time, both become stable and do not revert back to their original state.

अत्यन्तसन्निधानानां दोषाणां दूषणात्पनाम् । अहितैर्दूषणं भूयो न विद्वान् कर्तुमर्हति ॥५१॥

A wise person should not give scope to the vitiation of *dosas* by indulging in unwholesome and incompatible foods and habits, which have become very close and vitiate the body to a great extent.

Three secondary supporters of life:

आहारशयनाब्रह्मचर्यैर्युक्त्या प्रयोजितैः । शरीरं धार्यते नित्यमागारमिव धारणैः ॥५२॥

Body is mainly supported by the acts performed in the previous life, which determine the present life span.

The three secondary supporters of life are intake of food, sleep and observance of *brahmacharya*. They support the body constantly similar to the pillars supports a house. Being supported by these three well-regulated factors of life, the body is endowed with strength, complexion and growth, and continuous until the full span of life provided a person follows the regimen prescribed.



Āhāra



Nidrā



Brahmacarya

आहारो वर्णितस्तत्र तत्र तत्र च वक्ष्यते ।

Till now different types of food substances, liquids, solids, wholesomeness, unwholesomeness and their incompatibility etc. have been discussed. It is also will be described at the appropriate places.

Here onwards regarding sleep and *brahmacarya* will be enumerated.

Notes:

Nidrā (Sleep):

Sleep was born at the time of commencement of the creation of the universe only, out of *tamas*.

Sleep is another form of *tamas* and manifests due to the predominance of *tamas* generally in nights.

Kapha will stir up with the food substances and which obstructs the internal channels causes unable to perform normal functions of the sense organs due to exhaustion and thereby manifests sleep.

When the mind gets exhausted or become inactive and the sensory and motor organs became inactive then the individual gets sleep. During sleep different kinds of dreams will be seen.

निद्रायतं सुखं दुःखं पुष्टिः काश्यं बलाबलम् ॥५ ३ ॥
वृषता क्लीबता ज्ञानमज्ञानं जीवितं न च ।

Happiness and misery, nourishment and emaciation, strength and weakness, virility and sterility, knowledge and ignorance, life and death all these occur depending on the proper and improper sleep.

अकालेऽप्रसङ्गाच्च न च निद्रा निषेविता ॥५ ४ ॥
सुखायुषी पराकृद्यात् कालरात्रिरिवापरा ।

Excessive, improper and sleeplessness leads to misery and also death similar to Kālarātri (Goddess of death).

Effects of proper sleep:

Proper sleep will make for happiness and long life just as the mind of the sages became clear from the knowledge of the soul.

Effects of vigil, day sleep & dosing:

रात्रौ जागरणं रुक्षं, स्निधं प्रस्वपनं दिवा ॥५ ५ ॥
अरुक्षमनभिष्वन्दि त्वासीनप्रचलायितम् ।

- * Vigil during night causes roughness, which leads to the vitiation of *vāta*.
- * Day sleep increases the unctuous and thereby vitiation of *kapha* takes place.
- * Dosing in sitting posture does neither causes roughness nor unctuousness.

Indications of day sleep:

ग्रीष्मे वायुचयादानरौक्ष्यरात्र्यल्पभावतः ॥५ ६ ॥
दिवास्वप्नो हितोऽन्यस्मिन् कफपित्तकरो हि सः । मुक्त्वा तु भाष्ययानाध्वमद्यस्त्रीभारकर्मधिः ॥५ ७ ॥
क्रोधशोकभयैः क्लान्तान् श्वासहिथातिसारिणः । वृद्धबालाबलक्षीक्षततृट्टशूलपीडितान् ॥५ ८ ॥
अजीर्ण्यभिहतोमत्तान् दिवास्वप्नोचितानपि । धातुसाम्यं तथा ह्रेषां श्लेष्मा चाङ्गनि पुष्यति ॥५ ९ ॥

In summer season nights became shorter, and *vāta* gets aggravated in the body due to the absorption of fluid, with its roughness. Hence sleep during daytime in summer is indicated. Day sleep in other seasons cause aggravation of *kapha* and *pitta*.

Sleep during the daytime in all seasons is prescribed for those who are exhausted by excessive study. Riding vehicles, walking long distances, alcoholic drinks, sexual acts, carrying heavy loads, anger, grief and fear, dyspnoea, hiccup, diarrhoea, old persons, children, weak, emaciated, thirst, colic, indigestion, insane, habituated to sleep in day time etc.

This maintains the equilibrium of *dhātus* and strength and *kapha* increases due to day sleep, which nourishes the organs and ensures longevity.

Contraindications for day sleep:

बहुमेदःकफाः स्वप्न्यः स्नेहनित्याश्च नाहनि । विषार्तः कण्ठरोगी च नैव जातु निशास्वप्नि ॥६ ० ॥

Persons with excessive fat, those who are accustomed to take unctuous substances regularly, those with *kapha* constitution, persons suffering with *kapha* disorders and suffering with artificial poisoning should not sleep in daytime.

Complications of akāla śayana (Sleeping at improper time):

अकालशयनान्मोहज्वरस्तैमित्यपीनसाः । शिरोरुक्षोफहल्लासस्वोतोरोधाग्निमन्दताः ॥६ १ ॥
तत्रोपवासवमनस्वेदनावनमौषधम् ।

Moha (delusion), *jwara* (fever), *staimitya* (lassitude), *pīnasa* (nasal catarrh), *śiroruk* (headache), *śopha* (swelling), *hṛllāsa* (nausea), *srotorodha* (obstruction of channels), *agnimāndya* (decreased digestive power) etc. are the complications arise due to sleeping at improper time.

Treatment:

- * *Upavāsa*(fasting)
- * *Vamana*(emesis).
- * *Swedana*(sudation therapy)
- * *Nāvana nasya*(nasal administration).

योजयेदतिनिद्रायां तीक्ष्णं प्रच्छर्दनाङ्गनम् ॥6 2॥

नावनं लङ्घनं चिन्तां व्यवायं शोकभीकृधः । एभिरेव च निद्राया नाशः श्लेष्मातिसङ्घायात् ॥

To manage the complications arise due to excessive sleep, the following measures are to be adopted.

- * *Tikṣṇa pracchardana* (strong emetics).
- * *Tikṣṇa añjana* (strong collyrium).
- * *Nāvana* (nasal administration).
- * *Lainghana* (fasting).
- * *Cintā* (be anxious).
- * *Vyavāya* (copulation).
- * *Śoka* (grief).
- * *Bhī* (fear).
- * *Krodha* (anger).

By the above measures *kapha* will be decreased leads to loss of sleep.

Features of *nidrā-nāśa*:

निद्रानाशादङ्गमर्दशिरोगौरवजृभिकाः । जाड्यग्लानिभ्रामापक्तितन्त्रा रोगाश्च वातजाः ॥6 4॥

Sleeplessness leads to *aṅgamarda* (body pains), *sirogaurava* (heaviness in the head), *jṛmbhā* (yawning), *jādyatā* (lassitude), *glāni* (exhaustion), *bhrama* (giddiness), *āpakti* (indigestion), *tandrā* (state of unconsciousness) and the diseases originated due to the vitiation of *vāta*.

Instructions regarding sleep:

यथाकालमतो निद्रां रात्रौ सेवेत सात्यतः । असात्याज्जागरादर्थं प्रातः स्वप्नादभुक्तवान् ॥6 5॥

- * One should sleep at the proper time in the nighttime as much time as possible according to the individuals need and inculcate the habit of going bed timely.
- * Due to his profession if he is unable to sleep during nighttime allow him to sleep in daytime half of the time without taking food.

Measures to get good sleep:

शीलयेन्मन्दनिद्रस्तु क्षीरमद्यरसान् दधि । अभ्यङ्गोद्वर्तनस्नानमूर्धकण्ठक्षितर्पणम् ॥6 6॥

कान्ताबाहुलताश्लेषो निर्वृतिः कृतकृत्यता । मनोऽनुकूला विषयाः कार्म निद्रासुखप्रदाः ॥6 7॥

ब्रह्मचर्यरतेग्राम्यसुखनिःस्पृहचेतसः । निद्रा सन्तोषतृप्तस्य स्वं कालं नातिवर्तते ॥6 8॥

- * Persons suffering from sleeplessness should take milk, alcoholic preparations, mutton juice and curds regularly.
- * They also should be undergone for *abhyanga* (body massage with oil), *udvartana* (powder massage), *snāna* (bath), *mūrdhā*, *karṇa*, *akṣitarpaṇa* (anointing the head, ears and eyes with suitable oils).
- * Comforting embrace by the arms of wife.
- * Performing the deeds, which gives pleasure to the mind.

- * Controlling the sense organs, not having too much indulgence in sex.
- * Those who follow the schedule of celibacy, not having too much indulgence in sex, and having contentment with what he had will not be suffered from insomnia and will get sleep in time.

Notes:

Classification of sleep:

Sleep has been classified into 7 types by the author of *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* as under:

1. *Kāla-swabhāva* (physiological): Caused by the very nature of the night.
2. *Āmayakheda-prabhāva*: Caused as a complication of other diseases like *sannipātajwara*.
3. *Citta-kheda-prabhāva*: Caused by mental exertion.
4. *Deha-kheda prabhāva*: Caused by physical exertion.
5. *Kapha-prabhāva*: Caused by vitiated *kapha*.
6. *Āgantuka*: Indicative of bad prognosis leading to imminent death.
7. *Tamo prabhāva*: Caused by *tamas*.

Instructions regarding copulation:

ग्राम्यधर्मे त्यजेन्नारीमनुत्तानं रजस्वलाम् । अप्रियामप्रियाचारां दुष्टसङ्कीर्णमेहनाम् ॥६९॥
 अतिस्थूलकृशां सूतां गर्भिणीमन्ययोषितम् । वर्णिनीमन्ययोनिं च गुरुदेवनृपालयम् ॥७०॥
 चैत्यशमशानाऽयतनचत्वराम्बुचतुष्यथम् । पर्वाण्यनङ्गं दिवसं शिरोहृदयताडनम् ॥७१॥
 अत्याशितोऽधृतिः क्षुद्रान् दुःस्थिताङ्गः पिपासितः । बालो वृद्धोऽन्यवेगार्तस्त्यजेत्रोगी च मैथुनम् ॥७२॥

Sexual intercourse should not be conducted;

- * With the woman who is not in the supine position.
- * During menstruation.
- * Unloved.
- * Characterless woman.
- * Suffering with sexually transmitted diseases.
- * Very obese and very lean.
- * Recently delivered and also pregnant.
- * Other than one's own wife and nun.
- * Other than human beings i.e. animals like goat, buffalo.
- * Sexual intercourse also should not be conducted in the residence of preceptors, celestials and emperors.
- * It should not be conducted in temples, graveyards, places of torture and crossroads.
- * Avoid sexual intercourse during the days of new moon, full moon, eclipses etc. and also middays.
- * Should not penetrate the organ into any one of the orifices other than vagina.
- * Should not cause any injury to the head and heart during the play of sex.
- * Avoid sex after taking heavy meal, without wholehearted intention, when hungry, with

uncomfortable postures, when thirsty, during childhood and also in the old age, while suppressing the natural urges like urine and faeces, and when the individual is suffering from any disease.

सेवेत कामतः कामं तृप्तो वाजीकृतां हिमे । त्र्यहाद् वसन्तशरदोः पक्षाद् वर्षानिदाघयोः ॥7 3॥

- * During *hemanta* and *śīśira rtu* one can indulge in sex daily according to his wish after using aphrodisiacs as prescribed.
- * In *vasanta* and *śarad rtu*, it is permitted to have intercourse once in three days.
- * Whereas in *varṣā* and *grīṣma rtu* it is advised to go for sexual act once in a fortnight.

भ्रमक्लमोरुदौर्बल्यबलधात्रियक्षयाः । अपर्वमरणं च स्यादन्यथा गच्छतः स्त्रियम् ॥7 4॥

Those who doesn't follow the regimen pertaining to sexual act as prescribed in the above quotation may get dizziness, fatigue, weakness of thighs, loss of strength, reduction of tissues, failure of perception of senses and premature death also.

स्मृतिमेधायुरारोग्यपुष्टीन्द्रिययशोबलैः । अधिका मन्दजरसो भवन्ति स्त्रीषु संयताः ॥7 5॥

One who follows the regimen pertaining to sexual act will get memory, intelligence, longevity, healthiness, nourishment, perception of sense organs, status in the society, body strength and also delayed aging.

Regimen after copulation:

स्नानानुलेपनहिमानिलखण्डखाद्यशीताम्बुदुग्धरसयूषसुराप्रसन्नाः ।

सेवेत चानु शयनं विरतौ रतस्य तस्यैवमाशु वपुषः पुनरेति धाम ॥7 6॥

After sexual intercourse one should take bath, besmeared with sandalwood paste, expose to cold breeze and had the food substances prepared with sugar candy, milk, mutton soup, cold water, alcoholic preparations like *surā* and *prasannā* and then go to sleep. By these acts the body will get vigor quickly.

Notes:

One who desirous of long life should not have intercourse with a woman before the age of sixteen years and above seventy years.

Before sixteen years of age, all the tissues will not fully developed. Hence they should not perform intercourse otherwise *dhātu kṣaya* takes place as the little quantity of the water in the pond dries up quickly with the sunrays.

Similarly old persons above 70 years of age also should not copulate. If so, he collapses just as an old, dry, worm eaten wood crumbles.

One who controls his mind and sense organs from the temporary pleasure giving activities like intake of food, sleep and sexual intercourse; and there by diverting his mind towards spiritual rites and meditation will get utmost pleasure. These words are enough to a wise man to mould his life accordingly and can lead a healthy, happy and long life.

Conclusion:

श्रुतचरितसमृद्धे कर्मदक्षे दयालौ भिषजिनिरनुबन्धं देहरक्षां निवेश्य ।
भवति विपुलतेजः स्वास्थ्यकीर्तिप्रभावः स्वकुशलफलभोगी भूमिपालश्चिरायुः ॥७७॥

If an emperor can put the responsibility of protecting his health on the shoulders of a royal physician (who is well versed in theory and practice and also kind enough), he will attain great courage, healthiness, reputation, influence, capacity to enjoy the fruits of all actions and long life.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थानेऽन्नरक्षा नाम सप्तमोऽध्यायः ॥७७॥

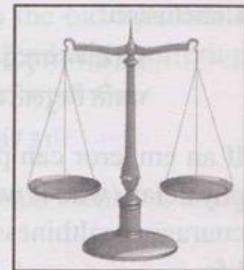
Thus ends the seventh chapter entitled *Annarakṣā vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Śrīnagupta.

In the chapter ‘*Annarakṣāvidhi*’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the situation of good olden days how the poisoning will be happened. Especially kings, landlords and wealthy persons are prone to get poisoning with their close associates. Hence stressed the appointment of royal physician was stated. Features of the person administering poison, how to test the poisonous food with fire, birds and animals, complications of poisonous food and their management; Incompatible foods, the definition, various types of incompatibility due to mutually contradictory qualities, combination, method of preparation etc. with examples. Complications of unwholesome food and the treatment, method of discarding etc. discussed. The secondary supporters of life, intake of food, sleep and observance of *brahmacarya*, their importance and at the end he stated that the emperor will get name and fame only because of the royal physician.



8 MĀTRĀSITIYA ADHYĀYA

[Partaking Proper Quantity of Food]



अथातो मात्राशीतीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Annarakṣā-vidhi*’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Mātrāśitīya*’ (Partaking Proper Quantity of Food), thus aid Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Mātrāśitīya consists two words viz. *mātrā+asita*.

Mātrā means the quantity and *asita* represents the meaning for all the four types of food substances i.e. *khādyā, lehya, peya* and *prāśya*.

Hence *mātrāśita* means the quantity of food is to be taken.

Quantity of food has been classified into two types namely *piṇḍa rūpa* and *pratidravyāpekṣita*. As the quantity of food plays prominent role in the maintenance of positive health as well as the production of several diseases, it has been allocated a separate chapter by name *Mātrāśitīya*.

Mātrā depends upon agni & drarya swabhāva:

मात्राशी सर्वकालं स्यान्मात्रा ह्यग्ने: प्रवर्तिका । मात्रां द्रव्याण्यपेक्षन्ते गुरुण्यपि लघून्यपि ॥1॥
गुरुणामर्धसौहित्यं लघूनां नातिरूपता । मात्राप्रमाणं निर्दिष्टं सुखं यावद्विजीर्यति ॥2॥

One should always consume proper quantity of food only why because consumption of appropriate quantity of food increases the power of digestion.

Such quantity of food depends upon the nature of food substances, such as light and heavy.

If the digestive power is more, high quantity of the food also can be digested and when the power of digestion decreases one cannot take more quantity of food. Similarly light articles of the food and are by nature even if taken in excess they are less harmful. On the other hand heavy foods are more harmful. Hence heavy food substances should be taken half of the capacity of the individual and the light food substances also should not be taken to his full satiation.

In fact appropriate quantity of the food is that which is digested easily without causing any trouble to the body.

Notes:

In *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha Sūtra* Sthāna 11th chapter, features of proper quantity of food is more clearly delineated as under:

Ahāramātrā laksana (Features of proper quantity of food):

‘कुक्षेरप्रतिपीडनमाहारेण हृदयस्यासंरोधः पार्श्वयोरविपाटनमनतिगौरवमुदरस्य प्रीणनमिन्द्रियाणां क्षुत्पिपासोपरतिः स्वस्थानासन-शयनगमनोच्छवासप्रश्वासहस्यसङ्क्लथासु सुखानुवृत्तिः सायं प्रातश्च सुखेन परिणमनं बलवर्णोपचयकरत्वं चेति मात्राया लक्षणम्’ । (A.S.Sū. 11/5)

- * Doesn't cause any discomfort in the abdomen.
- * Which doesn't obstruct the proper functioning of the heart.
- * Doesn't cause any pain in the flanks.
- * Doesn't cause heaviness in his stomach, after having food.
- * Which gives satiation to the sense organs.
- * Which relieves hunger and thirst.
- * Which doesn't cause any discomfort while sitting, sleeping, walking, taking breath, talking etc.
- * Food ingested in the morning being gets digested by evening.
- * Which increases the strength and color complexion etc., are the features of the appropriate quantity of the food.

Amātrāhāra (Improper quantity of food):

भोजनं हीनमात्रं तु न बलोपचयौजसे । सर्वेषां वातरोगाणां हेतुतां च प्रपद्यते ॥३॥
अतिमात्रं पुनः सर्वानाशु दोषान् प्रकोपयेत् ।

It is of 2 types viz.

- (a) *Hīna mātrā* (Inadequate quantity) (b) *Adhika mātrā* (Excessive quantity)

Features of inadequate quantity of food:

- * Consumption of inadequate quantity of food decreases body strength, growth and vigor.
- * Causes 80 types of *vāta* disorders.

Features of excessive quantity of food:

Intake of excessive quantity of food leads to the vitiation of all the *tridoṣas* at once and leads to *alasaka*, *visūcikā*etc.

Clinical features of alasaka:

पीड्यमाना हि वाताद्या युगपत्तेन कोपिताः ॥४॥
आमेनानेन दुष्टेन तदेवाविश्य कुर्वते । विषम्भयन्तोऽलसकं च्यावयन्तो विसूचिकाम् ॥५॥
अधरोत्तरमार्गभ्यां सहसैवाजितात्मनः ।

Consumption of excessive food causes the sudden vitiation of the *tridosas* at a time, and which leads to the indigestion of the food material and produce diseases such as *alasaka*, by blocking the movement of food. The same if discharged through oral and anal orifices (vomiting and diarrhoea) is known as *visūcikā*.

प्रयाति नोर्धर्वं नाधस्तादाहारो न च पच्यते ॥६॥
आमाशयेऽलसीभूतस्तेन सोऽलसकः स्मृतः ।

Such indigested food moves neither upward nor downward direction, and stagnated in the stomach only by the obstruction of the vitiated *doṣas* and causes pain. Such condition is known as *alasaka*.

Clinical features of *visūcikā*:

विविधैर्वेदनोद्भवाच्चादिभृशकोपतः ॥7॥

सूचीभिरिव गात्राणि विध्यतीति विसूचिका ।

Due to the vitiation of *doṣas* causes different kinds of discomforts in the body, especially the pain resembles in pricking with needles all over the body and the undigested food material comes out in the form of vomiting and diarrhoea in persons who are not having control while eating. It is known as *visūcikā*.

Features of *visūcikā* manifested by *tridoṣa*:

तत्र शूलभ्रमानाहकम्पस्तम्भादयोऽनिलात् ॥8॥

पित्ताज्ज्वरातिसारान्तर्दाहतृद्प्रलयादयः । कफाच्छर्द्धंगुरुतावाक्सङ्घष्टीवनादयः ॥9॥

In the above conditions, due to the vitiation of:

Vāta: Colic pain, giddiness, abdominal distention, tremors, stiffness of the body etc.

Pitta: Fever, diarrhoea, burning sensation inside the body, thirst, fainting etc.

Kapha: Vomiting, heaviness in the body, loss of verbal communication, salivation etc. are the symptoms observed.

Special features of *alasaka*:

विशेषाद्वृलस्याल्पवह्नेर्वेगविधारणः । पीडितं मारुतेनान्नं श्लेषणा रुद्धमन्तरा ॥10॥

अलसं क्षेभितं दोषैः शल्यत्वेनैव संस्थितम् । शूलादीनं कुरुते तीव्रांश्चर्द्धतीसारवर्जितान् ॥11॥

सोऽलसः—

Due to the excessive consumption of food by the persons who are weak, having poor digestive capacity, vitiated by *kapha* and in the suppression of natural urges—leads further aggravation of *vāta* which obstructs the internal channels along with *kapha* causes all the above symptoms except vomiting and diarrhoea.

Dandālasaka:

—अत्यर्थदुष्टास्तु दोषा दुष्टामबद्धखाः । यान्तस्तिर्थक्तनुं सर्वा दण्डवत्सम्भयन्ति चेत् ॥12॥

दण्डकालसकं नाम तं त्यजेदाशुकारिणम् ।

Due to the obstruction of the channels, the vitiated *doṣas* are unable to move in the upward or downward direction and begin to move in the side ward direction and makes the body stiff like a stick and can be called *dandālasaka*, which is incurable and should be discarded for giving treatment.

Āma viṣa:

विरुद्धाध्यशनाजीर्णशीलिनो विषलक्षणम् ॥13॥

आमदोषं महाघोरं वर्जयेद्विषसंज्ञकम् । विषरूपाशुकारित्वाद्विरुद्धोपक्रमत्वतः ॥14॥

Due to the ingestion of unwholesome food, excessive food and also the food taken, before the previous meals get digested, *āma* converts into *āmaviṣa*. Whenever *āma* transformed into *āmaviṣa* it will get all the 10 qualities of the poison (*vīṣa*).

Hence it is difficult to manage *āmaviṣa* due to the contradictory line of treatment for *āma* and *vīṣa* such as *uṣṇa* and *śīta cikitsā* respectively.

Treatment for alasaka:

अथाममलसीभूतं साध्यं त्वरितमुल्लिखेत् । पीत्वा सोग्रापटुफलं वार्युष्णं योजयेत् ॥1 5॥
स्वेदनं फलवर्ति च मलवातानुलोमनीम् । नाम्यमानानि चाङ्गानि भृशं स्विन्नानि वेष्टयेत् ॥1 6॥

- * *Vamana* (emesis) with:
 - ◆ *Ugrā/Vacā* (*Acorus calamus*) + ◆ *Saindhava lavaṇa* (rocksalt) +
 - ◆ *Phala/Madanaphala* (*Randia dumatorum*) ◆ Warm water.

- * *Swedana* (sudation therapy).

- * *Phalavartī* for the downward movement of *mala* and *vātā*.

- * Rigid parts should be fomented and then wrap it with a piece of cloth.

Treatment for visūcikā:

विसूच्यामतिवृद्धायां पाष्यर्योर्दाहः प्रशस्यते । तदहश्चोपवास्यैनं विरिक्तवदुपाचरेत् ॥1 7॥

- * In the advanced stage of *visūcikā*, the best line of treatment is conducting *agnikarma* over heal region and advised the patient to go for fasting on that day.
- * Follow the post-operative regimen (*samsarjana krama*) similar to *virecana karma* (purgation therapy).

Treatment for ajirṇa:

तीक्रार्तिरपि नाजीण्ण पिबेच्छूलघ्नपौषधम् । आपसन्नोऽनलो नालं पत्कुं दोषौषधाशनम् ॥1 8॥
निहन्यादपि चैतेषां विभ्रमः सहस्रात्तुरम् ।

- * In case of *ajirṇa* (indigestion), though the patient is suffering with severe pain, he should not be administered the drugs useful to relieve pain.

- * Because the digestive power associated with *āma* is unable to digest drug, diet and *doṣa*.

- * Not only that but also kill the patient soon due the complications raised by the peculiar combination of drug, diet and *doṣa*.

जीर्णाशने तु भैषज्यं युज्यात् स्तब्धगुरुदरे ॥1 9॥

दोषशेषस्य पाकार्थमग्नेः सन्ध्युक्षणाय च ।

- * Soon after the food is digested and stiffness and heaviness is carrying on, then only administer the drugs useful to digest the residual *doṣas* and also helpful to increase the power of digestion.

Apatarpana in *āma*:

शान्तिरामविकाराणां भवति त्वपतर्पणात् ॥2 0॥

त्रिविधं त्रिविधे दोषे तत्समीक्ष्य प्रयोजयेत् ।

- * Diseases manifested due to *āma doṣa* viz. *ālasya*, *agnimāndya* etc. will be relieved by *apatarpana* procedures.

- * Three types of *apatarpana* should be adopted appropriately in case of *tridoṣas* after careful consideration of *deśa*, *kāla*, *agni* etc.

तत्राल्पे लङ्घनं पथ्यं, मध्ये लङ्घनपाचनम् ॥२ १॥

प्रभूते शोधनं, तद्विमूलादुन्मूलयेन्मलान् ।

- * *Laṅghana* is indicated when the *doṣas* are in mild state.
- * *Laṅghana-pācana* (both fasting and digestive drugs) is indicated when the *doṣas* gets aggravated moderately.
- * When *doṣas* vitiate excessively, expulsion is the only way to root out them from their origin.

Notes:

Types of apatarpana (Laṅghana):

Apatarpana (laṅghana) is of 3 types viz.

1. *Laṅghana* (fasting).
2. *Laṅghana-pācana* (fasting & digestive drugs).
3. *Doṣāvasecana* (elimination).

(a) Laṅghana (Fasting):

तत्र लङ्घनमल्पदोषाणाम् ।

.....तेन ह्वनिलानलवृद्ध्या वातातपपरीत इवाल्पः सलिलादयोऽल्पदोषः प्रशोषमापद्यते ।

Laṅghana is indicated when the *doṣas* are mild, just as the little amount of water in a tank absorbed by the wind and sun, the mild vitiated *doṣas* also comes to normal with the help of fasting, which increases the power of digestion as well as *samāna vāta* in the body.

(b) Laṅghana-pācana (Fasting & digestive drugs):

लङ्घनपाचनाभ्यां मध्यदोषो वातातपाभ्यां पांसुभस्माविकरणैरिव चानतिमहान् सलिलादयः ।

Both fasting and digestive drugs are indicated when the *doṣas* gets aggravated moderately.

To dry up the tank which contains medium quantity of water some dust and sand also required along with the above factors like wind and sun. Similarly both fasting and digestive drugs are essential to manage moderately vitiated *doṣas*.

(c) Doṣāvasecana (Elimination therapy):

बहुदोषाणां पुनर्दोषावसेचनमेव कार्यम् । न ह्वस्नाविते पल्वलोदकौघे शाल्यादिपुष्टिर्भवति ।

When *doṣas* are high, expulsion is the only way, just as the crops in a field don't grow well, unless the excessive water drained out.

Hetu-viparīta & vyādhi-viparīta cikitsā:

एरामन्यानपि व्याधीन् स्वनिदानविपर्ययात् ॥२ २॥

चिकित्सेदनुबन्धे तु सति हेतुविपर्ययम् । त्यक्त्वा यथायथं वैद्यो युक्त्यादव्याधिविपर्ययम् ॥२ ३॥

- * Fasting and digestive drugs are useful for the management of the diseases originated due to

overeating. The same line of treatment i.e. *hetu-viparyaya cikitsā* (opposite of their causative factors) can be adopted to treat other diseases also.

* If the disease is not cured due to the above line of treatment, then follow *vyādhi-viparyaya cikitsā* (opposite to the disease).

Ubhayārthakāri cikitsā:

तदर्थकारि वा, पक्वे दोषे त्वद्देच पावके । हितमध्यञ्जनस्नेहपानबस्त्यादि युक्तिः ॥२ ४ ॥

- * Or adopt *ubhayārthakāri cikitsā*, which is neither against the cause nor disease.
- * When *doṣas* are devoid of *āma* and the digestive power is improved adopt the following therapeutic procedures.
- * *Abhyāṅga* (body massage).
- * *Sneha-pāna* (administration of medicated oils internally).
- * *Vasti* (medicated enemata).

Types of ajirṇa:

अजीर्णं च कफादामं तत्र शोफोऽक्षिगण्डयोः । सद्योभुक्त इवोद्धारः प्रसेकोत्क्लेशगौरवम् ॥२ ५ ॥

विष्टब्धमनिलाच्छूलविबन्धाध्मानसादकृत् । पित्ताद् विदग्धं तृणमोहभ्रमास्तोद्धारदाहवत् ॥२ ६ ॥

Due to the dominancy of *kapha* : *āmājīrṇa*.

Due to the dominancy of *pitta* : *vidagdhājīrṇa*.

Due to the dominancy of *vāta* : *viṣṭabdājīrṇa*.

Symptoms of āmājīrṇa:

- * *Akṣi-gaṇḍa śopha* (swelling in the cheeks and eyelids).
- * *Sadyobhuktaiva udgara* (belching/eructation similar to those having immediately after food).
- * *Praseka* (excessive salivation).
- * *Utkleśa* (nausea).
- * *Gaurava* (heaviness in the body).

Symptoms of viṣṭabdājīrṇa:

- | | |
|---|---|
| * <i>Sūla</i> (colic pain) | * <i>Vibandha</i> (constipation) |
| * <i>Ādhmāna</i> (abdominal distention) | * <i>Sāda</i> (decreased power of digestion). |

Symptoms of vidagdhājīrṇa:

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| * <i>Tṛṣṇā</i> (thirst) | * <i>Moha</i> (fainting) |
| * <i>Bhrama</i> (giddiness) | * <i>Amlodgāra</i> (sour eructation) |
| * <i>Dāha</i> (burning sensation in the body) | |

Ajirṇa cikitsā:

लङ्घनं कार्यमाप्ते तु, विष्टब्धे स्वेदनं भृशम् । विदग्धे वमनं, यद्वा यथावस्थं हितं भवेत् ॥२ ७ ॥

For *āmājīrṇa* : *laṅghana* (fasting)
viṣṭabdhājīrṇa : *svedana* (sudation therapy)
vidagdhājīrṇa : *vamana* (emesis) should be conducted.
 or

Any other therapeutic procedure can be followed that is suitable to the condition of the disease.

Vilambikā:

गरीयसो भवेल्लीनादामादेव विलम्बिका । कफवातानुबद्धाऽमलिङ्गा तत्समसाधना ॥२८॥

Vilambikā is another type of indigestion, occurs due to the excessive accumulation of *āma* and also due the vitiation of *kapha* and *vāta doṣa*. Symptoms and the line of treatment for *vilambikā* are similar to *āma*.

Rasaśeṣājīrṇa:

अश्रद्धा हृदव्यथा शुद्धेऽप्युद्धारे रसशेषतः । शयीत किञ्चिदेवात्र सर्वश्नानाशितो दिवा ॥२९॥
 स्वप्नादजीर्णं, सञ्चातबुभुक्षोऽद्यान्मितं लघु ।

Though eructation are clear, lack of interest towards food and discomfort in the chest region suggests that the individual is suffering from *rasaśeṣājīrṇa*.

Treatment:

- * Bed rest for some time is the treatment for *rasaśeṣājīrṇa*.
- * For all other types of *ajīrṇa* it is advised to sleep in daytime without taking food and whenever he feels hunger provide food in a little quantity and that should be easily digestible.

Ajīrṇa sāmānya lakṣaṇa:

विबन्धोऽतिप्रवृत्तिर्वा ग्लानिर्मारुतमूढता ॥३०॥
 अजीर्णलिङ्गं सामान्यं विष्टम्भो गौरव भ्रमः ।

- * *Vibandho atipravṛtti va* (obstruction or excessive elimination of urine and faeces).
- * *Glāni* (exhaustion).
- * *Māruta muḍhatā* (obstruction of movement of *vāta*).
- * *Viṣṭambha* (abdominal distention).
- * *Gaurava* (heaviness in the body).
- * *Bhrama* (giddiness).

Some other causes for indigestion:

न चातिमात्रमेवान्नमादोषाय केवलम् ॥३१॥
 द्विष्टविष्टभिदग्धामगुरुरुक्षहिमाशुचि । विदाहि शुष्कमत्यम्बुप्लुतं चान्नं न जीर्यति ॥३२॥
 उपतप्तेन भुक्तं च शोककोथक्षुदादिभिः ।

- * Excessive quantity of food.
- * Having aversion towards food.

- * Foods that cause abdominal distention.
- * Foods that are over cooked or uncooked.
- * Which are not easily digestible.
- * Which are dry and very cold.
- * Contaminated.
- * Which cause burning sensation.
- * Dried or soaked in more water.
- * Similarly food taken by the persons suffering from grief, anger and hunger also don't undergo proper digestion.

Three types of food to be discarded:

मिश्रं पथ्यमपथ्यं च भुक्तं समशनं मतम् ॥३ ३ ॥

विद्यादध्यशनं भूयो भुक्तस्योपरि भोजनम् । अकाले बहु चाल्पं वा भुक्तं तु विषमाशनम् ॥३ ४ ॥

त्रीण्यव्येतानि मृत्युं वा घोरान् व्याधीन् सुजन्ति वा ।

Similar to unwholesome food, the following 3 types of food—1. *samaśana* 2. *adhyāśana* and 3. *viṣamāśana* are also to be discarded, as they cause horrible diseases and at times death also.

(a) *Samaśana* : तत्र पथ्यापथ्यमेकत्र भुक्तं समशनम् ।

Taking wholesome and unwholesome foods together is known as *samaśana*.

(b) *Adhyāśana* : भुक्तस्योपरि भुक्तमध्यशनम् ।

Taking food without the digestion of the food taken earlier.

(c) *Viṣamāśana* : अप्राप्तातीतकालं तु भुक्तं विषमाशनमिति ।

Taking less or more quantity of food too early or too late than prescribed time.

Recommended or ideal regimen for the consumption of food:

काले सात्यं शुचि हितं स्निग्धोष्णं लघु तन्मनाः ॥३ ५ ॥

षड्सं मधुरप्रायं नातिद्रुतविलम्बितम् । स्नातः क्षुद्रान् विविक्तस्थो धौतपादकराननः ॥३ ६ ॥

तर्पयित्वा पितृन् देवानतिथीन् बालकान् गुरुन् । प्रत्यवेक्ष्य तिरश्छोऽपि प्रतिपत्रपरिग्रहान् ॥३ ७ ॥

समीक्ष्य सम्यगात्मानमनिन्दन्ब्रुवन् द्रवम् । इष्टमिष्टैः सहाशनीयाच्छुचिभक्तजनाहृतम् ॥३ ८ ॥

- * The food should be taken at the proper time only.
- * It should be habituated, clean, wholesome, unctuous, hot and light.
- * Have food with a pleasant mind.
- * It should contain all the six tastes especially sweet.
- * Food should be consumed neither too fast nor too slow.
- * One should take food after having bath, and whenever he feels hungry only.
- * Privacy is essential while taking food.
- * Wash hands, foot and mouth prior to take food.

- * Should not eat without offering spiritual rites, thrown into fire (little quantity of food), offering to the animals and birds. By the above acts, indirectly the food is being tested whether poisoned or not.
- * Afterwards offer food to the guests whoever come at that particular time.
- * After careful consideration of their constitution, one should take food according to their nature.
- * Should not abuse the food and should not talk, while eating.
- * Take more liquid food, which is liked in company of friends and is served by neat, clean and faithful persons.

Other food to be discarded:

भोजनं तृणकेशादिजुष्टमुष्णीकृतं पुनः । शाकावरान्नभूयिष्ठमत्युष्णालवणं त्यजेत् ॥३९॥

- * Food polluted with grass, hair and insects like houseflies etc. should be discarded.
- * It should not make hot for the second time.
- * Food containing more vegetables and unwholesome pulses like *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*), and which is too hot and too salty also should not be taken.

Food not to be taken on regular basis:

किलाटदधिकूर्च्छिकाक्षारशुक्ताममूलकम् । कृशशुष्कवराहाविगोमत्यमहिषामिषम् ॥४०॥
माषनिष्णावशालूकबिसपिष्ठविरुद्धकम् । शुष्कशाकानि यवकान् फाणितं च न शीलयेत् ॥४१॥

The following food substances should not be taken regularly but can be used occasionally.

Kilāṭa (inspissated milk i.e. making thick by evaporating moisture), *dadhi* (curds), *kūrcīka* (solid portion of curds), *kṣāra* (alkalies), *śuktā* (fermented gruel), *āma mūlaka* (uncooked/raw *Raphanus sativus*), *kṛṣa* (meat of animals, which are emaciated), *śuṣka māṁsa* (dry meat), *varāha*, *avi*, *go*, *matsya*, *mahiṣa āmiṣa* (meat of boar, sheep, cow, fish, buffalo), *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*), *niṣpāva* (*Dolichos lablab*), *śālūka* (lotus tubers), *bisa* (lotus stalks), *piṣṭa* (*śāli dhānya* power), *virūḍhaka* (germinated grains), *śuṣka śāka* (dried vegetables), *yavaka* (small variety of barley), *phāṇita* (half cooked molasses).

Recommended food to be taken daily:

शीलयेच्छालिगोधूमयवष्टिकजाङ्गलम् ।
सुनिषण्णकजीवन्तीबालमूलकवास्तुकम् ॥४२॥
पथ्यामलकमृद्धीकापटोलीमुद्रशर्करा । घृतदिव्योदकक्षीरक्षौद्रदाढिमसैन्धवम् ॥४३॥

The following food substances can be taken regularly or habitually.

Śāli (*Oryza sativa*), *godhūma* (*Triticum aestivum*), *yava* (*Hordeum vulgare*), *sāṣṭika* (rice yield in 60 days), *jāṅgala māṁsa* (meat of animals dwelling in desert like lands), *suniṣaṇṇaka* (*Marsilea minuta*), *jīvantī* (*Leptadenia reticulata*), *bāla mūlaka* (tender tubers of *Raphanus sativus*), *pathyā/harītakī* (*Terminalia chebula*), *āmalaka* (*Emblica officinalis*), *mṛdwickā/drākṣā* (*Vitis vinifera*), *paṭola* (*Trichosanthes cucumerina*), *mudga* (*Phaseolus*

radiatus), śarkarā (sugar), ghṛta (ghee), divyodaka (gaṅgāmbu/uncontaminated rain water), kṣīra (milk), kṣoudra (honey), dādima (*Punica granatum*), saindhava (rock salt).

Recommended food during night hours:

त्रिफलां मधुसर्पिभ्या निशिनेत्रबलाय च । स्वास्थ्यानुवृत्तिकृद्यच्च रोगोच्छेदकं च यत् ॥4 4॥

- * Habitual intake of *triphalā* along with honey and ghee during nighttime will be useful to improve eyesight.
- * One should consume the food substances regularly, which will be useful to promote the positive health as well as the drugs such as *kirātātikta* (*Swertia chirata*), useful to cure diseases.

Recommended tastes of food substances to be taken at the start, middle and end of meal:

बिसेक्षुमोच्चोचाप्रमोदकोत्कारिकादिकम् । अद्यादद्रव्यं गुरु स्निग्धं स्वादु मन्दं स्थिरं पुरः ॥4 5॥
विपरीतमतश्चान्ते मध्येऽम्ललवणोत्कटम् ।

- * Food substances which are having *madhura rasa*; *guru*, *snigdha*, *manda*, *sthira guṇa* such as *bisa* (lotus stalks), *ikṣu* (*Saccharum officinarum*), *moca/kadalī* (*Musa paradisiaca*l), *coca/nārikela* (*Cocos nucifera*), *āmra* (*Mangifera indica*), *modaka* (*laḍḍū*), *utkārikā* (sweet dish) etc. should be consumed at the beginning of the meal.
- * Whereas the food substances that are having exact opposite qualities (*kaṭu rasa*, *laghu*, *rūkṣa*, *tikṣṇa*, *sara guṇa*) should be taken at the end of the meal.
- * While those substances, which are predominantly having *amla* and *lavaṇa rasa* should be consumed in the middle of the meal.

Stomach capacity and the allotment of food:

अन्नेन कुक्षेद्वाविंशौ पानेनैकं प्रपूरयेत् ॥4 6॥
आश्रयं पवनादीनां चतुर्थमवशेषयेत् ।

Divide the stomach into 4 parts and filled the stomach with 2 parts of the solid foods, one part with the liquid and the remaining part should be kept vacant for the movement of *vāta* etc.

Anupāna (Postprandial drinks):

अनुपानं हिमं वारि यवगोधूमयोर्हितम् ॥4 7॥
दध्नि मद्ये विषे खौद्रे, कोण्णं पिष्टमयेषु तु । शाकमुद्रादिविकृतौ मस्तुतक्राम्लकाञ्जिकम् ॥4 8॥
सुरा कृशानां पुष्ट्यर्थं स्थूलानां तु मधूदकम् । शोषे मांसरसो, मद्यं मांसे स्वल्पे च पावके ॥4 9॥
व्याध्यौषधाद्वभाष्यस्त्रीलङ्घनातपकर्मभिः । क्षीणे वृद्धे च बाले च पयः पथ्यं यथाऽमृतम् ॥5 0॥

Anu means afterwards. *Anupāna*—drink that has been taken after meals or food substances is known as *anupāna*. Water is the best postprandial drink.

Ideal anupāna:

विपरीतं यदन्नस्य गुणैः स्यादविरोधिच्च । अनुपानं समासेन, सर्वदा तत्प्रशस्यते ॥5 1॥

In brief all the postprandial drinks should have the properties opposite to those of the food taken. But at the same time, such drinks should not be harmful to the tissue elements of the body.

S. No.	Type of food substances/Regimen	Best postprandial drinks
1.	Food prepared with barley, wheat, curds, alcohol, poison or poisonous drugs & honey	Cold water
2.	Corn flour and other foods which are hard to digest	Hot water
3.	Vegetables, <i>mudga</i>	<i>Mastu</i> (whey), Buttermilk, Sour gruel
4.	Lean persons for stouten	<i>Surā</i> (alcohol)
5.	Obese to become lean	Honey + water
6.	<i>Sosa</i> (emaciation)	Mutton soup
7.	After eating meat & in <i>agnimāndya</i>	Wine
8.	Persons debilitated by disease, medicine, long walk, speaking long-time, sexual intercourse, fasting, exposing to sun, exercise, aged and children.	Milk

Anupāna guṇa (Effect of postprandial drinks):

अनुपानं करोत्यूर्जा तृप्तिं व्याप्तिं दृढाङ्गताम् । अन्नसङ्घातशैथिल्यविक्लित्तिजरणानि च ॥5 2॥

- * Postprandial drink gives energy and satiation to the human beings.
- * Gives energy and nourishment to the body and sense organs.
- * Helps in proper digestion, assimilation and instant diffusion of the food taken.

Contraindications:

नोर्धर्वजन्मगदश्वासकासोरः क्षतपीनसे । गीतभाष्यप्रसङ्गे च स्वरभेदे च तद्विद्वितम् ॥5 3॥

Postprandial drinks should not be taken by those suffering from the diseases of the head, cough, injury to chest, running nose, engaged in singing and speaking, hoarseness of voice.

प्रक्लिन्नदेहमेहाक्षिगलरोगविकाराः । पानं त्यजेयुः—

Those who are over hydrated, suffering from poly urea, eye and throat disorders and wounds should avoid drinking liquids.

—सर्वश्च भाष्याध्वशयनं त्यजेत् ॥5 4॥

पीत्वा, भुक्त्वा तपां वहिं यानं प्लवनवाहनम् ।

Soon after taking food and drinks—

- * One should not give lectures.
- * Should not walk long distances or travel by vehicles.
- * Should not sleep.
- * Should not expose to sun and wind.

If so, causes disturbance in the stomach and leads indigestion etc.

Recommended or ideal time for consumption of food:

प्रसुष्टे विष्णूत्रे हृदि सुविमले दोषे स्वपथगे विशुद्धे चोद्गरे क्षुदुपगमने वातेऽनुसरति ।

तथाऽग्नावुद्रिते विशदकरणे देहे च सुलघौ प्रयुक्तीताहारं विधिनियमितं, कालः स हि मतः ॥५५॥

- * After proper expulsion of natural urges like urine and faeces, the heart is in a pleasant condition and is devoid of *rasaśeṣājīrṇa*, is the ideal time to take food.
- * Similarly all the *tridoṣas* should be in the balanced state and they should move in their natural paths.
- * Feeling of hunger, clear eructation, downward movement of *vāta* are the signs to eat.
- * When the digestive activity is excited.
- * Whenever all the sense organs are pleasant and the body is light.

Then only one should consume food after observing the rules and regulations prescribed in the text.

Notes :

Regimen after taking food: Immediately after taking food—

- * Wash the hands.
- * Remove the residue of food by cleaning the teeth with the help of tooth pricks.
- * Mouth gargles.
- * *Pāna* chewing.
- * Walk about hundred yards.
- * Should not travel by vehicles, carrying loads, exposing to sun.

A wise man should follow the rules and regulations of the food prescribed, so that attains perfect healthy, happy and long life and the diseases cannot invade him.

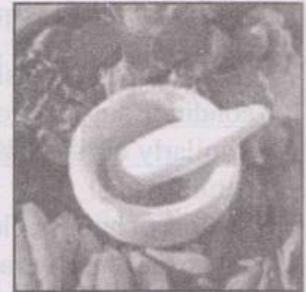
इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने मात्राशितीयो नामाष्टमोऽध्यायः ॥४॥

Thus ends the eighth chapter entitled *Mātrāśitiya Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In this chapter *Mātrāśitiya*, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the definition of proper quantity of food and their features. Qualities of light and heavy food substances, types of improper quantity of food, inadequate, excessive quantity; their complications and treatment were discussed. *Āmadoṣa*, treatment, etc., food taken in proper quantity helps in bringing about the strength, complexion, happiness and longevity whereas the improper food leads all sorts of *tridoṣas* in the human beings. Three types of food to be discarded viz. *samaśana*, *adhyāśana*, *viśamāśana*. Rules and regulations of taking food, postprandial drinks—advantages and contraindications and at the end recommended time to eat etc. have been discussed.

9 DRAVYĀDI VIJÑĀNIYA ADHYĀYA

[Knowledge of Rasa Pañcaka]



अथातो द्रव्यादिविज्ञानीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After 'Mātrāśitīya Adhyāya' Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter 'Dravyādi-vijñāniya' (Knowledge of Rasa Pañcaka), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Basic concepts of the drug were not touched so far. Hence a separate chapter has been allocated to discuss the basics such as *rasa*, *guṇa*, *vīrya*, *vipāka* and *prabhāva* as under.

Importance, nature and origin of dravya:

द्रव्यमेव रसादीनां श्रेष्ठं, ते हि तदाश्रयाः । पञ्चभूतात्मकं तत्त्वक्षमामधिष्ठाय जायते ॥1॥
अम्बुद्योन्यग्निपवननभसां समवायतः । तत्रिवृत्तिर्विशेषश्वयपदेशस्तु भूयसा ॥2॥

- * *Dravya* (substance) is the chief component among *rasa*, *guṇa*, *vīrya*, *vipāka* etc. as it is providing shelter to the latter.
- * All the substances in the universe are composed with *pañca mahābhūtas*. *Pṛthivī* is its substratum and *ap* (*udaka*) or water is its origin, *ākāśa*, *vāyu* and *tejas* are its other supporting parts.
- * The inseparable concomitance of *pṛthivī* and the other basic elements causes the origin of the substances as well as peculiarity among them. In the formation of shape-*ākāśa mahābhūta*; for causing hardness-*vāyu mahābhūta*; germinating parts of the plants-*teja mahābhūta*; origin of the drugs-*ap mahābhūta*; substratum-*pṛthivī mahābhūta* etc. plays the prominent role.
- * In this way the inseparable combination of all these 5 basic elements are responsible for the formation of all the drugs as well as diet.

Rasa (Taste):

तस्मान्नैकरसं द्रव्यं भूतसङ्गातसम्भवात् । नैकदोषास्ततो रोगास्तत्र व्यक्तो रसः स्मृतः ॥3॥

अव्यक्तोऽनुरसः किञ्चिदन्ते व्यक्तोऽपि चेष्यते । गुर्वादयो गुणा द्रव्ये पृथिव्यादौ रसाश्रये ॥4॥

All the substances in the universe are composed with *pañca mahābhūtas* and no substance is formed with only one *mahā bhūta*. Similarly diseases are also manifested due to the vitiation of the *tridosas*.

Eg: *Pārthiva dravya* means that the drug which is predominantly consisting of *pṛthivī*

mahābhūta along with the other four. *Madhura rara dravya* means the drug which is predominantly sweet in taste along with the other five. Similarly *vāta jwara* means the fever caused due to the vitiation of *vāta* predominantly and associated with the other two *doṣas*.

Rasa and anurasa (Primary and secondary tastes):

In a substance *rasa* (primary/main taste) is clearly perceptible where as the *anurasa* (secondary taste) is not perceptible due to the dominance of primary taste or slightly perceptible at the end.

Rasa has been described by having the qualities of the *guru*, *laghu*, *śīta*, *uṣṇa* etc. But strictly speaking these are the qualities of the basic elements, which are present in the substance. It is only a categorical attribution and should not be taken as actual position. It is the quality of the substance but not of *rasas*.

Pārthiva dravya guṇa:

तत्र द्रव्यं गुरुस्थूलस्थिरगन्धगुणोल्बणम् ॥5॥
पार्थिवं गौरवस्थैर्यसङ्घातोपचयावहम् ।

- * The drugs that are having the qualities of *guru* (heavy), *sthūla* (bulky), *sthira* (immobile) and also having the predominance of *gandha guṇa* (smell) can be called as *pārthiva dravyas*.
- * Those drugs are responsible for the weight, firmness, steadiness and also the development of the body.



Pṛthivi

Jaliya (āpya) dravya guṇa:

द्रवशीतगुरुस्तिन्गधमन्दसान्द्रसोल्बणम् ॥6॥
आप्यं स्नेहनविष्वन्दक्लेदप्रह्लादबन्धकृत् ।

- * The drugs that are having the qualities of *drava* (liquid), *śīta* (cold), *guru* (heavy), *snigdha* (unctuous), *manda* (dull), *sāndra* (thick) and having the predominance of *rasa guṇa* (taste) can be called as *jaliya dravyas*.
- * These drugs will produce unctuousness, secretions, moistness, contentment and bindingness (holding together) in the body.

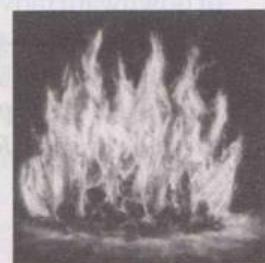


Jala

Āgneya dravya guṇa:

रुक्षतीक्ष्णोष्णविशदसूक्ष्मसूक्ष्मगुणोल्बणम् ॥7॥
आग्नेयं दाहभावर्णप्रकाशपचनात्मकम् ।

- * The substances that are having the qualities of *rūkṣa* (dry), *tīkṣṇa* (sharp), *uṣṇa* (hot), *viśada* (non slimy), *sūkṣma* (minute) and also having the predominance of *rūpa guṇa* (vision) are known as *āgneya dravyas*.
- * These are responsible for burning, brightness, complexion and color, digestion etc.



Agni

Vāyavya dravya guṇa:

वायव्यं रूक्षविशदलघुस्पर्शगुणोल्बणम् ॥८॥
रीक्ष्यलाघववैशद्यविचारग्लानिकारकम् ।

- * The drugs that are having the qualities of *rūkṣa* (dry), *viśada* (non slimy), *laghu* (light), and also having the predominance of *sparsa guṇa* (touch) are known as *vāyavya dravyas*.
- * These drugs are responsible for dryness, lightness, non-sliminess, weakness and division in the body.



Vāyu

Ākāśiya dravya guṇa:

नाभसं सूक्ष्मविशदलघुशब्दगुणोल्बणम् ॥९॥
सौषिर्यलाघवकरम्-

- * The drugs that are having the qualities of *sūkṣma* (minute), *viśada* (non-slimy), *laghu* (light) and also having the dominance of *śabda guṇa* (sound) are known as *ākāśa dravyas*.
- * They are responsible for hollowness and lightness in the body.



Ākāśa

All the substances are medicines:

-जगत्येवमनौषधम् । न किञ्चिद्द्विद्यते द्रव्यं वशान्नार्थयोगयोः ॥१०॥

Nothing exists in the world that is non-medicinal. That means all the substances available in the universe are useful for treatment in either way.

Dominance of mahābhūta and the drug action:

द्रव्यमूर्धर्गमं तत्र प्रायोऽग्निपवनोत्कटम् । अधोगामि च भूयिष्ठं भूमितोयगुणाधिकम् ॥११॥

- * The drugs abounding with the qualities of *agni* and *vāyu* have a tendency of upward movement. This is because of the lightness and upward mobile nature of *vāyu* and upward flames of *agni*.
- * The drugs abounding with the qualities of *pṛthivī* and *ap* on the other hand have a tendency of downward movement because of the heaviness of *pṛthivī* and downward flow of *jala*.

इति द्रव्यं रसान् भेदैरुत्तरत्रोपदेक्ष्यते ।

Thus ends the description of *dravya*. Detailed classification of *rasas* will be discussed in the forthcoming chapter *Rasa-bhedīya Adhyāya*.

Virya
(Potency)

Aṣṭavidha virya:

वीर्यं पुनर्वदन्त्येके गुरु स्निग्धं हिमं मृदु ॥१२॥
लघु रूक्षोष्णातीक्ष्णं च तदेवं मतमष्टधा ।

According to some medical authorities *vīrya* has been classified into 8 types:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>Guru</i> (Heavy) | 5. <i>Laghu</i> (Light) |
| 2. <i>Snigdha</i> (Unctuous) | 6. <i>Rūkṣa</i> (Dry) |
| 3. <i>Hima/Śīta</i> (Cold) | 7. <i>Uṣṇa</i> (Hot) |
| 4. <i>Mṛdu</i> (soft) | 8. <i>Tikṣṇa</i> (Sharp) |

Opinion of Caraka on *vīrya*:

चरकस्त्वाह वीर्यं तत् क्रियते येन या क्रिया ॥१ ३ ॥
नावीर्यं कुरुते किञ्चित्पर्वा वीर्यकृता हिसा ।

Vīrya is nothing but the potency of the drugs. Maharshi Caraka opines that all these actions of the drugs like elimination, mitigation etc are influenced by the potency of the drugs and without having potency no drug will show its action.

Doctrine of eight-fold potency:

गुर्वादिष्वेव वीर्याख्या तेनान्वर्थेति वर्णयते ॥१ ४ ॥
समग्रगुणसारेषु शक्त्युत्कर्षविवर्तिषु । व्यवहाराय मुख्यत्वाद् बहूप्रग्रहणादपि ॥१ ५ ॥

Reasons for giving the designation of *vīrya* to *guru* and other *guṇas*:

- * As *guru* and the other seven qualities (total eight) have been mentioned predominantly.
- * As they have been attributed in many a number of drugs.
- * As they were mentioned in Āyurveda prior to *rasa* and others.
- * As they are potent in comparison with *rasas* and the rest of *guṇas*.

अतश्च विपरीतत्वात्सम्भवत्यपि नैव सा । विवक्ष्यते रसाद्येषु, वीर्यं गुर्वादयो ह्यतः ॥१ ६ ॥

Rasa and other 12 qualities cannot consider as *vīrya* because they are having the opposite reasons mentioned in the above text.

In this way eight types of potencies have been described by some *ācāryas*.

Out of the twenty, the eight qualities mentioned here are only those, which are capable of overcoming the effects of *rasa*, and the other twelve are not contradicting the effects of *rasa*.

Hence the above eight types of qualities of the drugs only can be identified as the potency of the drugs.

For e.g. the effect of the pungent taste in *pippalī* could normally be the aggravation of *pitta*, but by virtue of *mṛdu* *guṇa* and *śīta* *vīrya*, *pippalī* alleviates rather than aggravates *pitta*.

The effect of bitter and astringent tastes in *pañcamūla* usually should aggravate *vāta*, but due to the hot in potency they are alleviating *vāta*.

Two types of *vīrya*:

उष्णं शीतं द्विधीवान्ये वीर्यमाचक्षते अपि च । नानात्मकमपि द्रव्यमग्नीयोमौ महाबलौ ॥१ ७ ॥
व्यक्ताव्यक्तं जगदिव नातिक्रामति जातुचित् ।

Generally *vīrya* is of 2 types viz. (1) *uṣṇa vīrya* and (2) *sīta vīrya*.

The qualities such as *guru*, *laghu* etc. and the seasons like debilitating and nourishing periods are having the predominance of only two elements *agni* (hot) and *soma* (cold). So, *vīrya* is also of 2 kinds—hot and cold, even though the substances are having many qualities in them, heat and cold are more powerful than all others and the rest are within the scope of these two only.

- * Usually the drugs containing *katu*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasas* are predominantly having *uṣṇa vīrya* in their succeeding order.
- * Similarly *tikta*, *kaṣāya*, *madhura rasa dravyas* are predominantly having *sīta vīrya* in their succeeding order.
- * The potency of the drugs and diets can be ascertained while they are in association with the body and are immediately after they come in contact with the body. For example hot potency of meat of marshy animals is ascertained while it is under the process of digestion, where as the sharpness of *marica* can be determined immediately after its contact with the tongue.

Effects of *uṣṇa* and *sīta* *vīrya* dravya:

तत्रोष्णं भ्रमतद्ग्लानिस्वेददाहशुपाकिताः ॥१८॥

शमं च वातकफयोः करोति, शिशिरं पुनः । ह्रादनं जीवनं स्तम्भं प्रसादं रक्तपित्तयोः ॥१९॥

- * *Uṣṇa vīrya* drugs are responsible for dizziness, thirst, fatigue, sweating, burning, rapid digestion and mitigation of *vāta* and *kapha* in the body.
- * Where as *sīta vīrya dravyas* cause happiness, supporting life, obstruction/withhold and purification of *rakta* and *pitta*.

Vipāka (Taste after Digestion)

जाठरेणानिना योगाद्यदुदेति रसान्तरम् । रसानां परिणामान्ते स विपाक इति स्मृतः ॥२०॥

After the intake of drugs or diet having different tastes gets digested by the digestive enzymes and undergo transformation in the form of another taste is known as *vipāka*.

It is of three types:

1. *Madhura vipāka*

2. *Amla vipāka*

3. *Katu vipāka*

Vipākaja rasabhedā:

स्वादुः पटुश्च मधुरमस्तोऽस्तं पच्यते रसः । तिक्तोषणकषायाणां विपाकः प्रायशः कटुः ॥२१॥

Generally, the substances having *madhura* and *lavaṇa rasa* (sweet and saline in taste) will be transformed into *madhura vipāka* after getting digested. *Amla rasa dravyas* (sour substances) will be transformed into *amla vipāka* while the drugs having *katu*, *tikta* and *kaṣāya rasa* (pungent, bitter and astringent taste substances) will be transformed into *katu vipāka*.

रसैरसौ तुल्यफलस्तत्र द्रव्यं शुभाशुभम् ।

Generally the effects of *rasa* and *vipāka* are similar to one another. That means the substances having *madhura*, *amla* and *katu* *vipaka* will act according to the taste of those substances in most of the cases.

Drug action depends on either rasa, guṇa, vīrya, vipāka or prabhāva:

किञ्चिद्ग्रसेन कुरुते कर्म पाकेन चापरम् ॥२ २ ॥
गुणान्तरेण वीर्येण प्रभावेणैव किञ्चन ।

Some drugs will act by their tastes, some others by their qualities, some by their potency some other by *vipāka* and still others by their special effect known as *prabhāva*.

Powerful one only comes into action among rasa etc:

यद्यद्द्रव्ये रसादीनां बलवत्त्वेन वर्तते ॥२ ३ ॥
अभिभूयेतरांस्तत्त्वारणत्वं प्रपद्यते । विरुद्धगुणसंयोगे भूयसाऽल्पं हि जीयते ॥२ ४ ॥

Among the different factors such as taste, quality, potency etc. whichever is more powerful that makes the actions of others insignificant. In case of co-existence of opposing factors the weaker one is overlooked by the stronger and comes into force.

Natural order of strength of rasa and others:

रसं विपाकस्तौ वीर्यं प्रभावस्तान्यपोहति । बलसाम्ये रसादीनामिति नैसर्गिकं बलम् ॥२ ५ ॥

When *rasa*, *vipāka*, *vīrya* and *prabhāvas* are in equal strength, *vipāka* defeats *rasa*, *vipāka* and *rasa* together defeated by *vīrya*, *prabhāva* defeats all of them. This is the natural order of strength.

* Eg. honey consists of *madhura rasa* and *katu vipāka*. Though *madhura rasa* is capable to mitigate *vāta* due to the dominance of *katu vipāka* it is increasing *vāta*. Here the *rasa* is dominated by *vipāka*.

* Even though the meat of buffalo is having *madhura rasa* and *madhura vipāka* they will be dominated by *uṣṇa vīrya* and aggravates *pitta*.

* Similarly *surā*, a type of wine containing *amla rasa*, *amla vipāka* and *uṣṇa vīrya*, they were dominated by *prabhāva* and acts as a galactogogue.

Prabhāva (Specific Action)

रसादिसाम्ये यत् कर्म विशिष्टं तत् प्रभावजम् । दन्ती रसाद्यैस्तुल्याऽपि चित्रकस्य विरेचनी ॥२ ६ ॥
मधुकस्य च मृद्वीका, घृतं क्षीरस्य दीपनम् ।

Where there is similarity in two drugs in relation to their *rasa*, *vipāka* and *vīrya* but in spite of this similarity these two drugs differ in their action. The distinctive feature responsible for their distinctive effects not supported by their *rasa*, *vipāka* and *vīrya* is considered as *prabhāva* or specific action.

Eg. both *citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*) and *dantī* (*Balliospermum montanum*) are *katu rasa*, *katu vipāka* and *uṣṇa vīrya*. But, in spite of this similarity *dantī* acts as a purgative while *citraka*

creates constipation. Similarly *drākṣā* and *yaṣṭimadhu* are having similar properties; *drākṣā* acts as a laxative while *yaṣṭi* causes constipation.

Though ghee and milk are having *madhura rasa*, *sīta virya* and *madhura vipāka*, ghee increases the power of digestion whereas milk doesn't.

Vicitra pratyayārabdha dravya:

इति सामान्यतः कर्म द्रव्यादीनां, पुनश्च तत् ॥२ ७ ॥

विचित्रप्रत्ययारब्धद्रव्यभेदेन भिद्यते । स्वादुरुरुश्च गोधूमो वातजिद्वातकृद्यवः ॥२ ८ ॥

उष्णा मत्स्याः पयः शीतं कटुः सिंहो न शूकरः ।

Till now the general mode of action of the drugs has been described. In addition there is a special category of substances known as *vicitra pratyayārabdha dravya*.

Eg. even though both wheat and barley are having *madhura rasa* and *guru guṇa*, wheat mitigates *vāta* whereas barley aggravates *vāta*.

Though milk and fish are having *madhura rasa* and *guru guṇa*, their *virya* is differed with one another as *sīta* and *uṣṇa* respectively.

Similarly meat of lion and boar are also having *madhura rasa* and *guru guṇa*. Boar's meat will be transformed into *madhura vipāka* at the end of the digestion, as it is *saṃāna pratyayārabdha dravya*. Whereas lion's meat is transformed into *kaṭu vipāka* as it is *vicitra pratyayārabdha dravya*.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामषाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने द्रव्यादिविज्ञानीयो नाम नवमोऽध्यायः ॥११ ॥

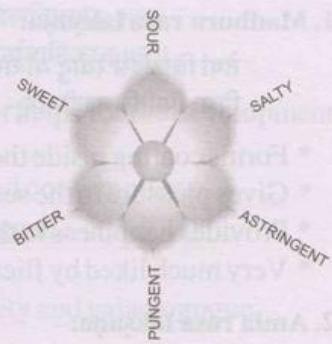
Thus ends the ninth chapter entitled *Dravyādi Vijñāniya Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Sirīhagupta.

In the chapter *Dravyādi Vijñāniya*, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the basic concepts of *Dravyaguṇa* such as *rasa*, *guṇa*, *virya*, *vipāka*, *prabhāva* etc. Definition of *rasa*, actions, qualities of 5 kinds of substances *pārthiva*, *jaliya* etc. Definition of *virya*, different types of *vipāka* and *prabhāva*. *Saṃāna pratyayārabdha dravya*, *vicitra pratyayārabdha dravya* etc. have been discussed in detail.



10 RASABHEDIYA ADHYĀYA

[*Different Types of Rasa and their Combinations*]



अथातो रसभेदीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ॥

After ‘*Dravyādi Vijñāniya Adhyāya*’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Rasabhedīya*’ (Different Types of Rasa and Their Combinations), thus said Lord Ātreya and other sages. In this chapter Vāgbhaṭa discussed the various types of *rasas* and their combinations.

Sweet, sour, salt, bitter, pungent and astringent is the six-fold combination of the taste and are giving better nourishment to the body in their preceding order.

Rasa-utpatti (Formation of tastes):

Rasa or taste of the drugs and diet can be ascertained immediately after their contact with the tongue.

Rasa is the object of gustatory sense organ. Primarily *ap* and *pṛthivī* constitute the substratum for the manifestation of *rasa* and the other three basic elements viz. *ākāśa*, *vāyu* and *tejas* are only efficient causes of the manifestation of the specific qualities of the taste.



Rasa

The taste does not manifest itself while the water is in the atmosphere. As soon as it starts falling on the ground it comes in contact with the atoms of five basic elements impelled by the atmosphere itself and there comes the first stage of the manifestation of the *rasa*. The culminating point of this manifestation is however reached when the water falls on the ground and it comes in contact with the individuals of plant and animal kingdom. At this stage the six tastes manifests themselves in the individuals. Different seasons also play an important role, in the manifestation of tastes by the combination of the basic elements in different proportions.

Relationship of pañca mahābhūtas with the tastes:

क्षमाभोऽग्निक्षमाम्बुतेजःखवाच्वान्यनिलगोनिलैः । द्वयोल्बणैः क्रमाद्वृत्तैर्मधुरादिरसोद्गवः ॥१॥

Madhura and other *rasas* will be formed due to the predominance of two, two *mahābhūtas* as under.

Rasa	Bhūta	Rasa	Bhūta
1. <i>Madhura</i>	<i>Pṛthivī+Jala</i>	4. <i>Tikta</i>	<i>Vāyu+Ākāśa</i>
2. <i>Amla</i>	<i>Pṛthivī+Agni</i>	5. <i>Katu</i>	<i>Agni+Vāyu</i>
3. <i>Lavaṇa</i>	<i>Agni+Jala</i>	6. <i>Kaṣāya</i>	<i>Vāyu+Pṛthivī</i>

1. Madhura rasa lakṣaṇa:

तेषां विद्याद्रसं स्वादुं यो वक्त्रमनुलिप्ति । आस्वाद्यमानो देहस्य हादनोऽक्षप्रसादनः ॥१२॥
प्रियः पिपीलिकादीनाम्-

- * Forms coating inside the mouth.
- * Gives pleasure to the sense organs.
- * Provides happiness to the body.
- * Very much liked by flies and insects also.

2. Amla rasa lakṣaṇa:

-अम्लः क्षालयते मुखम् । हर्षणो रोमदन्तानामक्षिभृवनिकोचनः ॥१३॥

- * Stimulates the tongue immediately after having the sour substances and causes salivation.
- * Produces a feeling of chills inside the teeth and causes horripilations.
- * Makes the person to close the eyes and eyebrows tightly.

3. Lavana rasa lakṣaṇa:

लवणः स्यन्दद्यत्यास्यं कपोलगलदाहकृत् ।

- * Excessive salivation.
- * Burning sensation in the throat and cheeks.
- * Causes deliciousness of food.

4. Tikta rasa lakṣaṇa:

तिक्तो विशद्यत्यास्यं रसनं प्रतिहन्ति च ॥४॥

- * Cleanse the mouth and throat by removing the sticky accumulations.
- * Hinder the perception of other tastes.

5. Kaṭu rasa lakṣaṇa:

उद्वेजयति जिह्वाग्रं कुर्वश्चिमिचिमां कटुः । स्नावयत्यक्षिनासास्यं कपोलौ दहतीव च ॥५॥

- * Stimulates and irritates the tip of the tongue.
- * Causes tingling sensation.
- * Causes watery discharge from the mouth, eyes and nose.
- * Burning sensation in the throat and cheeks.

6. Kaṣāya rasa lakṣaṇa:

कषायो जडयेजिह्वां कण्ठस्त्रोतोविबन्धकृत् । रसानामिति रूपाणि कर्माणि-

- * Inactivates the tongue.
- * Obstructs the throat.
- * Produces discomfort in the region of the heart.

These are the features of the tastes and now the actions of the tastes are described as under.

Madhura rasa karma:

-मधुरो रसः ॥६॥

आजन्मसात्म्यात् कुरुते धातूनां प्रबलं बलम् । बालवृद्धक्षतक्षीणवर्णकेशेन्द्रियौजसाम् ॥७॥

प्रशस्तो वृंहणः कण्ठः स्तन्यसन्धानकृद्गुरुः । आयुष्यो जीवनः स्निधः पित्तानिलविषापहः ॥८॥
कुरुतेऽत्युपयोगेन स मेदः श्लेष्मजान् गदान् । स्थौल्यानिसादसन्नयासमेहगण्डार्बुदादिकान् ॥९॥

- * As *madhura rasa* is wholesome to all living beings since birth, it helps for the development of all the tissues in the body and enhances the life span.
- * Specially indicated for children, aged and heal up emaciation and consumption.
- * Promotes the strength and complexion and soothen the sense organs.
- * Promotes healthy skin, hair and voice.
- * They are soothing, nourishing, invigorating, brings about stability and galactogogue.
- * Alleviates *vāta*, *pitta* and effects of poison.
- * Relieves fainting and thirst.
- * They are unctuous, cold and heavy.

Complications due to excessive use:

- * Vitiation of *kapha* resulting in obesity.
- * Causes indigestion, heaviness, diabetes, diseases of the throat, tumors, lymphadinitis etc.

Amla rasa karma:

अम्लोऽग्निदीपिकृत् स्निधो हृद्यः पाचनरोचनः । उष्णावीर्यो हिमस्पर्शः प्रीणनः क्लेदनो लघुः ॥१०॥
करोति कफपित्तास्त्रं मूढवातानुलोमनः । सोऽत्यध्यस्तस्तनोः कुर्याच्छैथिल्यं तिमिरं भ्रमम् ॥११॥
कण्डुपाण्डुत्ववीसर्पशोफविस्फोटत्रृद्ध्वरान् ।

- * *Amla rasa* drugs stimulate the power of digestion.
- * They are having *snigdha guṇa* and are exceptional for heart.
- * Add to the deliciousness of the food. Increases the digestive power.
- * Having *laghu*, *snigdha* and *vyavāyī guṇas* and *uṣṇa vīrya* along with cold touch.
- * Increases *kapha*, *pitta*, *rakta* and causes downward movement of accumulated *vāta*.

Complications due to excessive use of sour substances:

- * It produces the looseness of the body.
- * And also causes blindness, giddiness, itching, anemia, herpes, oedema, boils, thirst and fever.

Lavaṇa rasa karma:

लवणः स्तम्भसङ्घातबन्धविधापनोऽग्निकृत् ॥१२॥
स्नेहः स्वेदनस्तीक्ष्णो रोचनश्छेदभेदकृत् । सोऽतियुक्तोऽस्त्रपवनं खलतिं पलितं वलिम् ॥१३॥
तृट्कुष्ठविषवीसर्पान् जनयेत् क्षपयेद्वलम् ।

- * Removes the stiffness in the body parts.
- * Relieves the obstruction of the internal channels.
- * Increases the perception of the taste.
- * Digest the undigested food material.
- * Causes unctuousness, sweating and purgation.

Complications due to excessive use:

- * Aggravates *rakta* and *vāta*.
- * Causes baldness, graying of hair, wrinkles on the skin, thirst, skin diseases, increases the ulcers, effects of poison and intoxication, decreases the strength and *ojas*.

Tikta rasa karma:

तित्तः स्वयमरोचिष्युररुचिं कृमित्रिविषम् ॥1 4॥
 कुष्ठमूर्च्छाज्वरोत्क्लेशदाहपित्तकफान् जयेत् । क्लेदमेदोवसामज्जशकृमूत्रोपशोषणः ॥1 5॥
 लघुर्मेध्यो हिमो रुक्षः स्तन्यकण्ठविशोधनः । धातुक्षयानिलव्याधीनतिथोगात्करोति सः ॥1 6॥

- * Drugs and diets having bitter taste are by themselves are not delicious but they promote the taste of food.
- * Antitoxic, germicidal, relieves fainting, thirst, fever, nausea and burning sensation, cures itching and skin disorders.
- * Cause drying and help in depletion of moisture, fat, muscle fat, bone marrow, sweat, urine, stool, *pitta* and *kapha*.
- * They are having *laghu*, *rūkṣa guṇa*, *śīta vīrya*.
- * Purifies breast milk and good for throat.
- * Increases the I.Q.

Complications due to excessive use:

- * Causes weakness in the tissues and *vāta* disorders.

Katu rasa karma:

कटुर्गलामयोदर्दकुष्ठालसकशोफजित् । व्रानावसादनः स्नेहमेदः क्लेदोपशोषणः ॥1 7॥
 दीपनः पाचनो रुच्यः शोधनोऽन्नस्य शोषणः । छिनति बन्धान् स्रोतांसि विवृणोति कफापहः ॥1 8॥
 कुरुते सोऽतियोगेन तृष्णां शुक्रबलक्षयम् । मूर्च्छामाकुञ्जनं कम्पं कटिपृष्ठादिषु व्यथाम् ॥1 9॥

- * Cures diseases of the throat, urticarial rashes, skin diseases, *alasaka* (indigestion), oedema, heals the wounds.
- * Dries up the unctuousness and moisture.
- * Increases the taste. Promotes the hunger and digestion.
- * Eliminates the vitiated *doṣas*.
- * Breaks and clotting blood and removes the block.
- * Alleviates *kapha* as they are having *laghu*, *rūkṣa*, *tikṣṇa guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya*.

Complications due to excessive use:

- * Causes thirst.
- * Decreases the body strength and semen.
- * Results in fainting, contractures and tremors in the body.
- * Also causes pain in the hip and back.

Kaṣāya rasa karma:

कषायः पित्तकफहा गुरुस्वविशोधनः । पीडनो रोपणः शीतः क्लेदमेदोविशोषणः ॥२०॥
 आमसंस्तम्भनो ग्राही रुक्षोऽति त्वक्प्रसादनः । करोति शीलितः सोऽति विष्टम्भाध्यानहृद्गजः ॥२१॥
 तृट्काश्यर्घपौरुषभ्रंशस्त्रोतोरोधमलग्रहान् ।

- * Alleviates *pitta* and *kapha*.
- * Having *guru guṇa* and purifies the blood.
- * Heals ulcers and scratches the adhering material.
- * *Kaṣāya rasa dravyas* are having *śīta vīrya* and dries up moisture.
- * Decreases fat.
- * Causes dryness, constipation.
- * Enhances the skin complexion.

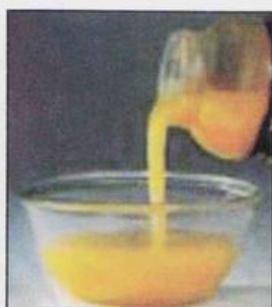
Complications due to excessive use:

- * Causes stasis of food without digestion, abdominal distention, pain in the chest region, thirst, emaciation, loss of virility, constricts the vessels, and obstructs flatus, faeces and urine.

Madhura gaṇa (Group of sweet substances):

घृतहेमगुडाक्षोडमोचचोचपरूषकम् ॥२२॥
 अभीरुवीरापनसराजादनबलात्रयम् । मेदे चतस्रः पर्णिन्यो जीवन्ती जीवकर्षभौ ॥२३॥
 मधूकं मधुकं बिम्बी विदारी श्रावणीयुगम् । क्षीरशुक्ला तुगाक्षीरी क्षीरिण्यौ काशमरी सहे ॥२४॥
 क्षीरेक्षुगोक्षुरक्षौद्राक्षादिर्मधुरो गणः ।

Gṛhita (ghee), *hema* (gold), *guḍa* (jaggery), *akṣoda* (*Juglans regia*), *moca/kadalī* (*Musa paradisiaca*), *coca/dälacīnī* (*Cinnamomum tamala*), *parūṣaka* (*Grewia asiatica*), *abhīru/śatāvarī* (*Asparagus racemosus*), *vīrā* (one of the *jīvanīya pañcamūla*), *panasa* (*Artocarpus heterophyllus*), *rājādana* (*Mimusops hexandra*), *balā* (*Sida cordifolia*), *atibalā* (*Abutilon indicum*), *nāgabalā* (*Sida veronicaefolia*), *medā* and *mahāmedā* (belongs to the group *aṣṭavarga*), *mudgaparṇī* (*Phaseolus trilobus*), *māṣaparṇī* (*Teramnus labialis*), *śāliparṇī* (*Desmodium gangeticum*), *prśniparṇī* (*Uraria picta*), *jīvantī* (*Leptadenia reticulata*), *jīvaka* (one of the *aṣṭavarga*), *rśabhaka* (one of the *aṣṭavarga*), *madhūka* (*Madhuca indica*), *madhuka* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), *bimbī* (*Coccinia indica*), *vidārī* (*Pueraria tuberosa*), *śrāvanī* (*Sphaeranthus indicus*), *mahāśrāvaṇī* (*Blumea sp.*), *kṣīraśuklā/kṣīravidārī*, *tugākṣīrī/vamśalocana* (*Bambusa arundinacea*), two types of *kṣīrīṇī/dugdhikā* (*Euphorbia hitra* and *Euphorbia microphylla*), *kāśmarī* (*Gmelina arborea*), *kṣudrasahā* and *mahāsahā* (*mudgaparṇī* and *māṣaparṇī*), *kṣīra* (milk), *ikṣu/sugarcane* (*Saccharum officinarum*), *gokṣura* (*Tribulus terrestris*), *kṣoudra* (honey), *drākṣā* (*Vitis vinifera*) etc.



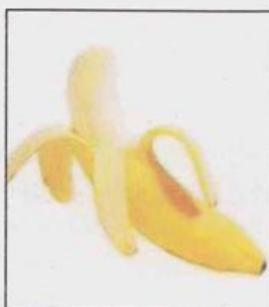
Ghṛta



Suvarṇa



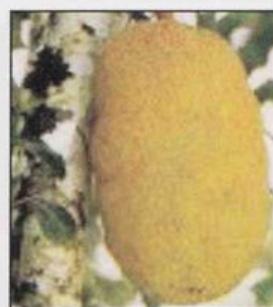
Guḍa



Kadali



Šatāvari



Panasa



Yasṭimadhu



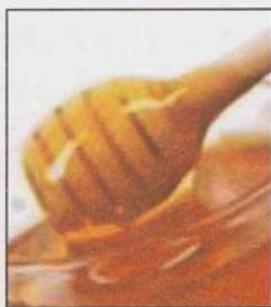
Kṣīra



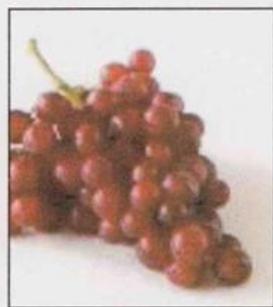
Vidāri



Iksu



Madhu



Drākṣā

Amla gana (Group of sour substances):

अम्लो धात्रीफलाम्लीकामातुलुङ्गाम्लवेतसम् ॥२५॥
दाडिमं रजतं तक्रं चुक्रं पालेवतं दधि । आप्रमाप्रातकं भव्यं कपित्थं करमर्दकम् ॥२६॥

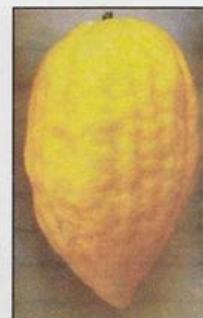
Dhātrīphala/āmalakī (*Emblica officinalis*), *amlikā* (*Tamarindus indica*), *mātuluṅga* (*Citrus medica*), *āmlavetasa* (*Garcinia pedunculata*), *dāḍima* (*Punica granatum*), *rajata* (silver), *takra* (buttermilk), *cukra* (*Rumex vesicarius*), *pālevata/guava* (*Psidium guajava*), *dadhi* (curd), *āmra* (*Mangifera indica*), *āmrātaka* (*Spondias pinnata*), *bhavya* (*Dillaenia indica*), *kapittha* (*Feronia limonia*), *karamardaka* (*Carissa carandas*) etc.



Āmalaki



Āmra



Mātuluṅga



Dadhi



Dāḍima



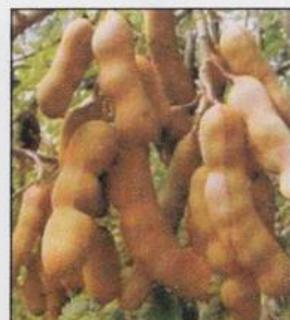
Pālevata



Kapittha



Rajata



Amlikā

Lavaṇa gaṇa (Group of salts):

वरं सौवर्चलं कृष्णं बिंडं सामुद्रमौद्दिदम् । रोमकं पांसुजं शीसं क्षारश्च लवणो गणः ॥२ ७ ॥

Vara (*saindhava lavaṇa*), *sauvarca lavaṇa*, *kṛṣṇa lavaṇa*, *bīḍa lavaṇa*, *sāmudra lavaṇa*, *oudbhida lavaṇa*, *romaka lavaṇa*, *pāṁsuja lavaṇa*, *śīsa* (lead), *kṣāra* (*sarjakṣāra*, *yavakṣāra*) etc.



Saindhava lavaṇa



Kṛṣṇa lavaṇa



Sāmudra lavaṇa



Śīsa

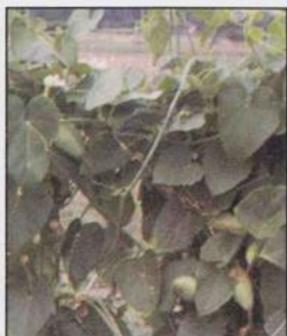
Tikta gaṇa (Group of bitters):

तिक्तः पटोली त्रायन्ती बालकोशीरचन्दनम् । भूनिम्बनिम्बकटुकातगरागुरुवत्सकम् ॥२ ८ ॥

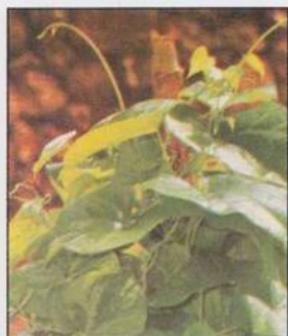
नक्तमालद्विरजनीमुस्तमूर्वाटरुषकम् । पाठापामार्गकांस्यायोगुद्धीधन्वयासकम् ॥२ ९ ॥

पञ्चमूलं महदव्याघ्र्यौ विशालाऽतिविषा वचा ।

Paṭola (*Trichosanthes cucumerina*), *trāyantī* (*Gentiana kurroo*), *bālaka* (*Coleus vettiveroides*), *uśīra* (*Vetiveria zizanioides*), *candana* (*Santalum album*), *bhūnimba* (*Andrographis paniculata*), *nimba* (*Azadirachta indica*), *kaṭuka* (*Picrorhiza kurroa*), *tagara* (*Valeriana wallichii*), *aguru* (*Aquilaria agallocha*), *vatsaka* (*Holarrhena antidysenterica*), *naktamāla/karañja* (*Pongamia pinnata*), *dwi rajañī—haridrā* and *dāruharidrā* (*Curcuma longa* & *Berberis aristata*), *mustā* (*Cyperus rotundus*), *mūrvā* (*Marsdenia tenacissima*), *aṭarūṣa/vāsā* (*Adhatoda vasica*), *pāṭhā* (*Cissampelos pariera*), *apāmārga* (*Achyranthus aspera*), *kāṁsyā* (bronze), *ayas* (iron), *guḍūcī* (*Tinospora cordifolia*), *dhanvayāsaka* (*Fagonia cretica*), *bṛhat pañcamūla* (*bilwa*-*Aegle marmelos*, *kāśmarya*-*Gmelina arbora*, *tarkāri*-*Clerodendron phlomidis*, *pāṭalā*-*Stereospermum sauveolens*, *tiṇtuka*-*Oroxylum indicum*), *vyāghrou* (*bṛhatī-*



Paṭola



Guḍūci



Kirāta



Candana



Haridrā



Nimba



Vāsā



Uśira



Karañja



Dāruharidrā



Apāmārga



Kāṁsyā

Solanum indicum, *kaṇṭakārī*-*Solanum xanthocarpum*) *viśālā/indravāruṇī* (*Citrullus colocynthis*), *ativiṣā* (*Aconitum heterophyllum*), *vacā* (*Acorus calamus*) etc.

Kaṭu varga (Group of pungents):

कटुको हिङ्गुमरिचकृमिजित्पञ्चकोलकम् ॥३०॥

कुठेराद्या हरितकाः पित्तं मूत्रमरुष्करम् ।

Hiṅgu (*Ferula foetida*), *marica* (*Piper nigrum*), *kṛmijīt* (*Embelia ribes*), *pañcakola*—*pippali* (*Piper longum*), *pippalīmūla* (root of *Piper longum*), *cavya* (*Piper chaba*), *citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*), *nāgara/śunṭhī* (*Zingiber officinale*), *kūtheruka* (*Ocimum sp.*) and others, *pitta* (bile), *mūtra* (urine), *aruṣkara* (*Semecarpus anacardium*) etc.



Nāgara



Bhallatka



Marica



Pippali



Citraka

Kaṣāya varga (Group of astringents):

वर्गः कषायः पथ्याऽक्षं शिरीषः खदिरो मधु ॥३१॥

कदम्बोदुम्बरं मुक्ताप्रवालाञ्चनगैरिकम् । बालं कपित्थं खर्जूरं विसपद्योत्पलादि च ॥३२॥

Pathyā/harītakī (*Terminalia chebula*), *akṣa/vibhītakī* (*Terminalia bellerica*), *śirīṣa* (*Albizia lebbeck*), *khadira* (*Acacia catechu*), *madhu* (honey), *kadamba* (*Anthocephalus indicus*), *udumbara* (*Ficus racemosa*), *muktā* (pearl), *pravāla* (coral), *añjana* (antimony), *gairika* (red ochre), *bāla kapiththa* (tender fruits of *Feronia limonia*), *kharjūra* (*Phoenix sylvestris*), *bisa* (leaf stalks of lotus), *padma* (*Prunus padam*), *utpala* (*Nymphaea stellata*) etc.



Pathyā



Padma



Śiriṣa



Akṣa



Kadamba



Udumbara



Madhu



Muktā



Pravāla

General properties of the six tastes and their exceptions:

मधुरंश्लेष्मलं प्रायो जीर्णाच्छालियवादृते । मुद्राद्वेधूमतः क्षौद्रात्सिताया जाङ्गलामिषात् ॥३ ३ ॥
 प्रायोऽम्लं पित्तजननं दाडिमामलकादृते । अपथ्यं लवणं प्रायश्चक्षुषेऽन्यत्र सैन्धवात् ॥३ ४ ॥
 तिक्तं कटु च भूयिष्मवृद्धं वातकोपनम् । ऋतेऽमृतापटोलीभ्यां शुण्ठीकृष्णारसोनतः ॥३ ५ ॥
 कषायं प्रायशः शीतं स्तम्भनं चाभयं विना ।

- * In general all the substances having *madhura rasa* increases *kapha* except old *śāli* rice (*Oryza sativa*), *yava* (*Hordeum vulgare*), *mudga* (*Phaseolus radiatus*), *godhumā* (*Triticum aestivum*), *kṣoudra* (honey), *sitā* (sugar) and *jāṅgala māṁsa* (meat of desert animals).
- * Generally *amla rasa dravyas* increases *pitta* except *dāḍima* (*Punica granatum*) and *āmalaka* (*Emblica officinalis*).
- * Similarly *lavaṇa rasa dravyas* are unwholesome to the eyes except *saindhava lavaṇa*.
- * *Tikta* and *kaṭu rasa dravyas* doesn't have aphrodisiac action in general and aggravates *vāta* except *amṛtā* (*Tinospora cordifolia*), *paṭola* (*Trichosanthes cucumerina*), *śunṭhī* (*Zingiber officinale*), *kṛṣṇā/pippalī* (*Piper longum*) and *rasona* (*Allium sativum*).

- * Similarly drugs of *kaṣāya rasa* are having *śīta vīrya* and *sthambhana guṇa* except *abhayā* (*Terminalia chebula*).

Relationship between rasas & vīrya; and rasas & guṇa:

रसाः कट्वम्ललवणा वीर्येणोष्णा यथोन्नरम् ॥३६॥

तिक्तः कषायो मधुरस्तद्वदेव च शीतलाः । तिक्तः कटुः कषायश्च रक्षा बद्धमलास्तथा ॥३७॥

पट्वम्लमधुराः स्निग्धाः सृष्टविष्मूत्रमारुताः । पटोः कषायस्तस्माच्च मधुरः परमं गुरुः ॥३८॥

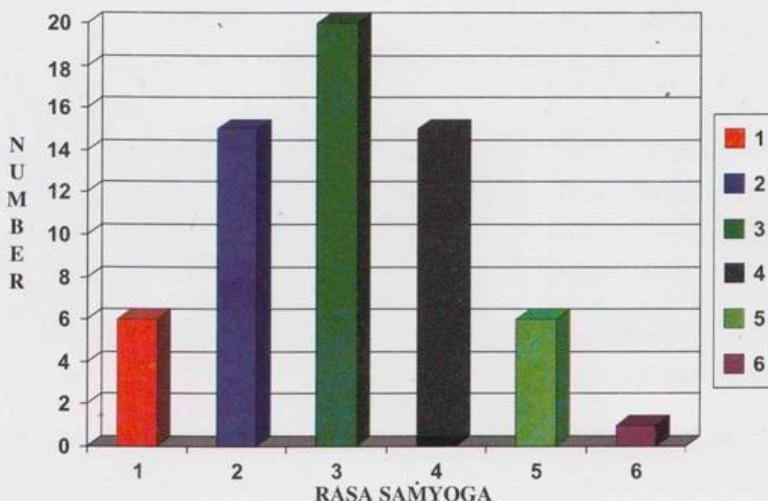
लघुरम्लः कटुस्तस्मात् तस्मादपि च तिक्तकः ।

- * Drugs having *katu*, *amla* and *lavana rasa*s are having *uṣṇa vīrya* predominantly, whereas *tikta*, *kaṣāya* and *madhura rasa* drugs will be having *śīta vīrya* predominantly in their succeeding order.
- * *Tikta*, *katu* and *kaṣāya* drugs are having *rūkṣa guṇa* and causing constipation. While *lavana*, *amla* and *madhura dravyas* contain *snigdha guṇa* and helps in the elimination of faeces, urine and flatus.
- * Drugs having *lavana*, *kaṣāya* and *madhura rasa* contain *guru guṇa* and the remaining i.e. *amla*, *katu* and *tikta* are having *laghu guṇa* excessively in their succeeding order.

Fiftyseven combinations & sixty three kinds of tastes:

संयोगाः सप्तपञ्चाशत्कल्पना तु त्रिषष्ठिधा ॥३९॥

रसानां यौगिकत्वेन यथास्थूलं विभज्यते ।



The above *rasas* have been divided into 57 types of combinations, and the total number of tastes can be classified into 63 including the individual six tastes as under.

एकैकहीनास्तान् पञ्चदश यान्ति रसा द्विके ॥४०॥

त्रिके स्वादुर्दशास्तनः षट् त्रीन् पटुस्तिक्त एककम् । चतुष्केषु दश स्वादुश्तुरोऽम्लः पटुः सकृत् ॥४१॥

पञ्चकेष्वेकमेवाम्लो मधुरः पञ्च सेवते । द्रव्यमेकं षडास्वादमसंयुक्ताश्च षड्रसाः ॥४२॥

I. Without any combination (6 types)

1. *Madhura*
2. *Amla*
3. *Lavaṇa*
4. *Kaṭu*
5. *Tikta*
6. *Kaṣāya*.

II. By the combination of two rasas (15 in number)

1. *Madhura + Amla*
2. *Madhura + Lavaṇa*
3. *Madhura + Kaṭu*
4. *Madhura + Tikta*
5. *Madhura + Kaṣāya*
6. *Amla + Lavaṇa*
7. *Amla + Kaṭu*
8. *Amla + Tikta*
9. *Amla + Kaṣāya*
10. *Lavaṇa + Kaṭu*
11. *Lavaṇa + Tikta*
12. *Lavaṇa + Kaṣāya*
13. *Kaṭu + Tikta*
14. *Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
15. *Tikta + Kaṣāya*

III. By the combination of three rasas (20 in number)

1. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa*
2. *Madhura + Amla + Kaṭu*
3. *Madhura + Amla + Tikta*
4. *Madhura + Amla + Kaṣāya*
5. *Madhura + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu*
6. *Madhura + Lavaṇa + Tikta*
7. *Madhura + Lavaṇa + Kaṣāya*
8. *Madhura + Kaṭu + Tikta*
9. *Madhura + Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
10. *Madhura + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
11. *Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu*
12. *Amla + Lavaṇa + Tikta*
13. *Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṣāya*
14. *Amla + Kaṭu + Tikta*
15. *Amla + Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
16. *Amla + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
17. *Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta*
18. *Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
19. *Lavaṇa + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
20. *Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*

IV. By the combination of four rasas (15 in number)

1. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu*
2. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa + Tikta*
3. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṣāya*
4. *Madhura + Amla + Kaṭu + Tikta*
5. *Madhura + Amla + Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
6. *Madhura + Amla + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
7. *Madhura + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta*
8. *Madhura + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
9. *Madhura + Lavaṇa + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
10. *Madhura + Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
11. *Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta*
12. *Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
13. *Amla + Lavaṇa + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
14. *Amla + Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
15. *Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*

V. By the combination of 5 rasas (6 in number)

1. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta*
2. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Kaṣāya*
3. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
4. *Madhura + Amla + Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*

5. *Madhura + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*
6. *Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*

VI. By the combinations of all the 6 tastes (1 in number)

1. *Madhura + Amla + Lavaṇa + Kaṭu + Tikta + Kaṣāya*

षट् पञ्चकाः, षट् च पृथग्गसाः स्युश्चतुर्द्विकौ पञ्चदशप्रकारौ ।

भेदास्त्रिका विंशतिरेकमेव द्रव्यं षडास्वादमिति त्रिषष्ठि: ॥4 3 ॥

Without any combination	:	6
By the combination of 2 tastes	:	15
By the combination of 3 tastes	:	20
By the combination of 4 tastes	:	15
By the combination of 5 tastes	:	6
By the combination of all the 6 tastes	:	1

63

Innumerable combinations of tastes:

ते रसानुरसतो रसभेदास्तारतम्यपरिकल्पनया च । सम्भवन्ति गणनां समतीता दोषभेषजवशादुपयोज्याः ॥4 4 ॥

The above combinations of the tastes will become innumerable if *rasa*, *anurasa* and their degrees of differentiation are being taken into consideration. Hence one must know the condition of the *doṣa* prior to prescribe the drug and accordingly select the right choice of the drug after duly considering the suitable combination of the taste.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने रसभेदीयो नाम दशमोऽध्यायः ॥10॥

Thus ends the tenth chapter entitled *Rasabhedīya Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the definition of *rasa* and the formation of six tastes in a substance.

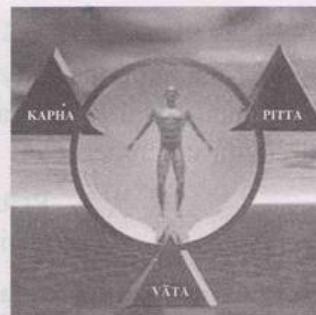
Then the features of different tastes, actions and the complications due to excessive use of such substances and some of the substances pertaining to the group of all the six tastes have been presented. At the end 63 combinations of the tastes have been enumerated.

Such combination and types are enunciated because they are useful in connection with maintenance of health and cure of diseases.

*

11 DOṢĀDI VIJÑĀNĪYA ADHYĀYA

[Knowledge of Doṣa,
Dhātu and Mala]



अथातो दोषादिविज्ञानीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ॥

After ‘Rasabhedīya Adhyāya’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘Doṣādi Vijñānīya’ (Knowledge of Doṣa, Dhātu and Mala), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

The word ‘doṣādi’ represents the *tridoṣas*, *sapta dhātus* and *trimalas*.

Chief constituents of the body:

दोषधातुमला मूलं सदा देहस्य—

Body is nothing but the combination of *doṣa*, *dhātu* and *malas*. If these body constituents are in the equilibrium, body will be in the healthy state.

Doṣas when aggravated manifest their signs and symptoms in accordance with the degree of aggravation, those in the state of diminution gave up their normal signs and symptoms and those in a state of equilibrium operate properly. Hence it is very much essential to know the features of *doṣa*, *dhātu* and *malas* of normal, abnormal and below normal levels, so that the drug and diet of different types, which have been already studied in the previous chapters, can be utilized to maintain the equilibrium.

Specially to get the knowledge of normal and abnormal features of *doṣa*, *dhātu* and *malas*, this chapter has been explained.

Prākṛta Doṣa Karma (Normal Functions of Doṣas)

—तं चलः । उत्साहोच्छ्वासनिश्चासचेष्टावेगप्रवर्तनैः ॥१॥

सम्यगगत्या च धातूनामक्षाणां पाटवेन च । अनुगृह्णात्यविकृतः, पित्तं पक्त्यूष्मदर्शनैः ॥२॥

क्षुत्तद्वचिप्रभामेधाधीशौर्यतनुमार्दवैः । श्लेष्मा स्थिरत्वस्तिन्धत्वसन्धिबन्धकमादिभिः ॥३॥

Functions of normal vāta:

Maintenance the body with enthusiasm, expiration, inspiration, movement of various parts, maintenance of *dhātus*, expulsion of natural urges and keenness of sense perceptions are the normal functions of *vāta*.

Functions of normal pitta:

Pitta in the normal state causes digestion, production of heat, desire, causing hunger, thirst, color and complexion of the body, vision, intelligence, bravery and softness to the body parts etc.

Functions of normal kapha:

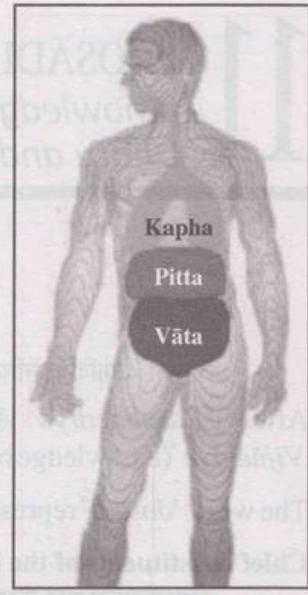
Kapha maintains the body with stability, unctuousness, compactness of joints, virility, tolerance (with hold emotions, intelligence, strength, attachment etc.

Prākṛta Dhātu Karma (Functions of Normal Dhātus)

Normal functions of sapta dhātus:

प्रीणनं जीवनं लेपः स्नेहो धारणपूरणे ।
गर्भोत्पादश्च धातूनां श्रेष्ठं कर्म क्रमात्स्मृतम् ॥4॥

- * **Rasa dhātu** causes satisfaction, nutrition to the tissues and nourishment to *rakta*.
- * **Rakta dhātu** causes sustenance of life, imparts color and nourishment of *māṁsa dhātu*.
- * **Māṁsa dhātu** causes covering to the body, gives strength and nourishment to the *medo dhātu* and also the waste products.
- * **Medo dhātu** causes unctuousness, lubrication and stability to the eyes and body and nourishment to the *asthi dhātu*.
- * **Asthi dhātu** causes erecting posture of the body and nourishment to the *majjā dhātu*.
- * **Majjā dhātu** causes unctuousness, strength, fills the cavity of the bones and nourishes the *śukra dhātu*.
- * **Śukra dhātu** gives pleasure, strength and cause for pregnancy.



Tridoṣa

Prākṛta Mala Karma

(Functions of Normal Malas)

Normal functions of trimalas:

अवष्टम्भः पुरीषस्य मूत्रस्य क्लेदवाहनम् । स्वेदस्य क्लेदविघृतिः-

- * **Faeces** cause strength and supports *vāta* and *pitta*.
- * **Urine** causes the elimination of excessive moisture from the body.
- * **Sweat** causes and maintains the moistness and unctuousness of the body and supports the hair on the skin.

Vṛddha Doṣa Karma

(Functions of Aggravated Doṣas)

Functions of aggravated vāta:

काश्यकाण्ड्योष्णकामत्वकम्पानाहशकृदग्रहान् । बलनिद्रेन्द्रियभ्रंशप्रलापभ्रमदीनताः ॥15॥

-वृद्धस्तु कुरुतेऽनिलः ॥15॥

Aggravated *vāta* causes emaciation, blackish discoloration, desire towards hot substances, tremor, abdominal distension, constipation, decreases strength of the body and sense organs, insomnia, speaks irrelevantly, dizziness and nervousness etc.

Functions of aggravated pitta:

पीतविष्णुनेत्रत्वक्क्षुरुद्दाहाल्पनिन्द्रतः । पित्तं-

Aggravated *pitta* causes yellowish discoloration of the faeces, urine, eyes and skin; excessive hunger and thirst, burning sensation and insomnia etc.

Functions of aggravated kapha:

-श्लेष्माऽग्निसदनप्रसेकालस्यगौरवम् ॥7॥

शैत्यशैत्यश्लथाङ्गत्वं श्वासकासात्तिनिन्द्रतः ।

Aggravated *kapha* causes decreased digestive power, salivation, laziness, heaviness, whitish discolouration of the faeces, urine, eyes and skin, coldness, looseness of joints and other parts, dyspnoea, cough, excessive sleep etc.

Vṛddha Dhātu Karma

(Functions of Aggravated Dhātus)

Features of increased rasa dhātu:

रसोऽपि श्लेष्मवत्-

Increased *rasa dhātu* causes salivation, anorexia, nausea and blockage of channels, aversion towards sweets, body pains and also the symptoms of aggravated *kapha*.

Features of increased rakta dhātu:

-रक्तं विसर्पलीहिविद्रधीन् ॥8॥

कुष्ठवातास्त्रपित्तास्त्रगुल्मोपकुशकामलाः । व्यङ्गाग्निनाशसम्मोहरक्तत्वङ्नेत्रमूत्रतः ॥9॥

Increased *rakta dhātu* causes *visarpa* (herpes), enlargement of spleen, abscess, skin disorders, *vātarakta* (gout), *raktapitta* (bleeding disorders), abdominal tumors, *upakuśa* (tooth problems), jaundice, blackish spots on the face, decreased digestive power, darkness before eyes, redness on the body, eyes and urine.

Features of increased māṁsa dhātu:

मांसं गण्डार्बुद्गन्थिगण्डोरुदरवृद्धिताः । कण्ठादिष्वधिमांसं च-

Increased *māṁsa dhātu* causes enlargement of glands in the neck and scrofula, tumors of different nature, enlargement and heaviness in the buttocks, neck, lips, shoulders, abdomen, thighs and calf muscles etc.

Features of increased medo dhātu:

-तद्वन्मेदस्तथा श्रमम् ॥10॥

अल्पेऽपि चेष्टिते श्वासं स्फक्सत्नोदरलम्बनम् ।

Increased *medo dhātu* also produces the similar features of *māṁsa dhātu* and also causes fatigue, dyspnoea on exertion, drooping of buttocks, breasts and abdomen.

Features of increased asthi dhātu:

अस्थ्यध्यस्थ्यधिदन्तांश-

Increased *asthi dhātu* causes extra growth of bones and teeth.

Features of increased majjā dhātu:

—मज्जा नेत्राङ्गौरवम् ॥1 1॥
पर्वसु स्थूलमूलानि कुर्यात्कृच्छ्राणयस्तु च ।

Increased *majjā dhātu* causes heaviness in the eyes and body parts. Produces boils on the phalanges, which are difficult to manage.

Features of increased śukra dhātu:

अतिस्त्रीकामतां वृद्धं शुक्रं शुक्राशमरीमपि ॥1 2॥

Increased *śukra dhātu* causes excessive desire in sexual acts and formation of stone in the seminal tract.

Vṛddha Mala Karma (Functions of Aggravated Malas)

Features of increased faeces:

कुक्षावाधमानमाटोपं गौरवं वेदनां शकृत् ।

Increased faeces causes colic pain, gurgling sounds and heaviness in the abdomen.

Features of increased urine:

मूत्रं तु बस्तिनिस्तोदं कृतेऽप्यकृतसंज्ञताम् ॥1 3॥

Increased urine causes pain and distension of the urinary bladder.

Features of increased sweat:

स्वेदोऽतिस्वेददौर्गन्ध्यकण्डूः—

Increased sweat causes excessive perspiration, itching and foul smell on the skin.

—एवं च लक्षयेत् । दूषिकादीनपि मलान् बाहुल्यगुरुतादिभिः ॥1 4॥

Similarly aggravated waste products of eyes, ears, nose etc. can be assessed by the increased quantity of their discharges, heaviness, itching and other symptoms.

Kṣīna Doṣa Karma (Functions of Decreased Doṣas)

Functions of decreased vāta:

लिङ्गं क्षीणेऽनिलेऽङ्गस्य सादोऽल्पं भाषितेहितम् । संज्ञामोहस्तथाश्लेष्मवृद्धयुक्तामयसम्भवः ॥1 5॥

Decreased *vāta* causes weakness in the body parts, diminished speech and physical activity, loss of consciousness and also the symptoms of increased *kapha*.

Functions of decreased pitta:

पित्ते मन्दोऽनलः शीतं प्रभाहानिः—

Decreased *pitta* causes indigestion, coldness and loss of skin texture.

Functions of decreased kapha:

— कफे भ्रमः । श्लेष्माशयानां शून्यत्वं हृदद्रवः श्लथसन्धिता ॥1 6॥

Decreased *kapha* causes giddiness, emptiness of the seats of *kapha*, palpitation of the heart and looseness of joints.

Kṣīṇa Dhātu Karma (Functions of Decreased Dhātus)

Features of decreased rasa dhātu:

रसे रौक्ष्यं श्रमः शोषो ग्लानिः शब्दासहिष्णुता ।

Decreased *rasa dhātu* causes dryness in the body, tiredness, emaciation, exhaustion even with a simple work and unable to bear huge sounds.

Features of decreased rakta dhātu:

रक्तेऽप्तशिरप्रीतिशिराशैथिल्यरक्षता: ॥1 7॥

Decreased *rakta dhātu* leads dryness of the skin, desire towards sour and cold substances and flaccidity in the veins.

Features of decreased māṃsa dhātu:

मांसेऽक्षग्लानिगण्डस्फिक्शुष्कतासन्धिवेदना: ।

Decreased *māṃsa dhātu* causes weakness of sense organs, wasting of buttocks, neck, lips, shoulders, abdomen, thighs etc, and pain in the joints.

Features of decreased medo dhātu:

मेदसि स्वपनं कट्ट्याः प्लीहो वृद्धिः कृशाङ्गता ॥1 8॥

Decreased *medo dhātu* causes loss of sensation in the hip region, enlargement of spleen, emaciation of the body.

Features of decreased asthi dhātu:

अस्थ्यस्थितोदः शदनं दन्तकेशनखादिषु ।

Decreased *asthi dhātu* causes pricking pain in the bones and joints, fall of teeth, nails and hair.

Features of decreased majjā dhātu:

अस्थां मज्जनि सौर्यिर्भ्रमस्तिमिरदर्शनम् ॥1 9॥

Decreased *majjā dhātu* causes hollowness and severe pain in the bones, giddiness, darkness before eyes.

Features of decreased śukra dhātu:

शुक्रे चिरात् प्रसिच्येत शुक्रं शोणितमेव वा । तोदोऽत्यर्थं वृषणयोर्मेंद्रं धूमायतीव च ॥2 0॥

Decreased *śukra dhātu* causes ejaculation of semen becomes delay or sometimes mixed with blood, pricking pain in the scrotum, feeling of hot fumes moving inside the penis.

Kṣīṇa Mala Karma

(Functions of Decreased Malas)

Features of decreased faeces:

पुरीषे वायुरन्त्राणि सशब्दो वेष्टयन्निव । कुक्षौ भ्रमति यात्यूर्ध्वं हृत्याश्च पीडयन् भृशम् ॥2 1॥

Decreased faeces causes the movement of *vāta* associated with sound in the sideward and upward directions, twisting of the intestines, pain in the flanks and chest region.

Features of decreased urine:

मूत्रेऽल्पं मूत्रयेत्कृच्छ्राद्विर्वर्णं सास्पेव वा ।

Decreased urine causes pricking pain in the bladder, elimination of little quantity of urine with difficulty and of varied color or mixed with blood.

Features of decreased sweat:

स्वेदे रोमच्युतिः स्तब्धरोमता स्फुटनं त्वचः ॥2 2॥

Decreased sweat causes stiffness and falling of hair follicles, cracks in the skin.

Clinical features of decreased state of mala:

मलानामतिसूक्ष्माणां दुर्लक्ष्यं लक्षयेत् क्षयम् । स्वमलायनसंशोषतोदशून्यत्वलाघवैः ॥2 3॥

If the *malas* are decreased it is not so easy to identify the condition but anyhow it can be inferred by the symptoms like dryness, pricking pain, emptiness and lightness of their sites.

Vṛddhi-kṣaya:

दोषादीनां यथास्वं च विद्याद्विद्विक्षयौ भिषक् । क्षयेण विपरीतानां गुणानां वर्धनेन च ॥2 4॥
वृद्धिं मलानां सङ्घाच्च क्षयं चाति विसर्गतः ।

- * If the opposite qualities of *doṣa*, *dhātu* and *malas* decreases in the body, it can be inferred that those *doṣa*, *dhātu* or *malas* are increased in the body.
- * Similarly the opposite qualities of *doṣas* etc. increases in the body, that means the concerned *doṣas* are decreased.
- * For eg.—the opposite qualities of *vāta* like unctuousness, heaviness and hotness decreases in the body means *vāta* is increased.
- * Unctuousness, heaviness and hotness increased in the body infers that *vāta* is decreased.
- * Accumulation of waste products in the body indicates the increase of *malas* and the excessive elimination suggests the decrease of *malas*.

मलोचितत्वादेहस्य क्षयो वृद्धेस्तु पीडनः ॥2 5॥

Accumulation of *malas* in the body is natural. Their decrease causes harm to the body. Hence decreased quantity of *malas* is more harmful than the accumulation.

Āśraya-āśrayī bhāva (Relationship of dhātus and doṣas):

तत्रास्थनि स्थितो वायुः, पित्तं तु स्वेदरक्तयोः । श्लेष्मा शेषेषु, तेनैषामाश्रयाश्रयिणां मिथः ॥2 6॥

यदेकस्य तदन्यस्य वर्धनक्षपणौषधम् । अस्थिमारुतयोर्नवं, प्रायो वृद्धिर्हि तर्पणात् ॥2 7 ॥
 श्लेष्माऽनुगता तस्मात् सङ्घायस्तद्विपर्यात् । वायुनाऽनुगतोऽस्माच्च वृद्धिक्षयसमुद्दवान् ॥2 8 ॥
 विकारान् साधयेच्छीघ्रं क्रमाल्लङ्घनबृहणैः । वायोरन्यत्र, तज्जांस्तु तैर्वोक्तमयोजितैः ॥2 9 ॥

There is a definite relationship between *doṣas* and *dhātus* because all the substances in the universe are formed by the five basic elements only.

Āśrayī	Āśraya
Vāta	Asthī dhātu
Pitta	Rakta and sweda
Kapha	Rasa, māṁsa, meda, majjā, śukra and mala-mūtra.

- * *Vāta* resides in *asthi dhātu*, *pitta* in *rakta* and *sweda* where as *kapha* resides in the rest of *dhātus*. viz. *rasa*, *māṁsa*, *meda*, *majjā*, *śukra*, *mala* and *mūtra*.
- * The causative factors which are responsible for the increase and decrease of the āśrayīs (*doṣas*) also causes to increase and decrease of āśrayas (*dhātu* and *malas*) respectively except in the case of *vāta*.

That means:

- * The factors responsible for the increase of *pitta*, also increases *rakta* and *sweda*, and vice versa.
- * Similarly, the factors which increases *kapha* also increases *rasa*, *māṁsa*, *meda*, *majjā*, *śukra*, *mala*, *mūtra* and vice versa.
- * But the factors which increases *vāta*, doesn't increase *asthi dhātu*, moreover it decreases.
- * Similarly those factors increasing *asthi* causes diminishing of *vāta*.
- * Generally the increases of all *dhātus* are due to over nutrition and predominance of *kapha*.
- * Nourishing therapy increases *kapha* and all other *dhātus* but reduces *vāta*.
- * Reducing therapy decreases all the *dhātus* and increases *vāta*.
- * Hence the diseases caused by increase or decrease of *dhātus* is to be treated with reducing or nourishing therapies respectively except in *vāta*.
- * In all the cases the use of substances, qualities and actions either opposite or similar but not antagonistic to the *dhātus* is to be planned appropriately.

Notes:

Causes for increase/decrease of the tissues and the treatment:

- * The body tissues generally increases by the use of foods and activities which are similar or possessing similar properties, they undergo decrease by the use of food and activities which are opposite or possessing opposite properties.
- * The *dhātus* which are heavy, undergo increase by the use of the substances having similar properties of heaviness, similarly the *dhātus* which are light, undergo increase by the use of light substances. By the use of opposite substances they undergo decrease.
- * The substances, which are materially similar causes the increase rapidly.

- *Rakta dhātu* increases rapidly by the use of the blood.
 - *Mārīṣa dhātu* increases rapidly by the use of ingestion of meat.
 - *Medo dhātu* increases rapidly by the use of muscle fat.
 - *Asthi dhātu* increases rapidly by the use of bones.
 - *Majjā dhātu* increases rapidly by the use of bone-marrow.
 - *Śukra dhātu* increases rapidly by the use of semen or eggs.
- * The substances possessing similar qualities may not present near by or not available (or) though available may not be suitable to the individuals (or) being unwholesome (or) causing aversion (or) tastelessness (or) due to any other reason it is the best to make use of the substances possessing similar properties.

Eg.—in the condition of *śukra dhātu-kṣaya*, the use of milk, ghee and other substances possessing sweet in taste, unctuousness and cold in potency are indicated.

Line of treatment for increased and decreased states of rakta etc:

विशेषाद्रत्कृद्धयुत्थान् रक्तस्तुतिविरेचनैः । मांसवृद्धिभवान् रोगान् शक्त्रक्षाराग्निकर्मभिः ॥३०॥
 स्थौल्यकार्योपचारेण मेदोजानस्थिसङ्घायात् । जातान्क्षीरधृतैस्तित्तसंयुतैर्बस्तिभिस्तथा ॥३१॥
 विद्वृद्धिजानतीसारक्रियया, विद्क्षयोद्धवान् । मेषाजमध्यकुल्माषयवमाषद्वयादिभिः ॥३२॥
 मूत्रवृद्धिक्षयोत्थांश्च मेहकृच्छ्रचिकित्सया । व्यायामाभ्यञ्जनस्वेदमद्यैः स्वेदक्षयोद्धवान् ॥३३॥

Diseases

1. Diseases caused by increase of blood

2. Due to the increase of *mārīṣa dhātu*

3. Due to the increase of *medo dhātu*

4. Due to the decrease of *rasa dhātu*

5. Due to the decrease of *asthi dhātu*

6. Due to the increase of *puriṣa* (faeces)

7. Due to decrease of *puriṣa*

8. Due to the decrease of urine

Line of treatment

- Blood letting, purificatory thearpies.
- Purgation.
- *Śodhana* therapy.
- Surgical treatment, use of alkalies and thermal cauterisation.
- Obesity treatment.
- Reduction therapy.
- Mutton soup.
- Alcohol.
- Milk.
- Use of bitter substances.
- *Kṣīra vasti*.
- Purgation.
- Barley, blackgram, *kulmāṣa*, meet of the middle part of the body of goat and sheep.
- Dysurea treatment.

9. Due to the increase of urine • Treatment of diabetes.
10. Due to the decrease of sweat • Body massage, exercise, alcohol, sleep, staying in the air tight rooms and other sudation therapeutic techniques.

Reason for the increase or decrease of body tissues:

स्वस्थानस्थस्य कायानेरंशा धातुषु संश्रिताः । तेषां सादातिदीपिभ्यां धातुवृद्धिक्षयोद्घवः ॥३ ४ ॥
पूर्वे धातुः परं कुर्याद्वद्धः क्षीणश्च तद्विधम् ।

Dhātwagni is nothing but the part or share of *jatharāgni* (digestive power), which is present in side of all the *sapta dhātus*. This is also another factor responsible for the increase or decrease of bodily tissues due to the debility and intensity of the *dhātwagni* respectively.

Though the forest fire (*dāvāgni*) is continuously burning, gets flared up greatly at certain times and decreased at other times, depending upon the nature of the fuel available. So also the transformation of tissues undergoes increase or decrease depending upon nature of food substances.

Substances, which are similar or dissimilar to the *dhātus*, are the causes for their increase or decrease respectively because each one has its own specific action in quickly transforming them.

Doṣa, dhātu, mala & sroto-duṣṭi:

दोषा दुष्टा रसैर्धातून् दूषयन्त्युभये मलान् ॥३ ५ ॥
अधो द्वे, सप्त शिरसि, खानि स्वेदवहानि च । मला मलायनानि स्युर्यथास्वं तेष्वतो गदाः ॥३ ६ ॥

Doṣas gets vitiated due to the irregular diet and activities. Afterwards they vitiate the *dūsyas* and they in turn vitiate *malas*. Such vitiated *malas* further vitiates the *malāyana* (anus, urethral passage, mouth, ears, eyes and nostrils) and causes diseases.

Ojas

Definition:

ओजस्तु तेजो धातूनां शुक्रान्तानां परं स्मृतम् । हृदयस्थमपि व्यापि देहस्थितिनिबन्धनम् ॥३ ७ ॥

Ojas is the essence of the cream of seven tissues of the body. It is the first essential element of the embryo and gets localized in its heart earlier to the formation of the different parts of the foetus.

Features:

स्त्रिर्धं सोमात्मकं शुद्धमीषल्लोहितपीतकम् ।

Ojas is soft, pure and slightly reddish yellow in color.

Importance of ojas:

यत्राशे नियतं नाशो यस्मिंस्तिष्ठति तिष्ठति ॥३ ८ ॥

निष्पद्यन्ते यतो भावा विविधा देहसंश्रयाः ।



Ojas

- * *Ojas* is the chief fluid material of the body.
- * Life depends on *ojas* only.
- * Loss of *ojas* leads to death.
- * Main seat of *ojas* is the heart.
- * Though it is residing in the heart, it is circulating all over the body and helps the activities of life.

ओजः क्षीयेत् कोपक्षुद्वयानशोकश्रमादिभिः ॥३ ९ ॥

बिभेति दुर्बलोऽभीक्षणं ध्यायति व्यथितेन्द्रियः । दुःच्छायो दुर्मना रूक्षो भवेत्क्षामश्च तत्क्षये ॥४ ० ॥
जीवनीयौषधक्षीररसाद्यास्तत्र भेषजम् ।

Causes for the decrease of *ojas*:

Anger, hungry, worry, grief, excessive physical exertion and others leads to the decrease of *ojas*.

Signs and symptoms of diminution of *ojas*:

Fear complex, constant weakness, worry, affliction of sense organs, loss of complexion, instability of mind, cheerlessness, dryness and emaciation.

Treatment:

- * Milk with *jīvanīya gāṇa dravyas*.
- * Mutton juice (soup).
- * Others, which confer strength.

ओजोवृद्धौ हि देहस्य तुष्टिपुष्टिबलोदयः ॥४ १ ॥

Increase of *ojas* gives nourishment to the body, cheerfulness to the mind and strength to the body etc.

Line of treatment for *vṛddhi* & *kṣaya*:

यदत्रं द्वेष्टि यदपि प्रार्थयेताविरोधि तु । तत्त्वजन् समश्नन्श तौ तौ वृद्धिक्षयौ जयेत् ॥४ २ ॥

The person who dislikes such substances should be avoided and shows interest in such substances should be made available. So that the diseases caused by the vitiation of various *doṣas* can be managed.

Reason for paying the interest and haterdness of substances:

कुर्वते हि रुचिं दोषा विपरीतसमानयोः । वृद्धा: क्षीणाश्च भूयिष्ठं लक्ष्यन्त्यबुधास्तु न ॥४ ३ ॥

If the *doṣas* are in the increased state, the person wishes to take the substances, which are having exactly opposite in nature of such *doṣas*. Similarly if they are in decreased state, the person wishes to take the food having the similar qualities to that of the diminished *doṣas*. By knowing the above fact it is easy to know the vitiation i.e. either increase or decrease of the *doṣas*, but the unintelligent persons are unable to recognize status of *doṣas*.

Action of *doṣas* according to their state:

यथाबलं यथास्वं च दोषा वृद्धा वितन्वते । रूपाणि, जहति क्षीणाः, समाः स्वं कर्म कुर्वते ॥४ ४ ॥

Whenever the *doṣas* increase they amplify their respective features depending upon their strength. Similarly if they decrease, their functions are also diminishing. If they are in the balanced state they will attend their normal functions.

Keep *doṣas* under control:

य एव देहस्य समा विवृद्ध्यै त एव दोषा विषमा वधाय । यस्मादतस्ते हितचर्ययैव क्षयाद्विवृद्धेरिव रक्षणीया: ॥४॥

The same *doṣas* whenever they are in the normal state causes for the proper growth and development of the body. But whenever they are in the imbalanced state i.e. either increased or decreased state causes the destruction of the body. Hence one should be cautious and protect the *doṣas* without undergoing any abnormal changes by adopting wholesome diet and deeds.

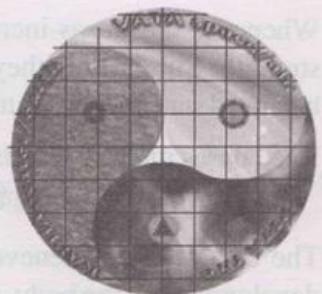
इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्भाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने दोषादिविज्ञानीयो नामैकादशोऽध्यायः ॥११॥

Thus ends the eleventh chapter entitled *Doṣādivijñāniya Adhyāya* of Sūtra
Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya
Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In the chapter *Doṣādi Vijñāniyam* Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expressed that *doṣa*, *dhātu* and *malas* are the constituents of the body and imbalanced state of those are responsible for the production of various disorders. The basic principles of the treatment is to bring back the normal state of the *doṣas* either increased or decreased by applying *sāmānya-viṣeṣa siddhānta*. Hence it is very much essential to know the normal functions and the features of the increased or decreased state of *doṣa*, *dhātu* and *malas*. After that *doṣa*, *dhātu* and *malas* relationship (*āśrayāśrayī bhāvā*) was discussed. At the end definition of *ojas*, features, importance, causes for diminution and their signs & symptoms, and also the treatment was explained.



12 DOSABHEDIYA ADHYAYA [Classification of Dosas]



अथातो दोषभेदीयाध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ॥

After ‘*Dosādi Vijñānīya*’ Ācārya Vāgbhāta expounded the chapter ‘*Dosabhedīya*’ (Classification of Dosas) thus said Ātreya and other great sages. In the previous chapter normal functions and the abnormal functions of the body constituents have been discussed.

The present chapter dealt with the different types of *dosas*, their places and the normal functions, factors responsible for their accumulation, aggravation and alleviation, types of diseases caused by different *dosas*—various combinations of increased and decreased *dosas* etc.

Relationship between dosas and pañcamahābhūtas:

Vāta is formed by the combination of *vāyu* and *ākāśa*. *Pitta* is formed from *agni* and *kapha* is formed by the combination of *prthīvī* and *ap* *mahābhūtas*.

Seats of Dosas

Seats of vāta:

पक्वाशयकटीसक्षिणश्रोत्रास्थिस्पर्शनेन्द्रियम् । स्थानं वातस्य, तत्रापि पक्वाधानं विशेषतः ॥१॥

Vāta occupies or resides in various places like large intestines, hip region, thighs, ears, bones and skin, especially in the large intestines.

Seats of pitta:

नाभिरामाशयः स्वेदो लसीका रुधिरं रसः । दृक् स्पर्शनं च पित्तस्य, नाभिरत्र विशेषतः ॥२॥

Pitta resides in various places like umbilicus, stomach, sweat, lymph, blood, plasma, eyes and skin and especially in the place of umbilical region.

Seats of kapha:

उरःकण्ठशिरःक्लोमपर्वाण्यामाशयो रसः । मेदो घ्राणं च जिह्वा च कफस्य, सुतरामुरः ॥३॥

Kapha resides in various places like chest, throat, head, pancreas, phalanges, stomach, plasma, fat, nose, tongue and especially in the region of chest.

Doṣa-bheda (Divisions of Doṣas)

Each one of them is again of 5 types:

Pañcavidha vāta (5 types of vāta): *Prāṇa*, *udāna*, *vyāna*, *samāna* and *apāna*.

Pañcavidha pitta (5 types of pitta): *Pācaka, rañjaka, sādhaka, ālocaka and bhrājaka.*

Pañcavidha kapha (5 types of kapha): *Avalambaka, kledaka, bodhaka, tarpaka and śleṣaka.*

Pañcavidha vāta:

1. Praṇa vāta:

प्राणादिभेदात्पञ्चात्मा वायुः प्राणोऽत्र मूर्धगः । उरः कण्ठचरो बुद्धिहृदयेन्द्रियचित्तधृक् ॥4॥
ष्टीवनक्षवथूद्धारनि:श्वासान्नप्रवेशकृत् ।

Location or main seat : Head.

Moving places : Chest & throat.

Functions : Maintenance of intellect, sense organs & mind. Spitting, sneezing, eructation, inspiration, expiration, swallowing of food etc.

2. Udāna vāta:

उरः स्थानमुदानस्य नासानाभिगलांश्वरेत् ॥5॥
वाक्प्रवृत्तिप्रयत्नोर्जीवलवर्णस्मृतिक्रियः ।

Location or main seat : Chest.

Moving places : Nose, umbilicus, throat.

Functions : Producing speech, physical activity, invigorating, strength, color, memory etc.

3. Vyāna vāta:

व्यानो हृदि स्थितः कृत्स्नदेहचारी महाजवः ॥6॥
गत्यपक्षेपणोत्क्षेपनिमेषोन्मेषणादिकाः । प्रायः सर्वाः क्रियास्तस्मिन् प्रतिबद्धाः शरीरिणाम् ॥7॥

Location or main seat : Heart.

Moving places : Moves all over the body with great speed.

Functions : Movement (locomotion), upward and downward movement of the body parts, opening and closing of eyelids and all the functions of the body related to the movement such as flow of sweat and blood, separation of nutrients and waste products, supplying nutrients to all the parts of the body etc.

4. Samāna vāta:

समानोऽग्निसमीपस्थः कोष्ठे चरति सर्वतः । अत्रं गृह्णाति पचति विवेचयति मुञ्चति ॥8॥

Location or main seat : Nearer to *jatharagni* (stomach).

Moving places : All over the gastro-intestinal tract.

Functions : Retaining the food, digestion, separation of essence and waste products.

5. Apāna vāta:

अपानोऽपानगः श्रोणिबस्तिमेद्रोरुगोचरः । शुक्रार्तवशकृन्मूत्रगर्भनिष्कमणक्रियः ॥9॥

- Location or main seat : Rectum.
 Moving places : Pelvis, urinary bladder, penis, groin.
 Functions : Elimination of semen, menstrual fluid, faeces, urine and foetus.

Pañcavidha pitta:

1. Pācaka pitta:

पित्तं पञ्चात्मकन्तत्र पक्वामाशयमध्यगम् । पञ्चभूतात्मकत्वेऽपि यत्तैजसगुणोदयात् ॥१०॥
 त्यक्तद्रवत्वं पाकादिर्कर्माऽनलशब्दितम् । पचत्यन्नं विभजते सारकिदटौ पृथक् तथा ॥११॥
 तत्रस्थमेव पित्तानां शेषाणामप्यनुग्रहम् । करोति बलदानेन पाचकं नाम तत्सृतम् ॥१२॥

Location : In between the stomach and large intestines.

Features : Even though it is composed of all the 5 basic elements, predominantly it consists 'tejo mahābhūta' which causes for the deficiency of the properties of liquids.

Functions : As it helps in the process of digestion, it obtains the name of *agni (anala)*. It digests the food substances; separate the essence and waste products. It remains in it's own place and supports by giving strength to other four types of *pitta* and is known as *pācaka pitta*.

2. Rañjaka pitta:

आमाशयाश्रयं पित्तं रञ्जकं रसरञ्जनात् ।

Location : *Rañjaka pitta* is located in the stomach (*āmāśaya*).

Functions : Imparts red color to the plasma.

3. Sādhaka pitta:

बुद्धिमेधाभिमानाद्यैरभिप्रेतार्थसाधनात् ॥१३॥
 साधकं हृद्रतं पित्तं-

Location : Heart.

Functions : To achieve the aims of the life by attending functions such as discrimination, intelligence, pride etc.

4. Ālocaka pitta:

-रूपालोचनतः स्मृतम् । दृक्स्थमालोचकं-

Location : Eyes.

Functions : Helps in vision.

5. Bhrājaka pitta:

-त्वक्स्थं भ्राजकं भ्राजनात्त्वचः ॥१४॥

Location : Skin.

Functions : Gives color and complexion to the skin.

Pañcavidha kapha (śleṣmā):**1. Avalambaka śleṣmā:**

श्लेष्मा तु पञ्चधा उरस्थः स त्रिकस्य स्ववीर्यंतः । हृदयस्यान्नवीर्याच्च तत्स्थ एवाम्बुकर्मणा ॥1 5॥
कफधान्मां च शेषाणं यत्करोत्यवलम्बनम् । अतोऽवलम्बकः श्लेष्मा-

Location : Heart.

Functions : Helps the areas around shoulders, arms and neck and heart by giving strength.

Remaining in its own place and supports the other four types of *kapha* by contributing the properties of fluid is known as *avalambaka*.

2. Kledaka śleṣmā:

-यस्त्वामाशयसंस्थितः ॥1 6॥
क्लेदकः सोऽन्नसङ्घातक्लेदनात्-

Location : Stomach.

Functions : Moistens the food substances.

3. Bodhaka śleṣmā:

-रसबोधनात् । बोधको रसनास्थायी-

Location : Tongue.

Functions : Perception of the taste.

4. Tarpaka śleṣmā:

-शिरःसंस्थोऽक्षतपर्णात् ॥1 7॥
तर्पकः-

Location : Head.

Functions : Nourishment to all the sense organs.

5. Śleṣaka śleṣmā:

-सन्धिसंश्लेषाच्छ्लेषकः सन्धिषु स्थितः ।

Location : Joints.

Functions : Providing lubrication in the joints.

इति प्रायेण दोषाणां स्थानान्यविकृतात्मनाम् ॥1 8॥
व्यापिनामपि जानीयात्कर्माणि च पृथक्पृथक् ।

In this way the *doṣas* present all over the body, are also found in some specific places in their normal condition and performing their duties usually.

Factors responsible for the accumulation, aggravation and alleviation of doṣas:

उष्णोन युक्ता रूक्षाद्या वायोः कुर्वन्ति सञ्चयम् ॥1 9॥

शीतेन कोपमुष्णोन शमं स्निग्धादयो गुणाः । शीतेन युक्तास्तीक्ष्णाद्याक्षयं पित्तस्य कुर्वते ॥1 10॥

उष्णोन कोपं, मन्दाद्या: शमं शीतोपसंहिताः । शीतेन युक्ताः स्निग्धाद्याः कुर्वते श्लेष्मणश्वयम् ॥२ १ ॥
उष्णोन कोपं, तेनैव गुणा रूक्षादयः शमम् ।

The increase of *doṣas* is of two kinds viz.

- (a) *Caya* (accumulation)
- (b) *Prakopa* (aggravation)

Doṣa	Caya (Accumulation)	Prakopa (Aggravation)	Praśama (Alleviation)
<i>Vāta</i>	<i>Rūkṣa</i> and other qualities of <i>vāta</i> associated with <i>uṣṇa guṇa</i> .	<i>Rūkṣa</i> & others associated with <i>śīta guṇa</i> .	<i>Snigdha</i> associated with <i>uṣṇa guṇa</i> .
<i>Pitta</i>	<i>Tikṣṇa</i> and other qualities of <i>pitta</i> associated with <i>śīta guṇa</i> .	<i>Tikṣṇa</i> & others associated with <i>uṣṇa guṇa</i> .	<i>Manda</i> associated with <i>śīta guṇa</i> .
<i>Kapha</i>	<i>Snigdha</i> and other qualities of <i>kapha</i> associated with <i>śīta guṇa</i> .	<i>Snigdha</i> & others associated with <i>uṣṇa guṇa</i> .	<i>Rūkṣa</i> associated with <i>uṣṇa guṇa</i> .

Caya (Mild increase):

चयो वृद्धिः स्वधान्येव प्रद्वेषु वृद्धिहेतुषु ॥२ २ ॥
विपरीतगुणेच्छा च-

- * Increase of the *doṣas* in their own places is known as *caya*.
- * In that condition, the persons gets aversion towards the diet and regimen which are responsible for the increase of the *doṣas* and develop the desire to have the opposite qualities of those of diet and regimen.

Prakopa (Great increase):

-कोपस्तून्मार्गगमिता । लिङ्गानां दर्शनं स्वेषामस्वास्थ्यं रोगसम्भवः ॥२ ३ ॥

- * *Doṣas* gets further increase (vitiation) and spreads in the other parts of the body by leaving from their original place is known as *prakopa*.
- * In such condition, the vitiated *doṣas* manifest their abnormal symptoms and results in the occurrence of diseases.

Praśama (Normalcy):

स्वस्थानस्थस्य समता विकारासम्भवः शमः ।

Equilibrium state of *doṣas* in their original places is known as *praśama*.

Notes:

- * Just as the clouds are brought together at one place by the wind and made to rain, the aggravated *doṣas* produce diseases either in the whole part of the body, half of it, in any one organ being brought there by the influence of *vāta*.
- * The vitiated *doṣas* causes troubles to the body by producing various types of diseases. Among them, 80 are produced by *vāta*, 40 are due to *pitta* and 20 by the vitiation of *kapha*.

All the diseases are manifested due to the vitiation of *doṣas* only and such diseases are innumerable. Major diseases are mentioned in the Nidāna sthāna. Minor diseases are named with the prefix of the name of the organ, which they affect. For eg. *nakha bheda*, *śaṅkha bheda*, *lalāṭa bheda*, *antardāha* etc. The diseases, which are not mentioned in the text also can be known by the features of the *doṣas* and can be treated according to the general line of treatment.

Relationship between *doṣas* and seasons:

चयप्रकोपप्रशमा वायोग्रीष्मादिषु त्रिषु ॥२ ४॥

वर्षादिषु तु पित्तस्य, श्लेषणः शिशरादिषु । चीयते लघुरुक्षाभिरोषधीभिः समीरणः ॥२ ५॥

तद्विधस्तद्विधे देहे कालस्यौष्यान्नं कुप्यति । अद्विरम्लविपाकाभिरोषधीभिः तादृशम् ॥२ ६॥

पित्तं याति चयं कोपं न तु कालस्य शैत्यतः । चीयते स्निग्धशीताभिरुदकौषधिभिः कफः ॥२ ७॥

तुल्येऽपि काले देहे च स्कन्त्रत्वान्नं प्रकुप्यते ।

Doṣa	Chaya	Prakopa	Praśama
Vāta	<i>Grīṣma</i>	<i>Varṣā</i>	<i>Śarad</i>
Pitta	<i>Varṣā</i>	<i>Śarad</i>	<i>Hemanta</i>
Kapha	<i>Śiśira</i>	<i>Vasanta</i>	<i>Grīṣma</i>

In *grīṣma* ḥtu, generally all the drugs and diet are light and dry. As the *vāta* also having the similar qualities, *vāta* undergoes *caya* (mild increase) only, but not *prakopa* (further aggravation) merely because of the hotness of the season. The *vāta* (*samīraṇa*), which, accumulates in *grīṣma* ḥtu, will be aggravated in *varṣā* ḥtu due to its coldness and subsides automatically in *śarad* ḥtu.

In *varṣā* ḥtu, *pitta* undergoes only *caya*, because of the food substances that are used possess *amla vipāka*, but not *prakopa* mainly because of the coldness of the season. The *pitta*, which accumulates in *varṣā* ḥtu, will be aggravated in *śarad* ḥtu and subsides automatically in *hemanta* ḥtu.

In *śiśira* ḥtu, *kapha* undergoes only *caya* by the use of food substances, which are unctuous, cold etc. that are similar to the *doṣa*. *Kapha* becomes solidified by the effect of season and doesn't undergo *prakopa*. *Kapha* become liquified in *vasanta* ḥtu and gets aggravated, and subsides automatically in *grīṣma* ḥtu.

इति कालस्वभावोऽयमाहारादिवशात् पुनः ॥२ ८॥

चयादीन् यान्ति सद्योऽपि दोषाः कालेऽपि वा न तु ।

* The above changes of the *doṣas* will be taken place naturally by the influence of the seasons.

* Accumulation, aggravation and normalcy of the *doṣas* will be taken place instantaneously by the diet and activities without observing the influence of seasons.

Nature of aggravation and subsidence of *doṣas*:

व्याघ्रोति सहसा देहमापादतलमस्तकम् ॥२ ९॥

निवर्तते तु कुपितो मलोऽल्पात्प्यं जलौधवत् ।

Dosas when gets aggravated circulate the entire body from head to toes very quickly and subsides slowly similar to the stream of water.

नानास्त्रैरसङ्ग्येयैर्विकारैः कुपिता मला: ॥३०॥

तापयन्ति तनुं तस्मातद्वेत्वाकृतिसाधनम् । शक्यं नैकैकशो वक्तुमतः सामान्यमुच्यते ॥३१॥

Vitiated *dosas* cause various types of innumerable diseases like *jwara* and others and is responsible for making uneasiness in the body. It is not possible to describe all aspects of each and every disease condition minutely and hence common factors responsible for the production of diseases, their signs and symptoms and the general line of treatment is being delineated.

Doṣa-vaiśamya is the chief cause for the manifestation of all diseases:

दोषा एवं हि सर्वेषां रोगाणामेककारणम् । यथा पक्षी परिपतन् सर्वतः सर्वमप्यहः ॥३२॥

छायामत्येति नात्मीयां यथा वा कृत्स्नमप्यदः । विकारजातं विविधं त्रीन् गुणान्नातिवर्तते ॥३३॥

तथा स्वधातुवैषम्यनिमित्तमपि सर्वदा । विकारजातं त्रीन्दोषान्-

All the endogenous diseases occur invariably due to the vitiation of *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*. As the bird cannot transgress its own shadow even though flying throughout the day, just as all the things of the universe cannot exist apart from the *trigunas* (*sattwa*, *rajas* and *tamas*), so also no endogenous disease caused by the disturbance of the equilibrium of the *dhātus* can occur without the vitiation of *tridoṣas*.

Three types of etiological factors:

-तेषां कोपे तु कारणम् ॥३४॥

अर्थैरसात्म्यैः संयोगः कालः कर्म च दुष्कृतम् । हीनातिमिथ्यायोगेन भिद्यते तत्पुननिधा ॥३५॥

In total, there are only the three causative factors, which are responsible for the production of the diseases, viz.

1. *Asātmyendriyārtha samyoga* (Improper correlation of sense organs with their objects).
2. *Prajñāparādha* (Intellectual blemish).
3. *Pariṇāma* (Effects of time).

Each of them is again of 3 types:

(a) *Atiyoga* (Excessive);

(b) *Ayoga* (Inadequate);

(c) *Mithyayoga* (Perversion).

1. *Asātmyendriyārtha samyoga*:

हीनोऽर्थेनेन्द्रियस्यात्प्यः संयोगः स्वेन नैव वा । अतियोगोऽतिसंसर्गः सूक्ष्मभासुरभैरवम् ॥३६॥

अत्यासन्नातिदूरस्थं विप्रियं विकृतादि च । यदक्षणा वीक्ष्यते रूपं मिथ्यायोगः स दारुणः ॥३७॥

एवमत्युच्यपूत्यादीनिन्द्रियार्थान् यथायथम् । विद्यात्-

The unwholesome correlation of sense organs like ears, skin, eyes, tongue and nose with their

objects sound, touch, vision, taste and smell respectively is known as *asātmyendriyārtha samiyoga*.

- (a) **Atiyoga**: Excessive utilisation of sense organs with their objects is known as *atiyoga*.
Ex. seeing the objects for a long time. Perception of tastes excessively. Smelling the substances excessively.
- (b) **Ayoga**: Conducting the usual functions of the sense organs inadequately is known as *ayoga*.
Ex. seeing the objects for a short time or not using the eye at all.
- (c) **Mithyāyoga**: Wrong utilisation of the sense organs is called *mithyāyoga*. Eg.:
 - (i) **For eyes**: Seeing the objects which are very small, very far away, very near, unsteady, very bright, terrible, unpleasant and unnatural.
 - (ii) **For ears**: Hearing sounds which are hatred, very loud, very rough and very fearful.
 - (iii) **For nose**: Smells such as putrefied, foul, very strong such as *vacā* (*Acorus calamus*) which are not palatable to the mind.
 - (iv) **For tongue**: Taking foods which are not having natural taste, not properly prepared and unwholesome.
 - (v) **For skin**: Use of cold and hot substances irregularly for bathing and other purposes, impure and poisonous air etc.

2. Kāla/Parināma (Effects of time):

—कालस्तु शीतोष्णवर्षभेदात् त्रिधा मतः ॥३ ८ ॥
स हीनो हीनशीतादिरतियोगोऽतिलक्षणः । मिथ्यायोगस्तु निर्दिष्टो विपरीतस्वलक्षणः ॥३ ९ ॥

- (a) **Atiyoga**: Severe hotness in summer. Heavy rains in rainy season. Severe cold in winter.
- (b) **Ayoga**: Less temperature than normal in summer. No rains and less rains in rainy season. Not much cold in winter.
- (c) **Mithyāyoga**: Rains in summer and hotness in winter etc.

3. Karma/Prajñāparādha (Intellectual blemish):

कायवाक्चित्तभेदेन कर्मपि विभजेत् त्रिधा । कायादिकर्मणो हीना प्रवृत्तिहीनसंज्ञकः ॥४ ० ॥
अतियोगोऽतिवृत्तिस्तु, वेगोदीरणधारणम् । विषमाङ्गुकियारम्भपतनसखलनादिकम् ॥४ १ ॥
भाषणं सामिभुक्तस्य रागद्वेषभयादि च । कर्म प्राणातिपातादि दशधा यच्च निन्दितम् ॥४ २ ॥
मिथ्यायोगः सप्तस्तोऽसाविह वाऽमुत्र वा कृतम् ।

All the three kinds of unwholesome actions pertaining to body, speech and mind is known as *prajñāparādha*.

- (a) **Atiyoga**: Too much indulgence in such action is *atiyoga*.
- (b) **Ayoga**: Very little or no action is *ayoga*.
- (c) **Mithyāyoga**: Wrong utilisation of mental faculties is known as *mithyāyoga*.

- (i) Kāyika mithyāyoga: Suppression of the natural urges when they are explicit. Unnatural postures and movements. Controlling the breath etc.
- (ii) Vācika mithyāyoga: Speaking while eating and drinking.
- (iii) Mānasika mithyāyoga: Emotions like fear, grief, greed, anger etc. and the sinful acts pertaining to mind.

निदानमेतद्वोषाणां, कुपितास्तेन नैकधा ॥४ ३ ॥
कुर्वन्ति विविधान् व्याधीन् शाखाकोष्ठस्थिसन्धिषु ।

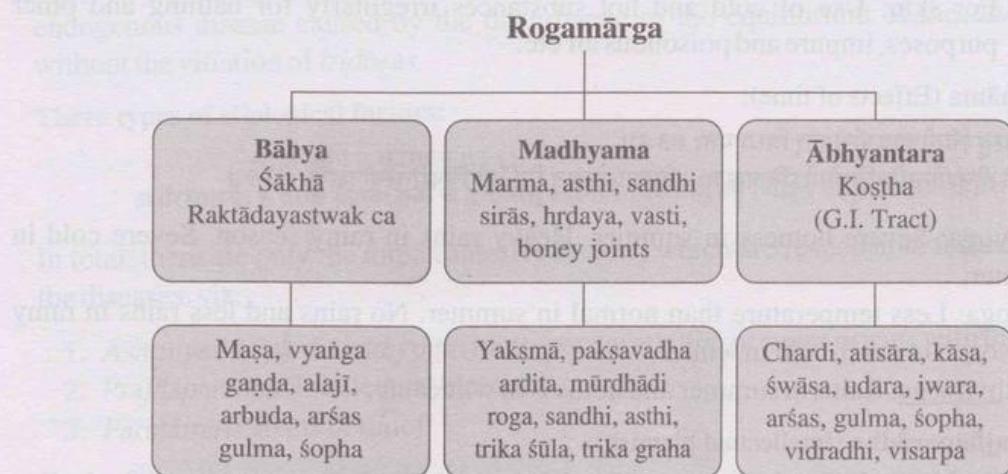
The above three causative factors are responsible for the vitiation of all the *dosas* and which they in turn produces all the three pathways of the diseases pertaining to *śākhā* (*bāhya rogamārga*), *koṣṭha* (*ābhyanṭara rogamārga*) and *asthi sandhis* (*madhyama rogamārga*).

Trividha Rogamārga

(Three Pathways of Diseases)

The pathways of the diseases are of 3 types viz.

1. *Bāhya rogamārga* (Exterior)
2. *Madhyama rogamārga* (Middle)
3. *Ābhyanṭara rogamārga* (Interior)



1. *Bāhya rogamārga*:

शाखा रक्तादयस्त्वक् च बाह्यरोगायनं हि तत् ॥४ ४ ॥
तदाश्रया मषव्यङ्गण्डालज्ज्वर्दादयः । बहिर्भागाश्च दुर्नामगुल्मशोफादयो गदा: ॥४ ५ ॥

- * *Raktādayastwak ca* i.e. blood and the rest of other tissues and the skin form to the exterior pathway of the diseases. It is also known as *śākhā*.
- * Diseases such as *maṣa* (mole), *vyañga* (hyperpigmentation) *gaṇḍa* (goitre), *alajī* (a type of ascess; painful, copper coloured and pointed boil), *arbuda* (tumor), *bahirbhāga durnāma* (external piles), *gulma* (lumps), *śopha* (ocdema) etc. are related to *bāhya rogamārga*.

2. Ābhyantara rogamārga:

अन्तःकोष्ठो महास्रोत आमपक्वाशयाश्रयः । तत्स्थानाः छ्वर्द्धतीसारकासश्वासोदरज्वराः ॥४६॥
अन्तर्भागं च शोफाशेंगुल्मवीसर्पविद्रधिः ।

- * Koṣṭha is the central part of the body. *Mahā srotas*, *śarīra madhya*, *mahānimna*, *āmapakvāśayāśraya* (*āmāśaya* and *pakvāśaya*) etc. are synonyms for *koṣṭha*. This is the internal pathway of the diseases.
- * Diseases such as *chardi* (vomiting), *atisāra* (diarrhoea), *kāsa* (cough), *śwāsa* (dyspnoea), *udara* (abdominal disease with distension), *jwara* (fever), *antarbhāga-śopha* (internal-oedema), *arśas* (internal piles), *gulma* (internal lumps), *visarpa* (cellulitis), *vidradhi* (internal abscess) etc. are related to *ābhyantara rogamārga*.

3. Madhyama rogamārga:

शिरोहृदयबस्त्यादिमर्णयस्थानं च सन्धयः ॥४७॥
तन्त्रिबन्धाः शिरास्नायुकण्डराद्याश्च मध्यमः । रोगमार्गः स्थितास्तत्र यक्ष्मपक्षवधार्दिताः ॥४८॥
मूर्धादिरोगाः सन्ध्यस्थित्रिकशूलग्रहादयः ।

- * The vital organs head, heart and the bladder etc., the joints of the bones, include the bones joined together by the ligaments and tendons attached there to form to the middle pathway of the diseases.
- * Diseases such as *yakṣmā* (tuberculosis), *pakṣavadha* (hemiplegia), *ardita* (facial paralysis), *mūrdhādi roga* (diseases pertaining to head, heart, bladder are other vital organs), *sandhi-śūla* (joint pains), *asthi-śūla* (pain in the bones), *trika-śūla* (pain in the sacrum), *sandhi-asthi-trika graha* (rigidity in the joints, bones and sacral region) etc. are related to *madhyama rogamārga*.

Features of increased vāta:

स्नांसव्यासव्यधस्वापसादरुक्तोदभेदनम् ॥४९॥
सङ्घङ्गभङ्गसङ्घोचवर्तहर्षणतर्षणम् । कम्पपारुष्यसौर्षियर्शोषस्पन्दनवेष्टनम् ॥५०॥
स्तम्भः कषायरसता वर्णः श्यावोऽरुणोऽपि वा । कर्मणि वायोः—

Vitiated *doṣas* can be recognised by observing the following features:

Śrāṃsa (drooping), *vyāsa* (dilation), *vyadha* (piercing pain), *svāpa* (numbness), *sāda* (fatigue), *ruk* (pain), *toda* (pricking pain), *bheda* (splitting pain), *saṅga* (obstruction of urine and faeces), *aṅgabhaṅga* (throbbing of body parts), *saṅkoca* (contractions), *varta* (rolling or twisting), *harṣaṇa* (horripilations), *tarṣaṇa* (thirst), *kampa* (tremors), *pāruṣya* (roughness), *sauśiryā* (porosity), *śoṣa* (wasting), *spandana* (pulsating), *veṣṭana* (compressing pain), *stambha* (stiffness) *kaṣāya rasatā* (astringent test in the mouth), *syāvāruṇa varṇa* (blackish red discolouration of the skin) etc. are the features of increased *vāta*.

Features of increased pitta:

—पित्तस्य दाहरागोष्पपाकिताः ॥५१॥
स्वेदः क्लेदः स्रुतिः कोथः सदनं मूर्च्छनं मदः ।

कटुकाम्लौ रसौ वर्णः पाण्डुरासुणवर्जितः ॥५२॥

Dāha (burning sensation), *rāga* (redness), *ūṣma* (rise in temperature), *pāka* (suppuration), *sweda* (sweating), *kleda* (moisture), *śruti* (exudation), *kotha* (putrefaction), *sadana* (exhaustion), *mūrcchana* (fainting), *mada* (intoxication), *kaṭu-amlā rasatā* (pungent and sour taste in the mouth), *pāṇḍu- aruna varṇa varjita* (appearance of other colours on the skin except white and red) are the features of increased *pitta*.

Features of increased kapha:

श्लेष्यणः स्नेहकाठिन्यकण्डूशीतत्वगौरवम् । बन्धोपलेपस्तैमित्यशोफापक्त्यतिनिद्रताः ॥५३॥

वर्णः श्वेतो रसौ स्वादुलवणौ चिरकारिता ।

Sneha (unctuousness), *kāthinya* (hardness), *kaṇḍū* (itching), *śītatva* (feeling of coldness), *gourava* (Heaviness), *bandha* (obstruction of channels), *upalepa* (coating on the tongue), *staimitya* (laziness), *śopha* (odema), *apakti* (indigestion), *atinidratā* (excessive sleep), *śweta varṇa* (pallor), *swādu-lavaṇa rasatā* (sweet and salt taste in the mouth), *cirakāritā* (doing all behind time) etc. are the features of increased *kapha*.

इत्यशेषामयव्यापि यदुक्तं दोषलक्षणम् ॥५४॥

दर्शनाद्यैरवहितस्तस्म्यगुपलक्ष्येत् । व्याध्यवस्थाविभागजः पश्यन्नार्तान् प्रतिक्षणम् ॥५५॥

Till now the signs and symptoms of vitiated *doṣas* have been enumerated. Physician must be known all these things through various investigation techniques viz. *darśana* (inspection), *sparśana* (palpation) and *praśna* (interrogation).

In order to gain the appropriate knowledge pertaining to various stages of the disease, physician must observe the patient constantly.

Importance of practical knowledge:

अभ्यासात्प्राप्यते दृष्टिः कर्मसिद्धिप्रकाशिनी । रत्नादिसदसज्जानं न शास्त्रादेव जायते ॥५६॥

Knowledge pertaining to precious metals and gems can be obtained through constant observation of various types of metals and gems. Simply by textual knowledge one cannot identify the good and bad ones. Similarly along with theoretical knowledge practical knowledge is equally essential to become a successful practitioner.

Trividha roga (Three types of diseases):

दृष्टापचारजः कश्चित्कश्चित्पूर्वापराधजः । तत्सङ्कराद्वत्पत्यन्यो व्याधिरेवं त्रिधा स्मृतः ॥५७॥

Diseases are of 3 types as under:

1. *Drṣṭāpacāraja/Pratyutpanna karmaṇa* (caused by the activities of present life).
2. *Pūrvāparādhaja/Pūrvakarmaja* (caused by the activities of previous lives).
3. *Saikara bhava/Ubhayātmaka* (combination of both the above conditions).

Features of three types of diseases:

यथानिदानं दोषोत्थः कर्मजो हेतुभिर्विना । महारथोऽल्पके हेतावातङ्को दोषकर्मजः ॥५८॥

(a) Doṣottha vyādhi:

These are the diseases caused due to non-observance of wholesome diet and regimen and simultaneously adopting the unwholesome diet and regimen.

Hence the diseases caused by the vitiation of *doṣas* are having the visible causative factors.

(b) Karmaja vyādhi:

These are the diseases caused by the sinful acts of the previous life and are having exactly opposite qualities of *doṣottha rogas* and are having the invisible causative factors.

(c) Doṣakarmaja vyādhi:

Eventhough the visible causative factors are less and causing dreadful diseases are known as *doṣa karmaja vyādhi* or combination of both the above.

Line of treatment for the above three types of diseases:

विपक्षशीलनात्पूर्वः कर्मजः कर्मसङ्क्रान्तात् । गच्छत्युभयजन्मा तु दोषकर्मक्षयात्क्षयम् ॥5 9 ॥

- * In the above diseases, *doṣottara vyādhi* is caused due to vitiation of *doṣas* only. Hence the opposite qualities of drug, diet and regimen are to be adopted to manage such diseases.
- * The diseases caused by providence (actions of past life) will be relieved only after the effect of such actions, comes to an end, inspite of the use of opposites.
- * *Doṣa karmaja vyādhis* will be cured by the diminution of both the effects.

Dwividha roga (Two types of diseases):

द्विधा स्वपरतन्त्रत्वाद्व्याधयोऽन्त्यः पुनर्द्विधा । पूर्वजा: पूर्वस्तपाख्या, जाता: पश्चादुपद्रवा: ॥6 0 ॥
यथास्वजन्मोपशया: स्वतन्त्रा: स्पष्टलक्षणाः । विपरीतास्ततोऽन्ये तु-

In another way diseases have been classified into 2 types viz.

1. *Svatantra roga* (Primary diseases)
2. *Paratantra roga* (Secondary diseases)

Svatantra-parantantra roga (Primary and secondary diseases):

- * The diseases manifest either as the chief one or associated with another disease are known as *svatantra* and *paratantra* respectively.
- * *Svatantra rogas* are also known as *anubandhya vyādhi*, which are independent, and here specific well defined signs and symptoms and also specific causative factors and the line of treatment is available.

Diseases, which are secondary are of 2 kinds:

- (a) *Purogāmī* (Manifested prior to the primary disease).
- (b) *Anugāmī* (Manifested after the primary disease).

Purogāmī: It is also known as *pūrvavarūpa* i.e. premonitory symptoms.

Anugāmī: It is called *upadrava* or complications. They generally subside with the cure of the primary diseases.

-विद्यादेवं मलानपि ॥6 1॥

तांलक्ष्येदवहितो विकुर्वाणन् प्रतिज्वरम् । तेषां प्रधानप्रशमे प्रशमोऽशाम्यतस्तथा ॥6 2॥
पश्चाच्चिकित्सेत्तृणं वा बलवन्तमुपद्रवम् । व्याधिक्लिष्टशरीरस्य पीडाकरतरो हि सः ॥6 3॥

- * When they don't subside they should be treated after treating the primary diseases generally. But when they are acute and powerful, treat the complications first and then go for treating the primary diseases.
- * By knowing all these, the physician should carefully examine each and every aspect in the light of the science.

विकारनामाकुशलो न जिह्वीयात् कदाचन । न हि सर्वविकाराणां नामतोऽस्ति ध्रुवा स्थितिः ॥6 4॥

The physician need not feel inferiority complex even though he doesn't know the nomenclature of the disease as there is no rule that every disease has a name. Hence one can treat the patient according to the *dosas* by applying *sāmanya-viśeṣa siddhānta*.

स एव कुपितो दोषः समुत्थानविशेषतः । स्थानान्तराणि च ग्राप्य विकारान् कुरुते बहून् ॥6 5॥

तस्माद्विकारप्रकृतीरधिष्ठानान्तराणि च । बुद्ध्वा हेतुविशेषांश्च शीघ्रं कुर्यादुपक्रमम् ॥6 6॥

Depending upon the nature of causative factors, *dosas* gets vitiated and travels all over the body and settles down at a weak point and causes various diseases in the body. Hence treatment should be given according to the nature of the disease.

Daśavidha parikṣā:

दूष्यं देशं बलं कालमनलं प्रकृतिं वयः । सत्त्वं सात्त्वं तथाऽहारमवस्थाश्च पृथग्विधाः ॥6 7॥

सूक्ष्मसूक्ष्माः समीक्ष्यैवां दोषोषधनिरूपणे । यो वर्तते चिकित्सायां न स स्खलति जातुचित् ॥6 8॥

One he, who should prescribe a drug after observing the following factors as well as the vitiated *doṣa* never commits a mistake in treating a patient.

1. *Dūṣya* (*dhātu & mala*), 2. *deśa* (habitat), 3. *bala* (strength of the patient), 4. *kāla* (season), 5. *anala* (digestive power), 6. *prakṛti* (body constitution), 7. *vaya* (age of the patient), 8. *sattwa* (strength of *manas*/mind), 9. *sātmya* (habituate yourself to) and 10. *āhāra* (food and food habits).

Examination of the intensity of disease:

गुर्वल्प्यव्याधिसंस्थानं सत्त्वदेहबलाबलात् । दृश्यते अप्यन्यथाकारं तस्मिन्नवहितो भवेत् ॥6 9॥

The signs and symptoms of easygoing and dreadful diseases might appear in a different way due to the strength and weakness of the mind. That means a person, though suffering with a grievous disease and having strong will power can withhold pain and appears that he is suffering with a mild disease and vice versa. Hence a physician should carefully examine the patient in all aspects.

गुरुं लघुमिति व्याधिं कल्पयन्तु भिषग्द्रुवः । अल्पदोषाकलनया पथ्ये विप्रतिपद्यते ॥7 0॥

The physician, who is not having the proper idea of the disease condition will be mistaken the

grievous disease as mild one and unable to decide the appropriate dosage i.e. prescribe lower potency drugs instead of selecting higher potency and vice versa.

III effects of wrong prescription:

ततोऽल्पमल्पवीर्यं वा गुरुव्याधौ प्रयोजितम् । उदीरयेत्तरां रोगान् संशोधनमयोगतः ॥7 1॥
शोधनं त्वतियोगेन विपरीतं विपर्यये । क्षिण्यान्नं मलानेव केवलं वपुरस्याति ॥7 2॥

Low potency drugs prescribed in a dreadful disease cannot cure the signs and symptoms and also causes the increase of vitiation of *doṣas*. Similarly higher potency drugs prescribed in a mild disease causes harm at times to the life of the patient also.

Physician's responsibility:

अतोऽभियुक्तः सततं सर्वमालोच्य सर्वथा । तथा युक्तीत भैषज्यमारोग्याय यथा ध्रुवम् ॥7 3॥

Hence the physician should continuously study the principles of Ayurveda and examine the patient carefully in all investigative aspects and then administer the appropriate dosage of the specific drug to restore the health successfully.

Sixty two (+one) types of combinations of *doṣas*:

वक्ष्यन्तेऽतःपरं दोषा वृद्धिक्षयविभेदतः । पृथक् त्रीन् विद्धि संसर्गस्थिधा, तत्र तु तान्नव ॥7 4॥
त्रीनेव समया वृद्ध्या षडेकस्यातिशयने । त्रयोदश समस्तेषु षड् द्वयेकातिशयेन तु ॥7 5॥
एकं तु ल्याधिकैः षट् च तारतम्यविकल्पनात् । पञ्चविंशतिमित्येवं वृद्धैः क्षीणैश्च तावतः ॥7 6॥
एकैकवृद्धिसमताक्षयैः षट् ते पुनश्च षट् । एकक्षयद्वन्द्ववृद्ध्या सविपर्ययाऽपि ते ॥7 7॥

Simultaneous aggravation of all the three *doṣas* (*sannipāta*) is of thirteen types. They are as follows:

(a) Two *doṣas* aggravated in excess and the remaining one just aggravated:

1. *Vāta* and *pitta* aggravated in excess and *kapha* just aggravated.
2. *Pitta* and *kapha* aggravated in excess and *vāta* just aggravated.
3. *Kapha* and *vāta* aggravated in excess and *pitta* just aggravated.

(b) One *doṣa* aggravated in excess and the remaining two just aggravated:

4. *Vāta* aggravated in excess and *pitta* and *kapha* just aggravated.
5. *Pitta* aggravated in excess and *vāta* and *kapha* just aggravated.
6. *Kapha* aggravated in excess and *vāta* and *pitta* just aggravated.

(c) Aggravation of *dosas* in progressive order:

7. *Vāta* aggravated, *pitta* more aggravated, *kapha* most aggravated.
8. *Vāta* aggravated, *kapha* more aggravated, *pitta* most aggravated.
9. *Pitta* aggravated, *kapha* more aggravated, *vāta* most aggravated.
10. *Pitta* aggravated, *vāta* more aggravated, *kapha* most aggravated.
11. *Kapha* aggravated, *pitta* more aggravated, *vāta* most aggravated.
12. *Kapha* aggravated, *vāta* more aggravated, *pitta* most aggravated.

(d) Aggravation of all the 3 *doṣas* in the same degree:

13. *Vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* aggravated in the same degree.

Simultaneous aggravation of any two *dosas* (*samsarga*) is of 9 types as follows:

(e) Aggravation of one dosas in excess:

14. *Pitta* aggravated and *vata* more aggravated.
15. *Pitta* aggravated and *kapha* more aggravated.
16. *Vata* aggravated and *kapha* more aggravated.
17. *Vata* aggravated and *pitta* more aggravated.
18. *Kapha* aggravated and *pitta* more aggravated.
19. *Kapha* aggravated and *vata* more aggravated.

(f) Aggravation of two dosas in the same degree:

20. *Vata* and *pitta* aggravated in the same degree.
21. *Pitta* and *kapha* aggravated in the same degree.
22. *Kapha* and *vata* aggravated in the same degree.

(g) Aggravation of only one dosa is of 3 types:

23. *Vata* aggravated.
24. *Pitta* aggravated.
25. *Kapha* aggravated.

The diminution of *dosas* like aggravation is also of 25 types. So the total combination of aggravation and diminution are of 50 types.

The twelve other alternate conditions of *dosas* depend on the aggravation and diminution taken together.

(h) When one dosa is aggravated, the second dosa is in normal condition and the third dosa is in the state of diminution:

51. *Vata* aggravated, *pitta* in normal condition and *kapha* in the state of diminution.
52. *Pitta* aggravated, *kapha* in normal condition and *vata* in the state of diminution.
53. *Kapha* aggravated, *pitta* in normal condition and *vata* in the state of diminution.
54. *Vata* aggravated, *kapha* in normal state and *pitta* diminished.
55. *Pitta* aggravated, *vata* in normal condition and *kapha* in the state of diminution.
56. *Kapha* aggravated, *vata* in normal condition and *pitta* in the state of diminution.

(i) When the two dosas are aggravated and one dosa is in the state of diminution:

57. *Vata* and *pitta* aggravated, *kapha* in the state of diminution.
58. *Pitta* and *kapha* aggravated, *vata* in the state of diminution.
59. *Kapha* and *vata* aggravated, and *pitta* in the state of diminution.

(j) When one dosa is aggravated and the other two are in the state of diminution:

60. *Vata* aggravated, *pitta* and *kapha* in the state of diminution.
61. *Pitta* aggravated, *vata* and *kapha* in the state of diminution.
62. *Kapha* aggravated, *vata* and *pitta* in the state of diminution.

(k) Equilibrium state of all the tridosas:

63. *Vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* are in the normal state.

भेदा: द्विषष्टिर्निर्दिष्टा: त्रिषष्टि: स्वास्थ्यकारणम् ।

Thus the number of combination of vitiated *doṣas* is 62 and the 63rd one is equilibrium state of all the three *doṣas*.

संसर्गाद्रसरुधिरादिभिस्तथैवां दोषांस्तु क्षयसमताविवृद्धिभेदैः ।

आनन्द्यं तरतमयोगतश्च यातान् जानीयादवहितमानसो यथास्वम् ॥7 8 ॥

If the above mentioned 63 divisions of *doṣas* and their sub-divisions like *vṛddhi*, *kṣaya* and *samatā* and also *tara*, *tama bheda* of these *doṣas* are associated with *rasa*, *rakta* and other *dūṣyas* will attain innumerable divisions. Hence the physician should think upon such aspects by applying his mind while treating a disease.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनश्रीमद्वाख्यटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने दोषभेदीयो नामद्वादशोऽध्यायः ॥1 2 ॥

Thus ends the twelfth chapter entitled *Doṣabhediya Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Sirinagupta.

In this chapter *Doṣabhediya Adhyāya*, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained relationship between *doṣas* and *pañca mahābhūtas*, seats of *tridoṣas*, five divisions of *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*, their location, moving places and functions. Factors responsible for the accumulation, aggravation and alleviation of the *doṣas*. Classification of diseases. Factors to be examined while treating a patient. 62+1 types of combinations of *doṣas* have been discussed.

13 DOSOPAKRAMANIYA ADHYAYA

[General Line of Treatment for Tridosha]



अथातो दोषोपक्रमणीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘Doṣabhediya Adhyāya’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘Doṣopakramanīya’(General Line of Treatment for Tridoṣa), thus said Lord Ātreyā and other great sages.

In the previous chapters *Doṣadi Vijñānīya* and *Doṣabhediya* different aspects pertaining to the *doṣas* have been discussed. Like normal and abnormal features, various types of *doṣas* and the diseases caused by their vitiation etc. The present chapter deals with the general line of treatment for *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* disorders. Special treatment for individual diseases has been discussed in Cikitsā sthāna.

General line of treatment for *vāta* disorders:

वातस्योपक्रमः स्नेहः स्वेदः संशोधनं मृदु । स्वाद्वाप्त्वलवणोष्णानि भोज्यान्यभ्यङ्गमर्दनम् ॥1॥
वेष्टनं त्रासनं सेको मद्यं पैष्ठिकगौडिकम् । स्निग्धोष्णा बस्तयो बस्तिनियमः सुखशीलता ॥2॥
दीपनैः पाचनैः सिद्धाः स्नेहाश्वानेकयोनयः । विशेषान्मेद्यपिशितरसतैलानुवासनम् ॥3॥

- * Oleation and sudation therapy.
- * Mild emesis and purgation therapies.
- * Ingestion of foods having *madhura*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasa* (sweet, sour and salt in taste) and *usṇa vīrya*.
- * Hot poultices after the external application of oil.
- * Tight bandage, massaging, tub bath, *kāyaseka*, brisk massage and squeezing the body parts gently.
- * Sudden threatening, exciting etc.
- * Alcohol prepared from *paiṣṭika* (corn flour) and *guda* (jaggery).
- * Medicated enemata with unctuous and hot substances.
- * Oleating substances of different sources should be processed with *agni dīpana* and *āma pācana dravyas*.
- * Specially *anuvāsanā vastī* with the use of gingili oil and mutton soup.

General line of treatment for *pitta* disorders:

पित्तस्य सर्पिषः पानं स्वादुशीतैर्विरचनम् । स्वादुतिक्तकषायाणि भोजनान्यौषधानि च ॥4॥
सुगन्धिशीतहृद्यानां गन्धानामुपसेवनम् । कण्ठे गुणानां हाराणां मणीनामुरसा धृतिः ॥5॥
कर्पूरचन्दनोशीरैरनुलेपः क्षणे क्षणे । प्रदोषश्वन्द्रमाः सौधं हारि गीतं हिमोऽनिलः ॥6॥

अयन्त्रणसुखं पित्रं पुत्रः सन्दिग्धमुग्धवाक् । छन्दानुवर्तिनो दारा: प्रिया: शीलविभूषिताः ॥१७॥
 शीताम्बुधारागर्भाणि गृहाणयुद्यानदीर्घिकाः । सुतीर्थविपुलस्वच्छसलिलाशयसैकते ॥१८॥
 साम्भोजजलतीरान्ते कायमाने द्रुमाकुले । सौम्या भावाः पथः सर्विरिकश्च विशेषतः ॥१९॥

- * Oleation therapy with medicated ghee.
- * Purgation therapy with the drugs processed with *madhura rasa* and *sīta vīrya*.
- * Drugs and diet containing sweet, bitter and astringent tastes.
- * Use the substances, which are mild, cold, perfumed and pleasant.
- * Wear garlands of pearls, gems and other precious stones or flowers such as lotus, jasmine, plantain etc. to the neck and the chest.
- * Besmear the paste of *karpūra*, *candana* and *uśīra* to the body repeatedly.
- * Spend the evening hours on the terraces by enjoying the moon light.
- * Hear the light music, which is palatable to the mind.
- * Spend the time with the company of like-minded friends and children.
- * Had the company of well dressed, good looking, smart woman.
- * Reside in the air-conditioned rooms.
- * Specially use ghee, milk and purgation therapy and cold substances to mitigate *pitta*.

General line of treatment for kapha disorders:

श्लेषणो विधिना युक्तं तीक्ष्णं वमनरेचनम् । अत्रं रूक्षाल्पतीक्ष्णोष्णं कटुतिक्तकषायकम् ॥१०॥
 दीर्घकालस्थितं मद्यं रतिप्रीतिः प्रजागरः । अनेकरूपो व्यायामश्चिन्ता रूक्षं विमर्दनम् ॥११॥
 विशेषाद्वप्नं यूषः क्षीरं मेदोघ्नमौषधम् । धूमोपवासगण्डूषा निःसुखत्वं सुखाय च ॥१२॥

- * Elimination therapies like emesis and purgation by using drastic emetic and purgative drugs to eliminate *kapha*.
- * Drug and diet should be having dryness and pungent, bitter and astringent in taste. Quantity of food also should be less.
- * Use of wines, which are strong, old and pleasant.
- * Running, jumping, swimming, awakening, wrestling, sexual intercourse, exercises, powder massage, residing in the dry areas, covered with dry cloths.
- * Specially honey, thin gruels, emesis, fasting, inhalation of smoke, mouth gargles, avoidance of comforts are beneficial.

Treatment for samsargaja & sannipatata doṣa:

उपक्रमः पृथग्दोषान् योऽयमुद्दिश्य कीर्तितः । संसर्गसन्निपातेषु तं यथास्वं विकल्पयेत् ॥१३॥

- * Till now general line of treatment for the 3 *doṣas* have been mentioned separately.
- * Combining the remedial measures suggested for each *doṣa* can do the treatment for *samsargaja* and *sannipatata* *doṣas*.

Directions for treatment of different doṣas:

ग्रैष्मः प्रायो मरुतिपते वासन्तः कफमारुते । मरुतो योगवाहित्वात्, कफपिते तु शारदः ॥१४॥

- * If *vāta* and *pitta* combined together follow the regimen of *grīṣma rtu*.

- * *Kapha* and *vāta* combined together follow the regimen of *vasanta* *ṛtu*, as the *vāta* is possessing *yogavāhī guṇa*.
- * In case of *kapha* and *pitta* combination the regimen is that of *śarad* *ṛtu*.

Procedure of treating *dōṣas* according to their stages:

चय एव जयेद्वोषं कुपितं त्वविरोधयन् । सर्वकोपे बलीयांसं शेषदोषाविरोधतः ॥1 5॥

- * It is easy to treat that when *dōṣas* are in the state of *caya*.
- * If the *dōṣas* reached the *prakopa* stage, the treatment for the increased *dōṣa* should not interfere with the other *dōṣas*.
- * All the *dōṣas* are vitiated simultaneously treat the particular *dōṣa* at first whichever is more powerful without interfering with the others.
- * If all are of equal strength treatment should be given for *vāta* at first, then *pitta* and at last *kapha* because that is the order of the strength.

Ideal treatment:

प्रयोगः शमयेद्व्याधिमेकं योऽन्यमुदीरयेत् । नाऽसौ विशुद्धः शुद्धस्तु शमयेद्यो न कोपयेत् ॥1 6॥

- * An ideal treatment is that which doesn't produce any complications after treating the vitiated *dōṣas*.
- * It is not ideal, though it cures one disease and causes the increase of another *dōṣa* at the same time.

Factors responsible for roaming *dōṣas* from *koṣṭha* to *sākhā* and *sākhā* to *koṣṭha*:

व्यायामादूध्मणस्तैक्ष्ययादहिताचरणादपि । कोष्ठाच्छाखास्थिमर्माणि द्रुतत्वान्मारुतस्य च ॥1 7॥
दोषा यान्ति तथा तेभ्यः स्रोतोमुखविशेषानात् । वृद्ध्याऽभिष्वन्दनात्पाकात्कोष्ठं वायोश्च निग्रहात् ॥1 8॥
तत्रस्थाश्च विलम्बेन् भूयो हेतुप्रतीक्षिणः । ते कालादिबलं लब्ध्वा कुप्यन्त्यन्याश्रयेष्वपि ॥1 9॥

Due to exercises (excessive), acuteness of power of digestion, unwholesome regimen and the pressure of *vāta*, *dōṣas* gets aggravated and spread from the central part of the body to the periphery.

Due to the further aggravation, increase in fluidity, suppuration, removal of obstruction of the channels and reduced pressure of *vāta*, the vitiated *dōṣas* leave the periphery and reach the central part of the body.

There the *dōṣas* are waiting for the opportunity; if conditions (like place, time and strength) are favorable again the *dōṣas* gets vitiated and cause many diseases.

Line of treatment for *sthānika* (local) and *sthānagata* (non local) *dōṣas*:

Guruṇa तत्रान्यस्थानसंस्थेषु तदीयामबलेषु तु । कुर्याच्चकित्साम् स्वामेव बलेनान्याभिभाविषु ॥2 0॥

- * *Vāta* is vitiated sometimes in the local area and other times in the area of *kapha*.
- * If the *dōṣas* gets vitiated in their local areas, the line of treatment is general i.e. by giving antidotes to that *dōṣa*.

- * If *vāta* gets aggravated in the place of *kapha* and the treatment will be given keeping in view of the strength of the *doṣas*.
- * If the strength of the non-local *doṣa* is more, treat it immediately. If the local *doṣa* gets much vitiated, treat the local *doṣa* at first. If both of them are having same strength then also treat the local *doṣa* at first and treat the other, later.

Line of treatment for *tiryaggata doṣa*:

आगन्तुं शमयेद्वेषं स्थानिनं प्रतिकृत्य वा । प्रायस्तिर्यग्गता दोषाः क्लेशयन्त्यातुरांश्चिरम् ॥2 1॥
कुर्यान्ते तेषु त्वया देहग्निबलवित् क्रियाम् । शमयेतान् प्रयोगेण सुखं वा कोष्ठमानयेत् ॥2 2॥
ज्ञात्वा कोष्ठप्रपत्रांश्च यथासन्नं विनिहीरेत् ।

- * Usually, *tiryaggata doṣas* cause much difficulty to the patient for a long time.
- * Hence they should be examined carefully and treat them by observing the body strength and power of digestion.
- * They should be treated by the administration of appropriate palliative drugs or bring back them to *koṣṭha* by easy methods and should be eliminated through the nearest route by suitable *śodhana* procedures.

Features of *sāma* and *nirāma doṣas*:

स्रोतोरोधबलभ्रंशगौरवानिलमृदता: ॥2 3॥

आलस्यापक्तिनिष्ठीवमलसङ्घारुचिक्लमा: । लिङ्गं मलानां सामानां, निरामाणां विपर्ययः ॥2 4॥

Srotorodha (obstruction of channels), *balabhramīśa* (loss of strength), *gaurava* (heaviness in the body), *ānila mūḍhatā* (obstruction of the movement of *vāta*), *ālasya* (laziness), *apakti* (indigestion), *nīṣṭhīva* (excessive expectoration), *malasaṅga* (accumulation of wastes inside the body), *aruci* (anorexia), *klama* (tiredness) etc. are the signs and symptoms of *āma doṣa* and the opposite of the above can be treated as the features of *nirāma doṣa*.

Doṣa	Sāma lakṣaṇa	Nirāma lakṣaṇa
1. Vāta	Causes pain Abdominal distention Absence of <i>vātika</i> movement	Exactly opposite qualities of <i>sāma vāta</i> .
2. Pitta	Foul smell Blackish colour Pungent taste Thick & heavy	Opposite qualities of <i>sāma pitta</i> Copper colour <i>Mayūrapiccha</i> or yellow colour
3. Kapha	Turbid Thread like Solidified Sticky Slimy	Clear fluid Non slimy Mixed with water White in colour Sweet in taste

Āma:

ऊष्मणोऽल्पबलत्वेन धातुमाद्यमपाचितम् । दुष्टमामाशयगतं रसमां प्रचक्षते ॥२५॥

The first tissue of the body *rasa dhatu*, which was not formed properly due to the weakness of the digestive fire and accumulating in the stomach in the abnormal state, is known as *āma*.

अन्ये दोषेभ्य एवाति दुष्टेभ्योऽन्यमूर्च्छनात् । कोद्रवेभ्यो विषस्येव वदन्त्यामस्य सम्भवम् ॥२६॥

Some *ācāryas* opine that *āma* gets formed from intimate mixing of vitiated *doṣas* with one another just as the poison is formed from mixing of different kinds of *kodrava* (*Paspalum scrobiculatum*).

आमेन तेन सम्पृक्ता दोषा दृष्ट्याश्च दूषिताः । सामा इत्युपदिश्यन्ते ये च रोगास्तदुद्धवाः ॥२७॥

When the *doṣas* and *dūṣyas* mixed with the *āma*, they can be called as *sāma doṣa* (or) *sāma dūṣaya*, which causes for the production of diseases.

Sāma doṣa cikitsā:

सर्वदेहप्रविमुतान् सामान् दोषान् न निहरित् । लीनान् धातुष्वनुत्क्लिष्टान् फलादामाद्रसानिव ॥२८॥
आश्रयस्य हि नाशाय ते स्युर्दुर्निर्हरत्वतः ।

- * If the *doṣas* are mixed with *āma*, and are circulating all over the body and may be accumulated in the tissues and also in the state of not stirring up, they should not be eliminated forcefully in those conditions.
- * Such an attempt will be taking the juice from an unripe fruit, which cause harm to the body.

Procedure to eliminate *doṣas*:

पाचनैर्दीपनैः स्नेहैस्तान् स्वेदैश्च परिष्कृतान् ॥२९॥
शोधयेच्छोधनैः काले यथासन्नं यथाबलम् ।

Vitiated *doṣas* should be expelled from the body in the state of *nirāma* only, after administering the carminative and digestive drugs. Then oleation, sudation and followed by purificatory measures in accordance with the location and strength of the *doṣas*.

हन्त्याशु युक्तं वक्त्रेण द्रव्यमामाशयान्मलान् ॥३०॥
घ्राणेन चोर्ध्वं जग्रूत्यान् पक्वाधानाद्गुदेन च ।

- * Drugs administered through mouth will be useful for the elimination of *doṣas* from *āmāśaya* by means of emesis.
- * Those administered through the nostrils will be useful for the elimination of vitiated *doṣas* from the head and above the shoulder region.
- * Drugs administered through rectum will be useful for the elimination of vitiated *doṣas* from the large intestines by means of *vasti*.

उत्क्लिष्टानधं ऊर्ध्वं वा न चामान् वहतः स्वयम् ॥३१॥
धारयेदौषधैर्दोषान् विघृतास्ते हि रोगदाः ।

Voluntary expulsion of vitiated *sāma doṣas* from the body through either any one of the routes should not be arrested by the administration of opposite drugs, as it is harmful and causes many a number of diseases.

प्रवृत्तान् प्रागतो दोषानुपेक्षेत हिताशिनः ॥३ २ ॥
विबद्धान् पाचनैस्तैस्तैः पाचयेन्निहीरत वा ।

Such *doṣas* expelling out should be ignored initially. Afterwards administer carminative and digestive drugs and convert *sāma doṣas* into *nirāma doṣa* and then eliminate them by means of suitable purificatory measures.

Suitable season for elimination of *doṣas*:

आवणे कार्तिके चैत्रे मासि साधारणे क्रमात् ॥३ ३ ॥
ग्रीष्मवर्षाहिमचितान् वाव्यादीनाशु निहीरत् ।

Vāta, *pitta* and *kapha* will be undergone *caya* stage in *grīṣma*, *varṣā* and *śiśira* *ṛtus*. Hence they should be eliminated from the body during suitable months (*sādhāraṇa* *ṛtu*) such as *śrāvaṇa*, *kārtika* and *caitra* respectively.

Relationship between *doṣas* and seasons:

Doṣa	Caya	Prakopa	Praśama
<i>Vāta</i>	<i>Grīṣma</i>	<i>Varṣā</i>	<i>Śarad</i>
<i>Pitta</i>	<i>Varṣā</i>	<i>Śarad</i>	<i>Hemanta</i>
<i>Kapha</i>	<i>Śiśira</i>	<i>Vasantā</i>	<i>Grīṣma</i>

अत्युष्णावर्षशीता हि ग्रीष्मवर्षाहिमागमा: ॥३ ४ ॥
सन्धीं साधारणे तेषां दुष्टान् दोषान् विशोधयेत् ।

Grīṣma, *varṣā* and *śiśira* *ṛtus* are abundantly embodied with heat, rain and cold respectively. The period in between the above seasons can be called as *sādhāraṇa* *ṛtu* and are suitable for *śodhana* therapy.

स्वस्थवृत्तमभिप्रेत्य, व्याधौ व्याधिवशेन तु ॥३ ५ ॥

For the maintenance of positive health in the healthy individuals one should undergo purificatory measures in *sādhāraṇa* *ṛtu*. For treating a disease by means of *śodhana* therapy, basing on the severity it can be conducted as and when necessary.

कृत्वा शीतोष्णवृष्टीनां प्रतीकारं यथायथम् । प्रयोजयेत्क्रियां प्राप्तां क्रियाकालं न हापयेत् ॥३ ६ ॥

After having overcome the effects of seasons by adopting suitable protective measures necessary treatment should be administered without progressing the other stages of the disease (*saṅkriyākāla*).

Ouṣadha sevana kāla (Time of administration of drugs):

युद्ध्यादनन्नमन्नादौ मध्येऽन्ते कवलान्तरे । ग्रासे ग्रासे मुहुः सान्नं सामुदगं निशि चौषधम् ॥३ ७ ॥
कफोद्रेके गदेऽनन्नं बलिनो रोगरोगिणोः । अन्नादौ विगुणेऽपाने, समाने मध्य इव्यते ॥३ ८ ॥
व्यानेऽन्ते प्रातराशस्य, सायमाशस्य तूतरे । ग्रासग्रासान्तर्योः प्राणे प्रदुषे मातरिश्वनि ॥३ ९ ॥

मुहुर्मुहुर्विषच्छर्दिहिधात्रूदश्चासकासिषु । योज्यं सभोज्यं भैषज्यं भोज्यैश्चत्रैररोचके ॥४०॥
कम्पाक्षेपकहिधासु सामुद्रं लघुभोजिनाम् । ऊर्ध्वजनुविकारेषु स्वप्नकाले प्रशस्यते ॥४१॥

Medicines should be administered in different times—1. without food, 2. before food (at the commencement), 3. during meals, 4. after meals, 5. in between each bolus of food (*kavalāntare*), 6. within each bolus (*grāse-grāse*), 7. frequently (*muhuh*), 8. mixed with food, 9. before and after meals and 10 at night.

Time of administration of drugs plays an important role for getting successful results. Improper time of administration will not yield desired results.

Ouṣadha sevana kāla (Time of administration of drugs)	Indication
1. <i>Ananna</i> (without food)	* <i>Kapha vikāra</i> . * Strong persons. * Severe nature of the disease conditions.
2. <i>Anna ādi</i> (before meals)	Disorders of <i>apāna vāta</i> .
3. <i>Anna madhya</i> (during meals)	Disorders of <i>samāna vāta</i> .
4. <i>Anna-anta</i> (after meals)	Disorders of <i>vyāna vāta</i> . Disorders of <i>udāna vāta</i> .
(a) At the end of morning meal. (b) At the end of evening meal.	Disorders of <i>prāṇa vāta</i> . Disorders of <i>prāṇa vāta</i> .
5. <i>Grāsa</i> (mixed with a morsel)	Disorders of <i>prāṇa vāta</i> .
6. <i>Grāsāntara</i> (at the end of each morsel)	Disorders of <i>prāṇa vāta</i> .
7. <i>Muhur-muhuh</i> (frequent administration)	<i>Viṣa vikāra, chardī, hikkā, tṛṣṇā, śwāsa, kāsa, Arocaka</i> (*drug is mixed with different types of tasty food substances).
8. <i>Sabhojya</i> (mixed with food)	<i>Kampa, ākṣepaka, hikkā *</i> light food is advised in these conditions.
9. <i>Sāmudga</i> (at the beginning and at the end of meals)	<i>Ūrdhwa jatrūgata roga</i> .
10. <i>Niśi</i> (bed time)	

Notes:

The author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha has delineated the times of administration of drugs are eleven in number such as:

1. *Abhakta* (without food), 2. *prāgbhakta* (before meals), 3. *madhyabhakta* (during meals), 4. *adhobhakta* (after meals), 5. *sabhakta/samabhakta* (mixed with food during its preparation), 6. *anantara bhakta* (in between lunch & dinner), 7. *sāmudga* (at the beginning and at the end of meals), 8. *muhurmuhuh* (frequently), 9. *sagrāsa* (mixed with one morsel), 10. *grāsāntara* (in between such morsels) and 11. *niśā kāla* (bed time).

1. *Abhakta* (Without food):

तत्राऽभक्तं नाम केवलमेवौषधम् ।

* Administration of the drug without giving any food i.e. in the empty stomach is known as *abhakta*.

- * That means the drug should be given early in the morning after the completion of the digestion of food taken in the previous night, and the diet will be given only after the completion of the process of digestion of the given drug.

तन्निरन्त्रोपयोगादतिवीर्यम् । कफोद्रेके विमुक्तामाशयस्रोताः प्रातर्बलवानुपयुज्ञीत । इतरस्तु प्राग्भक्तादिकमन्त्रसंसर्गेण हि तत्रातिलानिकरं भवति ।

- * As the drug is administering without food, it is called *abhakta* and is having more potency.
- * It should be given to the strong persons early in the morning, after the completion of the period of *kapha* predominance i.e. at about 9 A.M.
- * Weak persons should not be administered medicine during the period of *abhakta*.

For those, *prāghbhakta* and the rest of the times should be selected, as they will not create any problems like fatigue etc. by the support of the food.

2. Prāghbhakta (Before meals):

प्राग्भक्तं नाम यदनन्तरभक्तम् ।

Administration of the drugs, just before the meal is known as *prāghbhakta*.

तदपानानिलविकृतावधःकायस्य च बलाधानार्थं तद्रुतेषु च व्याधिषु प्रशमनाय कृशीकरणं योज्यम् ।

- * It is indicated to treat the diseases caused by *apāna vāta*.
- * To give strength to the counter part of the body.
- * To treat the disorders of the lower extremities.
- * It is useful to make the body thin.

3. Madhyabhadra (During meals):

मध्यभक्तं मध्ये भक्तस्य तत् समानानिलविकृतौ । कोष्ठगतेषु च व्याधिषु पैत्तिकेषु च ।

- * Administration of the drugs in the middle of the meal or during the meals is known as *madhyabhadra*.
- * It is indicated to treat the diseases caused by the vitiation of *samāna vāta*.
- * Indicated to treat the disorders of gastro intestinal tract.
- * And also the diseases caused by the vitiation of *pitta*.

4. Adhobhadra (After meals):

अधोभक्तं भक्तादनन्तरम् । यतु व्यानविकृतौ प्रातराशान्तमुदानविकृतौ पुनः सायमाशान्तं पूर्वकायस्य च बलाधानार्थं तद्रुतेषु व्याधिषु च श्लैष्मिकेषु च प्रशमाय स्थूलीकरणार्थञ्च ।

- * Administration of the drug immediately after meals is known as *adhobhadra*.
- * It is indicated to treat the disorders of *vyāna vāta* after lunch.
- * And to treat the disorders of *udāna vāta*, drug should be administered after dinner.
- * Indicated to give strength to the upper part of the body.
- * To treat the disorders of the upper part of the body.
- * To treat the *kapha* disorders.
- * To make the body stout.

5. Sabhakta/Samabhakta (Mixed with food during its preparation):

सभक्तं यदनेन समं साधितं पश्चाद्वा समालोडितम् । तद् बालेषु सुकूमारेष्वौषध-द्रेषिष्वरुचौ सर्वाङ्गेषु च रोगेषु ।

- * Mixing the drug with the food during its preparation or mixed with the food after the preparation and administering is known as *sabhakta*.
- * It is indicated for children, delicate persons and the persons having aversion towards the medicine.
- * Also indicated in anorexia and the diseases affecting the whole body.

6. Anantara-bhakta (In between lunch and dinner):

अन्तराभक्तं यत् पूर्वाहे भक्ते जीर्णे मध्याहे भेषजमुपयुज्यते । तस्मिंश्च जीर्णे पुनरपराहे भोजनम् । एतेन रात्रिव्यारुद्धाता । तदीपाग्नेव्यानजेष्वामयेषु ।

- * Administration of the drug in the afternoon, after the digestion of the food taken in the morning hours and again the food is to be given in the night and after the completion of the digestion of the drug taken in the afternoon is known as *anantara-bhakta*.
- * It is indicated to the persons having strong digestive power.
- * And also suffering with the disorders of *vyāna vāta*.

7. Sāmudga (At the beginning and the end of meals):

सामुद्रं यदाऽदावन्ते च भुक्तस्य । ततु लघ्वन्नानयुक्तं पाचनावलेहचूर्णादि हिध्यायां कम्पाक्षेपयोरुर्ध्वाधःसंश्रये च दोषे ।

- * Divide the drug into two parts and administer one part before meals and the other after meals. It is called *sāmudga*.
- * Here the food given should be easily digestable and the quantity also less.
- * The drug should be in the form of powder or paste and having the digestive properly.
- * Indicated in hiccup, tremors, convulsions.
- * And also the *doṣas* localised in the upper and lower part of the body.

8. Muhurmuhuḥ (Frequently):

मुहुर्मुहुस्तु पुनः पुनर्भुक्ते यदभुक्ते वा । तच्छ्वासकासहिध्मातृट्ठिर्दिषु विषनिमित्तेषु च विकारेषु ।

- * Administration of the drug frequently before food or after food is known as *muhurmuhuḥ*.
- * Indicated in dyspnoea, cough, hiccup, thirst, vomitings and the complication of poisons.

9. Sagrāsa (Mixed with one morsel):

सग्रासं यद् ग्राससम्पृक्तम् ।

Administration of medicine by mixing with morsel of food is known as *sagrāsa*.

10. Grāsāntara (In between morsels):

ग्रासान्तरं यद् ग्रासयोग्रासयोर्मध्ये ।

Grāsāntara is taking the medicine in between the two morsels.

द्वयमध्येतत् प्राणानिलविकृतौ । तथा सग्रासं चूर्णलेहवटकादिकमग्निदीपनं वाजीकरणानि चोपयुज्ञीत । ग्रासान्तरं हद्रोगे वमनं धूमञ्च ।

- * Both *sagrāsa* and *grāsāntara* are indicated in the disorders of *prāṇa vāta*.
- * *Sagrāsa* drugs are in the form of powders and pastes.
- * Useful to increase the power of digestion.
- * Aphrodisiacs should be given with the morsel of food.
- * Drugs, which cure the diseases of the heart.
- * Which are useful for emesis.
- * Useful for the inhalation of smoke. Should be administered in between the two morsels.

11. Niśi (Bed time):

जत्रूर्ध्वमयेषु तु निशायाम् ।

- * Administration of drugs in the bedtime is known as *niśi*.
- * Indicated in the disorders of upper parts of the body above the shoulders i.e. E. N. T. and ophthalmic disorders.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने दोषोपक्रमणीयो नाम त्रयोदशोऽध्यायः ॥१३॥

Thus ends the thirteenth chapter entitled *Doṣopakramāṇiya Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Samhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the general line of treatment for *tridoṣas*, individually and also given the suggestion to manage the *samsargaja* and *sannipātaja doṣas*.

Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expressed that these *doṣas* gets vitiated not only due to the irregular diet, dietics etc. but also due to the variations of the seasons also. Hence the relationship between the *doṣas* and seasons has been mentioned. Next, definition of *āma*, features of *sāma* and *nirāma doṣas* and also the line of treatment for *āma doṣas* are explained. Vitiated *doṣas* and their movement in the body, line of treatment, suitable time for *śodhana* therapy and time of administration of medicine etc. have been discussed.

*

14 DVIVIDHOPAKRAMAÑIYA ADHYĀYA

[*Two Kinds of Therapies*]



अथातो द्विविधोपक्रमणीयमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ॥

After ‘*Doṣopakramaṇiya Adhyāya*’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Dvividhopakramaṇiya*’(Two Kinds of Therapies), thus said Lord Ātreyā and other great sages.

In the present chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa deals with the two types of treatment viz. nourishing therapy and reduction therapy, their advantages, complications and the treatment also have been discussed.

Two kinds of treatment:

उपक्रम्यस्य हि द्वित्वादद्विधौपक्रमो मतः । एकः सन्तर्पणस्तत्र द्वितीयश्लापतर्पणः ॥1॥
बृंहणो लङ्घनश्चेति तत्पर्यायावुदाहृतौ । बृंहणं यद्वृहत्त्वाय लङ्घनं लाघवाय यत् ॥2॥
देहस्य-

Two kinds of treatment have been mentioned namely *santarpana* (nourishing therapy) and *apatarpana* (reduction therapy); *bṛīhāna* and *laṅghana* are the synonmys for the above therapeutic procedures respectively.

Bṛīhāna: Whatever adds to the corpulence of the body is *bṛīhāna* or nourishing therapy.

Laṅghana: Whatever is capable to reduce the body is known as *laṅghana* or reducing therapy.

Dominancy of mahābhūta:

—भवतः प्रायो भौमापमितरच्च ते ।

Generally the body gets nourished by the use of substances having the dominancy of *pr̥thivī* and *ap mahābhūtas*, while it is reducing due to the substances having the *agni*, *vāyu* and *ākāśa* *mahābhūtas*.

स्नेहनं रूक्षणं कर्म स्वेदनं स्तम्भनं च यत् ॥3॥
भूतानां तदपि द्वैध्यादद्वितयं नातिवर्तते ।

Similarly *snehana*, *rūkṣaṇa*, *svēdana* and *stambhana* therapies are also showing their effects due to the dominancy of the basic elements only.

Even though 6 types of treatments have been mentioned, all the six types can be incorporated in the above-mentioned two kinds of treatments i.e. *bṛīhāna* and *laṅghana* only.

Notes:

Sadupakrama:

1. *Bṛīhaṇa* (nourishing therapy), 2. *laṅghana* (reduction therapy), 3. *snehana* (oleation therapy), 4. *svedana* (sudation therapy), 5. *stambhana* (astringent therapy) and 6. *rūkṣāṇa* (drying therapy).

Snehana and *stambhana* can be included in *bṛīhaṇa* therapy while *svedana* and *rūkṣāṇa* comes under *laṅghana* therapy, basing on the *bhūta* predominance and their similar actions.

The drugs having the qualities of heavy, cold, soft, unctuous, thick, bulky, slimy, sluggish, stable and smooth will be known as nourishing drugs and which causes nourishment to the body.

Types of *laṅghana*:

शोधनं शमनं चेति द्विधा तत्रापि लङ्घनम् ॥४॥

Laṅghana is of again 2 types— *śodhana* and *śamana*.

Śodhana (Elimination therapy):

यदीरयेद्वहिर्देषान् पञ्चधा शोधनं च तत् । निरुहो वमनं कायशिरोरेकाऽस्त्रविस्तुतिः ॥५॥

Śodhana which expels the vitiated *doṣas* from the body and maintain the equilibrium state in the body is known as *śodhana* therapy. It is of 5 types viz.

1. *Nirūha* (medicated enemata with decoctions), 2. *vamana* (emesis), 3. *kāya-vireka* (purgation), 4. *śiro-vireka* (nasal administration) and 5. *asravisruti* (blood letting).

Śamana (Palliative measures):

न शोधयति यदोषान् समान्तोदीरयत्यपि । समीकरोति विषमान् शमनं तच्च सप्तधा ॥६॥
पाचनं दीपनं क्षुत्तुइव्यायामातपमारुताः ।

Śamana is that, which neither expels nor excites the *doṣas* but mitigated the increased *doṣas* and maintains the normalcy of the *doṣas* within the body. It is of 7 types.

1. *Pācana* (increased digestion), 2. *dīpana* (carminative), 3. *kṣut* (suppressing appetite), 4. *trṣṇā* (suppressing thirst), 5. *vyāyāma* (exercises), 7. *ātapa* (exposing to the sun) and 6. *māruta* (exposing to open air).

In Caraka Samhitā, it is clearly stated that one who is having the knowledge pertaining to all the 6 types of therapies is only the real physician. That indicates the importance of *śadupakramas*.

Śadupakrama

<i>Bṛīhaṇa</i> (Nourishing therapy)	<i>Laṅghana</i> (Reduction therapy)	<i>Snehana</i> (Oleation)	<i>Svedana</i> (Sudation)	<i>Stambhana</i> (Astringent)	<i>Rūkṣāṇa</i> (Drying therapy)
<i>Śodhana</i>			<i>Śamana</i>		

बृंहणं शमनं त्वेव वायोः पित्तानिलस्य च ॥७॥

Bṛmhana also can be considered as *śamana* therapy as it mitigates *vāta* and also *vāta-pitta doṣa*.

Persons eligible for nourishing therapy:

बृंहयेदव्याधिभैषज्यमद्यस्तीशोककर्शितान् । भाराध्वोरः क्षतक्षीणरुक्षदुर्बलवातलान् ॥८॥

गर्भिणीसूतिकाबालवृद्धान् ग्रीष्मेऽपरानपि । मांसक्षीरसितासर्पिं मधुरस्निग्धबस्तिभिः ॥९॥

स्वप्नशस्यासुखाभ्यङ्गस्नाननिर्वृतिहर्षणैः ।

- * During convalescence period.
- * Become weak due to the treatments.
- * Alcohol consumption, excessive copulation, grief etc.
- * Carrying heavy loads, long walks, injury to chest.
- * Thin and debilitated.
- * Suffering with *vāta* disorders.
- * Pregnant, postnatal period, children, aged and everybody during summer.
- * Daily use of mutton, milk, sugar, ghee, enema with unctuous substances, comfortable sleeping and sitting, massage, bath, inducing happiness etc. gives nourishment to the body.

Persons eligible for reducing therapy:

मेहामदोषातिस्निग्धज्वरोरुस्तम्भकुठिनः ॥१०॥

विसर्पविद्रधिप्लीहशिरः कण्ठाक्षिरोगिणः । स्थूलांश्च लङ्घयेन्नित्यं शिशिरे त्वपरानपि ॥११॥

Reducing therapy is indicated for the persons suffering from diabetes, *āma doṣa*, excessive unctuousness in the body, fever, stiffness of the thighs, skin disorders, herpes, abscess, enlargement of the spleen, diseases of head, neck and eyes, obesity and also other persons during winter.

Different types of langhana therapies indicated in various conditions:

तत्र संशोधनैः स्थौल्यबलपित्तकफाधिकान् । आमदोषज्वरच्छदिरतीसारहृदामयैः ॥१२॥

विबन्धगौरवोद्वाराहृल्लासादिभिरातुरान् । मध्यस्थौल्यादिकान् प्रायः पूर्व पाचनदीपनैः ॥१३॥

एभिरेवामयैरातर्नन् हीनस्थौल्यबलादिकान् । क्षुत्तृष्णानिग्रहैर्दौर्धेष्ट्वार्तान् मध्यबलैर्दृढान् ॥१४॥

समीरणातपायासैः किमुताल्पबलैर्नरान् ।

Type of langhana therapy	Indications
1. <i>Śodhana</i> therapies like <i>vamana</i> , <i>virecana</i> .	Obesity, strong, <i>pitta</i> & <i>kapha</i> dominancy, <i>ama doṣa</i> , fever, vomiting, diarrhoea, heart complaint, constipation, heaviness in the body, excessive eructation, nausea etc.
2. <i>Dipana</i> , <i>pācana</i> followed by suitable <i>śodhana</i> therapies.	Moderate obesity, moderately strong, moderate vitiation of <i>pitta</i> & <i>kapha</i> and the above conditions like <i>āma doṣa</i> etc.
3. <i>Kṣudhā</i> & <i>trṣṇā nigrahanā</i> (control of hunger and thirst)	Slightly obese, weak, slight vitiation of <i>pitta</i> and <i>kapha</i> and also in the above conditions.
4. <i>Ātapa</i> (exposing to the sun), <i>vyāyāma</i> (exercises)	Moderately vitiated <i>doṣas</i> , along with above condition.
5. <i>Māruta-sevana</i> (exposings to open air)	Those having poor strength and suffering from <i>āma doṣa</i> and other conditions.

- * Purificatory therapies like emesis, purgation are indicated for the persons, who are very obese, strong and increased *kapha* and *pitta*.
- * Digestive drugs and carminatives are indicated in fever, vomiting, diarrhoea, constipation, heaviness and slightly obese.
- * Suppressing the thirst and hunger is indicated in moderately strong and stout.
- * Exposing to open air and sun are useful for persons of a poor strength.

न बृंहयेल्लङ्घनीयान् बृंहांस्तु मृदु लङ्घयेत् ॥1 5॥
युक्त्या वा देशकालादिवलतस्तानुपाचरेत् ।

- * Never conduct nourishing therapy to the obese persons but at times mild reducing therapy can be conducted to the lean persons.
- * Both the therapies can be conducted to the lean persons depending upon the nature of habitat, season, strength etc.

Advantages of nourishing therapy:

बृंहिते स्याद्वलं पुष्टिस्तसाध्यामयसङ्घयः ॥1 6॥

- * Increases the strength.
- * Development of the body takes place.
- * Those diseases will be cured which requires such therapy i.e. disappearance of the defects of emaciation.

Advantages of reducing therapy:

विमलेन्द्रियता सर्गो मलानां लाघवं रुचिः । क्षुत्रद्वाहोदयः शुद्धहृदयोद्धारकण्ठता ॥1 7॥
व्याधिमार्दवमुत्साहस्तन्त्रानाशश्च लङ्घिते ।

- * Sense organs becomes clear.
- * Proper excretion of flatus, urine and faeces.
- * Lightness of the body.
- * Increases the perception of the taste.
- * Excessive hunger and thirst and contentment.
- * Feeling of purity in heart, eructation and throat.
- * Decreasing the signs and symptoms of the disease.
- * Exertion and disappearance of lassitude.

अनपेक्षितमात्रादिसेविते कुरुतस्तु ते ॥1 8॥

अतिस्थौल्यातिकाश्यादीन्, वक्ष्यन्ते ते च सौषधाः । रूपं तैरेव च ज्ञेयमतिबृंहितलङ्घिते ॥1 9॥

Both these therapies should be conducted systematically (considering various aspects like *mātrā* etc.) otherwise they will produce too much of stoutness or emaciation respectively. They are being mentioned with their treatment.

Signs and symptoms of obesity and emaciation are enumerated here, as under, which facilitates to find out the features of excessive nourishing and reducing therapies.

Notes:

Obesity and its causes:

Due to the excessive ingestion of heavy foods leads to indigestion and which in turn causes for the production of *āma*.

Āma gets mixed with *kapha* at the tissue level and make them weak and causes increase of fatty tissue.

Simultaneously the channels will be blocked, and the *vāta* moving into gastro-intestinal tract, causes increase of digestive power, which results in excessive hunger, which in turn leads excessive intake of food and results in obesity.

Signs and symptoms of obesity:

- * Excessive thirst, hunger and sweating.
- * Dyspnoea on exertion.
- * Excessive sleep.
- * Unable to do minimum physical exercises.
- * Lassitude-decreased life-span, strength and vigor.
- * Foul smell of the body.
- * Hoarseness of voice.
- * Increase of fatty tissue.
- * Accumulation of fat in the regions of abdomen, buttocks and thighs etc.

Atibṛihṇa (Features of excessive nourishing therapy):

अतिस्थौल्यापचीमेहज्वरोदरभगन्दरान् । काससन्ध्यासकृच्छ्रामकुष्ठादीनतिदारुणान् ॥२०॥

Atisthoulya (profound obesity), *apacī* (scrofula), *meha* (diabetes), *jwara* (fever), *udara* (diseases of the abdomen), *bhagandara* (fistula), *kāsa* (cough), *sanyāsa* (loss of consciousness), *mūtrakṛcchra* (dysurea), *āma* (disorders of poor digestive activities) and *kuṣṭha* (skin disorders).

Treatment for obesity:

तत्र मेदोऽनिलश्लेष्मनाशनं सर्वमिष्यते । कुलत्थजूर्णश्यामाकयवमुद्रमधूदकम् ॥२१॥
मस्तुदण्डाहतारिष्टचिन्ताशोधनजागरम् । मधुना त्रिफलां लिहाद्वृचीमभयां घनम् ॥२२॥
रसाञ्चनस्य महतः पञ्चमूलस्य गुगुलोः । शिलाजतुप्रयोगश्च साग्निमन्थरसो हितः ॥२३॥
विडङ्गं नागरं क्षारः काललोहरजो मधु । यवामलकचूर्णं च योगोऽतिस्थौल्यदोषजित् ॥२४॥

- * Foods which mitigate *vāta*, *kapha* and *medas* such as hoarse gram, small variety of barley, barley, jower, black millets, green gram etc.
- * Drinks such as *ariṣṭas*, honey plus water, whey and buttermilk.
- * Drugs, which are sharp, hot, dry and scarifying.
- * Too much worry, excessive sexual inter course, excessive exercises, purificatory therapies, avoidance of sleep and powder massage etc.

- * Powders of *triphalā*, *guḍuci*, *harītakī* and *mustā* are to be taken with honey.
- * *Rasāñjana*, *bṛhat pañcamūla*, *guggulu* and *śilājīta* should be taken along with *agnimantha svarasa*.
- * Equal parts of *viḍāṅga*, *śuṇṭhī*, *yavakṣāra*, *lohabhasma*, *āmalakī* and barley if taken with honey cure the complications of obesity.

Vyoṣādi yoga:

व्योषकट्वीवराशिग्रुविडङ्गतिविषास्थिरा: । हिङ्गसौवर्चलाजाजीयवानीधान्यचित्रकाः ॥२ ५ ॥
निशे बृहत्यं हुपुषा पाठा मूलं च केम्बुकात् । एषां चूर्णं मधु घृतं तैलं च सदृशांशकम् ॥२ ६ ॥
सकुभिः षोडशगुणैर्युक्तं पीतं निहन्ति तत् । अतिस्थौल्यादिकान् सर्वान् रोगानन्यांश्च तद्विधान् ॥२ ७ ॥
हृद्रेगकामलाश्वित्रश्वासकासगलग्रहान् । बुद्धिमेधासमृतिकरं सन्नस्याग्नेश्च दीपनम् ॥२ ८ ॥

1. <i>Śuṇṭhī</i>	9. <i>Viḍāṅga</i>	17. <i>Citraka</i>
2. <i>Marica</i>	10. <i>Ativiṣā</i>	18. <i>Haridrā</i>
3. <i>Pippalī</i>	11. <i>Sthirā</i>	19. <i>Dāruharidrā</i>
4. <i>Kaṭukī</i>	12. <i>Hiriṇgu</i>	20. <i>Bṛhatī</i>
5. <i>Harītakī</i>	13. <i>Souvarcala lavaṇa</i>	21. <i>Kaṇṭakārī</i>
6. <i>Āmalakī</i>	14. <i>Ajājī</i>	22. <i>Hapusā</i>
7. <i>Vibhitakī</i>	15. <i>Yavānī</i>	23. <i>Pāṭhā mūla</i>
8. <i>Śigru</i>	16. <i>Dhānyaka</i>	24. <i>Kembuka mūla</i>

Take the above 24 drugs in equal quantity and then add equal quantity of *madhu*, *ghṛta* and *taila* separately and then mix 16 parts of *saktu* (corn flour) and to be taken regularly.

Regular use of above formula will be useful in curing obesity and other complications, heart diseases, jaundice, leucoderma, dyspnoea, cough, hoarseness of voice. It will be useful to improve thinking, intelligence and memory power. It also increases the power of digestion.

Ati-langhana (Features of excessive reducing therapy):

अतिकाशर्यं भ्रमः कासस्तुष्णाधिक्यमरोचकः । स्नेहगिनन्द्रियादृक्श्रोत्रशुक्रौजः क्षुत्स्वरक्षयः ॥२ ९ ॥
बरितहन्मूर्धज्ञोरुत्रिकपार्ष्वरुजा ज्वरः । प्रलापेऽर्धानिलग्लानिच्छर्दिपर्वास्थिभेदनम् ॥३ ० ॥
वर्चोमूत्रग्रहाद्याश्च जायन्ते अतिविलङ्घनात् ।

Due to the excessive treatment of reducing therapy the following complications may be developed.

- * Profound emaciation, giddiness, cough, thirst, anorexia.
- * Decreased unctuousness, digestive power, sleep, vision and hearing, semen, *ojas*, hunger and voice.
- * Pain in the bladder, heart, head, calves, thighs, hip and flanks etc.
- * Fever, irrelevant and excessive talks, eructation, tiredness, vomiting, severe pain in the phalanges and bones, non-elimination of faeces and urine etc.

Kārśya is better than sthoulya and its reasons:

काश्यमेव वरं स्थौल्यात् न हि स्थूलस्य भेषजम् ॥३ १ ॥
बृहणं लङ्घनं वाऽलमतिमेदोऽग्निवातजित् ।

- * Emaciation is better than obesity because there is no effective treatment for the obese.
- * Neither nourishing nor reducing therapies are suitable to reduce excess fat, digestive activities and *vāta*.

Treatment for emaciation:

मधुरस्तिर्थसौहित्यर्यत्सौख्येन च नश्यति ॥३ २ ॥
क्रशिमा स्थविमाऽत्यन्तविपरीतनिषेवणैः । योजयेद्बृहणं तत्र सर्वं पानान्नभेषजम् ॥३ ३ ॥

- * Sweet and unctuous foods and other comforts cure emaciation easily.
- * The use of opposite substances like *tikta*, *kaṭu* and *kaṣāya rasa dravyas* cures obesity.
- * All the drinks, foods and drugs useful for nourishing therapy are advised for emaciated.
- * Aphrodisiacs like *aśvagandhā*, *vidārī* etc are good.

अचिन्तया हर्षणेन धूवं सन्तर्पणेन च । स्वप्नप्रसङ्गसङ्गाच्च कृशो वराह इव पुष्ट्यति ॥३ ४ ॥

- * By the absence of worry, feeling of happiness, nourishing food and drinks, excessive sleep causes the emaciated become stout like a pig.

न हि मांससमं किञ्चिदन्यदेहबृहत्त्वकृत् । मांसादमांसं मांसेन सम्भृतत्वाद्विषेशेतः ॥३ ५ ॥

- * No other substances will make the body stout except meat, that too the meat of carnivorous animals.

Notes:

- * Take equal parts of *pippalī*, sugar candy, gingili oil, honey and ghee and add corn flour mixed with (*mantha*) will be useful.
- * Similarly sugar candy + honey + *madirā* (wine) + corn flour also useful for the treatment of emaciation.
- * *Mantha* prepared from *kharjūra*, *drākṣā*, *vṛksāmla*, *amlikā*, *dādima bija*, *parūṣaka*, *āmalaka* cures thirst and other disorders instantaneously.

Suitable diet for sthūla & kṛṣṇa:

गुरु चातर्पणं स्थूले विपरीतं हितं कृशो । यवगोधूममुभयोस्तद्योग्याहितकल्पनम् ॥३ ६ ॥

Food substances, which are having *guru guṇa* along with non-nutritious ones, are ideal for the management of obesity.

Ex. honey and *jātiphala*. As they are having *rūkṣa* and *guru guṇa* they will be useful in reducing fat as well as takes time to digest.

Where as opposites are useful for emaciated.

Yava and *godhūma* are good for both types of conditions.

All the therapies can be included under laṅghana & bṛīhaṇa:

दोषगत्याऽतिरिच्यन्ते ग्राहिभेद्यादिभेदतः । उपक्रमा न ते द्वित्वाद्दिना अपि गदा इव ॥३७॥

Though the states of *doṣas* and treatments (such as *grāhī*, *bhedya*) are innumerable all of them can be incorporated into two only as *sāma* and *nirāma dosa* and *laṅghana* and *bṛīhaṇa cikitsā* respectively.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्मटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने द्विविधोपक्रमणीयो नाम चतुर्दशोऽध्यायः ॥१४॥

Thus ends the fourteenth chapter entitled *Dvividhopakramaniya Adhyaya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the two types of treatment i.e. *bṛīhaṇa* and *laṅghana*. *Laṅghana* has been again divided into 2 types such as *śodhana* and *śamana*. Next persons eligible for nourishing therapy and reducing therapy, advantages of both the therapies. Causes for obesity—signs and symptoms, complications and their treatment. Signs and symptoms of emaciation, complications and treatment also discussed.



15 SODHANĀDIGĀNA SAṄGRAHA ADHYĀYA

[Collection of Purificatory & Palliative Drugs]



अथातः शोधनादिगणसङ्घरमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Dwividhopakramanīya Adhyāya*’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Sodhanādigaṇa Saṅgraha*’ (Collection of Purificatory & Palliative Drugs), thus said Lord Ātreyā and other great sages.

Briefly saying drugs are of two types viz.

1. *Śodhana* 2. *Śamana*.

This particular chapter is intended for the description of various drugs, which act as eliminating the vitiated *doṣas* from the body as well as mitigating the excessive *doṣas* within the body.

Between these two types *śodhana dravyas* are superior to *śamana dravyas*.

Hence after describing the drugs useful for *śodhana* therapies like *vamana*, *virecana*, *āsthāpana vasti*, *anuvāsana vasti*, *Śirovirecana* etc and then *śamana* drugs which mitigates *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* have been described.

1. *Chardana gaṇa dravyas* (Group of emetic drugs):

मदनमधुकलम्बानिम्बबिम्बीविशाला-त्रपुसकुटजमूर्वदेवदालीकृमिघ्नम् ।
विदुलदहनचित्राः कोशवत्यौ करञ्जः कणलवणवचैलासर्षपाञ्चदनानि ॥1॥

The following drugs are useful to induce vomiting.

1. *Madana/madanaphala* (*Randia dumatorum*), 2. *madhuka/yaṣṭimadhu* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), 3. *lambā/ikṣwāku/tiktaλābu* (*Lagenaria siceraria*), 4. *nimba/ariṣṭa* (*Azadirachta indica*), 5. *bimbī* (*Coccinia indica*), 6. *viśāla/indravāruṇī* (*Citrullus colocynthis*), 7. *trapuṣa/karkaṭī* (*Cucumis sativus*), 8. *kūṭaja* (*Holarrhina antidysenterica*), 9. *mūrvā* (*Marsdenia tenacissima*), 10. *devadālī/jīmūtaka* (*Luffa echinata*), 11. *kṛmighna/viḍāṅga* (*Embelia ribes*), 12. *vidula/nicula* (*Barringtonia acutangula*), 13. *dahanā/citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*), 14. *citrā/citraṇḍikā* (*Trichosanthes anguina*), 15. two varieties of *kośavatī*—(a) *kośātakī* (*Luffa acutangula*), (b) *dhāmārgava* (*Luffa cylindrica*), 16. *karañja* (*Pongamia pinnata*), 17. *kaṇa/pippalī* (*Piper longum*), 18. *lavaṇa* (salts), 19. *vacā* (*Acorus calamus*), 20. *elā* (*Elettaria cardamomum*), 21. *sarṣapa* (*Brassica campestris* var. *asarson* Prain).



Madana



Madhuka



Nimba



Kuṭaja



Dahana



Karañja



Kana (Pippali)



Vacā



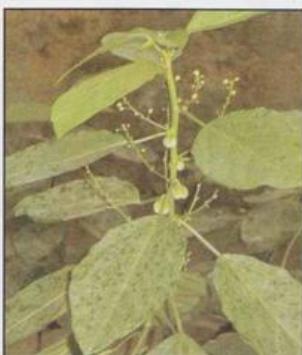
Sarṣapa

2. Virecana gaṇa dravyas (Group of purgative drugs):

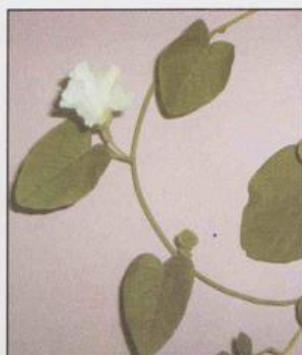
निकुम्भकुम्भत्रिफलागवाक्षीस्नुकशङ्खनीनीलिनितिल्वकानि ।
शम्याककम्पिल्लकहेमदुर्गदा दुर्गदं च मूत्रं च विरेचनानि ॥२॥

The following drugs are useful for purgation therapy.

1. *Nikumbha/dantī* (*Balispermum montanum*), 2. *kumbha/trivṛt* (*Operculina turpethum*),
3. *triphalā*—(a) *harītakī* (*Terminalia chebula*), (b) *āmalakī* (*Emblica officinalis*), (c) *vibhītakī* (*Terminalia bellerica*), 4. *gavākṣīl/indravāruṇī* (*Citrullus colocynthis*), 5. *snuk/snuhī* (*Euphorbia nerifolia*), 6. *śaṅkhīnī* (*Clitoria ternatia*), 7. *nīlinī* (*Indigofera angustifolia*), 8. *tilvaka* (*Symplocos racemosa*), 9. *śamyāka/āragwadha* (*Cassia fistula*), 10. *kampillaka* (*Mallotus philippinensis*), 11. *hemadugdhā/swarṇakṣīrī* (*Argemone mexicana*), 14. *dugdha* (milk), 15. *mūtra* (various types of urine).



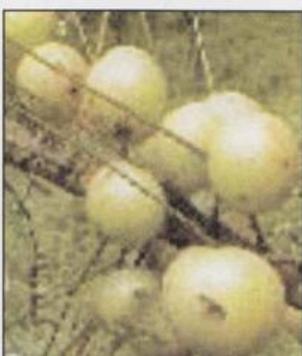
Nikumbha (Danti)



Kumbha (Trivṛt)



Haritaki



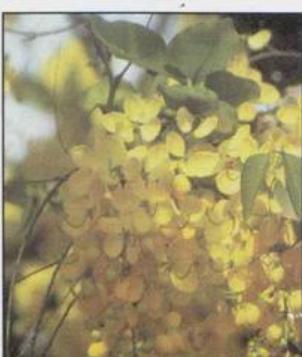
Āmalaki



Vibhitaki



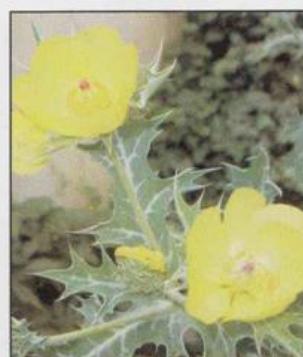
Snuk (Snuhi)



Śamyāka (Āragwadha)



Kampillaka



Hemadugdhā

3. Nirūhaṇa gaṇa (Group of nirūha vasti dravyas):

मदनकृष्टजकृष्टदेवदालीमधुकवचादशमूलदारुरास्ना: ।
यवभिशिकृतवेधनं कुलत्या मधु लवणं त्रिवृता निरूहणानि ॥३॥

The following drugs are useful for *niruha vasti*.

1. *Madana/madanaphala* (Randia dumatorum), 2. *kutaja* (Holarrhina antidysenterica), 3. *kuṣṭha* (Saussurea lappa), 4. *devadālī/jimūtaka* (Luffa echinata) 5. *madhuka/yaṣṭimadhu* (Glycyrrhiza glabra), 6. *vacā* (Acorus calamus), 7. *daśamūla* (bilwa & other ten roots), 8. *dāru/devadāru* (Cedrus deodara), 9. *rāsnā* (Pluchea lanceolata), 10. *yava* (Hordeum vulgare), 11. *miśil/śatapuspā* (Peucedanum graveolens), 12. *kṛtavedhana/kośātakī* (Luffa acutangula), 13. *kulattha* (Dolichos biflorus), 14. *madhu* (honey), 15. *lavaṇa* (different types of salts), 16. *trvṛt* (Operculina turpethum).



Madana



Kutaja



Kuṣṭha



Madhuka



Vacā



Dāru



Yava



Kośātakī



Trivṛt

4. Śirovirecana gāṇa (Group of nasya dravyas):

वेल्लापामार्गव्योषदार्वीसुराला बीजं शैरीषं बाहृतं शैग्रवं च ।
सारो माधूकः सैन्धवं ताक्षर्घशैलं त्रुट्यौ पृथ्वीका शोधयन्त्युत्तमाङ्गम्॥ 4 ॥

The following drugs are useful for *nasya karma* or nasal administration.

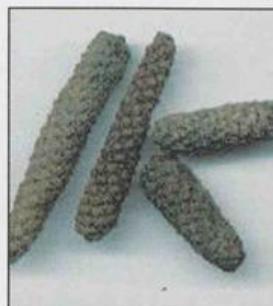
1. *Vella/vidāṅga* (Embelia ribes), 2. *apāmārga* (Achyranthus aspera), 3. *vyoṣa/trikātu*—(a) *śunṭhī* (*Zingiber officinalis*), (b) *marīca* (*Piper nigrum*), (c) *pippalī* (*Piper longum*), 4. *darvīl/dāruharidrā* (*Berberis aristata*), 5. *surālā/śrīveṣṭaka* (*Pinus roxburghii*), 6. *śiriṣa bija* (*Albizia lebbeck*), 7. *bārhata/bṛhatī* (*Solanum indicum*), 8. *śaigrava/śigru* (*Moringa pterygosperma*), 9. *madhūka sāra* (*Madhuca indica*), 10. *saindhava* (rock salt), 11. *tārksyaśaila/rasāñjana* (extract obtained from *dāruharidrā*), 12. *trutyau*—(a) *elā/cardamom* (*Elettaria cardamomum*), (b) *sthūlailā/greater cardamom* (*Amomum subulatum*), 13. *pr̥thvikā/hīngupatrikā* (*Gardenia gummifera* or *Ferula narthex*).



Śunṭhī



Marica



Pippali



Apāmārga



Elā



Vella (Vidāṅga)



Śigru

5. Vātahara dravya gaṇa (Group of drugs useful to mitigate vāta):

भद्रदारु नतं कुष्ठं दशमूलं बलाद्वयम् । वायु वीरतरादिश्च विदार्यादिश्च नाशयेत् ॥५॥

The following drugs are useful to alleviate *vāta*.

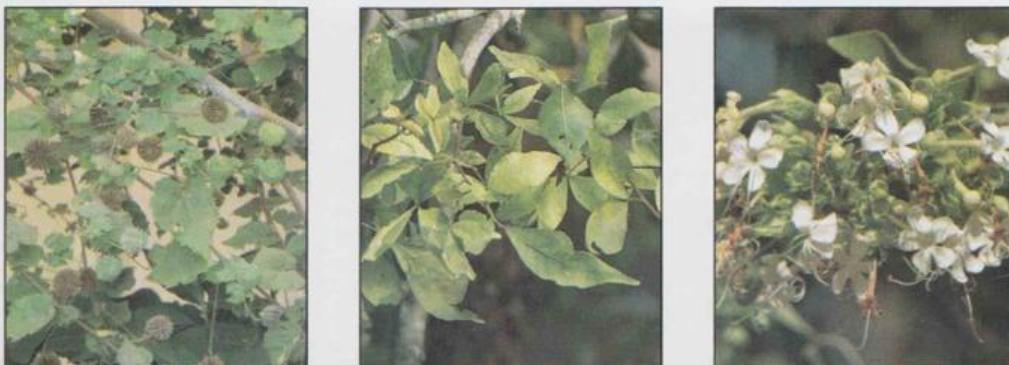


Bhadradāru

Nata (Granthitagara)

Kuṣṭha

Balā



Atibalā

Bilwa

Agnimantha



Kāśmarya

Pāṭala

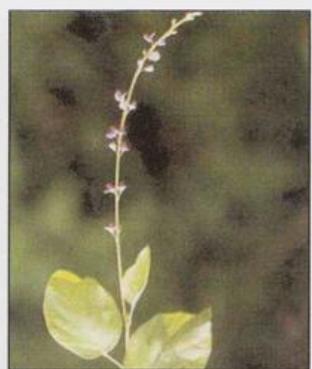
Tintuka



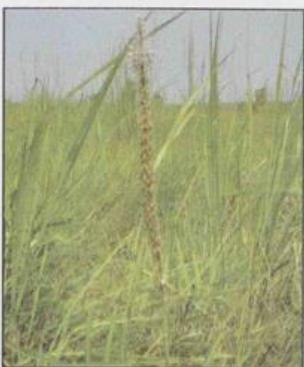
Brhati



Kanṭakāri



Śaliparṇī



Prśniparṇī



Gokṣura



Vidāri

6. Pittahara dravya gaṇa (Group of drugs useful to mitigate pitta):

दूर्वाऽनन्ता निष्ववासाऽत्मगुप्ता गुन्द्राऽभीरुः शीतपाकी प्रियडग्गः ।
न्यग्रोधादि: पदाकादि: स्थिरे द्वे पद्मं वन्यं सारिवादिश्च पित्तम् ॥६॥

The following drugs are useful to alleviate pitta.

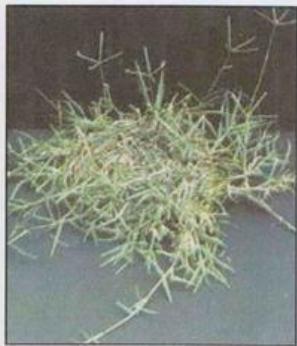
1. *Dūrvā* (*Cynodon dactylon*), 2. *anantā/sāribā* (*Hemidesmus indicus*), 3. *nimba* (*Azadirachta indica*), 4. *vāsā* (*Adathoda vasaca*), 5. *ātmaguptā* (*Mucuna pruriens*), 6. *gundrā/eraka* (*Typha elephantina*), 7. *abhiru/śatāvarī* (*Asparagus racemosus*), 8. *śitapākī/guñjā* (*Abrus precatorius*), 9. *priyaṅgu* (*Callicarpa macrophyllum*), 10. *nyagrodhādi gaṇa* drugs, 11. *padmakādi gaṇa* drugs, 12. *sthire dwe* (2 types of *sthira*)—(a) *śaliparṇī* (*Desmodium gangeticum*), (b) *prśniparṇī* (*Uraria picta*), 13. *padma* (*Nelumbo nucifera*), 14. *vanya* (*kutannata/śaivāla/plava*), 15. *sārivādi gaṇa* drugs.

7. Kaphahara [balāsajit] dravya gaṇa (Group of drugs useful to mitigate kapha):

आरग्वधादिरक्कादिर्मुष्ककाद्योऽसनादिकः । सुरसादिः समुस्तादिर्वत्सकादिर्बलासजित् ॥७॥

Drugs of the following *gaṇas* are useful to alleviate kapha.

- *Āragwadhādi gaṇa*
- *Arkādi gaṇa*
- *Muṣkakādi gaṇa*
- *Asanādi gaṇa*
- *Surasādi gaṇa*
- *Mustādi gaṇa*
- *Vatsakādi gaṇa*



Dūrvā



Anantā (Sāribā)



Nimba



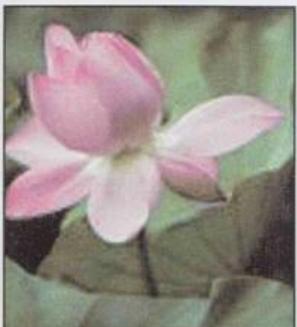
Vāsā



Ātmaguptā



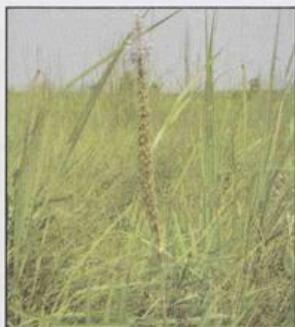
Śatāvari



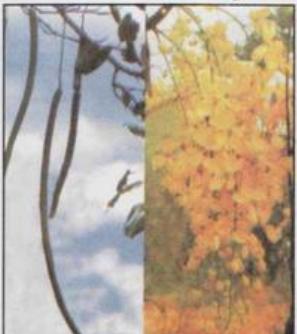
Padma



Śāliparṇī



Prśniparṇī



Āragwadha



Surasā



Mustā



Vatsaka



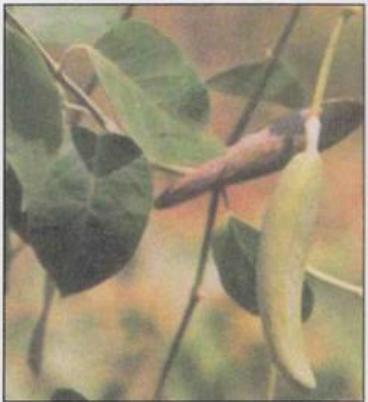
Arka

8. Jivanīya gāṇa (Invigorators):

जीवन्ती काकोल्यौ मेदे द्वे मुद्रमाषपण्यो च ।
ऋषभकजीवकमधुकं चेति गणो जीवनीयाख्यः ॥८॥

The following ten drugs are collectively known as *jīvanīya gāṇa dravyas* (invigorators).

1. *Jīvantī* (*Leptadenia reticulata*), 2. *kākolyau*—(a) *kākolī* (*Roscoea procera*), (b) *kṣīrakākolī* (*Roscoea procera* variety), 3. *medā* (*Polygonatum cirrhifolium*), 4. *mahā-medā* (*Polygonatum verticillatum*), 5. *mudgaparṇī* (*Phaseolus trilobus*), 6. *māṣaparṇī* (*Teramnus labialis*), 7. *r̥ṣabhaka* (*Microstylis muscifera*), 8. *jīvaka* (*Microstylis wallichii*), 9. *madhuka* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*).



Jivanti

9. Vidāryādi gāṇa:

विदारिपञ्चाङ्गगुलवृश्चिकालीवृश्चीवदेवाह्वयशूर्पपर्यः ।
कण्डूकरी जीवनहस्वसंज्ञे द्वे पञ्चके गोपसुता त्रिपादी ॥९॥
विदार्यादिरयं हृद्यो बृंहणो वातपित्तहा ।
शोषगुलमाङ्गमर्देधर्घ्वश्वासकासहरो गणः ॥१०॥

1. *Vidārī* (*Pueraria tuberosa*), 2. *pañcāṅgula/eraṇḍa* (*Ricinus communis*), 3. *vṛścikālī* (*Pergularia extensa*), 4. *vṛścīva/punarnavā* (*Boerhavia diffusa*), 5. *devāhvaya/devadāru* (*Cedrus deodara*), 6. *mudgaparṇī* (*Phaseolus trilobus*), 7. *māṣaparṇī* (*Teramnus labialis*), 8. *laghu pañcamūla* drugs, 9. *jīvanīya pañcamūla* drugs, 10. *kaṇḍū-kari/ātmaguptā* (*Mucuna pruriens*), 11. *gopasutā/sāribā* (*Hemidesmus indicus*), 12. *tripādī/harīsapādī* (*Adiantum lunulatum*).



Vidāri

Uses:

Good for heart, nourishing the body, mitigates *vāta* and *pitta*, indicated in emaciation, abdominal tumors, body pains, dyspnoea and cough.

10. Sāribādi gaṇa:

सारिवोशीरकाश्मर्यमधूकशिशिरद्वयम् ।
यष्टी परूषकं हन्ति दाहपित्तास्त्रवृद्धज्वरान् ॥1 1॥

1. *Sāribā* (*Hemidesmus indicus*), 2. *uśīra* (*Vetivera zizanoides*), 3. *kāśmarya* (*Gmelina arborea*), 4. *madhūka* (*Madhuca indica*), 5. *sīśira dvaya*—(a) *śweta candana* (*Santalum album*), (b) *rakta candana* (*Pterocarpus santalinus*), 6. *yaṣṭimadhu* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), 7. *parūṣaka* (*Grewia asiatica*).

Uses:

Indicated in burning sensation, bleeding disorders, thirst and in fever.



Sāribā

11. Padmakādi gaṇa:

पद्मकपुण्ड्रौ वृद्धितुगद्धर्थः शृङ्गथमृता दश जीवनसंज्ञाः ।
स्तन्यकरा घन्तीरणपित्तं प्रीणनजीवनबृहणवृष्णाः ॥1 2॥

1. *Padmaka* (*Prunus padam*), 2. *pundrā* (*prapouṇḍarīka*), 3. *vṛddhi* (*mahāśrāvaṇī*), 4. *rddhi/śrāvaṇī* (*Sphaeranthus indicus*), 5. *tuga/tavakṣīrī* (*Bambusa arundinaceae*), 6. *śṛṅgī/karkataka* *śṛṅgī* (*Pistacia integerrima*), 7. *amṛtā/gudūcī* (*Tinospora cordifolia*), 8. *jīvanīya gaṇa* drugs (10).

Uses:

Increases breast milk, mitigates *vāta* and *pitta*. Satiating, nourishing, increases the life span and semen.



Padmaka

12. Parūṣakādi gaṇa:

परूषकं वरा द्राक्षा कट्फलं कतकात् फलम् ।
राजाहूं दाढिमं शाकं तृण्मूत्रामयवातजित् ॥1 3॥

1. *Parūṣaka* (*Grewia asiatica*), 2. *varā/triphalā* (three fruits), 3. *drākṣā* (*Vitis vinifera*), 4. *katphala* (*Myrica nagi*), 5. *kataka* (*Strychnos potatorum*), 6. *rājāhvā/rājādana* (*Mimusops hexandra*), 7. *dādima* (*Punica granatum*), 8. *śāka/teak seeds* (*Tectona grandis*).

Uses:

Relieves thirst, urinary disorders and mitigates *vāta*.



Parūṣaka

13. Añjanādi gaṇa:

अञ्जनं फलिनी मांसी पद्मोत्पलरसाञ्जनम् ।
सैलामधुकनागाहूं विषान्तर्दाहपित्तनुत् ॥1 4॥

1. *Srotoñjana* (Antimony sulphide), 2. *phalini/preṅkhaṇa* (Callicarpa macrophylla), 3. *māṁsi/jaṭāmāṁsi* (Nardostachys jatamansi), 4. *padma* (Nelumbo mucifera), 5. *utpala* (Nymphaea stellata), 6. *rasāñjana* (prepared from Berberis aristata), 7. *elā* (Elettaria cardamomum), 8. *madhuka* (Glycyrrhiza glabra), 9. *nāgahvā/nāgakeśara* (Mesua ferrea).

Uses:

Antitoxic, relieves burning sensation and mitigates *pitta*.



Srotoñjana

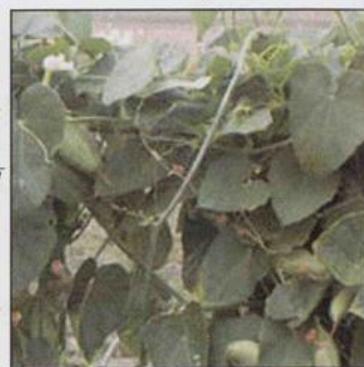
14. Patolādi gaṇa:

पटोलकटुरोहिणीचन्दनं मधुस्त्रवगुडूचिपाठान्वितम् ।
निहन्ति कफपित्तकुष्ठज्वरान् विषं वभिमरोचकं कामलाम् ॥1 5 ॥

1. *Patola* (Trichosanthes cucumerina), 2. *kaṭuka rohiṇī* (Picrorrhiza kurrooa), 3. *candana* (Santalum album), 4. *madhusravā/mūrvā* (Marsdenia tinacissima), 5. *guḍūcī* (Tinospora cordifolia), 6. *pāṭhā* (Cissampelos pareira).

Uses:

Mitigates *kapha* and *pitta*, indicated in skin disorders, fever, poisonous disorders, vomiting, anorexia and jaundice.



Paṭola

15. Guḍūcyādi gaṇa:

गुडूचीपद्मकारिष्टधानकारत्तचन्दनम् ।
पित्तश्लेष्यज्वरच्छिदिदाहतृष्णाधनमग्निकृत् ॥1 6 ॥

1. *Guḍūcī* (Tinospora cordifolia), 2. *padmaka* (Prunus padam), 3. *ariṣṭa/nimba* (Azadirachta indica), 4. *dhānyaka* (Coriandrum sativum), 5. *rakta candana* (Pterocarpus santalinus).

Uses:

Mitigates *pitta* and *kapha*, indicated in fever, vomiting, thirst, burning sensation and increased digestive power.



Guḍūcī

16. Āragwadhādi gaṇa:

आरग्वधेन्द्रयवपाटलिकाकतिक्तानिम्बामृतामधुरसास्तुववृक्षपाठः ।
भूनिम्बसैर्यकपटोलकरञ्जयुग्मसप्तच्छिदाग्निसुषवीफलबाणघोण्टा: ॥1 7 ॥
आरग्वधादिर्जयति छर्दिकुष्ठविषज्वरान् । कफं कण्डूं प्रमेहं च दुष्ट्रणविशेधनः ॥1 8 ॥

1. *Āragvadha* (Cassia fistula), 2. *indrayava* (Holarrhina antidysenterica), 3. *pāṭalā* (Steriospermum sauveolens), 4. *kākatiktā/śārṅgeṣṭā* (Cardiospermum halicacabum), 5.

nimba (*Azadarachta indica*), 6. *amṛtā* (*Tinospora cordifolia*), 7. *madhurasā/chāga* (*Marsdenia tinacissima*), 8. *sruvavṛkṣa/vikankata* (*Flacourtie indica*), 9. *pāṭhā* (*Cissampelos pareira*), 10. *bhūnimba* (*Andrographis paniculata*), 11. *saireyaka* (*Barleria prionitis*), 12. *paṭola* (*Trichosanthes cucumerina*), 13. *karañja dvaya*—(a) *karañja* (*Pongamia glabra*), (b) *pūti karañja* (*Caesalpinia bondue*), 14. *saptacchada* (*Alstonia scholaris*), 15. *agni/citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*), 16. *suṣavī* (*Momordica charantia*), 17. *phala* (*Randia dumatorum*), 18. *bāṇa* (*Barleria prionitis/black variety*), 19. *ghoṇṭā/badara* (*Ziziphus jujuba*).



Āragvadha

Uses:

Indicated in vomiting, skin diseases, toxicity, fevers, *kapha* disorders, itching, diabetes and cleanses the chronic wounds.

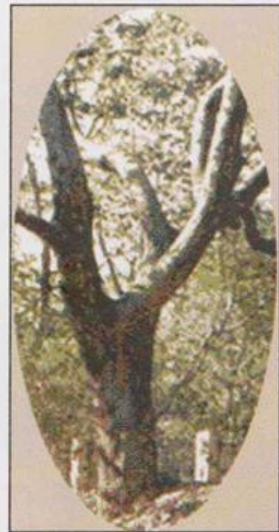
17. Asanādi gaṇa:

असनतिनिशभूजश्वेतवाहप्रकीर्या: खदिरकदरभण्डीशिपामेषशृङ्गयः ।

त्रिहिमतलपलाशा जोङ्कः शाकशालौ क्रमुकधवकलिङ्गच्छागकर्णश्वकर्णा: ॥19॥

असनादिर्विजयते श्वित्रकुष्ठकफक्रिमीन् । पाण्डुरोगं प्रमेहं च मेदोदोषनिबर्हणः ॥20॥

1. *Asana* (*Pterocarpus marsupium*), 2. *tiniśa* (*Ougeinia dalbergioides*), 3. *bhūrja patra* (*Betula bhojapattra*), 4. *śvetavāha/arjuna* (*Terminalia arjuna*), 5. *prakīrya/pūtikarañja* (*Caesalpinia bondue*), 6. *khadira* (*Acacia catechu*), 7. *kadara/śweta khadira* (*Acacia summa*), 8. *bhaṇḍī/śiriṣa* (*Albezia lebbeck*), 9. *śiṁśipā* (*Dalbergia emarginata*), 10. *meṣaśrīngī* (*Gymnema sylvestre*), 11. *trihima* (3 types of *candana*) (*śweta, rakta & pīta*), 12. *tala/tāda* (*Borassus flabellifer*), 13. *palāśa* (*Butea monosperma*), 14. *jōngaka/kṛṣṇa aguru* (*Aquilaria agallocha*), 15. *śāka/teak* (*Tectona grandis*), 16. *śāla* (*Shorea robusta*), 17. *dhava* (*Anogeissus latifolia*), 18. *kramuka* (*Areca catechu*), 19. *kalinga* (*Holarrhina antidyserterica*), 20. *chāgakarṇa/ajakarṇa* (*Dipterocarpus turbinatus*), 21. *aśvakarṇa* (*Dipterocarpus alatus*).



Asana

Uses:

Indicated in leucoderma, *kapha* diseases, worm infestation, anaemia, diabetes and obesity.

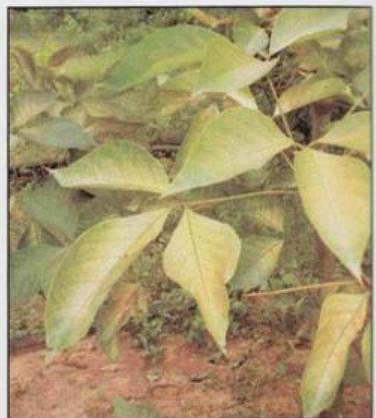
18. Varuṇādi gaṇa:

वरुणसैर्यकयुग्मशतावरीदहनमोरटबिल्वविषाणिका: ।

द्विवृहतीद्विकरञ्जयाद्वयं बहलपल्लवदर्भरुजाकरा: ॥21॥

वरुणादिः कफं मेदो मन्दारिनत्वं नियच्छति ।
आद्यवातं शिरःशूलं गुल्मं चान्तः सविद्रधिम् ॥२ २ ॥

1. *Varuṇa* (*Crataeva religiosa*), 2. *sairyaka yugma* (2 types of *barleria*)—(a) *kurabaka* (red flowers) (*Barleria cristata*), (b) *kuraṇṭaka* (yellow flowers) (*Barleria prionitis*), 3. *śatāvarī* (*Asparagus racemosus*), 4. *dahana/citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*), 5. *morata/chāga* (*Morsdenia tinacissima*), 6. *bilva* (*Aegle marmelos*), 7. *viṣāṇikā/aja śringī* (*Gymnema sylvestre*), 8. *dvi-brhatī*—(a) *bṛhatī* (*Solanum indicum*), (b) *kantakārī* (*Solanum xanthocarpum*), 9. *dvi-karañja*—(a) *karañja* (*Pongamia glabra*), (b) *pūtikarañja* (*Caesalpinia bondu*), 10. *jayā dvaya*—(a) *tarkārī* (*Clerodendron phlomidis*), (b) *harītakī* (*Terminalia chebula*), 11. *bahalapallava/śigru* (*Moringa pterygosperma*), 12. *darbha* (*Eragrostis cynosuroides*), 13. *rujākara/hintāla* (a kind of palm).



Varuṇa

Uses :

Cures *kapha* and *medoroga*, relieves indigestion, indicated in gout, headache, tumors and internal abscess.



Ūṣaka/Kallara

19. Ūṣakādi gaṇa:

ऊषकस्तुत्यकं हिङ्गु कासीसद्वयसैन्धवम् ।
सशिलाजतु कृच्छ्राश्मगुल्ममेदःकफापहम् ॥२ ३ ॥

1. *Ūṣaka/Kalhara* (*Sodium chloride*), 2. *tutthaka* (*Cupric sulphate*), 3. *hiṅgu* (*Ferula foetida*), 4. *kāsīsa dvaya* (2 types of *kāsīsa* i.e. *pāṁśu* & *puśpakāsīsa*), 5. *saindhava* (*Sodium chloride impura*), 6. *śilājatu* (*bitumen*).

Uses:

Indicated in dysurea, urinary calculi and tumors. Decreases the fat and mitigates *kapha*.

20. Viratarvādi gaṇa:

वेल्लन्तरारणिकबूकवृषाशमभेदगोकण्टकेत्कटसहाचरबाणकाशा: ।
वृक्षादनीनलकुशद्वयगुणठगुन्नाभल्लूकमोरटकुरण्टकरम्भपार्था: ॥२ ४ ॥
वर्गो वीरतरायोऽयं हन्ति वातकृतान् गदान् । अश्मरीशर्करामूत्रकुच्छाघातरुजाहर: ॥२ ५ ॥

1. *Vellantara/vīrataru* (*Dichrostachys cinerea*), 2. *aranika/agnimantha* (*Clerodendrum phlomidis*), 3. *būka/vāsūka/iśwara mallikā* (*Osmanthus fragrans*), 4. *vṛṣa/vāsā* (*Adhatoda vasica*), 5. *aśmabhedā/pāṣāṇabhedā* (*Bergenia ligulata*), 6. *gokāntaka/gokṣura* (*Tribulus terrestris*), 7. *itkāta/utkāta* (*Sesbania bispinosa*), 8. *sahacara* (*Barleria prionitis*), 9. *bāṇa* (*Avicennia officinalis*), 10. *kāsa* (*Saccharum spontaneum*), 11. *vṛkṣādanī/vandāka* (*Loranthus longiflorus*), 12. *nala* (*Phragmites maxima*), 13. *kuśa dwaya* (2 varieties of *Desmostachya bipinnata*), 14. *guṇṭha* (*Typha angustata*), 15. *gundrā* (*Typha elephantina*), 16. *bhallūka/śyonāka* (*Oroxylum indicum*), 17. *moraṇa/chāga* (*Marsdenia tinacissima*), 18. *kuraṇṭa* (yellow variety of *Barleria prionitis*), 19. *karambha/uttamaranī* (*Pergularia extensa*), 20. *pārthā/suvarcala/āditya-bhakta*.



Vellantara/Viratara

Uses:

Indicated in *vāta* disorders, urinary calculi, dysurea and anurea etc.

21. Rodhrādi gaṇa:

रोधशाबरकरोधपलाशा जिङ्गिणीसरलकट्फलयुक्ता: ।
कुत्सिताम्बकदलीगतशोकाः सैलवालुपरिपेलवमोचाः ॥२ ६ ॥
एष रोधादिको नाम मेदःकफहरो गणः ।
योनिदोषहरः स्ताम्भी वर्णविषविनाशनः ॥२ ७ ॥

1. *Rodhra/lodhra* (*Symplocos crataegoides*), 2. *śabaraka lodhra* (*Symplocos racemosa*), 3. *palāśa* (*Butea monosperma*), 4. *jiṅgiṇī* (*Lannea grandis*), 5. *sarala* (*Pinus longifolia*), 6. *katphala* (*Myrica nagi*), 7. *yuktā/rāsnā* (*Pluchea lanceolata*), 8. *kutsitāmba/kadamba* (*Anthocephalus indicus*), 9. *kadalī* (*Musa paradisiaca*), 10. *gataśoka/aśoka* (*Saraca indica*), 11. *elavālu* (*Prunus cerasus*), 12. *paripelava/mustā* (*Cyperus rotundus*), 13. *moca/śallakī* (*Boswellia serrata*).



Lodhra

Uses:

Decreases the fat and mitigates *kapha*, cures vaginal disorders, astringent in action, increases color complexion, antitoxic.

22. Arkādi gaṇa:

अर्कालकर्त्ता नागदन्ती विशल्या भाङ्गी रासना वृश्चिकाली प्रकीर्या ।
 प्रत्यक्षुष्णी पीततैलोदकीर्या श्वेतायुगमं तापसानां च वृक्षः ॥२८॥
 अयमकर्दिको वर्गः कफमेदोविषापहः ।
 कृमिकुष्ठप्रशमनो विशेषाद्वण्णशोधनः ॥२९॥

1. *Arka* (*Calotropis gigantea*), 2. *alarka* (*Calotropis procera*), 3. *nāgadantī* (*Croton oblongifolius*), 4. *viśalyā/lāngalī* (*Gloriosa superba*), 5. *bhāringī* (*Clerodendrum serratum*), 6. *rāsnā* (*Pluchea lanceolata*), 7. *vrścikālī* (*Pergularia extensa*), 8. *prakīryā/karañja* (*Pongamia pinnata*), 9. *pratyakpuṣpī* (*Achyranthus aspera*), 10. *pītatala/mālakāṅganī* (*Celestrus paniculata*), 11. *udakīryā/pūtikarañja* (*Holoptelia integrifolia*), 12. *śwetā yugma*—(a) *kiñihī/śirīṣa* (*Albizia procera*), (b) *kaṭabhī/another variety of śirīṣa*, 13. *tāpasa/iṅgudī* (*Balanites aegyptiaca*).

Uses:

Decreases the fat and mitigates *kapha*, cures worms, skin diseases, antitoxic and cleanses the wounds.



Arka

23. Surasādi gaṇa:

सुरसयुगफणिजं कालमाला विडङ्गं खरबुसवृष्टकर्णीकट्फलं कासमर्दः ।
 क्षवकसरसिभाङ्गीकार्मुकाः काकमाची कुलहलविषमुष्टीभूस्तृणो भूतकेशी ॥३०॥
 सुरसादिर्गणः श्लेष्ममेदःकृमिनिषूदनः । प्रतिश्यायारुचिश्वासकासधो व्रणशोधनः ॥३१॥

1. *Surasā yugma* (*Occimum sanctum*) (black & white), 2. *phanijja* (*Origamum majorana*), 3. *kālamālā* (*Ocimum species*), 4. *viḍaṅga* (*Embelia ribes*), 5. *kharabusa* (*Ocimum sp.*), 6. *vrśakarṇī/muṣikākarnī* (*Ipomoea reniformis*), 7. *katphala* (*Myrica nagi*), 8. *kāsamarda* (*Cassia occidentalis*), 9. *kṣavaka* (*Centipeda minima*), 10. *sarasi/kapithaparṇī*, 11. *bhāringī* (*Clerodendrum serratum*), 12. *kārmukā/raktamañjarī*, 13. *kākamācī* (*Solanum nigrum*), 14. *kulahala* (*Blumea balsmifera*), 15. *viṣamuṣṭī* (*Strychnos nuxvomica*), 16. *bhūtṛṇa* (*Andropogon citratus*), 17. *bhūtakeśī* (*Nardostachys jatamansi*).

Uses:

Mitigates *kapha*, decreases fat, indicated in worm infestations, running nose, anorexia, dyspnoea, cough and cleanses the wounds.



Surasā

24. Muṣkakādi gaṇa:

मुष्ककस्तु गवराद्विपिपलाशधवशिंशिपा: । गुल्ममेहाशमरीपाण्डुमेदोऽर्शः कफशुक्रजित् ॥३ २ ॥

1. *Muṣkaka* (*Elaeodendron glaucum*), 2. *śnuhī* (*Euphorbia nerifolia*), 3. *varā/triphala* (three fruits), 4. *dvīpi/citraka* (*Plumbago zeylanica*), 5. *palāsa* (*Butea monosperma*), 6. *dhava* (*Anogeissus latifolia*), 7. *śimśapā* (*Dalbergia sissoo*).

Uses:

Indicated in tumors, diabetes, urinary calculi, anaemia, obesity, piles, *kapha* and *śukra doṣa*.



Muṣkaka

25. Vatsakādi gaṇa:

वत्सकमूर्वाभाङ्गीकटुका मरीचं धुणप्रिया च गण्डीरम् ।

एला पाठाऽजाजी कट्वङ्गफलाजमोदसिद्धार्थवचा: ॥३ ३ ॥

जीरकहिङ्गविडङ्गं पशुगन्धा पञ्चकोलकं हन्ति । चलकफमेदः पीनसगुल्मज्वरशूलदुर्नामः ॥३ ४ ॥

1. *Vatsaka* (*Holarrhina antidyserterica*), 2. *mūrvā/ madhurasā/chāga* (*Marsdenia tinacissma*), 3. *bhāringī* (*Clerodendrum serratum*), 4. *katuka rohiṇī* (*Picrorrhiza kurrooa*),

5. *marica* (Piper longum), 6. *ghuṇapriyā/ativiṣā* (Aconitum heterophyllum), 7. *gaṇḍīra/snūhī* (Euphorbia nerifolia), 8. *elā* (Elatteria cardamomum), 9. *pāṭhā* (Cissampelos pariera), 10. *ajājī/jīraka* (Cuminum cyminum), 11. *kaṭwāṅgaphala/ aralu* (Ailanthus excelsa), 12. *ajamodā* (Apium graveolens), 13. *siddhārtha/śweta sarṣapa* (Brassica campestris Var. sarson Prain), 14. *vacā* (Acorus calamus), 15. *jīraka* (Carum carvi), 16. *hiṅgu* (Ferula foetida), 17. *viḍāṅga* (Embelia ribes), 18. *paśugandhā/ajagandhā* (Gynandropsis gynandra), 19. *pañcakola* (*pippalī*, *pippalīmūla*, *cavya*, *citraka*, *nāgara*).

Uses:

Mitigates *kapha* and *medas*. Indicated in anorexia, coryza, colic, piles, fever, tumors, increases digestive power and digests the undigested food material.



Vatsaka

26 & 27. Vacā-Haridrādi gaṇa:

वचाजलददेवाह्ननागरातिविषाभया: । हरिद्राद्वययष्ट्याह्नकलशीकुटजोद्धवा: ॥३५॥
वचाहरिद्रादिगणावामातीसारनाशनौ । मेदःकफाढ्यपवनस्तन्यदोषनिर्बहृणौ ॥३६॥

1. *Vacā* (Acmorus calamus), 2. *jalada/mustā* (Cyperus rotundus), 3. *devahvā/devadāru* (Cedrus deodara), 4. *nāgara/śuṇthī* (Zingiber officinale), 5. *ativiṣā* (Aconitum heterophyllum), 6. *abhayā/harītakī* (Terminalia chebula), 7. *haridrā dvaya*—(a) *haridrā* (Curcuma longa), (b) *dāru haridrā* (Berberis aristata), 8. *yaṣṭī/yaṣṭimadhu* (Glycyrrhiza glabra), 9. *kalaśī/prśniparṇī* (Uraria picta), 10. *kuṭaja/indrayava* (Holarrhina antidyserterica).



Vacā



Haridrā

Uses:

Indicated in *āmātisāra*, *medo roga*, *kapha roga*, gout, disorders of the breast milk etc.

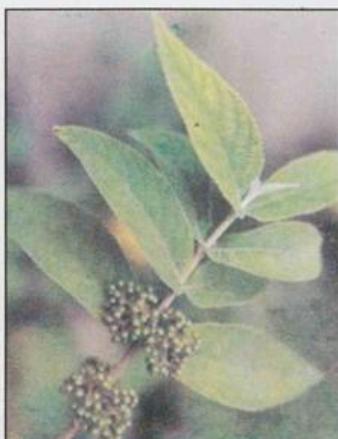
28 & 29. Priyaṅgu-Ambaṣṭhādi gaṇa:

प्रियड्गुपूष्टाञ्जनयुग्मपद्मा: पद्माद्रजो योजनवल्लयनन्ता ।
 मानद्वूमो मोचरसः समझा पुत्रागशीतं मदनीयहेतुः ॥३ ७ ॥
 अम्बष्टा मधुकं नमस्करी नन्दीवृक्षपलाशकच्छुरा: ।
 रोधं धातकिबिल्वपेशिके कट्वङ्गः कमलोद्धवं रजः ॥३ ८ ॥
 गणौ प्रियड्गवच्छादी पक्वातीसारनाशनौ ।
 सन्धानीयौ हितौ पित्ते पित्ते व्रणानामपि रोपणौ ॥३ ९ ॥

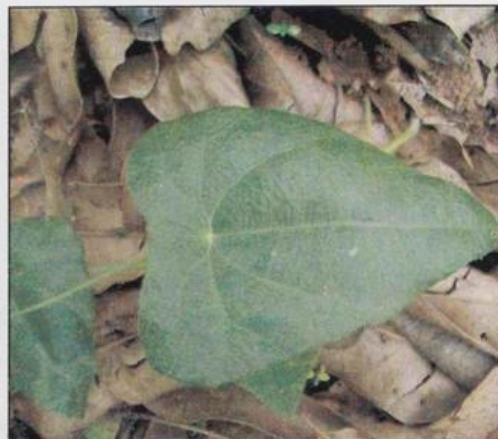
1. *Priyaṅgu* (*Callicarpa macrophylla*), 2. *puśpāñjana yugma*—(a) *srotoñjana* (black galena) (*Antimony sulphide*), (b) *souvīrāñjana* (white galena) (*Antimony sulphide*), 3. *padmā/bhāringī* (*Clerodendrum serratum*), 4. *padmarāja/padmakeśara* (*Nelumbo nucifera*), 5. *yojana-vallī/mañjiṣṭhā* (*Rubia cordifolia*), 6. *anantā/yavāsaka* (*Alhagi camelorum*), 7. *mānadruma/śālmalī* (*Salmalia malabarica*), 8. *mocarasa* (gum resin of *Salmalia malabarica*), 9. *samaṅgā/lajjālu* (*Mimosa pudica*), 10. *punnāga* (*Calophyllum inophyllum*), 11. *śīta/candana* (*Santalum album*), 12. *madanīya-hetu/dhātakī* (*Woodfordia fruiticosa*), 13. *ambaṣṭhā/mayūraśikhā* (*Adiantum caudatum*), 14. *madhuka* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), 15. *namaskarī* (*Mimosa pudica*), 16. *nandīvṛkṣa* (*Ficus retusa*), 17. *palāśa* (*Butea monosperma*), 18. *kacchurā/dhanvayāsa* (*Fagonia cretica*), 19. *rodhra* (*Symplocos racemosa*), 20. *dhātakī* (*Woodfordia fruiticosa*), 21. *bilwa peśikā/bilwaphala majjā* (*Aegle marmelos*), 22. *kaṭwaṅga/mahānimba* (*Ailanthus excelsa*), 23. *kamalarāja/padmakeśara* (*Nelumbo nucifera*).

Uses:

Both *priyaṅgvādi* and *ambaṣṭhādi gaṇa* drugs are indicated in *pakvātisāra*, unites the fractured bones, mitigates *pitta* and heals the ulcers.



Priyaṅgu



Ambaṣṭhā

30. Mustādi gaṇa:

मुस्तावचारिनद्विनिशाद्वितिक्ताभल्लातपाठात्रिफलविषाख्याः ।
कुष्ठं त्रुटी हैमवती च योनिस्तन्यामयघ्ना मलपाचनाश ॥40॥

1. *Mustā* (*Cyperus rotundus*), 2. *vacā* (*Acorus calamus*), 3. *agni/citramūla* (*Plumbago zeylanica*), 4. *niśā dvaya*—(a) *haridrā* (*Curcuma longa*), (b) *dāruharidrā* (*Berberis aristata*), 5. *dwi tiktā*—(a) *kaṭukarohīpi* (*Picrorhiza kurroa*), (b) *kākatiktā* (*kākadinī/guñjā*), 6. *bhallātaka* (*Semicarpus anacardium*), 7. *pāthā* (*Cissampelos pariera*), 8. *triphalā* (three fruits), 9. *viśākhyā* (*Aconitum heterophyllum*), 10. *kuṣṭha* (*Saussurea lappa*), 11. *trutī/elā* (*Elattaria cardamomum*), 12. *haimavatī* (*Acorus calamus*) (white variety of *vacā*).



Mustā

Uses:

Indicated in uterine disorders and also the disorders of the breast milk, mitigates all the *tridoṣas*.

31. Nyagrodhādi gaṇa:

न्यग्रोधपिप्पलसदाफलरोधयुग्मं जम्बूद्वयार्जुनकपीतनसोमवल्का: ।
प्लक्षाप्रवञ्चुलपियालपलाशनन्दीकोलीकदम्बविरलामधुकं मधूकम् ॥41॥
न्यग्रोधादिर्गणो व्रण्यः सङ्ग्राही भग्नसाधनः । मेदःपित्तास्वरूद्दाहयोनिरोगनिर्बहृणः ॥42॥

1. *Nyagrodha* (*Ficus bengalensis*), 2. *pippala/aśvattha* (*Ficus religiosa*), 3. *sadāphala/udumbara* (*Ficus glomerata*), 4. *rodhra yugma* (2 types of *Symplocos racemosa*), 5. *jambū dwaya* (2 types of *Syzigium cumini*), 6. *arjuna* (*Terminalia arjuna*), 7. *kapītana* (*Ficus microcarpa*), 8. *somavalka/khadira* (*Acacia catechu*), 9. *plakṣa* (*Ficus lacor*), 10. *āmra* (*Magnifera indica*), 11. *vañjula/vetasa* (*Salix caprea*), 12. *piyāla* (*Buchanania lanzan*), 13. *palāśa* (*Butea frondosa*), 14. *nandī* (*Ficus retusa*), 15. *kola* (*Zizyphus jujuba*), 16. *kadamba* (*Anthocephalus cadamba*), 17. *viralā/tinduka* (*Diospyros tomentosa*), 18. *madhuka/yaṣṭi* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), 19. *madhūka* (*Madhuka indica*).

Uses:

These drugs are useful for healing the ulcers. Absorbs the water, helps for the union of fractured bones, cures obesity, haemorrhage, thirst, burning and vaginal disorders.



Nyagrodha

32. Elādi gaṇa:

एलायुग्मतुरुष्ककुष्टफलिनीमांसीजलध्यामकं सृक्काचोरकचोचपत्रतगरस्थैणेयजातीरसा: ।
शुक्तिर्व्याघ्रनखोऽमराहृपगुरुः श्रीवासकः कुड्कुमं चण्डागुगुलुदेवधूपखपुरा: पुन्नागनागाहृयम् ॥4 3 ॥
एलादिको वातकफौ विषं च विनियच्छति । वर्णप्रसादनः कण्डूपिटिकाकोठनाशनः ॥4 4 ॥

1. *Elā dvaya*—(a) *sūkṣma elā* (*Elattaria cardamomum*), (b) *sthūla elā* (*Amomum subulatum*), 2. *turuṣka* (*Liquidamber orientalis*), 3. *kuṣtha* (*Saussurea lappa*), 4. *phalini/priyanigu* (*Callicarpa macrophyllum*), 5. *māṁsi/jatāmāṁsi* (*Nardostachys jatamansi*), 6. *jala/bälaka* (*Coleus vettiveroides*), 7. *dhyāmaka/gandhatrṇa* (*Cymbopogon species*), 8. *spṛkkā* (Northern Himalayan region aromatic plant), 9. *coraka* (*Angelica glauca*), 10. *coca/twak* (*Cinnamomum zeylanicum*), 11. *patra/tamāla patra* (*Cinnamomum tamala*), 12. *tagara/granthi tagara* (*Veleriana wallichii*), 13. *sthouneya/thuṇeraka* (*Taxus baccata*), 14. *jātīrasa/bola* (*Commiphora myrrha*), 15. *śuktinakha*, 16. *vyārghranakha* (*Capparis horrida*), 17. *amarāhwā/devadāru* (*Cedrus deodara*), 18. *aguru/kṛṣṇāguru* (*Aquilegia agallocha*), 19. *śrīvāsaka/sarala* (*Pinus longifolia*), 20. *kumkuma/saffron* (*Crocus sativus*), 21. *caṇḍā* (*Angelica glauca*), 22. *guggulu* (*Commiphora mukul*), 23. *devadhūpa/sarjarasa* (*Shorea robusta*), 24. *khapurā/kunduruka* (gum resin of *Lannea grandis* or *Boswellia serrata*), 25. *punnāga* (*Calophyllum inophyllum*), 26. *nāgāhwaya/nāgakeśara* (*Mesua ferrea*).

Uses:

Mitigates *vāta* and *kapha*, antitoxic, increases the color complexion, indicated in itching, boils etc.



Elā

33. Śyāmādi gaṇa:

श्यामादन्तीद्रवन्तीक्रमुक्कुटरणाशङ्खिनीचर्मसाह्वा-
स्वर्णक्षीरीगवाक्षीशिखरिरजनकच्छन्नरोहाकरञ्जः ।

बस्तान्त्री व्याधिघातो बहलबहुरसस्तीक्षणवृक्षात् फलानि
श्यामाद्यो हन्ति गुल्मं विषमरुचिकफौ हृदुजं मूत्रकृच्छ्रम् ॥४५॥

1. *Śyāmā* (Operculina turpethum) black variety, 2. *dantī* (Baliospermum axillare), 3. *dravantī* (Croton tiglium), 4. *kramuka* (Areca catechu), 5. *kutaraṇā/trivṛt* (Operculina turpethum) white variety, 6. *śaṅkhinī* (Clitoria ternatia), 7. *carmasāhvā* (Acacia sinuata), 8. *svarṇakṣīrī* (Argemone mexicana), 9. *gavākṣī* (Citrullus colocynthis), 10. *śikhari* (Achyranthus aspera), 11. *rajanaka/kampillaka* (Mallotus philippensis), 12. *chinnarūhā* (Tinospora cordifolia), 13. *karañja* (Pongamia pinnata), 14. *bastāntrī* (Ipomoea pescaprae), 15. *Syāmā* *vyādhīghātā/ārgavadha* (Cassia fistula), 16. *bahala/śigru* (Moringa pterygosperma), 17. *bahurasa/ikṣu* (Saccharum officinarum), 18. *tīkṣṇavṛkṣā phala/pīlu* (Salvadora persica).



Uses:

Useful in lumps in the abdomen, antitoxic, indicated in anorexia, disorders of *kapha* and heart and also in dysurea.

त्रयत्रिंशदिति प्रोक्ता वर्गास्तेषु त्वलाभतः । युञ्ज्यात्तद्विधमन्यच्च द्रव्यं जह्नादयौगिकम् ॥४६॥

In this way 33 groups of drugs have been enumerated for the management of various disease conditions. If all the drugs mentioned in any one of the groups are not available due to the season and ecological conditions, one can opt alternative drugs having similar therapeutic properties.

एते वर्गा दोषदूष्याद्यपेक्ष्य कल्कक्वाथस्तेहलेहादियुक्ताः ।
पाने नस्येऽन्वासनेऽन्तर्बहिर्वा लेपाभ्यङ्गैर्धन्ति रोगान् सुकृच्छ्रान् ॥४७॥

Prescribing the above drugs in the form of *kalka* (paste), *quātha* (decoction), *sneha* (medicated oil), *lehya*, *pāna* (internal use), *nasya* (nasal administration), *vasti* (medicated enemata) after assessing *doṣa*, *dūṣya* etc. will be useful even in the management of *krcchra-sādhyā roga* (diseases cured with great difficulty).

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसर्हिताया
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने शोधनादिगणसङ्ग्रहो नाम पञ्चदशोऽध्यायः ॥१५॥

Thus ends the fifteenth chapter entitled *Śodhanādigana Saṅgraha Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In the present chapter initially the classification of the drugs according to the mode of their action such as *śodhana* and *śamana* was enumerated. Then it was classified according to the action of several drugs which acts on a group of disease conditions and the nomenclature of the

group was given by the drug mentioned at first such as *vidāryādi gaṇa*, *sāribādi gaṇa*, *padmakādi gaṇa*, *guḍūcyādi gaṇa* etc.

For eg: *guḍūcyādi gaṇa* means the group is headed by *guḍūcī*. By hearing the word *guḍūcī* *gaṇa*, one must be in a position to recollect the group of drugs such as *gudūcī*, *padmaka*, *ariṣṭa*, *dhānyaka* and *rakta candana* along with their actions viz *pitta-kapha-hara*, *jwarahara*, *chardi*, *triṣṇā* & *dāhahara* as well as increasing the power of digestion.

Hence it is much more beneficial for the practitioner while treating a patient.

In this way 33 groups of drugs have been enumerated by Vāgbhaṭa in this chapter.



16 SNEHA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[*Oleation Therapy*]



अथातः स्नेहविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After '*Śodhanādīgaṇa Saṅgraha Adhyāya*', Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter '*Sneha-vidhi*' (Oleation Therapy), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

The main intention of Āyurveda is to maintain the positive health in the healthy individuals as well as to treat the diseased persons. To treat the diseased persons 3 kinds of therapeutic procedures have been mentioned such as *daiव्यपाश्रया*, *yuktiv्यपाश्रया* and *sattvावजया* (spiritual therapy, rational therapy and psychotherapy). Further rational therapy is subdivided into 3 types viz. *antahparimārjana*, *bahi॒-parimārjana* and *śastra-praṇidhāna* (internal purification, external cleansing and surgical therapy). Both the internal purification and external cleansing can be incorporated into *śadūpakramas*. For the sake of convenience in the treatment all the six therapeutic procedures can be grouped into two only such as *bṛiñhāna* and *laṅghana* (nourishing therapy and reducing therapy), which were already discussed in the previous chapter. Reducing therapy is again of 2 types:

(a) *Śodhana* (elimination therapy) and (b) *Śamana* (palliative therapy).

Śodhana therapy:

Śodhana therapy means purificatory measures.

Maharṣi Caraka has been classified them as under:

1. *Vamana karma* (emesis)
2. *Virecana karma* (purgation)
3. *Āsthāpana vasti* (medicated enemata with decoctions)
4. *Anuvāsanā vasti* (enemata with oils)
5. *Nasya karma* (nasal administration)

Where as in Suśruta Saṁhitā, *rakta-mokṣana* is added to the above by clubbing both types of *vasti* treatments as one, so that the number five remains the same.

Before proceeding to the purificatory measures, pre-operative procedures like oleation and sudation should be conducted to bring back the vitiated *doṣas* from *śākhās* (periphery) to *koṣṭha* (central part of the body). Without conducting these preoperative techniques, the vitiated *doṣas* cannot reach the central part of the body.

Hence it is very much essential to conduct the pre-operative procedures prior to perform *Pañcakarma* treatments.

Before starting the therapy, physician should procure the drugs in required quantity, which will be useful for oleation therapy and also the antidotes, to manage the complications.

Qualities of oleating drugs:

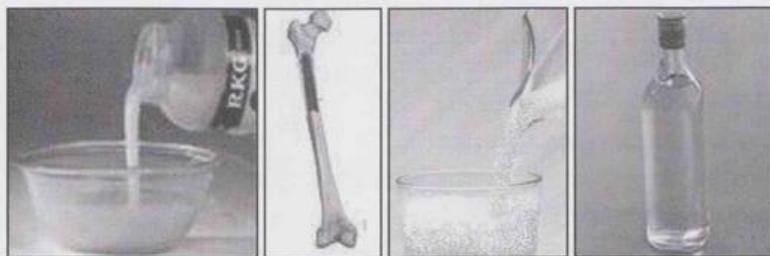
गुरुशीतसरस्तिर्थमन्दसूक्ष्ममृदुद्रवम् । औषधं स्नेहनं प्रायो, विपरीतं विरुक्षणम् ॥1॥

Generally, drugs which are *guru* (heavy), *śīta* (cold), *sara* (mobile), *snigdha* (unctuous), *manda* (slow), *sūkṣma* (subtle), *mṛdu* (soft) and *drava* (liquid) are useful for oleation therapy and the drugs having exactly opposite qualities like *laghu* (light), *uṣṇa* (hot), *sthira* (stable), *rūkṣa* (dry), *tikṣṇa* (sharp), *sthūla* (bulky), *kathina* (hard) and *sāndra* (solid) are useful for dryness of the body.

Literally *sneha* means oleate or to make smooth. The process of producing unctuousness, fluidity, softness and smoothness in the body is known as oleation.

Best oleating substances:

सर्पिमज्जा वसा तैलं स्नेहेषु प्रवरं मतम् । तत्रापि चोत्तमं सर्पि: संस्कारस्यानुवर्तनात् ॥2॥
माधुर्यादविदाहित्वाज्जन्माद्येव च शीलनात् ।



Sarpiḥ

Majjā

Vasā

Taila

Though there are a number of unctuous substances available in the nature *sarpiḥ* (ghee), *majjā* (bone marrow), *vasā* (muscle fat) and *taila* (sesame oil) are the best among them.

Out of all unctuous substances, ghee is the best one, because it follows the properties of the substances with which it is processed, as it is sweet in taste, not producing any burning sensation and is taken since birth.

पित्तघ्नास्ते यथापूर्वमितरघ्ना यथोत्तरम् ॥3॥

Sarpiḥ, *majjā*, *vasā* and *taila* are superior to one another in mitigating *pitta* in the preceding order, and in their succeeding order they mitigate *vāta* and *kapha*.

घृतात्तैलं गुरु वसा तैलान्मज्जा ततोऽपि च ।

Gṛita, *taila*, *vasā* and *majjā* are heavier to one another in their succeeding order that means bone marrow is the heaviest among the four unctuous substances.

द्वाभ्यां त्रिभिश्चतुर्भिस्तैर्यमकस्त्रिवृतो महान् ॥4॥

The combination of any of the two unctuous substances can be known as *yamaka*. If any of

three substances combined together it is called *trivṛt* and the combination of all the four oleating substances are known as *mahān*.

These oleating substances will get from two different sources known as animals and plants—
 (a) Animal source—curds, milk, muscle, bone. From which ghee, muscle fat and bone marrow can be collected. (b) Plant source—fruits and stem yield oils.

Eligible persons for oleation therapy:

स्वेद्यसंशोध्यमद्यस्त्रीव्यायामासक्तचिन्तकाः । वृद्धबालाबलकृशा रुक्षाः क्षीणास्वरेतसः ॥५॥
 वातार्तस्यन्दतिमिरदासुणप्रतिबोधिनः । स्नेहाः-

- * Persons to whom sudation and purificatory measures to be conducted.
- * Those who are habituated in taking more wine, excessive sexual contacts with women and doing heavy exercises.
- * Persons thinking too much.
- * Aged persons, children, debilitated persons.
- * Emaciated and dry.
- * Who are having depleted of blood and reproductive tissues.
- * Persons suffering from neurological disorders and eye diseases.
- * Those having difficulty in quick awakening etc. are eligible for oleation therapy.

Persons not eligible for oleation therapy:

—न त्वतिमन्दाग्नितीक्षणाग्निस्थूलदुर्बलाः ॥६॥
 ऊरुस्तम्भातिसाराऽमगलरोगगरोदरैः । मूर्च्छाच्छ्वर्युचिश्लेष्मतृष्णामद्यैश्च पीडिताः ॥७॥
 अपप्रसूता युक्ते च नस्ये बस्तौ विरेचने ।

- * Those having very weak and strong digestive power.
- * Obese and very lean.
- * Persons suffering with *urustambha*, diarrhoea, indigestion, throat disorders, artificial poisoning, ascitis, fainting, vomiting, anorexia, increased *kapha*, thirst and alcoholic intoxication.
- * Abnormal delivery.
- * Immediately after performing *nasya*, *vasti* and *virecana* etc. are not eligible for administering the oil internally.

Indications of different unctuous substances in various disease conditions:

तत्र धीस्मृतिमेधादिकाङ्गिणां शस्यते घृतम् ॥८॥

Gṛīta (ghee) is indicated to the persons, who desire to improve their intelligence, recollection, knowledge and digestive power etc.

ग्रन्थिनाडीकृमिश्लेष्मेदोमासुतरोगिषु । तैलं लाघवदाढ्यार्थिकूरकोष्ठेषु देहिषु ॥९॥

Taila (gingili oil) is indicated for the persons:

- * Who are suffering from tumors, sinus, worm infestation.
- * *Kapha* and *medo roga*.

- * *Vāta* disorders.
- * Who wishes to become slim and strong.
- * Those having *krūra koṣṭha* (costive bowels) etc.

वातात्पाद्यभारस्त्रीव्यायामक्षीणधातुषु । रूक्षत्वेशक्षमात्यग्निवातावृतपथेषु च ॥10॥
शेषौ, वसा तु सन्ध्यस्थिमर्मकोष्ठजासु च । तथा दग्धाहतभ्रष्टयोनिकर्णशिरोरुजि ॥11॥

Vasā and *majjā* (muscle fat and bone marrow) are indicated for those persons:

- * Whose tissues became weak by exposing to open air, sunlight, walking long distances, carrying heavy loads, excessive coitus, excessive exercises, who are having dry skin.
- * Those who can be able to withstand even in difficult situations.
- * Having increased power of digestion.
- * Channels blocked by the vitiation of *vāta* etc.
- * *Vasā* is specially indicated in the disorders of joints, bones, vital organs and G.I. tract.
- * It is also indicated in burns, injuries, prolapsed uterus and the diseases of ear and head.

Indications of different unctuous substances according to seasons:

तैलं प्रावृष्टिं, वर्षान्ते सर्पिरन्यौ तु माधवे ।

Gingili oil should be given in *prāvṛtītu* or *varṣātu* (first rainy seasons) and ghee is to be given in end of *varṣā* or *śaratītu* (autumn season) where as muscle fat and bone marrow are to be administered in *mādhura* or *vasantaītu* (spring season).

Suitable time for oleation therapy:

ऋतौ साधारणे स्नेहः शस्तोऽह्नि विमले रवौ ॥12॥

Usually unctuous substances should be administered internally during normal seasons only i.e. when there is not having extreme hot, cold and rains and that too whenever the sun is shining i.e. sky is clear without any clouds.

तैलं त्वरायां शीतेऽपि घर्मेऽपि च घृतं निशि ।

In an emergency *taila* can be administered in cold season also. Similarly *ghṛta* can be given in summer season and even in night.

निश्येव पित्ते पवने संसर्गे पित्तवत्यपि ॥13॥

In the condition where *vāta* and *pitta* are vitiated and during summer oleating substances should be given in the night hours only.

निश्यन्यथा वातकफाक्रोगाः स्युः पित्ततो दिवा ।

- * Oleating substances should be administered internally according to the condition of the vitiation of the *doṣa* and season only.
- * The above rules do not apply to the patients, suffering from acute diseases. In such cases the physician need not observe the variations in time and season.
- * Administration of oleating substances other than the prescribed time i.e. using *ghṛta* in night time during cold seasons and *taila* in day time during summer season leads to *vāta*, *kapha roga* and *pitta* disorders respectively.

Mode of administration of oleating substances:

युक्त्याऽवचारयेत्नेहं भक्ष्याद्यनेन बस्तिभिः ॥१ ४ ॥
नस्याभ्यञ्जनगण्डूषमूर्द्धकण्ठक्षितर्पणैः ।

Oleating substances should be administered internally after considering the dosage, season, vitiated *dosa* and the body constitution as follows:

Vicāraṇā (mixed with food substances), *vasti* (medicated enemata), *nasya* (nasal administration), *abhyanga* (body massage), *gaṇḍūṣa* (mouth gargles), *mūrdha taila* (*śiro-abhyanga*, *seka*, *picu* and *śirovasti*), *karṇapūrana* (ear drops) and *akṣitarpaṇa* (satiating therapies to the eye).

Sneha vicāraṇā:

रसभेदैककत्वाभ्यां चतुःषष्ठिर्विचारणाः ॥१ ५ ॥
स्नेहस्यान्याभिभूतत्वादल्पत्वाच्च क्रमात्स्मृताः । यथोक्तहेत्वभावाच्च नाच्छपेयो विचारणा ॥१ ६ ॥
स्नेहस्य कल्पः स श्रेष्ठः स्नेहकमर्शुसाधनात् ।

- * Administering the oleating substances internally by mixing them with other food substances is known as *vicāraṇā*. Internal administration of oleating substances without adding any other substance is known as *accha peya*.
- * *Sneha vicāraṇās* are of 64 types in accordance with that number of combinations of *rasas*.
- * *Accha peya* gives proper oleating signs and symptoms faster than *vicāraṇīya*. Hence the former is superior to the later.

Dosage of oleating substances:

द्वाभ्यां चतुर्भिरस्ताभिर्यमैर्जीर्यन्ति याः क्रमात् ॥१ ७ ॥
हस्वमध्योक्तमा मात्रास्तास्ताभ्यश्च हसीयसीम् । कल्पयेद्वीक्ष्य दोषादीन् प्रागेव तु हसीयसीम् ॥१ ८ ॥

- * The quantity of oil digested in two *yāmas* (six hours) is called *hrasva mātrā*. *Madhayama mātrā* will be digested in four *yāmas* (twelve hours) and the quantity, which, will be digested in eight *yāmas* (24 hours), is called *uttama mātrā*.
- * Keeping the intensity of *dosas*, seasons, wholesomeness etc in mind, start the oleation therapy, with the minimum dose or less than that is called *hrasīyasi mātrā* or test dose.
- * Oil should not be administered internally without knowing the *kōṣṭha*. If so, at times the life of the patient may be put into danger.

Notes:

Hrasva mātrā:

- * It is indicated for the persons who are weak, having decreased digestive power, children, aged, delicate persons, habituated to take unwholesome food, remains empty, suffering with fever, diarrhoea, cough etc.
- * It is ideal because it is easy to administer, as the quantity is less.
- * It gives strength slowly.
- * And is not creating any complications.

Madhayma mātrā:

- * It is indicated for diabetes, *urustambha*, carbuncles, skin diseases gout etc. and the persons having *mṛdu koṣṭha*.
- * It will produce unctuousness in the body, without reducing the strength of the body.
- * Though complications may arise, they are mild.
- * It also helps to eliminate the vitiated *doṣas* from the body.

Uttama mātrā:

- * It is indicated for hectic personalities, having increased digestive power, strength, able to withstand hunger, thirst and physical strain, tumors, reverse peristalsis, herpes, snake bite, insanity, dysurea etc.
- * It cures the diseases caused by all the three pathways of the diseases.

**Classification of Sneha Dravyas
According to Their Mode of Action**

Oleating substances are also can be classified into 3 types as under:

1. *Śodhana sneha*, 2. *Śamana sneha*, 3. *Bṛīhāṇa sneha*.

1. Śodhana sneha:

हस्तने जीर्ण एवान्ने स्नेहोऽच्छः शुद्धये बहुः ।

Oleating substances used for the sake of elimination, maximum dose is to be given early in the morning without mixing with any other substances and after the completion of the digestion of the food taken in the previous night. Here the drug is administering in maximum dose and for a shorter duration i.e. maximum 7 days.

2. Śamana sneha:

शमनः क्षुद्रतोऽनन्नो मध्यमात्रश्च शस्यते ॥१ ९॥

Administration of the oleating substances internally in the medium dose, in the empty stomach when the person gets hungry, is known as *śamana sneha*.

Here the dosage of the unctuous substances are less than *śodhana sneha* and should be administered till the symptoms of the diseases disappeared.

3. Bṛīhāṇa sneha:

बृंहणो रसमद्यादौः सभक्तोऽल्पः-

Administration of unctuous substances in a minimum dosage, which is mixed with mutton soup, wine and along with the food for a longer period for the nourishment of the body is known as *bṛīhāṇa sneha*.

Eligible persons for bṛīhāṇa sneha:

—हितः स च । बालवृद्धपिपासार्तस्नेहद्विषमद्यशीलिषु ॥२ ०॥

स्त्रीस्नेहनित्यमन्दाग्निसुखितक्लेशभीरुषु । मृदुकोष्ठाल्पदोषेषु काले चोष्णे कृशेषु च ॥२ १॥

It is indicated for children, aged, suffering from thirst, having aversion towards unctuous substances, habituated to take alcoholic drinks, sexual indulgence and taking unctuous substances, persons having poor digestive power, leading comfortable life, delicate persons, those afraid of difficulties, *mṛdu koṣṭha* etc. where there is mild increase of *doṣas*, emaciated, and also, for others, during summer.

Effects of snehapāna:

प्राङ्मध्योत्तरभक्तोऽसावधोमध्योर्ध्वंदेहजान् । व्याधीञ्चयेद्वलं कुर्यादङ्गानां च यथाक्रमम् ॥२ २ ॥

Oil administered before, during and after eating food will be useful to the patients in the management of the diseases occurring to the lower, middle and upper parts of the body respectively and also gives strength to the body parts in the similar order.

Anupāna for different unctuous substances:

वार्युष्णमच्छेऽनु पिबेत् स्नेहे तत्सुखपत्तये । आस्योपलेपशुद्धयै च, तौवरारुप्करे न तु ॥२ ३ ॥

- * Generally hot water is to be given immediately after administering the unctuous substances, for the easy digestion and to remove the coating in the mouth.
- * But hot water should not be given while administering the substances having hot in potency such as *tuvaraka taila* and *aruṣkara taila*.

Test to know the given oil is digested or not:

जीर्णाजीर्णविशङ्कायां पुनरुष्णोदकं पिबेत् । तेनोदगारविशुद्धिः स्यात्ततश्च लघुता रुचिः ॥२ ४ ॥

Whenever there is any doubt regarding the digestion of the unctuous substances, put the patient to the following simple test:

- * Ask the patient to take some hot water, if there is clear eructation, which indicates that the given oil is completely digested and the eructation with oily smell indicate the oil is yet to digest.
- * Pure eructation, feeling of lightness in the body as well as perception of taste infers that oil is completely digested.

Recommended diet during oleation therapy:

भोज्योऽन्नं मात्रया पास्यन् श्वः पिबन् पीतवानपि । द्रवोष्णमनभिष्वन्दि नातिस्तिर्थमसङ्करम् ॥२ ५ ॥

Liquid, warm, not causing blockage to the channels and limited quantity of diet is to be given on the day before oleation therapy. Unctuous, sticking to channels and incompatible diet should not be given.

Paścāt karma (Post operative care):

उष्णोदकोपचारी स्याद्ब्रह्मचारी क्षपाशयः । न वेगरोधी व्यायामक्रोधशोकहिमातपान् ॥२ ६ ॥

प्रवातयानयानाध्वभाष्यात्यासनसंस्थितीः । नीचात्युच्चोपधानाहः स्वप्नधूमरजासि च ॥२ ७ ॥

यान्यहानि पिबेत्तानि तावन्त्यन्यान्यपि त्यजेत् ।

The following regimen is to be followed during the course of oleation therapy, and also the same number of days even after the completion of the course.

- * Use only warm water for drinking as well as bathing.
- * Celibacy should be maintained.
- * Should not suppress the natural urges.
- * Should not indulge in exercises, anger and grief.
- * Should not expose to rain, cold, sunlight and breeze.
- * Should not travel long distances by vehicles or by walk.
- * Should not talk loudly, eat excessively,
- * Should not use pillows having too much height too less height and should be comfortable.
- * Avoid sleeping in daytime.
- * Should not contact with the smoke and dust etc.

सर्वकर्मस्वयं प्रायो व्याधिक्षीणेषु च क्रमः ॥२८॥

This is the regimen to be followed during and after elimination therapies like emesis, purgation etc. and also for the persons suffering from various diseases.

उपचारस्तु शमने कार्यः स्नेहे विरक्तवत् ।

In case of *śamana* (*sneha*/palliative oleation therapy), the post-operative regimen is similar to that of purgation therapy.

त्र्यहमच्छं मृदौ कोष्ठे क्रोरे सप्तदिनं पिबेत् ॥२९॥

सम्यक्स्निग्धोऽथवा यावदतः सात्यीभवेत् परम् ।

- * Unctuous (oleating) substances should be given 3 days in *mṛdu koṣṭha*, 5 days in *madhyama koṣṭha* and 7 days in *krūra koṣṭha*.
- * It should be given not more than seven days, or until get the effects of proper oleation therapy.
- * If it is given more than 7 days, it becomes habituated to the body and cannot serve the purpose of eliminating the vitiated *dosas*.

Notes:

Snehapāna vidhi : Pūrva karma (Pre-operative procedure):

- * Before starting the oleation therapy, screen the patient whether the patient is eligible or not.
- * Before administering the oleating substances, the patient is to be given mild doses of medicines (carminatives) to stimulate the digestive power and to make the G. I. tract light.
- * Assess the *koṣṭha* and have a plan regarding the duration of the therapy as 3 days, 5 days and 7 days in *mṛdu*, *madhyama* and *krūra koṣṭha* respectively.

Koṣṭha parīkṣā:

Intake of jaggery, sugarcane juice, milk, whey, rice pudding, ghee, grape juice, hot water etc. serves as a purgative for those having *mṛdu koṣṭha*. The above cannot produce purgative effect in *krūra koṣṭha*, where as in *madhyama koṣṭha* mild laxative effect can be seen.

Pradhāna karma (Main operative procedure):

- * After the completion of the digestion of the food taken in the previous night, medicated oil should be given orally early in the morning, between 15-30 minutes after sunrise, by sitting comfortably in a chair.
- * Then hot water is to be given for quick digestion and gargling to clean the oral cavity and then ask the patient to wander for a distance of hundred to two hundred yards.
- * Afterwards instruct the patient to cover the body with thick clothes, and reside in the room, which is devoid of breeze and have warm water at regular intervals whenever feels thirsty.
- * Then the physician should observe the signs and symptoms during the process of digestion as well as the completion of digestion of the unctuous substances.



Snehapāna

Signs and symptoms during the process of digestion and after the completion of digestion:Jīryamāna lakṣaṇa:

Headache, giddiness, salivation, fainting, debility, restlessness, exhaustion etc. indicates that the unctuous substance is under the process of digestion.

Jirna lakṣaṇa:

- * Disappearance of the above symptoms like headache etc.
- * Feeling of the lightness in the body, passing flatus.
- * Relief from the symptoms of the original disease.
- * Increased appetite and thirst and clear eructation indicates that the oleating substance is digested.
- * Whenever there is any doubt regarding the digestion of the unctuous substances, put the patient to the following simple test.
- * Ask the patient to take some hot water, if there is clear eructation, which indicates that the given oil is completely digested and the eructation with oily smell indicate the oil is yet to digest.
- * After the completion of digestion ask the patient to have hot water bath and then liquid, warm and light diet is to be given.

Paścāt karma (Post operative care):

Use only warm water for drinking as well as bathing etc. should be followed during the course of oleation therapy, and also the same number of days even after the completion of the course.

Signs and symptoms of proper, improper and excessive oleation:

वातानुलोभ्यं दीप्तोऽग्निर्वर्चः स्निग्धमसंहतम् ॥३०॥

स्नेहोद्वेगः क्लमः सम्यक्स्निग्धे, रुक्षे विपर्ययः । अतिस्निग्धे तु पाण्डुत्वं घ्राणवक्त्रगुदस्ववा: ॥३१॥

Proper symptoms of oleation:

Passage of flatus, increased digestive power, unctuous and loose stools, body parts become soft and smooth, aversion towards unctuous substances, body becomes light, increased perception of the objects of sensory organs etc. are symptoms of proper oleation.

Improper symptoms of oleation:

Exactly opposite symptoms of proper oleation can be seen.

Signs and symptoms of excessive oleation:

Anaemia, discharges from mouth, nose and rectum.

Complications of oleation therapy:

अमात्रयाऽहितोऽकाले मिथ्याहारविहारतः । स्नेहः करोति शोफार्शस्तन्द्रास्तम्भविसंज्ञता: ॥३ २ ॥
कण्डूकुष्ठज्वरोत्क्लेशशूलानाहभ्रमादिकान् ।

- * Generally complications may arise due to the fault of the physician as well as the patient.
- * Complications arising due to the wrong selection of the drug dosage, time and season and also the patient at times are some of the faults of the physician.
- * And the complications arising due to improper post-operative regimen can be considered as the faults of the patient.
- * *Sopha* (swelling all over the body), *arśas* (piles), *tandrā* (state of unconsciousness), *sthambha* (rigidity), *visamījnata* (loss of sensation), *kandu* (itching), *kuṣṭha* (skin disorders), *jwara* (fever), *utkleśa* (nausea), *śula* (pain in the abdomen), *ānāha* (flatulence), *bhrama* (giddiness) etc. are some of the complications.

Management:

क्षुत्तर्षोल्लेखनस्वेदस्त्रक्षपानान्नभेषजम् ॥३ ३ ॥
तक्रारिष्टखलोद्धालयवश्यामाककोद्रवम् । पिप्पलीत्रिफलाक्षौद्रपथ्यागोमूत्रगुग्गुलु ॥३ ४ ॥
यथास्वं प्रतिरोगं च स्नेहव्यापदि साधनम् ।

- * Suppressing hunger and thirst.
- * Emesis.
- * Sudation therapy.
- * Intake of dry foods, drinks and medicines.
- * *Takrāriṣṭa* (fermented buttermilk).
- * *Khala, uddāla, yava, śyāmāka, kodrava, pippalī, triphalā, kṣoudra, pathyā, gomūtra, guggulu* etc. should be used according to the condition of the *dosas*.

Features of drying therapy:

विस्त्रक्षणे लङ्घनवत्कृतातिकृतलक्षणम् ॥३ ५ ॥

Proper and excessive features of *rūkṣaṇa karma* (drying therapy) are similar to that of proper and excessive features of *lainghana karma* (reduction therapy) respectively.

Procedure for virecana:

स्निधद्रवोष्णाधन्वोत्थरसभुक् स्वेदमाचरेत् । स्निधस्त्रयं स्थितः कुर्याद्विरेकं, वर्मनं पुनः ॥३ ६ ॥
एकाहं दिनमन्यच्च कफमुत्क्लेश्य तत्करैः ।

After *snehapāna*, the patient is to be given unctuous, liquid hot in potency and warm *jāṅgala māṁsa rasa* (mutton juice) and advised to go for sudation therapy for three days and then administer purgative drug.

Procedure for vamana:

After *snehapāna*, the patient is to be given unctuous, liquid hot in potency and warm *jāṅgala māṁsa rasa* (mutton juice) and advised to go for sudation therapy for one day and then give food, which stirs up *kapha* (milk, fish, black gram etc.) and afterwards administer emetic drug.

मांसला मेदुरा भूरिश्लेष्याणो विषमाग्नयः ॥३ ७ ॥
स्नेहोचिताश्च ये स्नेहास्तान् पूर्वं रूक्ष्येत्ततः । संस्नेहा शोधयेदेवं स्नेहव्यापन्न जायते ॥३ ८ ॥
अलं मलानीरयितुं स्नेहश्चासात्म्यतां गतः ।

- * In persons having muscular and fatty tissues and in *kapha* predominance, prior to start oleation therapy, the drugs, which cause dryness in the body are to be given for few days, so as to avoid post-operative complications.
- * This procedure also helps for the proper elimination of vitiated *doṣas* from the body without causing any habituation of oleating substances.

Sadyosneha yoga (Recipes for instant oleation):

बालवृद्धादिषु स्नेहपरिहारासहिष्णुषु ॥३ ९ ॥
योगानिमाननुद्वेगान् सद्यःस्नेहान् प्रयोजयेत् ।

It is ideal for children, old persons and those who do not follow the regimen of oleation therapy.

प्राज्यमांसरसास्तेषु, पेया वा स्नेहभर्जिता ॥४ ० ॥
तिलचूर्णश्च सन्नेहफणितः, कृशरा तथा । क्षीरपेया घृताढ्योष्णा, दध्नो वा सगुडः सरः ॥४ १ ॥
पेया च पञ्चप्रसृता स्नेहैस्तण्डुलपञ्चमैः । सप्तैते स्नेहाः सद्यः-

- * Mutton juice prepared from more quantity of meat i.e. by adding less water.
- * *Peyā* (thin gruel) fried with oleating substances.
- * *Tila cūrṇa/kalka*, ghee and half boiled molasses.
- * *Kṛśarā* (rice cooked along with green gram and ghee).
- * *Kṣīra peyā* with *ghṛta*.
- * Whey with jaggery.
- * *Pañca prasṛtā peyā*—*catuhṣneha+taṇḍula* (rice) each one *prasṛta*. Thin gruel prepared with one *prasṛta* (100ml) each of ghee, sesame oil, muscle fat, bone marrow and rice.

The above seven formulations can be used as instant oleating substances.

—स्नेहाश्च लवणोल्बणाः ॥४ २ ॥
तद्द्वयभिष्यन्द्यरूक्षां च सूक्ष्ममुष्णं व्यवायि च ।

Those formulations should be used only after mixing them with *lavāṇa* as it is possessing the *abhiṣyandī*, *arūkṣa* (*snigdha*), *sūkṣma*, *uṣṇa* and *vyavāyī guṇa*.

गुडानूपामिषक्षीरतिलमाषसुरादथि ॥४ ३ ॥
कुष्ठशोफप्रमेहेषु स्नेहार्थं न प्रकल्पयेत् ।

While administering medicated oils in the disease conditions like *kuṣṭha*, *śopha* and *prameha* those oleating substances should not be mixed with *guḍa*, *ānūpa māṁsa*, *kṣīra*, *tila*, *māṣa*, *surā* and *dadhi*.

त्रिफलापिष्ठलीपथ्यागुगुल्वादिविपाचितान् ॥४ ४ ॥
स्नेहान् यथास्वमेतेषां योजयेदविकारिणः ।

Hence it is ideal that the oleating substances should be processed with *triphalā*, *pippalī*, *pathyā*, *guggulu* etc. while using them in *kuṣṭha* and other diseases as they are harmless and doesn't produce any side-effects.

क्षीणानां त्वामयैरग्निदेहसन्धुक्षणक्षमान् ॥४ ५ ॥

Persons who became debilitated due to the effect of diseases should be given such oleating substances, which will be useful to increase body strength as well as power of digestion.

Advantages of oleation therapy:

दीप्तान्तराग्निः परिशुद्धकोष्ठः प्रत्यग्रधातुर्बलवर्णयुक्तः ।
दृढेन्द्रियो मन्दजरः शतायुः स्नेहोपसेवी पुरुषः प्रदिष्टः ॥४ ६ ॥

The person who resorts to oleation therapy frequently, will have the increased power of digestion, the clean gastro- intestinal tract, well established body tissues, strength, color and complexion, well functioned sense organs, delayed aging and thus lives one hundred years healthy and happily.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने स्नेहविधिर्नाम षोडशोऽध्यायः ॥१६ ॥

Thus ends the sixteenth chapter entitled *Snehavidhi Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the oleation therapy in a systematic way. In the beginning itself he warned to procure the oleating substances as well as the antidotes prior to start the therapy. Qualities of oleating substances and the drugs useful for the dryness of the body. Four types of best unctuous substances, their sources etc. Eligible and not eligible persons for oleation therapy. Indications of different substances in various diseases and according to seasons, dosage, post-prandial drinks, preoperative, operative and post operative procedures. Signs and symptoms of proper, improper and excessive oleation. Complications and their management. Recipes for instant oleation and at the end advantages of oleation therapy has been explained.

17 SVEDA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Sudation Therapy]



अथातः स्वेदविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः ।

इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Sneha-vidhi*’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Sveda-vidhi*’ (Sudation Therapy), thus said Lord Ātreyā and other great sages.

The present chapter also deals with the pre-operative procedure for *Pañcakarma* techniques named as *sveda-vidhi* i.e. sudation therapy.

Definition:

The process which relieves stiffness, heaviness, coldness and which induces sweating is known as *sveda-karma* or sudation therapy.

Types of sudation therapy:

स्वेदस्तापोपनाहोष्ट्रवभेदाच्चतुर्विधिः ।

Sudation therapy is of four types according to Vāgbhaṭa:

- (a) *Tāpa sveda* (direct heat)
- (b) *Upanāha sveda* (poultice)
- (c) *Uṣma sveda* (with steam)
- (d) *Drava sveda* (warm liquid)

Notes:

Several types of classification of sudation therapies are made with different points of view in other treatises.

According to agni bheda—(a) *sāgni* (thermal sudation) and (b) *niragni* (non-thermal sudation).

According to sthāna bheda—(a) *ekāṅga* (local) and (b) *sarvāṅga* (general).

According to guṇa bheda—(a) *rūkṣa* (dry) and (b) *snigdha* (moist sudation).

According to rogī-bala and roga-bala—(a) *mṛdu sveda* (mild sudation), (b) *madhayama sveda* (medium sudation) and (c) *mahā sveda* (maximum sudation).

Maharshi Caraka described the following 13 types of thermal sudation and 10 types of non-thermal sudation.

Thermal sudation:

1. *Pindā/saṅkara sveda* (mixed fomentation), 2. *prastara sveda* (hot bed fomentation), 3. *nādī sveda* (steam kettle sudation), 4. *pariṣeka sveda* (affusion), 5. *avagāha* (bath sudation), 6. *jentāka* (sudatorium sudation), 7. *aśmaghana* (stone bed sudation), 8. *karṣu* (trench sudation), 9. *kuṭī sveda* (cabin sudation), 10. *bhū sveda* (ground bed sudation), 11. *kumbhī* (pitcher bed sudation), 12. *kūpa sveda* (pit sudation) and 13. *holaka sveda* (under bed sudation).

These 13 types of thermal sudation can be incorporated into the 4 types of Vāgbhaṭa's classification as under.

Type of sudation according to Vāgbhaṭa	According to Caraka
1. <i>Tāpa sweda</i>	<i>Saṅkara, prastara, aśmaghana, bhū</i>
2. <i>Upanāha</i>	
3. <i>Uṣma sweda</i>	<i>Nāda, jentāka, kārṣu, kuṭī, kumbhī, kūpa, holāka</i>
4. <i>Drava</i>	<i>Pariṣeka, avagāha.</i>

* *Upanāha sweda* is mentioned in non-thermal type of sudation therapies by Caraka.

Non-thermal sudation:

1. *Vyāyāma* (exercises), 2. *uṣṇasadana* (warm room), 3. *gurupravaraṇa* (covering with heavy blankets), 4. *kṣudhā* (hunger), 5. *bahupāna* (excessive drinking), 6. *bhaya* (fear), 7. *krodha* (anger), 8. *upanāha* (plasters), 9. *āhava* (boxing) and 10. *ātapa* (sun bath).

(a) *Tāpa sveda* (Sudation with direct heat):

तापोऽग्नितप्तवसनफालहस्ततलादिभिः ॥1॥

Induce sweating, by heating the palm of the hand, flat pieces of bronze, sand, cloth, pieces of earthen wear etc. over fire and applying it warmly on the affected part of the body directly is known as *tāpa sveda*.

(b) *Upanāha sveda* (Poultices):

उपनाहो वचाकिणवशताह्वादेवदारुभिः । धान्यैः समस्तैर्गन्धैश्च रास्नैरण्डजटामिषैः ॥2॥

उद्विक्तलवर्णैः स्नेहचुक्रतक्रपयः प्लुतैः । केवले पवने, श्लेष्मसंसृष्टे सुरसादिभिः ॥3॥

पित्तेन पद्मकाद्यैस्तु साल्वणाख्यैः पुनःपुनः ।

Application of warm pastes of different types of drugs on the affected part of the body and bandaging with animal skins or leaves is known as *upanāha sveda*.

Drugs used for upanāha sveda:

Vacā (Acorus calamus), *kīṇwa* (yeast), *śatāhwa* (Peucedanum graveolens), *devadāru* (Cedrus deodara), grains like *tila* (Sesamum indicum), *atasī* (Linum usitatissimum), *māṣa* (Phaseolus mungo) etc; drugs belonging to *sugandha varga* such as *kuṣṭha* (Saussurea lappa), *aguru* (Aquilaria agallocha), *granthitagara* (Valeriana wallichii), *rāsnā* (Pluchea lanceolata), *erandamūla* (Ricinus communis), *jatāmānsī* (Nardostachys jatamansi) and *māṁsa*.

Add more *saindhava lavaṇa*, *ghṛta*, *cukra* (vinegar), *takra* (buttermilk) and *paya* (milk) to the above drugs and prepare poultice as per the text and can be used for *upanāha sveda*, when *vāta* is vitiated.

- * When *vāta* is associated with *kapha*, use the drugs taken from the group of *surasādi gaṇa* for *upanāha* and when *vāta* is associated with *pitta*, *padmakādi gaṇa* drugs will be useful for *upanāha*.
- * Select the drugs, which mitigate *vāta*, *vāta-kapha* or *vāta-pitta* from the above drugs and made into paste and it can be used alone or mixed with milk, sour buttermilk, *dhānyāmla*, rock salt and whey etc.

स्नाधोष्वावीर्यमृदुभिश्वर्मपट्टरपूतिभिः ॥४॥

अलाभे वातजित्प्रकौशेयाविकशाटकैः । बद्धं रात्रौ दिवा मुञ्चेन्मुञ्चेद्रात्रौ दिवाकृतम् ॥५॥

- * The paste should be made warm and spread thickly on the affected part of the body and then bandage with soft skin of the animals devoid of hair, odorless and hot in potency or with thick leaves which mitigate *vāta* such as castor leaves or with woolen or silk cloth.
- * Bandage tied in the night should be removed in the morning hours, and if tied in the morning time should be removed in night hours and kept free, so that the patient gets relief from burning sensation.

(c) *Uṣma sveda* (Sudation with vapors):

अष्वा तूत्कारिकालोष्टकपालोपलपांसुभिः । पत्रभङ्गेन धान्येन करीषसिकतातुष्टैः ॥६॥
अनेकोपायसन्तप्तैः प्रयोज्यो देशकालतः ।

Conducting sudation by means of *utkārikā* (*roṭī* prepared with *yava*, *māṣa*, *eraṇḍa bija*, *atasī bija*, *kusumbha bija*), *loṣṭa* (*mṛtpiṇḍa*), *kapāla* (*karpara*), *upala* (stone), *pariṣu* (dust), *patrabhaṅga* (leaves cut into pieces), *dhānya* (food grains), *karīṣa* (powder of cow and other animals dung), *sikatā* (sand) and *tuṣa* (husk) etc. is known as *uṣma sveda*. It should be conducted in different ways according to the place and time.

(d) *Drava sveda* (Sudation with warm liquids):

शिग्रुवारणकैरण्डकरञ्जसुरसार्जकात् ॥७॥
शिरीषवासावंशार्कमालतीदीर्घवृन्ततः । पत्रभङ्गवचाद्यैश्च मांसैश्चानूपवारिजैः ॥८॥
दशमूलेन च पृथक् सहितैर्वा यथामलम् । स्नेहवद्धिः सुराशुक्तवारिक्षीरादिसाधितैः ॥९॥
कुम्भीर्गलन्तीर्णडीर्वा पूरयित्वा रुजादितम् । वाससाऽऽच्छादितं गात्रं स्निग्धं सिङ्गेयथासुखम् ॥१०॥

Conducting the sudation with the help of warm liquid substances is known as *drava sveda*. It is of 2 types—(a) *pariṣeka* and (b) *avagāha*.

Pariṣeka sveda:

- * Leaves of *śigru*, *vāraṇa* (*kaṇṭaka karañja*), *eraṇḍa*, *karañja*, *surasā*, *arjaka* (*vana tualasi*), *śiriṣa*, *vāṣā*, *vāṁśa*, *arka*, *mālatī*, *dīrghavṛṇta* (*tiṇṭuka*) and the drugs mentioned in *vacādi gaṇa*; *ānūpa mārīṣa*; *daśamūla* etc. either individually or combining with any two or all of

the above substances by mixing with ghee or other oleating substances according *doṣa* and other drugs which mitigate *vāta* should be boiled in water, wine, milk, sour butter milk etc. and prepare the decoctions.

- * Fill these decoctions into the pitchers or earthenwares having a number of holes at the bottom and pour or sprinkle over the affected part of the body or whole body, which has been already anointed with medicated oils and covered with a piece of cloth.
- * This is known as *pariṣeka sveda*.

Avagāha sveda:

तैरेव वा द्रवैः पूर्णं कुण्डं सर्वाङ्गोऽनिले । अवगाह्यातुरस्तिष्ठेदर्शः कृच्छ्रादिरक्षु च ॥११॥

- * After anointing the body with medicated oils, ask the patient to sit in a tub containing the luke warm decoctions of the above drugs up to the neck level for a specific period is known as *avagāha sveda*.
- * This is indicated in a condition whenever vitiated *vāta* affects all over the body, piles and dysurea.

Notes:

Uṣma sveda (sudation with vapors) is again classified into 8 types as under:

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Piṇḍa sveda</i> | 5. <i>Kumbhī sveda</i> |
| 2. <i>Saṁstara sveda</i> | 6. <i>Kūpa sveda</i> |
| 3. <i>Nādī sveda</i> | 7. <i>Kutī sveda</i> |
| 4. <i>Ghanāśma sveda</i> | 8. <i>Jentāka sveda</i> . |

1. Piṇḍa sveda:

- * The process of thermal sudation by means of a bolus containing *tila*, *māṣa* etc with or without wrapping a cloth is known as *piṇḍa sveda*. *Saikara sveda* is the synonym for *piṇḍa sveda*.
- * Take the pot shreds, stones and iron balls and heat them until they become red hot and then immerse into water or any other liquids such as sour gruel and others which mitigate *vāta*.
- * Then remove the stones, iron balls and others from the liquid and make into boluses with the help of moist woolen cloth. After anointing the body of the patient with medicated oils, made it to perspire with the help of the above boluses by contacting the affected part of the body.
- * It is specially indicated for the diseases of the *kapha* and *meda*, severe painful conditions and tumors.

(or)

- * Take mud, sand, excreta of various animals like cow, horse, goat, pig etc. husk of grains cooked rice, green



Piṇḍa sveda

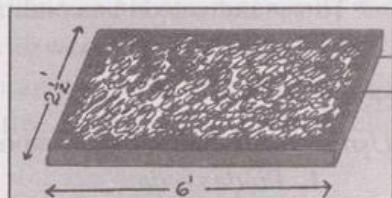
gram, meat and boiled in sour liquids and then make into boluses with the help of woolen cloth and use it for sudation as above.

(or)

- * Cow dung and excreta of horse and other animals which are fresh means still moist, along with the drugs useful for poultice such as barley, black gram, castor seeds etc. *rotī* of the above drugs, *khicadī* and meat etc. can be made in the boluses and use it for sudation in the above manner. This will be useful to mitigate *vāta* predominant diseases.
- * It is also known as *saiṅkara sveda*, because in which a number of drugs are used which are obtained from different sources, such as animal origin, plant origin and also minerals.

2. Saṁstara sveda or prastara sveda:

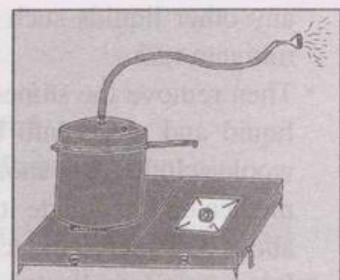
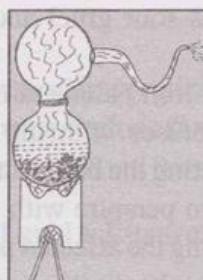
- * The process of sudation in which the patient lies down on a hot pudding, spread on a stone or a mat is known as *prastara sveda*.
- * Take the suitable drugs which will be useful for sudation such as roots of castor and others, in earthenware, which is covered with a lid and prepare the pudding, by boiling in a conventional manner.
- * Arrange the stone in a room, which is devoid of breeze and spread the above pudding evenly on the stone or on a mat made up of with sacred grass etc.
- * Then cover the pudding with a woolen or silk cloth or with the leaves, which mitigate *vāta*.
- * After anointing the body with medicated oils ask the patient to lie down over the bed and then cover the body with animal skins such as deer and others or a woolen blanket, till he gets perspiration. This is known as *saṁstara sveda* or *prastara sveda*.



Prastara sveda

3. Nāḍī sveda:

- * Conduction of sudation with a tube is known as *nāḍī sveda*.
- * Collect the drugs, which induce sweating and pour them in earthenware and put an empty pot of the same size inversely on the mouth of the first one.
- * Then the joint of the mouth of the pots put together and should be sealed with a cloth soaked in mud.
- * The upper pot contains a hole on the lateral side, which is used to arrange a tube made up of with bamboo and other leaves, through which the vapor comes out.



Nāḍī sveda (Ancient and modern methods)

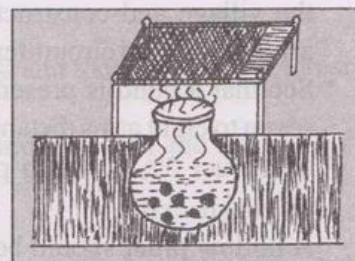
- * The tube should be in a length of one to one and half *vyāma* i.e approximately (2 to 3 meters) and it should be bent twice or thrice in a shape of elephant's trunk, so that the pressure of the vapor can be restricted and also prevent the accidental scalds during the process.
- * After anointing the body of the patient with medicated oils *nādī sveda* should be conducted with the vapour, which is coming out from the tube.

4. Ghanāśma sveda:

- * Conducting the sudation with the help of a stone is known as *ghanāśma sveda*.
- * Take a stone measuring the length of a man, i.e approximately, 6 ft. length and $2\frac{1}{2}$ ft. breadth.
(or)
- * Clean the earth of the same measurements and made it flat and comfortable.
- * Place the stems of the drugs, which mitigate *vāta* on the stone or earth and burn well and then remove the ash.
- * Then sprinkle hot water or sour liquid substances and then cover the stone or the soil with a silk or woolen cloth.
- * After anointing the body with medicated oils, ask the patient to lie down on the stone or on the soil and then cover the body with another cloth, so that the patient gets fomented.

5. Kumbhi sveda:

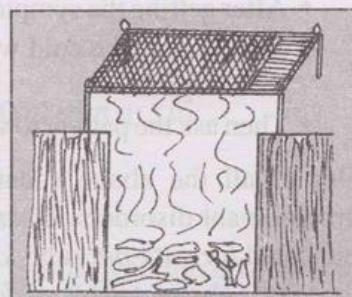
- * As the fomentation is carried out by means of pitcher or earthenware it is called *kumbhī sveda*.
- * Collect the drugs mentioned earlier and put them in a pot and prepare the decoction as per the procedure, by covering the pot with a lid.
- * Then bury the pitcher in the earth up to $\frac{1}{3}$ rd or half of the part.
- * Afterwards arrange a bed over the pitcher, which is covered with a cloth on all four sides.
- * After massaging the body, ask the patient to lie down on the bed.
- * Then red-hot iron balls or stones should be dropped slowly into the pitcher.
- * So that the person gets fomented with the vapor thus coming out from the pitcher.



Kumbhi sveda

6. Kūpa sveda:

- * Literally *kūpa* means well. The process of conducting fomentation by means of a well shaped trench is known as *kūpa sveda*.
- * Dig a square shaped pit having the measurement of the width of the bed and with double the depth.
- * Put the fire wood of *vātahara* drugs into it or the dried excreta of cow, horse, elephant, donkey, camel etc. and ignite it.

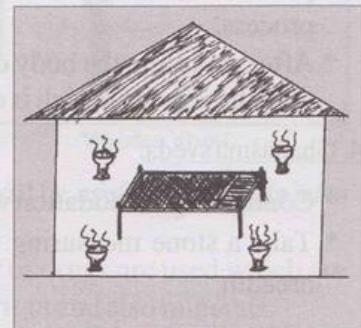


Kūpa sveda

- * After the smoke is removed arrange the bed on it and ask the patient to lie down, who was already anointed, so that he will get fomented.

7. Kuṭī sveda:

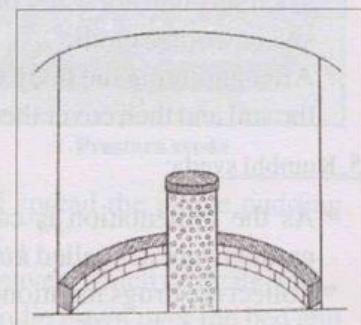
- * The process of conducting fomentation in a cottage is known as *kuṭī sveda*.
- * Construct a circular cottage which is neither too height nor width, and the walls should be without any holes.
- * Apply the paste of *kuṣtha* and *surasādi gaṇa* drugs to the walls.
- * Then arrange the furnaces around the cottage and filled with the stems of *khadira* etc. and ignite it.
- * After the smoke is completely removed, arrange a bed in the center of the cottage, and ask the patient to lie down on the bed (who has already anointed), till he gets to proper signs and symptoms of fomentation.



Kuṭī sveda

8. Jentāka sveda:

- * A special cottage should be constructed for *jentāka sveda* and it can be called as *jentāka gr̥ha*.
- * Select the good place of land in the eastern or western side of the village and construct a circular cottage measuring 16 arms height and circumferences.
- * See that a pond is present in front of the cottage, which is seven to eight arms distance from the cottage.
- * Construct 2½ ft. width pial around and inside the cottage leaving to exit.
- * A hollow pillar should be constructed in the center with many holes and a lid having the measurements of 6ft x 6ft height and circumference.
- * This should be filled with firewood of *khadira*, *asvakarṇa* and be ignited.
- * When all the firewood is burnt and free from smoke, ask the patient to enter into the cottage after anointing the body by giving the following instructions:
 - Never leave the pial even if he gets fainted.
 - After getting the symptoms of proper sudation move towards exit following the pial only.
 - Should not take cold water for drinking or bathing immediately after coming out from *jentāka gr̥ha*.
 - Then ask the patient to wait for 45 minutes and then have hot water bath and light diet.



jentāka gr̥ha

Out of all the above sudation methods *tāpa* and *uṣma svedas* are indicated in *kapha* predominant disorders. *Upanāha sveda* is for *vāta* predominant diseases and *drava sveda* is indicated for *vāta-pitta* and *kapha-pitta* disorders. Non-thermal sudations are indicated where the *vāta* is obstructed by *medo dhātu* and *kapha doṣa*. Non-thermal type of *upanāha* is indicated for *pitta* associated with *vāta* and *kapha* disorders.

Sveda vidhi:

निवातेऽन्तर्बहिःस्निग्धो जीर्णान्नः स्वेदमाचरेत् ।

Sudation is to be conducted to the persons who have undergone internal and external oleation, after the proper digestion of food taken in previous night, in a place where there is devoid of breeze.

व्याधिव्याधितदेशर्तुवशान्मध्यवावरम् ॥1 2॥

After thorough examination of the disease, patent, habitat and season only, the following types of sudation therapies should be conducted:

- * *Mahā sveda* is to be conducted to the strong persons and suffering from severe diseases, and in the winter season.
- * *Mrdu sveda* is indicated for weak persons and are suffering with simple problems and also in summer season.
- * *Madhyama sveda* is to be conducted in medium conditions of the disease, season and the patient.

कफार्ते रुक्षणं रुक्षो, रुक्षः स्निग्धं कफानिले ।

- * Dry sudation is indicated for *kapha* disorders and moist sudation for *vāta* disorders.
- * Dry and moist sudation should be done alternately for *kapha*, *vāta* disorders.

आमाशयगते वायौ कफे पक्वाशयाश्रिते ॥1 3॥

रुक्षपूर्वं तथा स्नेहपूर्वं स्थानानुरोधतः ।

- * If *vāta* occupies the stomach region, conduct dry sudation first and then proceed for moist sudation.
- * Similarly if *kapha* occupies the place of *vāta* conduct moist sudation first and then go for dry sudation.

अल्पं बङ्गणयोः, स्वल्पं दुड्मुष्कहृदये न वा ॥1 4॥

Conduct mild sudation at the vital points like testes, eyes and heart, which should be protected from excessive heat.

Notes:

Eyes should be covered with the petals of lotus, lily flower etc. Chest should be kept cool by the application of cold substances and wearing flower and pearl garlands and also touched with the hands moistened with cold water.

Signs and symptoms of proper sudation:

शीतशूलक्षये स्विन्नो जातेऽङ्गानां च मार्दवे । स्याच्छनैर्मृदितः स्नातस्ततः स्नेहविधिं भजेत् ॥1 5॥

- * Disappearance of coldness and relief from pain.
- * Stiffness and heaviness relieved.
- * Body becomes smooth.

After getting the above signs and symptoms, massage the body gently with the oils, which mitigate *vāta* and then hot water bath followed by the regimen of oleation therapy.

Signs and symptoms of excessive sudation:

पित्तास्त्रकोपतुण्मूर्च्छास्वराङ्गसदनभ्रमः । संधिपीडा ज्वरः श्यावरक्तमण्डलदर्शनम् ॥1 6 ॥
स्वेदातियोगाच्छर्दिश्च, तत्र स्तम्भनमौषधम् । विषक्षाराग्न्यतीसारच्छर्दिमोहातुरेषु च ॥1 7 ॥

Aggravation of *pitta* and *rakta*, thirst, fainting, weakness of the voice and body, giddiness, joint pains, fever, appearance of blackish and red patches on the skin and vomiting are the signs and symptoms of excessive sudation.

Treatment:

- * *Stambhana* is the best line of treatment in these conditions.
- * And also to be given the treatment of the complications caused by poisons, alkalies, cauterization and from diarrhoea, vomiting and fainting.

Properties of svedana and stambhana drugs:

स्वेदनं गुरु तीक्ष्णोष्णं प्रायः, स्तम्भनमन्यथा । द्रवस्थिरसरस्तिग्धरूक्षसूक्ष्मं च भेषजम् ॥1 8 ॥
स्वेदनं, स्तम्भनं श्लक्षणं रूक्षसूक्ष्मसरद्रवम् । प्रायस्तिकं कषायं च मधुरं च समासतः ॥1 9 ॥

- * Generally the drugs having *guru* (heaviness), *tikṣṇa* (sharpness) *guṇa* and *uṣṇa vīrya* (hot in potency) are useful for sudation therapy, whereas the drugs having the opposite qualities will be useful for *stambhana* (astringent) therapy.
- * Drugs, which are *drava* (liquid), *sthira* (immobile), *snigdha* (unctuous), *rūkṣa* (dry) and *sūkṣma* (minute) cause sudation.
- * Those, which are *ślakṣṇa* (smooth), *rūkṣa* (dry), *sūkṣma* (minute), *sara* (mobile), *drava* (liquid), *tikta* (bitter), *kaṣāya* (astringent) and *madhura* (sweet) in taste generally, cause *stambhana*.

Signs and symptoms of proper and excessive astringent therapy:

स्तम्भितः स्याद्वले लब्धे यथोत्तामयसङ्घायात् ।

Proper signs:

Disappearance of the symptoms of the disease and gaining the strength of the body are the results of astringent therapy.

स्तम्भत्वक्स्नायुसङ्गोचकम्पहृद्वाग्नुग्रहैः ॥2 0 ॥

पादौष्टत्वक्करैः श्यावैरतिस्तम्भितमादिशेत् ।

Excessive:

It causes stiffness, contraction of the skin and tendons, tremors, catching pain in the chest, loss of voice, lock jaw, blackish discolouration of feet, lips, skin and hands.

Not eligible for sudation therapy:

न स्वेदयेदतिस्थूलरूक्षदुर्बलमूर्च्छितान् ॥2 1 ॥

स्तम्भनीयक्षतक्षीणक्षाममद्यविकारिणः । तिमिरोदरवीसर्पकुष्ठशोषाद्यरोगिणः ॥2 2 ॥

पीतदुग्धदद्यथिस्नेहमधून् कृतविरेचनान् । भ्रष्टदग्धगुदग्लानिक्रोधशोकभयार्दितान् ॥2 3 ॥

क्षुचृष्णाकामलापाण्डुमेहिनः पित्तपीडितान् । गर्भिणीं पुष्पितां सूतां, मृदु चात्ययिके गदे ॥2 4 ॥

Very obese, dry, weak, unconscious, eligible for astringent therapy, emaciated by injury to chest, very thin, alcoholic toxicity, blindness, enlargement of abdomen, herpes, leprosy, tuberculosis, gout, immediately after taking milk, curds, unctuous substances, honey, after purgation therapy, prolapsed rectum, severe exhaustion, anger, grief, fear, hunger, thirst, jaundice, anemic, diabetes, pitta disorders, pregnant, during menstrual period, after delivery etc.

In the above conditions, sudation therapy should not be conducted usually. In an emergency mild sudation can be given even in the above conditions.

Eligible for sudation therapy:

श्वासकासप्रतिश्यायहिधमाध्मानविबन्धु । स्वरभेदानिलव्याधिश्लेष्मस्तम्भगौरवे ॥२५॥

अङ्गमर्दकटीपार्श्वपृष्ठकुक्षिहनुग्रहे । महत्त्वे मुक्तयोः खल्यामायामे वातकण्टके ॥२६॥

मूत्रकृच्छ्रार्बुद्गन्धिशुक्राधाताढ्यमारुते । स्वेदं यथायथं कुर्यात्तदौषधविभागतः ॥२७॥

The persons suffering from the following disorders are eligible and conduct sudation therapy judiciously with appropriate drugs.

Dyspnoea, cough, coryza, hiccup, abdominal distention, constipation, hoarseness of voice, disorders of *vāta*, *kapha* and *āma*, stiffness, heaviness, body pains, severe catching pain in the hip, flanks, back, abdomen and lower jaw, scrotal enlargement, contractures of hands and feet, kyphosis, scoliosis, sprain, dysurea, tumors, formation of stone in the seminal vesicle, anurea, *urustambha* etc.

Types of non-thermal sudations:

स्वेदो हितस्त्वनाग्नेयो वाते मेदःकफावृते ।

निवातं गृहमायासो गुरुप्रावरणं भयम् ॥

उपनाहाहवक्रोधा भूरिपानं क्षुधाऽतपः ॥२८॥

Non-thermal sudation is specially indicated in a condition where *vāta* is enveloped or inactivated by *medo dhātū* and *kapha doṣa*. Ten non-thermal sudations are:

1. *Nivāta-sadana* (residing in air tight room).
2. *Āyāsa* (heavy exercises).
3. *Guruprāvaraṇa* (covering with heavy blankets).
4. *Bhaya* (fear).
5. *Upanāha* (non thermal types of poultices).
6. *Āhava* (boxing).
7. *Krodha* (anger).
8. *Bhūripāna* (excessive in take of alcohol).
9. *Kṣudhā nigrahaṇa* (suppression of hunger).
10. *Ātapa* (exposing to sunlight).

In Caraka Samhitā and in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya only 10 types of non thermal sudations will be found, whereas in Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, *adhvagamana* and *bhāraharaṇa* are found in addition to the 10 types of non thermal sudation methods.

Regarding the thermal type of sudation methods also the number does not tally with Caraka Saṁhitā. Because Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa doesn't separately shown *bhūṣveda* that was included in *ghanāśma sveda* and *karṣu* and *holaka* have been incorporated into *kūpa sveda* due to the similarity in their technique.

Advantages (importance) of sudation therapy:

- * Increases the power of digestion.
- * Causes softness and brightness of the skin.
- * Creates desire to take food.
- * Cleans the internal channels of the body.
- * Relieves the laziness and stupor.
- * Relieves the stiffness in the joints and makes the quick movements.

स्नेहक्लिन्नाः कोष्ठगा धातुगा वा स्रोतोलीना ये च शाखास्थिसंस्थाः ।

दोषाः स्वेदस्ते द्रवीकृत्य कोष्ठं नीताः सम्यक् शुद्धिभिर्निहियन्ते ॥२ ९॥

The anointed *doṣas* which were lodged at different regions of peripheral parts, gets liquefied by sudation therapy were brought back to the central part of the body for easy elimination by the appropriate *śodhana* methods.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने स्वेदविधिर्नाम सप्तदशोऽध्यायः ॥१७॥

Thus ends the seventeenth chapter entitled *Swedavidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Sirinagupta.

Till now Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained various types of sudation therapies in a systematic way. Oleation and sudation are the pre-operative techniques, which should be conducted prior to proceed for purificatory measures.

Maharshi Caraka also expressed the importance of oleation and sudation as follows:

शुष्काण्यपि हि काष्ठानि स्नेहस्वेदोपपादनैः । नमयन्ति यथा न्यायं किं पुनर्जीवितो नरान् ॥

If it is possible to mould the non living things like dry cane stick into any shape of the individuals choice after applying oil and contacting with fire, it is very much possible to bring back the normalcy of the paralyzed parts of the human beings with the help of oleation and sudation.

In this chapter *Sveda-vidhi*, Vāgbhaṭa explained—definition and the classification of sudation therapy, procedure, signs and symptoms of proper and excessive sudation, treatment for the complications of excessive sudation. Properties of sudation and astringent therapeutic drugs. Signs and symptoms of proper and excessive astringent therapy. Indications and contra indications for sudation therapy and at the end, advantages of sudation therapy has been presented.

18 VAMANA VIRECANĀ-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Emesis & Purgation Therapies]



अथातो वमनविरेचनविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Sweda-vidhi Adhyāya*’ Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Vamana-Virecanā-vidhi*’ (Emesis and Purgation Therapies), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Definition of *vamana* and *virecana* and the mode of action of emetic and purgative drugs have been delineated by the author of *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* in a lucid way as under.

Vamana and virecana:

दोषहरणमूर्धभागं वमनाख्यमधोभागं विरेचनाख्यमुभयं वा मलविरेचनाद्विरेचनमित्युच्यते ।

Expulsion of vitiated *doṣas* through mouth can be termed as emesis, and through rectum can be called as purgation. In both the conditions as the vitiated *doṣas* are expelling from the body, the term ‘*virecana*’ is suitable for both emesis and purgation.

Mode of action of the emetics and purgatives:

तत्रोष्णातीक्षणसूक्ष्मव्यवायिकाशीण्यौषधानि स्वर्वीर्येण हृदयमुपेत्य सौक्ष्म्याद् व्यवायित्वाच्च धमनीरनुसृत्य स्नेहेन मृदृकृतेऽन्तश्शरीरे स्वेदोष्णाऽऽर्द्धदारुवद्विष्यणे स्थूलाणुस्रोतोभ्यः सकलमपि दोषसङ्घातमौष्ण्यात् पुनर्विष्यन्दन्यन्ति । तैक्षण्याद्विकाषित्वाच्च विच्छिन्दन्ति । स विष्यणविच्छिन्नो दोषसङ्घातः पारिप्लवः स्नेहात्क्षाजनस्थ इवोद्काञ्जलिरसज्जनुप्रस्ववणभावादमाशयमनुगम्य उदानप्रणुन्नः अग्निवाय्वात्मकत्वात् ऊर्ध्वभागप्रभावाच्चौषधस्योर्ध्वं प्रवर्तते । सलिलपृथिव्यात्मकत्वादधोभागप्रभावाच्च औषधस्याधः । उभयतश्चोभयगुणात्मकत्वादुभयभागप्रभावाच्च ।

As the emetic drug contain *uṣṇa*, *tikṣṇa*, *sūksma*, *vyavāyī* and *vikāśī guṇas* and also due to their potency they will reach the region of the heart through the minute channels. Due to oleation and sudation the vitiated *doṣas* become liquefied and enter into minute channels. There the emetic drug further liquefies the *doṣas* due to *uṣṇa guṇa* and breaks into pieces because of *tikṣṇa* and *vikāśī guṇas*. From there the liquefied *doṣas* reach the *kōṣṭha* without sticking to the channels as the water runs through the walls of the earthenware which has been anointed with oil. Then the vitiated *doṣas* will be expelled through mouth, because of the drugs having the dominancy of *agni* and *vāyu bhūtās*, involvement of *udāna vāta* and also the upward movement of the emetic drug. And the vitiated *doṣas* will be expelled through rectum, because of the drugs having the dominancy of *prthivī* and *ap mahābhūtās*, involvement of *apāna vāta* and also the downward movement of the purgative drug.

If the drugs have both these qualities, they will be having emetic as well as purgative action.

Emesis and purgation according to doṣas:

कफे विद्ध्याद्वमनं संयोगे वा कफोल्बणे । तद्विरेचनं पित्ते-

Emesis is to be conducted when:

- *Kapha* is vitiated alone or in association of *pitta*.
- *Pitta* and *vāta* occupies the place of *kapha*.
- Increase of *tridoṣas*, with the predominance of *kapha*.

Purgation is to be conducted when:

- *Pitta* is vitiated alone or in association of *kapha*.
- *Kapha* occupies the place of *pitta* etc.

Indications for emesis:

-विशेषण तु वामयेत् ॥1॥

नवज्वरातिसाराधःपित्तासृग्राजयक्षिमणः । कुष्ठमेहापचीग्रन्थिश्लीपदोन्मादकासिनः ॥2॥

श्वासहूल्लासवीसर्पस्तन्यदोषोधर्वरोगिणः ।

1. *Navajwara* (acute fever), 2. *atisāra* (diarrhoea), 3. *adhogata rakta pitta* (bleeding from lower orifices), 4. *rājayakṣmā* (tuberculosis), 5. *kuṣṭha* (skin diseases), 6. *meha* (diabetes), 7. *apaci* (goitre), 8. *granthi* (tumor), 9. *ślīpada* (filariasis), 10. *unmāda* (insanity), 11. *kāsa* (cough), 12. *śwāsa* (dyspnoea), 13. *hṛllāsa* (nausea), 14. *visarpa* (herpes), 15. *stanya doṣa* (vitiated breast milk) and 16. *ūrdhwā roga* (E.N.T. & eye disorders).

Contraindications for emesis:

अवाम्या गर्भिणी रूक्षः क्षुधितो नित्यदुःखितः ॥3॥

बालवृद्धकृशस्थूलहृतेगिक्षतदुर्बलाः । प्रसक्तवमथुप्लीहतिमिरक्रिमिकोष्ठिनः ॥4॥

ऊर्ध्वप्रवृत्तवाय्वस्वदत्तवस्तिहतस्वराः । मूत्राघात्युदीर्गुल्मी दुर्वमोऽत्यग्निरर्शसः ॥5॥

उदावर्तभ्रमाष्ठिलापार्श्वरुग्वातरोगिणः । ऋते विषग्राजीर्णविरुद्धाभ्यवहारतः ॥6॥

1. *Garbhīnī* (pregnant women), 2. *rūkṣa* (those who didn't undergo oleation therapy), 3. *kṣudhīta* (hunger) 4. *nitya duḥkhīta* (suffering from constant grief and disease), 5. *bāla* (children), 6. *vṛddha* (aged persons), 7. *kṛṣa* (emaciated), 8. *sthūla* (obese) 9. *hṛdroga* (heart diseases), 10. *kṣata* (injured), 11. *durbala* (debilitated), 12. *prasakta vamathu* (suffering from severe vomiting), 13. *plihā* (disorders of spleen), 14. *timira* (cataract), 15. *krimikoṣṭha* (worm infestation) 16. *ūrdwagata rakta pitta* (bleeding from upper orifices), 17. *dattavasti* (immediately after *vasti* therapy), 18. *hataswara* (loss of voice), 19. *mūtrāghāta* (retention of urine), 20. *udara* (ascitis), 21. *gulma* (abdominal tumors), 22. *durvamo* (not responded for emesis), 23. *atyagni* (strong digestive power), 24. *arśas* (piles), 25. *udāvarta* (upward movement of *vāta*), 26. *bhrama* (giddiness), 27. *asthīlā* (prostatic enlargement), 28. *pārśwaruk* (pain in the flanks) and 29. *vāta roga* (suffering from *vāta* disorders).

Except in condition of *viṣa* (poisoning), *garaviṣa* (artificial poisoning), *ajīrṇa* (indigestion) and *viruddhābhya vahāra* (consumption of incompatible foods) emesis is contraindicated in the above mentioned 29 conditions. That means *vamana* is indicated in all the above 29 conditions whenever anybody is suffering from poisoning, indigestion etc.

प्रसक्तवमथोः पूर्वे प्रायेणामज्वरोऽपि च । धूमान्तैः कर्मभिर्बज्ज्याः, सर्वैरिव त्वजीर्णिनः ॥७॥

Generally in the above conditions mentioned prior to *prasakta vamathu* viz. from 1 to 11 i.e. *garbhīṇī* to *durbala* and also in *āmajwara* (acute fever) not only *vamana* but also all the *śodhana* procedures like *virecana*, *vasti*, *nasya*, *gaṇḍūṣa* and *dhūmapāna* are contraindicated.

Here in the above quotation the word ‘*prāyēṇa*’ is used. That means in general. It suggests that generally the therapeutic procedures from *vamana* to *dhūmapāna* are contraindicated for *garbhīṇī* and others. But *nirūha vasti* in the eighth month of pregnancy and *vamana karma* in *navajwara* is indicated.

Those who are suffering from *ajīrṇa* (indigestion) are not at all eligible for any one of the *śodhana* therapeutic procedures.

Indications for purgation:

विरेकसाध्या गुल्माशर्तेविस्फोटव्यङ्ग्कामलाः । जीर्णज्वरोदरगरच्छर्दिप्सीहहलीमकाः ॥८॥

विद्रुधस्थिमिरं काचः स्यन्दः पक्वाशयव्यथा । योनिशुक्राश्रया रोगाः कोष्ठगाः कृमयो व्रणाः ॥९॥

वातास्त्रमूर्धर्वं रक्तं मूत्राधातः शकृदग्रहः । वाम्याश्च कुष्ठमेहाद्याः—

1. *Gulma* (abdominal tumors), 2. *arśas* (hemorrhoids), 3. *visphoṭa* (smallpox), 4. *vyatīga* (black spots on the face), 5. *kāmalā* (jaundice), 6. *jīrṇajwara* (chronic fever), 7. *udara* (ascitis), 8. *gara* (artificial poisoning), 9. *chardi* (vomiting), 10. *plihā* (enlargement of spleen), 11. *halīmaka* (advanced stage of jaundice), 12. *vidradhi* (abscess), 13. *timira* (blindness), 14. *kāca* (cataract), 15. *syanda* (conjunctivitis), 16. *pakwāśaya vyathā* (pain in the large intestines), 17. *yoni roga* (diseases of vagina), 18. *śukra roga* (seminal disorders), 19. *koṣṭha roga* (G.I.T. disorders), 20. *kṛmi* (worm infestation), 21. *vraṇa* (ulcers), 22. *vātarakta* (gout), 23. *urdhwagata raktapitta* (bleeding from upper orifices), 24. *mūtrāghāta* (retention of urine), 25. *śakṛdgraha* (obstruction of faeces), 26. *kuṣṭha mehādyā* (diseases indicated for *vamana* i.e. starting from serial number 5. *kuṣṭha*, 6. *meha* and up to 16. *ürdhwa roga*) are also eligible for *virecana* (purgation therapy).

Contraindications for purgation:

—न तु रेच्यो नवज्वरी ॥१०॥

अल्पाग्न्यधोगपित्तास्त्रक्षतपाच्चतिसारिणः । सशल्यास्थापितक्रूरकोष्ठातिस्निग्धशोषिणः ॥११॥

1. *Navajwara* (acute fevers), 2. *alpāgni* (poor digestive power), 3. *adhogata raktapitta* (bleeding from lower orifices), 4. *kṣata pāyu* (injured anus/rectum), 5. *atisāra* (diarrhoea), 6. *sa-śalya* (foreign body present inside the body), 7. *āsthāpita* (after the administration of *āsthāpana vasti*), 8. *krūrakoṣṭha* (costive bowels), 9. *atisnidgda* (excessive unctuous) and 10. *śoṣa* (tuberculosis).

Vamana-vidhi:

अथ साधारणे काले स्नानाधस्त्विन्नं यथाविधि । श्वेवम्यमुत्क्लिष्टकं प्रत्यमाषतिलादिभिः ॥१२॥

निशां सुप्तं सुजीर्णान्नं पूर्वाह्ने कृतमङ्गलम् । निरन्नपीषत्स्निग्धं वा पेयया पीतसर्पिष्म् ॥१३॥

वृद्धबालाबलक्लीबभीरुन् रोगानुरोधतः । आकण्ठं पायितान्मद्यं क्षीरमिक्षुरसं रसम् ॥१४॥

यथाविकारविहितां मधुसैन्धवसंयुताम् । कोष्ठं विभज्य भैषज्यमात्रां मन्त्राभिमन्त्रिताम् ॥१५॥

'ब्रह्मदक्षाश्विरुद्रेन्त्रीभूचन्द्रार्कानिलानला: । ऋषयः सौषधिग्रामा भूतसङ्घाश्च पान्तु वः ॥16॥
रसायनमिवर्णाणमराणामिवामृतम् । सुधेवोत्तमनागानां भैषज्यमिदमस्तु ते ॥17॥
अ३० नमो भगवते भैषज्यगुरुवे वैद्यर्यप्रभराजाय । तथागतायाहते सम्यक्सम्बुद्धाय । तद्यथा ।
अ३० भैषज्ये भैषज्ये महाभैषज्ये समुद्रते स्वाहा ॥'
प्राडमुखं पाययेत्-

Pūrva karma (Preoperative procedure):

- * During the normal seasons, persons eligible for emesis should be given oleation and sudation properly.
- * The day before emesis, diet which stir up *kapha* is to be given such as the meat of the animals of marshy land, and aquatic animals, fish, milk, curd, black gram, sesame, vegetables and liquid foods.
- * After the completion of the digestion of the food taken on the previous day the patient is asked to have head bath, besmeared with sandalwood paste and others, wear white clothes and flower garlands and then perform spiritual rites.
- * Apply oil on the head and chest and do gentle massage and sudation.
- * Afterwards ask the patient to drink milk, buttermilk, mutton soup, sugarcane juice, thin gruel etc. up to throat level i.e. to his maximum capacity.
- * Never administer the emetic drug in the empty stomach.

Pradhāna karma:

- * Ask the patient to sit comfortably facing towards east on a chair of the height of the knee.
- * Then the drug selected for emesis, in accordance with *doṣa*, *dūṣyas* etc. should be mixed with honey and rock salt is to be given to the patient, after sanctifying it with the hymn 'Let Brahma, Dakṣa Prajāpati, Aśwani kumāras, Rudra, Indra, Bhūmi, Candra, Sūrya, Agni, all the Sages along with Medicinal Herbs, *Pañca Mahābhūtas* protect you.'

Let the medicine be to you similar to *rasāyana* for the Sages, *amṛta* for Gods and *sudhā* for the Serpents. '*Om*, salutation to the worshipful Bhaiṣajyaguru, the Vaidūrya Prabhāraja, the Tathāgata, the Arhat, the Samyak Sambuddha, *Om*, *bhaiṣajye*, *bhaiṣajye*, *mahā bhaiṣajye*, *sāmudgate*'. By uttering these hymns, one has to take the emetic drug. Suggest the patient to concentrate his mind in the process of emesis only.

- * If the patient is aged, child, delicate, coward ask him to drink either wine, milk, sugarcane juice, or mutton soup and then administer emetic drug after mixing it with honey and rock-salt.

After administering the emetic drug:

-पीतो मुहूर्तमनुपालयेत् । तन्मना: जातहूल्लासप्रसेकक्षण्डर्येत्ततः ॥18॥

अड्गुलिभ्यामनायस्तो नालेन मृदुनाऽथवा । गलताल्वरुजन् वेगानप्रवृत्तान् प्रवर्तयन् ॥19॥

प्रवर्तयन् प्रवृत्तांश्च जानुतुल्यासने स्थितः । उभे पार्श्वे ललाटं च वमतश्चास्य धारयेत् ॥20॥

प्रपीडयेत्तथा नाभिं पृष्ठं च प्रतिलोमतः ।



Madanphala



Madhuka/yasti



Varam (rock salt)



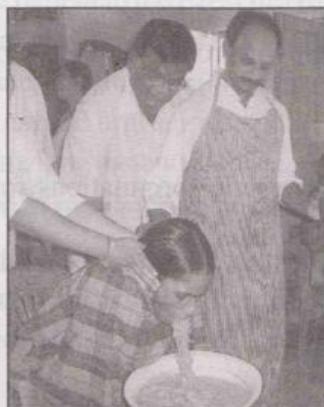
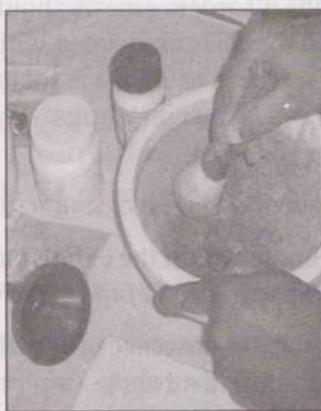
Vacā dry



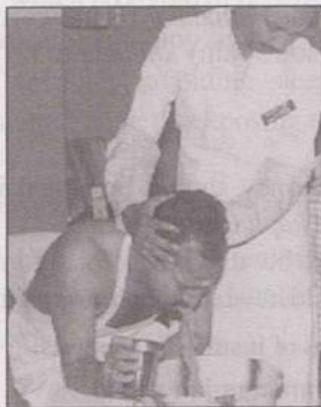
Madhu



Mixing the drug



Vamana Karma



- * After consuming emetic drug one should wait for a *muhūrta kāla* (48 minutes) for the commencement of vomiting with keen intent. After the appearance of oppression in the chest and salivation one should try to vomit.
- * Forceful expulsion should not be done. To encourage the urge, tickling the throat, with either of his fingers or with the stalks of lotus, lily or castor.
- * Onset of perspiration indicates the liquefaction of *dosas*. Horripilations indicate the *dosas* are dislodging from their places of stagnation.
- Abdominal distension suggests *dosas* reached the stomach. Nausea and salivation indicates the upward movement of the *dosas*.
- * Then instruct the patient to vomit without bending his head too much and his head should be supported while vomiting.
- * The attendant should give gentle massage in the upward direction over the umbilical region and back.

Suitable emetic drug according to *dosa*:

कफे तीक्ष्णोष्णाकटुकैः पित्ते स्वादुहिमैरिति ॥२ १ ॥
वमेत् श्निग्धाम्ललवणैः संसृष्टे मरुता कफे ।

In case of only *kapha* disorders emesis should be conducted with *tikṣṇa*, *uṣṇa guṇa* and *katu rasa* drugs and when *kapha* is associated with *pitta* it should be conducted with *madhura rasa* and *śīta vīrya* drugs, whereas *kapha* associated with *vāta*, emesis should be conducted with *snigdha guṇa*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasa* drugs.

Maximum limit for emesis:

पित्तस्य दर्शनं यावच्छेदो वा श्लेष्मणो भवेत् ॥२ २ ॥

Emesis should be conducted till the expulsion of vitiated *kapha*, or the medicine administered comes out or till the appearance of *pitta* in the vomiting material.

Useful drugs in the state of absence or insufficient bouts:

हीनवेगः कणाधात्रीसिद्धार्थलवणोदकैः । वमेत्युनःपुनः:-

After administering the emetics, in the state of absence or insufficient bouts *kāra/pippalī* (*Piper longum*), *dhātri/āmalaka* (*Emblica officinalis*), *siddhārtha/śweta srasapa* (*Brassica campestris* var. *sarson* Prain) *kalka* is to be given with rock salt and warm water to induce vomiting.

Note:

- * Rock salt and honey should be added in all emetic formulations for liquefaction and scraping out the *kapha* respectively.
- * Emetics should be unwholesome, horrifying, ugly and foul smelling whereas the purgatives should have exactly the opposite qualities.

Signs and symptoms of insufficient emesis:

-तत्र वेगानामप्रवर्तनम् ॥२ ३ ॥
प्रवृत्तिः सविबन्धा वा केवलस्यौषधस्य वा । अयोगस्तेन निष्ठीवकपण्डूकोठज्वरादयः ॥२ ४ ॥

- * Absence of vomiting.
- * Expulsion of only the medicine.
- * Obstruction to each bout indicates insufficient emesis (*ayoga*).

Insufficient emesis results in *niṣṭhīva* (excessive spitting), *kaṇḍu* (itching), *kotha* (rash on the skin) and *jwara* (fever) etc.

Signs and symptoms of proper emesis:

निर्विबन्धं प्रवर्तन्ते कफपित्तानिलाः क्रमात् ।
(मनःप्रसादः स्वास्थ्यं चावस्थानं च स्वयं भवेत् । वैपरीत्यमयोगानां न चातिमहती व्यथा ॥)
सम्यग्योगे-

- * Expulsion of *kapha*, *pitta* and *vāta* in the succeeding order at the proper time.
- * Starts and stops the bouts without inducing.
- * Feeling of the relief from the symptoms and body becomes light.
- * Mind and voice also becomes clear.
- * Absence of the symptoms like *niṣṭhīva* etc.

Signs and symptoms of excessive emesis:

—अतियोगे तु फेनचन्द्रकरक्तवत् ॥२ ५ ॥
वमितं क्षामता दाहः कण्ठशोषस्तमो भ्रमः । घोरा वाय्वामया मृत्युजीविशोणितनिर्गमात् ॥२ ६ ॥

- * Expulsion of frothy and blood vomiting with glistering particles.
- * Weakness, burning sensation, dryness in the throat, feeling of darkness, giddiness, severe disorders of *vāta* and hemorrhage which may leads to death also.

Pāscāt karma (Care after emesis):

सम्यग्योगेन वमितं क्षणमाश्वास्य पाययेत् । धूमत्रयस्यान्यतमं स्नेहाचारमथादिशेत् ॥२ ७ ॥

- * After observing the signs and symptoms of proper emesis ask the patient to wash hands, foot and the mouth.
- * After 45 minutes, administer *dhūmapāna* and then advise for *tāmbūla sevana*.
- * Then advise the patient to have rest in a room, which is devoid of breeze and also instruct to follow the regimen of post-operative care of oleation therapy such as—use of warm water for drinking and bathing, maintenance of celibacy, avoiding sleeping in day time, suppression of natural urges, loud speaking, anger, anxiety, exposing to sunlight and cold breeze, travelling long distances etc.

ततः सायं प्रभाते वा क्षुद्रान् स्नातः सुखाम्बुना । भुज्ञानो रक्तशाल्यनं भजेत्पेयादिकं क्रमम् ॥२ ८ ॥

Afterwards either in the same day evening or next day morning after feeling hungry, the patient is advised to take hot water bath and give light food such as *peyā* and other items prepared with red variety of *sāli* rice, described in *samsarjana krama*.

Samsarjana krama:

After *śodhana* therapy body becomes weak, systems become delicate and the digestive power

also gets diminished. The process of restoration of digestive power by means of advocating specific regimen of diet is known as *sāṁsarjana krama*.

Peyā, vilepi etc. are diet regimen:

पेयां विलेपीमकृतं कृतं च यूषं रसं त्रीनुभयं तथैकम् ।
क्रमेण सेवेत नरोऽन्नकालान् प्रधानमध्यावरशुद्धिशुद्धः ॥१२ ९ ॥

According to the administration of the type of drug *śodhana* is of 3 types viz: *pravara śuddhi*, *madhyama śuddhi* and *avara śuddhi*.

Peyā (thin gruel), *vilepi* (thick gruel), *akṛta* or *kṛta yūṣa* (soup) and *māṁsa rasa* (mutton soup) can be given to the persons who had *pravara śuddhi* for 3-3 *anna kālas*. For the persons who had *madhyama śuddhi* for 2-2 *anna kālas* while it should be given for 1-1 *anna kāla* in *avara śuddhi*. Therefore the normal diet can be given on the 14th *anna kāla* or 7th day evening in *pravara śuddhi* and 10th *anna kāla* or 5th day evening in *madhyama śuddhi* and 6th *anna kāla* or 3rd day evening in *avara śuddhi*.

Akṛta means without processed. *Kṛta* means the above food which is processed with oil, salt and pungent substances.

Day	Time	Pravara śuddhi	Madhyama śuddhi	Avara śuddhi/ Hīna śuddhi
I day	Morning	<i>Peyā</i>	No diet will be given	
	Evening		<i>Peyā</i>	<i>Peyā</i>
II day	Morning	<i>Peyā</i>	<i>Peyā</i>	<i>Vilepi</i> <i>Akṛta/kṛta yūṣa</i>
	Evening	<i>Peyā</i>	<i>Vilepi</i>	
III day	Morning	<i>Vilepi</i>	<i>Vilepi</i>	<i>Akṛta/kṛta māṁsa rasa</i> Normal diet
	Evening	<i>Vilepi</i>	<i>Akṛta yūṣa</i>	
IV day	Morning	<i>Vilepi</i>	<i>Kṛta yūṣa</i>	Normal diet Normal diet
	Evening	<i>Akṛta yūṣa</i>	<i>Akṛta māṁsa rasa</i>	
V day	Morning	<i>Kṛta yūṣa</i>	<i>Kṛta māṁsa rasa</i>	Normal diet
	Evening	<i>Kṛta yūṣa</i>	Normal diet	Normal diet
VI day	Morning	<i>Akṛta māṁsa rasa</i>	Normal diet	Normal diet
	Evening	<i>Kṛta māṁsa rasa</i>	Normal diet	Normal diet
VII day	Morning	<i>Kṛta māṁsa rasa</i>	Normal diet	Normal diet
	Evening	Normal diet	Normal diet	Normal diet

यथाऽणुरग्निस्तृणगोमयादौः सन्धुक्ष्यमाणो भवति क्रमेण ।
महान् स्थिरः सर्वपचस्तथैव शुद्धस्य पेयादिभिरन्तराग्निः ॥३०॥

A spark of fire after being fed by grass, cakes of cow dung etc. will become a great fire and can melt even heavy metallic substances in due course. Similarly after *sodhana* therapy diminished digestive power will also get the capacity of digesting heavy food substances after gradual intake of the regimen of diet.

Vamana-virecana vega and parimāṇa (Number of bouts and the quantity of vomitus and purgative material):

जघन्यमध्यप्रवरे तु वेगाश्वल्वा इष्टा वमने षडष्टौ ।
दशैव ते द्वित्रिगुणाविरेके प्रस्थस्तथा स्याद्द्विचतुर्गणश्च ॥३१॥
पित्तावसानं वमनं विरेकादद्वृ, कफान्तं च विरेकमाहुः ।
द्वित्रान् सविद्कानपनीय वेगान् मेयं विरेके, वमने तु पीतम् ॥३२॥

- * The desirable number of *vega* (bouts) in *vamana karma* are 8, 6 and 4 in *pravara śuddhi*, *madhyama śuddhi* and *avara śuddhi* respectively, and they are 30, 20 and 10 in case of *virecana*.
- * In terms of quantity, it is 2 *prastha*, 1½ *prastha* and 1 *prastha* in case of *vamana* and 4 *prastha*, 3 *prastha* and 2 *prastha* in *virecana*.
- (Note: 1 *prastha* = 768 ml.)
- * *Vamana* should be conducted till the appearance of *pitta* as well as getting proper signs and symptoms of emesis.
Similarly *virecana* should be conducted till the appearance of *kapha* as well as getting proper signs and symptoms of purgation.
- * While counting the number of bouts in case of *virecana*, one has to start counting by leaving the first 2-3 bouts.

In case of *vamana* the counting of bouts should be started after the expulsion of the emetic drug.

	Vamana		
	<i>Pravara</i>	<i>Madhyama</i>	<i>Avara</i>
<i>Vegakī</i>	8	6	4
<i>Mānakī</i>	2 <i>Prastha</i>	1½ <i>Prastha</i>	1 <i>Prastha</i>
<i>Antakī</i>	←	<i>Pittānta</i>	→
<i>Laiṅgakī</i>	← Signs and symptoms of proper emesis	→	
	Virecana		
	<i>Pravara</i>	<i>Madhyama</i>	<i>Avara</i>
<i>Vegakī</i>	30	20	10
<i>Mānakī</i>	4 <i>Prastha</i>	3 <i>Prastha</i>	2 <i>Prastha</i>
<i>Antakī</i>	←	<i>Kaphānta</i>	→
<i>Laiṅgakī</i>	← Signs and symptoms of proper purgation	→	

Virecana-vidhi (Purgation therapy):

अथैनं वामितं भूयः स्नेहस्वेदोपपादितम् । श्लेष्मकाले गते ज्ञात्वा कोष्ठं सम्यग्विरेचयेत् ॥३ ३ ॥

Pūrva karma (Preoperative procedure):

- * In general purgation should not be conducted without emesis except in costive bowel. Purgation therapy should be conducted only to the persons who have undergone oleation and sudation, again after emesis.
- * The day before purgation, the patient should be given mutton soup and the diet, which should not stir up *kapha*. It should be warm, liquid, and unctuous added with sour fruit juices such as pomegranate etc.
- * On the day of purgation, after the completion of the process of digestion of the food taken in the previous day, purgative drug is to be administered early in the morning, after passing the period of predominance of *kapha doṣa*, after determining the nature of *kōṣṭha*.
- * Purgative drug should be administered in the empty stomach only.

बहुपित्तो मृदुः कोष्ठः क्षीरेणापि विरिच्यते । प्रभूतमारुतः क्रूरः कृच्छ्राच्छ्यामादिकैरपि ॥३ ४ ॥

- * Whenever *pitta* is predominant, the nature of *kōṣṭha* will be known as *mṛdu kōṣṭha* (soft bowels) and even milk causes purgation.
- * Similarly the nature of *kōṣṭha* will be assessed as *krūra kōṣṭha* (hard or costive bowels) when there is dominancy of *vāta* and causes purgation with great difficulty even after the administration of *śyāmā*, *snuhī*, *kaikuṣṭha* and other drastic purgatives.

Pradhāna karma:

- * Purgation without emesis causes the obstruction of the purgative drug by vitiated *kapha* and the drug may act adversely and also loose its power of elimination. Due to the forceful action of the purgative drug, accumulated *kapha* reaches the left side of the abdomen, duodenum and causes distention of abdomen or dysentery.
- * These complications will not occur in the persons having costive bowel, because of the predominance of *vāta*.
- * The complications observed in purgation without emesis are also found in case of conducting purgation during the period of *kapha* predominance. Pain, distension of the abdomen and heaviness are the symptoms observed.
- * Hence purgative drug should be given only after passing the period of *kapha* dominancy.

Suitable purgative drug according to doṣa:

कषायमधुरैः पित्ते विरेकः, कटुकैः कफे । स्निग्धोष्मालवणीर्वायौ-

- * Purgation is to be conducted with the drugs, which are having *kaṣāya* and *madhura rasa* for *pitta* diseases. Where as *kaṭu rasa* drugs should be given in *kapha* disorders and *snigdha*, *uṣṇa* and *lavaṇa rasa* (unctuous, hot and salty) substances are indicated for *vāta* disorders.

Notes:

- * Soon after the purgative drug has been given, cold water should be sprinkled on the face of the patient to prevent the occurrence of vomiting.
- * Then asked the patient to gargle his mouth with warm water and inhale the smell of soil, lemon, *mādīphala*, jasmine etc.
- * Afterwards the patient is asked to take rest in a room, which is devoid of heavy breeze, and drink warm water at regular intervals to initiate the urges.
- * Should not suppress the urges and evacuate the bowels in the bed pan to measure the quantity of output.
- * During the process of purgation, *vāta*, urine, faeces, *pitta*, and *kapha* will be expelled in the succeeding order and flatus, at the end.

Measures to be followed in the absence of bouts:

—अप्रवृत्तौ तु पाययेत् ॥३ ५ ॥
उच्चाम्बु, स्वेदयेदस्य पाणितापेन चोदरम् ।

If the bouts are not started, the patient is asked to drink hot water to activate the drug and his abdomen should be fomented with hands made warm.

Replication of purgative drug administration:

उत्थानेऽल्पे दिने तस्मिन्भुक्त्वाऽन्येद्युः पुनः पिबेत् ॥३ ६ ॥
अदृढस्नेहकोष्ठस्तु पिबेदूर्ध्वं दशाहतः । भूयोऽप्युपस्कृतात्नः स्नेहस्वेदैविरीचनम् ॥३ ७ ॥
यौगिकं सम्यगालोच्य स्मरन्पूर्वमतिक्रमम् ।

- * If the given drug doesn't serve the purpose of eliminating the vitiated *dosa*, he is allowed to take food on that day and sufficient dose of the purgative drug can be administered on the next day.
- * If the purgative drug is being digested without doing its function, second dose can be given on the same day.
- * Never administer second dose without knowing the position of the drug, which may cause severe complications. If the purgation therapy may not be fulfilled successfully due to the improper oleation and sudation, give rest for a period of 10 days and conduct the total procedure systematically without repeating the previous mistakes.

Signs and symptoms of improper, proper and excessive purgation:Improper signs and symptoms:

हृत्कुक्ष्यशुद्धिरुचिरत्क्लेशः श्लेष्मपित्तयोः ॥३ ८ ॥
कण्डूविदाहः पिटिका: पीनसो वातविङ्ग्रहः । अयोगलक्षणम्—

- * *Hṛt, kuksi aśuddhi* (improper cleaning of the heart and abdomen/abdominal distension).
- * *Aruci* (anorexia).
- * *Sleṣmā pitta utkleśa* (salivation associated with *kapha* and *pitta*).
- * *Kaṇḍu* (itching).

- * *Vidāha* (burning sensation in the abdomen).
- * *Pitikā* (eruptions on the skin)
- * *Pīnasa* (coryza)
- * *Vāta vidgraha* (obstruction of flatus and faeces).

Proper signs and symptoms:

—योगो वैपरीत्ये यथोदितात् ॥३ ९ ॥

Exactly opposite of the above signs and symptoms can be treated as proper signs and symptoms of purgation.

Signs and symptoms of excessive purgation:

विटपित्तकफवातेषु निःसुतेषु क्रमात्त्ववेत् । निःश्लेष्यपित्तमुदकं श्वेतं कृष्णं सलोहितम् ॥४ ० ॥
मांसधावनतुल्यं वा मेदःखण्डाभमेव वा । गुदनिःसरणं तृष्णा भ्रमो नेत्रप्रवेशनम् ॥४ १ ॥
भवन्त्यतिविरक्तस्य तथाऽतिवमनामया ।

- * After the elimination of faeces, *pitta*, *kapha* and *vāta* in the succeeding order liquid material without associating any *doṣas* will be eliminated from the body. Such liquid material may be whitish or blackish in color or associated with blood or the color resembling red blood or *māṁsadhāvana tulya* (resembling the water in which meat has been washed) or *medo khaṇḍābhameva* (looks like a piece of fatty tissue) will be discharged.
- * *Guda nissāraṇa* (prolapsed rectum).
- * *Tṛṣṇā* (thirst).
- * *Bhrama* (giddiness).
- * *Netra praveśana* (sunken eyes).
- * And also the symptoms of excessive emesis.

Paścāt karma (Post-operative care):

सम्यग्विरक्तमेन च वमनोक्तेन योजयेत् ॥४ २ ॥
धूमवर्ज्येन विधिनाततो वमितवानिव । क्रमेणान्नानि भुज्ञानो भजेत्प्रकृतिभोजनम् ॥४ ३ ॥

After obtaining proper signs and symptoms of purgation follow the post-operative regimen similar to emesis except *dhūmapāna*. Afterwards follow *samsarjana krama*.

मन्दवह्निमसंशुद्धमक्षामं दोषदुर्बलम् । अदृष्टजीर्णलिङ्गं च लङ्घयेत्पीतभेषजम् ॥४ ४ ॥
स्नेहस्वेदादौषधोत्कलेशसङ्गैरिति न बाध्यते ।

After the administration of virecana drug, the person is advised to go for *lainghana* (fasting) in the following 5 conditions:

1. *Manda vahni* (loss of power of digestion).
2. *Asamśuddha* (improper signs of purification).
3. *Akṣāma* (not became emaciated due to *śodhana* therapy).
4. *Doṣa durbala* (not become weak by the increase of *doṣa*).
5. *Adṛṣṭa jīrṇa liṅga* (not appearing the symptoms of the digestion of the administered purgative drug).

Conduction of fasting in the above conditions doesn't cause any sort of discomfort due to the obstruction of *doṣas*, which were aggravated by oleation and sudation.

Necessity of *peyādi krama*:

संशोधनास्वविक्रावस्नेहयोजनलङ्घनैः ॥४५॥
यात्यग्निर्मन्दतां तस्मात् क्रमं पेयादिमाचरेत् ।

Soon after the elimination therapy, bloodletting, oleation etc. the digestive power gets impaired. Hence '*peyādi sarīsarjana krama*' is to be followed.

Ineligible for *peyādi krama*:

स्तुताल्पपित्तश्लेष्माणं मद्यपं वातपैत्तिकम् ॥४६॥
पेयां न पाययेत्तेषां तर्पणादिक्रमो हितः ।

'*Peyādi sarīsarjana krama*' should not be given in the following conditions:

- * Oozing of little quantity of *pitta* and *kapha*, habituated alcoholic, *vāta-pitta* constitution,
For those *tarpaṇa* is indicated.

Commencement of drug action:

अपक्वं वमनं दोषान् पच्यमानं विरेचनम् ॥४७॥
निहिद्वमनस्यातः पाकं न प्रतिपालयेत् ।

Emetic drug will act without undergoing the process of digestion, whereas purgative drug acts only after undergoing the process of digestion. Hence the physician need not wait for digesting the emetic drug.

दुर्बलो बहुदोषश्च दोषपाकेन यः स्वयम् ॥४८॥
विरिच्यते भेदनीयैर्भौज्यैस्तमुपपादयेत् ।

Person, who is weak and in a condition of increased vitiation of *doṣas* develop bouts of purgation even without administering the purgative drug. In such circumstance he should be treated with the foods having the property of *bhedana* (purgative).

Reasons for administration of mild drugs to the weak persons etc:

दुर्बलः शोधितः पूर्वमल्पदोषः कृशो नरः ॥४९॥
अपरिज्ञातकोष्ठश्च पिबेन्मृद्धल्पमौषधम् । वरं तदसकृत्पीतमन्यथा संशयावहम् ॥५०॥
हरेद्वाहंश्वलान्दोषानल्पानल्पान् पुनःपुनः । दुर्बलस्य मृदुद्रव्यैरल्पान् संशमयेत्तु तान् ॥५१॥
क्लेशयन्ति चिरं ते हि हन्त्युर्वेनमनिहताः ।

- * Administer the drug having mild potency as well as less in quantity in the following conditions:

Durbala (weak persons), *śodhita pūrvam* (undergone purificatory measures previously), *alpadoṣa* (mild vitiation of *doṣa*), *kṛṣa* (emaciated), *aparijñāta koṣṭha* (unknown bowels),

- * It is better to administer lesser doses in frequent intervals. Otherwise it may be harmful and cause even death.

- * The drug in smaller and repeated doses will be able to eliminate the vitiated *dosas* from the body gradually and brings back the normalcy of *dosas* without causing any weakness in the body.
- * *Dosas* should be eliminated from the body of a weak person, when they are in the state of mild vitiation only. Other-wise they trouble the person greatly and even kill him.

Procedure of elimination in case of mandāgni and krūra koṣṭha:

मन्दाग्निं क्रूरकोष्ठं च सक्षारलवणैर्घृतैः ॥५२॥
सन्धुक्षिताग्निं विजितकफवातं च शोधयेत् ।

Those who are having weak digestive power and costive bowels (*krūra koṣṭha*) should be given ghee processed with alkalies and salts prior to the administration of purificatory drugs to restore the power of digestion as well as to conquer *kapha* and *vāta*.

Administer *vasti* before purgation in case of rūkṣa and others:

रूक्षबह्वनिलकूरकोष्ठव्यायामशीलिनाम् ॥५३॥
दीप्ताग्नीनां च भैषज्यमविरेच्यैव जीर्यति । तेभ्यो बस्तिं पुरा दद्यात्ततः स्निग्धं विरेचनम् ॥५४॥
शकुन्निर्हृत्य वा किञ्चित्तीक्षणाभिः फलवर्तिभिः । प्रवृत्तं हि मलं स्निग्धो विरेको निहरित्सुखम् ॥५५॥

- * Purgative drug is being digested and eliminated from the body without performing it's action in the following conditions:

Rūkṣa (who are dry), *bahu anila* (excessive vitiation of *vāta*), *krūra koṣṭha* (costive bowels), *vyāyāmaśīli* (doing regular exercises), *diptāgnī* (strong digestive power).

- * In such circumstances conduct *vasti karma* initially followed by *snigdha virecana* with *eranda tīla* or *bindu ghṛta*.

(or)

- * Remove the obstructed faeces by means of *phalavarti* (rectal suppositories) and then administer *snigdha virecana dravya*.

Administer purgative drug after mild oleation:

विषाभिघातपिटिकाकुष्ठशोफविसर्पिणः । कामलापाण्डुमेहार्तान्नातिस्निग्धान् विशोधयेत् ॥५६॥
सर्वान् स्नेहविरेकैश्च, रूक्षस्तु स्नेहभावितान् ।

Persons who are suffering from *viṣa* (poison), *abhighāta* (injury), *piṭikā* (boils), *kuṣṭha* (skin disorders), *śopha* (swelling), *visarpa* (herpes), *kāmalā* (jaundice), *pāṇḍu* (anemia), *meha* (diabetes) etc. should be administered purgative drug after mild oleation.

All the above should be given *snigdha virecana* and those who are unctuous should be given *rūkṣa virecana*.

Conduct oleation and sudation in between purificatory measures:

कर्मणां वमनादीनां पुनरप्यन्तरेऽन्तरे ॥५७॥
स्नेहस्वेदौ प्रयुक्तीत, स्नेहमन्ते बलाय च ।

In between emesis and other purificatory therapies oleation and sudation should be conducted and at the end of purification again oleation is advised to gain strength.

Importance of sneha and sweda—a simile:

मलो हि देहादुत्क्लेश्य हियते वाससो यथा ॥५ ८ ॥

स्नेहस्वेदैस्तथोत्क्लिष्टः शोध्यते शोधनैर्मलः ।

Just like the dirt from a cloth is being removed after properly washed, vitiated *doṣas* also will be eliminated from the body by means of purificatory measures preceded by oleation and sudation.

Advantages of sneha & sweda:

स्नेहस्वेदावनभ्यस्य कुर्यात्संशोधनं तु यः । दारु शुष्कमिवानामे शरीरं तस्य दीर्घते ॥५ ९ ॥

Similar to a dry stick, which is being tried to bend without applying oil and heat, the body is also crumbled when administered purificatory measures without undergoing oleation and sudation.

Benefits of purificatory therapies:

बुद्धिप्रसादं बलमिन्द्रियाणां धातुस्थिरत्वं ज्वलनस्य दीप्तिम् ।

चिराच्च पाकं वयसः करोति संशोधनं सम्यगुपास्यमानम् ॥६ ० ॥

Properly administered purificatory drug will give—lucidity of the mind, strengthens the sense organs, gives stability to the tissues, improves digestive power, reduces ageing etc.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने वमनविरेचनविधिर्नामाष्टादशोऽध्यायः ॥१८॥

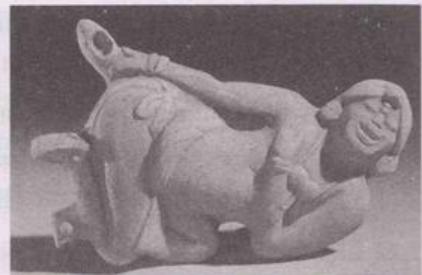
Thus ends the eighteenth chapter entitled *Vamana-virecana-vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhāta son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhāta explained the eliminatory procedures such as emesis and purgation in a systematic way. Definition of emesis and purgation, mode of action, indications of those techniques according to *doṣas*, eligible and not eligible persons for emesis and purgation, pre-operative, operative and post-operative procedures of emesis and purgation, *samsarjana krama* etc. have been discussed. In the end the importance of proper administration of the purificatory drugs was mentioned.



19 BASTI-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Medicated Enemata]



अथातो बस्तिविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘Vamana-Virecana-vidhi’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘Basti-vidhi’ (Medicated Enemata), thus said Ātreyā and other great sages.

Definition of basti/vasti:

बस्तिना दीयते बस्ति वा पूर्वमन्वेत्यतो बस्तिः ।

The term *vasti* or *basti* is given due to the administration of medicated drugs into the rectum by means of urinary bladder of various animals like cow, deer, goat, sheep etc. or due to the stay of administered drug near by urinary bladder for some time.

Importance and types of basti:

वातोल्बणेषु दोषेषु वाते वा बस्तिरिष्यते । उपक्रमाणां सर्वेषां सोऽग्रणीस्त्रिविधस्तु सः ॥१॥
निरुहोऽन्वासनं बस्तिरुत्तरः-

Basti is the best line of treatment for *vāta* as well as *vāta* predominant disorders. It causes instant relief, nourishment to the body and also eliminates the vitiated *vāta dosas* completely from the body.

Basti is of 3 types viz.

1. *Āsthāpana basti*
2. *Anuvāsana basti*
3. *Uttara basti*.

Notes:

Āsthāpana basti:

Āsthāpana vasti dravya is prepared from different kinds of substances such as animal, plant and mineral origin, according to the involvement of *doṣa* and *dūṣyas*.

The different types of *āsthāpana bastis* are:

1. *Utkledana vasti* (exciting), 2. *śodhana vasti* (purificatory), 3. *śamana vasti* (mitigating), 4. *lekhana vasti* (scarifying), 5. *bṛīhaṇa vasti* (nourishing), 6. *vājīkarāṇa vasti* (aphrodisiac), 7. *picchā vasti* (which arrests the expulsion of liquids from the body), 8. *mādhu tailika vasti* (honey and oil are the main ingredients), 9. *yāpana vasti* (can be given for long periods), 10. *yuktaratha vasti* (can travel after *vasti*), 11. *siddha vasti* (can obtain the expected results),

dosahara (alleviate *doṣas*) are the synonyms for *mādhu-tailika vasti*.

Their nomenclature itself suggests the characteristic features of the above types of *āsthāpana vasti*.

तद्वयःस्थापनादोषस्थापनाद्वाऽस्थापनमित्युच्यते ।
शरीररोहणादोषनिर्हणादचिन्त्यप्रभावतया चास्मिन्नूहासम्भवात्रिलुह इति ॥

The therapeutic procedure, which arrests, restricts or withdraws the advancing of age and *doṣas* is termed as *āsthāpana*. It is also called *nirūha* as it shows unimaginable effects in the body due to its *prabhāva*.

Indications for *āsthāpana vasti*:

—तेन साधयेत् । गुल्मानाहखुडप्लीहशुद्धातीसारशूलिनः ॥२॥
जीर्णज्वरप्रतिश्यायशुक्रानिलमलग्रहान् । वर्धमाश्मरीरजोनाशान् दारुणांश्वानिलामयान् ॥३॥

This *āsthāpana vasti* (decoction enema) is indicated in the persons who are suffering from:

Gulma (abdominal tumors), *ānāha* (abdominal distension), *khuḍa* (gout), *plīhā* (enlargement of spleen), *śuddhātisāra* (diarrhoea without associating any other complications), *sūla* (pain abdomen), *jīrnajwara* (chronic fever), *pratiśyāya* (coryza), *śukra*, *anila*, *mala graha* (obstruction of semen, flatus and faeces), *vardhma* (scrotal enlargement), *aśmarī* (urinary calculi), *rajonāśa* (amenorrhoea) and *dāruṇa anila āmaya* (severe *vāta* disorders).

विशेषेणैते हि परं बस्तिना नाशमुपयान्ति मूलच्छेदेन वृक्षवत् ।

As the drug enters the large intestines and reaches the root cause of the disease and eliminates it, just as the tree dies by cutting the roots.

Contraindications for *āsthāpana vasti*:

अनास्थाप्यास्त्वतिस्निग्धः क्षतोरस्को भृशं कृशः । आमातिसारी वमिमान् संशुद्धो दत्तनावनः ॥४॥
श्वासकासप्रसेकाशर्त्तोहिधाध्मानाल्पवह्न्यः । शूनपायुः कृताहरो बद्धच्छिद्ग्रोदकोदरी ॥५॥
कुष्ठी च मधुमेही च मासान् सप्त च गर्भिणी ।

It is contraindicated for—*atishnidgha* (excessive unctuous), *uraṅkṣata* (injury to the chest), *krśa* (highly emaciated), *āmātisāra* (early stage of diarrhoea), *vami* (vomiting), *sarīśuddha* (immediately after *śodhāna* therapy), *datta nāvana* (after nasal administration), *śwāsa* (dyspnoea), *kāsa* (cough), *praseka* (salivation), *arśas* (piles), *hidhma* (hiccup), *ādhmāna* (abdominal distension), *alpa vahni* (decreased digestive power), *śūnapāyu* (having shorter rectum), *kṛtāharo* (after having meal), *baddhodara* (intestinal obstruction), *chidrodara* (intestinal perforation), *udakodara* (ascitis), *kuṣṭha* (leprosy and other skin disorders), *madhumeha* (diabetes) and *māsān sapta ca garbhīṇī* (in the 7th month of pregnancy).

Indications for *anuvāsana vasti*:

आस्थाप्या एव चान्वास्या विशेषादतिवह्न्यः ॥६॥
रक्षा: केवलवातार्ता:-

* Persons eligible for *āsthāpana vasti* are eligible for *anuvāsana vasti* also.

- * Especially it should be given for the persons who are very dry, having increased digestive power and suffering from *vāta* disorders.
- * After unctuous enemata the drug mitigates *vāta* by virtue of its properties and there by the body gets strength, color etc. just as the water poured at the root level causes overall development of the body.

Contraindications for anuvāsana vasti:

—नानुवास्यास्त एव च । येऽनास्थाप्यास्तथा पाण्डुकामलामेहपीनसाः ॥१७॥
 निरन्नप्लीहविद्भेदिगुरुकोष्ठकफोदराः । अभिष्वन्दिभृशस्थूलकृमिकोष्ठाढ्यमारुताः ॥१८॥
 पीते विषे गरेऽपच्यां श्लीपदी गलगण्डवान् ।

- * Persons contraindicated for *āsthāpana vasti* are not eligible for *anuvāsana vasti* also.
- * It should not be given for the following persons:

Pāṇḍu (anemia), *kāmalā* (jaundice), *meha* (diabetes), *pīnasa* (coryza), *niranna* (without food), *plīhā* (enlargement of spleen), *vidbheda* (diarrhoea), *gurukoṣṭha* (hard bowels), *kaphodara* (enlargement of abdomen due to *kapha*), *abhiṣyanda* (conjunctivitis), *bhrśa*, *sthūla* (excessive obese), *kīmikoṣṭha* (intestinal worms), *āḍhyavāta* (gouty arthritis), *pītaviṣa* (after consuming poison), *gara* (artificial poisoning), *apacī* (goiter), *ślīpada* (filariasis) and *galagāndha* (enlarged glands in the neck).

Vasti yantra:

The instrument used for *vasti karma* is known as *vasti yantra*. It consists of 2 parts viz.

1. *vastinetra* and 2. *vastipuṭaka*.

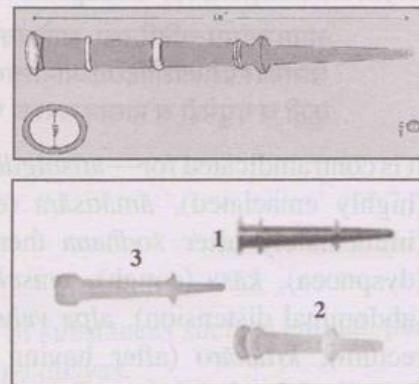
Vastinetra:

तयोस्तु नेत्रं हेमादिधातुदार्वस्थिवेणुजम् ॥१९॥
 गोपुच्छाकारमच्छिद्रं श्लक्षणर्जु गुलिकामुखम् ।

- * *Vastinetra* can be prepared with the metals like gold, silver and other metals, gems, conch shell, horns, bones of animals, bamboo and other stems etc.
- * It should be round, smooth, straight without any bends, resembling the shape of the tail of a cow (gradually decreasing from top to bottom).

Shape and size of *vastinetra* according to age:

ऊनेऽब्दे पञ्च, पूर्णेऽस्मिन्नासप्तभ्योऽङ्गुलानि षट् ॥१०॥
 सप्तमे सप्त, तान्यष्टौ द्वादशे, षोडशे नव । द्वादशैव परं विंशाद्वीक्ष्य वर्षान्तरेषु च ॥११॥
 वयोबलशीराणि प्रमाणमभिवर्द्धयेत् । स्वाङ्गुष्ठेन समं मूले स्थौल्येनाग्रे कनिष्ठया ॥१२॥
 पूर्णेऽब्देऽङ्गुलमादाय तदब्द्वार्द्धप्रवर्द्धितम् । त्र्यङ्गुलं परमं छिद्रं मूलेऽग्रे वहते तु यत् ॥१३॥
 मुद्रं माषं कलायं च किलन्नं कर्कन्धुकं क्रमात् ।



- * The length varies from 5 to 12 inches according to age and the circumference of the base and the tip should be the size of thumb and little finger respectively.

Age	Size of vastinatra	Circumference of the tip
1. Below one year	5 inches length	Size of wild green gram
2. One year	6 inches length	Size of green gram
3. Seven years	7 inches length	Size of black gram
4. Twelve years	8 inches length	Size of a pea
5. Sixteen years	9 inches length	Soaked pea
6. Twenty years	12 inches length	Jujuba seed

- * The size of the nozzle can be increased depending upon the age, strength and the physique of the patient.

मूलच्छद्रप्रमाणेन प्रान्ते घटितकर्णिकम् ॥14॥

वर्त्याऽग्रे पिहितं, मूले यथास्वं द्वयङ्गुलान्तरम् ।

कर्णिकाद्वितयं नेत्रे कुर्यात्-

- * It should contain 2 ridges in the bottom; one at its base and the other is two inches above the first one for tying the *vastipuṭaka*.

- * The tip should be closed with a piece of cotton while preparing *vasti yantra*.

Vastipuṭaka (Enema bag):

-तत्र च योजयेत् ॥15॥

अजाविमहिषादीनां बस्तिं सुमृदितं दृढम् । कषायरक्तं निश्चद्रग्निथगन्धशिरं तनुम् ॥16॥

ग्रथितं साधु सूत्रेण सुखसंस्थाप्यभेषजम् । बस्त्यभावेऽङ्कुपादं वा न्यसेद्वासोऽथवा घनम् ॥17॥

- * Collect the urinary bladder of a goat, sheep, pig, deer, cow, buffalo etc. and soak in oil and then wash it with flour of green gram till the veins and glands of the bladder are removed.
- * To remove the putrefied smell, steep it with the decoctions of astringent substances and preserve it after washing with water.
- * If the urinary bladder is not available one can use the neck of water bird, animal skin or thick cloth bag after applying the bees wax all over it.

Preparation of *vasti yantra*:

- * Filling the *vastipuṭaka* with the required quantity of *vasti dravya* and then put the base of *vastinatra* into it.
- * Then tie the edges firmly between the two ridges of *vastinatra* with a strong thread, and kept ready.

Dosage of āsthāpana *vasti dravya*:

निरूहमात्रा प्रथमे प्रकुञ्जो वत्सरे परम् । प्रकुञ्जवृद्धिः प्रत्यब्दं यावत्प्रसृतास्ततः ॥18॥

प्रसृतं वर्द्धयेदूर्ध्वं द्वादशाष्टादशस्य तु । आसप्ततेरिदं मानं, दशैव प्रसृताः परम् ॥19॥

- * The dosage of the liquid used for āsthāpana *vasti* for one-year age group children shall be one *prakūñca* ($\frac{1}{2}$ *prasṛta* or one *pala*).

- * It should be increased by one *prakuñca* for each successive year, till it attains 6 *prasṛta*s.
- * Afterwards it is to be increased one *prasṛta* till it becomes 12 *prasṛta*s, at the age of eighteen.
- * That is the maximum quantity of *āsthāpana vasti dravya* between 18 to 70 years.
- * Above 70 years it will be 10 *prasṛta* only.

Table : Showing the dosage of
āsthāpana vasti dravya according to age

Age	Qty. of <i>āsthāpana vasti dravya</i>		
	According to Vāgbhaṭa	=	According to Caraka
1. 1 year	One <i>prakuñca</i>	=	½ <i>prasṛta</i> = 50 ml approx.
2. 2 years	Two <i>prakuñca</i>	=	1 <i>prasṛta</i> = 100 ml approx.
3. 3 years	Three <i>prakuñca</i>	=	1½ <i>prasṛta</i> = 150 ml approx.
4. 4 years	Four <i>prakuñca</i>	=	2 <i>prasṛta</i> = 200 ml approx.
5. 5 years	Five <i>prakuñca</i>	=	2½ <i>prasṛta</i> = 250 ml approx.
6. 6 years	Six <i>prakuñca</i>	=	3 <i>prasṛta</i> = 300 ml approx.
7. 7 years	Seven <i>prakuñca</i>	=	3½ <i>prasṛta</i> = 350 ml approx.
8. 8 years	Eight <i>prakuñca</i>	=	4 <i>prasṛta</i> = 400 ml approx.
9. 9 years	Nine <i>prakuñca</i>	=	4½ <i>prasṛta</i> = 450 ml approx.
10. 10 years	Ten <i>prakuñca</i>	=	5 <i>prasṛta</i> = 500 ml approx.
11. 11 years	Eleven <i>prakuñca</i>	=	5½ <i>prasṛta</i> = 550 ml approx.
12. 12 years	Twelve <i>prakuñca</i>	=	6 <i>prasṛta</i> = 600 ml approx.
13. 13 years	Fourteen <i>prakuñca</i>	=	7 <i>prasṛta</i> = 700 ml approx.
14. 14 years	Sixteen <i>prakuñca</i>	=	8 <i>prasṛta</i> = 800 ml approx.
15. 15 years	Eighteen <i>prakuñca</i>	=	9 <i>prasṛta</i> = 900 ml approx.
16. 16 years	Twenty <i>prakuñca</i>	=	10 <i>prasṛta</i> = 1000 ml approx.
17. 17 years	Twenty two <i>prakuñca</i>	=	11 <i>prasṛta</i> = 1100 ml approx.
18. 18 years	Twenty four <i>prakuñca</i>	=	12 <i>prasṛta</i> = 1200 ml approx.
19. 18-70 yrs.	Twenty four <i>prakuñca</i>	=	12 <i>prasṛta</i> = 1200 ml approx.
20. Above 70 yrs.	Twenty <i>prakuñca</i>	=	10 <i>prasṛta</i> = 1000 ml approx.

Dosage of *anuvāsana vasti dravya*:

यथायथं निरूहस्य पादो मात्राऽनुवासने ।

* *Anuvāsana vasti dravya* should be 1/4th quantity of *āsthāpana vasti* as prescribed for each age group.

* Hence the maximum quantity of *anuvāsana vasti dravya* is 1/4th quantity of *nirūha vasti dravyai*.e. 3 *prasṛta* or 300 ml.

Notes:

Anuvāsana vasti:

Anuvāsana vasti is the medicated enemata in which the four types of unctuous substances mentioned in oleation therapy, is used after processing with the appropriate drugs and is intended for producing lubrication.

Anuvāsana vasti is of 3 types according to the dosage:

(a) *Sneha vasti* (b) *Anuvāsana vasti* (c) *Mātrā vasti*

- * 1/4 quantity of *nirūha vasti* is *sneha vasti* i.e. 300 ml.; half of the quantity of *sneha vasti* is *anuvāsana vasti* i.e. 150 ml only. Half the quantity of *anuvāsana vasti* is *mātrā vasti* i.e. 75 ml only.
- * *Mātrā vasti* is one of the types of *anuvāsana vasti* and its dose is equivalent to that of minimum dose of oleation therapy. It is also be given regularly as that of *madhutailika vasti* to the persons who are old, children, walking long distances, carrying heavy loads, traveling by vehicles, doing regular exercises, undergoing excessive coitus etc.

यतशासावनुवसन्नपि न दूष्यत्यनुवासरमपि वा दीयते इत्यनुवासनम् ।

- * As it can be conducted regularly or daily it is called *anuvāsana vasti*.

Anuvāsana vidhi:

आस्थाप्यं स्नेहितं स्विन्नं शुद्धं लब्ध्यबलं पुनः ॥२०॥

अन्वासनार्हं विज्ञाय पूर्वमेवानुवासयेत् । शीते वसन्ते च दिवा रात्रौ केचित्तोऽन्यदा ॥२१॥

अभ्यक्तस्नातमुचितात्पादहीनं हितं लघु । अस्तिग्धरक्षमशिंतं सानुपानं द्रवादि च ॥२२॥

कृतचड़क्मणं मुक्तविष्पूत्रं शयने सुखे । नात्युच्छ्रूते न चोच्छीर्षं संविष्टं वामपार्श्वतः ॥२३॥

सङ्कोच्य दक्षिणं सक्षिथ प्रसार्य च ततोऽपरम् ।

The person who is to be treated with *āsthāpana* should have undergone oleation, sudation, emesis and purgation therapies earlier and gained strength by following the regimen of specific diet mentioned in *saṁsarjana krama*. He should be eligible for *anuvāsana vasti* also. Hence *anuvāsana vasti* is to be given prior to *āsthāpana vasti*.

Anuvāsana vasti should be given during day time in winter and spring seasons; and during night time in other seasons, otherwise complications may arise which were mentioned in oleation therapy.



- * Prior to start the therapy, procure *vastinatra* and *vastipuṭaka*, which are not having any defects.
- * Then prepare the *vasti dravya* in a required quantity according to age group.
- * Afterwards gentle massage on the body is to be conducted with suitable oil followed by mild fomentation.
- * Then ask the patient to have light food, which is neither too unctuous nor too dry.
- * Never administer the unctuous enemata in the empty stomach.
- * Administered unctuous enemata in the empty stomach travels in the upward direction quickly due to its mobile, far reaching and minuteness. And which cannot be useful to control *vāta*, simultaneously causing complications.
- * If administered after taking food, it obstructs the flow of the given substance in the upward direction and will stay in the large intestines, so that the expected results will get.

- * After having food ask the patient is to walk a distance of at least 100 yards.
- * Then ask the patient to defecate or micturate if necessary.
- * Afterwards the patient is asked to lie down on the table in the left lateral position.

अथास्य नेत्रं प्रणयेत्प्रिनग्धमुखं गुदे ॥२४॥

उच्छ्वास्य बस्तेर्वदने बद्धे हस्तमकम्पयन् । पृष्ठवंशं प्रति ततो नातिद्वृतविलम्बितम् ॥२५॥

नातिवेगं न वा मन्दं सकृदेव प्रपीडयेत् । सावशेषं च कुर्वात वायुः शेषे हि तिष्ठति ॥२६॥

- * Anoint *vasti netra* and the anus and introduce into the rectum properly and then squeeze *vastipuṭaka* for a period of 30 seconds.
- * While administering *vasti dravya* into the rectum one should not push quickly or slowly without shaky.
- * Don't squeeze *vasti dravya* completely.

Paścāt karma:

दत्ते तूनानदेहस्य पाणिना ताडयेत्पिक्जौ । तत्पार्षिभ्यां तथा शस्यां पादतश्च त्रिस्तिष्ठेत् ॥२७॥

ततः प्रसारिताङ्गस्य सोपधानस्य पार्षिके । आहन्यान्मुष्टिनाऽङ्गं च स्नेहेनाभ्यज्य मर्दयेत् ॥२८॥

वेदनार्तमिति स्नेहो न हि शीघ्रं निवर्तते । योज्यः शीघ्रं निवृत्तेऽन्यः स्नेहोऽतिष्ठन्नकार्यकृत् ॥२९॥

- * Afterwards withdraw the *vasti netra* gently and then tap the buttock region with the firsts of the attendant.
- * Then ask the patient to lie on his back with a pillow under his legs keeping the head lowered down and be attentive to the movement of *vasti dravya* spreading inside the body. After getting the urge only pass the stools.
- * Conduct gentle massage with oil all over the body especially on the painful regions so that the administered oil doesn't come out soon.
- * If the given oil comes out quickly second dose may be given at the same time.

Diet schedule after anuvāsana vasti:

दीप्ताग्निं त्वागतस्नेहं सायाहे भोजयेल्लघु ।

After the withdrawal of the administered oil light food will be given in the evening.

Measures to be taken if the given drug is not expelled:

निवृत्तिकालः परमस्त्रयो यामास्ततः परम् ॥३०॥

अहोरात्रमुपेक्षेत्, परतः फलवर्तिभिः । तीक्ष्णैर्वा बस्तिभिः कुर्याद्यत्नं स्नेहनिवृत्तये ॥३१॥

The maximum period of withdrawal of *anuvāsana vasti dravya* is 3 *yāma* i.e. 9 hours. Even after the stipulated time *vasti dravya* doesn't come out wait for 24 hours and if at all the patient complains colic pain, abdominal distension etc. then attempt should be made to remove it forcefully by means of *phalavarti* (rectal suppositories) or *tīkṣṇa vasti* (strong decoction enemata).

Special treatment:

अतिरौक्ष्यादनागच्छ चेज्जाडग्यादिदोषकृत् । उपेक्षेतैव हि ततोऽध्युषितश्च निशां पिबेत् ॥३२॥

प्रातर्नार्गरथान्याम्भः कोण्ठं, केवलमेव वा ।

- * Even after 24 hours if the given oil doesn't come out due to severe dryness inside the body and the patient doesn't complain any painful symptoms one need not bother about the withdrawal of *vasti dravya*.
- * On the next day morning he is advised to drink either warm water or the water processed with *nagara/suṇṭhi* (*Zingiber officinale*) and *dhānyaka* (*Coriandrum sativum*).

Time schedule for the administration of another *anuvāsana vasti*:

अन्वासयेत्तीयेऽहि पञ्चमे वा पुनश्च तम् ॥३ ३ ॥

यथा वा स्नेहपक्षिः स्यादतोऽत्युल्बणमारुतान् ।

व्यायामनित्यान् दीप्ताग्नीन् रूक्षांश्च प्रतिवासरम् ॥३ ४ ॥

- * *Anuvāsana vasti* can be given on the 3rd day or on the 5th day basing on the digestive capacity of the patient.
- * It can be given daily for those who are having—
 - Predominantly vitiated *vāta*.
 - Regular exercises.
 - Strong digestive power.
 - Severe dryness in the body.

Favourable instance to administer *āsthāpana vasti*:

इति स्नेहस्त्रिचतुरैः स्निग्धे स्रोतोविशुद्धये । निरूहं शोधनं युज्यादस्निग्धे स्नेहनं तनोः ॥३ ५ ॥

- * After the administration of three to four number of *anuvāsana vasti*, if the body is found properly lubricated, *nirūha vasti* can be given for the purification and to clear the channels.
- * If the body is not properly lubricated even after four *anuvāsana vasti* continue the same.

Nirūha vasti vidhi:

पञ्चमेऽथ तृतीये वा दिवसे साधके शुभे । मध्याह्ने किञ्चिदावृते प्रयुक्ते बलिमङ्गले ॥३ ६ ॥

अभ्यक्तस्वेदितोत्सृष्टमलं नातिबुभुक्षितम् । अवेक्ष्य पुरुषं दोषभेषजादीनि चादरात् ॥३ ७ ॥

बस्तिं प्रकल्पयेद्वैद्यस्तद्वैद्यबहुभिः सह ।

- * On the 3rd day or 5th day of the administration of *anuvāsana vasti*, *nirūha vasti* is to be given.
- * Prior to start the therapy observe the following carefully—
 - The day and time should be auspicious and perform spiritual rites.
 - Conduct *sneha* and *sweda* (external application of oil and mild sudation) properly.
 - Ask the patient to eliminate natural urges.
 - The patient should not be hunger and the food taken before is properly digested.
 - Administer *nirūha vasti* in the empty stomach only.
 - Observe the *prakṛti*, *doṣa*, *ouṣadha*, *bala*, *sātmya* etc.
 - Conduct *nirūha vasti* to a patient only after thorough discussion with the professional colleagues.
- * Procure *vastinetra* and *vastipuṭaka*, which are not having any defects.
- * Then prepare the *vasti dravya* in a required quantity according to age group.

Nirūha vasti kalpanā:

क्वाथयेद्विंशतिपलं द्रव्यस्याष्टौ फलानि च ॥३ ८ ॥

- * Initially *kwātha* (decoction) should be prepared by taking the appropriate drugs in the following way.

- Twenty *pala* (1000gms. approximately) of the recommended drugs and eight fruits of *phala/madanaphala* (*Randia dumatorum*) are to be taken and then add 16 times water and prepare decoction by boiling and reduced it to 1/4th quantity.

ततः क्वाथाच्चतुर्थां स्नेहं वाते प्रकल्पयेत् ।

पित्ते स्वस्थे च षष्ठांशमष्ठांशं कफेऽधिके ॥३ ९ ॥

- * The maximum dose of *āsthāpana vasti dravya* is *dvādaśa prasṛta* i.e. approximately 1200 ml only.

- * In *vāta* predominant disorders the unctuous substances should be 1/4 quantity of the total *vasti dravyai* i.e. 3 *prasṛta* (300 ml).

- * In healthy persons and also in *pitta* predominant disorders the unctuous substances should be 1/6th quantity i.e. 2 *prasṛta* (200 ml).

- * Where as in *kapha* predominance it should be 1/8th quantity i.e. 1½ *prasṛta* (150 ml) only.

सर्वत्र चाष्टयं भागं कल्काद्वति वा यथा । नात्यच्छसान्द्रता बस्ते: पलमात्रं गुडस्य च ॥४ ० ॥

मधुपटद्वादिशेषं च युक्त्या-

- * The quantity of *kalka dravya* should be 1/8th part of the decoction in all the conditions (i.e. *tridoṣa* vitiation as well as in healthy state) and after mixing it with the decoction, it should not become too thin or too thick.

- * Later on take one *pala* of *guḍa* (jaggery), appropriate quantity of honey and *saindhava lavaṇa* are to be added.

—सर्वं तदेकतः । उण्णाम्बुकम्भीबाध्येण तप्तं खजसमाहतम् ॥४ १ ॥

प्रक्षिप्य बस्तौ प्रणयेत्पायौ नात्युष्णाशीतलम् । नातिस्निग्धं न वा रूक्षं नातितीक्ष्णं न वा मृदु ॥४ २ ॥

नात्यच्छसान्द्रं नोनातिमात्रं नापटु नाति च । लवणं तद्वदम्लं च-

- * Afterwards all the ingredients of *nirūha vasti* i.e. *mākṣika*, *lavaṇa*, *sneha*, *kalka* and *quātha* should be mixed well by churning with the help of a churner.

- * *Vasti dravya* should not be put on direct fire. It should be heated indirectly by putting the container in the hot water.

- * Later on *vasti dravya* should be poured into *vasti puṭaka* and then tied it well to *vasti netra* properly.

- * *Vasti dravya* should be—

- Neither too hot nor too cold, neither too unctuous nor too dry, neither too strong nor too mild, neither too thick nor too thin, neither too much nor less in quantity, neither too much salty nor less salty, neither too much sour nor less sour.

- * Then introduce *vasti netra* into the anal canal and pushed *vasti dravya* into the rectum.

Dosage of āsthāpana vasti dravya according of some other authorities:

—पठन्त्यन्ये तु तद्विदः ॥४३॥

मात्रां त्रिपलिकां कुर्यात्स्नेहमाक्षिकयोः पृथक् । कर्षाद्वं माणिमन्थस्य स्वस्थे कल्कपलद्वयम् ॥४४॥
सर्वद्रवाणां शेषाणां पलानि दश कल्पयेत् ।

* Some other ācāryas opine that the ingredients of āsthāpana vasti should be in the following ratio.

• <i>Mākṣika</i>	:	<i>3 pala</i>	150 ml.
• <i>Sneha</i>	:	<i>3 pala</i>	150 ml.
• <i>Saindhava lavaṇa</i>	:	$\frac{1}{2}$ <i>karpa</i>	006 gms.
• <i>Kalka</i>	:	<i>2 pala</i>	100 gms.
• All other <i>drava dravya</i>	:	<i>10 pala</i>	500 ml.
		Total	900 ml.

* The maximum dose of āsthāpana vasti dravya is *dvādaśa prasṛta* i.e. approximately 1200 ml only.

• <i>Mākṣika</i>	:	<i>2 prasṛta</i>	= 200 ml
• <i>Lavaṇa</i>	:	<i>1 karṣa</i>	= 12 gm
• <i>Sneha</i>	:	<i>3 prasṛta</i>	= 300 ml
• <i>Kalka</i>	:	<i>1 prasṛta</i>	= 100 ml
• <i>Kvātha</i>	:	<i>6 prasṛta</i>	= 600 ml

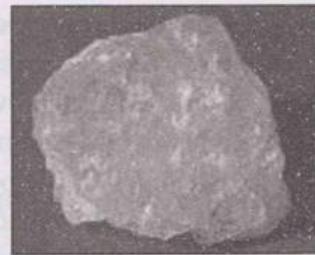
Order of mixing āsthāpana vasti davya:

माक्षिकं लवणं स्नेहं कल्कं क्वाथमिति क्रमात् ॥४५॥

आवपेत निरुहाणामेष संयोजने विधिः ।



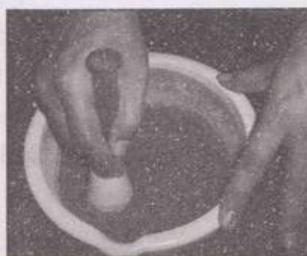
Mākṣika



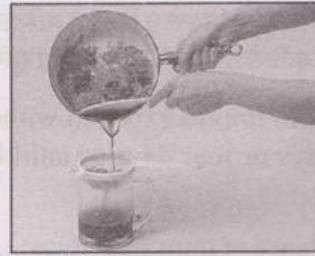
Lavaṇa



Sneha



Kalka



Kvātha

Vasti dravya should be mixed in the following order only. Initially honey and rock salt are to be mixed and then churn well by adding unctuous substance. Afterwards add medicated paste and then decoction should be added by churning with a churner, so that *vasti dravya* can be properly mixed.

Nirūha vasti dāna vidhi:

- * After digestion of food taken on the previous day evening, after performing spiritual rites, give gentle massage and mild sudation.
- * Then ask the patient to defecate or micturate if necessary.
- * Afterwards the patient is asked to lie down on the table in the left lateral position.
- * Anoint *vasti netra* and the anus and introduce into the rectum properly and then squeeze *vasti puṭaka* for a period of 30 seconds.
- * Don't squeeze *vasti dravya* completely.

Immediate steps to be taken after vastidāna:

उत्तानो दत्तमात्रे तु निरूहे तन्मना भवेत् ॥4 6॥

कृतोपधानः सञ्चातवेगश्चोत्कटकः सृजेत् ।

Then ask the patient to lie on his back with a pillow under his head and be attentive to the movement of *vasti dravya* spreading inside the body. After getting the urge only, pass the stools.

Vasti pratyāgama kāla:

आगतौ परमः कालो मुहूर्तो मृत्यवे परम् ॥4 7॥

तत्रानुलोभिकं स्नेहक्षारमूत्राम्लकल्पितम् । त्वरितं स्निधतीक्षणोष्णं बस्तिमन्यं प्रपीडयेत् ॥4 8॥

विद्यात्फलवर्ति वा स्वेदनोत्त्रासनादि च ।

- * The maximum period of withdrawal of *vasti dravya* is one *muhūrta* i.e. 48 minutes. Even after 48 minutes, the *vasti dravya* doesn't come out, it causes complications like abdominal distension, colic, dysuria, adverse movement of *vāta* and sometimes death also.
- * So it should be brought out by the administration of unctuous substances, alkalies, urine of different animals and other drugs possessing such as sour, unctuous, strong and hot potency, or by rectal suppositories, sudation therapy, creating fear etc.

Administration of another nirūha vasti:

स्वयमेव निवृत्ते तु द्वितीयो बस्तिरिष्यते ॥4 9॥

तृतीयोऽपि चतुर्थोऽपि यावद्वा सुनिरूढता ।

If the *vasti dravya* expelled without any effort the procedure can be performed for two days, three days or four days or until he gets the proper signs and symptoms of decoction enema therapy.

Surveillance of improper signs:

विरक्त्वच्च योगादीन्विद्यात्-

Then observe the insufficient and excessive signs and symptoms of *nirūha vasti*, which are similar to that of purgation therapy.

Post-operative care:

—योगे तु भोजयेत् ॥५०॥
कोष्ठोन वारिणा स्नातं तनुधन्वरसौदनम् ।

After getting the proper signs and symptoms of *nirūha*, the patient should be given warm water bath and then light diet with mutton soup of animals dwelling in desert regions.

Management of complications:

विकारा ये निरूदस्य भवन्ति प्रचलैर्मलैः ॥५१॥
ते सुखोष्णाम्बुसिन्तस्य यान्ति भुक्तवतः शमम् ।

Complications arise due to the circulation of vitiated *doṣas* after *nirūha vasti* will be subsided by hot water bath and the above-specified food.

Anuvāsana after āsthāpana:

अथ वातादितं भूयः सद्य एवानुवासयेत् ॥५२॥

If the patient is suffering from *vāta* disorders, after administration of *nirūha vasti*, *anuvāsana vasti* is to be given on the evening hours of the same day.

Samyak yoga lakṣaṇa:

सम्यग्धीनातियोगाश्च तस्य स्युः स्नेहपीतवत् । किञ्चित्कालं स्थितो यश्च सपुरीषो निवर्तते ॥५३॥
सानुलोमानिलः स्नेहस्त्रिसङ्घमनुवासनम् ।

- * Proper, insufficient and excessive signs and symptoms of *anuvāsana vasti* are similar to that of oleation therapy.
- * Elimination of faeces, flatus and oil in the successive order can be considered as the proper signs and symptoms of *sneha vasti*.

Number of anuvāsana according to *doṣas*:

एकं त्रीन् वा बलासे तु स्नेहस्त्रीन् प्रकल्पयेत् ॥५४॥
पञ्च वा सप्त वा पित्ते, नवैकादश वाऽनिले । पुनस्ततोऽप्ययुग्मांस्तु पुनरास्थापनं ततः ॥५५॥

- * Number of *anuvāsana vasti* varies according to the dominancy of *tridoṣas*.
 - In *kapha* disorders : 1 or 3
 - In *pitta* disorders : 5 or 7
 - In *vāta* disorders : 9 or 11
should be given in general.
- * If we are going to administer more than that choose odd number only.

Notes:

- * Never give it in even number if only *sneha vasti* is administering continuously.
- * But it can be given in even number while administering along with *nirūha vasti*.

Diet according to doṣa:

कफपित्तानिलेष्वत्रं यूषक्षीरसैः क्रमात् ।

After the administration of *āsthāpana vasti* diet should be given as *yūṣa*, *kṣīra* and *māṁsa rasa* in the disorders of *kapha*, *pitta* and *vāta* respectively.

Vātahara vasti:

वातघ्नौषधनिष्ववाथत्रिवृतासैन्धवैर्युतः ॥५ ६ ॥
बस्तिरेकोऽनिले स्निधैः स्वाद्मलोष्णो रसान्वितः ।

The decoction of the drugs which mitigate *vāta* such as *daśamūla*, *trivṛt*, rock salt, unctuous substances like castor oil, sweet substances like jaggery, sour gruel, *kuṣṭha* etc. drugs which are hot in potency and mutton soup are the ingredients for *vātaghna vasti*. By adding the above drugs properly and should be given one enema for *vāta* predominant disorders.

Pittahara vasti:

न्यग्रोधादिगणक्वाथपद्यकादिसितायुतौ ॥५ ७ ॥
पित्ते स्वादुहिमौ साज्यक्षीरेक्षुरसमाक्षिकौ ।

For *pitta* disorders, two enemas are to be given with the following drugs.

<i>Nyagrodhādi gaṇa</i>	: <i>Kwātha</i>
<i>Padmakādi gaṇa</i> drugs + sugar	: <i>Kalka</i>

Ghee, milk, sugarcane juice, honey and others, which are sweet in taste and cool in potency.

Kaphahara vasti:

आरग्वधादिनिष्ववाथवत्पकादियुतास्त्रयः ॥५ ८ ॥
रुक्षा: सक्षौद्रगोमूत्रास्तीक्ष्णोष्णकटुकाः कफे ।

For *kapha* disorders three enemas are to be given with the following drugs.

<i>Āravghadhādi</i>	: <i>kwāth</i>
<i>Vatsakādi gaṇa</i>	: <i>kalka</i>

Honey, cow's urine and the other drugs having dry, sharp and hot in potency.

Tridoṣahara vasti:

त्रयस्ते सन्निपातेऽपि दोषान् घन्ति यतः क्रमात् ॥५ ९ ॥

Even in case of *sannipāta*, the above three enemas are sufficient to mitigate each one of the *doṣas*.

Vastis are three only:

त्रिभ्यः परं बस्तिमतो नेच्छन्त्यन्ये चिकित्सकाः । न हि दोषश्चतुर्थोऽस्ति पुनर्दीयेत यं प्रति ॥६ ० ॥

As there is no *doṣa* except *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*, some *ācāryas* opined that there is no need of any other type of *vasti* except the above three kinds and are sufficient in the management of various diseases caused by the vitiation of *tridoṣas*.

Three kinds of *vasti* according to their action:

उत्क्लेशनं शुद्धिकरं दोषाणां शमनं क्रमात् । त्रिधैव कल्पयेद्वस्तिमित्यन्येऽपि प्रचक्षते ॥6 1॥

Some others opined that the following three types of *vasti* should be administered in the following order.

- *Utkleṣaṇa vasti* - to increase *doṣas*
- *Śodhana vasti* - to eliminate
- *Śamana vasti* - to mitigate the residual *doṣas*.

दोषौषधादिवलतः सर्वमेतत् प्रमाणयेत् ।

All the above types of *vasti* should be conducted after properly considering the strength of *doṣas*, drugs and others only.

Maximum limit to conduct *nirūha vasti*:

सम्यडनिरूढलिङ्गं तु नासम्भाव्य निवर्तयेत् ॥6 2॥

Nirūha vasti should be conducted till the appearance of proper signs and symptoms.

Classification of *vasti* according to number:

According to the number the *vasti* has been divided into 3 types such as:

(a) *Karma vasti*: 30, (b) *kāla vasti*: 15 and (c) *yoga vasti*: 8.

(a) *Karma vasti*:

प्राक्स्नेह एकः पञ्चान्ते द्वादशास्थापनानि च । सान्वासनानि कर्मेवं बस्तयस्त्रिंशदीरिताः ॥6 3॥

It consists total 30 in number. Starts with one and ends with five unctuous enemata, in between them twelve decoction and unctuous enemata should be given alternatively.

i.e. First one	:	<i>Sneha vasti</i>
2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24	:	<i>Nirūha vasti</i>
3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, 25	:	<i>Sneha vasti</i>
At the end 26, 27, 28, 29, 30	:	<i>Sneha vasti</i>

(b) *Kāla vasti*:

कालः पञ्चदशैकोऽत्र प्राक् स्नेहोऽन्ते त्रयस्तथा । षट् पञ्चबस्त्यन्तरिताः-

Kāla vasti consists total 15 in number. It starts with one and ends with three unctuous enemata and in between them six decoction and five unctuous enemata should be given alternatively.

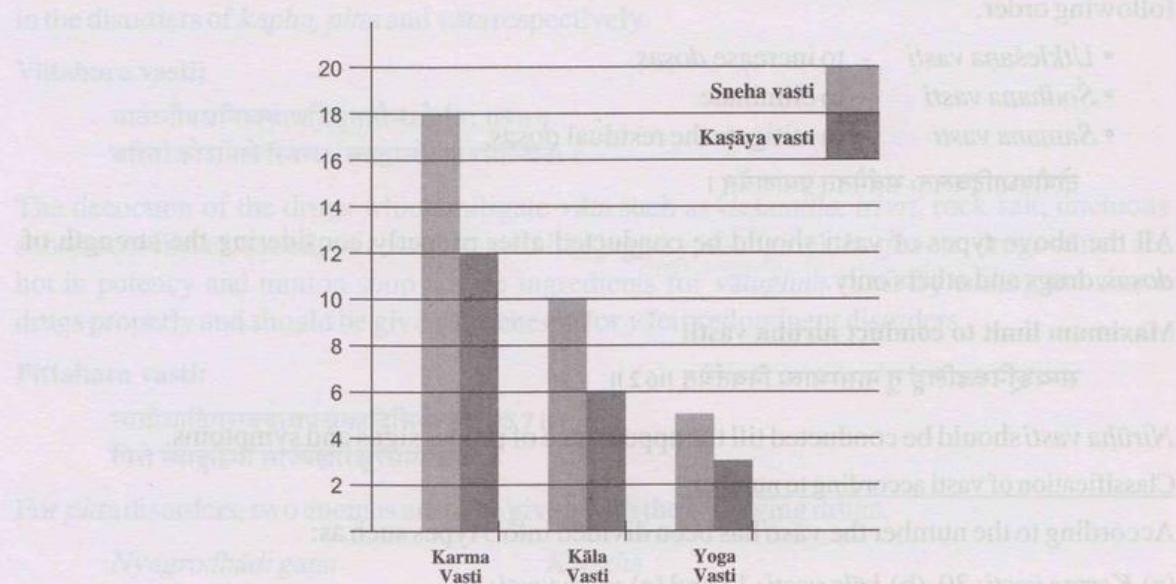
i.e. First one	:	<i>Sneha vasti</i>
2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12	:	<i>Nirūha vasti</i>
3, 5, 7, 9, 11	:	<i>Sneha vasti</i>
13, 14 & 15	:	<i>Sneha vasti</i> is to be given.

(c) *Yoga vasti*:

-योगोऽष्टौ बस्तयोऽत्र तु ॥6 4॥

त्रयो निरूहाः स्नेहाश्च स्नेहावाद्यन्तयोरुभौ ।

Yoga vasti consists total 8 in number. It starts with one and ends with one unctuous enemata and in between them three decoctions and unctuous enemata should be given alternatively.



i.e. First one : *Sneha vasti*

2, 4, 6 : *Nirūha vasti*

3, 5 & 7 : *Sneha vasti*

8th : *Sneha vasti* should be given.

Either sneha vasti or nirūha vasti should not be given continuously:

स्नेहवस्ति निरूहं वा नैकमेवाति शीलयेत् ॥6 5॥

उत्क्लेशाग्निवधौ स्नेहान्त्रिरूहान्मरुतो भयम् । तस्मान्त्रिरूढः स्नेहः स्यान्त्रिरूहश्चानुवासितः ॥6 6॥

स्नेहशोधनयुक्त्यैवं वस्तिकर्म त्रिदोषजित् ।

Never administer either unctuous enemata or decoction enemata continuously. If the *sneha vasti* is given continuously the power of digestion will be decreased and the continuous administration of *nirūha vasti* leads to the aggravation of *vāta*.

Hence *sneha vasti* and *nirūha vasti* is to be given alternatively, so that the equilibrium state of the *dosas* will be maintained.

Mātrā vasti:

हस्वया स्नेहपानस्य मात्रया योजितः समः ॥6 7॥

मात्राबस्ति: स्मृतः स्नेहः-

Mātrā vasti is one of the types of *anuvāsana vasti* and its dose is equivalent to that of a minimum dose of oleation therapy.

—शीलनीयः सदा च सः । बालवृद्धाध्वभारस्त्रीव्यायामासत्कचिन्तकैः ॥६ ८ ॥
वातभग्नाबलाल्पाग्निनृपेश्वरसुखात्मभिः । दोषघ्नो निष्परीहारो बल्यः सृष्टमलः सुखः ॥६ ९ ॥

It is also be given regularly to the persons who are old, children, walking long distances, carrying heavy loads, traveling by vehicles, doing regular exercises, undergoing excessive coitus, *vāta roga*, fractured, debilitated, having decreased digestive power, royal, wealthy, delicate etc.

Mātrā vastī brings the normalcy of *dosas* without causing any inconvenience. It gives strength, eliminates *dosas* easily, doesn't need strict regimen and is comfortable.

Uttara vastī:

स निरुहादुत्तरमुत्तरेण वा मार्गेण दीयत इत्युत्तरवस्ति ।

(A. Saṅgraha)

The term *uttara vastī* is given because it is administered after *nirūha vastī* or it is being administered into the orifice superior to anus i.e. through urethra or vagina.

बस्तौ रोगेषु नारीणां योनिगर्भाशयेषु च । हित्रास्थापनशुद्धेभ्यो विदध्याद्वस्तिमुत्तरम् ॥७ ० ॥

- * In male patients for urinary bladder disorders and for female, urinary, vaginal and uterine cavity problems *uttara vastī* is to be conducted.
- * *Uttara vastī* should be conducted to the persons who have already undergone two or three *āśtāpana vastī* (i.e. *yoga vastī*).

Uttara vastī netra:

आतुराङ्गगुलमानेन तत्रेत्रं द्वादशाङ्गगुलम् । वृत्तं गोपुच्छवन्मूलमध्ययोः कृतकर्णिकम् ॥७ १ ॥

सिद्धार्थकप्रवेशाग्रं श्लक्षणं हेमादिसम्भवम् । कुन्दाश्वमारसुमनः पुष्पवृत्तोपमं दृढम् ॥७ २ ॥

- * *Vasti netra* used for *uttara vastī* is termed as *puṣpanetra*.
- * The length of *puṣpanetra* is 12 inches and the circumference of the tip should be the size of a mustard seed. It should be prepared with the metals like gold., silver, copper etc. and having round, smooth and is in the shape of cow's tail at the base and the tip should be in the shape of the stalk of *kunda*, *aśwamāra* and *sumana* flowers and having two ridges.

Dosage of *uttara vastī dravya*:

तस्य बस्तिर्मृदुलघुर्मात्रा शुक्तिर्विकल्प्य वा ।

- * *Uttara vati dravya* should be mild and light.
- * The maximum dose of unctuous substance using in *uttara vastī* for male patient is one *śukti* i.e. half *pala*=24 ml.

Uttara vastī in males:

अथ स्नाताशितस्यास्य स्नेहबस्तिविधानतः ॥७ ३ ॥

ऋजोः सुखोपविषस्य पीठे जानुसमे मृदौ । हृष्टे मेद्रे स्थिते चर्जौ शनैः स्नोतोविशुद्धये ॥७ ४ ॥

सूक्ष्मां शलाकां प्रणयेत्तया शुद्धेऽनुसेवनि । आमेहनान्तं नेत्रं च निष्कर्पं गुदवत्ततः ॥७ ५ ॥

पीडितेऽन्तर्गते स्नेहे स्नेहबस्तिक्रमो हितः । बस्तीननेन विधिना दद्यात् त्रिंश्चतुरोऽपि वा ॥७६॥
अनुवासनवच्छेषं सर्वमेवास्य चिन्तयेत् ।

- * After having bath, patient is given food according to the regimen prescribed for *sneha vasti* and then the patient is asked to defecate or micturate if necessary.
- * Then he should be made to sit on a stool of knee height.
- * When penis is erected, introduce a probe in the urethral passage to find out the route.
- * Afterwards anointed *puṣpanetra* is to be introduced into the urethral passage completely, which is connected to *vastipuṭaka*, and then squeeze well, by taking with all precautions, such as without shaking the hands etc.
- * After the expulsion of unctuous substance it can be repeated for 3 to 4 times on the same day.
- * If the drug is not expelled even in the next day it should be withdrawn by means of *phala varti*.
- * After the withdrawal of given drug, follow the postoperative regimen as that of *sneha vasti*.
- * Management of the complications is also similar to that of *sneha vasti*.

Uttara vasti in females:

स्त्रीणामार्तवकाले तु योनिर्गुह्णात्यपावृते: ॥७७॥
विदधीत तदा तस्मादनृतावपि चात्यये । योनिविभ्रंशशूलेषु योनिव्यापद्यसृगदरे ॥७८॥

The ideal time for the *uttara vasti* in females is during *ṛtukāla*.

- * During that period uterus and os will be opened so that the drug administered can pass easily and mitigates *vāta*, and there-by chances of getting conception rapidly.
- * In an emergency like prolapsed uterus, pain in the uterus or vagina and in bleeding disorders *uttara vasti* can be conducted without observing *ṛtu kāla*.

Uttara vastinetra parimāṇa:

नेत्रं दशाङ्गुलं मुद्रप्रवेशं चतुरङ्गुलम् । अपत्यमार्गे योज्यं स्याद् द्व्यङ्गुलं मूत्रवर्त्तनि ॥७९॥
मूत्रकृच्छ्रविकारेषु, बालानां त्वेकमङ्गुलम् ।

- * The *puṣpa netra* used for females has the length of 10 inches and the circumference of the tip is of the size of a green gram.
- * By attaching the urinary bladder of the animals like goat etc. to *puṣpanetra*, *vasti yantra* can be prepared.
- * *Puṣpanetra* should be introduced in the uterus up to 4 inches only to the women. For girls it should be introduced up to one inch length only into the urethral passage. And it should not be introduced in the uterine cavity for girls before menarche.

Quantity of uttara vasti dravya:

प्रकुञ्चो मध्यमा मात्रा, बालानां शुक्तिरेव तु ॥८०॥

The medium quantity of *sneha dravya* while administering as *uttara vasti* in adult female is 1 *prakuñca*(48 ml.) where as it is 1 *śukti*(24 ml.) in girls.

It infers the dosage of maximum and minimum quantity of *sneha dravya* in adult female is as follows.

Maximum	:	2 pala	=	96 ml
Medium	:	1 pala	=	48 ml
Minimum	:	$\frac{1}{2}$ pala	=	24 ml

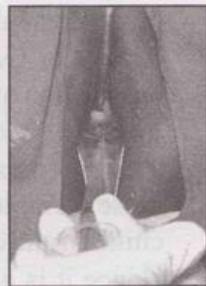
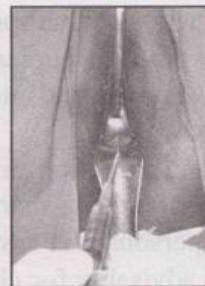
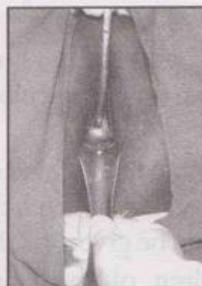
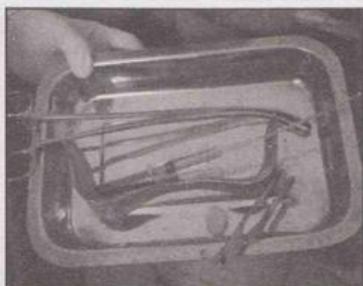
Uttara vasti vidhi:

उत्तानाया: शयानाया: सम्यक् सङ्कोच्य सकिथनी । ऊर्ध्वजान्वास्त्रिचतुरानहोरात्रेण योजयेत् ॥८ १ ॥
बस्तीस्त्रिरात्रमेवं च स्नेहमात्रां विवर्द्धयन् । त्र्यहमेव च विश्रम्य प्रणिदध्यात्पुनरूप्यहम् ॥८ २ ॥

- * It should be introduced in females in the lithotomic position.
- * In 24 hours it may be given 3-4 times. In this way it should be conducted for 3 consecutive days and the rest is to be given for 3 days and the process is to be repeated for another 3 days.

Notes:

To attract the retained drug *phala varti* is indicated. The *phala varti* used for female is bigger in size in comparison to that of males.



Uttara vasti in females

Time schedule for different śodhana procedures:

पक्षाद्विरेको वमिते ततः पक्षान्त्रिरूहणम् । सद्यो निरूढश्चान्वास्यः सप्तरात्राद्विरेचितः ॥८ ३ ॥

- * After *vamana karma* whenever we are going to proceed for *virecana* to the same patient it should be conducted on the 15th day.

- After *vamana*

<i>samsarjana krama</i>	- 7 days
• Rest on the	- 8 th day
• <i>Snehapāna</i>	- 9 th , 10 th & 11 th day
• <i>Sweda</i>	- 12 th , 13 th & 14 th day
• <i>Virecana</i>	- 15 th day.

* After *virecana anuvāsana vasti* should be conducted on the 9th day.

- After *virecana*

<i>samsarjana krama</i>	- 7 days
• Rest on the	- 8 th day
• <i>Anuvāsana vasti</i>	- 9 th day

* After *virecana āsthāpana vasti* should be conducted on the 15th day.

यथा कुसुम्भादियुतात्तोयाद्रागं हरेत्पटः । तथा त्रवीकृतादेहाद्वस्तिर्निर्हरते मलान् ॥8 4 ॥

Just as a cloth absorbs color from the decoction of *kusumbha*, *vasti dravya* also attracts the vitiated *doṣas* from the anointed body.

Importance of *vasti*:

शाखागताः कोष्ठगताश्च रोगा मर्मोर्ध्वसर्वावयवाङ्गजाश्च ।
ये सन्ति तेषां न तु कश्चिदन्यो वायोः परं जन्मनि हेतुरस्ति ॥8 5 ॥
विट्श्लेष्मपित्तादिमलोच्चयानां विक्षेपसंहारकरः स यस्मात् ।
तस्यातिवृद्धस्य शमाय नान्यद् बस्तेर्विना भेषजमस्ति किञ्चित् ॥8 6 ॥
तस्माच्चिकित्सादृद्धं इति प्रदिष्टः कृत्वा चिकित्साऽपि च बर्सिरेकैः ।

- * *Vasti* is the best line of treatment for *vāta* disorders. It causes instant relief, nourishment to the body and also eliminates the vitiated *vāta doṣas* completely from the body.
- * *Vāta* is the leader among the *doṣika* trio, independent, and is responsible for all the physiological functions of the body.
- * As it is of five types, it occupies all parts of the body, controls creation, sustenance and destruction of all external and internal things and also causes for the production of diseases in all the three pathways.
- * Though emesis and purgation eliminate the vitiated *doṣas* from the body, the drugs used in those therapies are pungent, sharp and hot in potency, which cannot be taken easily by the children and old persons. But *vasti* can be given in all age groups without any hesitation.
- * Hence it is also advisable for children, old persons, emaciated, obese, tissue depletion, weak sense organs, women, infertility or difficulty in labor due to the vitiation of *vāta*. It is also advisable to improve digestive power, color complexion, intelligence, voice, life span and happiness.
- * *Vasti* is useful to maintain the youth and also beneficial in diseases like lameness, urustambha, fractures, contractures, distension of abdomen, colic, anorexia, reverse peristalsis, cutting pain in the rectum etc.

* Hence *vasti* is described as half of the treatment for almost all diseases and some others opine that it is full treatment even.

Importance of sirāvedhana:

तथा निजागन्तुविकारकास्त्रिष्ठौषधत्वेन शिराव्यधोऽपि ॥८७॥

Similarly *sirāvedhana* also occupies unique position in the management of endogenous as well as exogenous diseases born by the vitiation of blood.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने बस्तिविधिनामैकोनविंशतिमोऽध्यायः ॥१९॥

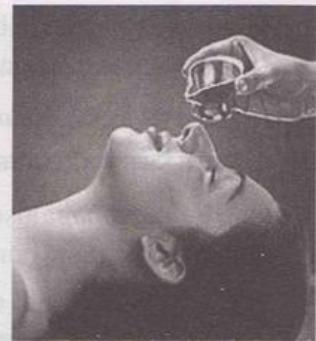
Thus ends the nineteenth chapter entitled *Vasti-vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In this chapter *Vasti-vidhi*, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the process of *vasti* in detail. Definition of *vasti*, importance, advantages and types such as *āsthāpana*, *anuvāsana*, *uttara vasti*. Indications and contraindications of *āsthāpana vasti*, *anuvāsana vasti*, *vastinetra*, *vasti puṭaka* and preparation of *vasti yantra*. Dosage of *āsthāpana vasti dravya*. Post operative care. Types according to number—*karma vasti*, *kāla vasti*, *yoga vasti*; and at the end, *uttara vasti*-definition and procedure for male and female etc. have been discussed.

*

20 NASYA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[*Nasal Administration*]



अथातो नस्यविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After 'Vasti-vidhi Adhyāya', Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter 'Nasya-vidhi' (Nasal Administration), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Definition of nasya:

नासायां प्रणीयमानमौषधं नस्यम् । नावनं नस्तः कर्मेति च संज्ञां लभते ।

Administration of the drug through nostrils is known as *nasya*. *Nāvana* and *nastāḥ karma* are the synonyms of *nasya karma*.

ऊर्ध्वजनुविकारेषु विशेषान्नस्यमिष्यते । नासा हि शिरसो द्वारं तेन तद्व्याप्य हन्ति तान् ॥1॥

Nose is the gateway of the head. The drug administered through the nostrils, moves up the channels up to *śringāṭaka* and spreads to the whole of the interior of the head, the channels of eyes, ears, throat and cures all most all diseases of the head as easy as a vein of a grass is removed from its blade.

Types of nasya:

विरेचनं बृहणं च शमनं च त्रिधातपि तत् ।

Nasya is of 3 types viz.

(a) *Virecana nasya* (b) *Bṛīhāṇa nasya* (c) *Śamana nasya*

(a) Virecana nasya:

विरेचनं शिरःशूलजाडयस्यन्दगलामये ॥2॥

शोफगण्डकृमिग्रन्थिकृष्टापस्मारपीनसे ।

It is indicated in diseases affecting the parts of the body above the shoulders such as headache, stiffness of the neck, conjunctivitis, hoarseness of voice, swelling, enlargement of glands, worms, tumors, rash and other skin diseases, epilepsy, coryza and the diseases originated due to the vitiation of *kapha*.

(b) Bṛīhāṇa nasya:

बृहणं वातजे शूले सूर्यावर्ते स्वरक्षये ॥3॥

नासास्यशोषे वाक्सङ्घे कृच्छ्रबोधेऽवबाहके ।

Bṛīhāṇa nasya is indicated in migraine, hemicrania, hoarseness of voice, dryness of the nose and mouth, unable to talk, difficulty in opening the eyelids immediately after getting up from sleep, difficult in moving arm and the diseases originated due to the vitiation of *vāta*.

(c) Śamana nasya:

शमनं नीलिकाव्यङ्गकेशदोषाक्षिराजिषु ॥४॥

Śamana nasya is indicated in diseases such as:

- * Pigmentation (blackish and blue) on the skin, discoloration, premature wrinkles on the skin, graying of hair and baldness.
- * Diseases of the scalp, reddish striae in the eyes, hemorrhagic disorders etc.

Drugs useful for virecana nasya:

यथास्वं यौगिकैः स्नेहैर्यथास्वं च प्रसाधितैः । कल्कक्वाथादिभिश्चाद्यं मधुपद्मासवैरपि ॥५॥

The substances used for *virecana nasya* should be an oil processed with strong drugs and which are in the form of paste, decoction etc., after mixing it with honey, rock salt and āsava.

Drugs useful for bṛīhaṇa nasya:

बूङ्हणं धन्वमांसोत्थरसासुक्खपुरेरपि ।

Bṛīhaṇa nasya should be conducted with the mutton soup or with the blood of the animals dwelling in desert lands or with *khpura* (resin and gum of herbs).

Drugs useful for śamana nasya:

शमनं योजयेत्पूर्वैः क्षीरेण सलिलेन वा ॥६॥

The drugs used for *śamana nasya* should be in the form of oil and processed with mild drugs, mutton juice/blood/milk or with water.

Note:

Anutaila can be used in the normalcy of *doṣas*.

Classification of nasya according to the type of drug used:

मर्शश्च प्रतिमर्शश्च द्विधा स्नेहोऽत्र मात्रया । कल्काद्यैरवपीडस्तु स तीक्ष्णैर्मूद्धरेचनः ॥७॥
ध्मानं विरेचनशूर्णो-

- * Basing on the quantity of oil used, *sneha nasya* is of two types viz. *marṣa* and *pratimarṣa*.
- * In *virecana* and *śamana* types due to the administration of fresh juice, which is expressed from the pastes, it is also called as *avapīḍana nasya*.
- * If the powder is used in *virecana nasya* it is also called *dhmāna nasya* or *pradhamana nasya*.

Mode of administration of dhmāna nasya:

-युद्ध्यात्तं मुखवायुना । घड्डगुलद्विमुखया नाड्या भेषजगर्भया ॥८॥
स हि भूरितरं दोषं चूर्णत्वादपकर्षति ।

- * It should be administered into the nostrils by taking the powdered drug in a tube opened in both the ends and having a length of 6 inches by blowing forcefully by mouth of the attendant.
- * It is very much useful for the expulsion of *doṣas*.

Notes:

If other unctuous substances are used it is called as *nāvana nasya*. *Nasya* is having the property of expulsion of *kapha* from the body. Therefore the word *śiro-virecana* is applicable to all types of *nasyas*.

Nasya mātrā:

प्रदेशिन्यङ्गुलीर्पवद्वयान्मग्नसमुद्धतात् ॥९॥
 यावत्पतत्यसौ बिन्दुर्दशाष्टौ षट्कमेण ते । मर्शस्योत्कष्टमध्योना मात्रास्ता एव च क्रमात् ॥१०॥
 बिन्दुद्वयोना: कल्कादेः-

Bindu—the amount of liquid that flown after immersing two digits of the index finger in any liquid substance is equivalent to one *bindu*.

Dosage of different types of nasyas:

Type of nasya	Hrasva mātrā	Madhyama mātrā	Uttama mātrā
1. <i>Nāvana</i>	8 drops	16 drops	32 drops
2. <i>Avapīḍana</i>	4 drops	6 drops	8 drops
3. <i>Pradhamana</i>	2 <i>rattī</i>	3 <i>rattī</i>	4 <i>rattī</i>
4. <i>Marṣa</i>	6 drops	8 drops	10 drops
5. <i>Pratimarṣa</i>	2 drops	2 drops	2 drops

Notes:

Oil should be used for : Feared persons, women, emaciated and delicate persons.

Decoction and paste : Throat disorders, typhoid fever, excessive sleep, psychic disorders, is used for worms, diseases of the head, blinking of eyes, darkness before eyes, conjunctivitis due to sharp poisons, snake bite, un-consciousness etc.

Powder is to be administered : In the above disorders when the *doṣas* are profound and in serious condition, because it acts very quickly.

Contraindications for nasya:

-योजयेन्न तु नावनम् । तोयमद्यगरस्नेहपीतानां पातुभिञ्चताम् ॥११॥
 भुक्तभक्तशिरःस्नातस्नातुकामस्तुतासूजाम् । नवपीनसवेगार्त्सूतिकाश्वासकासिनाम् ॥१२॥
 शुद्धानां दत्तबस्तीनां तथाऽनार्तवदुदिने । अन्यत्रात्यथिकादव्याधे:-

Nasya should not be conducted to the persons:

- * Who have just taken water, alcohol, artificial poison and unctuous substances and food or desired to take.
- * Who have taken head bath or desired to take.
- * Conducted venesection or having bleeding.
- * Acute coryza, urge to pass urine and faeces.
- * After delivery, those suffering from cough.
- * After conduction of emesis, purgation and enema.
- * During unsuitable season, inauspicious days and sky is full of clouds.

Times of administration of nasya:

-अथ नस्यं प्रयोजयेत् ॥1 3॥

प्रातः श्लेषणि, मध्याह्ने पित्ते, सायंनिशोश्ले । स्वस्थवृत्ते तु पूर्वाह्ने शरत्कालवसन्तयोः ॥1 4॥

शीते मध्यन्दिने, ग्रीष्मे सायं वर्षासु सातपे । वाताभिभूते शिरसि हिधमायामपतानके ॥1 5॥

मन्यास्तम्भे स्वरध्नेशो सायंप्रातदिने दिने । एकाहान्तरमन्यत्र-

- For— *Vāta* disorders : Evening hours
- Pitta* disorders : Noon hours
- Kapha* disorders : Morning hours

- For healthy persons—

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| During <i>śarad</i> & <i>vasanta</i> ḫtu | : Morning. |
| <i>Hemanta</i> , <i>śiśira</i> ḫtu | : After noon. |
| <i>Grīṣma</i> ḫtu | : Evening. |
| <i>Varṣā</i> ḫtu | : Whenever sun is shining. |

- For the persons suffering from—

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Diseases of the head caused by <i>vāta</i> , hiccup, tetanus, cervical, spondylitis, hoarseness of voice. | : Daily morning & evening for 7 days. |
|---|---------------------------------------|

- In other diseases: : Morning & evening in the alternative days for one week.

-सप्ताहं च तदाचरेत् ॥1 6॥

- *Nasya* should not be conducted for more than 7 days.

Nasya vidhi:

स्निग्धस्विनोत्तमाङ्गस्य प्राक्कृतावश्यकस्य च । निवातशयनस्थस्य जत्रूर्ध्वं स्वेदयेत् पुनः ॥1 7॥
 अथोत्तानर्जुदेहस्य पाणिपादे प्रसारिते । किञ्चिदुत्तपादस्य किञ्चिन्मूर्द्धनि नामिते ॥1 8॥
 नासापुटं पिधायैकं पर्यायेण निषेचयेत् । उष्णाम्बुतपं भैषज्यं प्रणाडया पिचुनाऽथवा ॥1 9॥
 दत्ते पादतलस्कन्धहस्तकर्णादि मर्दयेत् । शानैरुच्छिद्य निष्ठीवेत्पार्श्वयोरुभयोस्ततः ॥1 2 0॥
 आभेषजक्षयादेवं द्विस्त्रिवर्वा नस्यमाचरेत् ।

- * The person selected for *nasya* should be anointed the head and neck region with a suitable oil followed by sudation, and then asked to finish natural calls if necessary.
- * Afterwards he is made to lie down in a room, which is devoid of breeze and should be given fomentation once again, above the clavicular region.
- * Then the patient is made to lie on his back, stretching his limbs straight in with head end lowered and legs slightly raised.
- * Afterwards the medicine is made lukewarm and then it should be taken either in a tube or with a soaked swab and instilled into each nostril by keeping the other one closed.

- * Immediately after the administration of the drug, gentle massage should be done on the soles, palm, shoulder, neck, ears etc.
- * Then turn to his sides and spit out till the expulsion of whole medicine.
- * In this way it should be repeated twice or thrice.



Pūrva karma



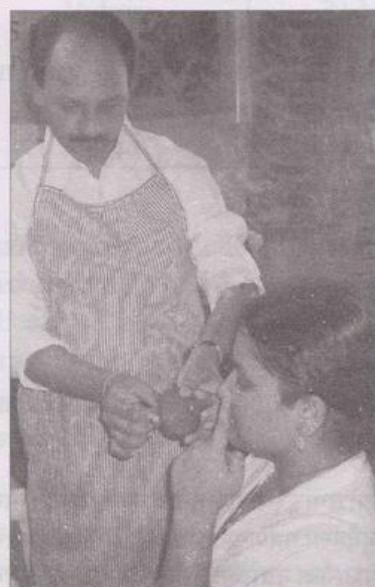
Pūrva karma



Pradhāna karma



Paścāt karma



Dhūmapāna

Management of mūrcchā:

मूर्च्छायां शीततोयेन सिङ्गेत्परिहरन् शिरः ॥२१॥

During the process of *nasya*, if the patient faints sprinkle cold water on the body leaving the head.

Administer sneha nasya after virecana nasya:

स्नेहं विरेचनस्थान्ते दद्याद् दोषाद्यपेक्ष्या ।

After the completion of the process of *virecana nasya*, *sneha dravyas* should be administered by keeping *dosa*, *desa*, *sātmya* etc. in view.

Dhūmapāna prayoga:

नस्यान्ते वाक्शं तिष्ठेदुत्तानः:-

Later on the patient is instructed to lie down on supine position for about a period of uttering one hundred syllables.

-धारयेत्ततः ॥२ २ ॥

धूमं पीत्वा कवोष्णाम्बुकवलान् कण्ठशुद्धये ।

After getting proper signs and symptoms ask the patient to gargle with lukewarm water followed by *vairecanika dhūma* or any other, which is suitable to clear the throat.

सम्यक्स्निग्धे सुखोच्छ्वासस्वप्नबोधाक्षपाटवम् ॥२ ३ ॥

Proper signs and symptoms of *snigdha nasya*—

- Normal respiratory function.
- Proper sleep.
- Awakening from sleep easily.
- Sensorial happiness etc.

रूक्षेऽक्षिस्तब्धता शोषो नासास्ये मूर्द्धशून्यता ।

Signs and symptoms of insufficient *snigdha nasya*—

- Loss of ophthalmic movements.
- Dryness in the nose and mouth.
- Feeling of emptiness in the head.

स्निग्धेऽति कण्ठगुरुताप्रसेकारुचिपीनसाः ॥२ ४ ॥

Signs and symptoms of excessive *snigdha nasya*—

- Itching.
- Heaviness in the head.
- Excessive salivation.
- Anorexia.
- Coryza.

Virecana nasya:

सुविरिक्तेऽक्षिलघुतावक्त्रस्वरविशुद्धयः । दुर्विरिक्ते गदोद्रेकः , क्षामताऽतिविरेचिते ॥२ ५ ॥

Proper signs : Lightness in the eyes.

Clarity in the voice.

Cleanliness in the mouth.

Insufficient signs : Provocation of the disease condition.

Excessive signs : Emaciation of the body.

Pratimarśa nasya:

प्रतिमर्शः क्षतक्षामबालवृद्धसुखात्मसु । प्रयोज्योऽकालवर्षेऽपि-

Indications:

Pratimarśa nasya can be administered to the persons who are weak, chest injured, aged, children and delicate persons and also during rainy seasons and even the sky is cloudy.

—न त्विष्टो दुष्टपीनसे ॥२ ६ ॥

मद्यपीतेऽबलश्रोत्रे कृमिदूषितमूर्द्धनि । उत्कृष्टोत्क्लिष्टदोषे च, हीनमात्रतया हि सः ॥२ ७ ॥

Contraindications:

But it should not be administered to the persons suffering from *dusṭa pratiṣyāya*, vitiation of dosas, worm infections, who have taken alcoholic drinks, those having weakness of hearing etc. as the dose of *pratimarśa* is less.

Fifteen times of administration of *pratimarśa nasya*:

निशाहर्मुक्तवान्ताहः स्वप्नाध्वश्रमरेतसाम् । शिरोऽध्यञ्जनगण्डूषप्रस्त्रावाञ्जनवर्चसाम् ॥२ ८ ॥

दन्तकाष्ठस्य हासस्य योज्योऽन्तेऽसौ द्विबिन्दुकः । पञ्चसु स्रोतसां शुद्धिः, क्लमनाशस्त्रिषु क्रमात् ॥२ ९ ॥
दृग्बलं पञ्चसु, ततो दन्तादर्थं मरुच्छमः ।

Fifteen times of administration of *pratimarśa nasya* and their advantages:

S.No.	Time of administration	Advantages
1.	At the end of the night (early in the morning)	<i>Sroto śuddhi</i> (channels become clear)
2.	At the end of the day	
3.	After taking meal	
4.	After vomiting	
5.	After day sleep	
6.	After walking long distances	<i>Klama nāśa</i> (relieves fatigue)
7.	After exercises	
8.	After sexual intercourse	
9.	After head massage	<i>Dṛḍhbala</i> (improves eye sight)
10.	After mouth gargling	
11.	After micturition	
12.	After collyrium	
13.	After defecation	
14.	After brushing the teeth	<i>Danta dārdhyā</i> (gives strength to the teeth)
15.	After too much laughing	<i>Marucchama</i> (mitigates <i>vāta</i>)

Suitable age for conducting various *sodhana* procedures:

न नस्यमूनसप्ताब्दे नातीताशीतिवत्सरे ॥३ ० ॥

न चोनाष्टादशे धूमः, कवलो नोनपञ्चमे । न शुद्धिरूनदशमे न चातिक्रान्तसप्ततौ ॥३ १ ॥

* Except *pratimarśa*, other *nasyas* should not be conducted for the persons having below 7 years of age and above 80 years.

* *Dhūmapāna* should not be conducted below 18 years of age.

- * *Kavala* is contraindicated for below 5 years children.
- * Purificatory measures should not be conducted below 10 years children and above 70 years persons.

आजन्ममरणं शस्तः प्रतिमर्शस्तु बस्तिवत् । मर्शवच्च गुणान् कुर्यात्स हि नित्योपसेवनात् ॥३ २ ॥
न चात्र यन्त्रणा नापि व्यापद्धयो मर्शवद्धयम् ।

- * But *pratimarsha nasya* can be given since birth to death, similar to that of *vasti*.
- * *Pratimarsha* also gives similar effects to that of *marsha nasya* if it is used for a longer period.
- * Need not observe the post-operative regimen like '*uṣṇodakopacārī*' etc. after *pratimarsha nasya*.
- * No complications will be seen with *pratimarsha nasya*.

Importance of taila as nasya dravya:

तैलमेव च नस्यार्थं नित्याभ्यासेन शास्यते ॥३ ३ ॥
शिरसः श्लेष्मधामत्वात्स्नेहाः स्वस्थस्य नेतरे ।

Taila (sesamum oil) is the best drug of choice for nasal administration as the head is the seat for *kapha dosha* and the other oleating substances are not suitable for the elimination of vitiated *kapha*.

Effects of marsha and pratimarsha:

आशुकृच्चिरकारित्वं गुणोत्कर्षपृष्ठता ॥३ ४ ॥
मर्शं च प्रतिमर्शं च विशेषो न भवेद्यदि । को मर्शं सपरीहरं सापदं च भजेत्ततः ॥३ ५ ॥
अच्छपानविचाराख्यौ कुटीवातातपस्थिती । अन्वासमात्राबस्ती च तद्वदेव विनिर्दिशेत् ॥३ ६ ॥

- * *Marsha nasya* acts faster and having greater benefits and also causes complications whereas *pratimarsha nasya* acts slowly and benefits are less and devoid of complications. Hence *marsha* is superior to *pratimarsha*.
- * *Accha peya* (drinking of unctuous substances alone) and *vicāraṇīya* in take of oil mixed with other substances, *kuṭiprāveśika* (indoor regimen) and *vātātapika* (outdoor regimen), *anuvāsana* (oleus enema) and *mātrā vasti* (oil enema with very little oil) are also should be considered in the same way.

Preparation of aṇutaila:

जीवन्तीजलदेवदारुजलदत्वक्सेव्यगोपीहिमं दार्ढीत्वङ्मधुकप्लवागुरुवरीपुण्ड्राह्विल्वोत्पलम् ।
धावन्तौ सुरभिं स्थिरे कृमिहरं पुत्रं त्रुटिं रेणुकां किञ्चल्कं कमलाद्वलां शतगुणे दिव्येऽम्भसि क्वाथयेत् ॥३ ७ ॥
तैलाद्रसं दशगुणं परिशेष्य तेन तैलं पचेत सलिलेन दशैव वारान् । पाके क्षिपेच्च दशमे सममाजदुर्धां ॥३ ८ ॥
नस्यं महागुणमुशन्त्यनुतैलमेतत् ।

1. *Jīvantī* (*Leptadenia reticulata*), 2. *jala/balaka* (*Coleus vettiveroides*), 3. *devadāru* (*Cedrus deodara*), 4. *jalada/mustā* (*Cyperus rotundus*), 5. *twak* (*Cinnamomum zeylanicum*), 6. *sevya/uśīra* (*Vetiveria zizanioides*), 7. *gopī/sāribā* (*Hemidesmus indicus*), 8. *hima/candana* (*Santalum album*), 9. *darvī twak* (*Berberis aristata*), 10. *madhuka/yaṣṭimadhu* (*Glycyrrhiza*

glabra), 11. *plava/bhadramustā/kaivaramustā* (Cyperus sp.), 12. *aguru* (Aquilegia agallocha), 13. *vara/triphala—haritakī* (*Terminalia chebula*), *āmalakī* (*Emblica officinale*), *vibhītakī* (*Terminalia bellerica*), 14. *puṇḍrāhwa/prapouṇḍarīka* (it is an unidentified *kānda viṣa*), 15. *bilwa* (*Aegle marmelos*), 16. *utpalā* (*Nymphaea stellata*), 17. *dhāvanyou—br̥hatī* (*Solanum indicum*), *kaṇṭakārī* (*Solanum xanthocarpum*), 18. *surabhi* (*rāsnā/śallakī*), 19. *sthire/sthira dwaya—śāliparṇī* (*Desmodium gangeticum*), *pṛśniparṇī* (*Uraria picta*), 20. *kṛmihara* (*Embelia ribes*), 21. *patra/talīsapatra* (*Taxus baccata*), 22. *tṛti/ela* (*Elattaria cardamomum*), 23. *reṇukā/nirgunḍī* (*Vitex negundo*), 24. *kamala kiñjalka/padma keśara* (*Nelumbo nucifera*), 25. *balā* (*Sida cordifolia*).

Method:

Take the above drugs and should be boiled with 100 times of pure rain water and prepare the decoction by reducing up to $\frac{1}{10}$ th of the total quantity. Divide the decoction into 10 parts. And then the oil should be boiled for 10 times. take one part of the decoction and add equal quantity of oil and prepare the medicated oil as per the procedure. Then take the 2nd part and then 3rd. In this way it should be boiled for 10 times.

At the final stage of boiling (i.e. the 10th) equal quantity of goat's milk should be added to it. This method of preparation of *aṇutaila* is superior.

This oil is useful for alleviating all the three *dosas*, and gives strength to the sense organs. Increases hair growth and good for the skin and throat, satiating and nourishing the body.

Advantages of nasya:

घनोन्नतप्रसन्नत्वक्षस्यग्रीवास्यवक्षसः । दृढेन्द्रियास्तपलिता भवेयुर्नस्यशीलिनः ॥३ ९ ॥

- * Skin, shoulder, neck, chest become thick, well developed and bright.
- * Sense organs become strong and well functioned.
- * Hair doesn't become gray, if takes nasal administration regularly.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने नस्यविधिनाम विंशोऽध्यायः ॥१२०॥

Thus ends the twentieth chapter entitled *Nasya-vidhi Adhyāya* of *Sūtra* *Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya* *Saṅhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Simhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the procedure of nasal administration in a systematic way. Definition of *nasya*, importance, types such as *recana*, *bṛīhāṇa* & *śamana*, their indications and preparation of *aṇutaila*, indications and contraindications of *nasya*, times of administration, its dosage, *nasya vidhi*, proper signs and symptoms of *nasya*, *pratimarśa* *nasya* indications and contraindications and 15 times of administration of *pratimarśa* and their advantages etc. have been discussed.

21 DHŪMAPĀNA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Inhalation of Medicated Fumes]



अथाते धूमपानविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After 'Nasya-vidhi', Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter 'Dhūmapāna-vidhi' (Inhalation of Medicated Fumes) thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Inhalation of medicated fumes is known as *dhūmapāna*.

Dhūmapāna prayojana:

जत्रूर्ध्वकफवातोत्थविकाराणामजन्मने । उच्छेदाय च जातानां पिबेद्धूमं सदाऽऽत्मवान् ॥1॥

A person who is taking care of his health should undergo the therapeutic procedure i.e. *dhūmapāna* for the prevention and curative aspects of the disorders of *vāta* and *kapha* above the upper part of the shoulders.

स्निग्धो मध्यः स तीक्ष्णश्च, वाते वातकफे कफे । योज्यः—

Dhūmapāna is of 3 types viz.

1. *Snigdha dhūma* is indicated in *vāta* disorders.
2. *Madhyama dhūma* indicated in *vāta-kapha* disorders.
3. *Tīkṣṇa dhūma* in *kapha* disorders.

Notes:

Classification of *dhūmapāna* mentioned in Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha:

Types of dhūmapāna:

Dhūmapāna is of 3 types viz.

1. *Śamana dhūmapāna* (palliative)
2. *Bṛīhaṇa dhūmapāna* (nourishing)
3. *Śodhana dhūmapāna* (purificatory)

and also—

1. *Kāsaghna dhūmapāna* (anti tussive)
2. *Vāmaka dhūmapāna* (emetic)
3. *Vraṇa dhūmapāna* (fumigation to ulcers)

* *Prāyogika dhūmapāna* and *madhyama dhūmapāna* are the synonyms for *śamana dhūmapāna*.

- * *Snehana* and *mṛdu dhūmapāna* are the synonyms for *bṛīhaṇa dhūmapāna*.
- * *Virecana* and *tīkṣṇa dhūmapāna* are the synonyms for *śodhana dhūmapāna*.

Contraindications:

—न रक्तपित्तार्तिविरक्तोदरमेहिषु ॥२॥
 तिमिरोर्ध्वानिलाध्मानरोहिणीदत्तबस्तिषु । मत्स्यमद्यदधिक्षीरक्षीद्रस्नेहविषाशिषु ॥३॥
 शिरस्यभिहते पाण्डुरोगे जागरिते निशि ।

Dhūmapāna (inhalation of medicated fumes) should be contraindicated in the persons suffering from *rakta-vikāra*, *pitta roga*, *virikta* (disease after purgation therapy), *udara* (ascitis), *meha* (diabetes), *timira* (cataract), *urdhwānila* (upward movement of *vāta*), *ādhmāna* (distension of abdomen), *rohiṇī* (throat disorder), *datta vasti* (after medicated enemata), and who have consumed *matsya* (fish), *madya* (alcohol), *dadhi* (curd), *ksīra* (milk), *ksoudra* (honey), *sneha* and *viṣa* (unctuous substances and poison); who are having, *śirobhīghāta* (head injury), *pāṇḍu roga* (anemia) and *jagarite niśi* (who didn't sleep at all throughout the night).

Complications and their management:

रक्तपित्तान्द्यबाधिर्यतुण्मूर्च्छामदमोहकृत् ॥४॥
 धूमोऽकालेऽतिपीतो वा—

If *dhūmapāna* is conducted to the contraindicated persons the following complications will arise—

Raktapitta (bleeding disorders), *andhatwa* (blindness), *bādhirya* (deafness), *trṣṇā* (thirst), *mūrcchā* (fainting), *mada* (intoxication) and *moha* (delusion).

—तत्र शीतो विधिर्हितः ।

Cold regimen is the ideal treatment for these complications.

Notes:

Manage the complications by means of—

- *Gṛīha-pāna* (internal administration of medicated ghee).
- *Nasya* (nasal administration).
- *Lepa* (external application).
- *Parīṣeka* (pouring liquids/medicated decoctions over the body) and other suitable cold treatments.

* Though the drugs used for medicated fumes are cold in potency, after getting contact with fire, which will become hot and hence it is contraindicated for *pitta* and *rakta* disorders.

Different times of administration of *dhūmapāna*:

क्षुतजृभितविण्मूत्रस्त्रीसेवाशस्त्रकर्मणाम् ॥५॥
 हासस्य दन्तकाष्ठस्य धूममन्ते पिबेन्मृदुम् । कालेष्वेषु निशाहारनावनान्ते च मध्यमम् ॥६॥
 निद्रानस्याञ्जनस्नानच्छर्दितान्ते विरेचनम् ।

• *Mṛdu dhūmapāna* times are eight in number as follows—

1. After sneezing, 2. after yawning, 3. after defecation, 4. after micturition, 5. after sexual intercourse, 6. after surgery, 7. after laughing and 8. after brushing the tooth.

• *Madhyama dhūmapāna* times are—

1. After sneezing and the other above mentioned 8 times, 2. after dinner and 3. after nasal administration.

• *Virecana dhūmapāna* times are five in number—

1. After day sleep, 2. after nasal administration, 3. after applying collyrium, 4. after taking bath and 5. after vomiting.

Dhūmanetra:

बस्तिनेत्रसमद्रव्यं त्रिकोशं कारयेदृजु १७ ॥
मूलाग्रेऽङ्गुष्ठकोलास्थिप्रवेशं धूमनेत्रकम् ।

- * *Dhūmanetra* can be prepared with the same metals which are indicated for the preparation of *vastinetra* i.e. gold, silver, copper etc.
- * It should have the circumference of a thumb and little finger at the base and tip respectively and the hole near the tip is the size of *kolāsthī* (seed of jujuba fruit) and in the base *dhūmavarti* is to be arranged.
- * The shape should be similar to that of cow's tail, straight, having 3 compartments, smooth and having a slender rod inside, which will be useful to push the drug.

Length of dhūmanetra according to the type of dhūmapāna:

तीक्ष्णस्नेहनमध्येषु त्रीणि चत्वारि पञ्च च ॥८ ॥
अङ्गुलानां क्रमात्पातुः प्रमाणेनाष्टकानि तत् ।

The length varies according to the type of *dhūmapāna*. The length of:

<i>Madhyama/Śamana (prāyogika) dhūmanetra</i>	: 40 inches
<i>Snigdha/Bṛīhaṇa dhūmanetra</i>	: 32 inches
<i>Tikṣṇa/Śodhana dhūmanetra</i>	: 24 inches

Notes:

<i>Kāsaghna and vamana dhūmanetra</i>	: 10 inches
<i>Vraṇa dhūmanetra</i>	: 8 inches

Dhūmapāna-vidhi

ऋग्युपविष्टस्तच्चेता विवृतास्यस्त्रिपर्यथम् ॥९ ॥
पिधाय च्छद्रमेकैकं धूमं नासिकया पिबेत् ।

- * The eligible person should make to sit straight with a calm mind taking deep expiration and inspiration.
- * Arrange *dhūmavarti* to *dhūmanetra* and lit after applying ghee, and medicated fumes are to be inhaled through the nostrils.

- * He should be asked to inhale the smoke from one nostril at a time keeping the other one closed.
- * The fumes inhaled through the nostrils should be expelled through the mouth and those inhaled through the mouth also should be expelled through mouth only.
- * In this way inhale the fumes for three times.

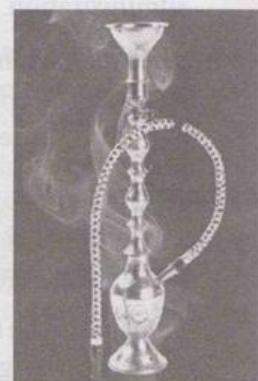
प्राक् पिबेन्नासयोत्क्लिष्टे दोषे घाणशिरोगते ॥११॥
उत्क्लेशनार्थं वक्त्रेण, विपरीतं तु कण्ठे ।
मुखेनैवोद्धमेद्धमं नासया दृग्विघातकृत् ॥११॥



Dhūmanetra

- * If the vitiated *doṣas* are moving from the sites like nose and head initially inhale the medicated fumes through nostrils followed by mouth.
- * If the *doṣas* adhered to the sites, inhale medicated fumes through mouth initially and then through nostrils for their mobilization.
- * The fumes inhaled through mouth should be never expelled through the nostrils otherwise complications like vision loss may arise.

आक्षेपमोक्षैः पातव्यो धूमस्तु त्रिख्निभिर्ख्निभिः ।



Hukkā

Dhūmapāna should be conducted thrice, which includes three times inhalation and three times exhalation of medicated fumes alternatively.

Snaihika dhūmapāna:

अहः पिबेत्सकृत् स्निधं, द्विर्ध्यं, शोधनं परम् ॥१२॥
त्रिश्वतुर्वा-

- * It should be done in bouts of 3-4 inhalations at a time or until the channels start exuding fluid.
- * It should be conducted only once in 24 hours that too in daytime.

Madhyama/Prāyogika dhūmapāna:

- * It should be conducted 2 to 3 bouts alternatively from the nose and mouth.
- * If the *doṣas* are above the throat level, first from the nose and then from the mouth.
- * If they are in the throat, first from the mouth and then from the nose.
- * In this way it should be done twice in 24 hours i.e. once in the morning and once in the night.

Tikṣṇa dhūmapāna:

- * *Tikṣṇa dhūmapāna* should be inhaled through the nostrils only.
- * It should be done in bouts of 4 inhalations each time or till the person feels the lightness of the channels.
- * It should be conducted 3 to 4 times in 24 hours.

DHŪMA DRAVYA

Drugs useful for sneha dhūmapāna:

—मृदौ तत्र द्रव्याण्यगुरुगुरुलु ।
 मुस्तस्थीणेयशीलेयनलदोशीरवालकम् ॥1 3 ॥
 वराङ्गकौन्तीमधुकबिल्वमजैलवालुकम् । श्रीवेष्टकं सर्जरसो ध्यामकं मदनं प्लवम् ॥1 4 ॥
 शल्लकी कुड़कमं माषा यवा: कुन्दुरुकस्तिला: । स्नेहः फलानां साराणां मेदो मज्जा वसा घृतम् ॥1 5 ॥

1. *Aguru* (*Aquilaria agallocha*), 2. *guggulu* (*Commiphora mukul*), 3. *mustā* (*Cyperus rotundus*), 4. *sthouṇeyaka* (*Taxus baccata*), 5. *śaileya* (*Parmelia perlata*), 6. *nalada* (*Nardostachys jatamansi*), 7. *uśīra* (*Vetiveria zizanioides*), 8. *välaka* (*Coleus vettiveroides*), 9. *varāṅga/twak* (*Cinnamomum tamala*), 10. *kauntī/hareṇu* (*Vitex negundo*), 11. *madhuka* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), 12. *bilwamajjā* (*Aegle marmelos*), 13. *elaväluka* (*Prunus cerasus*), 14. *śrīveṣṭaka* (*Pinus roxburghii*), 15. *sarjarasa* (*Vateria indica*), 16. *dhyāmaka* (*Cymbopogon species*), 17. *madana* (*Randia dumetorum*), 18. *plava* (*Cyperus sp*), 19. *śallakī* (*Boswellia serrata*), 20. *kunkuma* (*Crocus sativus*), 21. *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*), 22. *yava* (*Hordeum vulgare*), 23. *kunduruka* (gum of *Boswellia serrata*), 24. *tila* (*Sesamum indicum*), 25. oil obtained from *phala* (fruits), *sāra* (pith of trees), *medas* (fat), *majjā* (bone marrow), *vasā* (muscle fat) and *ghṛtā* (ghee) etc.

Drugs useful for madhyama dhūmapāna:

शमने शल्लकी काक्षा पृथ्वीका कमलोत्पलम् । न्यग्रोधोदुम्बराश्वत्यप्लक्षरोधत्वचः सिता ॥1 6 ॥
 यष्टीमधु सुवर्णत्वक् पद्मकं रक्तयष्टिका । गन्धाश्वाकुष्ठतगरा:-

1. *Śallakī* (*Boswellia serrata*), 2. *lākṣā* (*Laccifer lacca*), 3. *pṛthvīkā* (*bṛhad elā*), 4. *kamala* (*Nelumbo nucifera*), 5. *utpala* (*Nymphaea stellata*), 6. *nyagrodha* (*Ficus bengalensis*), 7. *udumbara* (*Ficus glomerata*), 8. *aśwattha* (*Ficus religiosa*), 9. *plakṣa* (*Ficus lacor*), 10. *rodhara* (*Symplocos racemosa*), 11. *sitā* (sugar), 12. *yaṣṭimadhu* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), 13. *suvarṇa twak/āragwadha* (*Cassia fistula*), 14. *padmaka* (*Prunus cerasoides*), 15. *raktayaṣṭikā/mañjiṣṭhā* (*Rubia cordifolia*), 16. *kuṣṭha* (*Saussurea lappa*) and 17. *tagara* (*Valeriana wallichii*).

Drugs useful for tikṣṇa dhūmapāna:

—तीक्ष्णे ज्योतिष्मती निशा ॥1 7 ॥
 दशमूलमनोह्नालं लाक्षा श्वेता फलत्रयम् । गन्धद्रव्याणि तीक्ष्णानि गणो मूर्द्धविरेचनः ॥1 8 ॥

1. *Jyotiṣmatī* (*Celastrus paniculatus*), 2. *niśā* (*Curcuma longa*), 3. *daśamūla* (*bṛhat & laghu pañcamūla*), 4. *manohwā* (*manahśilā*), 5. *āla* (*tālaka*), 6. *lākṣā* (*Laccifer lacca*), 7. *śvetā/vacā* (*Acorus calamus*), 8. *triphalā* (*harītakī, āmalakī, vibhītakī*), 9. *tikṣṇa gandha dravya* (*kuṣṭha, tagara* etc.), 10. *śirovirecana gaṇa dravya* (see chapter 15.4).

Preparation of dhūmavarti:

जले स्थितामहोरात्रमिषीकां द्वादशाङ्गुलाम् । पिष्टैर्धूमौषधैरेवं पञ्चकृत्वः प्रलेपयेत् ॥1 9 ॥
 वर्तिरङ्गुष्ठकस्थूला यवमध्या यथा भवेत् । छायाशुष्कां विगर्भां तां स्नेहाभ्यक्तां यथायथम् ॥2 0 ॥
 धूमनेत्रार्पितां पातुमग्निप्लुषां प्रयोजयेत् ।

- * Take a reed of *darbhā* (*Desmostachya bipinnata*) having a length of twelve inches and soak it in water over night.
- * Then apply the paste of the above mentioned drugs useful for *dhūmapāna* (in a quantity of 12 grs.) according to the condition of the disease for about 9 inches length to the reed and then dry it well.
- * Again apply the same paste and dry. In this way the paste is to be applied for 5 times. It should be in a thickness of a thumb and the shape of a barley grain.
- * After that remove the reed from it and can be used it as *dhūmavarti*, by inserting it into *dhūmanetra* and lit with fire.

Kāsaghna dhūmapāna:

शरावसम्पुटचिछ्रे नार्डी न्यस्य दशाङ्गुलाम् ॥२ १ ॥
अष्टाङ्गुला वा वक्त्रेण कासवान् धूममापिबेत् ।

- * Take an earthen saucer and fill it with the burning coal, which is devoid of smoke.
- * Then take the drugs useful and put them on the earthen saucer, which may be either in the powder form or paste.
- * Then seal it with another earthen saucer of equal size, which was kept inversely over the first one.
- * The upper saucer contains a hole in the center, which will be useful to arrange the *dhūmanetra*, and it should be in a length of 10 inches or 8 inches.
- * Then the patient is asked to inhale the fumes through the mouth and it should be exhaled through the mouth only.
- * This should be continued till the expulsion of vitiated *dosas* or the patient feels lightness of the organs.

Notes:

Vamana dhūma: It is also done in the same manner but after the patient has taken *khicadī*.

Vraṇadhūpana dhūma: *Vraṇadhūpana dhūma* procedure is similar to that of *kāsaghna dhūma*. It will be useful to clean the wound and its exudations and to relieve the pain.

Insufficient, excessive and proper signs and symptoms of dhūmapāna: Insufficient fumes of inhalation causes the increase of *dosas*, so that the disease will flare up. Excessive fumes of inhalation causes giddiness, fever etc. which were mentioned earlier.

If the dhūmapāna is conducted properly:

- * It cleans the impurities from the heart, throat and sense organs.
- * Causes lightness of the head.
- * Mitigates the vitiated *dosas* and also the diseases produced by them.
- * *Śamana dhūmapāna* is indicated for *vāta* and *kapha* disorders and healthy persons.



Dhūmavarti

- * Brīhmaṇa dhūmapāna is indicated for vāta disorders.
- * Śodhana dhūmapāna is indicated to mitigate kapha disorders.

Benefits of dhūmapāna:

कासः श्वासः पीनसो विस्वरत्वं पूतिर्गन्धः पाण्डुता केशदोषः ।
कर्णस्याक्षिस्त्रावकपण्डवर्तिजाङ्गं तन्ना हिघमा धूमपं न स्पृशन्ति ॥२ २ ॥

Cough, dyspnoea, coryza, disorders of voice, foul smell of the nose and mouth, anemia, diseases pertaining to hair, discharges coming from ears, mouth and nose, itching, pain, inactivity, stupor and hiccup etc. don't effect the persons those inhaling medicated fumes regularly.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने धूमपानविधिनामैकविंशतितमोऽध्यायः ॥२ १ ॥

Thus ends the twenty-first chapter entitled *Dhūmapāna-vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the inhalation of medicated fumes in a systematic way. Advantages, classification such as śamana, brīhmaṇa, śodhana and also kāsaghna, vamana & vrāṇa and their synonyms, contraindications, complications and their management with different times of administration, *dhūmanetra* and *dhūmavarti*, and the procedure of different types of *dhūmapāna*, insufficient excessive and proper signs and symptoms have been narrated.



2. Śamana gaṇḍūṣā:

—संशमनस्तित्तकषायमधुरोष्ठैः ॥२॥

Decoctions of the drugs possessing *tikta*, *kaṣāya* and *madhura rasa* are useful for *śamana gaṇḍūṣā*.

Notes:

Decoctions of the drugs which are bitter, astringent and sweet in taste, cold in potency such as *paṭola*, *nimba*, *jambū*, *āmra*, tender leaves of *mālatī*, *utpalā*, *madhūka* with sugar, water, honey, milk, sugarcane juice, ghee etc. can be used for *śamana gaṇḍūṣā*.

3. Śodhana gaṇḍūṣā:

शोधनस्तित्तकद्वम्लपटूष्ठौः—

Decoctions of the drugs possessing *tikta*, *kaṭū*, *amla* & *lavāṇa rasa* and *uṣṇa vīrya* are useful for *śodhana gaṇḍūṣā*.

Notes:

Decoctions of the drugs which are bitter, pungent, sour, salt in taste, hot in potency and other drugs which will be useful for nasal administration and sour whey, wine, sour gruel prepared from grains, urine of different animals etc. can be used for *śodhana gaṇḍūṣā*.

4. Ropāṇa gaṇḍūṣā:

—रोपणः पुनः । कषायतित्तकैः—

Decoction of drugs possessing *kaṣāya* and *tikta rasa* are useful for *ropāṇa gaṇḍūṣā*.

Notes:

Decoctions of the drugs, which are astringent and bitter in taste and cold in potency or with such drugs mentioned in various chapters of specific conditions, can be used for *ropāṇa gaṇḍūṣā*.

Useful liquids in gaṇḍūṣā:

—तत्र स्नेहः क्षीरं मधूदकम् ॥३॥

शुक्तं मद्यं रसो मूत्रं धान्याम्लं च यथायथम् । कल्कैर्युक्तं विपक्वं वा यथास्पर्शं प्रयोजयेत् ॥४॥

In the above 4 types of *gaṇḍūṣā*, appropriate paste of the drugs is to be selected according to *dōṣa* and it should be processed with any one of the following substances and can be used as mouth gargles when it is comfortable to hold.

Sneha (*ghṛta*, *taila*, *vāsā* & *majjā*), *kṣīra* (milk), *madhūdaka* (honey + water), *śukta* (fermented gruel), *madya* (alcohol), *rasa* (mutton soup), *mūtra* (urine of different animals) and *dhānyāmla*.

Gaṇḍūṣā in different conditions:

दन्तहर्षे दन्तचाले मुखरोगे च वातिके । सुखोष्णामथवा शीतं तिलकल्कोदकं हितम् ॥५॥

गण्डूषधारणे—

Paste of sesamum seeds mixed with warm water or cold water and used for *gandūṣa* is indicated in hyper sensitiveness and looseness of the teeth and also the diseases of the mouth, originated by the vitiation of *vāta*.

—नित्यं तैलं मांसरसोऽथवा । ऊषादाहान्विते पाके क्षते चागन्तुसम्भवे ॥६॥
विषे क्षाराग्निदग्धे च सर्पिर्धार्यं पयोऽथवा ।

* For daily use of mouth gargle either *tila taila* or mutton soup is good.

* Regular use of *gandūṣa* with ghee or milk will be useful in burning sensation, formation of ulcers in the mouth, accidental wounds due to poisons, alkalies and cauterization, which clean the accumulation of dirt and heels the ulcers.

वैशद्यं जनयत्याशु सन्दधाति मुखे व्रणान् ॥७॥
दाहतृष्णाप्रशमनं मधुगण्डूषधारणम् ।

The gargling with honey or water with honey will be useful to clean the accumulated dirt in the mouth. It also heals the mouth ulcers and relieves burning sensation and thirst.

धान्याम्लमास्यवैरस्यपलदौर्गन्ध्यनाशनम् ॥८॥

Gargling with *dhānyāmla* (fermented grainwash) will be useful in relieving the bad taste in the mouth, dirt and bad smell.

तदेवालवणं शीतं मुखशोषहरं परम् ।

Gargling with *dhānyāmla* without salt will be helpful to relieve the dryness of the mouth.

आशु क्षाराम्बुगण्डूषो भिनति श्लेषणश्वयम् ॥९॥

Gargling with *kṣārāmbu* (alkaline water) will break up the accumulated *kapha* instantaneously.

सुखोष्णोदकगण्डूषैर्जायते वक्त्रलाघवम् ।

Gargling with warm water furnishes lightness in the mouth.

Procedure of *gandūṣa-dhāraṇa*:

निवाते सातपे स्विन्नमृदितस्कन्धकन्धरः ॥१०॥

गण्डूषमपिबन् किञ्चिदुन्नतास्यो विधारयेत् ।

- * Ask the patient to sit comfortably in a place, which is devoid of breeze, but having sun light.
- * Then mild sudation should be conducted above the shoulder region and massage with medicated oil on the neck, cheeks and fore head etc.
- * The patient should be asked to concentrate his mind on the therapeutic procedure only.

Maximum limit to conduct *gandūṣa* and *kavala*:

कफपूर्णास्यता यावत्स्ववद्घाणाक्षताऽथवा ॥११॥

Gandūṣa and *kavala* should be done till the accumulation of *kapha* in the mouth or until the person gets watery discharge from the nose and eyes.

Definition of *gandusa* and *kavala*:

असञ्चार्यो मुखे पूर्णे गण्डूषः, कवलोऽन्यथा ।

Holding the liquid drugs in the buccal cavity for a specific period without moving to and fro is known as *gandusa*. Where as in *kavala* the drug holds in the oral cavity is allowed to move to and fro. Moving the drug and without movement is the only difference between *kavala* and *gandusa* respectively.

Benefits of *kavala*:

मन्याशिरः कण्ठमुखाक्षिरोगः प्रसेककण्ठामयवक्त्रशोषाः ।

हृलासतन्द्रारुचिपीनसाश्च साध्या विशेषात्कवलग्रहण ॥१ २ ॥

Diseases of the neck, head, ears, mouth and eyes, excessive salivation, throat disorders, dryness in the mouth, nausea, state of unconsciousness, anorexia and coryza will be relieved by the regular practice of *kavalagraha*.

Notes:

Dosage: Three types of dosage has been mentioned such as:

(a) *Pravara* (b) *Madhyama* (c) *Hina*.

Pravara mātrā (Maximum dose):

Here the quantity of the liquid used for gargles will be half of the capacity of the buccal cavity. If the patient is strong and the disease also exhibiting all the signs and symptoms maximum dose is indicated.

Madhyama mātrā (Medium dose):

The quantity of the drug will be 1/3rd of the capacity of the oral cavity. It is indicated for medium personalities and also the diseases of medium symptoms.

Hina mātrā (Minimum dose):

- * The quantity of the liquid used for gargles will be $\frac{1}{4}$ th of the capacity of the oral cavity and is indicated for delicate persons, mild diseases and the persons having *pitta* constitution.
- * If the medicated paste will be used for *gandusa*, its dose is one *kola* i.e., approximately 6 gms.
- * The patient is instructed not to talk till the completion of the process.
- * *Gandusa* and *kavala* should be done till the person gets watery discharge from the nose and eyes.
- * After that, again massage and sudation should be conducted.
- * In this way 3 or 5 or 7 gargles should be conducted or till he gets the proper signs and symptoms.

Proper, insufficient and excessive signs & symptoms:

- * If the patient gets relief from the symptoms of the original disease, it indicates the proper conduction of gargling.

- * Lassitude, tastelessness, coating of the tongue indicates the improper conduction.
- * Dryness of the mouth, stomatitis, weakness, anorexia, loss of taste, tachycardia, hoarseness of voice, tinnitus are the symptoms of excessive mouth gargling. These should be treated symptomatically.

Pratisāraṇa:

कल्को रसक्रिया चूर्णस्त्रिविधं प्रतिसारणम् । युज्यात्त कफरोगेषु गण्डूषविहितौषधैः ॥१३॥

Application of different form of the drugs inside the mouth with the help of a finger is known as *pratisāraṇa*.

The same drugs, which will be useful for *gandūṣa* can be used in *pratisāraṇa*. It can be done with the 3 types of recipes.

- (a) *Kalka* (paste)—कल्को जला पिष्टः ।
- (b) *Rasakriyā* (solidified decoction)—क्वाथादीनां पुनः पाकात् घनत्वं सा रसक्रिया ।
- (c) *Cūrṇa* (powder)—चूर्णः शुष्क एव पिष्टः ।

* This will be useful for conjunctivitis, glaucoma and uvulitis.

* Excessive therapy causes burning sensation, dryness, exudation, inflammation etc.

Mukhālepa (Face pack):

मुखालेपस्त्रिधा दोषविषहा वर्णकृच्च्य-

Mukhālepa is of 3 types viz.

1. *Doṣaghna* (mitigates *doṣas*)
2. *Viṣaghna* (anti poisonous)
3. *Vṛṇya* (imparts color & complexion)

—सः ॥१४॥

उष्णो वातकफे शस्तः, शेषेष्वत्यर्थशीतलः ।



Mukhālepa

Mukhālepa should be hot in *vāta* and *kapha* dominancy where as it should be too cold in *pitta* dominancy.

त्रिप्रमाणश्चुर्भागत्रिभागद्वाद्गुलोन्नतिः ॥१५॥

Basing on the thickness of the application of the paste, it is of 3 types such as $\frac{1}{4}$ th, $\frac{1}{3}$ rd and $\frac{1}{2}$ of the thickness of an *aṅgula*.

अशुष्कस्य स्थितिस्तस्य, शुष्को दूषयतिच्छविम् । तमार्द्रियित्वाऽपनयेत्तदन्तेऽभ्यङ्गमाचरेत् ॥१६॥

After applying the paste it is allowed to dry naturally. After the paste dries up it should be removed by moistening with water. Then the face should be anointed with oil.

विवर्जयेद्विवास्वन्भाष्याग्न्यातपशुक्कुधः ।

After the application of the paste the patient should avoid day sleep, talking, laughing, exposing to sunlight and heat and should not indulge in anger, grief, weeping, eating etc.

22 GANDŪṢĀDI-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Mouth Gargles & Others]



अथाते गण्डूषादिविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Dhūmapāna-vidhi*’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Gandūṣādi-vidhi*’ (Mouth Gargles & Others), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

‘*Gandūṣādi*’ the word itself suggests that this chapter is pertaining to not only *gandūṣa*. Along with *gandūṣa*, *kavala*, *pratisāraṇa*, *ālepa*, *mūrdha taila* and *karṇapūraṇa* are also have been discussed.

Types of *gandūṣa*:

चतुष्कारो गण्डूषः स्निग्धः शमनशोधनौ । रोपणश्च-

Gandūṣa (mouth gargles) is of 4 types viz.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Snigdha/Snaihika gandūṣa</i> (unctuous) | 3. <i>Śodhana gandūṣa</i> (purificatory) |
| 2. <i>Śamana gandūṣa</i> (palliative) | 4. <i>Ropāṇa gandūṣa</i> (healing) |

—त्रयस्तत्र त्रिषु योज्याश्वलादिषु ॥१॥

अन्यो व्रणान्वः—

Among the four, the first three types are indicated for the diseases originated by *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* respectively. The last i.e. *ropāṇa gandūṣa* is indicated for the healing of the ulcers in the mouth. (*Śamana*, *stambhana*, *prasādana* and *nirvāpāṇa* are the synonyms of the above 4 types of *gandūṣa* respectively according to the author of *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha*.)

DRUGS USEFUL IN VARIOUS TYPES OF GANDŪṢA

1. Snigdha or Snaihika *gandūṣa*:

—स्निग्धोऽत्र स्वाद्वम्लपटुसाधितैः । स्नेहैः—

Drugs possessing *madhura*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasa* are being processed with different types of unctuous substances viz. *taila*, *ghṛta*, *vasā* etc. are useful for *snaihika gandūṣa*.

Notes:

Decoctions of the drugs which are sweet, sour and salty in taste, hot in potency (or) unctuous substances made by processing with the above drugs mixed with mutton soup, paste of sesamum seeds, milk can be used for *snaihika gandūṣa* when they are warm.

न योज्यः पीनसेऽजीर्णे दत्तनस्ये हनुग्रहे ॥1 7॥

अरोचके जागरिते-

Mukhālepa is contraindicated for the persons suffering from coryza, indigestion, immediately after *nasya karma*, lock-jaw, anorexia and insomnia.

-स तु हन्ति सुयोजितः । अकालपतितव्यङ्गवलीतिमिरनीलकाः ॥1 8॥

Proper administration of facial pack relieves premature wrinkling of the skin, graying of hair and baldness, cataract, pigmentation etc.

Six recipes of mukhālepa:

कोलमज्जा वृषान्मूलं शाबरं गौरसर्षपाः । सिंहीमूलं तिलाः कृष्णा दार्वीत्वङ् निस्तुषा यवाः ॥1 9॥

दर्भमूलहिमोशीरशिरीषमिशितण्डलाः । कुमुदोत्पलकहारदूर्वामधुकचन्दनम् ॥2 0॥

कालीयकतिलोशीरमांसीतगरपद्यकम् । तालीसगुन्नापुण्ड्राह्यष्टीकाशनतागुरु ॥2 1॥

इत्यद्व्याद्व्यादिता लेपा हेमन्तादिषु षट् सृताः ।

The ensuing six *mukhālepa* recipes described in each half-verse are useful commencing with *hemanta* and other seasons as follows:

1. Hemanta rtu (Early winter) : Kolamajjādi mukhālepa:

Kola majjā (marrow of *Zizyphus jujuba*), *vṛṣa mūla* (root of *Adathoda vasaka*), *śābara/lodhra* (*Symplocos racemosa*), *goura sarṣapa* (*Brassica campestris* Var. *sarson* Prain.).

2. Śiśira rtu (Winter) : Simhīmūlādi mukhālepa:

Simhī mūla (*Solanum indicum*), *kṛṣṇa tila* (*Sesamum indicum*), *darvī* (*Berberis arishtata*), *twak* (*Cinnamomum zeylanicum*), *nistuṣā yava* (*Hordeum vulgare* - barley seeds without husk).

3. Vasanta rtu (Spring) : Darbhāmūlādi mukhālepa:

Darba mūla (*Desmostachya bipinnqata*), *hima/śweta candana* (*Santalum album*), *uśīra* (*Veteveria zizanoides*), *śīriṣa* (*Albizzia lebbeck*), *miśi/śatapuṣpā* (*Peucedanum graveolens*), *taṇḍula*.

4. Grīṣma rtu (Summer) : Kumudādi mukhālepa:

Kumuda (*Nymphaea alba*), *utpala* (*Nymphaea stellata*), *kalhāra* (*Caṅgalva* another variety of *utpala*), *dūrvā* (*Cynodon dactylon*), *madhuka* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), *candana* (*Santalum album*)

5. Varṣā rtu (Rainy) : Kāliyakādi mukhālepa:

Kāliyaka (*Coscinium fenestratum*), *tilā* (*Sesamum indicum*), *uśīra* (*Veteveria zizanoides*), *māṁsi/jaṭāmāṁsi* (*Nardostachys jatamansi*), *tagara* (*Valeriana wallichii*), *padmaka* (*Prunus cerasoides*)

6. Śarad rtu (Autumn) : Tālīsādi mukhālepa:

Tālīsapatrī (*Taxus baccata*), *gundrā* (*Typha elephantina*), *puṇḍrāhwā/prapouṇḍarīka* (Controversial drug), *yaṣṭī* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), *kāśa* (*Saccharum spontaneum*), *nata/tagara* (*Valeriana wallichii*), *aguru* (*Aquilaria agallocha*)

मुखालेपनशीलानां दृढं भवति दर्शनम् ॥२ २ ॥
वदनं चापरिम्लानं श्लक्षणं तामरसोपमम् ।

Regular use of *mukhālepa* will be useful to get good vision and complexion. Face will become smooth and resembles like a lotus flower.

Mūrdha taila (Application of oil on the head):

अभ्यङ्गसेकपिचवो बस्तिश्वेति चतुर्विधम् ॥२ ३ ॥
मूर्द्धतैलम्-

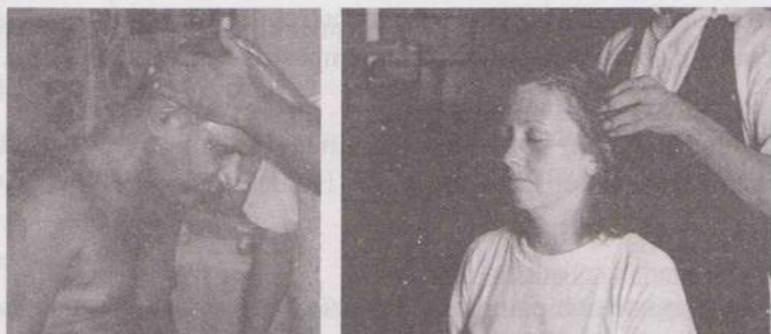
Mūrdha taila (application of oil on the head) is of 4 types viz.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>Abhyāṅga</i> | 3. <i>Picu</i> |
| 2. <i>Parīṣeka</i> | 4. <i>Śirovasti</i> |
- बहुगुणं तद्विद्यादुत्तरोत्तरम् ।

These are superior to one another in their succeeding order.

1. *Abhyāṅga*:

तत्राभ्यङ्गः प्रयोक्तव्यो रौक्ष्यकण्डूमलादिषु ॥२ ४ ॥



Śiro abhyāṅga

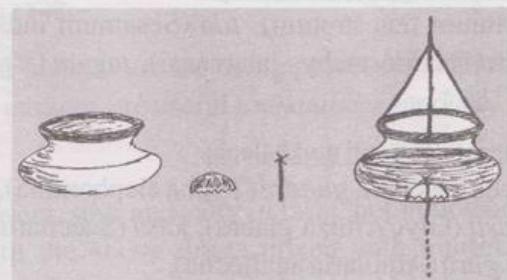
- * Massaging gently on the head after applying medicated oil is known as *śiro abhyāṅga*.
- * It is indicated in dryness, itching and boils, burning sensation, ulcers etc. on the scalp.

2. Seka (or) Parīṣeka (or) Śirahṣeka:

अरुचिकाशिरस्तोददाहपाकव्रणेषु तु । परिषेकः—



Śirahṣeka



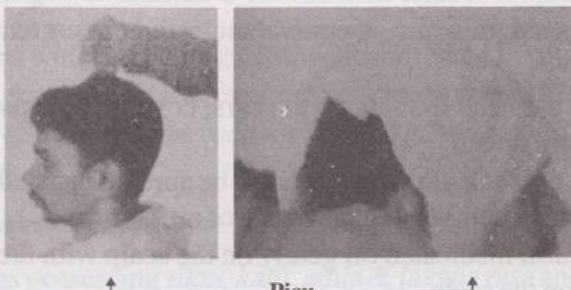
Dhārapātra and accessories

Pouring of warm medicated oils on the forehead in a systematic manner is known as *śirahṣeka*.

3. Picu:

-पिचुः केशशात्स्फुटनधूपने ॥2 5॥

नेत्रस्तम्भे च-



↑ Picu ↑

- * Keeping a piece of gauze or cotton soaked in medicated oil on the anterior fontanel of the head is known as *picu*.
- * Both *śirahṣeka* and *picu* are indicated in hair falling. Cracks or wounds on the scalp, *dhūpana*, *netra stambha* etc.

4. Śirovasti:

-बस्तिस्तु प्रसुप्त्यर्दितजागरे । नासास्यशोषे तिमिरे शिरोरोगे च दारुणे ॥2 6॥

- * Keeping a high quantity of medicated oil on the head for a specific period with the help of a cap made of animal skin or rexin cloth is known as *śirovasti*.
- * It is indicated in numbness, facial paralysis, insomnia, dryness of the nose and mouth, cataract, and other diseases of the head, which are difficult to manage.

Śirovasti-vidhi:

विधिस्तस्य निषण्णस्य पीठे जानुसमे मृदौ । शुद्धाक्तस्वन्देहस्य दिनान्ते गव्यमाहिषम् ॥2 7॥

द्वादशाङ्गुलविस्तीर्णं चर्मपटुं शिरःसमम् । आकर्णबन्धनस्थानं ललाटे वस्त्रवेष्टिते ॥2 8॥

चैलवेणिकया बद्ध्वा माषकलकेन लेपयेत् । ततो यथाव्याधि शृतं स्नेहं कोष्णं निषेचयेत् ॥2 9॥

ऊर्ध्वं केशभुवो यावदङ्गुलं-



Śirovasti-vidhi

The procedure of *śirobastī* is as follows:

- * After having undergone the purificatory procedures viz. *vamana*, *virecana* etc. anoint the body with medicated oil and conduct mild sudation.
- * Then ask the patient to sit comfortably on a seat of knee height, in the evening hours.
- * Afterwards take a strap of leather of a cow or a buffalo having the measurements of 12 *āṅgula* width and the length which is equivalent to the circumference of the head of the patient.
- * Then wrap it around the head first above the ears, covered by a piece of cloth around the head, and then tie with a thread.
- * Afterwards the paste of black gram powder is to be applied inside the cap around the scalp and also externally which helps to avoid leakage of oil.
- * Then pour the lukewarm medicated oil gently on the scalp with the help of a ladle, up to a height of one *āṅgula* on the scalp.

Notes:

Whenever heat reduces, the oil inside the cap is replaced with warm oil.

—धारयेच्च तम् । आवक्त्रनासिकोत्क्लेदादशाष्टौ षट् चलादिषु ॥३०॥
मात्रासहस्राण्यरुजे त्वेकं—

In this way the procedure is to be continued till the person gets the watery discharge from ears, mouth and nose.

Time limit to conduct *śirovasti* in different disorders—

In *vāta* disorders it should be conducted up to 10,000 *mātrā kāla*, in *pitta* disorders 8,000 *mātrā kāla*, in *kapha* disorders 6,000 *mātrā kāla*, in healthy persons 1,000 *mātrā kāla* *śirovasti* is to be done.

—स्कन्धादि मर्दयेत् । मुक्तस्नेहस्य—

- * After the completion of the therapy ask the patient to bend forward and collect the oil in a wide vessel and can be used on the next day.
- * Then remove the cap, and massage the shoulders including neck, nape of neck, forehead, face etc.
- * Afterwards ask the patient to go for hot water bath and then light food is to be given and follow the post-operative regimen as that of oleation therapy.

—परमं सप्ताहं तस्य सेवनम् ॥३१॥

- * This should be conducted (for 3 days, 5 days or) up to a maximum of 7 days.

Karṇapūraṇa (Ear drops):

धारयेत्पूरणं कर्णे कर्णमूलं विमर्दयन् । रुजः स्यान्मार्दवं यावन्मात्राशतमवेदने ॥३२॥

After massaging the base of the ears, pour eardrops and should be retained till the pain subsides or up to 1000 *mātrā kāla* in healthy person.

Mātrā kāla:

यावत्पर्येति हस्ताग्रं दक्षिणं जानुमण्डलम् । निमेषोन्मेषकालेन समं मात्रा तु सा स्मृता ॥३ ३ ॥

The time taken either for moving one's right hand around his right knee joint for one time or time taken for blinking the eyes once is known as one *mātrā kāla*.

Advantages of mūrdha taila:

कचसदनसितत्वपिञ्चरत्वं परिफुटनं शिरसः समीररोगान् ।
जयति, जनयतीन्द्रियप्रसादं स्वरहनुमूर्द्धबलं च मूर्द्धतैलम् ॥३ ४ ॥

- * Oiling of the head cures falling, graying and matting of hair.
- * Relieves the disorders of *vāta* origin and cracks on the scalp.
- * Perception of the sense organs will be improved.
- * Voice becomes clear.
- * Gives strength to the lower jaw and head.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने गण्डूषादिविधिर्नाम द्वाविंशोऽध्यायः ॥२ २ ॥

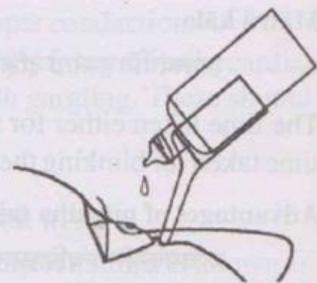
Thus ends the twenty-second chapter entitled *Gandūṣādi-vidhi Adhyāya* of
Sūtra Sthāna in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Samhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya
Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained various techniques to cure the diseases pertaining to head region. *Gandūṣā* and *kavala* for mouth disorders, *pratisāraṇa* for eye diseases; *mukhālepa* for the face, *mūrdha taila* for the head; *karpaṇapūraṇa* for the ears; *gandūṣā* types—*snaihika*, *śamana*, *śodhana* and *ropāṇa*; drugs useful for various types and procedures. Signs and symptoms of proper insufficient & excessive conduction of *gandūṣā*, *pratisāraṇa*, *mukhālepa* types, indications and contraindications; *mūrdha taila* types and their indications and procedure of *śirovasti* and advantages of *mūrdha taila*; *karpaṇapūraṇa* etc. have been discussed in detail.

*

23 ĀŚCOTANĀÑJANA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Eye Drops & Collyrium]



अथात आश्रोतनाञ्जनविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After 'Gāndūśādi-vidhi', Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter 'Āścotana-Añjana-vidhi' (Eye Drops & Collyrium), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Āścotana (Eye drops):

सर्वेषामक्षिरोगाणामादावाश्रोतनं हितम् । रुक्तोदकण्डूघर्षश्रुदाहरागनिबर्हणम् ॥1॥

- * Pouring the medicated liquid substances into the eyes in a systematic way is known as *āścotana*.
- * It is the first line of treatment indicated for almost all eye disorders.
- * As the *āścotana dravya* is prepared with different types of substances it relieves the redness of the eye, lachrymation, friction in the eyes, pain and burning sensation, pricking pain, ulceration, oedema, itching etc.



Āścotana

Notes:

Application of the paste of the same drugs useful for *āścotana*, over the surface of the eyelids, leaving the eyelashes is known as *bīḍālaka* which is indicated in the premonitory symptomatic stage of the above disorders.

Time of administration:

Should not administer *āścotana* and *bīḍālaka* in the nighttime and can be administered in the early morning or anytime in the day.

Āścotana dravya according to doṣa:

उष्णं वाते, कफे कोष्णं, तच्छीतं रक्तपित्तयोः ।

Āścotana dravya should be warm in *vāta* predominant eye disorders, whereas it should be lukewarm in *kapha* and cold in *pitta* and *rakta* disorders.

Procedure of āścotana:

निवातस्थस्य वायेन पाणिनोन्मील्य लोचनम् ॥2॥

शुक्तौ प्रलम्बयाऽन्येन पिच्छुवर्त्या कनीनिके । दश द्वादश वा बिन्दून् द्व्यड्युलादवसेचयेत् ॥3॥

ततः प्रमृज्य मृदुना चैलेन, कफवातयोः । अन्येन कोष्णपानीयप्लुतेन स्वेदयेन्मृदु ॥4॥

- * Ask the patient to lie down comfortably on a bed, in a room, which is devoid of breeze.
- * Then do gentle massage over the eyes by closing the lids.
- * Afterwards the drug used for *āscotana* should be taken in a cowrie shell and arrange a cotton wick.
- * Then instill the drug into the eyes passing through the wick, so that the drug will be poured drop by drop.
- * During the process of instillation, the physician should gently open the eyelids of the patient with the fingers of his left hand.
- * Instill the drug from a height of 2 inches, in a dose of 10 or 12 drops over the inner angle of the eye.
- * Care should be taken not to cause redness of the eye by pouring more than 2 inches height.

Post-operative care:

- * Wipe off the surroundings with a clean cloth.
- * In *vāta* and *kapha* disorders mild fomentation should be done with the cloth dipped in hot water.
- * In *pitta* and *rakta* disorders apply cold pack.

Contraindications:

अत्युष्णीतीक्ष्णं रुग्रागदृग्नाशायाक्षिसेचनम् । अतिशीतं तु कुरुते निस्तोदस्तम्भवेदना: ॥५॥
कथायवर्त्मतां धर्षं कृच्छ्रादुन्मेषणं बहु । विकारवृद्धिमत्यल्पं संरम्भमपरिस्तुतम् ॥६॥

- * The drugs used for *āscotana* should not be too strong, too hot, too cold, excessive or less in quantity and staying at one place without spreading all over.
- * Too strong or too hot drugs cause pain, redness and loss of vision.
- * Too cold substances cause pricking pain, restricted movements, dull and constant pain.
- * Excessive dosage causes dryness, constriction, throbbing, difficulty in opening and also friction in the eyes etc.
- * Insufficient dose leads to the aggravation of symptoms, swelling and the absence of lachrymation.

Advantages of āscotana:

गत्वा सन्धिशिरोग्राणमुखस्नोतांसि भेषजम् । ऊर्ध्वगात्रयने न्यस्तमपवर्तयते मलान् ॥७॥

The drug used for *āscotana* will enter into the channels of eyes, joints, veins, vital points (i.e. *śringāta* region), nose and mouth and eliminate the vitiated *dosas*.

Añjana (Collyrium):

Indications for añjana:

अभ्यङ्गनं शुद्धतनोर्नेत्रमात्राश्रये मले । पक्वलिङ्गेऽल्पशोफातिकण्डूपैच्छल्यलक्षिते ॥८॥
मन्दघर्षाश्रुरागेऽक्षिण प्रयोज्यं घनदूषिके । आर्ते पित्तकफासुर्भर्मारुतेन विशेषतः ॥९॥

- * After conducting *vamana* and *virecana*.

- * When the *doṣas* are localized in the eyes.
- * Whenever *pakwa lakṣaṇas* like slight oedema, severe itching and sliminess are observed.
- * When there is slight friction, watery discharge, slight redness and thick excretions from the eyes.
- * Vitiated by *pitta*, *kapha*, *rakta* and especially by *vāta*.



Añjana

Notes:

- * In the diseases caused by *pitta*, *rakta* etc. *āścotana* should be conducted first and after getting the signs of mitigation of *doṣas*, *añjana* should be done.
- * When the *doṣas* are in the increased state or when they are not eliminated, *añjana* should not be conducted.

Types of añjana:

लेखनं रोपणं दृष्टिप्रसादनमिति त्रिधा । अङ्गनं-

Añjana is of 3 types viz.

1. *Lekhana*(scaryfing), 2. *ropāṇa*(healing) and 3. *prasādana*(purifying).

1. Lekhanāñjana:

—लेखनं तत्र कषायाम्लपटूषणैः ॥१०॥

It is prepared with the drugs having *kasāya*, *amla*, *lavāna*, *katu rasa*; and is indicated in pterygium.

2. Ropāñjana:

रोपणं तिक्तकैद्रव्यैः—

It is prepared by the unctuous substances processed with the drugs having *tikta rasa* and is useful for conjunctivitis.

3. Prasādanāñjana:

—स्वादुशीतैः प्रसादनम् ।

- * It is prepared from the drugs, which are having *madhura rasa* and *śīta vīrya* and added with unctuous substances.
- * It is useful at the end stage of conjunctivitis and loss of vision due to the seeing of eclipse, sunrays, thunderbolt, lightening and evil spirits etc.
- * For healthy persons to maintain the health of the eyes.

Pratyāñjana:

तीक्ष्णाञ्जनाभिसन्तप्ते नयने तत्प्रसादनम् ॥११॥

प्रयुज्यमानं लभते प्रत्यञ्जनसमाहृयम् ।

This *prasādanāñjana* is used as an antidote in the form of powder after the application of strong collyrium to manage the complications and hence derives the name *pratyāñjana*.

Notes:Essential equipment & instruments for añjana:

The stone *gharṣaṇa silā* used for rubbing the collyrium material should be smooth, round, concave in shape to prevent its spilling and consisting of 5 inches in length and 3 inches in width.

Añjana śalākā (Collyrium rods):

दशाडगुला तनुर्मध्ये शलाका मुकुलानना ॥१२॥

प्रशस्ता, लेखने ताप्ती, रोपणे काललोहजा । अडगुली च, सुवर्णोद्धा स्त्रव्यजा च प्रसादने ॥१३॥

Añjana Śalākās are of five types viz.,

1. Golden, 2. silver rods are useful for : *Prasādanāñjana*.

3. Copper rod is useful for : *Lekhanāñjana*.

4. Iron rod, 5. index finger is useful for : *Ropāñjana*.

* Index finger is the best one among all the 5 types.

* The length of the collyrium rods should be 10 inches in length and thin in the middle. They should be smooth and having blunt ends resembling a flower bud.

Kinds of añjana according to mode of preparation:

पिण्डो रसक्रिया चूर्णस्त्रिधैवाञ्जनकल्पना । गुरौ मध्ये लघौ दोषे तां क्रमेण प्रयोजयेत् ॥१४॥

Basing on the mode of preparation *añjana* is of 3 types viz. *pīṇḍa* (pill), *rasakriyā* (thick liquid) and *cūrṇa* (powder). They are superior to one another in their preceding order and hence they are indicated in severe, moderate and mild diseases respectively.

Dosage:

हरेणुमात्रा पिण्डस्य वेल्लमात्रा रसक्रिया । तीक्ष्णस्य, द्विगुणं तस्य मृदुनः चूर्णितस्य च ॥१५॥

द्वे शलाके तु तीक्ष्णस्य, तिस्रस्तदितरस्य च ।

Doses of different types of *añjana* is as follows:

Pīṇḍa : *Hareṇu* seed.

Rasakriyā : One *vīḍāṅga* seed dose in moderate conditions.

Two *vīḍāṅga* seeds dose in severe conditions.

Cūrṇa : Two *śalākā* - mild diseases with strong drugs.

Three *śalākā* - mild diseases with mild drugs.

Suitable time for the adiministration of añjana:

निशि स्वप्ने न पद्याहे म्लाने नोष्णागभस्तिभिः ॥१६॥

अक्षिरोगाय दोषाः स्युर्वर्धितोत्पीडितद्वृताः । प्रातः सायं च तच्छान्त्यै व्यभेऽकेऽतोऽञ्जयेत्सदा ॥१७॥

* Collyrium should not be applied at nights, during sleep, midday and when strong sunrays exhaust the eyes.

* If it is applied during the contraindicated timings it will lead the increase of *doṣas* and results in various eye disorders.

- * It should be done both in the morning and evening hours, when the sky is clear without any clouds.

Notes:

- * When it is too hot or too cold, or it is cloudy and too breezy, *añjana* should not be applied.
- * It should be applied to the painful eye at first, and next to the rest.
- * If both the eyes are painful apply the collyrium with both the index fingers at a time.

वदन्त्यन्ये तु न दिवा प्रयोज्यं तीक्ष्णमञ्जनम् । विरेकदुर्बलं चक्षुरादित्यं प्राप्य सीदति ॥१ ८ ॥

Some other scholars opine that strong collyrium shouldn't apply during midday, as they will make the eyes debilitated by excessive watery discharge and become further weakened due to the presence of sun.

Suitable time for *tikṣṇāñjana*:

स्वप्नेन रात्रौ कालस्य सौम्यत्वेन च तर्पिता । शीतसात्म्या दृगाग्नेयी स्थिरतां लभते पुनः ॥१ ९ ॥

- * Though the eyes are exhausted by strong collyrium, the eyes will regain its strength due to the following reasons—
 - By good sleep.
 - Due to cool nature of nighttime.
 - As the eyes are predominant with *agni bhūta* and being habituated to cold comforts.
- * Hence it is advised to apply strong collyrium during night hours.

अत्युद्वित्ते बलासे तु लेखनीयेऽथवा गदे । काममहूर्घपि नात्युष्णे तीक्ष्णमक्षिण प्रयोजयेत् ॥२ ० ॥

- * During daytime also, strong collyrium can be applied in the following conditions:
 - Whenever *kapha* is predominantly vitiated.
 - Diseases like *śukra-arma* etc. which are suitable for *lekhana* (scarification).
 - Whenever the sun is not so hot.

Simile regarding metals and eyes:

अश्मनो जन्म लोहस्य तत एव च तीक्ष्णता । उपघातोऽपि तेनैव तथा नेत्रस्य तेजसः ॥२ १ ॥

Metals are born from stones and they will attain their sharpness (by rubbing on it) as well as bluntness with them only.

Similarly eyes are *tejātmaka* and they will get benefits as well as disadvantages with the same *tejas* by the proper and improper utilization.

Unsuitable conditions for *tiṣṇāñjana*:

न रात्रावपि शीतेऽति नेत्रे तीक्ष्णाञ्जनं हितम् । दोषमस्त्रावयेत्स्तब्धं कण्डूजाङ्गादिकारि तत् ॥२ २ ॥

Strong collyrium shouldn't be applied even in night hours when there is severe cold, as they are unable to eliminate the *doṣas* and causes itching, sluggishness and stagnation of *doṣas*.

Contraindications:

नाञ्जयेद्वीतवमितविरिक्ताशितवेगिते । क्रुद्धज्वरितान्ताक्षिणिरोक्तशोकजागरे ॥२ ३ ॥

अदृष्टेऽके शिरःस्नाते पीतयोर्धूममद्ययोः । अजीर्णऽग्न्यर्कसन्तप्ते दिवासुप्ते पिपासिते ॥२ ४ ॥

Añjana is contraindicated in the following conditions—

Persons who are in fear, after conducting emesis and purgation therapies, immediately after taking food, during the urge of passing urine, stools etc, those who are in anger and in grief, suffering from fever, whenever the eyes are strained, headache, insomnia, the day without sunshine, after head bath, after consuming alcohol and medicated fumes, indigestion, state of exhaustion due to exposure of sun and heat, immediately after day sleep and suffering from thirst.

अतितीक्षणमृदुस्तोकबहूच्छघनकर्कशम् । अत्यर्थशीतलं तप्तमञ्जनं नावचारयेत् ॥२ ५ ॥

Collyrium, which is—too strong or too mild in potency, too less or too much in quantity, too thin or too thick in consistency, too rough, too cold or too hot should not be used.

Añjana-vidhi (Procedure):

अथानुनीलयन् दृष्टिमन्तः सञ्चारयेच्छनैः । अञ्जिते वर्त्मनी किञ्चित्तालयेच्चैवमञ्जनम् ॥२ ६ ॥

तीक्ष्णं व्याप्तोति सहसा, न चोन्मेषनिमेषणम् । निधीडनं च वर्त्मभ्यां क्षालनं वा समाचरेत् ॥२ ७ ॥

Immediately after the application of collyrium, the eyeball should be rotated slowly upwards, downwards, towards right and left side by closing the lids, so that the medicine will distribute uniformly in all the directions. This procedure is especially to be conducted after the application of strong collyrium.

Blinking, squeezing and washing of eyelids are contraindicated soon after applying *añjana*.

Notes.

- * Ask the patient to sit comfortably on a chair.
- * Then the physician should elevate the upper eyelid of the patient with his thumb.
- * Afterwards, take the required dose of collyrium with a rod and should be applied inside the lower eyelid starting from the inner angle of the eye and slowly move to the outer angle.
- * After the application of collyrium, ask the patient to close his eyes and move the eyeball slowly to make uniform distribution.
- * One should not blink the eyes, should not apply pressure over the lids and also should not wash the eyes immediately after applying collyrium.

Procedure of washing eyes:

अपेतौषधसंरम्भं निर्वृतं नयनं यदा । व्याधिदोषर्तुयोग्याभिरद्धिः प्रक्षालयेत्तदा ॥२ ८ ॥

After the eye gets relieved from the keen actions of the collyrium it should be washed with suitable water according to disease, *doṣa* and season (that means cold water in summer and warm water in cold seasons).

Procedure of cleaning eyes:

दक्षिणाङ्गुष्ठकेनाक्षि ततो वामं सवाससा । ऊर्ध्ववर्त्मनि सङ्गृह्य शोध्य वामेन चेतरत् ॥२ ९ ॥

After washing the eyes, physician should lift the upper eyelid of the patient carefully and wipe off the left eye with right thumb by means of a clean peace of cloth, similarly the right eye with the left thumb.

Rationality in washing eyes:

वर्त्मप्राप्तोऽञ्जनादोषो रोगान् कुर्यादतोऽन्यथा । कण्डूजाङ्गेऽञ्जनं तीक्ष्णं धूमं वा योजयेत् पुनः ॥३०॥

If the eyes are not properly washed after applying collyrium, residual medicine stagnated in side the lid may provoke *doṣas* and give rise diseases. Hence it is advised to wash properly. In case of itching and inactivity either strong collyrium or *dhūmapāna* is advised as postoperative care.

Pratyāñjana:

तीक्ष्णाञ्जनाभितप्ते तु चूर्णं प्रत्यञ्जनं हिमम् ॥३१॥

When there is burning in the eyes due to the strong collyrium, apply *pratyāñjana* with cold substances.

Notes:

Proper signs and symptoms of collyrium:

- * Relief from the disease symptoms.
- * Not having any discomfort while closing and opening the eyelids.
- * Not having any problems with sunlight and breeze.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने आश्वेतनाञ्जनविधिर्नाम त्रयोविंशोऽध्यायः ॥२३॥

Thus ends the twenty-third chapter entitled *Āścotana Añjana-vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa has been explained the *āścotana* and *añjana vidhi* as follows—advantages of *āścotana*, time of administration; procedure; post operative care. Collyrium; its types such as—*lekhana*, *ropāṇa*, *prasādana*, *pīṇḍa*, *rasakriyā*, *cūrṇa*, its dosage. Collyrium rods and their uses, contraindications; procedure; proper signs and symptoms have been discussed.

Advantages and disadvantages

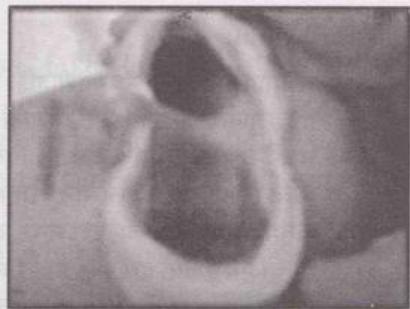
*

Contraindications

Contraindications

24 TARPAÑA PUTAPĀKA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Satiating Therapies to the Eye]



अथातस्तर्पणपुटपाकविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘Āscotana Añjana-vidhi’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘Tarpaṇa Puṭapāka’ (Satiating Therapies to the Eye), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Akṣi tarpaṇa:

Keeping the medicated ghee on the eyeballs for a specific period is known as *akṣi tarpaṇa*.

नयने ताम्यति स्तब्धे शुष्के रूक्षेऽभिधातिते । वातपित्तातुरे जिह्वे शीर्णपक्षमाविलेश्णे ॥1॥

कृच्छ्रोन्मीलशिराहर्वशिरोत्पाततमोऽजुनैः । स्यन्दमन्थान्यतोवातवातपर्यायशुक्रैः ॥2॥

आतुरे शान्तरागाशुशूलसंरम्भदूषिके । निवाते तर्पणं योज्यं शुद्धयोर्मूर्द्धकाययोः ॥3॥

काले साधारणे प्रातः सायं वोत्तानशायिनः ।

- * *Akṣi tarpaṇa* is to be administered to the persons suffering from the following disorders—
 - When the eyes are tired and unable to see the objects properly.
 - Having no movement of eyeballs.
 - Dry eyes, rough or injured.
 - Suffering from *vāta* and *pitta* disorders.
 - Asymmetry and fall of eye lashes.
 - Suffering from *kṛcchramīla* (blepharo-spasm), *śirāharṣa* (allergic hyperemia of the eyeball), *sirotpāta* (episcleritis), *timira* (immature cataract), *arjuna* (sub-conjunctival haemorrhage), *abhiṣyanda* (conjunctivitis), *adhimantha* (glaucoma), *anyatovāta* (secondary or referred pain in the eye ball), *vātāparyāya* (trigeminal neuralgia), *śukraka* (keratitis) etc.
- * In the above disorders *akṣi tarpaṇa* can be conducted after subsiding the symptoms like redness, lachrymation, pus formation and pain.
- * *Tarpaṇa* and *putapāka* should be conducted only after purifying the body and head by means of *vamana*, *virecana*, *vasti* and *nasya*.
- * It should be conducted during the normal seasons when the sun shines and the sky is clear without any clouds.
- * *Akṣi tarpaṇa* should be conducted either in the early morning or in the evening hours when the temperature of the atmosphere is less.

Tarpana vidhi:

यवमाषमर्यी पालीं नेत्रकोशाद्वहिः समाम् ॥४॥
द्वयङ्गुलोच्चां दृढां कृत्वा यथास्वं सिद्धमावपेत् । सर्पिर्निर्मीलिते नेत्रे तप्ताम्बुप्रविलायितम् ॥५॥
नक्तान्त्यवाततिमिरकृच्छ्रबोधादिके वसाम् । आपक्षमाग्रात् अथोन्मेषं शनकैस्तस्य कुर्वतः ॥६॥
मात्रा विगणयेत्तत्र वर्त्यसंधिसितासिते । दृष्टौ च क्रमशो व्याधौ शतं त्रीणि च पञ्च च ॥७॥
शतानि सप्त चाष्टौ च, दश मन्ये, दशानिले । पित्ते घट, स्वस्थवृत्ते च बलासे पञ्च धारयेत् ॥८॥
कृत्वाऽपाङ्गे ततो द्वारं स्नेहं पात्रे निगालयेत् । पिबेच्च धूमं, नेक्षेत व्योम रूपं च भास्वरम् ॥९॥
इत्थं प्रतिदिनं वायौ, पित्ते त्वेकान्तरं, कफे । स्वस्थे च द्वयन्तरं दद्यादातृप्तेऽतिरिति योजयेत् ॥१०॥
प्रकाशक्षमता स्वास्थ्यं विशदं लघु लोचनम् । तृप्ते, विपर्ययोऽतृप्तेऽतिरिति श्लेष्मजा रुजः ॥११॥

- * Construct a circular wall of two inches height around the rim of the orbit with the help of the paste of barley or black gram flour, and should be strong and leak proof.
- * Then pour the lukewarm medicated ghee (which was heated indirectly with the help of steam) into the well keeping the eyes of the patient closed, upto the level of plunging of the eye lashes.
- * Then instruct the patient to open and close his eyes slowly.
- * In place of ghee, muscle fat should be used in certain conditions like night blindness, cataract and ptosis.

This may be conducted:

100 <i>mātrā kāla</i> (2 minutes)	:	<i>Vartmagata roga</i> (diseases of eyelids)
300 <i>mātrā kāla</i>	:	<i>Sandhigata roga</i> (diseases of the joints)
500 <i>mātrā kāla</i>	:	<i>Śuklagata roga</i> (diseases of the sclera)
700 <i>mātrā kāla</i>	:	<i>Kṛṣṇagata roga</i> (diseases of the cornea)
800 <i>mātrā kāla</i>	:	<i>Dṛṣṭimāṇḍala-gata roga</i> (disorders of vision)
1000 <i>mātrā kāla</i>	:	In <i>adhimantha</i> (glaucoma)
Up to 1000 <i>mātrā kāla</i>		
(approximately 16 minutes)	:	In <i>vāta</i> disorders.
Up to 600 <i>mātrā kāla</i> i.e.,		
(approximately 10 minutes)	:	In <i>pitta</i> disorders.
Up to 500 <i>mātrā kāla</i> i.e.,		
(approximately 8-9 minutes)	:	In <i>kapha</i> disorders.
500 <i>mātrā kāla</i>	:	For healthy persons.

- * After the completion of the treatment remove the ghee from the lateral sides by making a small hole and collect it in a vessel.
- * Then remove the paste and clean the area with a fresh cloth.
- * *Vairecanika dhūmapāna* is to be conducted as a postoperative measure to mitigate the increased *kapha*.
- * Then wash the face with lukewarm water and give wholesome diet.
- * Advise the patient not to expose to sunlight and see the bright objects.
- * Rest should be given in a place, which is devoid of breeze.

Duration:

- * In *vāta* disorders it should be conducted daily for a period of one, three or five days or till the patient gets relief.
- * In *pitta* and *rakta* disorders it should be done alternatively for the same duration that means if it is to be continued for 5 times means it takes 10 days time for the completion of the course.
- * In *kapha* disorders *tarpaṇa* should be done with 2 days gap in between the procedure that means it takes 15 days for conducting 5 times of *tarpana*.

Proper, insufficient and excessive signs & symptoms:

- * If the patient is able to withstand and can see the bright objects properly, clarity and feeling of lightness and gets relief from the symptoms indicates the proper signs and symptoms of *tarpaṇa vidhi*.
- * Opposite of the above denotes the insufficient conduction of the procedure.
- * Where as in excessive conduction of the procedure, increase of *kapha* and *kapha* disorders will be seen.

Puṭapāka:

स्नेहीता तनुरिव क्लान्ता दुष्टिर्हि सीदति । तर्पणानन्तरं तस्माददृग्बलाधानकारिणम् ॥1 2 ॥
पुटपाकं प्रयुज्जीत पूर्वोक्तेष्वेव यक्षमसु ।

Just as the body gets tired after oleation therapy, eyes also become fatigued after *tarpaṇa* and hence after getting the proper signs and symptoms of *tarpaṇa*, *puṭapāka* is to be conducted to restore the strength to the eyes.

Types of puṭapāka:

स वाते स्नेहनः, श्लेष्मसहिते लेखनो हितः ॥1 3 ॥
दृग्दौर्बल्येऽनिले पित्ते रक्ते स्वस्थे प्रसादनः ।

Puṭapāka is of 3 types viz.,

1. *Snehana puṭapāka* (Lubricating)
2. *Lekhana puṭapāka* (Scarifying)
3. *Prasādana puṭapāka* (Cleansing)

Snehana puṭapāka is indicated in *vāta* disorders, and if *vāta* is associated with *kapha*, *lekhana puṭapāka* is advisable whereas *prasādana puṭapāka* is to be administered in poor vision, disorders of *vāta*, *pitta*, *rakta* and also in healthy persons.

1. Snehana puṭapāka:

भूशयप्रसहानूपमेदोमज्जवसामिषैः ॥1 4 ॥
स्नेहनं पयसा पिष्टैर्जीवनीयैश्च कल्पयेत् ।

Fatty tissue, bone marrow, muscle fat and the flesh of the animals such as *bhūśaya* (fox and others), *prasaha* (cow, ass, camel etc) & *ānūpa* (animals dwelling in marshy land eg. buffalo,

pig etc) as well as the drugs belonging to *jīvanīya gaṇa* after ponuding with milk can be used for *snehana puṭapāka*.

Notes:

It is indicated in dryness of eyes and other conditions due to the vitiation of *vāta*.

2. Lekhana puṭapāka:

मृगपक्षियकृन्मांसमुक्तायस्ताप्रसैन्धवैः ॥15॥
स्रोतोजशङ्खफेनालैर्लेखनं मस्तुकलिकैः ।

Flesh and the liver of the animals and birds dwelling in desert land and scarifying drugs such as pearls, iron, copper, rocksalt, *srotoñjana*, conch shell, *samudraphena* and *haritāla* should be grind with *mastu* (whey) and can be used for *lekhana puṭapāka*.

Notes:

It is indicated in the moistness of the eyes and other conditions due to the vitiation of *kapha*.

3. Prasādana puṭapāka:

मृगपक्षियकृन्मज्जवसान्त्रहृदयामिषैः ॥16॥
मधुैः सघैः स्तन्यक्षीरपिष्ठैः प्रसादनम् ।

The liver, bone marrow, muscle fat intestines and heart of the animals and birds dwelling in desert like regions and the substances having sweet in taste are to be grind with breast milk, milk and ghee and can be used for *prasādana puṭapāka*.

Notes:

It is indicated in the defective vision due to the vitiation of *vāta*, *pitta* and *rakta* and also heals the ulcers. It is contraindicated in *kapha* disorders.

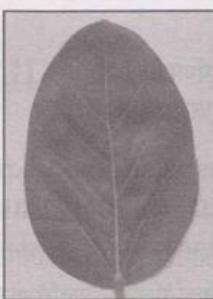
Puṭapāka-vidhi:

बिल्वमात्रं पृथक् पिण्डं मांसभेषजकल्कयोः ॥17॥
उरुबूकवटाभ्योजयत्रैः स्नेहादिषु क्रमात् । वेष्टयित्वा मृदा लिप्तं धवधन्वनगोमयैः ॥18॥
पचेत्प्रदीप्तेरगन्यार्थं पक्वं निष्पीड्य तद्रसम् । नेत्रे तर्पणवद्युच्यात्-

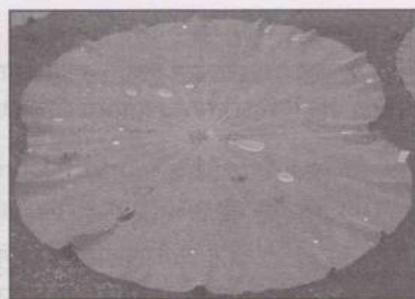
- * Take the meat of animals in a quantity of one *bilwa* (approximately 48 gms.) and add equal quantity of the appropriate drugs, which were mentioned earlier and grind well and made into paste.
- * Then it should be covered with the leaves of *urubūka* or *erāṇḍa* (castor), *vāta* (banyan) and *ambhoja* (lotus) for *snehana*, *lekhana* and *prasādana puṭapāka* respectively.
- * It should be tied well with a thick thread and given a coating of mud in a thickness of 2 inches and dried.
- * Then put it into the fire of burning coal of *dhava*, *dhanvana* etc., and also the dried excreta of animals.
- * After it becomes red hot, it should be removed from the fire and allowed it to auto cool.
- * Afterwards remove the external coating and also the leaves.



Eranḍa patra



Vaṭa patra



Ambhoja patra

- * With the help of a clean cloth the material inside is to be taken and squeeze it well.
- * The juice thus collected can be used in the evening hours, similar to the procedure of *tarpaṇa*.

Dhāraṇa kāla:

-शतं द्वे त्रीणि धारयेत् ॥1 9 ॥

लेखनस्नेहनान्त्येषु कोष्णौ पूर्वौ, हिमोऽपरः ।

- * The procedure is to be conducted for—
 - 100 *māṭrā kāla* for *lekhana puṭapāka*.
 - 200 *māṭrā kāla* for *snehana puṭapāka*.
 - 300 *māṭrā kāla* for *prasādana puṭapāka*.
- * *Puṭapāka dravya* should be lukewarm in state in the first two types i.e. *lekhana* and *snehana puṭapāka*. Where as it should be cold in *prasādana puṭapāka*.

Paścāt karma:

धूमपोऽन्ते तयोरेव-

After the completion of the process *dhūmapāna* is to be conducted similar to *tarpaṇa*, except in *prasādana puṭapāka*.

-योगास्तत्र च तृप्तिवत् ॥2 0 ॥

The signs and symptoms of proper, insufficient and excessive therapy are similar to *tarpaṇa*.

Contraindicated for tarpaṇa and puṭapāka:

तर्पणं पुटपाकं च नस्यानर्हं न योजयेत् ।

The persons who are contraindicated for nasal administration are also not eligible for both *tarpaṇa* and *puṭapāka*.

Parihāra kāla:

यावन्त्यहानि युज्जीत द्विस्ततो हितभागभवेत् ॥2 1 ॥

मालतीमल्लिकापुष्पैर्बद्धाक्षो निवसेन्निशाम् ।

- * *Parihāra kāla* is double the number of days.
- * Eyes should be bandaged with the flowers of *mālatī*, *mallikā*etc., during night hours.

Necessity of protecting eyes:

सर्वात्मना नेत्रबलाय यत्नं कुर्वति न स्याञ्जनतर्पणाद्यैः ॥२ २ ॥
दृष्टिश्च नष्टा विविधं जगच्च तमोमयं जायत एकरूपम् ॥२ ३ ॥

If the vision is lost entire world becomes dark, and hence all efforts should be made to strengthen their eyes by resorting to *nasya*, *añjana*, *tarpana* etc.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने तर्पणपुटपाकविधिर्नाम चतुर्विंशोऽध्यायः ॥२ ४ ॥

Thus ends the twentyfourth chapter entitled *Tarpana Puṭapāka-vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa has been explained in detail regarding the *tarpaṇa* and *puṭapāka* as follows—definition; indications of *tarpaṇa*; time of administration; procedure and duration; types of *putapāka* such as *snehana*, *lekhana*, *prasā-dana*. The drugs useful for various types of *puṭapāka* and the procedure has been discussed.

*

The liver, bone marrow, muscle fat, intestines, skin, fat, brain, heart, lungs, kidneys, spleen, blood vessels, glands, etc., are the substances having power to be given as *tarpaṇa* and *puṭapāka*.
Note:

It is indicated in the defective vision due to the vitiation of vata, pitta and kapha and the others. It is contraindicated in kaphadi and others.

puṭapāka is indicated in the diseases of liver, spleen, kidney, heart, lungs, etc., due to the vitiation of vata, pitta and kapha and the others.

puṭapāka is indicated in the diseases of liver, spleen, kidney, heart, lungs, etc., due to the vitiation of vata, pitta and kapha and the others.

* Take the meat of animals in a quantity of one *līkha* (equal to a *pancaśatru* (fifty) quantity of the ancoconine drugs, which were made of *śāra* (burnt lime), *śāra* and *mudra* into paste.

Drop oil on the paste, the goṇḍatāmra (from *goṇḍ* horse-hair), *śāra* and *śāra* and *śāra* (burnt lime), *śāra*, *lekhana* and *prasādana* *puṭapāka* respectively.

* It should be tied well with a thick thread and given a coating of mud in a small vessel and dried.

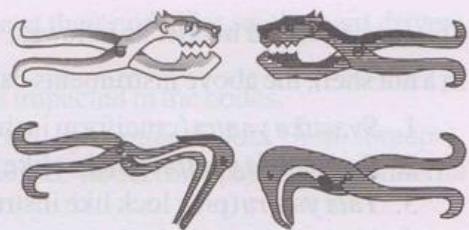
* Then put it into the fire of burning coal of *dhava*, *śāra* and *śāra* (burnt lime) of animals.

* After it becomes red hot, break it and remove the remains of the *dhava* and *śāra* and *śāra* (burnt lime).

* After cooling it, wash it with water and then put it in a cloth and tie it around the neck or in the bosom of a bloodless person.

25 YANTRA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Application of Blunt Instruments]



अथाते यन्त्रविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Tarpana Putapāka-vidhi*’, Ācārya Vāgbhata expounded the chapter ‘*Yantra-vidhi*’ (Application of Blunt Instruments), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Definition of śalya:

मनःशारीरबाधकराणि शल्यानि ।

The foreign body, which causes troubles to the mind as well as the body, is known as *śalya*.

Different kinds of instruments:

नानाविधानां शल्यानां नानादेशप्रबाधिनाम् । आहर्तुमभ्युपायो यस्तद्यन्त्रं यच्च दर्शने ॥१॥
अर्णेभगन्दरादीनां शस्त्रक्षाराग्नियोजने । शेषाङ्गपरिक्षायां तथा बस्त्यादिकर्मणि ॥२॥
घटिकालाबुशृङ्गं च जाम्बवौष्ठादिकानि च ।

The different kinds of instruments, which will be useful to remove the foreign bodies, which are lodged in different parts of the body, are known as *yantras* (instruments with blunt edges).

They will be useful to examine the piles, fistula-in-anus, application of sharp instruments, alkalies and thermal cauterization and to protect the other parts of the body. Those instruments are also useful to conduct *gudā vasti*, *uttara vasti*, *vraṇa vasti* and other therapeutic procedures.

Ghaṭikā yantra (pot), *älabū* (gourd), *śrīṅga* (horns) *jāmbavouṣtha* *śalākā* (jambula probe) etc. are some of the blunt instruments.

अनेकरूपकार्याणि यन्त्राणि विविधान्यतः ॥३॥

विकल्प्य कल्पयेद्वृद्ध्या-

Blunt instruments having different shapes and functions will be useful in different conditions.

Hence they are innumerable and it is not possible to mention all of them in detail and can be fabricated according to the need of the hour by applying his mind.

Some other ācāryas opined that the *yantras* are one hundred and one. Among those, surgeon's hand is rightly considered as the principal instrument, for without its help no instrument can properly be used.

—यथास्थूलं तु वक्ष्यते ।

They are described in brief as follows:

In a nut shell, the above instruments can be divided into six types viz.,

1. <i>Svastika yantra</i> (cruciform instruments)	: 24
2. <i>Saridaraṇśa yantra</i> (pincher like instruments)	: 2
3. <i>Tāla yantra</i> (pick lock like instruments)	: 2
4. <i>Nādī yantra</i> (tubular instruments)	: 20
5. <i>Śalākā yantra</i> (rod like instruments)	: 28
6. <i>Anu/Upa yantra</i> (accessory instruments)	: 25
	101

1. Svastika yantra (Cruciform instruments):

तुल्यानि कङ्कसिंहर्खकाकादिमृगपक्षिणाम् ॥4॥

मुखैर्मुखानि यन्त्राणां कुर्यात्तसंज्ञकानि च । अष्टादशाङ्गुलायामान्यायसानि च भूरिशः ॥5॥

मसूराकारपर्यन्तैः कण्ठे बद्धानि कीलकैः । विद्यात्स्वस्तिकयन्त्राणि मूलेऽङ्गुलशनतानि च ॥6॥

तैर्दृष्टिरस्थिसंलग्नशल्याहरणमिष्यते ।

* The word *svastika* represented by two lines crossing each other, the arms of the cross being bent at their extremities towards the same direction. So these instruments may be described as cruciform.

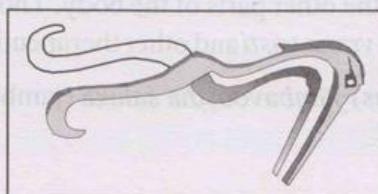
* Their ends are having the shapes like the faces of ferocious beasts and birds and the instruments are be called after their names such as:

1. *Kaṅkamukha yantra* (heron forceps)

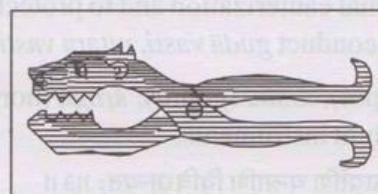
2. *Sinhamukha yantra* (lion forceps)

3. *Rkṣamukha yantra* (bear forceps)

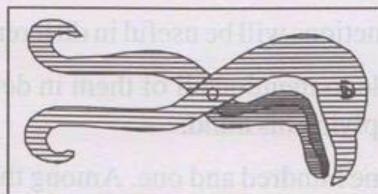
4. *Kākamukha yantra* (crow forceps)



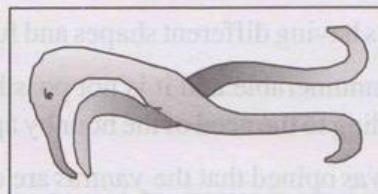
Kaṅkamukha yantra



Sinhamukha yantra



Rkṣamukha yantra



Kākamukha yantra

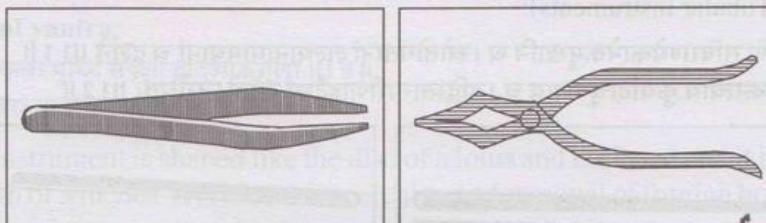
* These instruments are generally made of iron and having a length of 18 inches.

* The fulcrums of these instruments, which are at the middle, are of the size of a *masūra*.

- * The handles are either rounded off or bent at an angle at their ends like an elephant drivers goad.
- * These are used for the extraction of the foreign bodies impacted in the bones.
- * If the foreign body is visible, it should be extracted by *simha-mukha* (lion forceps), *vyāghra-mukha* (tiger forceps), *bhujāṅga-mukha* (snake hood forceps), *makara-mukha yantra* (crocodile forceps) etc.
- * If the foreign body is invisible it should be extracted by *kaṇkamukha* (heron forceps), *kākamukha* (crow forceps), *kuraramukha yantra* (osprey forceps) etc. that can be easily introduced and turned in all directions and also it grasps firmly and extracts the foreign body with ease.

2. Sandariṣa yantra (Pincher like instruments):

कीलबद्धविमुक्ताग्रौ सन्दंशो षोडशाङ्गुलौ ॥७॥
त्वक्कशिरास्नायुपिशितलग्नशल्यापकर्षणौ । षड्ङुलोऽन्यो हरणे सूक्ष्मशल्योपपक्ष्मणाम् ॥८॥

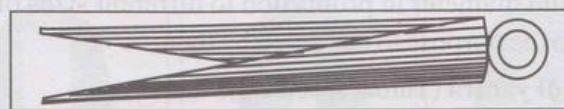


Sandariṣa yantra

- * *Sandariṣa yantras* are two in number such as the forceps with and without handles.
- * Generally they are having 16 inches in length and are used to extract the foreign bodies from the soft structures such as the skin, muscles, veins, nerves and tendons.
- * Another variety has the length of 6 inches and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch width in between the two blades and those two are soldered at one end.
- * It is intended for the purpose of extracting minute foreign bodies such as thorn, hair and also for the removal of superfluous eye lashes.

Mucuṭī or mucuṇḍī yantra:

मुचुण्डी सूक्ष्मदन्तर्जुर्मूले रुचकभूषणा । गम्भीरव्रणमांसानामर्मणः शेषितस्य च ॥९॥

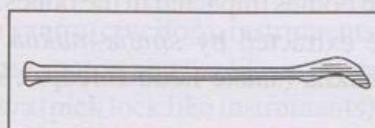


Mucuṭī yantra

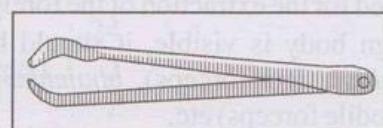
- * *Mucuṭī* also will be used similar to the 2nd variety of *sandariṣa yantra*.
- * It has small teeth and is straight at its root.
- * It is separated finely at the open ends. The soldered end has a ring attached to it as ornamentation.
- * It is useful for removing painful sloughs and granulations from a deep-seated abscess.

3. Tāla yantra (Pick lock like instruments):

द्वे द्वादशाङ्गुले मत्स्यतालवत् द्वयेकतालके । तालयन्त्रे स्मृते कर्णनाडीशल्यापहारिणी ॥1 0 ॥



Ekatāla



Dvitāla

- * These instruments resemble the jaws of a fish. They are of 2 types:

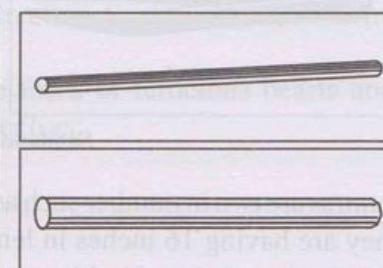
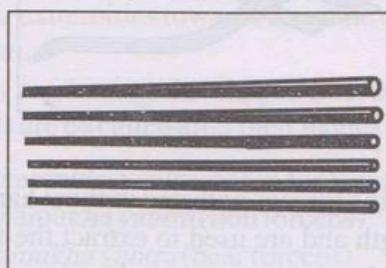
- (a) *Ekatāla* (single blade): Hook resembles one lip of the fish.
- (b) *Dvitāla* (double blade): Those with 2 *tālas* represent its entire face.

- * They have the length of 12 inches and are used for extracting the foreign bodies from the ear, nose etc.

4. Nāḍī yantra (Tubular instruments):

नाडीयन्त्राणि सुविधाण्येकानेकमुखानि च । स्रोतोगतानां शल्यानामामयानां च दर्शने ॥1 1 ॥

क्रियाणां सुकरत्वाय कुर्यादाचूषणाय च । तद्विस्तारपरीणाहैर्घ्यं स्रोतोऽनुरोधतः ॥1 2 ॥



Nāḍī yantra

- * The *nāḍī* or tubular instruments are described to be of various kinds and to serve many purposes.

- * They are open either at one or both ends.
- * They are used for the extraction of foreign bodies from the external channels of the body. They are also used for diagnostic purposes and also to suck the fluids from the cavities.
- * They vary in length and diameter in proportion to different sizes of the outer canals of the body and according to the purpose to be served by them.

Kanṭha śalya darśana nāḍī yantra (Throat speculum):

दशाङ्गुलाऽर्धनाहाऽन्तःकण्ठशल्यावलोकिनी । नाडी-

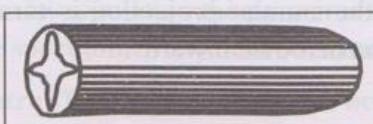
To examine the foreign bodies in the throat the instrument should have a length of 10 inches and a circumference of 5 inches.

Pañcamukha & trimukha:

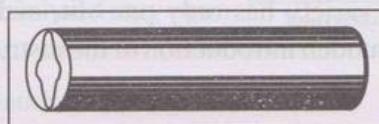
-पञ्चमुखच्छिद्रा चतुष्कर्णस्य सङ्ग्रहे ॥1 3 ॥

वारङ्गस्य, द्विकर्णस्य त्रिच्छिद्राः तत्प्रमाणतः ।

- * To take a good hold of four-eared arrow, a speculum having five holes (*pañcamukha*) should be required, and for a 2-eared arrow, a speculum having three holes (*trimukha*) would be necessary.
- * The central hole is for the arrow while the side holes are meant for the ears of the arrow.



Pañcamukha



Trimukha

वारङ्गकर्णसंस्थानानाहैर्ध्यनुरोधतः ॥1 4॥
नाडीरिवंविधाशान्या ब्रह्मं शल्यानि कारयेत् ।

To detect the foreign bodies lodged in side the body, different types of speculums can be fabricated depending on the shape, thickness and length.

Śalya nirghātani yantra:

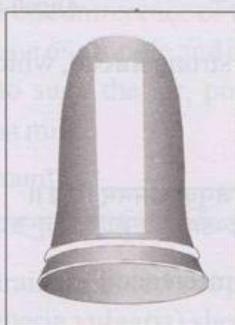
पद्मकर्णिकया मूर्धिने सदृशी द्वादशाङ्गुला ॥1 5॥
चतुर्थसुषिरा नाडी शल्यनिर्धातिनी मता ।

The top of the instrument is shaped like the disc of a lotus and is closed and it has a length of 12 inches and width of 3 inches. It is useful for catching and removal of foreign body.

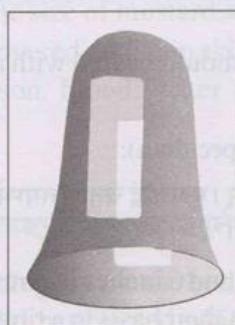
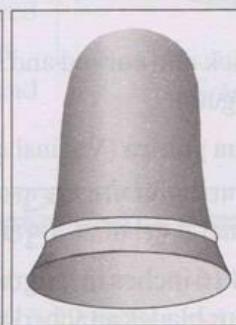
Arśa yantra (Proctoscope):

अर्शासां गोस्तनाकारं यन्त्रकं चतुरङ्गुलम् ॥1 6॥
नाहे पञ्चाङ्गुलं पुंसां प्रमदानां षडङ्गुलम् । द्विच्छिद्रं दर्शने व्याधेरेकच्छिद्रं तु कर्मणि ॥1 7॥
मध्येऽस्य अङ्गुलं छिद्रमङ्गुष्ठोदरविस्तृतम् । अर्धाङ्गुलोच्छितोद्भृतकर्णिकं च तदूर्ध्वतः ॥1 8॥

- * It is of 3 types—(a) slit with one side, (b) slit with two sides and (c) without any slit (*śamī yantra*).
- * It is made up of with copper, iron and gold or it may be made with ivory, horn and wood also.
- * They are hollow and tapering at the end and are in the shape of the teat of a cow.
- * For males, the length is of 4 inches and the circumference is 5 inches.



Slit with one side

Slit with two sides
3 Types of Arśa yantra

Without any slit

- * In case of females it is of 6 inches in length.
- * There are 2 slits on the sides, one for the inspection of the diseases and the other for the application of alkalies to the diseased part.
- * The slit measures 3 inches in length and the pulp of the thumb in breadth.
- * The second variety has only one slit, and the annular projection is turned upwards to prevent the sudden introduction of the instrument too far inwards.

Śamīyantra:

शम्याख्यं तादृगच्छ्रद्रं यन्त्रमर्शःप्रणीडनम् ।

The third variety without any slit on the side is called *śamī*, which is used to exert pressure over the piles by introducing the instrument into rectum.

Bhagandara yantra:

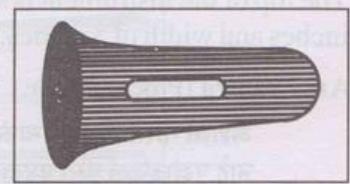
सर्वथाऽपनयेदोषं छिद्रादूर्ध्वं भगन्दरे ॥1 9॥

Bhagandara yantra should not have any ridge above the slit.

Ghrāṇa-arśo-arbuda yantra (Nasal speculum):

घ्राणार्बुदार्शसामेकच्छ्रद्रा नाड्यङ्गुलद्वया । प्रदेशिनीपरीणाहा स्थाद्वगन्दरयन्त्रवत् ॥2 0॥

For the examination of the nasal diseases such as tumors and polypus, it should be two inches in length and admits the index finger in its lumen. The tube has a single slit on the side and should not have any ridges above the slit similar to *bhagandhara yantra*.

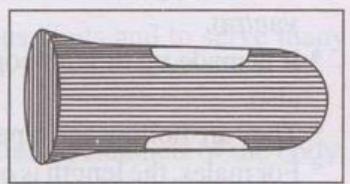


Ghrāṇa-arśo-arbuda yantra

Ānguli-trāṇaka yantra (Finger guard):

अङ्गुलित्राणकं दान्तं वार्क्षं वा चतुरङ्गुलम् । द्विच्छ्रद्रं गोस्तनाकारं तद्वक्त्रविवृतौ सुखम् ॥2 1॥

- * It protects the finger of the surgeon from being injured by the teeth of the patient and so helps the surgeon in opening the mouth of the patient.
- * It is generally made up of with ivory, horn or wood.
- * The instrument is in the shape of teat of a cow and having four inches length.
- * It should be thick and curved and should be tied with a strong thread, which also tied to the wrist of the surgeon.



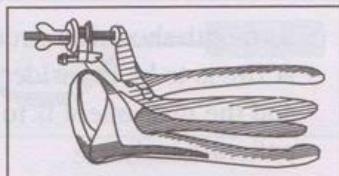
Ānguli-trāṇaka yantra

Yoni-vraṇa-darśana yantra (Vaginal speculum):

योनिव्रणेक्षणं मध्ये सुषिरं षोडशाङ्गुलम् । मुद्राबद्धं चतुर्भिर्त्तमभ्योजमुक्लाननम् ॥2 2॥
चतुःशलाकमाक्रान्तं मूले तद्विक्सेन्मुखे ।

- * It is tubular and 16 inches in length and 6 inches in circumference.
- * It consists of four blades attached at their basis to a ring.
- * The tube tapers gradually, the end is free and looks like the bud of a lotus.

- * To the four blades are soldered four rods in such a way that on pressing their free ends, which pass out of the ring by the surgeon's hands, the tapering end of the tube would gap widely.
- * The surgeon by regulating the pressure of his hand may open or close the speculum to any desired extent.



Yonivraṇa darsana yantra

Nādīvraṇa yantra (Tubular instruments for wounds):

यन्त्रे नाडीव्रणाभ्यङ्कालनाय षडङ्गुले ॥२ ३ ॥

बस्तियन्त्राकृती मूले मुखेऽङ्गुष्ठकलायर्खे । अग्रतोऽकर्णिके मूले निबद्धमृदुचर्मणी ॥२ ४ ॥

- * It is used for washing a sinus with medicated lotions.
- * It consists a tube and a leather bag, similar to *vasti yantra* without ridges at the tip.
- * It should be 6 inches in length, and the circumference of a thumb at the base and a pea at the tip.

Udakodara yantra (Canula for ascitis):

द्विद्वारा नलिका पिच्छनलिका बोदकोदरे ।

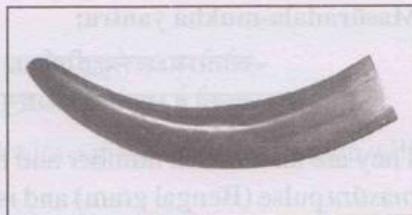
The tube is open at both the ends and is made up of with metal or manufactured from the cylindrical hollow calamus of a peacock's feather.

धूमबस्त्यादियन्त्राणि निर्दिष्टानि यथायथम् ॥२ ५ ॥

Instruments useful for *dhūmapāna* and *vasti karma* have been already enumerated in the relevant chapters.

Śṛṅga yantra (Horn/instrument for cupping):

ऋङ्गुलास्यं भवेच्छङ्गं चूषणेऽष्टादशाङ्गुलम् । अग्रे सिद्धार्थकच्छिं द्रुं सुनद्वं चूचुकाकृति ॥२ ६ ॥



Śṛṅga yantra

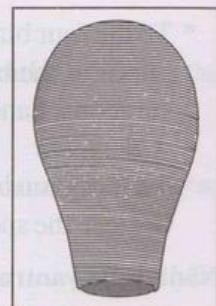
- * Generally cow's horn is recommended for this purpose.
- * They are having a length of 18 inches and 3 inches width at the base.
- * The tip is in a circumference of the size of mustard seed and in the shape of a nipple and covered with thin skin.
- * It is useful to suck the air, poison, blood, water and vitiated breast milk.

Ālābū yantra (Gourd):

स्यादद्वादशाङ्गुलोऽलाबुनहि त्वष्टादशाङ्गुलः । चतुर्ष्वङ्गुलवृत्तास्यो दीप्तोऽन्तः श्लेष्मरक्तहृत् ॥२ ७ ॥

- * It is used to drain the blood and phlegm from the body.
- * Ālābū (*Lagenaria vulgaris*) should be selected which is 12 inches and 18 inches in length and circumference respectively.

- * Its mouth should be circular and have a diameter of 3 to 4 inches.
- * A fire is to be lit inside with a dry cloth, grass, cotton to create vacuum and the instrument is to be applied instantly to the intended part of the patient's body.

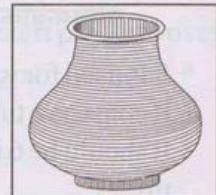


Ālābū

Ghaṭī yantra:

तद्वद्घटी हिता गुल्मविलयोन्नमने च सा ।

- * The measurements of *ghaṭī yantra* and the indications are also similar to that of *alābū yantra*.
- * It is also useful in abdominal tumors.



Ghaṭī

5. Śalākā yantra (Rod like instruments):

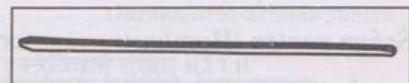
शलाकाख्यानि यन्त्राणि नानाकर्माकृतीनि च ॥२८॥
यथायोगप्रमाणानि-

The rods or probes are described to be of various kinds and are recommended for various purposes; so their length and circumference would vary according to the usage.

Gaṇḍūpadamukha yantra (Blunt probe instruments):

-तेषामेषणकर्मणी । उभे गण्डूपदमुखे-

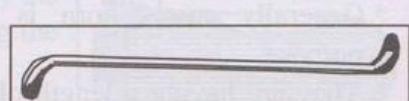
- * There are two kinds of *śalākā*, with their ends shaped like the head of the earthworm.
- * They are used for probing abscesses and sinuses.



Gaṇḍūpadamukha yantra

Masūradala-mukha yantra:

-स्रोतोभ्यः शल्यहारिणी ॥२९॥
मसूरदलवक्त्रे द्वे स्यातामष्टनवाङ्गुले ।



Masūradala-mukha yantra

They are also two in number and having a length of 8 and 9 inches and the end is in a shape of *masūra* pulse (Bengal gram) and is used to remove foreign bodies from the internal channels of the body.

Śaṅku yantra:

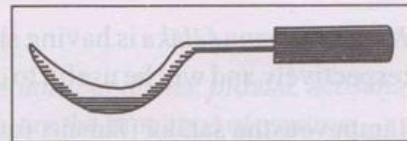
शङ्कुवः षट्उभौ तेषां षोडशद्वादशाङ्गुलौ ॥३०॥
व्यूहनेऽहिफणावक्त्रौ द्वौ दशद्वादशाङ्गुलौ । चालने शरपुङ्गास्यौ आहार्ये बडिशाकृती ॥३१॥

- * They are six in number.
- * Among those two are 12 and 16 inches respectively and having the shape of the hood of a snake.

- * They are used for the purpose of raising the foreign body upwards from the wound.
- * Two varieties are having 10 and 12 inches length and having the shape of the tip of the arrow and are used for moving the foreign body in the wound in all directions.
- * Another two having the shape of a fish hook which are used to remove the foreign bodies from the wound.

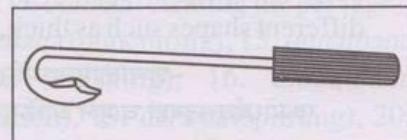
Garbha śaṅku (Foetus or traction hook):

नतोऽग्रे शङ्कुना तुल्यो गर्भशङ्कुरिति स्मृतः । अष्टाङ्गगुलायतस्तेन मूढगर्भं हरेत् स्त्रियाः ॥३ २ ॥



Śaṅku yantra

- * The end of the instrument has been bent like an *aṅkuśa* or elephant drivers goad.
- * It is having the length of 18 inches and width of 8 inches.
- * It is used for extracting the dead foetus from the mothers' womb.

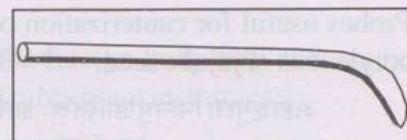


Garbha śaṅku

Sarpaphaṇamukhi yantra (Snakes hood):

अश्याहरणं सर्पफणावद्वक्तमग्रतः ।

- * It is *śaṅku*, or hook similar to the above and the end being bent like the hood of the snake.
- * It is used to extract the stones in the urinary bladder.



Sarpaphaṇamukhi yantra

Dantapātana yantra:

शरपुङ्गुमुखं दन्तपातनं चतुरड्गुलम् ॥३ ३ ॥

Instruments having the length of 4 inches and the tip possessing the shape of an arrow are useful for extracting the tooth.

Pramārjani śalākā yantra:

कार्पासविहितोष्णीषाः शलाकाः षट् प्रमार्जने । पायावासन्नदूरार्थे द्वे दशद्वादशाड्गुले ॥३ ४ ॥

द्वे षट्सप्ताड्गुले घाणे, द्वे कर्णेऽष्टनवाड्गुले ।

- * There are six rod like instruments with their tip encircled with a piece of cotton, which will be useful for cleaning the wounds, sinuses etc.
- * Two of them having a length of 10 inches and 12 inches will be useful to clean the wounds exterior and interior part of the rectum respectively.
- * Another two having a length of 6 inches and 7 inches will be useful to clean the wounds external and internal parts of the nose respectively.
- * Two more instruments having a length of 8 inches and 9 inches will be useful to clean the wounds nearer and faraway parts of the ear respectively.

Karṇa śodhana śalākā:

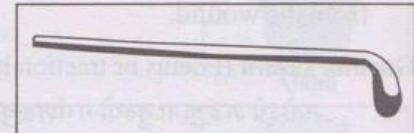
कर्णशोधनमश्वथपत्रप्रान्तं स्फुवाननम् ॥३ ५ ॥

Karṇaśodhanaśālāka is having shapes of *aśvattha* leaf and ladle shapes in the edge and the tip respectively and will be useful to clean the ears.

Jāmbavouṣṭha śalākā (Jāmuna fruit probe):

शलाकाजाम्बवौष्टानं क्षारेऽग्नौ च पृथक् त्रयम् । युज्यात् स्थूलाणुदीर्घाणां-

- * Probes having their ends in a shape of *jāmuna* fruit (*Syzygium cumini*) are known as *jāmbavouṣṭha śalākā*.
- * For the application of *kṣāra* 3 types of instruments and for conducting *agni karma* 3 more instruments have been mentioned separately, and they are possessing different shapes such as thick, thin and long.



Jāmbavouṣṭha śalākā

-शलाकामन्त्रधर्मनि ॥३ ६ ॥

मध्योर्ध्ववृत्तदण्डां च मूले चार्देन्दुसन्निभाम् ।

Probes useful for intestinal hernia shall have round and semilunar shapes at the tip and the base respectively.

कोलास्थिदलतुल्यास्या नासार्शेर्बुद्दाहकृत् ॥३ ७ ॥

Probes useful for cauterization of nasal polyps and tumors shall have its mouth resembling cotyledons of jujube seed.

अष्टाङ्गुला निम्नमुखास्तिसः क्षारौषधक्रमे । कनीनीमध्यमानामीनखमानसमैर्मुखैः ॥३ ८ ॥

Three probes useful for application of *kṣāra* shall be eight inches in length and their tips are similar to the nails of index, middle and ring fingers respectively.

स्वं स्वमुक्तानि यन्त्राणि मेद्रशुद्धयज्ञनादिषु ।

Urethral probes and collyrium rods have been already described at the relevant chapters.

6. Anu yantra (Accessory instruments):

अनुयन्त्राण्ययस्कान्तरज्जुवस्त्राशमुद्राः ॥३ ९ ॥

वधान्तजिह्वाबालाश्च शाखानखमुखद्विजाः । कालः पाकः करः पादो भयं हर्षश्च, तत्क्रियाः ॥४ ० ॥

उपायवित्त्रविभजेदालोच्य निपुणं धिया ।

- * This class of blunt instruments comprises various accessory instruments such as magnet, thread, leather, intestines, cloth, stones, hammer, the palm of the hand and sole of the foot, fingers, tongue, teeth, mouth, nails, hair, branch of a tree, air, time, cooking, objects exciting happiness and fear etc.
- * As these are inferior to actual instruments and are named as accessory instruments.
- * They can be used anywhere in the body according to the necessity.

Yantra karma (Functions of the instruments):

निर्धातनोन्मथनपूरणमार्गशुद्धिसंव्यूहनाहरणबन्धनपीडनानि ।

अचूषणोन्नमननामनचालभङ्गव्यावर्तनर्जुकरणानि च यन्त्रकर्म ॥४ १ ॥

विवर्तते साध्ववगाहते च ग्राह्यं गृहीत्वोद्धरते च यस्मात् ।

Nirghātana, unmathana, pūraṇa, mārga-śuddhi, vyūhana, āharaṇa, bandhana, pīḍana, ācūṣaṇa, unnamana, nāmana, cālana, bhañga, vyāvartana इयुकराणा etc. are the functions of yantras.

Notes:

In the 34th chapter of *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha Sūtra* sthāna, 24 types of the functions of blunt instruments have been described as under:

1. *Nirghātana* (hammering), 2. *pūraṇa* (filling), 3. *bandhana* (bandaging), 4. *vyūhana* (bringing together the edges of the wound), 5. *parivartana* (replacement), 6. *cālana* (moving the foreign body), 7. *vivaraṇa* (dilatation), 8. *pīḍana* (pressing), 9. *mārga viśodhana* (clearing the passage), 10. *vikarṣaṇa* (extraction), 11. *āharaṇa* (pulling out), 12. *vyathana* (puncturing), 13. *unnamana* (elevation), 14. *vinamana* (depression), 15. *bhañjana* (crushing), 16. *unmathana* (probing/stirring), 17. *ācūṣaṇa* (suction), 18. *eṣaṇa* (exploration), 19. *dāraṇa* (splitting), 20. *īyukarāṇa* (straightening), 21. *prakṣālana* (washing the wound), 22. *pradhamana* (blowing) 23. *añjana* (collyrium) and 24. *pramārjana* (wipe off).

Speciality of kaṅkamukha yantra (Heron forceps):

यन्त्रेष्वतः कङ्कमुखं प्रधानं स्थानेषु सर्वेष्वधिकारि यच्च ॥४ २ ॥

As it enters deeply into the wound, turns around, can hold the foreign body well and can be extracted without causing any abnormality, it is superior to all other blunt instruments.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्रामटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने यन्त्रविधिर्नाम पञ्चविंशोऽध्यायः ॥१२५ ॥

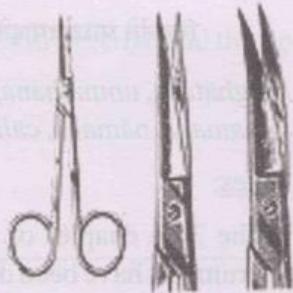
Thus ends the twenty-fifth chapter entitled *Yantra-vidhi Adhyāya* of *Sūtra* sthāna in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṅhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa has been explained various types of surgical instruments in detail. Definition of *śalya*; 6 types of blunt instruments; functions of the instruments; specialty of the heron forceps; etc. has been discussed.



26 ŚASTRA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Application of Sharp Instruments]



अथातः शस्त्रविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुत्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘Yantra-vidhi’ (Application of Blunt Instruments), Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘Śastra-vidhi’ (Application of Sharp Instruments), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Śastra-lakṣaṇa (Sharp instruments):

षड्विंशतिः सुकमरैर्घटितानि यथाविधि । शस्त्राणि रोमवाहीनि बाहुल्येनाङ्गुलानि षट् ॥1॥
सुरूपाणि सुधाराणि सुग्रहाणि च कारयेत् । अकरालानि सुधमातसुतीक्ष्णावर्तितेऽयसि ॥2॥
समाहितमुखाग्राणि मीलाभोजच्छवीनि च । नापानुगतरूपाणि सदा सञ्चिहितानि च ॥3॥
स्वोन्मानार्थचतुर्थाशफलान्येकैकशोऽपि च । प्रायो द्वित्राणि, युज्जीत तानि स्थानविशेषतः ॥4॥
(मण्डलांग्रं वृद्धिपत्रमुत्पलाध्यद्वंधारके । सर्पेषण्यौ वेतसाख्यं शरार्यास्यत्रिकूर्चके ॥1॥
कुशास्यं साटवदनमन्तर्वक्त्रार्थचन्द्रके (कम्) । व्रीहिमुखं कुठारी च शलाकाङ्गुलिशस्त्रके ॥2॥
बडिशं करपत्राख्यं कर्तनी नखशस्त्रकम् । दन्तलेखनं सूच्यः कूर्चो नाम खजाह्नम् ॥3॥
आरा चतुर्विधाकारा तथा स्यात्कर्णवेधनी (नम्) ॥4॥

- * In general sharp instruments are 26 in number.
- * These instruments should be got prepared by the skilled blacksmiths in accordance with the traditional method.
- * They should have 6 *aṅgulas* (9 cm.) in length, comprising lovely shape, easy to handle with sharp edges and able to do the longitudinal section of the hair follicle.
- * Fabricate these instruments by melting the iron properly and make the edges sharp by hammering well.
- * The color of the edges appears as the petals of blue lotus, and the shape should be according to their nomenclature.
- * Their blade should be half or one fourth of their length.
- * The surgeon should always accomplish with these instruments and ready to use at any time, and must have at least 2-3 sets of each variety, to be made use of as suitable to the site of operation.

Names of the 26 sharp instruments are as follows:

1. *Maṇḍalāgra*, 2. *vṛddhipatra*, 3. *utpalapatra*, 4. *adyardhadhāraka*, 5. *sarpamuhka*, 6. *eṣanī*,
7. *vetasapatra*, 8. *śarārimukha*, 9. *trikūrcaka*, 10. *kuśapatra*, 11. *ātavadana* (*ātīmukhī*),
12. *antarvaktrārdha-candraka*, 13. *vrīhimukha*, 14. *kuthārī*, 15. *śalākā*, 16. *aṅguli śartra*,

17. *badiṣa*, 18. *karapatra*, 19. *kartari*, 20. *nakha śartra*, 21. *dantalekhanaka*, 22. *sūcī*, 23. *kūrca*, 24. *khaja*, 25. *ārā* (4 kinds), 26. *karṇavedhana śastra*.

Notes:

In some of the mss. the remaining 3½ verses of the sanskrit text mentioned after the first 4 verses were missed. The names of the sharp instruments were given in those *ślokas*. The order given in this text differs with the book *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha*.

The number of sharp instruments mentioned by Suśruta is twenty only, where as they are 26 according to Vāgbhaṭa.

The order of the sharp instruments mentioned by Vṛddha Vāgbhaṭa in *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* is as follows:

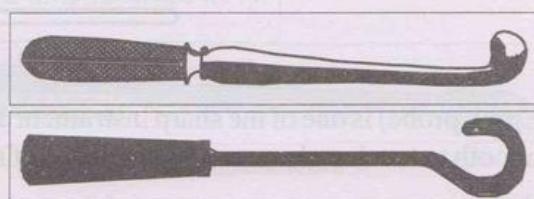
1. *Dantalekhanā śastra* (dental scraper), 2. *maṇḍalāgra śastra* (round headed knife), 3. *vṛddhipatra śastra* (scalpel), 4. *utpalapatra śastra* (lancet), 5. *adyardhadhārā śastra* (half edged knife), 6. *mudrikā śastra* (finger knife), 7. *kartarī śastra* (scissors), 8. *sarpavaktra śastra* (snakes hood shaped blade), 9. *karapatra śastra* (saw), 10. *kuśapatra śastra* (cattract knife), 11. *ātāmukha śastra* (curved scissors), 12. *antarmukha śastra* (blade bent inwards), 13. *śārārimukha śastra* (pointed scissors), 14. *trikūrca śastra* (three metallic spikes), 15. *kūthārikā śastra* (axe), 16. *vrīhimukha śastra* (trocar), 17. *śalākā śastra* (probe), 18. *vetasapatra śastra* (narrow blade knife), 19. *ārā śastra* (awl), 20. *karnavyadhana śastra* (needle for piercing the ear), 21. *sūcī śastra* (needles), 22. *sūcīkūrca śastra* (brush with spikes), 23. *khaja śastra* (churner), 24. *eṣāṇī śastra* (sharp probe), 25. *badiṣa śastra* (sharp hook) and 26. *nakha śastra* (nail parer).

DESCRIPTION OF THE SHARP INSTRUMENTS

Maṇḍalāgra śastra (Round headed knife):

मण्डलाग्रं फले तेषां तर्जन्यन्तर्नखाकृति । लेखने छेदने योज्यं पोथकीशुणिङ्कादिषु ॥५॥

- * The blade is in the shape of the index finger when its nail points towards the palm of the hand.
- * It is used for scraping and excision of *pothakī* (trachoma— disease of eye lid), *śuṇḍika* (tonsillitis) etc.



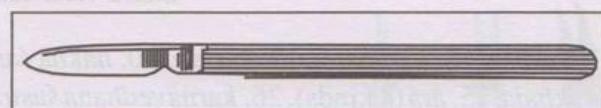
Maṇḍalāgra śastra

Vṛddhipatra śastra (Scalpel):

वृद्धिपत्रं क्षुराकारं छेदभेदनपाटने । ऋज्वग्रमुन्नते शोफे गम्भीरे च तदन्यथा ॥६॥
नताग्रं पृष्ठतो दीर्घहस्तवक्त्रं यथाश्रयम् ।

- * The sharp cutting instrument is called *vṛddhipatra śastra* from its resemblance to the leaf of a medicinal plant called *vṛddhi* or in the shape of a razor (barber's knife).

- * This instrument is useful for excision and incision.
- * Instrument with straight edge is used for opening the pointed superficial abscess. The curved knives with long or short edges are used in other abscesses.

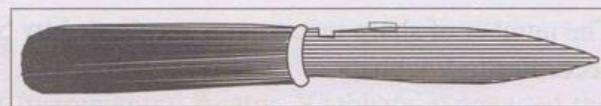


Vṛddhipatra śastra

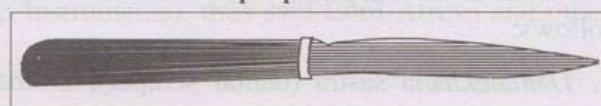
Utpalaputra śastra (Lancet) & adhyardhadhārā śastra (half edged knife):

उत्पलाध्यर्धधाराख्ये भेदने छेदने तथा ॥७॥

- * *Utpalaputra śastra* (lancet) and *adhyardhadhārā śastra* (half edged knife) are having long and short edges respectively.
- * They are useful for incision and excision.



Utpalaputra śastra



Adhyardhadhārā śastra

Sarpavaktra śastra (Snake's mouth shaped):

सर्पास्यं घाणकर्णाश्च छेदनेऽर्धाङ्गुलं फले ।

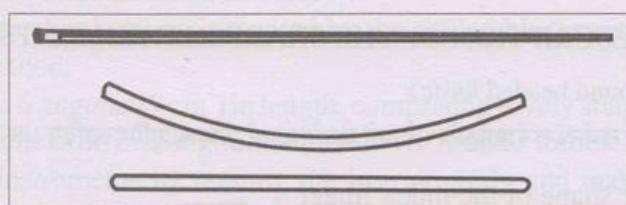
- * It resembles the mouth of a snake.
- * The blade is having $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch length and is used to excise the nasal and aural polyps.



Sarpavaktra śastra

Eṣanī:

गतेरन्वेषणे श्लक्षणा गण्डपदमुखैषणी ॥८॥



Eṣanī

Eṣanī (probe) is one of the sharp instrument and is useful to explore the route of the sinuses. It is smooth to touch and possessing the shape of mouth of an earthworm.

Notes:

- * The probes are of two kinds, one is hard and the other is soft.
- * The hard probes are used for deep sinuses and the soft probes are useful for superficial sinuses.

भेदनार्थेऽपरा सूचीमुखा मूलनिविष्टखा ।

Another kind of probe having a needle like face with a hole at the base and is used for splitting.

Vetasapatra śastra:

वेतसं व्यधने-

Vetasapatra śastra is useful for puncturing.

Śarārimukha and trikurcaka:

-स्नाव्ये शरार्यास्यत्रिकूचके ॥१७॥

Śarārimukha and *trikūrcaka śastra* will be useful for draining the fluids.

Kuśapatra śastra and āṭāmukha śastra:

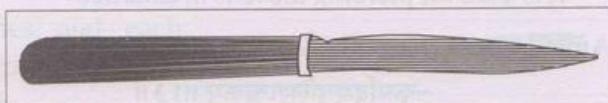
कुशाटावदने स्नाव्ये द्वयङ्गुलं स्यात्तयोः फलम् ।

* *Kuśapatra śastra* is a knife with its blade having the shape of a leaf of *kuśa* grass.

* It should be 6 inches length and the blade measuring 2 inches.

* It is used for puncturing and draining the wounds.

* *Āṭāmukha śastra* is in the shape of the beak of water bird ‘*āṭi*’ and the measurements are same as of *kuśapatra* and the function is also similar.



Kuśapatra śastra



Āṭāmukha śastra

Antarmukha śastra:

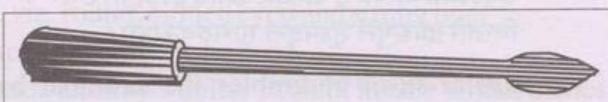
तद्वदन्तर्मुखं तस्य फलमध्यर्धमङ्गुलम् ॥१०॥

अर्धचन्द्राननं चैतत्-

Antarmukha śastra is also having the similar functions of the above instruments and having an edge of 1½ inch with a half moon shape.

Vrihimukha śastra:

-तथाऽध्यर्धाङ्गुलं फले । व्रीहिवक्त्रं प्रयोज्यं च तच्छरोदयोर्व्यधे ॥११॥



Vrihimukha śastra

* *Vrihimukha śastra* is a kind of trocar and the tip is pointed and in the shape of a grain.

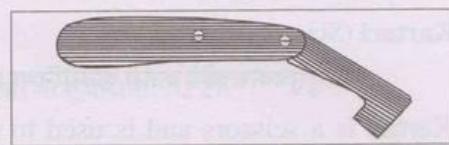
* The length of the blade is 1½ inches.

* It is used for paracentesis in ascitis and also used for venesection in the fleshy parts of the body.

Kuṭhārikā śastra:

पृथुः कुठारी गोदन्तसदृशार्थाङ्गुलानना ।

तयोर्धवदण्डया विद्येदुपर्यस्थानं स्थितां शिराम् ॥१२॥



Kuṭhārikā śastra

- * *Kuṭhārikā Śastra* is a small instrument shaped like teeth of cow and the blade is $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in width, and having a wooden handle.
- * It is used for venesection on bony structures.

Tāmra śalākā:

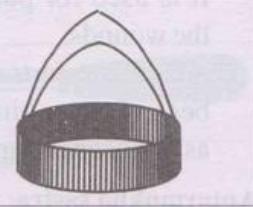
ताम्री शलाका द्विमुखी मुखे कुरुबकाकृतिः ।
लिङ्गनाशं तया विध्येत्-

- * *Tāmra śalākā* is a rod like instrument made up of with copper. It is having 2 tips on either side shaped like the bud of *kurabaka/saireyaka* (Barleria prionitis).
- * It is used for piercing the lens in cataract.

Ānguli śastra (Finger knife):

-कुर्यादङ्गुलिशस्त्रकम् ॥1 3 ॥
मुद्रिकानिर्गतमुखं फले त्वर्धाङ्गुलायतम् । योगतो वृद्धिपत्रेण मण्डलाग्रेण वा समम् ॥1 4 ॥
तत्प्रदेशिन्यग्रपर्वप्रमाणार्पणमुद्रिकम् । सूत्रबद्धं गलस्तोतोरोगच्छेदनभेदने ॥1 5 ॥

- * The mouth of the finger knife looks as if coming out of a ring and the blade is having the width of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch and resembling either *vṛddhipatra* or *māṇḍalāgra* śastra in shape.
- * The ring is in a size of terminal phalanx of the index finger. The base of the instrument has a thread tied to it.
- * It is used for cutting through neoplasms in the throat.



Ānguli śastra

Badiśa śastra (Sharp hook):

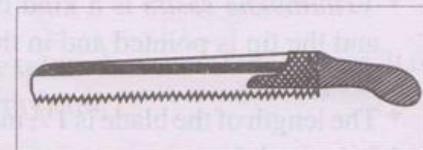
ग्रहणे शुणिडकार्मदेवंडिशं सुनताननम् ।

Badiśa śastra is a sharp hook with a bent face and is meant for holding enlarged uvula, pterygium etc.

Karapatra (Saw):

छेदेऽस्थानं करपत्रं तु खरधारं दशाङ्गुलम् ॥1 6 ॥
विस्तारे द्वयङ्गुलं सूक्ष्मदन्तं सुत्सरुबन्धनम् ।

- * *Karapatra śastra* resembles the saw and having the length of 10 inches and width of 2 inches.
- * The edge of instrument should be sharp and serrated with a handle.
- * It is used to cut the bones.

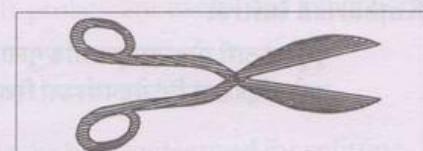


Karapatra śastra

Kartari (Scissors):

स्नायुसूत्रकच्छेदे कर्तरी कर्तरीनिभा ॥1 7 ॥

Kartari is a scissors and is used to cut the tendons, hair, threads etc.

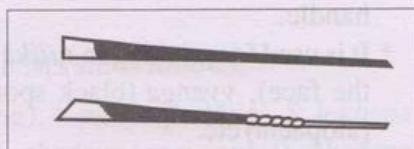


Kartari

Nakha śastra (Nail parer):

वक्रजुंधारं द्विमुखं नखशस्त्रं नवाङ्गुलम् । सूक्ष्मशल्योद्धतिच्छेदभेदप्रच्छानलेखने ॥1 8 ॥

- * The length of the *nakha śastra* should be 9 inches and having 2 edges, one is straight and the other is curved.
- * It is used to extract the minute foreign bodies from the soft parts, and also for excising, incising, tattooing and scarifying.

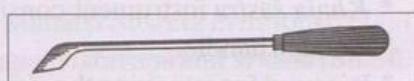


Nakha śastra

Dantalekhana śastra (Dental scraper):

एकधारं चतुष्कोणं प्रबद्धाकृति चैकतः । दन्तलेखनकं तेन शोधयेद् दन्तशर्कराम् ॥1 9 ॥

Dantalekhana śastra is having four sides and each connected firmly with a nail, having sharp edge and is useful for scraping the crustations on the teeth.



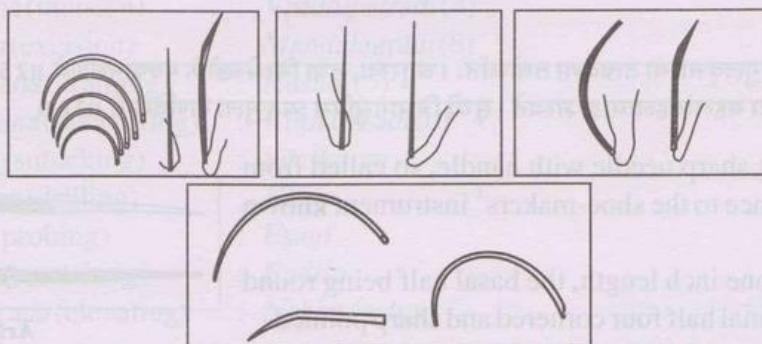
Dantalekhana śastra

Sūci (Needles):

वृत्ता गृहदृढः पाशे तिसः सूच्योऽत्र सीवने । मांसलानां प्रदेशानां त्र्यस्वा त्र्यङ्गुलमायता ॥2 0 ॥

अल्पमांसास्थिसन्धिस्थव्रणानां द्वयङ्गुलायता । त्रीहिवक्त्रा धनुर्वक्त्रा पक्वामाशयमर्मसु ॥2 1 ॥

सा सार्धद्वयङ्गुला-



Sūci

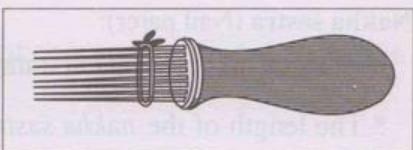
- * Needles useful for suturing are of 3 types, viz. round, hidden eyed and strong one.
- * In fleshy parts 3 ribbed needle having 3 inches length is to be used.
- * In less fleshy parts, boney joints and wounds atjoints similar straight needle with 2 inches length is recommended.
- * For suturing stomach, intestines, scrotum and other vital points prefer a curved needle which is bent like an arrow and having 2½ inches length and the pointed end shaped like a paddy.

Kūrca:

— सर्ववृत्तास्ताश्तुरङ्गुलाः । कूर्चो वृत्तैकपीठस्थाः सप्ताष्टी वा सुबन्धनाः ॥2 2 ॥

स योज्यो नीलिकाव्यङ्गुकेशशातेषु कुट्टने ।

- * *Kurca śastra* is an instrument consisting seven or eight needles of 4 inches length fixed on a round wooden handle.
- * It is used for pricking in *nīlikā* (black and blue marks on the face), *vyaṅga* (black spots on the face), *keśāśata* (alopecia) etc.



Kurca śastra

Khaja:

अर्धाङ्गुलमुखैवृत्तेरष्टाभिः कण्टकैः खजः ॥२३॥
पाणिभ्यां मध्यमानेन घ्राणात्तेन हरेदसुक् ।

- * *Khaja śastra* instrument consisting eight spikes of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in length and fixed on a round wooden handle.
- * It is used for removing the vitiated blood from the nose by churning with hands.

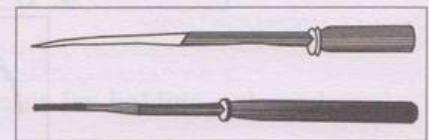
Karṇapālī vyadhana śastra:

व्यधनं कर्णपालीनां यूथिकामुकुलाननम् ॥२४॥

Karṇapālī vyadhana śastra is an instrument used for puncturing the ear lobe and having the tip in the shape of jasmine bud.

Ārā (Awl):

आराऽर्धाङ्गुलवृत्तास्या तत्प्रवेशा तथोर्धर्तः । चतुरस्ता, तया विध्येच्छोकं पक्वामसंशये ॥२५॥
कर्णपालीं च बहलांबहलायाश्च शस्यते । सूची त्रिभागसुषिरा त्र्यङ्गुला कर्णवेधनी ॥२६॥



Ārā

- * *Ārā* is a long sharp needle with handle, so called from its resemblance to the shoe-makers' instrument known as awl.
- * It is having one inch length, the basal half being round and the terminal half four cornered and sharp pointed.
- * It is used for perforating the lobule of the ear and also to know the status of inflammatory conditions whether ripened or unripened by puncturing.
- * In case of thick earlobe, a needle which is hollow in 3 parts of its size and the total of 3 inches length is the best one for puncturing.

Anu śastra (Accessory instruments):

जलौकः क्षारदहनकाचोपलनखादयः । अलौहान्यनुशस्त्राणि, तान्येवं च विकल्पयेत् ॥२७॥
अपराण्यपि यन्त्रादीन्युपयोगं च यौगिकम् ।

- * Leaches, alkalies, fire, sunstone, glass, rock crystal, magnet, nails, leaves of teak, *nirgundi* and others having rough surface like dried cow dung etc. are the *anu śastras*.
- * Even though they are not the actual instruments, they serve the purpose as that of the instruments.
- * The physician can fabricate the blunt and sharp instruments by applying his mind, which are suitable for various surgical procedures.

Functions of the sharp instruments:

उत्पाटयपाट्यसीव्यैष्वलेख्यप्रच्छानकुट्टनम् ॥2 8॥

छेदं भेदं व्यथो मस्थो ग्रहो दाहश्च तक्षिक्याः ।

Various functions of the sharp instruments delineated by Vāgbhaṭa are as follows:

1. *Utpāṭana* (extracting), 2. *pāṭana* (tearing), 3. *sīvana* (suturing), 4. *eṣaṇa* (probing), 5. *lekhana* (scraping), 6. *pracchāna* (draining), 7. *kutṭana* (pricking), 8. *chedana* (excision), 9. *bhedana* (incision), 10. *vyadhana* (puncturing), 11. *manthana* (drilling), 12. *grahaṇa* (catching), 13. *dahana* (cauterization).

Notes:

Regarding the number of the functions of sharp instruments, Maharśi Suśruta mentioned eight only, viz. *chedana*, *bhedana*, *lekhana*, *vyadhana*, *eṣaṇa*, *āharāṇa*, *visravaṇa* and *sīvana* (Su.Sū. 5:5). Where as Caraka mentioned only six functions such as *pāṭana*, *vyadhana*, *chedana*, *lepana*, *pracchana* and *sīvana* (C.Ci. 25:55). The author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha described twelve among the thirteen excluding *dahana karma*. But the order is changed as follows (A.S.Sū. 34):

1. <i>Lekhana</i> (scraping)	:	<i>Danta lekhana & maṇḍalāgra</i> (first two)
2. <i>Pāṭana</i> (extracion)	:	<i>Vṛddhipatra, utpalapatra, adyardhadhāra</i> (3)
3. <i>Bhedana</i> (incision)	:	<i>Vṛddhipatrādi</i> (4)
4. <i>Cedana</i> (excision)	:	<i>Maṇḍalāgrādi</i> (8)
5. <i>Pracchāna</i> (draining)	:	<i>Kuśādi</i> (5)
6. <i>Vyadhana</i> (puncturing)	:	<i>Kuṭhārikādi</i> (6)
7. <i>Sīvana</i> (sutucking)	:	<i>Sūcikūrca</i>
9. <i>Mathana</i> (drilling)	:	<i>Khaja</i>
10. <i>Eṣaṇa</i> (probing)	:	<i>Eṣaṇī</i>
11. <i>Grahaṇa</i> (catching)	:	<i>Badiṣa</i>
12. <i>Uddharaṇa</i> (elevating)	:	<i>Nakha śastra</i>

Śastra doṣa (Defects of the sharp instruments):

कुण्ठखण्डतनुस्थूलहस्वदीर्घत्ववक्रता: ॥2 9॥

शस्त्राणां खरधारत्वमष्टौ दोषाः प्रकीर्तिताः ।

The following eight are the defects of the sharp instruments:

1. *Kunṭha*(bluntness)
2. *Khanda*(broken)
3. *Tanu*(very thin)
4. *Sthūla*(very thick)
5. *Hrasva*(very short)
6. *Dīrgha*(very long)
7. *Vakra*(curved)
8. *Kharadhāratā* (rough edged)

Śastra grahaṇa vidhi:

छेदभेदनलेख्यार्थं शस्त्रं वृत्तफलान्तरे ॥3 0॥

तर्जनीमध्यमाडःगुष्ठैर्गृहीयात्सुसमाहितः । विस्त्रावणानि वृत्ताग्रे तर्जन्यङ्गुष्ठकेन च ॥3 1॥

तलप्रच्छन्नवृत्ताग्रं ग्राह्यं व्रीहिमुखं मुखे । मूलेष्वाहरणार्थानि क्रियासौकर्यतोऽपरम् ॥3 2॥

While performing various surgical procedures, different types of instruments should be handled in the following ways.

- For *chedana* (excision), *bhedana* (incision) and *lekhana* (scraping), the instrument should be held carefully in between the round handle and the edge with the help of index finger, middle finger and thumb.
- For *visravaṇa* (draining) it should be held at the tip of the round handle with the help of index finger and the thumb.
- *Vṛihimukha śastra* should be touched and covered by palm and held at the tip with the help of index finger, middle finger and the thumb.
- For *āharāṇa* (extraction), instruments should be held at their root.
- Other instruments should be held according to the convenience of the surgeon as well as the procedure.

Śastra kośa (Surgical instrument case):

स्यान्नवाङ्गुलविस्तारः सुधनो द्वादशाङ्गुलः । क्षौमपत्रोर्णकौशेयदुकूलमृदुचर्मजः ॥३ ३ ॥
विन्यस्तपाशः सुस्यूतः सान्तरोणास्थशस्त्रकः । शलाकापिहितास्यश्च शस्त्रकोशः सुसञ्चयः ॥३ ४ ॥

The instrument case should be 12 inches in length and 9 inches in width and made with jute, leaves, wool thick silk cloth, leather etc. It is well stitched with compartments for keeping the instruments and the inner part should be smooth and covered with woolen cloth and its mouth closed and held tight with a rod and also it should be easy to carry.

Notes:

The author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha has given the details regarding the tempering of sharp instruments and the ways and means to gain the practical knowledge as follows:

Śastra pāyanā (Tempering):

- * Sharp instruments tempered with alkalies will be useful to remove the arrows, foreign bodies lodged in the bones and to tear the bones.
- * Tempered with water will be useful to tear the muscles.
- * Tempered with oil will be useful for venesection and tearing the tendons.

Ways & means of gaining practical knowledge:

- * The *vaidya* should be mastered in science and should gain the practical experience by attending surgical operations in large numbers and also tried with puppets.
- * Dissection of the cadaver is essential to learn the anatomical structures of the human body.

Bloodletting:

Kuṣṭha, *visarpa*, *ślīpada* etc., are some of the diseases caused due to the vitiation of blood. Extraction of the vitiated blood from the body by using *śastras* and *anu śastras* is known as *rakta-mokṣaṇa* (blood letting).

Types of blood letting:

Bloodletting can be done by the following methods:

1. *Pracchāna* (incision)
2. *Sirāvedhana* (venepuncture)
3. *Jalaukā prayoga* (leach application)
4. *Śringāvacāraṇa* (application of horn for aspiration)
5. *Ālābū* (gourd for cupping)
6. *Ghaṭī yantra* (cupping with earthen ware).

- * *Pracchāna* is indicated to drain the accumulated blood from a particular point.
- * Deep-seated blood can be extracted with the help of leach application.
- * To drain the vitiated blood, which has settled in different layers of the skin, *śringā*, *ālābū* and *ghaṭī yantra* will be useful.
- * Venepuncture is advised whenever vitiated blood circulates in the body.
- * To extract the blood vitiated by *vāta*, horn is useful for aspiration, as it is hot and unctuous in qualities.
- * It is better to extract the blood vitiated by *pitta* by means of leach application as it is having cold in nature.
- * Blood vitiated by *kapha* can be extracted by *ālābū* as it consists sharp and hot qualities.

JALAUKĀVACĀRANA

जलमासामायुरिति जलायुक्ताः ।

'*Jalaukā*' the term may be applicable to leaches as they are born in water and also get their nutrition from water.

Indications:

जलौकसस्तु सुखिनां रक्तस्वावाय योजयेत् ।

Blood-letting by means of leach application is specially indicated to those who are leading a happy life and the delicate persons such as kings, wealthy persons, who are having fear towards therapies, children, aged, women and those having *pitta* constitution.



Jalauka

Features of poisonous leaches:

दुष्टाम्बुमत्स्यभेकाहिशब्दकोथमलोद्धवाः ॥३५॥

रक्ताः श्वेता भृशं कृष्णाश्वपलाः स्थूलपिच्छिलाः । इन्द्रायुधविचित्रोर्धर्वराजयो रोमशाश्वताः ॥३६॥

सविषा वर्जयेत् ताभिः कण्डूपाकज्वरभ्रमाः । विषपित्तास्वनुत्कार्यं तत्र—

Types of leaches:

Leaches are of two kinds viz.—

- (a) poisonous and (b) non-poisonous.

Leaches born in mud and water contaminated by putrefied animals like fish, frog, snake etc. or with the excreta of those animals and those, which are red, white or blackish in colour unsteady thick and slimy in nature, which have rainbow coloured lines on their back and hairy are known as poisonous leaches, and should be discarded for therapeutic use.

Complications of poisonous leach application and their management:

If the poisonous leaches are used for blood-letting, they produce itching, ulceration, fever, giddiness etc. Treat those symptoms with antipoisonous drugs as well as with those are useful to mitigate pitta and raka.

Notes:

The another of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha in the 35th chapter of Sūtra-sthāna has given the details of the features of six types of poisonous leaches as follows:

1. *Kṛṣṇa* : It is of the color of black collyrium and has a broad head.
2. *Karburā* : It is as long as an eel with elevated stripes across the abdomen.
3. *Alagardā* : It looks as if covered with hair and has large sides and black mouth.
4. *Indrāyudhā* : It has rainbow colored longitudinal stripes on the back.
5. *Sāmudrikā* : It is of dark yellow color and has variegated flower like spots on its body.
6. *Gocandanā* : It has a bifurcated tail like the scrotum of a bull and a small mouth.

Features of non-poisonous leaches:

—शुद्धाम्बुजाः पुनः ||3 7||

निर्विषाः शैवलश्यावा वृत्ता नीलोर्धर्वराजयः | कषायपृष्ठास्तन्वङ्ग्यः किञ्चित्पीतोदराश्च याः ||3 8||

Those born in clean water, and which are bluish in color like algae, round shaped, having orange colored sides and bluish black lines on the back and slightly yellowish coloured abdomen are non-poisonous.

Notes:

Similar to poisonous leaches 6 types of non-poisonous leaches have been described by the author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha as under.

1. *Kapilā* : It has its two sides of the color of orpiment and on its back, it is smooth and of the color of a green pea.
2. *Pīngalā* : It is of a reddish brown color has a rounded body and moves quickly.
3. *Śaṅkumukhī* : It is of the color of the liver, sucks quickly and has a long sharp mouth.
4. *Mūṣikā* : It has a shape and color of a rats tail and emits foul smell.
5. *Puñḍarīka* : It is of the color of a green pea and has a mouth like a lotus.
6. *Sāvarikā* : It is slimy, colored green like a lotus leaf and 8 inches in length.
It is to be used in veterinary practice.

Measurement of leaches:

The maximum length of the leaches may be 18 inches. Generally leaches having 4 to 6 inches can be used for human beings and the rest are indicated for animals like elephants, horses etc., for blood letting.

Collection and preservation of leaches:

- * Leaches should be collected in autumn season by wearing gloves and should be kept in earthenware or wide opened bottle consisting of water. The water has to be changed for every 2 to 3 days.
- * Feed them with tubers and tubes of lotus, algae, dry fish, mutton etc.
- * After 7 days replace the leaches into another new container.

Leaches to be discarded for therapeutic use:

ता अप्यसम्यग्वमनात् प्रततं च निपातनात् । सीदन्तीः सलिलं प्राप्य रक्तमत्ता इति त्वजेत् ॥३ ९ ॥

Though leaches are non-poisonous they should not be used in the following conditions:

- When they do not vomit the blood completely.
- When they are applied frequently.
- Whenever they are sluggish, even after putting them into water.

Jalaukāvacāraṇa-vidhi (Procedure of leach application):

अथेतरा निशाकल्कयुक्तेऽध्यसि परिष्कृताः । अवन्तिसोमे तक्रे वा पुनश्चाश्रसिता जले ॥४ ० ॥

लागयेदद्यृतमृत्सन्धरक्तशखनिपातनैः । पिबन्तीरुक्तस्कन्धाश्छादयेन्मृदुवाससा ॥४ १ ॥

- * Afterwards select the suitable leaches which are non-poisonous and keep them for a while in a bottle containing the water mixed with turmeric paste or *avanti soma* (sour gruel—prepared by fermenting rice water) or butter milk and then put into pure water to make them comfortable.
- * Rub the place of leach application with the powder of dry cake of cow dung and apply the leach.
- * If the leach doesn't catch the place, pour one or two drops of ghee, mud, breast milk, blood etc., or give a small incision.
- * When it starts sucking blood it should be covered with a soft cloth soaked in cold water.

Sucking of vitiated blood:

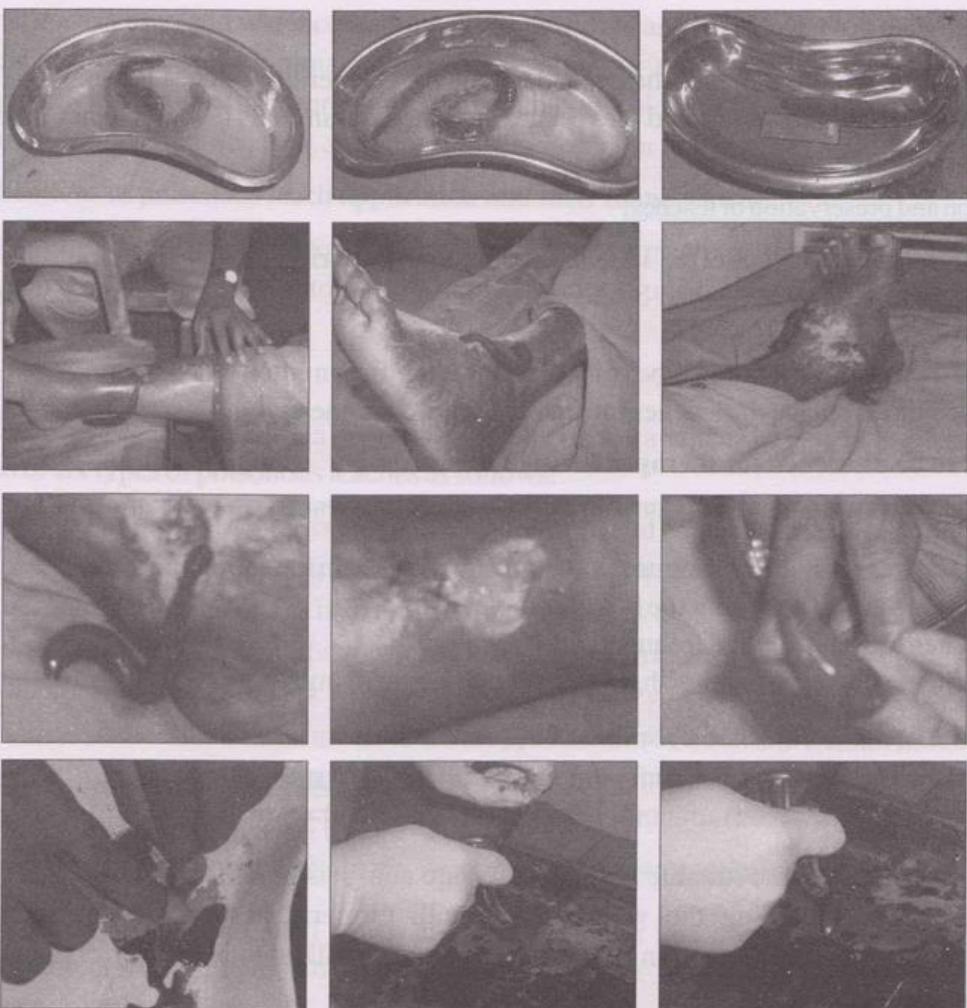
समृक्ताददुष्टशुद्धास्वाज्जलौका दुष्टशोणितम् । आदत्ते प्रथमं हंसः क्षीरं क्षीरोदकादिव ॥४ २ ॥

(गुल्माशोविद्रधीन् कुष्ठवातरक्तगलामयान् । नेत्ररुग्विषवीसर्पन् शमयन्ति जलौकसः ॥१ ॥)

The leaches will suck only vitiated blood from the body, similar to the swan that drinks only milk from a mixture of milk and water.

(Due to the application of leaches the patients will get relief from *gulma*, *arśas*, *vidradhi*, *kuṣṭha*, *vātarakta*, *galaroga*, *netra vedanā*, *viṣa vikāra* and *visarpa*).

Leach
with
salt
and
oil
and
then
press
the
body
in
the
downward
direction
to
make
the
leach
vomit
the
sucked
blood
and
then
wash
the
body
with
water
and
then
dry
it
with
fine
rice
flour.



Jalaukāvacāraṇa-vidhi

Moment to remove the leach:

दंशस्य तोदे कण्डवां वा मोक्षयेत् वामयेच्च ताम् । पटुतैलाक्तवदनां श्लक्षणकण्डनरूपिताम् ॥4 3 ॥

- * Pricking pain and itching present at the site of leach application indicates that the leach is sucking pure blood and then the leach should be removed.
- * Then make the leach to vomit the sucked in blood by applying salt and oil to its mouth and also by pressing the body in the downward direction after smearing them with fine rice flour.

Action to be taken to protect from blood intoxication:

रक्षन् रक्तमदाद्युयः सप्ताहं ता न पातयेत् ।

- * After that preserve the leaches in the water of earthenware or a glass bottle.

* The leach once used cannot be used up to seven days and should be protected from blood intoxication.

Features of proper, excessive and insufficient vomiting:

पूर्ववत् पटुता दाढ़ी समग्रान्ते जलौकसाम् ॥४ ४ ॥

क्लमोदतियोगान्मृत्युर्बादुवान्ते स्तब्धता मदः ।

If the leach vomits the blood completely it moves freely in water and its appetite is also increased. If vomits excessively, they become very weak or may even die. If it is not moving in the water or moving sluggishly indicate that the blood was not vomited completely. Then it should be made to vomit again.

Method of preservation:

अन्यत्रान्यत्र ताः स्थाप्य घटे मृत्सनाम्बुगर्भिणि ॥४ ५ ॥

लालादिकोथनाशार्थं, सविषा: स्युस्तदन्वयात् ।

The leaches put in a container may become poisonous by consuming saliva, urine and faeces of their own. Hence to protect them, they should be transferred in to another containers having fresh water and mud etc. for every 3 or 5 days.

Management of bleeding:

अशुद्धौ स्रावयेदंशान् हरिद्रागुडमाक्षिकैः ॥४ ६ ॥

शतधौताज्यपिचवस्ततो लेपाश्च शीतलाः ।

If there is any residual impure blood at the site of leach application, rub it with turmeric powder, honey and jaggery.

Then wash the area with cold water and apply gauze piece or cotton soaked in *śatadhouta ghṛta* or pastes prepared from *śīta vīrya dravyas* such as *yaṣṭimadhu*, *candana*, *uśīra* etc.

Effects of blood-letting:

दुष्टरक्तापगमनात् सद्यो रागसूजां शमः ॥४ ७ ॥

With the removal of vitiated blood, pain and redness will be subsided immediately after the process of bloodletting.

Need of bloodletting for a second time:

अशुद्धं चलितं स्थानात्स्थितं रक्तं ब्रणाशये । व्याम्लीभवेत्पर्युषितं तस्मात्तत्त्वावयेत्युनः ॥४ ८ ॥

The vitiated blood is being moved from its place and stagnated deep in to the wound and becomes sour by over night. Hence it should be let out for a second time.

Quantity of blood to be extracted:

- Maximum dose is 1 *prastha* or 768 ml.
- Medium dose is $\frac{1}{2}$ *prastha* or 384 ml.
- Minimum dose is $\frac{1}{4}$ *prastha* or 192 ml.

Suitable condition for the application of ālābu and ghaṭī yantra:

युज्यान्नालाबुघटिका रक्ते पित्तेन दूषिते । तासामनलसंयोगात् युज्यात् कफवायुना ॥4 9 ॥

- * Ālābu and ghaṭī yantra should not be used for bloodletting whenever pitta is predominantly vitiated, as the process is involving with agni.
- * Hence ālābu and ghaṭī yantra are indicated for kapha and vāta disorders.

Suitable condition for the application of śrīṅga yantra:

कफेन दुष्टं रुधिरं न शृङ्गेण विनिहीत् । स्कन्धत्वात् वातपित्ताभ्यां दुष्टं शृङ्गेण निहीत् ॥5 0 ॥

Śrīṅga should not be used to aspirate the blood vitiated by kapha because of the thickness of the blood. But it can be aspirated by means of śrīṅga whenever vāta and pitta vitiate the blood.

Notes:

The author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha has given the details about the process of bloodletting by means of śrīṅga, ālābu and ghaṭī yantra as follows (A.S. Sū. 35):

Śrīṅgāvacāraṇa:

- * Application of horns of cow, buffalo etc. to aspirate vitiated blood from the body is known as Śrīṅgāvacāraṇa.
- * Horn is of 7 inches length, and the circumference is of a thumb size and black gram size at the base and tip respectively.
- * Before starting the procedure, give a small incision at the place from where the blood is to be aspirated and allow the blood to flow for some time. Then apply horn on the part after wrapping a clean cloth at the base. After that, aspirate the blood from the tip of the horn with mouth.

Ālābū:

- * Generally it is known as *tumbī*.
- * Take the medium sized fruit, cut the stalk region and then remove the pulp and use the shell for blood letting.
- * Lit a lamp or a cotton piece and put it inside the fruit.
- * Then give a small incision and apply this gourd by approximating the edges of the mouth so closely that no atmospheric air enters into it.
- * The lamp will be off after exhausting the oxygen inside the fruit and vacuum will be formed, which will be helpful to suck the blood from the body.
- * After 10-15 minutes remove the gourd and apply *jātyādi ghṛta* and then bandage with sterile cloth.

Ghaṭī yantra:

The method of application is similar to *alābū*.

Pracchāna:

गात्रं बद्धोपरि दृढं रज्ज्वा पट्टेन वा समम् । स्नायुसन्ध्यस्थिमर्माणि त्यजन् प्रच्छानमाचरेत् ॥5 1 ॥

अधोदेशप्रविसृतैः पदैरुपरिगामिभिः । न गाढघनतिर्यग्भर्न पदे पदमाचरन् ॥५ २ ॥

- * A long cloth piece or a rope or a leather strap is to be tied above the part of the body, where it is selected for venesection.
- * Care should be taken while conducting venesection by avoiding the places such as tendons, joints and vital points.
- * Incision should be given from downward to upward direction only.
- * Incision should not be too deep, too wide and horizontal (sideways).

Different types of blood-letting in different conditions:

प्रच्छानेनैकदेशस्थं ग्रथितं जलजन्मभिः । हरेच्छृङ्गादिभिः सुप्तमसृग्व्यापि शिराव्यधैः ॥५ ३ ॥

प्रच्छानं पिण्डते वा स्यात् अवगाढे जलौकसः । त्वकस्थेऽलाबुधीशृङ्गं शिरैव व्यापकेऽसृजि ॥५ ४ ॥
वातादिधाम वा शृङ्गजलौकोलाबुधिः क्रमात् ।

- * *Pracchāna* is indicated to drain the accumulated blood from a particular point.
- * Deep-seated blood can be extracted with the help of leach application.
- * To drain the vitiated blood, which has settled in different layers of the skin, *śrīga*, *ālābu* and *ghaṭī yantra* will be useful.
- * Venepuncture is advised whenever vitiated blood circulates in the body.
- * *Śrīga*, *jalouka* and *ālābu* are especially indicated for *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* disorders respectively.

Complications and their management:

स्तुतासृजः प्रदेहादैः शीतैः स्याद्वायुकोपतः ॥५ ५ ॥

सतोदकपण्डः शोफस्तं सर्पिषोष्णेन सेचयेत् ।

After the completion of the process of blood letting, if the cold pastes are applied on the region, *vāta* will be gets aggravated and develops pricking pain, itching and swelling etc. Hence pouring warm ghee over the affected part is advised.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वारभट्टविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने शस्त्रविधिर्नाम षड्विंशोऽध्यायः ॥१२६ ॥

Thus ends the twenty-sixth chapter entitled *Śatra-vidhi Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Samhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa has been explained various types of surgical instruments in detail. 26 sharp instruments and their functions, their description; accessory instruments like *śrīga*, *ālābu*, *jaloukā* etc. have been discussed.

27 SIRĀVYADHA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[Venesection]



अथातः सिराव्यधविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Sastra-vidhi Adhyāya*’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Sirāvyadha-vidhi*’ (Venesection), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

(In the previous chapter blood letting with accessory instruments have been discussed such as leach, horn, gourd and pot etc.

In the present chapter blood letting with the help of sharp instruments along with pre-operative and post-operative care has been discussed.)

SIRĀVYADHA (VENESECTION)

Importance of venesection:

There are a number of techniques for blood-letting, which were described earlier. Among them, and in the therapies like purgation, venesection occupies the most important place for the management of curable diseases.

As the water comes out and the plants die on cutting the borders of the field, vitiated blood comes out and automatically the diseases will be cured on performing venesection.

As far as Kāyacikitsā is concerned *vasti karma* is an important therapeutic procedure, because almost all the curable diseases can be cured with the help of the same. Similarly *sirāvedhana* occupies a unique position in Śalya-tantra as it can manage a number of diseases.

Blood is the seat for the diseases, which were caused by the vitiation of the blood and hence venesection is the first line of treatment suggested.

Features of pure blood:

मधुरं लवणं किञ्चिदशीतोष्णामसंहतम् । पद्मेन्द्रगोपहेमाविशशलोहितलोहितम् ॥१॥
लोहितं प्रभवः शुद्धं, तनोस्तेनैव च स्थितिः ।

- * Pure blood is sweet and slightly salt in taste, neither too cold nor hot and liquid.
- * Its color resembles as follows:
 - Padma* (lotus flower), *indragopa* (bright red insect), *hema* (*mañjisthā*) (*rubia cordifolia*), *avi*, *śaśa lohita lohitam* (resembling the blood of sheep and hare).
- * Such blood is known as pure blood and it keeps the body healthy.
- * The blood formed due to the in take of wholesome food cause, strength, color, complexion, happiness and longe-vity of the body.

Diseases caused by vitiation of blood:

तत्पित्तश्लेष्मलैः प्रायो दूष्यते कुरुते ततः ॥१२॥

विसर्पविद्रधिप्लीहगुल्माग्निसदनज्वरान् । मुखनेत्रशिरोगमदत्तिलवणास्यता: ॥१३॥

कुष्ठवातास्वपित्तास्वकट्वम्लोद्धिरणभ्रमान् । शीतोष्णसिंग्धरुक्षादैरुपक्रान्ताश्च ये गदा: ॥१४॥

सम्यक्साध्या न सिद्ध्यन्ति ते च रक्तप्रकोपजा: ।

Due to the intake of opposite qualities of the substances and also the nature of autumn season (*sarad ritu*), the blood gets vitiated by *pitta* and *kapha* and causes the following disorders.

Visarpa (herpes), *vidradhi* (abscess), *plihā* (enlargement of spleen), *gulma* (tumor), *agnisadana* (decreased power of digestion), *jwara* (fever), *mukha*, *netra*, *śiroroga* (diseases of mouth, eyes and head), *madātyaya* (alcoholic toxicity), *trṣṇā* (thirst), *lavaṇāsyatā* (salty taste in the mouth), *kuṣṭha* (skin disorders), *vātarakta* (gout), *raktapitta* (bleeding disorders), *kaṭu* and *amlodgāra* (pungent and sour eructation), *bhrama* (giddiness).

If the curable diseases are not responded even after the administration of the suitable drugs having the properties like hot, cold, dry, unctuous etc; it can be inferred that the person is suffering from the disease born by the vitiation of blood.

तेषु स्थावयितुं रक्तमुद्रित्तं व्यधयेत्सिराम् ॥१५॥

In order to drain out the vitiated blood venesection is to be conducted for the management of such diseases born by blood.

Contraindications for venesection:

न तूनघोडशातीतसप्तत्यब्दस्तुतासृजाम् । अस्तिंग्धास्वेदितात्यर्थस्वेदितानिलरोगिणाम् ॥१६॥

गर्भीणीसूतिकाजीर्णपित्तास्वश्वासकासिनाम् । अतीसारोदरच्छर्दिपाण्डुसर्वाङ्गशोफिनाम् ॥१७॥

स्नेहपीते प्रयुक्तेषु तथा पञ्चसु कर्मसु । नायन्त्रितां सिरां विध्येन्न तिर्यङ्ग्नुत्थिताम् ॥१८॥

नातिशीतोष्णवाताख्येष्वन्यत्रात्ययिकाद्वदात् ।

Except in an emergency venesection should not be done to the following:

- * Those who are having less than 16 years and above 70 years age.
- * Those who have undergone bloodletting therapy.
- * Without oleation and sudation.
- * Excessive sudation.
- * Those suffering from *vāta* disorders.
- * Pregnant woman, postnatal period.
- * Indigestion, bleeding disorders.
- * Cough and dyspnoea.
- * Diarrhoea, ascitis, vomiting, anemia, anasarca.
- * Immediately after *snehapāna* and *śodhana* therapy etc. are contraindicated for venesection.
- * Never give incision—to the contraindicated, where the proximal part is not tied, where the veins are not bulged and in the transverse direction.

* Venesection is not advised in mid summer, winter and rainy season, when the sky is cloudy.

Site of venesection in various diseases:

शिरोनेत्रविकारेषु ललाट्यां मोक्षयेत्सिराम् ॥१॥
 अपाङ्ग्न्यामुपनास्यां वा कर्णरोगेषु कर्णजाम् । नासारोगेषु नासाग्रे स्थितां नासाललाट्योः ॥१०॥
 पीनसे मुखरोगेषु जिह्वौष्ठहनुतालुगः । जत्रूर्ध्वग्रन्थिश्च ग्रीवाकर्णशङ्खशिरःश्रिताः ॥११॥
 उरोपाङ्गललाटस्था उन्मादेऽपस्मृतौ पुनः । हनुसन्धौ समस्ते वा शिरां भूमध्यगामिनीम् ॥१२॥
 विद्रध्यै पार्श्वशूले च पार्श्वकक्षास्तनात्तरे । तृतीयकेऽसयोर्मध्ये स्कन्धस्याधश्तुर्थके ॥१३॥
 प्रवाहिकायां शूलिन्यां श्रोणितो द्व्यडङ्गुले स्थिताम् । शुक्रमेद्रामये मेद्रे ऊरुगां गलगण्डयोः ॥१४॥
 गृधस्यां जानुनोऽधस्तादूर्ध्वं वा चतुरडङ्गुले । इन्द्रबस्तेरधोऽपच्यां द्व्यडङ्गुले चतुरडङ्गुले ॥१५॥
 ऊर्ध्वं गुल्फस्य सकर्थर्ता, तथा क्रोष्टकशीर्षके । पाददाहे खुडे हृषे विपाद्यां वातकण्टके ॥१६॥
 चिप्पे च द्व्यडङ्गुले विद्येदुपरि क्षिप्रमर्मणः । गृधस्यामिव विश्वाच्यां यथोक्तानामदर्शने ॥१७॥
 मर्महीने यथासन्ने देशेऽन्यां व्यधयेत् सिराम् ।

Table showing the site of venesection in various diseases

Name of the disease	Site of venesection
<i>Siro roga, netra roga</i>	Veins situated near the forehead or nose or outer angle of the eye.
<i>Karṇa roga</i>	Veins near the ears.
<i>Nāsā roga</i>	Vein at the tip of the nose.
<i>Pīnasa</i>	Nose and forehead.
<i>Mukha roga</i>	Veins near the tongue, lips, palate, maxillary region.
<i>Jatrūrdhvā granthi</i>	Neck, ear and head.
<i>Unmāda</i>	Chest, forehead, outer angle of eyes.
<i>Apasmāra</i>	Vein at the junction of lower jaw, or veins spread all over the jaw or the vein located in between the eye brows.
<i>Vidradhi & pārśwa śūla</i>	Viens located in the flanks, axillary region and in between the breast.
<i>Trītiyakajvara</i>	Middle of shoulders.
<i>Cāturthikajvara</i>	Below the shoulder.
<i>Pravāhikā with pain</i>	2 inches away from pelvis.
<i>Śukra roga & medhā roga (upadaṁśa)</i>	Penis region.
<i>Galagaṇḍa</i>	Thigh region.
<i>Gṛdhrasī</i>	4 inches above or below the knee joint.
<i>Apacī</i>	2 inches below <i>indra vasti marma</i> .
<i>Sakthi piḍā & kroṣṭukaśīrsa</i>	4 inches above the ankle.
<i>Pādadāha, khuḍa (vātarakta) pādaharṣa, vipādikā, vātakāṇṭaka, cippa</i>	2 inches above <i>kṣipra marma</i> .
<i>Viśvacī</i>	Similar to <i>gṛdhrasī</i> .

If anyone of the veins so far mentioned are not visible, another vein located nearby the site, and which is devoid of vital points can be selected for venesection.

Procedure of venesection:

अथ स्निग्धतनुः सज्जसर्वोपकरणो बली ॥1 8॥

कृतस्वस्त्ययनः स्निग्धरसात्रप्रतिभोजितः । अग्नितापातपस्त्रिव्वत्रो जानूच्चासनसंस्थितः ॥1 9॥

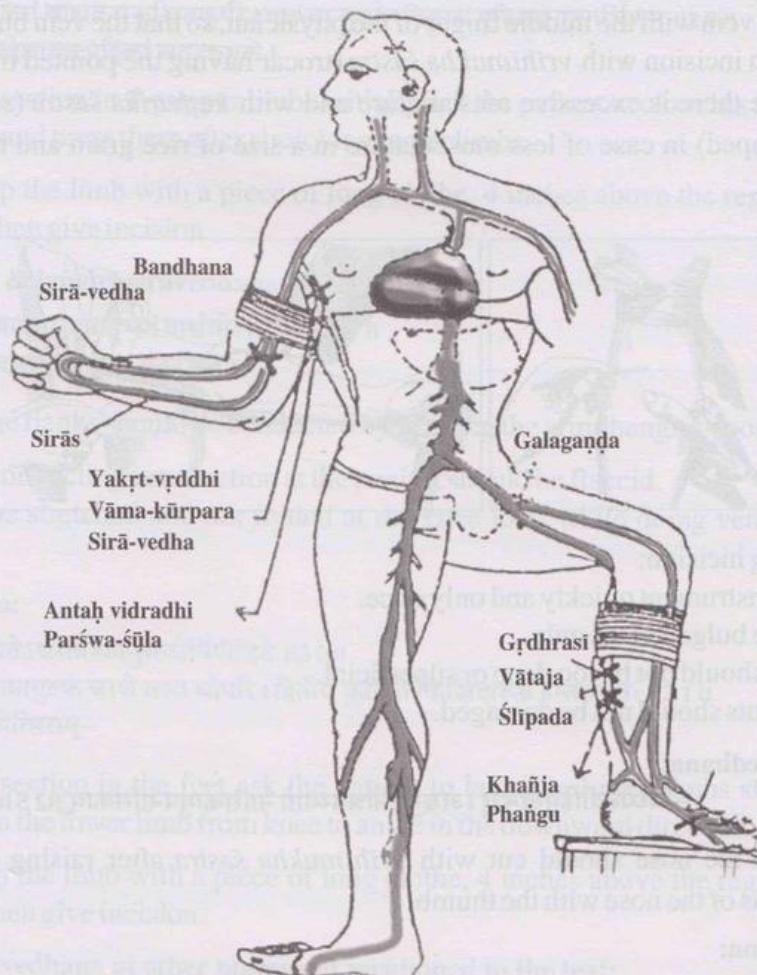
मृदुपट्टात्केशान्तो जानुस्थापितकूर्परः । मुष्ठिभ्यां वस्त्रगर्भभ्यां मन्ये गाढं निपीडयेत् ॥2 0॥

दन्तप्रीडनोत्कासगण्डाधमानानि चाचरेत् । पृष्ठतो यन्त्रयेच्चैवं वस्त्रमावेष्टयन्नरः ॥2 1॥

कन्धरायां परिक्षिप्य न्यस्यान्तर्वामितर्जनीम् । एषोऽन्तर्मुखवर्ज्यानां सिराणां यन्त्रणे विधिः ॥2 2॥

* Before going to proceed for venesection, the patient must undergo oleation therapy, and then procure the required equipment, instruments, drugs as well as antidotes.

* Afterwards perform spiritual rites and give unctuous food and mutton juice.



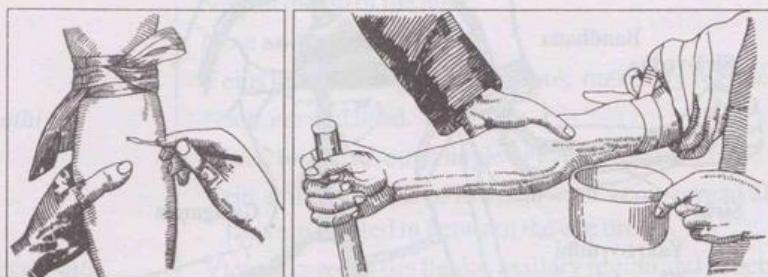
Sites of venesection

- * Then conduct mild sudation by exposing to sunlight or fire.
- * Then ask the patient to sit on a stool of knee height and cover his head with a cap, and instruct him to keep his elbows on the knee joints.
- * Then massage the neck briskly with fists in which pad of cloth is held. Simultaneously ask the patients for grinding the teeth, coughing and inflating the mouth.
- * Then the trunk should be wound with a band of cloth.
- * Afterwards a long cloth piece will be tied around the neck of the patient by keeping the index finger of the attendant in between the cloth piece and *krkātikā marma*.

Method of giving incision:

ततो मध्यमयाऽङ्गुल्या वैद्योऽङ्गुष्ठविमुक्तया । ताडयेत् उत्थितां ज्ञात्वा स्पर्शाद्वाऽङ्गुष्ठपीडनैः ॥२ ३ ॥
 कुठार्या लक्षयेन्मध्ये वायहस्तगृहीतया । फलोदेशो सुनिष्कम्पं सिरां, तद्वच्च मोक्षयेत् ॥२ ४ ॥
 ताडयन् पीडयंश्चैनां-

- * Then tap the vein with the middle finger of the physician, so that the vein bulges.
- * Then give an incision with *vrīhīmukha ūstra* (trocar having the pointed tip in a shape of a grain) where there is excessive musculature and with *kuthārikā ūstra* (small instrument with axe shaped) in case of less musculature in a size of rice grain and half of the grain respectively.



- * While giving incision:

- Use the instrument quickly and only once.
- Incise the bulged veins only.
- Incision should not be too deep or superficial.
- Vital points should not be damaged.

Upanāśikā sirāvedhana:

-विध्येद्वीहिमुखेन तु । अङ्गुष्ठेनोत्तमस्याग्रे नासिकामुपनासिकाम् ॥२ ५ ॥

The vein nearer the nose should cut with *vrīhīmukha ūstra* after raising the tip and the surrounding areas of the nose with the thumb.

Jihwā sirāvedhana:

अभ्युत्रतविदष्टाग्रजिह्वस्याधस्तदाश्रयाम् ।

The vein beneath the tongue should cut after raising and holding the tongue in between the two rows of the teeth of the patient.

Grīvā sirāvedhana:

यन्त्रयेत्तनयोरुद्धर्वं ग्रीवाश्रितसिराव्यधे ॥२ ६ ॥
पाणाणगर्भहस्तस्य जानुस्थे प्रसुते भुजे । कुक्षेराभ्य मृदिते विध्येद्धद्वार्धपट्टके ॥२ ७ ॥

To conduct venesection in the neck region initially tie-up chest above the breasts with a piece of long clothe, so that the vein bulges.

Afterwards ask the patient to hold stones in his fists and press them after stretching upper limbs.

Then do gentle massage on the body starting from abdomen to the neck and then give incision.

Bāhu sirāvedhana:

विध्येद्धस्तशिरां बाहावनाकुञ्जितकूपे । बद्ध्वा सुखोपविष्टस्य मुष्टिमङ्गुहगर्भिणम् ॥२ ८ ॥
ऊर्ध्वं वेध्यप्रदेशाच्च पट्टिकां चतुरडगुले ।

To conduct venesection in the upper limbs initially ask the patient to close his fists by keeping the thumb inside and press them after stretching upper limbs.

Afterwards tie-up the limb with a piece of long clothe, 4 inches above the region, so that the vein bulges and then give incision.

Pārśwa, mehana & jaṅghā sirāvedhana:

विध्येदालम्बमानस्य बाहुभ्यां पार्श्वयोः सिराम् ॥२ ९ ॥
प्रहृष्टे मेहने जङ्घासिरां जानुन्यकुञ्जिते ।

Venesection in the flanks should be conducted by keeping the arms hanging loose.

Similarly while conducting venesection at the penis it should be flaccid.

The leg should be stretched and not folded at the knee joint while doing venesection in the region of calves.

Pāda sirāvedhana:

पादे तु सुस्थितेऽधस्ताज्जानुस्थेनिपीडिते ॥३ ० ॥
गाढं कराभ्यामागुल्फं चरणे तस्य चोपरि । द्वितीये कुञ्जिते किञ्चिदारुणे हस्तवत्ततः ॥३ १ ॥
बद्ध्वा विध्येत्पिराम्-

To conduct venesection in the feet ask the patient to keep the lower limbs steady. Then do gentle massage on the lower limb from knee to ankle in the downward direction.

Afterwards tie-up the limb with a piece of long clothe, 4 inches above the region, so that the vein bulges and then give incision.

Procedure of sirāvedhana at other places not mentioned in the text:

-इत्थमनुक्तेष्वपि कल्पयेत् । तेषु तेषु प्रदेशेषु तत्त्वान्तरमुपायवित् ॥३ २ ॥

By knowing the method of conducting venesection at various places in the body with the above description, a wise physician can even perform venesection in other parts of the body by applying his mind.

Instrument differs with musculature:

मांसले निक्षिपेदेशे व्रीह्यास्यं व्रीहिमात्रकम् । यवार्धमस्थनामुपरि सिरां विध्यन् कुठारिकाम् ॥३ ३ ॥

Give an incision with *vrīhimukha śastra* (trocar having the pointed tip in a shape of a grain) where there is excessive musculature and with *kuthārikā śastra* (small instrument with axe shaped) in case of less musculature in a size of rice grain and half of the grain respectively.

Signs of proper, inadequate and excessive incision:

सम्यग्विद्धा स्ववेद्धारां यन्ते मुक्ते तु न स्ववेत् । अल्पकालं वहत्यल्पं, दुर्विद्धा तैलचूर्णनैः ॥३ ४ ॥

सशब्दमतिविद्धा तु स्ववेददुःखेन धार्यते ।

- * In proper incision, blood flows out steadily and stops when tourniquet is released.
- * If the incision is not adequate less quantity of blood flows freely for a short time. Hence to promote bleeding it should be rubbed with the mixture of oil and slaked lime.
- * Severe bleeding with sound occurs and stops with great difficulty will be seen in excessive incision.

Reasons for not flowing the blood freely even after giving proper incision:

भीमूर्च्छायन्त्रशैथिल्यकुण्ठशस्त्रातिरूपयः ॥३ ५ ॥

क्षामत्ववेगितास्वेदा रक्तस्यास्तुहेतवः ।

Fear, fainting, loose and tight tourniquet, over eating, debility, using blunt instruments, suppression of natural urges, without sudation therapy and the blockage of channels due to the vitiation of *kapha* etc.

Management:

असम्यग्से स्ववति वेल्व्योषिनिशान्तैः ॥३ ६ ॥

सागारधूमलवणतैलैर्द्विह्याच्छिरामुखम् । सम्यक्प्रवृत्ते कोष्णोन तैलेन लवणेन च ॥३ ७ ॥

When the blood is not flowing freely the drugs such as *vella*, *vyoṣa*, *niśā*, *nata/granthitagara* (*Valeriana wallichii*), *āgāra-dhūma* etc. should be mixed with sesame oil and rock salt and apply at the place of incision, so that the blood flows freely.

अग्रे स्ववति दुष्टान्म कुसुम्पादिव पीतिका । सम्यक्मुत्वा स्वयं तिष्ठेच्छुद्धं तदिति नाहरेत् ॥३ ८ ॥

Just like the yellowish latex of *svarnakṣīrī*, vitiated blood comes out and stops automatically which indicates the remaining is pure blood. Therefore further flow should not be done.

Complications and their management:

यन्त्रं विमुच्य मूर्च्छायां वीजिते व्यजनैः पुनः । स्वावयेन्मूर्च्छति पुनस्त्वपरेद्युर्घ्यहेऽपि वा ॥३ ९ ॥

- * During the process of venesection, if the patient faints, remove the tourniquet immediately and fan him.

- * After sometime the procedure can be continued.
- * If he faints again, stop the procedure and give rest for that day.
- * On the second or third day the process can be performed systematically.

Features of vitiated blood:

वाताच्छ्वावारुणं रूक्षं वेगस्वाव्यच्छफेनिलम् ।
पित्तात् पीतासितं विस्वमस्कन्द्यौष्यात्सचन्द्रिकम् ॥4 0॥
कफात् स्निग्धमसृक्प्याण्डु तन्तुमतिपिच्छिलं घनम् । संसृष्टलिङ्गं संसर्गात् त्रिदोषं मलिनाविलम् ॥4 1॥

- * Blood vitiated by *vāta* will be bluish or reddish in color, dry, flows out with force, clear and frothy.
- * Blood vitiated by *pitta* will be yellowish or black in color and has foul smell, thin and mixed with shiny particles.
- * Where as the blood vitiated by *kapha* will be unctuous, whitish, thread like, slimy and thick.
- * If it is vitiated by any of the two *doṣas* mixed features will be seen. If all the *tridoṣas* vitiate the blood, it looks like dirty and turbid.

Quantity of blood to be flown:

अशुद्धो बलिनोऽप्यस्तं न प्रस्थात्वावयेत्परम् । अतिश्वृतौ हि मृत्युः स्याद्वारुणा वा चलामया: ॥4 2॥
तत्राभ्यङ्गरसक्षीररक्तपानानि भेषजम् ।

- * Maximum quantity of blood to be flown is one *prastha* i.e. 768 ml.
- * It should not be allowed to flow more than the above-mentioned quantity, even in the strong persons other wise many a number of complications may arise, and death may also happen.

Management of the complications—*abhyanga* (oil massage), *rasa* (mutton soup), *kṣīra* (milk), oral administration of blood of animals like goat and sheep.

Note:

Even after the above methods the bleeding persists, thermal or chemical cauterization is indicated.

Pāscat karma:

सुते रक्ते शनैर्यन्त्रमपनीय हिमाम्बुना ॥4 3॥
प्रक्षाल्य तैलप्लोतात्तं बन्धनीयं सिरामुखम् ।

- * After the completion of the process:
 - Remove the tourniquet.
 - Wash the area with cold water.
 - Apply cotton swab soaked in oil.
 - And then apply a bandage.

Sirāvedhana for the second time:

अशुद्धं स्वावयेद्दूयः सायमह्यपरेऽपि वा ॥4 4॥
स्नेहोपस्कृतदेहस्य पक्षाद्वा भृशदूषितम् ।

- * If the vitiated blood remains in side the body it should be eliminated on the evening of same day or on the next day morning.
- * To remove the vitiated blood by venesection for the second time at least 15 days interval is essential. It should be conducted after oleation.

Caution regarding sirāvedhana:

किञ्चिद्दिन शेषे दुष्टासे नैव रोगोऽतिवर्तते ॥४ ५ ॥
सशेषमप्यतो धार्य न चातिस्थुतिमाचरेत् ।

If a little quantity of vitiated blood persists inside the body and is not creating any complications one need not be worried about such condition. One should not attempt to flush more than the maximum quantity.

Measures to treat residual blood:

होच्छङ्गादिभिः शेषम् प्रसादमथवा नयेत् ॥४ ६ ॥
शीतोपचारपित्तास्त्रक्रियाशुद्धिविशेषैः । दुष्टं रक्तमनुद्रिक्तमेवमेव प्रसादयेत् ॥४ ७ ॥

Such residual blood also can be expelled by means of *sringāvacāraṇa* (application of horn *ālābū*, *ghaṭīyantra*, cold treatments, treatment of *rakta-pitta*, purificator, therapies like *vamai-virecana* etc. and by means of *viśoṣaṇa* (by fasting).

Drugs required to stop bleeding:

रक्ते त्वतिष्ठति क्षिप्रं स्तम्भनीमाचरेक्रियाम् । रोधप्रियङ्गुपतङ्गमाषयष्ट्याहूरैकैः ॥४ ८ ॥
मृत्कपालञ्जनक्षौमषीक्षीरित्वगङ्गकुरैः । विचूर्णयेद्रवणमुखं पद्मकादिहिमं पिबेत् ॥४ ९ ॥
तामेव वा सिरां विध्येदव्यधात्तस्मादनन्तरम् । सिरामुखं वा त्वरितं दहेतप्तशलाकया ॥५ ० ॥

Powders of—*lodhra* (*Symplocos racemosa*), *priyangu* (*Callicarpa macrophylla*), *pattaṅg* (*rakta candana* (*Pterocarpus santalinus*)), *māṣa* (*Phaseolus mungo*), *yaṣṭi/madhūka* (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), *gairika/red ochre* (*Ferrum haematite*), *mṛkapāla* (pot shred), *rasāñjana* (prepared from the decoction of *Berberis aristata*) and *kṣouma masi* (ash of silk cloth). Barks and tender leaves of *kṣīrvirkṣa* and cold infusions of *padmakādigaṇa* drugs (vide chapter 15) should be administered internally.

Cut the same vein again or give incision nearer to the first one.

Thermal or chemical cauterization.

Diet regimen:

उन्मार्गगा यन्त्रनिपीडनेन स्वस्थानमायान्ति पुनर्न यावत् ।
दोषाः प्रदुष्टा रुधिरं प्रपत्नास्तावद्धिताहारविहारभाक् स्यात् ॥५ १ ॥

Due to the tourniquet, *doṣas* takes deviation of their usual path and mixed with the vitiated blood. Hence wholesome regimen and diet should be followed till the *doṣas* reach their original site.

नात्युष्णाशीतं लघु दीपनीयं रक्तेऽपनीते हितमन्नपानम् ।
दा शरीरं ह्यनवस्थितासुगम्निर्विशेषादिति रक्षितव्यः ॥५ २ ॥

As the body is unstable in its quantity of blood and digestive activity, after performing venesection, the following specific diet is to be given, to protect them.

Diet should not be too hot and too cold; it should be light and stimulate the power of digestion.

Features of the persons having pure blood:

प्रसन्नवर्णेन्द्रियमिन्द्रियार्थानिच्छन्तमव्याहतपक्वेगम् ।
सुखान्वितं पुष्टिबलोपपन्नं विशुद्धरक्तं पुरुषं वदन्ति ॥५ ३ ॥

Excellence of the color and complexion, sharpness of sense organs and good reception of objects, having unobstructed digestive activity, enjoyment of comforts endowed with nourishment and strength etc. are the features of the persons having pure blood.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने शिराव्यधविधिनाम सप्तविंशोऽध्यायः ॥१२७ ॥

Thus ends the twenty-seventh chapter entitled *Sirāvyadha vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Sirinagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the procedure of venesection in detail; importance of venesection; features of blood and the importance; diseases caused by the vitiation of blood; time to conduct venesection; contraindications; site of venesection in various diseases; drugs required to control bleeding; procedure of venesection; signs of proper, inadequate and excessive incision; reasons for not flowing the blood freely even after giving proper incision; complications and their management etc. have been discussed.



28 ŚALYĀHARĀNA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[*Removal of Foreign Bodies*]



अथातः शल्याहरणविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Siravyadha-vidhi*’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Śalyāharāna-vidhi*’ (Removal of Foreign Bodies), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Śalyagati (Directions of the movement of foreign bodies):

वक्रजुर्तिर्यगूर्ध्वाधः शल्यानां पञ्चाधा गतिः ।

The directions of the movement of the foreign bodies are five in number.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Vakra gati</i> (curved direction) | 4. <i>Urdhva gati</i> (upward direction) |
| 2. <i>Rju gati</i> (straight direction) | 5. <i>Adhogati</i> (downward direction) |
| 3. <i>Tiryak gati</i> (horizontal direction) | |

They are of again two types such as straight and curved.

FEATURES OF THE WOUNDS HAVING A FOREIGN BODY

General features:

ध्यामं शोफरुजावन्तं स्ववन्तं शोणितं मुहः ॥१॥

अभ्युद्रुतं बुद्धुदवत्पिटिकोपचितं व्रणम् । मृदुमांसं च जानीयादन्तःशल्यं समासतः ॥२॥

The wound which is dirty, with clots, swelling, pain, bleeding often, raised to that of a bubble soft musculature are the features of the wounds having a foreign body.

Special features of twakgata śalya lakṣaṇa:

विशेषात्त्वगते शल्ये विवरणः कठिनायतः । शोफो भवति-

Discoloration of the skin, hard and large swelling indicates that the foreign body is located in the skin.

Māṁsagata śalya lakṣaṇa:

-मांसस्थे चोषः शोफो विवर्द्धते ॥३॥

पीडनाक्षमता पाकः शल्यमार्गो न रोहति । पेश्यन्तरगते मांसप्राप्तवच्छ्वयथुं विना ॥४॥

If the foreign body is in the muscles—severe swelling, not healing the wound of the route of the entry of the foreign body, unable to bear the pressure, burning sensation and ulceration etc. will be seen. If it is deep in the muscles all the above symptoms except the swelling is present.

Snāyugata śalya lakṣaṇa:

आक्षेपः स्नायुजालस्य संरम्भस्तम्भवेदनाः । स्नायुगे दुर्हरं चैतत्-

If the foreign body is in the tendons, constriction of the tendons, uneasiness, stiffness and severe pain will be present. It is not so easy to remove the foreign body, when it is deeply seated in the tendons.

Sirāgata śalya lakṣaṇa:

-सिराध्मानं सिराश्रिते ॥5॥

Swelling of the veins and pain will be present if the foreign body is in the veins.

Srotogata śalya lakṣaṇa:

स्वकर्मगुणहनिः स्यात्स्वोतसां स्रोतसि स्थिते ।

If the foreign body is present in the channels, they cannot perform the normal functions.

Dhamanigata śalya lakṣaṇa:

धमनीस्थेऽनिलो रक्तं फेनयुक्तमुदीरयेत् ॥6॥

निर्याति शब्दवान् स्याच्च हल्लासः साङ्घवेदनः ।

Foreign body is in the arteries:

- Forceful bleeding due to *vāta* with sound and froth.
- Severe pain all over the body.
- Oppression in the chest will be present.

Asthī-sandhigata śalya lakṣaṇa:

सङ्घर्षो बलवानस्थिसन्धिग्राह्येऽस्थिपूर्णता ॥7॥

If it is inside the bony joints, it causes the filling up of the bones, and severe friction is seen.

Asthigata śalya lakṣaṇa:

नैकरूपा रुजोऽस्थिस्थे शोफः:-

If it is in the bones different kinds of pains and swelling will be seen.

Sandhigata śalya lakṣaṇa:

-तद्वच्च सन्धिगे । चेष्टानिवृत्तिश्च भवेत्-

If the foreign body is in the joints, the symptoms of the bones will be observed along with obstruction of the movement of the joints.

Koṣṭhagata and marmagata śalya lakṣaṇas:

-आटोपः कोष्टसंश्रिते ॥8॥

आनाहोऽन्रशकृन्मूत्रदर्शनं च व्रणानने । विद्यान्मर्मगतं शल्यं मर्मविद्धोपलक्षणैः ॥9॥

If the foreign body is in the gastro intestinal tract, gurgling and distention of the abdomen and expulsion of urine, faeces and ingested food from the mouth of the wound.

If it is in the vital points, the features of their damage will be seen and also exudation etc. will be observed.

Loss of sensation, heaviness, fainting, desire to have cold substances, perspiration, epilepsy, vomiting, dyspnoea etc. is the symptoms of the damage of vital points.

यथास्वं च परिस्त्रावैस्त्वगादिषु विभावयेत् ।

Identification of the exact location of the foreign body lodged inside the body cannot be known simply by means of general signs and symptoms. It can be identified by knowing the specific symptoms mentioned for *kōṣṭha-gata*, *asthi-gata*, *sandhi-gata* *śalya* *lakṣaṇa* etc. and also from the discharges coming from the wounds of different areas.

रुह्यते शुद्धदेहानामनुलोमस्थितं तु तत् ॥1 0॥

दोषकोपाभिघातादिक्षिभाद्व्योऽपि बाधते ।

The foreign body, which enters in the downward direction, resembles a healed wound after performing purificatory procedures like emesis and purgation. As it is not healed properly, it produces severe distress again by exciting factors like aggravation of *dōṣas* and also due injury.

Identification of the site of the foreign body:

त्वङ्ग्नष्टे यत्र तत्र स्युरभ्यङ्गस्वेदमर्दनैः ॥1 1॥

रागरुदाहसंरम्भा यत्र चाज्यं विलीयते । आशु शुष्पति लेपो वा तत्स्थानं शाल्यवद्ववेत् ॥1 2॥

The exact site of the foreign body concealed in the skin can be indentified by the appearance of redness, pain, burning sensation and distress after massaging with oil and by fomentation. It is also inferred by melting the solid lump of ghee and by quick drying up of the medicated paste besmeared over the site of foreign body.

मांसप्रणष्टं संशुद्ध्या कर्शनाच्छ्लथतां गतम् । क्षोभाद्रागादिभिः शाल्यं लक्षयेत्-

If it is in the muscles it can be identified with the places where the foreign body is lodged will found flabby, moving, and causing pain and redness etc. after conducting emesis and purgation.

-तद्वदेव च ॥1 3॥

पेश्यस्थिसन्धिकोष्ठेषु नष्टम्-

Similar to the above method it should be known that the foreign body present in the gastro intestinal tract, boney joints and muscles.

-अस्थिषु लक्षयेत् । अस्थामध्यञ्जनस्वेदबन्धपीडनमर्दनैः ॥1 4॥

प्रसारणाकुञ्चनतः सन्धिनष्टं तथाऽस्थिवत् ।

If the foreign body is in the bones—feeling of pain etc. due to the conduction of oleation, sudation, bandaging, squeezing and massaging the site with pressure should be identified as the site of the foreign body.

Foreign body existing in the joints can be identified by the above measures and also by extension and flexion of the joint.

नष्टे स्नायुशिरास्त्रोतोधमनीष्वसमे पथि ॥1 5॥

अश्वयुक्तं रथं खण्डचक्रमारोप्य रोगिणम् । शीघ्रं नयेत्तस्तस्य संरम्भाच्छल्यमादिशेत् ॥1 6॥

If the foreign body is in the veins, arteries, internal channels and tendons, ask the patient to sit in the chariot which is having broken wheels and then ride speedily on the uneven road. The place where the patient feels pain can be identified as the site of the foreign body concealed in the bones.

मर्मनष्टं पृथङ्ग्नोक्तं तेषां मांसादिसंश्रयात् ।

The foreign body present in the vital points can also be identified by the above methods.

सामान्येन सशल्यं तु क्षोभिण्या क्रियया सरुक् ॥1 7॥

In general the site of the foreign body can be identified by the presence of pain and distress due to abnormal movements and activities.

Four kinds of foreign bodies according to the shape:

वृत्तं पृथुं चतुष्कोणं त्रिपुटं च समासतः । अदृश्यशल्यसंस्थानं ब्रणाकृत्या विभावयेत् ॥1 8॥

Briefly saying the foreign bodies are of 4 kinds according to their shape viz., 1. *vṛtta* (circular), 2. *pṛthu* (broad), 3. *catuṣkoṇa* (quadrangular) and 4. *tripuṭa* (triangular).

The invisible foreign bodies can be guessed by means of the shape of the wounds.

Methods of the removal of the foreign bodies:

तेषामाहरणोपायौ प्रतिलोमानुलोमकौ । अर्वाचीनपराचीने निहरेत्तद्विपर्ययात् ॥1 9॥

All the visible foreign bodies can be removed only by the following two measures viz.,

- (a) *Pratiloma* (reverse direction)
- (b) *Anuloma* (in the same route)

(a) Pratiloma: If the foreign body enters into the body, removing it in the upward direction is known as *pratiloma*.

(b) Anuloma: Removal of the foreign body by pulling it out in the same direction of the entry i.e. in the downward direction is known as *anuloma*.

Removal of tiryaggata śalya:

सुखाहार्यं यतक्षिण्त्वा ततस्तिर्यग्गतं हरेत् ।

If the foreign body is in the sideward direction pull it out in the easiest way either by *pratiloma* or *anuloma* by the excision of the muscle.

Śalya that should not be hammered/removed:

शल्यं न निर्धात्यमुरःकक्षावङ्गणपाश्वगम् ॥2 0॥

प्रतिलोममनुकुण्डं छेद्यं पृथुमुखं च यत् । नैवाहरेद्विशल्यधनं नष्टं वा निरुपद्रवम् ॥2 1॥

- * If the foreign body enters in the reverse direction and having big base and the tip is not visible which is to be cut for removal and it should not be hammered.
- * Similarly the foreign bodies present in the axilla, groin, chest and ribcage also should not be hammered.
- * The foreign body is in the region of *viśalyaghna marmas* (those which cause death immediately after the removal), whether it is visible or invisible, if there is no signs and symptoms of inflammation, it should not be removed.

Removal of foreign body:

अथाहरेत्करप्राप्य करेणैव इतरत्पुनः । दृश्यं सिंहाहिमकरवर्मिकर्कटकाननैः ॥२ २ ॥

- * If the foreign body is able to remove with the hand, use the hand only.
- * If not possible with the hand, utilize the blunt instruments like *siṁhamukha* (lion faced) *yantra*, *ahimukha* (serpent faced) *yantra*, *makaramukha* (crocodile faced), *varmimukha* (fish faced), *karkatamukha* (crab faced) *yantra* etc. for the removal of the foreign body.

Removal of invisible foreign bodies:

अदृश्यं व्रणसंस्थानादग्रहीतुं शक्यते यतः । कङ्कभृजाहृष्टकुररशारीवायसाननैः ॥२ ३ ॥

Invisible foreign bodies can be removed by means of *kaṅkamukha yantra*, *bhringa*, *kuraramukha*, *śarārī* and *vāyasamukha yantras*.

Use of different instruments for the removal of various foreign bodies:

सन्दंशाभ्यां त्वगादिस्थं तालाभ्यां सुधिरं हरेत् । सुषिरस्थं तु नलकैः शेषं शेषैर्यथायथम् ॥२ ४ ॥

- * The foreign bodies, which are lodged in the skin, muscles etc. should be removed with the help of *sandariśa yantra* (forceps).
- * *Tala yantras* should be used for removal of hollow shaped foreign bodies.
- * Foreign bodies lodged in the hollow spaces should be removed by means of tubular instruments. And the others can be removed by means of other convenient instruments.

Post-operative procedure:

शस्त्रेण वा विशस्यादौ ततो निलोहितं व्रणम् । कृत्वा धृतेन संस्वेद्य बद्धावाचारिकमादिशेत् ॥२ ५ ॥

- * Even the blunt instruments are not useful, then give incision with the help of sharp instrument and then remove the foreign bodies.
- * Afterwards clean the bloodstains and then conduct sudation with hot ghee and thermal cauterization if necessary. Then bandage the wound by applying ghee & honey. After that specific diet regimen is instructed.

Removal of sirā, snāyugata śalya:

सिरास्नायुविलग्नं तु चालयित्वा शलाकया ।

The foreign bodies, which are lodged in the veins and tendons etc. should be removed after loosening with the help of *śalākā yantrā* (rod like instruments).

Removal of hr̥dayagata śalya:

हृदये संस्थितं शल्यं त्रासितस्य हिमाम्बुना ॥२ ६ ॥
ततः स्थानान्तरं प्राप्तमाहरेत्तद्यथायथम् । यथामार्गं दुराकर्षम् अन्यतोऽप्येवमाहरेत् ॥२ ७ ॥

Foreign body lodged in the heart should be removed in the following way. Frighten the patient by sprinkling very cold water, so that the foreign body will be displaced. Afterwards remove it by using an appropriate instrument. Similarly others also can be removed.

I & II method of removal of asthigata śalya:

अस्थिदण्डे नरं पद्ध्यां पीडयित्वा विनिहरित् । इत्यशक्ये सुबलिभिः सुगृहीतस्य किङ्करैः ॥२ ८ ॥

Those, which are lodged in the bones, should be removed by means holding the patients tight by the legs of the physician. If not possible it should be pulled out with the help of strong attendants.

III method:

तथाऽप्यशक्ये वारङ्गं वक्रीकृत्य धनुजर्जया । सुबद्धं वक्रकटके बधीयात्सुसमाहितः ॥२ ९ ॥
सुसंयतस्य पञ्चाङ्गया वाजिनः कशयाऽथ तम् । ताडयेदिति मूर्धनं वेगेनोत्तमयन् यथा ॥३ ० ॥
उद्धरेच्छल्यम्-

If the above methods are failed, bend the tail end of arrow and tie it to the string of the bow and the bow to the bridle bit of a horse. Then whip the horse, so that it raises its head suddenly which results in the removal of foreign body.

IV & V method:

-एवं वा शाखायां कल्पयेत्तरोः । बद्ध्वा दुर्बलवारङ्गं कुशाभिः शल्यमाहरेत् ॥३ १ ॥

A strong branch of a tree should be bent down and a rope is tied to the handle of the instrument and to the bent branch and then the branch is let off, so that the foreign body will be removed. In case of arrows with thin or fragile tail ends, thin bamboo poles can be used.

VI & VII method:

श्वयथुग्रस्तवारङ्गं शोफमुत्पीडय युक्तिः । मुद्राहतया नाड्या निर्घात्योत्तुण्डितं होत् ॥३ २ ॥

If the distal part of the foreign body is surrounded by swelling of the wound it should be pulled out after giving incision and hammering at the site of the wound.

VIII & IX method:

तेरेव चानयेन्मार्गममार्गेत्तुण्डितं तु यत् । मृदित्वा कर्णिनां कर्णं नाड्यास्येन निगृह्य वा ॥३ ३ ॥

If at all there is no clear passage for the removal of the foreign body, the above instrument can be used to make the way and then it should be removed.

The ear like projections of the foreign body should be broken down or fix them inside tubular instruments and then pull them out.

X method:

अयस्कान्तेन निष्कर्णं विवृतास्यमृजुस्थितम् ।

Foreign body which is straight and without having any projection can be removed by means of a magnet.

Removal of pakwāśayagata śalya:

पक्वाशयगतं शल्यं विरेकेण विनिहरित् ॥3 4॥

Foreign body, which is lodged in the large intestines, should be removed by means of purgation.

Removal of vāta & others:

दुष्टवातविषस्तन्यरक्ततोयादि चूषणैः ।

Vitiated *vāta*, poison, breast milk, blood and other fluid substances should be removed by sucking with the help of animal horns etc.

Removal of kanṭha srotogata śalya:

कण्ठस्रोतोगते शल्ये सूत्रं कण्ठे प्रवेशयेत् ॥3 5॥

बिसेनाते ततः शल्ये बिसं सूत्रं समं हरेत् ।

If the foreign body is lodged in the throat, a lotus stalk tied with a thread is to be passed (longitudinally) into the throat and when foreign body struck the lotus stalk the thread should be pulled slowly and steadily.

Removal of jātuṣa śalya:

नाड्याऽग्नितापितां क्षिप्त्वा शलाकामप्लिथरीकृताम् ॥3 6॥

आनयेज्जातुषं कण्ठात् जतुदिग्धामजातुषम् ।

If lac is in the throat, pass heated iron rod through a tubular instrument and it should be removed immediately after touching it. Those which are not of lac should be removed by coating the rod with lac.

Removal of kanṭhagata śalya:

केशोन्दुकेन पीतेन द्रवैः कण्ठकमाक्षिपेत् ॥3 7॥

सहसा सूत्रबद्धेन वमतः तेन चेतरत् ।

Thorns of fish lodged in the throat should be removed by inserting a round bundle of hair tied with a piece of thread, after administering emetic drug. The foreign body sticking to the ball of hair during vomiting is removed by pulling the thread quickly. In the same way hair and others also can be removed.

अशक्यं मुखनासाभ्यामाहर्तुं परतो नुदेत् ॥3 8॥

Foreign body lodged in the mouth and nose is unable to remove from their orifices push it into the G.I. tract, so that it can be eliminated.

Treatment for throat obstruction:

अप्पानस्कन्धधाताभ्यां ग्रासशल्यं प्रवेशयेत् ।

If a morsel of food obstructs the throat, it should be pushed into the stomach by giving water or by giving blows with the fist on the patient's neck and shoulders.

Methods of removal of foreign bodies form the eyes:

सूक्ष्माक्षिव्रणशल्यानि क्षौमवालजलैहरित् ॥३ ९ ॥

Small sized foreign bodies in the eyes should be removed by scraping, blowing of air, and use of hair, water, cloth and the tongue.

Treatment for drowning:

अपां पूर्णं विघुनुयादवाकिशरसमायतम् । वामयेच्चामुखं भस्मराशौ वा निखनेन्नरम् ॥४ ० ॥

- * Remove the water, which has been swallowed by the person due to drowning, by tilting the body up side down, and by pressing on the abdomen and also on the back. By shaking the body the remaining water also should get vomited.
- * Then the person is kept in the heap of ash up to the neck level.
- * Otherwise the water enters upwards and cause distension of abdomen, dyspnoea, cough, coryza, sensorial dysfunction, fever, *kapha* disorders and even death.

Removal of water from the ears:

कर्णेऽम्बुपूर्णे हस्तेन मथित्वा तैलवारिणी । क्षिपेदधोमुखं कर्णं हन्याद्वाऽचूषयेत वा ॥४ १ ॥

If the water is accumulated in the ears infiltrate the water plus oil into the ear and then ask the patient to bend his head to one side and give a small blow on the other side or aspirate with the help of tubular instruments.

Removal of the insects from the ear:

कीटे स्रोतोगते कर्णं पूरयेल्लवणाम्बुना । सुक्तेन वा सुखोष्णेन मृते क्लेदहरो विधिः ॥४ २ ॥

- * If the insects enter into the ears cause pain, heaviness and purring sound.
- * If it moves in the ear causes severe pain.
- * Then pour lukewarm water with salt or sour gruel into the ear, automatically the insect comes out.
- * If the insect dies in the ear (ulceration, suppuration and exudation occurs) adopt anti-hydration measures.
- * Treat those conditions similar to *karnasrāvā* and *karṇa pratināha*.

Absorption of foreign bodies:

जातुषं हेमरूप्यादिधातुजं च चिरस्थितम् । ऊष्मणा प्रायशः शल्यं देहजेन विलीयते ॥४ ३ ॥

Foreign bodies like lac, gold and other metals will be dissolved gradually by means of body temperature, if they were lodged for a prolonged period.

Unabsorbed foreign bodies and their effects:

मृद्देणुदारुशृङ्गास्थिदन्तवालोपलानि न । विषाणवेण्वयस्तालदारुशल्यं चिरादपि ॥4 4॥
प्रायो निर्भूज्यते तद्द्व पचत्वाशु पलासूजी ।

Foreign bodies like mud, bamboo, wood, horn, bone, tooth, hair and stone will not be dissolved by body temperature. If they were lodged for a prolonged period inside the body they cause putrefaction in the muscles and blood.

Steps to be followed for the removal of deeply lodged foreign bodies:

शल्ये मांसावगाढे चेत्स देशो न विद्धिते ॥4 5॥
ततस्तं मर्दनस्वेदशुद्धिकर्षणबृंहणैः । तीक्ष्णोपनाहपानान्नधनशस्त्रपदाङ्कनैः ॥4 6॥
पाचयित्वा हरेच्छल्यं पाटनैषणभेदनैः ।

If the foreign body is lodged deep into the muscle and is not suppurated the following are to be adopted for getting suppuration and then remove it by means of excision, probing and cutting.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| • <i>Mardana</i> | • <i>Briñhāṇa</i> |
| • <i>Swedana</i> | • <i>Tīkṣṇa upanāha sweda</i> |
| • <i>Śodhana</i> | • <i>Tīkṣṇa annapāna</i> |
| • <i>Karṣaṇa</i> | • <i>Śastra karma</i> |

General instructions for the removal of foreign bodies:

शल्यप्रदेशयन्त्राणामवेक्ष्य बहुस्पताम् ॥4 7॥
तैस्तैरुपायैर्मतिमान् शल्यं विद्यात्तथाऽहरेत् ।

Keeping in view of different types of foreign bodies, various places of their lodging and variety of instruments, a wise physician should remove them by adopting appropriate techniques.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने शल्याहरणविधिर्माष्टविंशोऽध्यायः ॥28 ॥

Thus ends the twenty-eighth chapter entitled *Śalyāharāṇa vidhi Adhyāya* of *Sūtra Sthāna* in *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā*, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the procedure of removal of foreign bodies from the body in detail. Five directions of the movement of the foreign body viz. curved, straight, horizontal, upward and downward; features of the wounds having a foreign body; identification of the site of the foreign body; general signs and symptoms; 4 kinds of the foreign bodies according to the shape; methods of the removal of the foreign bodies; reverse direction or in the same route; treatment for drowning; removal of the insects from the ear etc. has been discussed.

29 ŚASTRAKARMA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[*Surgical Procedure*]



अथातो शस्त्रकर्मविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः । इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘Śalyāharāṇa-vidhi’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘Śastrakarma-vidhi’ (Surgical Procedure), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Śastra-karma:

शस्त्रस्य कर्म शस्त्रकर्म शस्त्रावचारणा क्रिया तस्य विधिः शस्त्रकर्मविधिः । (Padārthacandrikā commentary)

Indication of surgical therapy:

In both the exogenous and endogenous diseases, if the medical treatment fails, then only go for the surgical therapy.

Measures to be taken for the management of inflammation before surgery:

ब्रणः सज्जायते प्रायः पाकाच्छवयथुपूर्वकात् । तमेवोपचरेत्तस्मात्रक्षन् पाकं प्रयत्नतः ॥१॥

सुशीतलेपसेकास्वमोक्षसंशोधनादिभिः ।

In general ulcer develops after pus formation, which is preceded by swelling.

Hence, the *doṣika* predominance of the swelling should be identified and managed with the following measures such as—external application with cold substances, pouring liquid substances, blood letting, and other purificatory measures like emesis and purgation.

Even after the above measures the swelling doesn't subsides, prefer *vilayana* (liquefaction) followed by *upanāha* (poultices).

Śopha (Swelling):

Śopha is of 3 types viz.

(a) *Āma śopha* (b) *Pacyamāna śopha* (c) *Pakva śopha*.

(a) Features of *āma śopha* (Un-ripened swelling):

शोफोऽल्पोऽल्पोष्मरुक्षसामः सवर्णः कठिनः स्थिरः ॥२॥

* Mild swelling.

* Mild temperature on the region of swelling.

* Mild pain.

* Without any discoloration of the skin.

* Hardness etc. are the features of *āma śopha*.

(b) Features of pacyamāna śopha (In the process of ripening):

पच्यमानो विवर्णस्तु रागी बस्तिरिवाततः । स्फुटतीव सनिस्तोदः साङ्घर्मदविजृम्भिकः ॥१३॥
संरभारुचिदाहोषात् इज्वरानिद्रतान्वितः । स्थानं विष्वन्दयत्याज्यं व्रणवत्स्पर्शनासहः ॥१४॥

- * Discoloration of the region, redness and swelling looks like the urinary bladder filled with air.
- * Continuous bursting type of pain.
- * Splitting pain all over the body, yawning, inflammation.
- * Anorexia, burning sensation, thirst, fever, insomnia.
- * Melting of solid ghee when placed on the region of swelling and tenderness are the feature of *pacyamāna śopha*.

Notes:

In addition to the above symptoms, the author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, the following also being considered as the features of *pacyamāna śopha*.

- * Besmeared medicated paste dries up quickly.
- * Tingling sensation on the region similar to the application of mustard paste.
- * Feels the crawling of ants on the region.
- * As though squeezed with the hands.
- * Pinched with the fingers.
- * Beaten with the sticks, pricking with the needles.
- * Excised by sharp instruments.
- * Stung by scorpion.
- * Burnt by thermal or chemical cautery.
- * And drilled by firing coal etc.

(c) Features of pakva śopha (Ripened swelling):

पक्वेऽल्पवेगता म्लानिः पाण्डुता वलिसम्भवः । नामोऽन्तेष्टून्नतिर्मध्ये कण्ठशोफादिमार्दवम् ॥१५॥
स्पृष्टे पूयस्य सञ्चारो भवेद्वस्ताविवाम्भसः ।

- * Swelling becomes passionless; skin loses its elasticity and develops wrinkles.
- * Become pale and elevated.
- * Pitting by pressure and fills quickly.
- * Pus moves inside the wound similar to the water in a leather bag.
- * Itching and disappearance of the above symptoms are the features of *pakva śopha*.

Relationship of tridosas and swelling:

शूलं नर्तेऽनिलाद्वाहः पित्ताच्छोफः कफोदयात् ॥१६॥
रागो रक्ताच्च पाकः स्थादतो दोषैः सशोणितैः ।

There will be no pain without *vāta*, no burning sensation without *pitta*, no swelling without *kapha*, any redness and formation of pus without *rakta*. Hence the swelling is formed due to the involvement of all the *tridoṣas* along with the blood.

Features of ati pakva śopha:

पाकेऽतिवृत्ते सुषिरस्तनुत्वगदोषभक्षितः ॥7॥

वलीभिराचितः श्यावः शीर्यमाणतनुरुहः ।

When pus formation is more, there will be cavity inside the wound; skin becomes thin and wrinkled, blackish in color and hairfall at the site of the wound.

Raktapāka:

कफजेषु तु शोफेषु गम्भीरं पाकमेत्यसृक् ॥8॥

पक्वलिङ्गं ततोऽस्पष्टं यत्र स्याच्छीतशोफता । त्वक्सावर्णं रुजोऽल्पत्वं घनस्यर्शत्वमश्मवत् ॥9॥

रक्तपाकमिति ब्रूयात्तं प्राज्ञो मुक्तसंशयः ।

In such a state of swelling produced by the vitiation of *kapha*, ripening take place slowly and the complete signs are invisible. It is cold in touch, and the color resembles the skin. Pain also mild in nature. It is very hard in touch similar to stone. Basing on the above signs and symptoms an intelligent physician can undoubtedly diagnosed it as *raktapāka*.

Dāraṇa-pāṭana:

अल्पसन्त्वेऽबले बाले पाकाद्वाऽत्यर्थमुद्धते ॥10॥

दारणं मर्मसन्ध्यादिस्थिते चान्यत्र पाटनम् ।

Incision should not be given with sharp instruments in the following conditions:

- Weak minded persons.
- Debilitated.
- Children.
- Elevated swelling due to accumulation of pus in the wound.
- Located at vital points and joints.

It should be made to open by *dāraṇai* i.e. by means of application of alkalies and others.

Other than the above conditions *pāṭana* (incision) is the line of treatment to be adopted.

Incision is contraindicated in āmaśopha:

आमच्छेदे सिरास्नायुव्यापदोऽसृगतिस्तुतिः ॥11॥

रुजोऽतिवृद्धिर्दरणं विसर्पे वा क्षतोद्धवः । तिष्ठन्नतः पुनः पूयः सिरास्नायुसृगामिषम् ॥12॥

विवृद्धो दहति क्षिप्रं तृणोलपमिवानलः ।

Should not give incision in *āmaśopha*. If so, cause injury to the veins and tendons, severe bleeding, severe pain, gaping of the wound or even spreading to the other parts.

If the pus is not removed completely from the *pakva śopha*, getting increased and cause harm to the veins, tendons, blood and muscles similar to the spark of fire fed with grass etc.

Ignorant physician:

वश्चित्तनन्त्याममज्ञानाद् यश्च पक्वमुपेक्षते ॥13॥

श्वपचाविव विज्ञेयौ तावनिश्चितकारिणौ ।

Physician, he who opens and un-ripen wound, and neglects ripen one by ignorance can be considered as mean fellow.

ŚASTRAKARMA-VIDHI

Preoperative care:

प्राक् शस्त्रकर्मणश्चेष्टं भोजयेदन्नमातुरम् ॥१ ४॥
 पानपं पाययेन्मद्यं तीक्ष्णं यो वेदनाक्षमः । न मूर्छ्छत्यन्नसंयोगान्मत्तः शस्त्रं न बुध्यते ॥१ ५॥
 अन्यत्र मूढगर्भाश्ममुखरोगोदरातुरात् ।

- * Before surgery ask the patient to have food of his desire and then concentrated alcohol drinks. Due to the intake of food the patient cannot get fainted and the alcohol helps for the conduction of surgery without knowing the pain.
- * Food is to be given prior to surgery in all conditions except in irregular position of the foetus in the womb, ascitis, urinary calculi and the diseases of the oral cavity.

Operative procedure:

अथाहतोपकरणं वैद्यः प्राङ्मुखमातुरम् ॥१ ६॥
 सम्मुखो यन्त्रयित्वा शु न्यस्येन्मर्मादि वर्जयन् । अनुलोमं सुनिशितं शस्त्रमापूयदर्शनात् ॥१ ७॥
 सकृदेवाहरेत्तच्च-

- * Prior to start the procedure, procure all the required blunt & sharp instruments, thermal and chemical cautery, *jāmuna* fruit probes, cotton, cloth piece, leaves, thread, bark, honey, unctuous substances, decoctions, pastes, water pots, warm water and cold water. Fans, cots and other equipment and instruments required for surgery.
- * After performing spiritual rites, ask the patient to sit or lie on the cot facing towards the east.
- * Then the surgeon should give incision with the help of a sharp blade, deeply into the wound at a time, in the downward direction, leaving the vital points, and also remove the instrument at a time from the body.

Length of incision:

-पाके तु सुमहत्यपि । पाटयेत द्व्यड्गुलं सम्यगद्व्यड्गुलत्र्यद्गुलान्तरम् ॥१ ८॥
 एषित्वा सम्यगेषिण्या परितः सुनिरूपितम् । अड्गुलीनालबालैर्वा यथादेशं यथाशयम् ॥१ ९॥
 यतो गतां गतिं विद्यादुत्सङ्गो यत्र यत्र च । तत्र तत्र व्रणं कुर्यात्सुविभक्तं निराशयम् ॥२ ०॥
 आयतं च विशालं च यथा दोषो न तिष्ठति ।

- * If the suppuration is in larger areas multiple incisions of 2 inches in length can be given at a distance of 2 to 3 inches, if necessary.
- * These incisions are to be made after probing meticulously with the help of a probe, index finger, lotus stalk etc. by finding the path of accumulation of pus.
- * In this way wherever pus is accumulated, give adequate incision without permitting exploration, so that *dosas* will not remain.

Ideal qualities of a surgeon:

शौर्यमाशुक्रिया तीक्ष्णं शस्त्रमन्वेदवेपथू ॥२ १ ॥
असम्मोहश्च वैद्यस्य शस्त्रकर्मणि शस्यते ।

- * Having courage in doing surgery.
- * Quick in conducting surgical procedure.
- * Keeping the instruments sharp.
- * Should not get sweat for doing surgery.
- * Should not shake his hands while performing surgery.
- * Should not be confused.

Suitable areas for horizontal incision:

तिर्यक्क्षिक्षिद्याल्लाटभूदन्तवेष्टकजत्रुणि ॥२ २ ॥
कुक्षिकक्षाक्षिकौष्ठकपोलगलवड़क्षणे ।

In places like eye brows, cheeks, forehead, eye socket, lips, gums, neck, throat, shoulders, axilla, groin and in the lower abdomen, the incision can be given horizontally.

Unsuitable places for horizontal incision:

अन्यत्र छेदनात्तिर्यक् सिरास्नायुविपाटनम् ॥२ ३ ॥

If horizontal incision is given at other than the above mentioned areas, there is every possibility of cutting off veins and tendons. Hence horizontal incision is not advisable at other than the prescribed places.

Post-operative care:

शस्त्रेऽवचारिते वारिः शीताम्भोभिश्च रोगिणम् । आश्वास्य परितोऽङ्गुल्या परिपीडय ब्रणं ततः ॥२ ४ ॥
क्षालयित्वा कषायेण प्लोतेनाम्भोऽपनीय च । गुग्गुल्वगुरुसिद्धार्थहिङ्गुसर्जरसान्वितैः ॥२ ५ ॥
धूपयेत्पट्टबद्धग्रन्थानिम्बपत्रैर्घृतप्लुतैः । तिलकल्काज्यमधुभिर्यथास्वं भेषजेन च ॥२ ६ ॥
दिग्धां वर्ति ततो दद्यात्तैरेवाच्छादयेच्च ताम् । घृतात्कैः सकुभिश्चोर्ध्वं धनां कवलिकां ततः ॥२ ७ ॥
निधाय युक्त्या बधनीयात्पट्टेन सुसमाहितम् । पार्श्वे सव्येऽपसव्ये वा नाधस्तान्नैव चोपरि ॥२ ८ ॥

- * After the completion of the process, cold water is to be given for drinking and sprinkling over the face.
- * Then press the wound and remove the pus.
- * Afterwards wash with decoctions and clean it well.
- * Then conduct medicated fumigation with *guggulu*, *aguru*, *siddhārtha* (white mustard seeds), *hingū*, *sarjarasa*, *saindhava lavaṇa* (rock salt), *vacā*, *nimba patra* (neem leaves) etc. mixed with ghee.
- * After that gauze pack is to be introduced into the wound made with suitable drugs mixed with honey, ghee and sesamum oil, then cover the surface with a thick pad of plaster of barley flour.
- * In the end bandaging the wound with a long and clean cloth, comfortably, either in clockwise or anti-clockwise direction and see the knot should not be over the wound.

Features of suitable bandage cloth:

शुचिसूक्ष्मदृढः पट्टाः कवल्यः सविकेशिकाः । धूपिता मृदवः श्लक्षणा निर्वलीका ब्रणे हिताः ॥२९॥

The bandage cloth should be clean, thin and strong. Medicated wick should consist of cotton threads, which are fumigated, soft, and smooth and also devoid of folds.

Measures to protect the wound:

कुर्वीतानन्तरं तस्य रक्षां रक्षोनिषिद्धये । बलिं चोपहरेत्तेभ्यः—

Afterwards wound should be protected from the invasion of insects and flies by offering oblations.

Notes:

- * If the pain is severe, apply the paste of *yaṣṭimadhu* mixed with ghee on the wound.
- * Sprinkle water and then through the leaves and white mustard seeds around the bed of the patient, to protect from evil spirits and also oblation should be given to them.

Instruction to wear herbs on the head:

—सदा मूर्धा च धारयेत् ॥३०॥

लक्ष्मीं गुहामतिगुहां जटिलां ब्रह्मचारिणीम् । वचां छत्रामतिच्छत्रां दूर्वा सिद्धार्थकानपि ॥३१॥

- * The potent herbs such as *lakṣmī* (*śamī/lakṣmaṇī/ viṣṇukrāntā*), *guhā*, *atiguhā* (*pṛśniparṇī, śāliparṇī*), *jaṭilā* (*jaṭāmāṁsi*), *brahmacāriṇī* (*mundī/pattaṅga-kāṣṭha/brahma-yaṣṭī/brāhmī*), *vacā*, *chatrā* (*sadāpā*), *atichatrā* (*śveta kapolikā*), *dūrvā*, *siddhārthaka* etc., should be held nearer the head of the patient.

- * The room and the bed should be fumigated twice a day.

Post-operative regimen:

ततः स्नेहदिनेहोक्तं तस्याचारं समादिशेत् ।

Follow the post-operative regimen of oleation therapy and also the daily regimen.

Contraindications:

दिवास्वन्धो ब्रणे कण्ठूरागरुक्षोफपूयकृत् ॥३२॥

स्त्रीणां तु स्मृतिसंस्पर्शदर्शनैश्चलितस्तुते । शुक्रे व्यवायजान् दोषानसंसर्गोऽप्यवान्यात् ॥३३॥

(ब्रणे श्वयथुरायासात् स च रागश्च जागरात् । तौ च रुक्ष च दिवास्वापात्ताश्च मृत्युश्च मैथुनात् ॥३४॥)

- * Should not sleep in the daytime, if so swelling, itching, redness, pain, pus will increase.
- * Though the individual is not participated directly in sexual act, simply the remembrance, touch and even vision of the loving woman causes ejaculation of semen, which results in the ill effects of excessive copulation.
- * Excessive exertion leads to swelling of the wound, vigil results in redness, day sleep causes pain, direct copulation results in death.

Diet schedule:

भोजनं च यथासात्यं यवगोधूमषष्टिकाः । मसूरमुद्रुवरीजीवन्तीसुनिषण्णकाः ॥३५॥

बालमूलकवार्ताकितण्डुलीयकवास्तुकम् । कारवेल्लककर्कोटपटोलकटुकाफलम् ॥३ ५ ॥
 सैन्धवं दाढिमं धात्री धृतं तप्तहिमं जलम् । जीर्णशाल्योदनं स्निग्धमल्पमुष्णोदकोत्तरम् ॥३ ६ ॥
 भुज्ञानो जाङ्गलैर्मासैः शीघ्रं व्रणमपोहति ।

- * Wholesome food such as rice prepared with barley, wheat and *śaṣṭī dhānya*.
- * Soup prepared with *masūra*, *mudga* and *tuvara*.
- * Curries prepared with *jīvantī*, *suniṣaṇṇaka*, *bāla mūlaka*, *vārtāka*, *taṇḍulīyaka*, *vāstuka*, *kāravella*, *karkoṭa*, *paṭola* and *kaṭukāphala*.
- * Fruits such as pomegranate, gooseberry.
- * Rock salt and ghee etc. is advisable.
- * After having food prepared with old *sāli* rice, hot water is to be given and see that indigestion should not be happened.
- * Mutton soup of the animals dwelling in desert like regions etc. are advised for quick healing of the ulcer.

अशिंतं मात्रया काले पथ्यं याति जरां सुखम् ॥३ ७ ॥
 अजीर्णात्त्वनिलादीनां विभ्रमो बलवान् भवेत् । ततः शोफरुजापाकदाहानाहानवाप्नुयात् ॥३ ८ ॥

- * Limited and timely taken wholesome food digests easily. Hence it is advised to take such food only.
- * If the food is not properly digested, it leads to the vitiation of *vāta* and there by swelling, pain, suppuration, burning sensation and abdominal distension.

Contraindicated foods:

नवं धान्यं तिलान् माषान् मद्यं मांसमजाङ्गलम् । क्षीरेक्षुविकृतीरम्लं लवणं कटुकं त्यजेत् ॥३ ९ ॥
 यच्चान्यदपि विषभिं विदाहि गुरु शीतलम् । वर्गोऽयं नवधान्यादिर्विषिनः सर्वदोषकृत् ॥४ ० ॥

- * Freshly harvested grains.
- * Sesamum seeds, black gram.
- * Alcoholic drinks, meat other than the animals dwelling in desert areas.
- * Eatables prepared from milk and sugarcane juice.
- * Sour, salt, pungent, alkaline substances etc. should be avoided.
- * Food substances, which cause constipation, burning sensation, having the qualities of cold and heavy are also contraindicated, as they are responsible for aggravation of *doṣas* in persons suffering from ulcers.

मद्यं तीक्ष्णोष्णारुक्षाम्लमाशु व्यापादयेद्व्रणम् ।

- * Alcoholic drinks, which are strong, hot, dry and sour cause acute complications to the persons suffering from ulcers.

Vraṇopacāra:

वालोशीरैश्च वीज्येत न चैनं परिघट्येत् ॥४ १ ॥
 न तु देन्न च कण्डूयेच्येष्टमानश्च पालयेत् । स्निग्धवृद्धिजातीनां कथा: शृण्वन्मनःप्रिया: ॥४ २ ॥
 आशावान् व्याधिमोक्षाय क्षिप्रं व्रणमपोहति ।

- * Wound should be fanned with bunch of hair of animals tail or with *uśīra*.
- * It should not be beaten, poked or scratched with nails.
- * It should be protected while busy with his routine work.
- * One who wishes to cure his wound quickly, he should be engaged himself in hearing stories and spending time with the company of friends, elders and *brāhmaṇins*.

Dressing schedule:

तृतीयेऽहि पुनः कुर्याद् व्रणकर्म च पूर्ववत् ॥४३॥

प्रक्षालनादि, दिवसे द्वितीये नाचरेत्तथा । तीव्रव्यथो विग्रथितश्चिरात्संरोहति व्रणः ॥४४॥

- * The bandage should be removed on the 3rd day and again the dressing should be done similarly after washing the wound with decoctions etc.
- * It should not be opened on the 2nd day, as it will give rise severe pain, formation of tumors and delayed wound healing.

Suitable gauze pack:

स्निग्धां रूक्षां स्लथां गाढां दुर्न्यस्तां च विकेशिकाम् । व्रणेन दद्यात्कलं वा स्नेहात्क्लेदो विवर्द्धते ॥४५॥

मांसच्छेदोऽतिरुग्गौक्ष्याद्वरणं शोणितागमः । श्लथातिगाढदुर्न्यसैन्नेणवर्त्मावधर्षणम् ॥४६॥

- * The gauze pack should not be too unctuous and too dry, and also neither too thick nor too thin.
- * Too unctuous pack increases moisture, dried one results in muscle tear, severe pain, lacerations and bleeding. Similarly thick pack causes friction in the edges of the ulcer.

सपूतिमांसं सोत्सङ्घं सगतिं पूयगर्भिणम् । व्रणं विशोधयेच्छीघ्रं स्थिता ह्यन्तर्विकेशिका ॥४७॥

Vikeśikā, a type of wick will be useful for quick healing of a wound having the following features:

- Wound with putrefied muscles.
- Wound with elevated surfaces.
- Tissue loss and accumulated with pus.

Management of the complications arises due to the incision given to apakva śopha:

व्यम्लं तु पाटितं शोफं पाचनैः समुपाचरेत् । भोजनैरुपनाहैश्च नातिव्रणविरोधिभिः ॥४८॥

Giving incision to the un-ripened swelling should be managed with the specific diet mentioned as above and with poultices.

Suturing:

सद्यः सद्योब्रणान् सीव्येद्विवृतानभिघातजान् । मेदोजांलिलिखितान् ग्रन्थीन् हस्वाः पालीश्च कर्णयोः ॥४९॥

शिरोऽक्षिकूटनासौषगण्डकर्णोरुबाहुषु । ग्रीवाललाटमुष्कस्फङ्गमेद्रपायूदरादिषु ॥५०॥

गम्भीरेषु प्रदेशेषु मांसलेष्वचलेषु च ।

Traumatic, fresh and wide wounds of the following regions should be sutured immediately.

Suitable places for suturing:

The wounds which are caused by the vitiation of fat, which are gaping, tumors of *kapha*, ear lobe, wounds on the head, forehead, sockets of the eye, ear, nose, throat, lips, neck, shoulders, abdomen, buttocks, rectum, genitalia, scrotum and other places which have no movement and having excessive musculature are suitable for suturing.

Contraindicated areas for suturing:

न तु वङ्गांकक्षादावल्पमांसे चले ब्रणान् ॥५ १ ॥

वायुनिर्वाहिणः शल्यगर्भान् क्षारविषाग्निजान् ।

Wounds situated in the regions of groins, axilla, chest etc. and places which are having movement, where the musculature is less, the place where the air is moving and the foreign bodies present in the blood, wounds caused by poisons, chemical and thermal cautery etc., are contraindicated for suturing.

Suturing procedure:

सीव्येच्चलास्थिशुष्कास्त्रतृणरोमापनीय तु ॥५ २ ॥

प्रलम्बि मांसं विच्छिन्नं निवेश्य स्वनिवेशने । सन्ध्यस्थि च स्थिते रक्ते स्नाय्वा सूत्रेण वल्कलैः ॥५ ३ ॥

सीव्येन्न दूरे नासने गृह्णन्नाल्पं न वा बहु ।

Remove the pieces of the bones and other substances such as grass, hair, dust, clotted blood etc. and cut the hanged skin and muscles and then kept the bones and joints at the proper place.

After the bleeding stops, suturing is to be conducted for the suitable wounds.

Types of sutures:

In brief, the sutures are of 4 kinds—1. *gosphanikā* (irregular wound suturing), 2. *tunna sevanī* (continuous suturing), 3. *vellitaka* (spiral suturing) and 4. *rju granthi* (interrupted skin suturing).

The following material can be used for suturing—tendons of animals, threads of cotton or silk and fibers of bark obtained from trees.

Suturing should not be conducted very close, very far, very loose or very tight.

Post-operative care of suturing:

सान्त्वयित्वा ततश्चार्तं ब्रणे मधुदृतद्वृत्तैः ॥५ ४ ॥

अञ्जनक्षौमजमरीफलिनीशल्लकीफलैः । सरोधमधुकैर्दिग्धे युज्याद्वन्धादि पूर्ववत् ॥५ ५ ॥

After suturing the skin, apply the powders of *srotoñjana*, ash of hemp, *phalinī/priyanī*, *sallakī*, *lodhra*, *yaṣṭimadhu* etc. mixed with honey and ghee and then it should be bandaged.

Method of suturing the dry wound:

ब्रणे निःशोणितौष्ठो यः किञ्चिदेवावलिख्य तम् । सञ्चातरुधिरं सीव्येत्सन्धानं ह्यस्य शोणितम् ॥५ ६ ॥

If the edges of the wound are devoid of blood, it should be scraped and made to bleed and then suture, as blood is responsible for healing ulcers.

Bandaging methods:

बन्धनानि तु देशादीन् वीक्ष्य युज्जीत तेषु च । आविकाजिनकौशेयमुण्णां, क्षौमं तु शीतलम् ॥5 7॥

शीतोण्णां तूलसन्तानकार्पासस्नायुवल्कजम् । ताम्रायस्त्रपुसीसानि ब्रणे मेदःकफाधिके ॥5 8॥

भङ्गे च युज्यात्फलकं चर्मवल्ककुशादि च ।

- * Basing on the site and nature of the wound different types of bandages has been used.
- * Material specially used for various types of bandages also shown the following different properties.
- * Skin of sheep and silk cloth are hot in potency and produces heat.
- * Flax is having cold potency and produces cold at the site of wound, if bandaged.
- * *Sālmalī*, cotton and the tendons of the animals are both hot and cold in potency.
- * If fatty tissue and *kapha* are more accumulated on the wound it should be covered with the sheets of copper, iron, zinc or lead for the purpose of scraping.
- * In case of fractures bandaging should be done with the above-mentioned metallic plates, leather, bark of trees or splints of bamboo and others can be used.

Fifteen types of bandages:

स्वनामानुगताकारा बन्धास्तु दश पञ्च च ॥5 9॥

कोशस्वस्तिकमुत्तोलीचीनदामानुवेल्लितम् । खट्वाविबन्धस्थगिकावितानोत्सङ्घगोष्टणाः ॥6 0॥

यमकं मण्डलाख्यं च पञ्चाङ्गी चेति योजयेत् ।

(विदध्यातेषु तेष्वेव कोशमङ्गुलिपर्वसु । स्वस्तिकं कर्णकक्षादिस्तनेषूक्तं च सन्धिषु ॥1 ॥

मुत्तोलीं मेद्रुचीवादी युज्याच्चीनमपाङ्ग्न्योः । सम्बाधेऽङ्गे तथा दाम, शाखास्वेवानुवेल्लितम् ॥2 ॥

खट्वां गण्डे हनू शङ्गे, विबन्धं पृष्ठकोदरे । अङ्गुष्ठाङ्गुलिमेद्रुग्रे स्थगिकामन्त्रवृद्धिषु ॥3 ॥

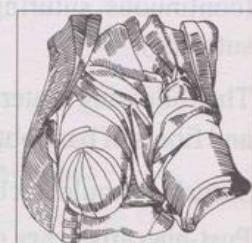
वितानं पृथुलाङ्गादौ तथा शिरसि चेरयेत् । विलम्बिनि तथोत्सङ्घं, नासौष्ठुचिबुकादिषु ॥4 ॥

गोष्टणं सन्धिषु तथा, यमकं यमिके ब्रणे । वृत्तेऽङ्गे मण्डलाख्यं च, पञ्चाङ्गीं चोर्ध्वजत्रुषु ॥5 ॥)

यो यत्र सुनिविष्टः स्यात्तं तेषां तत्र बुद्धिमान् ॥6 1 ॥

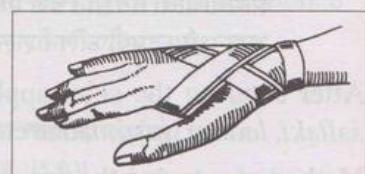
Nomenclature of the bandages is given due to their shape only.

1. Kośa (Sheath bandage): A hollow cylinder or sheath to be applied to the joints of the thumb and fingers. This is to be applied over the stumps after amputation of the limbs.



Kośa

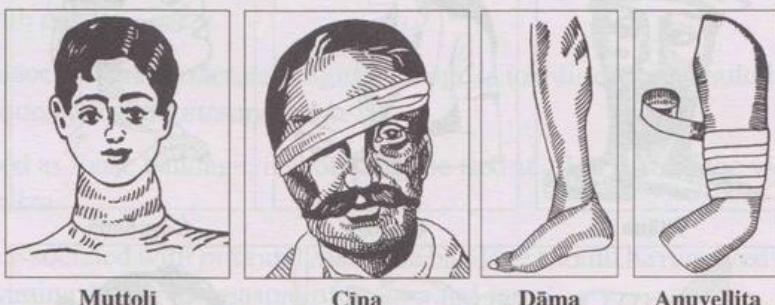
2. Svastika (Circular cross bandage): It is to be applied round the joints, the space between the tendons of the great and second toes, the inter-mammary region the glabellum (space between the eye brows), the plantar surfaces of the feet, the palmer surfaces of the hands, and the ears. It is also the form of bandage recommended in dislocations of the shoulder joint.



Svastika

3. Pratoli/Muttoli (Recurrent bandage): A broad bandage for the neck and penis.

4. Cīna (Banner bandage): A bandage for the inner angles of the eyes.
5. Dāma (Tail of quadruped): It is a large bandage to be tied round a part for the relief of pain or cramps.
6. Anuvellita (Encircling bandage): It is to be applied to the limbs. This form of bandage is to be applied to the limbs in cases of oblique, deep, and large cuts inflicted by a knife. A leather bandage applied in the form of *gōṣphāṇa* would also serve the purpose. The encircling bandage is also advised in cases of fracture of the ribs.



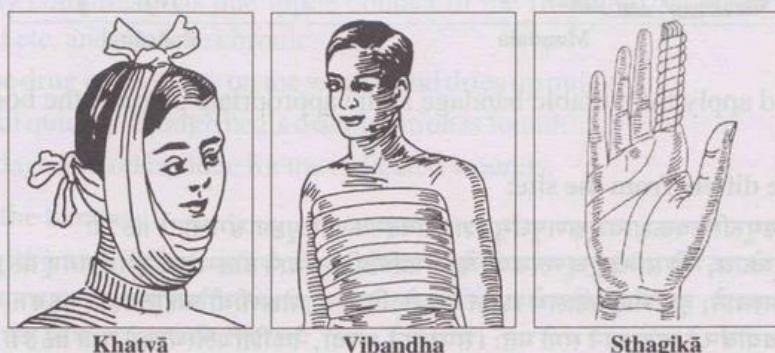
Muttoli

Cīna

Dāma

Anuvellita

7. Khaṭvā (Four-tailed bandage): It is recommended for the temples, cheeks and lower jaw.
8. Vibandha (Circular chest-bandage): It is the bandage for the back, abdomen and chest.
9. Sthagikā (Supporter bandage): A bandage enclosing a splint and pastes of drugs to keep the parts firm. It is to be applied over the ends of the thumb, fingers and penis.



Khaṭvā

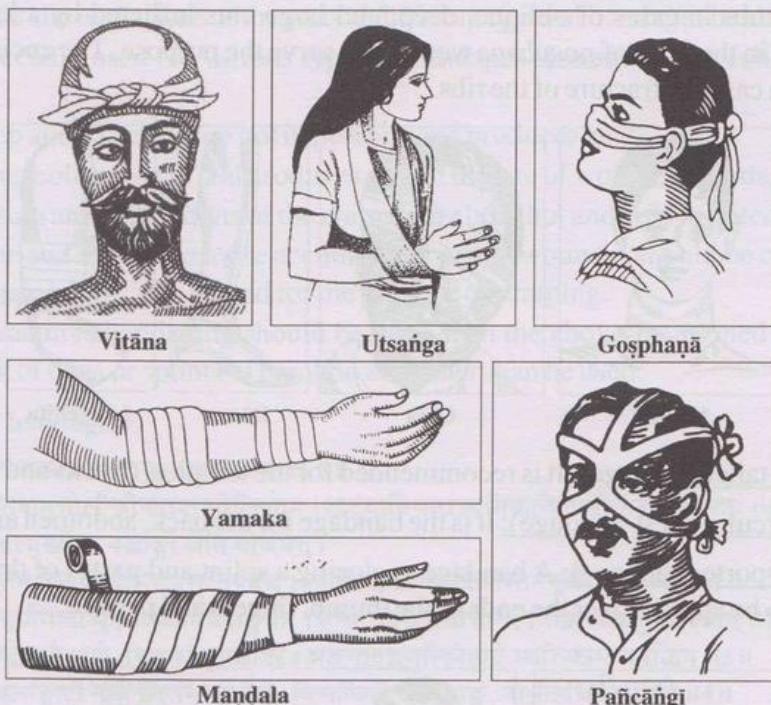
Vibandha

Sthagikā

10. Vitāna (Canopy bandage): A large bandage for the head.
11. Utsanga (Arm sling bandage): It is a bandage, which should be applied to the hanged parts of the body.
12. Gospaṇā (Sling bandage): A concave bandage for the chin, nose, lips, shoulders and pelvis.
13. Yamaka (Double bandage): A pair of circular bandages applied to a couple of ulcers on a part.

14. Maṇḍala (Circular bandage): It is to be applied to the round parts of the body such as the arms, sides, abdomen, thighs and back.

15. Pañcāṅgī (Five tailed bandage): It is intended for the parts above the clavicle as the dislocations of the lower jaw.



Physician should apply the suitable bandage at the appropriate place of the body by applying his mind.

Type of bandage differs from the site:

बध्नीयाद्वाढमूरस्फकक्षावडक्षणमूर्धसु । शाखावदनकणोरः पृष्ठपार्श्वगलोदरे ॥६ २ ॥
 समं मेहनमुष्के च, नेत्रे सन्धिषु च श्लथम् । बध्नीयाच्छिथिलस्थाने वातश्लेष्मोदभवे समम् ॥६ ३ ॥
 गाढमेव समस्थाने, भृशं गाढं तदाशये । शीते वसन्तेऽपि च तौ मोक्षणीयौ त्र्यहात्प्रवाहात् ॥६ ४ ॥
 पित्तरक्तोत्थयोर्बन्धो गाढस्थाने समो मतः । समस्थाने श्लथो, नैव शिथिलस्याशये तथा ॥६ ५ ॥
 सायं प्रातस्तयोर्मक्षो ग्रीष्मे शरादि चेष्यते ।

Tight bandage should be tied over thighs, buttocks, axilla, groins and head region.

Moderately tight bandage should be tied over upper and lower limbs, face, ears, chest, back, flanks, neck, abdomen, penis and scrotum

Loose bandage should be applied over the eyes and joints.

Wherever application of loose bandage is mentioned, it should be moderately tied if the wound is associated with *vāta* and *śleṣmā*.

Similarly the places where moderately tight bandage is mentioned, it should be tied tightly if the wound is associated with *vāta* and *śleṣmā*.

If it is mentioned as tight bandage, it should be tied much tightly in case of the wound associated with *vāta* and *śleṣmā*.

If the wound is associated with *vāta* and *śleṣmā* the bandage should be removed once in three days during the seasons of *hemanta*, *sīśira* and *vasanta*.

Wherever application of tight bandage is mentioned, it should be moderately tied if the wound is associated with *pitta* and *rakta*.

Similarly the places where moderately tight bandage is mentioned, it should be tied loosely if the wound is associated with *pitta* and *rakta*.

If it is mentioned as loose bandage, it should not be tied at all in case of the wound associated with *pitta* and *rakta*.

If the wound is associated with *pitta* and *rakta*, the bandage should be removed twice daily both morning and evening during the seasons of *grīṣma* and *śarad*.

Complications of wounds, if not bandaged:

अबद्धो दंशमशकशीतवातादिपीडितः ॥6 6॥

दुष्टीभवेच्चिरं चात्र न तिष्ठेत्तन्नेहभेषजम् । कृच्छ्रेण शुद्धिं रूढिं वा याति रूढो विवर्णताम् ॥6 7॥

If the bandage is not applied to the wounds,

- * Cause many complications due to the contact of the flies, mosquitoes, grass, dust, cold, breeze, heat etc. and become chronic.
- * And also the drug cannot stay on the wound and dries up quickly.
- * Doesn't heal quickly, though heals discoloration is found.
- * Hence bandage should be done for the indicated wounds.

Advantages of the bandage:

बद्धस्तु चूर्जिते भग्नो विश्लिष्टः पाटितोऽपि चा । छिन्नस्नायुसिरोऽप्याशु सुखं संरोहति ब्रणः ॥6 8॥

उत्थानशयनाद्यासु सर्वेहासु च पीड्यते । उद्वृत्तौष्ठः समुत्सन्नो विषमः कठिनोऽतिरुक्तः ॥6 9॥

समो मृदुरुक्तः शीघ्रं ब्रणः शुद्ध्यति रोहति ।

Bandage is useful to heal the wound quickly as well as reduces pain even in the following conditions:

- * Wound in which the bones are found crushed, or fractured, joints are dislocated, incised by the surgeons, tendons and veins are severed.
- * Patient doesn't feel much pain while getting up, lying down and other acts, when the wound is bandaged.
- * All the five types of wounds such as uneven, hard, soft, painful and painless become clean and heal quickly, if they are bandaged.

Bandage with leaves:

स्थिराणामल्पमांसानां रौक्ष्यादनुपरोहताम् ॥७०॥
 प्रच्छाद्यमौषधं पत्रैर्यथादोषं यथर्तुं च । अजीर्णतरुणाच्छ्रद्धैः समन्तात्सुनिवेशितैः ॥७१॥
 धौतैरकर्कशैः क्षीरभूर्जार्जुनकदम्बजैः ।

Chronic ulcers, having less musculature, which do not have moisture should be applied with medicines wrapped in leaves such as *arka*, *bhūrja*, *arjuna* and *kadamba* according to *doṣa* and seasons; i.e. in *vāta* predominance and during *hemanta* and *śīśira* ṛtu apply bandage with the leaves having *snigdha* and *uṣṇa guṇa*. Similarly in *pitta* predominance and in *grīṣma* ṛtu apply bandage with the leaves having *sītā guṇa*. Where as in *kapha* dominance and in *uṣṇa kāla* it should be bandaged with the leaves having *rūkṣa* and *uṣṇa guṇa*.

Contraindications for applying bandage:

कुष्ठिनामनिदग्धानां पिटिकामधुमेहिनाम् ॥७२॥
 कर्णिकाश्वोन्दुरुविषे क्षारदग्धा विषान्विताः । बन्धनीया न मांस्पाके गुदपाके च दारुणे ॥७३॥
 शीर्यमाणाः सरुगदाहाः शोफावस्थाविसर्पिणः ।

Wounds of leprosy, chemical and thermal cautery, carbuncles of diabetes, wounds caused by rats, poisonous wounds, which cause pus formation, severe ulceration of the rectum and which spreads to other places are contra-indicated for applying bandage.

Worms in wounds:

अरक्षया ब्रणे यस्मिन् मक्षिका निक्षिपेत्कृमीन् ॥७४॥
 ते भक्षयन्तः कुर्वन्ति रुजाशोफास्वसंस्वावान् । सुरसादिं प्रयुज्ञीत तत्र धावनपूरणे ॥७५॥
 सप्तपर्णकरञ्जार्कनिम्बराजादनत्वचः । गोमूत्रकल्कितो लेपः सेकः क्षाराम्बुना हितः ॥७६॥
 प्रच्छाद्य मांसपेश्या वा ब्रणं तानाशु निहरित् ।

- * If the ulcers are not properly bandaged, they attract flies and leads infection as well as putrefaction, which result in severe pain, burning sensation and also swelling.
- * Such infected wounds or ulcers should be washed with the decoctions of the herbs belonging to *surasādi gaṇa*.
- * Then prepare the paste by mixing the powders of the barks of *saptaparna*, *karañja*, *arka*, *nimba*, *rājādana* with *gomūtra* and apply it over the wound.
- * Afterwards bathing the wound with *kṣārodaka* (solution of alkalies) or scarification of the muscle tissue will be beneficial for quick healing.

Wound associated with doṣas should not be made to heal:

न चैनं त्वरमाणोऽन्तः सदोषमुपरोहयेत् ॥७७॥
 सोऽल्पेनाप्यपचारेण भूयो विकुरुते यतः ।

If the wound is filled with pus and residual *doṣas*, it should not be attempted hasty to heal. Though it heals, there is every possibility of reversion. Hence pus and others should be eliminated prior to go for healing techniques.

Regimen after wound healing:

रुदेऽप्यजीर्णव्यायामव्यवायादीन् विर्जयेत् ॥७८॥
हर्ष क्रोधं भवं चापि यावदास्थैर्यसम्भवात् । आदरेणानुवर्त्योऽयं मासान् षट् सप्त वा विधिः ॥७९॥

Even after the wound heals, the patient should avoid taking undigested food substances, exercises, copulation, over excitement, anger and fear for at least 6 to 7 months.

Conclusion:

उत्पद्यमानासु च तासु तासु वार्तासु दोषादिबलानुसारी ।
तैस्तैरुपायैः प्रयत्नश्चिकित्सेदालोचयन् विस्तरमुत्तरोक्तम् ॥८०॥

The physician should manage different other conditions of the wounds with the methods appropriate to the strength of *doṣa*, *deśa*, *kāla*, *bala* etc. in the light of the details endowed in Uttara Tantra.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनुश्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां
प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने शास्त्रकर्मविधिनामैकोनविंशोऽध्यायः ॥१२९॥

Thus ends the twenty-ninth chapter entitled *Śastra-karma-vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Siṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa explained the surgical procedure in a systematic way—indications; measures to be taken for the management of inflammation before surgery; features of *āma śopha*, *pacyamāna śopha* & *pakva śopha*. Relationship of *tridoṣas* and the swelling. Preoperative care; operative procedure; post-operative care; diet; contraindicated foods. Suturing—types; post-operative care; contraindicated areas and suitable places for suturing. 15 types of bandages have been discussed in detail.



30 KṢĀRA-AGNIKARMA-VIDHI ADHYĀYA

[*Preparation and Application of
Caustic Alkalies & Thermal Cautery*]



अथातः क्षाराग्निकर्मविधिमध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः ।

इति ह स्माहुरात्रेयादयो महर्षयः ।

After ‘*Sastrakarma-vidhi*’, Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa expounded the chapter ‘*Kṣārāgnikarma-vidhi*’ (Preparation & Application of Caustic Alkalies and Thermal Cautery), thus said Lord Ātreya and other great sages.

Kṣāras (Caustic alkalies & its properties):

- * *Kṣāras* (caustic alkalies) are derived from the combination of different kinds of drugs of all the tastes but with the predominance of pungent and salt.
- * Drugs possessed the properties such as penetrating and hot in potency and do the functions such as *dahana* (burning), *pācana* (digesting), *avadhāraṇa* (tearing), *vilayana* (dissolving), *śodhana* (cleaning) and *ropāṇa* (healing) etc.
- * Cures worm infestation, indigestion, obesity and the complications of poisons.

Supremacy of caustic alkalies (kṣāras):

सर्वशस्त्रानुशस्त्राणां क्षारः श्रेष्ठो बहूनि यत् । छेद्यभेद्यादिकर्माणि कुरुते विषमेष्वपि ॥1॥

दुःखावचार्यशस्त्रेषु तेन सिद्धिमयात्सु च । अतिकृच्छ्रेषु रोगेषु यच्च पानेऽपि युज्यते ॥2॥

- * As the caustic alkalies perform the functions such as excision, incision, extraction and scarification, they are superior among all the sharp and accessory instruments.
- * Caustic alkalies can be used in places where the sharp instruments failed and in conditions such as nasal polyps, malignant tumors etc. and also in the chronic ulcers due to the vitiation of all the *tridosas*.
- * Caustic alkalies are also can be administered internally in case of difficult disease conditions. Therefore caustic alkalies are definitely superior among all the sharp and accessory instruments.

Types of kṣāras:

Caustic alkalies are of two types such as:

- (a) *Ābhyantra parimārjana* (internal administration)
- (b) *Bāhya parimārjana* (external application)

(a) Ābhyantara parimārjana:

स पेयोऽशर्णैऽग्निसादाशमगुल्मोदरगरादिषु ।

Ābhyantara parimārjana is indicated in diseases such as piles, impaired digestion, urinary calculi, abdominal tumors, ascitis, artificial poisoning etc.

(b) Bāhya parimārjana:

योज्यः साक्षात्मष्टश्वित्रबाह्यार्थः कुष्ठसुप्तिषु ॥३॥

भगन्दराबुद्ग्रन्थिदुष्टनाडीव्रणादिषु ।

Bāhya parimārjana is indicated in diseases such as black moles, leucoderma, external piles, leprosy and other skin disorders, tumors, fistula, chronic ulcers, sinuses, warts etc.

Contraindications for kṣāra-prayoga:

न तूभयोऽपि योक्तव्यः पित्ते रक्ते चलेऽबले ॥४॥

ज्वरेऽतिसारे हन्तुर्धरोगे पाण्डवामयेऽरुचौ । तिमिरे कृतसंशुद्धौ श्वयथौ सर्वगात्रगे ॥५॥

भीरुगर्भिण्यृतुमतीप्रोद्वृत्तफलयोनिषु । अजीर्णेऽन्ने शिशौ वृद्धे धमनीसन्धिमर्मसु ॥६॥

तरुणास्थिसिरासायुसेवनीगलनाभिषु । देशेऽल्पमांसे वृष्णमेद्रस्वोतोनखान्तरे ॥७॥

वर्त्मरोगादृतेऽक्षणोश्च शीतवर्षोष्णादुदिने ।

Both types of *kṣāra* are contraindicated in the following conditions—*pitta roga*, *raktaja roga*, *vāta roga*, weakness, fever, diarrhoea, diseases of the head and heart, anaemia, anorexia, cataract, after *sodhana*, swelling all over the body, panic, pregnant, during menstruation, prolapsed uterus, indigestion, during childhood and old age.

Contraindicated places and seasons:

Caustic alkalies should not be applied in the places of vital points, veins, tendons, joints, cartilage bones, sutures, arteries, throat, umbilicus, nail bed, testicles, penis, channels, less musculature areas, all the eye diseases except the disorders of the lids.

It should not be applied in the seasons which are very cold, very hot, rainy and also during inauspicious days.

Kṣārapāka vidhi:

कालमुष्ककशम्याककदंलीपारिभद्रकान् ॥८॥

अश्वकर्णमहावृक्षपलाशास्फोतवृक्षकान् । इन्द्रवृक्षाकंपूतीकनक्तमालाश्वमारकान् ॥९॥

काकजङ्घामपार्गमग्निमन्थाग्नितिल्वकान् । सार्वान् समूलशाखादीन् खण्डशः परिकल्पितान् ॥१०॥

कोशातकीश्वतस्तश्च शूकं नालं यवस्य च । निवाते निचयीकृत्य पृथक् तानि शिलातले ॥११॥

प्रक्षिप्य मुष्ककच्चये सुधाशमनि च दीपयेत् । ततस्तिलानां कुतलैर्दग्धवाऽग्नौ विगते पृथक् ॥१२॥

कृत्वा सुधाशमनां भस्म द्रोणं त्वितरभस्मनः । मुष्ककोत्तरमादाय प्रत्येकं जलमूत्रयोः ॥१३॥

गालयेदर्धभारेण महता वाससा च तत् । यावतिपच्छिलरक्ताच्छस्तीक्ष्णो जातस्तदा च तम् ॥१४॥

गृहीत्वा क्षारनिष्पन्दं पचेल्लौहृणं विघट्यन् । पच्यमाने ततस्तस्मिंस्ताः सुधाभस्मशर्कराः ॥१५॥

शुक्तीः क्षीरपकं शङ्खनाभीश्वायसभाजने । कृत्वा ऽग्निवर्णान्बहुशः क्षारोत्थे कुडवोमिते ॥१६॥

निर्वाप्य पिष्टवा तेनैव प्रतीवापं विनिक्षिपेत् । श्लक्षणं शकृदक्षशिखिगृधकङ्कपोतजम् ॥१७॥

चतुष्पात्यक्षिप्तालमनोह्नालवणानि च । परितः सुतरां चातो दव्या तमवधृयेत् ॥1 8 ॥
 सबाधैश्च यदोन्तिष्ठेद बुद्धौ दैर्लेहवदघनः । अवतार्य तदा शीतो यवराशावयोमये ॥1 9 ॥
 स्थाप्योऽयं मध्यमः क्षारो-

Types of bāhya parimārjana according to the mode of preparation:

It is of 3 types such as:

- (a) *Madhyama kṣāra* (moderate alkalies)
- (b) *Mṛdu kṣāra* (mild alkalies)
- (c) *Tikṣṇa kṣāra* (strong alkalies)

(a) Madhyama kṣārapāka-vidhi:

- * During *śarad ṛtu*, on an auspicious day, the physician should purify himself, wearing white clothes, should go to a big *kāla muṣkaka* tree of the middle age, which is not damaged.
- * He should worship it and pray to the Gods of tree.
- * The next day he doesn't witness any unnatural omen, should go to the tree early in the morning immediately after sunrise, and cut the branches of the tree, which spreads to the east or north.
- * Similarly the branches of *pāribhadra*, *palāśa*, *aśvakarna*, *rājavṛkṣa*, *mahāvṛkṣa*, *vṛkṣaka*, *indravṛkṣa*, *vṛṣā*, *saptacchada*, *naktamāla*, *tilvaka*, *kadalī*, *vibhitakī*, *citraka*, *apāmārga*, *agnimantha*, four types of *koṣṭakī* etc. should be collected along with the roots, fruits, leaves and branches and cut into pieces and made into heap.
- * Another heap of crystals of limestone should also be made near the heaps of the logs of *muṣkaka*, all these set on fire and the ashes are collected.
- * Then take the above ash and add 4 times water and 4 times cow's urine and stirred well and then filter it with a thick cloth till a clear, red, thick liquid is obtained.
- * The precipitate is kept on an oven and cooked nicely similar to that of *snehapāka*. During the process add the macerated powder of limestones, paste of the excreta of cock, peacock, falcon, heron, pegin; bile juice of animals and birds, *haritāla*, *manāṣilā* *saindhava* *lavanya* etc., conch shell and made red hot in an iron pan and then made it cool.
- * This should be kept in a heap of barley for preservation. This is the method of preparing *madhayama kṣārapāka*.

—न तु पिष्टवा क्षिपेन्मृदौ । निर्वाप्यापनयेत्तीक्ष्णे पूर्ववत् प्रतिवापनम् ॥2 0 ॥
 तथा लाङ्गूलिकादन्तिचित्रकातिविषावचाः । स्वर्जिकाकनकक्षीरिहिङ्गुपूतीकपल्लवाः ॥2 1 ॥
 तालपत्री विडं चेति, सप्तरात्रात्परं तु सः । योज्यः—

(b) Mṛdu kṣārapāka-vidhi:

The process of preparation of *mṛdu kṣāra* is almost similar to *madhyama kṣāra*. At the end only the macerated powder of lime stones, conch shell etc. are put into the oven during the process of cooking. There is no need of adding the paste of *prativāpa dravya*.

(c) Tikṣṇa kṣārapāka-vidhi:

- * The method of preparation of *tikṣṇa kṣāra* is also similar to *madhyama kṣāra*. In addition to *prativāpa dravyas* mentioned in *madhyama kṣāra*, the ashes of *lātigalī*, *dantī*, *citraka*,

ativiṣā, vacā, sarja kṣāra, swarṇakṣīrī, hiṅgu, pūtikarañja patra, tāla patrī and *bidalavaṇa* are also to be added.

* This should be used after 7 days, depending upon the strength of the disease.

Indications of different types of kṣāra:

—तीक्ष्णोऽनिलश्लेष्ममेदोजेष्वर्बुदादिषु ॥२ २ ॥

मध्येष्वेष्वेव मध्योऽन्यः पित्तास्त्रगुदजन्मसु ।

- * *Tikṣṇa kṣāra* is indicated in *arbuda* and other disorders caused by the vitiation of *vāta*, *kapha* and *medas*.
- * *Madhyama kṣāra* should be used in *arbuda* and other diseases when they are having moderate strength.
- * Where as *mṛdu kṣāra* is indicated in *arśas* arise due to the dominancy of *pitta* and *rakta*.

Method of potentiating kṣāra:

बलार्थं क्षीणपानीये क्षाराम्बु पुनरावपेत् ॥२ ३ ॥

If the potency of *kṣāra* is found to have become weak, it should again be dissolved in alkaline solution.

Kṣāra guna:

नातिशीक्षणमृदुः श्लक्षणः पिच्छिलः शीघ्रगः सितः । शिखरी सुखनिर्वाप्यो न विष्वन्दी न चातिरुक् ॥२ ४ ॥

क्षारो दशगुणः शङ्खतेजसोरपि कर्मकृत् । आचूषन्निव संरभाद्रात्रमापीडयन्निव ॥२ ५ ॥

सर्वतोऽनुसरन् दोषानुन्मूलयति मूलतः । कर्म कृत्वा गतरुजः स्वयमेवोपशाम्यति ॥२ ६ ॥

1. *Nāti tikṣṇa* (neither too strong), 2. *nāti mṛdu* (nor too weak), 3. *ślakṣṇa* (soft), 4. *picchila* (slimy), 5. *śighra* (quick in action), 6. *śīta* or *śveta* (white in colour), 7. *śikharī* (if falls on the ground from a little height forms like a small peak), 8. *sukha-nirvāpya* (easily dissolving), 9. *avisyandī* (no exudations) and 10. *na ca atiruk* (or) *alparuk* (causing little pain)—these are the ten qualities of *kṣāra*.

These *kṣaras* can perform many a number of functions such as excision, incision, extraction, scarification etc. of sharp and accessory instruments as well as cauterization.

These *kṣaras* by their actions of sucking, tormenting and spreading everywhere, they eradicate the root cause and eliminate the vitiated *doṣas* from the body. After subsiding the pain and other symptoms of the disease, the alkali also subsides of its own accord.

Notes:

Kṣāra doṣa: The following ten *kṣāra doṣas* are mentioned in *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha*:

1. *Atyuṣṇa* (very hot), 2. *ati śīta* (very cold), 3. *ati tikṣṇa* (very strong), 4. *ati mṛdu* (very mild), 5. *ati tanu* (very thin), 6. *ati ghana* (very thick), 7. *ati picchila* (too slimy), 8. *visarpī* (spreading around), 9. *hīna auṣadha* (prepared with less potent drugs) and 10. *hīna pāka* (inadequately prepared).

Equipment required for kṣāra karma:

Cotton, wick, probe, spatula, *añjalikā*, ghee, honey, *sukta*, *tuṣodaka*, whey, milk, water, cold pastes, bedding and chairs etc. should be procured before starting the process.

Kṣāra karma:

क्षारसाध्ये गदे छिन्ने लिखिते स्नावितेऽथवा । क्षारं शलाकया दत्त्वा प्लोतप्रावृतदेहया ॥२७॥
मात्राशतमुपेक्षेत-

- * The patient eligible to receive caustic therapy should be made to sit or lie down and held tight by the attendants.
- * The diseased part should be punctured, scratched or cut by a knife and the alkali applied to the spot with a metal rod.
- * After the application a period of 100 seconds should be waited.

Guda arśas (Hemorrhoids):

-त्राशःस्वावृताननम् । हस्तेन यन्त्रं कुर्वति-

In hemorrhoids, the alkali is applied through the slit of the proctoscope with the help of a rod. After the application, the proctoscope is covered with the hand and allowed for a period of 100 seconds.

Vartma roga:

-वर्त्मरोगेषु वर्त्मनी ॥२८॥

निर्भुज्य पिचुनाऽच्छाद्य कृष्णभागं विनिक्षिपेत् । पद्मपत्रतनुः क्षारलेपो-

In the diseases of the eye lids, they should be held averted, the cornea should be covered with cotton swab and the alkali is applied as thin as a lotus petal.

Nāsā roga & karṇa roga:

-घाणार्बुदेषु च ॥२९॥

प्रत्यादित्वं निष्पण्णस्य समुन्नत्याग्रनासिकाम् । मात्रा विधार्यः पञ्चाशत् तद्वदर्शसि कर्णजे ॥३०॥

- * In nasal polyps, malignant tumors the patient is made to sit facing the sun.
- * Then the nostrils should be averted and the alkali is applied and allowed for a period of 50 seconds.
- * Similar is the procedure with the ear disorders.

Post-operative care:

क्षारं प्रमार्जनेनानु परिमृज्यावगम्य च । सुदग्धं घृतमध्वक्तं तत्योमस्तुकाञ्जिकैः ॥३१॥

निर्वापयेत्ततः साज्जैः स्वादुशीतैः प्रदेहयेत् । अभिष्वन्दीनि भोज्यानि भोज्यानि क्लेदनाय च ॥३२॥

यदि च स्थिरमूलत्वात्क्षारदग्धं न शीर्यते । धान्याम्लबीजयष्ट्याहृतिलैरालेपयेत्ततः ॥३३॥

तिलकल्कः समधुको घृतात्को व्रणरोपणः ।

- * After the stipulated time, the alkali is removed by a brush and then smeared with honey, ghee etc.
- * After some time the area should be covered with the paste of the drugs viz. *kṣīra*, *mastu* and *kāñjika* which are sweet in taste and cold in potency after mixing with ghee.

- * He should be given food and other recipes, which promote secretions and moistening of the body.
- * If the site of the burn does not get torn because of being deep rooted the paste of *dhānyāmla*, *yaṣṭi* and *tila* should be applied.
- * Paste of *tila* and *yaṣṭimadhu* when mixed with *ghṛta* is useful for healing the ulcer.

Samyak dagdha lakṣaṇa:

पक्वजम्बवसितं सत्रं सम्यगदग्धं विपर्यये ॥३ ४ ॥

The site of the application of caustic alkalies assuming the color of a ripe fruit of *jāmuna* and slightly depressed in the center are the signs of *samyak dagdha lakṣaṇa*.

Durdagdha lakṣaṇa:

ताप्रतातोदकण्डवाद्यैर्दुर्दग्धं तं पुनर्दहेत् ।

Signs those of opposite to the above such as the site appears as copper in color, pricking pain, itching, lassitude etc. are considered as the features of *durdagdha*.

Ati dagdha lakṣaṇa:

अतिदाधे स्ववेद्रक्तं मूर्च्छादाहज्वरादयः ॥३ ५ ॥

गुदे विशेषाद्विण्मूत्रसंरोधोऽतिप्रवर्तनम् । पुंस्त्वोपघातो मृत्युर्वा गुदस्य शातनादध्युवम् ॥३ ६ ॥

नासायां नासिकावंशदरणाकुञ्जनोद्भवः । भवेच्च विषयाज्ञानं तद्वच्छ्रोत्रादिकेष्वपि ॥३ ७ ॥

Appearance of bleeding, fainting, local burning sensation, redness and swelling, fever etc. are the features of *ati dagdha*.

Excessive burning over the anus leads to either obstruction or too much elimination of faeces and urine, impotency and even death due to injury to the rectum.

Excessive burning of the nose leads to contraction of nasal bridge and loss of sensation of smell. Similarly ears and the other sense organs loose their normal functions if excessive burning takes place while performing *kṣāra karma*.

Management of complications due to atidagdha:

विशेषादत्र सेकोऽस्तैर्लेपो मधु घृतं तिलाः । वातपित्तहरा चेष्टा सर्वैः शिशिरा क्रिया ॥३ ८ ॥

Seka with sour substances, *lepa* with honey, ghee and *tilā*. *Vāta-pittahara* foods and activities and all other activities which produce cold will be useful to manage the complications arises due to excessive burning.

अम्लो हि शीतः स्पर्शेन क्षारस्तेनोपसंहितः । यात्याशु स्वादुतां तस्मादम्लैर्निर्वापयेत्तराम् ॥३ ९ ॥

As sour substances are cold to touch and will attain sweet in taste by contacting with alkaline substances. Hence it is advised to wash the wounds caused by alkalies with sour substances.

AGNI-KARMA

(Thermal Cautery)

Definition:

The therapeutic procedure which can be conducted by using fire or which is pertaining to fire is known as *agnikarma* or thermal cautery.

(विषाग्निशस्त्राशनिमृत्युतुल्यः क्षारो भवेदल्पमतिप्रयुक्तः ।
स धीमता सम्यग्नुप्रयुक्तो रोगान्निहन्यादचिरेण घोरान् ॥1 ॥)

Kṣāra administered by an ignorant physician is like death caused by *viṣa*, *agni*, *śastra* and *aśani* (thunder bolt). Where as the same administered properly by an intelligent physician results in cure of even dreadful diseases quickly.

Thermal cautery is superior to caustic alkalies:

अग्निः क्षारादपि श्रेष्ठस्तद्वधानामसम्भवात् । भेषजक्षारशस्त्रैश्च न सिन्धानां प्रसाधनात् ॥4 0 ॥

The diseases, which are not cured by the use of medicines, surgery and caustic alkalies, can be managed by thermal cautery, without any reversion. Hence thermal cautery is definitely superior to caustic alkalies.

Suitable places for thermal cautery:

त्वचि मांसे सिरास्नायुसन्ध्यस्थिषु स युज्यते ।

Skin, muscles, veins, tendons, joints and bones are the suitable places for thermal cauterization.

Indications of thermal cautery on the skin and the equipment required:

मषाङ्गलानिमूर्धार्तिमन्थकीलतिलादिषु ॥4 1 ॥

त्वग्दाहो वर्तिगोदन्तसूर्यकान्तशरादिभिः ।

The following diseases are suitable for thermal cautery:

- * *Maṣaka* (black moles), *anagaglāni* (weakness of the body parts), *mūrdhārti* (diseases of the head), *mantha* (*adhimantha*/gloucoma), *kīla* (*carmakīla*/warts), *tilakālika* (black spots/moles similar to size & shape of a gingily seed).

- * In the above conditions thermal cautery is to be conducted on the skin with the help of *varti*, *godanta* (cow's tooth), *suryakānta* stone, arrow and with other rods.

Indications of thermal cautery on the muscle and the equipment required:

अर्शोभगन्दरग्रन्थिनाडीदुष्टवणादिषु ॥4 2 ॥

मांसदाहो मधुस्नेहजाम्बवौष्ठगुडादिभिः ।

- * *Arśas* (hemorrhoids), *bhagandara* (fistula-in-ano), *granthi* (benign and malignant tumors), *nāḍī vraṇa* (sinuses), *dusṭa vraṇa* (chronic ulcers and suppurated wounds) are suitable for conducting thermal cautery on the muscles.

- * Honey, ghee, sesame oil, muscle fat, *jāmbavauṣṭha* *śalākā*, jaggery, *yastimadhu*, gold, silver, copper, iron and bronze etc. are useful for the thermal cauterization on the muscles.

Indications of thermal cautery on the veins and the equipment required:

श्लिष्टवर्त्मन्यसूक्ष्मावनील्यसम्यग्व्यधादिषु ॥४३॥

सिरादिदाहस्तैरेव-

- * *Śliṣṭa vartma*, profuse bleeding, blue mole and where the venesection was not properly conducted, thermal cauterization is indicated on the veins.
- * It should be conducted with *jāmbavauṣṭha* *śalākā*, needle, bees' wax, honey, jaggery and ghee.

Contraindicated for thermal cautery:

-न दहेत्क्षारवारितान् । अन्तःशल्यासृजो भिन्नकोष्ठान् भूरित्रिणातुरान् ॥४४॥

- * Those who are contraindicated for caustic alkalies, foreign body is not removed, intestinal perforation, hemorrhagic disorders, vitiation of *rakta*, multiple ulcers, etc. are also should not be conducted chemical cauterization.
- * It should not be conducted in summer seasons.
- * In an emergency, it should be done after giving cold treatments and unctuous food.

Notes:

Agnikarma-vidhi (Procedure):

- * After selecting the eligible patient, perform spiritual rites, and made him lie down on the cot comfortably facing east and held tight by the attendants.
- * Then heat the instruments such as *jāmbavauṣṭha* *śalākā* etc. till the tips become red-hot.
- * Afterwards remove them and place there on the body of the patient creating marks such as semicircular, circular, cruciform, number eight, point, straight line, dotted patch etc.
- * It should be conducted till getting the proper signs of cauterization such as burning associated with sound, foul smell and contraction of the skin.
- * The patient is being kept by telling soothing words.
- * Formation of the color of a pigeon, mild oedema and pain, dryness and contraction of the skin will be seen when the thermal cautery was done on the skin.



Agnikarma vidhi

- * Blackish discoloration, wound become swollen, arrest of bleeding and discharge of the lymph etc., are the symptoms of thermal cauterization on the muscles.
- * If the cauterization conducted on the veins tendons etc. the wound becomes blackish red in color, hard and rough.

Post-operative care:

सुदर्धं घृतमध्वक्तं स्निग्धशीतैः प्रदेहयेत् ।

After the completion of the process of thermal cauterization, the site should be properly applied with ghee and honey and then apply the pastes of unctuous and cold substances.

Proper signs and symptoms of thermal cauterization:

तस्य लिङ्गं स्थिते रक्ते शब्दवल्लसिकान्वितम् ॥४५॥

पक्वतालकपोताभं सुरोहं नातिवेदनम् ।

- * Arrest of bleeding that appears during the course of cauterization.
- * Emergence of crackling sound from the site of cauterization.
- * Discharge of lymph from the site.
- * Colour of skin at the site of cauterization resembles either of a ripened *tāla phala* or of a pigeon.
- * Having mild pain and the wound heals quickly.

DAGDHA BHEDA

Durdagdha & atidagdha lakṣaṇa:

प्रमाददाधवत्सर्वे दुर्दाधात्यर्थदाधयोः ॥४६॥

The signs and symptoms of *durdagdha* (improper cauterization) and *atidagdha* (excessive cauterization) are similar to *pramāda dagdha* (accidental burns).

चतुर्धा तत्तु तुच्छेन सह-

Dagdha (cauterization) is of 4 types as under:

- (a) *Tuccha dagdha* (inadequate)
- (c) *Samyak dagdha* (proper)
- (b) *Durdagdha* (improper)
- (d) *Ati dagdha* (excessive)

Tuccha dagdha lakṣaṇa:

-तुच्छस्य लक्षणम् । त्वग्विवर्णोव्यतेऽत्यर्थं न च स्फोटसमुद्भवः ॥४७॥

Discoloration and severe burning sensation and non emergence of boils are the features of *tuccha dagdha*.

Durdagdha lakṣaṇa:

सस्फोटदाहतीव्रोषं दुर्दाधम्-

Emergence of boils and severe burning sensation are the features of *durdagdha*.

Ati dagdha lakṣaṇa:

—अतिदाहतः । मांसलम्बनसङ्कोचदाहथूपनवेदना: ॥48॥

सिरादिनाशस्तुण्मूर्छाव्रणगामीर्यमृत्यवः ।

Drooping down of muscles, contraction, burning sensation, feeling of emergence of hot fumes, severe pain, destruction of veins and others, thirst, fainting, deep wound formation and even death are the features of *atidagdha*.

Treatment for tuccha dagdha:

तुच्छस्यारिनप्रतपनं कार्यमुष्णं च भेषजम् ॥49॥

स्त्यानेऽस्वे वेदनाऽत्यर्थं विलीने मन्दता रुजः ।

- * Application of heat over the region of *tuccha dagdha vrana* and use of hot substances is the line of treatment indicated.
- * Never administer cold substances and treatments.
- * Cold treatments results in accumulation of blood which causes the increase of pain and burning sensation.
- * Due to the application of hot treatments coagulated blood dissolves and pain subsides.
- * Hence it is advised to treat *tuccha dagdha* with hot substances only.

Treatment for durdagdha:

दुर्दग्धे शीतमुष्णं च युक्त्यादादौ ततो हिमम् ॥50॥

- * In *durdagdha* the treatment with cold and hot substances should be conducted and followed by cold treatments viz,
 - Application of ghee.
 - Washing the wound with cold decoctions etc.

Treatment for samyak dagdha:

सम्यग्दग्धे तवक्षीरिप्लक्ष्चन्दनगैरिकैः । लिम्पेत्साज्यामृतैरुद्धर्वं पित्तविद्रधिवत्क्रिया ॥51॥

- * Besmear the wound with the paste prepared by pounding the powders of *tavakṣīrī*, *plakṣa*, *cadana*, *gairika* and *guḍūcī* with ghee for the management of *samyak dagdha vrana*.
- * After reducing the burning sensation, follow the line of treatment indicated for *pitta vidradhi*.

Treatment for ati dagdha:

अतिदग्धे द्रुतं कुर्यात्सर्वं पित्तविसर्पवत् ।

In case of *atidagdha* follow the line of treatment prescribed for *pittaja visarpa*.

Treatment for sneha dagdha:

स्नेहदग्धे भृशतरं रूक्षं तत्र तु योजयेत् ॥52॥

Using severe dry substances can treat scalds formed due to the hot unctuous substances.

(शस्त्रक्षाराग्नयो यस्मान्मृत्योः परमायुधम् । अप्रमत्तो भिषक् तस्मात्तान् सम्यगवचारयेत् ॥1॥)

(Improper utilization of sharp instruments, chemical and thermal cauterization causes the death of the patients. Hence, the physician should be cautious while handling and should have perfect theoretical as well as practical knowledge.)

समाप्ते स्थानमिदं हृदयस्य रहस्यवत् । अत्रार्थः सूत्रिता: सूक्ष्मा: प्रतन्यन्ते हि सर्वतः ॥१५३॥

This is the end of the section entitled Sūtra Sthāna, which is full of secrets similar to the heart. In this section it is briefly mentioned the subject matter of Aṣṭāṅga Āyurveda, which has been elaborately discussed in the relevant sections of the treatise Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya.

इति श्रीवैद्यपतिसिंहगुप्तसूनश्रीमद्वाभटविरचितायामष्टाङ्गहृदयसंहितायां

प्रथमे सूत्रस्थाने क्षाराग्निकर्मविधिर्नाम त्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः ॥१३०॥

Thus ends the thirtieth chapter entitled *Kṣāra-agnikarma vidhi Adhyāya* of Sūtra Sthāna in Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṃhitā, which was composed by Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa son of Śrī Vaidyapati Śiṁhagupta.

In this chapter Ācārya Vāgbhaṭa discussed about the caustic alkalies; properties of alkalies, 2 types such as external and internal administration; contraindicated persons and the places of contraindication; three types of alkalies according to the preparation—moderate, mild and strong; *kṣāra-guṇa* & *dosa*, required equipment, procedure; post operative care; signs and symptoms of proper, insufficient and excessive conduction of caustic alkalies. thermal cauterization—definition, importance, suitable places, suitable diseases for conducting thermal cautery on the skin, muscle, veins, tendons, bones and joints and the required equipment, contraindications, procedure; types of improper cauterization, their symptoms and treatment have been discussed in detail.

* समाप्तं चेदं प्रथमं सूत्रस्थानम् *

Thus ends Sūtra-Sthāna, the first section.

ANNEXURE : I

Important Essay Questions

1. Write in detail about the qualities and importance of critical points.
2. Write an essay about *prati-karshana*.
3. Write about the classification of kutas and discuss about the features of *Adara* & *Vikaryaka kuta*.
4. Write about *rayangrahanam*.
5. Write about the types of *veena* and explain about their functions.
6. Define *yatra*, write their types and functions.
7. Write about the *gatika* and the persons who composed them.
8. Explain the types of *mudras* performed in detail.
9. Draw in detail the *ashtanga* diagram.
10. Mention the list of *dhatus* and their properties.
11. Name the types of *shirodhara* and their methods.
12. Write an essay about *Divya-dravya*.
13. Describe the procedures of *vamana* & *vamana*.
14. Write about the features of *mudra* & *kutiyata* *rasayanas* and complications of their excessive use.
15. Write an essay about *nasochikha* and *nitrodesaptha*.
16. Write about the procedure of *mukhiyoga*.

ANNEXURE

-
- ♦ Important essay & short questions
 - ♦ Important slokas to be learnt by heart
 - ♦ Table of weights and measures
 - ♦ Glimpse of *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya*
 - ♦ Alphabetical index of the herbs
 - ♦ Glossary of Sanskrit terms

Chakrasana
Principle of posture, mind and body
Kriyashakti
Gopaka prakopa
Surya nasha veena
Vishnu purana
Lakshmi purana
Bhagavata purana
Ganesha purana
Shantipurana
Surya purana
Guru purana
Dharma purana
Tattva purana
Vaisesika purana
Buddhist purana
Jaina purana
Shiva purana
Gita purana
Shanta purana
Shantipurana
Shantivaisesika purana
Shantibuddhist purana
Shantijaina purana

12. Anudala
13. Sodasavrikshikadikshana
14. Unshes vamana
15. Divya-dravya
16. Chakra
17. Lingaya
18. Vaidikadharma
19. Amalaka oilseed
20. Rogayogavikarana
21. Adharasudhava
22. Types of ghee and their uses

ANNEXURE : I

Important Essay Questions

1. Write in detail about the qualities and importance of cikitsā pāda.
2. Write an essay about pañcavidha pitta.
3. Write about the classification of kāla and discuss about the features of ādāna & visarga kāla.
4. Write about trayo upasthambha.
5. Write about the types of sweda and explain about upanāha sweda.
6. Define yantra, write their types and functions.
7. Write about the classification of vasti and the procedure of nirūha vasti.
8. Explain the types of mūrdha taila and the detailed description of śirovasti.
9. Discuss in detail about dinacaryā (daily regimen).
10. Mention the effects of suppression of urine and its treatment.
11. Name the types of pañcamūla and mention the drugs come under the group of daśamūla along with their properties.
12. Write an essay about Drava-dravya vijñāniya.
13. Describe the procedure of vamana karma.
14. Write about the features of madhura & kaṣāya rasa dravyas and complications of their excessive use.
15. Write an essay about pañcavidha vāta, pitta & kapha.
16. Write about the procedure of jaloukā-vacāraṇa.
17. Describe in detail about the procedure of nasya karma.
18. Write about the normal and abnormal features of tridoṣas.
19. Write an essay about adhāraṇīya vega.
20. Describe the features and regimen of grīṣma ṛtu.
21. Describe the procedure of puṭapāka.
22. Features of sharp instruments.
23. Write an essay about oleation therapy.
24. Write in detail about ūṣṭakarma vidhi.
25. Acchapeya & sneha vicāraṇā.

Short Questions

1. Chardana gaṇa
2. Features of poisonous food and drinks
3. Viśānna parīkṣā
4. Caya & prakopa
5. Sadyo sneha yoga
6. Pācaka pitta
7. Uttaravasti vidhi
8. Rtu sandhi
9. Toya varga
10. Ūṣṭa doṣa (defects of sharp instruments)
11. Pratimarṣa nasya
12. Aṇutaila
13. Śuddha rakta lakṣaṇa
14. Dhūma yantra
15. Dravya guṇas
16. Ojas
17. Gokṣīra
18. Virūḍdhāhāra
19. Āmadoṣa cikitsā
20. Rogārogyaika karaṇa
21. Adhāraṇīya vega
22. Types of ajīrṇa and their treatment

- | | |
|--|--|
| 23. Śaradṛtu caryā | 49. Vipāka |
| 24. Vyāyāma | 50. Madhura rasa dravya lakṣaṇa & karma |
| 25. Snehapāna phala | 51. Vicitra pratyayārabdha dravya |
| 26. Drava sweda | 52. Visūcikā & alasaka |
| 27. Phala varga | 53. Trividha roga mārga |
| 28. Kāsaghna dhūma | 54. Drugs mentioned in tikta gaṇa |
| 29. Types of gaṇḍūṣa | 55. Rasa catuṣka |
| 30. General line of treatment for śārīrika and mānasika doṣa | 56. Ouṣadha upayoga kāla |
| 31. Susādhyā vyādhi lakṣaṇa | 57. Laṅghana bheda |
| 32. Snehapāna vidhi | 58. Triphalā guṇa karma |
| 33. Vasti yantra | 59. Swatantra vyādhi-paratantra vyādhi |
| 34. Anupāna | 60. Kṣīra varga |
| 35. Anagni sweda | 61. Relation between doṣa & ṛtu |
| 36. Mukha lepa | 62. Madhu |
| 37. Rasa and anurasa | 63. Āgneya sweda |
| 38. Kṛtānna varga | 64. Yoga vasti |
| 39. Akṣi tarpaṇa | 65. Types & benefits of dhūmapāna |
| 40. Saṁsarjana karma | 66. Bandhana prakāra |
| 41. Dhūma varti | 67. Māṁsa varga |
| 42. Pārthiva & āpya dravya lakṣaṇa | 68. Arśo yantra |
| 43. Vasti yantra | 69. Fill up and explain the sloka "Uṣṇoda-kopacārisyāt..." |
| 44. Mātrā vasti | 70. Aṇu yantra & aṇu śastra |
| 45. Kavala & gaṇḍūṣa | 71. Virecyā (eligible for purgation therapy) |
| 46. Pramāda dagdha lakṣaṇa & tuttha dagdha cikitsā | 72. Sirāvedhana vidhi |
| 47. Kṣāra guṇa & karma | 73. Treatment for drowning |
| 48. Taila varga | 74. Features of pacyamāna śopha |
| | 75. Kṣāra-pāka vidhi |

*

ANNEXURE : II

Important Ślokas to be Learnt by Heart

CHAPTER 1

Āyuśkāmiyam Adhyāya

Māngalācaraṇa:

रागादिरोगान् सततानुषक्ता—
नशेषकायप्रसूतानशेषान् ।
औत्सुक्यमोहारतिदाङ्गधान
योऽपूर्ववैद्याय नमोऽस्तु तस्मै ॥1॥

Eight branches of Āyurveda:

कायबालग्रहोऽर्वाङ्गशल्यदंष्ट्राजरावृचान् ॥5॥
अष्टावङ्गानि तस्याहुश्चिकित्सा येषु संश्रिता ।

Description of doṣas:

वायुः पित्तं कफश्चेति त्रयो दोषाः समासतः ॥6॥
विकृताऽविकृता देहं घन्ति ते वर्तयन्ति च ।

Location of tridoṣa:

ते व्यापिनोऽपि हृत्राभ्योरधोमध्योर्ध्वसंश्रयाः ॥7॥

Relationship of doṣas and the age, time & food:

वयोऽहोरात्रिभुक्तानां तेऽन्तमध्यादिगाः क्रमात् ।

Relationship between agni & doṣas:

तैर्भवेद्विषमस्तीक्ष्णो मन्दशाग्निः समैः समः ॥8॥

Influence of doṣas on koṣṭha:

कोष्ठः क्रूरो मृदुर्मध्यो मध्यः स्यात्तैः समैरपि ।

Prakṛti:

शुक्रार्तवस्थैर्जन्मादौ विषेणेव विषक्रिमेः ॥9॥
तैश्च तिस्रः प्रकृतयो हीनमध्योत्तमाः पृथक् ।

Tridoṣa guṇa:

तत्र रूक्षो लघुः शीतः खरः सूक्ष्मश्लोऽनिलः ।
पित्तं सस्नेहतीक्ष्णोष्णं लघु विश्रं सरं द्रवम् ॥11॥
स्तिर्धः शीतो गुरुर्मन्दः श्लक्षणो मृत्स्नः स्थिरः कफः ।

Dhātu & mala:

रसासुङ्गमासमेदोऽस्थिमज्जशुक्राणि धातवः ।
सप्त दूष्यामला मूत्रशकृत्स्वेदादयोऽपि च ॥13॥

Vṛddhi & kṣaya:

वृद्धिः समानैः सर्वेषां विपरीतैर्विपर्ययः ।

Rasa:

रसाः स्वाद्वाम्ललवणतित्तोषणकषायकाः ॥14॥
षड् द्रव्यमाश्रितास्ते च यथापूर्वं बलावहाः ।
तत्राद्या मारुतं घन्ति त्रयस्तित्तकादयः कफम् ॥15॥
कषायतित्तकमधुराः पित्तमन्ये तु कुर्वते ।

Dravya bheda:

शमनं कोपनं स्वस्थितिं द्रव्यमिति त्रिधा ॥16॥

Virya, vipāka:

उष्णाशीतगुणोत्कर्षात्तत्र वीर्यं द्विधा स्मृतम् ।
त्रिधा विपाको द्रव्यस्य स्वाद्वाम्लकटुकात्मकः ॥17॥

Dravya guna:

गुरुमन्दहिमस्तिर्धश्लक्षणसान्द्रमृदुस्थिराः ।
गुणाः ससूक्ष्मविशदा विंशतिः सविपर्ययाः ॥18॥

Causative factors for diseases:

कालार्थकर्मणां योगो हीनमिथ्यातिमात्रकः ।
सम्यग्योगश्च विज्ञेयो रोगारोग्यैककारणम् ॥19॥

Disease and health:

रोगस्तु दोषवैषम्यं दोषसाम्यमरोगता ।

Roga bheda:

निजागन्तुविभागेन तत्र रोगा द्विधा स्मृताः ॥20॥

Rogādhiṣṭhāna:

तेषां कायमनोभेदादधिष्ठानमपि द्विधा ।

Mānasika doṣa:

रजस्तमश्च मनसो द्वौ च दोषावुदाहतौ ॥21॥

Rogi-roga parīkṣā:

दर्शनस्पृशनप्रश्नैः परीक्षेत च रोगिणम् ।
रोगं निदानप्राग्नूपलक्षणोपशयाप्तिभिः ॥22॥

Deśa bheda:

भूमिदेहप्रभेदेन देशमाहुरिह द्विधा ।
जाङ्गलं वातभूयिष्ठमनूपं तु कफोल्बणम् ॥23॥
साधारणं सममलं त्रिधा भूदेशमादिशेत् ।

Kāla bheda:

क्षणादिव्याध्यवस्था च कालो भेषजयोगकृत् ॥2 4 ॥

Ouśadha bheda:

शोधनं शमनं चेति समासादौषधं द्विधा ।

Śārīrika & mānasika doṣa cikitsā:

शरीरजानां दोषाणां क्रमेण परमौषधम् ॥2 5 ॥

बस्तिविरीको वमनं तथा तैलं धृतं मधु ।

धीर्धैर्यात्मादिविज्ञानं मनोदोषौषधं परम् ॥2 6 ॥

Pāda cauṣṭaya:

भिषगद्रव्याण्युपस्थाता रोगी पादचतुष्टयम् ।

चिकित्सितस्य निर्दिष्टं, प्रत्येकं तच्चतुर्गुणम् ॥2 7 ॥

Pāda cauṣṭaya guṇa:

दक्षस्तीर्थात्तशास्त्रार्थे दृष्टकर्मा शुचिर्भिषक् ।

बहुकल्पं बहुगुणं सम्पन्नं योग्यमौषधम् ॥2 8 ॥

अनुरक्तः शुचिदक्षो बुद्धिमान् परिचारकः ।

आद्यो रोगी भिषगवशयो ज्ञापकः सत्त्ववानपि ॥2 9 ॥

Sukha-sādhyā roga lakṣaṇa:

सर्वैषधक्षमे देहे यूनः पुंसो जितात्मनः ।

अमर्मगोऽल्पहेत्वग्रस्परुप्लोऽनुप्रवः ॥3 0 ॥

अतुल्यदूष्यदेशर्तुप्रकृतिः पादसम्पदि ।

ग्रहेष्वनुगुणेष्वेकदोषमार्गो नवः सुखः ॥3 1 ॥

CHAPTER 2 Dinacaryā Adhyāya

Prātaḥkālotthānः:

ब्राह्मो मुहूर्तं उन्निष्ठेत् स्वस्थो रक्षार्थमायुषः ।

शरीरचिन्तां निर्वर्त्य कृतशौचविधिस्ततः ॥1 1 ॥

Danta-dhāvana vidhi:

अर्कन्यग्रोधखदिरकरञ्जककुभादिजम् ।

प्रातर्भुक्त्वा च मृद्घं कषायकटुतिकक्षम् ॥2 ॥

कनीन्यग्रसपस्थौल्यं सुकूर्चं द्वादशाङ्गुलम् ।

भक्षयेद्दन्तधवनं दन्तमांसान्यबाध्यन् ॥3 ॥

Contraindicated for danta-dhāvana:

नाद्यादजीर्णवमयुश्चासकासज्ज्वरादिती ।

तृष्णाऽस्यपाकहत्रेत्रशिरःकणामयी च तत् ॥4 ॥

Añjana:

सौवीरमञ्जनं नित्यं हितमक्षणोस्ततो भजेत् ।

चक्षुस्तेजोमयं तस्य विशेषात् श्लेष्मतो भयम् ॥5 ॥

योजयेत्सप्तरात्रेऽस्मात् स्त्रावणार्थं रसाञ्जनम् ।

ततो नावनगण्डूषधूमताम्बूलभागभवेत् ॥6 ॥

Abhyaṅga:

अध्यङ्गमाचरेत्रित्वं, स जराश्रमवातहा ।

दृष्टिप्रसादपुष्ट्यायुःस्वप्नसुत्ववदार्थकृत् ॥8 ॥

शिरःश्रवणपादेषु तं विशेषेण शीलयेत् ।

वर्ज्योऽध्यङ्गः कफग्रस्तकृतसंशुद्धयजीर्णिभिः ॥9 ॥

Vyāyāma:

लाघवं कर्मसामर्थ्यं दीप्तोऽग्निर्मेदसः क्षयः ।

विभक्त्यनगात्रत्वं व्यायामादुपजायते ॥1 0 ॥

वातपित्तामयी बालो वृद्धोऽजीर्णी च तं त्यजेत् ।

अर्धशक्त्या निषेव्यस्तु बलिभिः स्निग्धभोजिभिः ॥

शीतकाले वसन्ते च, मन्दमेव ततोऽन्यदा ।

तं कृत्वाऽनुसुखं देहं मर्दयेच्च समन्ततः ॥1 2 ॥

Udvartana:

उद्वर्तनं कफहरं मेदसः प्रविलायनम् ।

स्थिरीकरणमङ्गानां त्वक्प्रसादकरं परम् ॥1 5 ॥

Snāna:

दीपनं वृष्ट्यमायुष्यं स्नानमूर्जाबिलप्रदम् ।

कण्डूलमश्रमस्वेदतन्नातृदाहपाप्नित् ॥1 6 ॥

Daśavidha pāpa:

हिंसास्तेयान्यथाकामं पैशुन्यं परुषानृते ॥2 1 ॥

समिभवालापं व्यापादमधिध्यां दृग्विपर्ययम् ।

पापं कर्मेति दशधा कायवाङ्मानसैस्त्वजेत् ॥2 2 ॥

CHAPTER 3 Rtucaryā Adhyāya

Ādāna kāla:

तप्तिमन्हृत्यर्थतीक्षणोच्छारक्षा मार्गस्वभावतः ।

आदित्यपवनाः सौम्यान् क्षपयन्ति गुणान् भुवः ॥3 ॥

तिक्तः कषायः कटुको बलिनोऽत्र रसाः क्रमात् ।

तस्मादादानमाग्नेयम्-

Visarga kāla:

-ऋतवो दक्षिणायनम् ॥4 ॥

वर्षादयो विसर्गश्चयद्वलं विसृजत्ययम् ।

सौम्यत्वादत्र सोमो हि बलवान् हीयते रविः ॥5 ॥

मेघवृष्ट्यनिलैः शीतैः शान्ततापे महीतले ।

स्निग्धाश्चेहाम्ललवणमधुरा बलिनो रसाः ॥6 ॥

Nature of body strength according to seasons:

शीतेऽन्यं वृष्टिष्वर्मेऽल्पं बलं मध्यं तु शेषयोः ।

Hemanta ḥtu caryā:

वातधन्तैलैरभ्यङ्गं मूर्धिं तैलं विमर्दनम् ।
नियुद्धं कुशलैः सार्थं पादाघातं च युक्तिः ॥10॥
कथायापहतस्नेहस्ततः स्नातो यथाविधि ।
कुड्कुमेन सदर्पेण प्रदिग्धोऽगुरुधूपितः ॥11॥
रसान् स्निग्धान् पलं पुष्टं गौडमच्छसुरां सुराम् ।
गोधूपपिष्ठमाषेक्षुक्षीरोत्थविकृतीः शुभा: ॥12॥

Vasanta ḥtu caryā:

तीक्ष्णैर्वर्मननस्याद्यैर्युरुक्षैश्च भोजनैः ।
व्यायामोद्वर्तनाधातैर्जित्वा श्लेष्माणमुल्बन्म् ॥19॥
स्नातोऽनुलिप्तः कपूरचन्दनागुरुकुड्कुमैः ।
पुराणयवगोद्यमक्षैद्रजाङ्गलशूल्यभुक् ॥20॥
सहकारसोन्मिश्रानास्वाद्य प्रिययाऽपित्तान् ।
प्रियास्यसङ्गमुरभीन् प्रियानेत्रोत्पलाङ्कितान् ॥21॥

Gṛīṣma ḥtu caryā:

अतोऽस्मिन्पटुकं द्रवम्लव्यायामार्ककरांस्त्यजेत् ॥27॥
भजेन्मधुमेवान्नं लघु स्निग्धं हिमं द्रवम् ।
मुशीततोयसिक्ताङ्गो लिहात्सकून् सर्शकरान् ॥28॥
मद्यं न पेयं, पेयं वा स्वत्पयं, सुबहुवारि वा ।
अन्यथा शोषणैथिल्यदाहमोहान् करोति तत् ॥29॥

Varṣā ḥtu caryā:

आस्थापनं शुद्धतनुर्जीर्णं धान्यं रसान् कृतान् ।
जाङ्गलं पिशितं यूषान् मध्वरिष्टं चिरन्तनम् ॥45॥
मस्तु सौवर्चलाढ्यं वा पञ्चकोलावच्यूर्णितम् ।
दिव्यं कौपं शृतं चाम्भो भोजनं त्वतिदुर्दिने ॥46॥
व्यक्ताम्ललवणस्नेहं संशुष्कं क्षीद्रवलघु ।
अपादचारी सुरभिः सततं धूपिताम्बरः ॥47॥
हर्म्यपृष्ठे वसेद्वाष्यशीतशीकरवर्जिते ।

Śarad ḥtu caryā:

तज्जयाय घृतं तिक्तं विरेको रक्तमोक्षणम् ।
तिक्तं स्वादु कथायं च क्षुधितोऽन्नं भजेल्लघु ॥50॥
शालिमुद्रसिताधात्रीपटोलमधुजाङ्गलम् ।
तपतं तपांशुकिरणैः शीतं शीतांशुरश्मिभिः ॥51॥
समन्तादप्यहोरात्रमगस्त्योदयनिर्विषम् ।
शुचि हंसोदकं नाम निर्मलं मलजिज्जलम् ॥52॥
नाभिष्वन्दिन वा रूक्षं पानादिष्वमृतोपमम् ।
चन्दनोशीरकपूरमुक्तास्वग्वसनोज्ज्वलः ॥53॥

Need of consuming substances

having all the tastes:

नित्यं सर्वसाभ्यासः स्वस्वाधिक्यमृतावृतौ ॥57॥

Rtu sandhi:

ऋत्वोरन्त्यादिसप्ताहावृत्तसन्धिरिति स्मृतः ।

CHAPTER 4
Rogānutpādaniya Adhyāya

Adhāraṇīya vega:

वेगान् नधारयेद्वातविष्णुत्रक्षवतुदक्षुधाम् ।
निद्राकासश्रमश्वासजृम्भाश्रुच्छर्दिरेतसाम् ॥1॥

Effects of suppression of natural urges
and their management adhovāta (flatus):

अधोवातस्य रोधेन गुल्मोदावर्तरुक्क्लमाः ।
वातमूत्रशक्तसङ्गदृष्ट्यग्निवधहृद्रदाः ॥2॥

Sakṛt (faeces):

शकृतः पिण्डिकोद्देष्टप्रतिश्यायशिरोरुजः ।
ऊर्ध्ववायुः परीकर्त्ते हृदयस्योपरोधनम् ॥3॥
मुखेन विटप्रवृत्तिश्च पूर्वोक्ताश्वामयाः स्मृताः ।

Mūtra (urine):

अङ्गभङ्गाशयरीबस्तिमेद्रवंक्षणवेदनाः ॥4॥
मूत्रस्य रोधात् पूर्वं च प्रायो रोगाः तदौषधम् ।
वर्त्यभ्यङ्गवगाहाश्च स्वेदनं बस्तिकर्म च ॥5॥
अन्नप्रानं च विद्वभेदि विद्वोधोत्थेषु यक्षमसु ।
मूत्रजेषु तु पाने च प्राग्भक्तं शस्यते धृतम् ॥6॥
जीर्णान्निकं चोक्तमया मात्रया योजनाद्वयम् ।
अवपीडकमेतच्च संज्ञितं धारणात् पुनः ॥7॥

Udgāra (eructation/belching):

उद्गारस्यारुचिः कम्पो विबन्धो हृदयोरसो ।
आधानकासाहिध्याश्च हिध्यावत्तत्र भेषजम् ॥8॥

Kṣavathu (sneezing):

शिरोऽतीन्द्रियदौर्बल्यमन्यासतम्भार्दितं क्षुतेः ।
तीक्ष्णधूमाङ्गनाधाणनावनार्कविलोकनैः ॥9॥
प्रवर्तयेत् क्षुतिं सक्तां स्नेहस्वेदौ च शीलयेत् ।

Trṣṇā (thirst):

शोषाङ्गसादबाधिर्यसम्पोहभ्रमहृदगदाः ॥10॥
तृष्णाया निग्रहात्तत्र शीतः सर्वो विद्यहितः ।

Kṣudhā (hunger):

अङ्गभङ्गारुचिग्लानिकाशर्यशलभ्रमाः क्षुधः ॥11॥
तत्र योजयं लघु स्निग्धमुष्णमल्पं च भोजनम् ।

Nidrā (sleep):

निद्राया मोहमूर्धाक्षिगौरवालस्यजृम्भिकाः ॥12॥
अङ्गमर्दश्च, तत्रेष्टः स्वप्नः संवाहनानि च ।

Kāsa (cough):

कासस्य रोधात्तद्वद्धिः श्वासारुचिहृदामया: ॥1 3॥
शोषो हिध्मा च कार्योऽत्र कासहा सुतरा विधिः ।

Śramaśwāsa (dyspnoea on exertion):

गुलम्हृद्रोगसम्मोहाः श्रमश्वासाद्विधारितात् ॥1 4॥
हितं विश्रमणं तत्र वातघृष्ण क्रियाक्रमः ।

Jr̥mbhā (yawning):

जृम्भायाः क्षववद्रोगाः, सर्वशानिलजिद्विधिः ॥1 5॥

Aśru (tears):

पीनसाक्षिंशिरोहुङ्गमन्यास्तम्भारुचिभ्रमाः ।
सगुल्मा बाष्पतस्तत्र स्वप्नो मद्यं प्रियाः कथाः ॥1 6॥

Chardi (vomiting):

विसर्पकोठकुष्ठाक्षिकाङ्गुपाणङ्गवामयज्वराः ।
सकासश्वासहल्लासव्यङ्गश्वयथवो वमेः ॥1 7॥
गण्डूषधूमानाहारा रूक्षं भुक्त्वा तदुद्ध्रमः ।
व्यायामः सुतिरस्य शस्तं चात्र विरेचनम् ॥1 8॥
सक्षारलवणं तैलमध्यङ्गार्थं च शस्यते ।

Śukra (semen):

शुक्रात्तस्त्ववणं गुह्यवेदनाश्वयथुज्वराः ॥1 9॥
हृष्यथामूत्रसङ्गङ्गभङ्गवृद्ध्यशमषण्डताः ।
ताम्रचूडसुराशालिबस्त्यभ्यङ्गवगाहनम् ॥2 0॥
बस्तिशुद्धिकरैः सिद्धं भजेत् क्षीरं प्रियाः क्लियः ।

Sarvaroga kāraṇa:

रोगः सर्वेऽपि जायन्ते वेगोदीरणधारणैः ।

Importance of śodhana therapy:

दोषाः कदाचित् कुप्यन्ति जिता लङ्घनपाचनैः ।
ये तु संशोधनैः शुद्धा न तेषां पुनरुद्धवः ॥2 6॥

Regimen for promotion of health:

नित्यं हिताहारविहारसेवी
समीक्ष्यकारी विषयेष्वसन्तः ।
दाता समः सत्यपरः क्षमावा-
नाप्तोपसेवी च भवत्यरोगः ॥3 6॥

CHAPTER 5

Drava-dravya Vijñāniya Adhyāya

Gaṅgāmbu:

जीवनं तर्पणं हृद्यं ह्रादि बुद्धिप्रबोधनम् ।

तन्वव्यक्तरसं मृष्टं शीतं लघ्वमृतोपमम् ॥1 1॥
गङ्गाम्बु नभसो भ्रष्टं स्पृष्टं त्वकेन्दुमारुतैः ।
हिताहितत्वे तदभूयो देशकालावपेक्षते ॥2 2॥

Uṣṇa jala:

दीपनं पाचनं कण्ठं लघूष्णं बस्तिशोधनम् ॥1 6॥
हिध्माध्मानानिलश्लेष्मसद्यःशुद्धिनवज्वरे ।
कासामपीनसश्वासपार्श्वरक्षु च शस्यते ॥1 7॥

Nārikelodaka:

नारिकेलोदकं स्निग्धं स्वादु वृष्टं हिमं लघु ।
तृष्णापित्तानिलहरं दीपनं बस्तिशोधनम् ॥1 9॥

Kṣīra guṇa:

स्वादुपाकरसं स्निग्धमोजस्यं धातुवर्धनम् ॥2 0॥
वातपित्तहरं वृष्टं श्लेष्मलं गुरु शीतलम् ।
प्रायः पयः—

Gokṣīra guṇa:

—अत्र गव्यं तु जीवनीयं रसायनम् ॥2 1॥
क्षतक्षीणहितं मेद्यं बल्यं स्तन्यकरं सम् ।
श्रमभ्रममदालक्ष्मीश्वासकासातितृट्क्षुधः ॥2 2॥
जीर्णज्वरं मूत्रकृच्छ्रं रक्तपित्तं च नाशयेत् ।

Māhiṣa kṣīra guṇa:

हितमत्यग्न्यनिद्रेभ्यो गरीयो माहिषं हिमम् ॥2 3॥

Ajākṣīra guṇa:

अल्पाम्बुपानव्यायामकटुतिक्ताशनैर्लघु ।
आजं शोषज्वरश्वासरक्तपित्तातिसारजित् ॥2 4॥

Nāri-kṣīra guṇa:

मानुषं वातपित्तासृगभिधाताक्षिरोगजित् ।
तर्पणाश्लोतनैरस्यैः—

Dadhi guṇa:

अम्लपाकरसं ग्राहि गुरुष्णं दधि वातजित् ॥2 9॥
मेदःशुक्रबलश्लेष्मपित्तरक्ताग्निशोफकृत् ।
रोचिण्णु शस्तमरुचौ शीतके विषमज्वरे ॥3 0॥
पीनसे मूत्रकृच्छ्रे च, रूक्षं तु ग्रहणीगदे ।
नैवाद्यान्निशि नैवोष्णं वसन्तोष्णाशरत्सु न ॥3 1॥
नामुद्रसूपं नाश्वौद्रं तन्नाधृतसितोपलम् ।
न चानामलकं नापि नित्यं नो मन्दमन्यथा ॥3 2॥
ज्वरासृक्षपित्तवीसर्पकुष्ठपाण्डुभ्रमप्रदम् ।

Takra guṇa:

तक्रं लघु कषायाम्लं दीपनं कफवातजित् ॥3 3॥

शोकोदराशोग्रहणीदोषमूत्रग्रहारुचीः ।
प्लीहगुल्मधृतव्यापदगरपाणिवामयान् जयेत् ॥3 4 ॥

Garta guna:

जस्तं धीस्मृतिमेधाग्निबलायुःशुक्रचक्षुषाम् ।
बालवृद्धप्रजाकान्तिसौकुमार्यस्वरार्थिनाम् ॥3 7 ॥
क्षतक्षीणपरीसर्पश्चाग्निगलपितात्मनाम् ।
वातपित्तविषोन्मादशोषालक्ष्मीज्वरापहम् ॥3 8 ॥
स्नेहानामुत्तमं शीतं वयसः स्थापनं परम् ।
सहस्रवीर्यं विधिर्भृतं कर्मसहस्रकृत् ॥3 9 ॥

Madhu guna:

चक्षुष्यं छेदि तुट्श्लेष्मविषहिध्मास्वपित्तनुत् ॥5 1 ॥
मेहकुष्ठकृमिच्छर्दिश्चासकासातिसारजित् ।
ब्रणशोधनस्थानरोपणं वातलं मधु ॥5 2 ॥
रूक्षं कषायमधुरं, तत्तुल्या मधुशर्करा ।
उष्णमुष्णार्तमुष्णो च युक्तं चोष्णीनिर्हन्ति तत् ॥5 3 ॥
प्रच्छर्दने निरुहे च मधूष्णं न निवार्यते ।
अलव्यपाकमाश्वेव तयोर्यस्मान्निवतर्ते ॥5 4 ॥

Tila taila guna:

तैलं स्वयोनिवत्तत्र मुख्यं तीक्ष्णं व्यवायि च ।
त्वग्दोषकृदचक्षुष्यं सूक्ष्मोष्णं कफकृत्र च ॥5 5 ॥
कृशानां बृंहणायालं स्थूलानां कर्शनाय च ।
बद्धविट्कं कृमिष्णं च संस्कारात्सर्वोरोगजित् ॥5 6 ॥

CHAPTER 6

Annasvarūpa Vijñāniya Adhyāya

General properties of Śāli dhānya:

स्वादुपाकरसाः स्निधा वृष्णा बद्धाल्पवर्चसः ।
कषायानुरसाः पथ्या लघवो मूत्रला हिमा: ॥4॥

Rakta Śāli guṇa:

शूक्रजेषु वरस्तत्र रक्तस्तुष्णात्रिदोषहा ।
महास्तमनु कलमस्तं चाप्यनु ततः परे ॥5॥

Śimbi dhānya guṇa:

मुद्दाढकीमसूरादि शिखीधान्यं विबन्धकृत् ।
कषायं स्वादु सङ्घाहि कटुपाकं हिमं लघु ॥1 7 ॥
मेदःश्लेष्मास्वपित्तेषु हितं लेपोपसेकयोः ।

Manda:

मण्डपेयाविलेपीनामोदनस्य च लाघवम् ॥2 6 ॥
यथापूर्वं शिवस्तत्र मण्डो वातानुलोमनः ।
तृङ्गलानिदोषशोषघ्नः पाचनो धातुसाम्यकृत् ॥2 7 ॥
स्रोतोमार्दवकृत्स्वेदी सन्धुक्षयति चानलम् ।

Peyā:

क्षुत्तुष्णाग्लानिदौर्बल्यकुक्षिरोगज्वरापहा ॥2 8 ॥
मलानुलोमनी पथ्या पेया दीपनपाचनी ।

Vilepi:

विलेपी ग्राहणी हृद्या तुष्णाधी दीपनी हिता ॥2 9 ॥
व्रणाक्षिरोगसंशुद्धदुर्बलस्तेहपायिनाम् ।

Odana:

सुधौतः प्रसुतः स्विन्नोऽत्यक्तोष्मा चौदनो लघुः ॥
यश्चाग्नेयौषधक्वाथसाधितो भृष्टपङ्कुलः ।
विपरीतो गुरुः क्षीरमांसाद्यैर्यश्च साधितः ॥3 1 ॥

General properties of lavaṇa:

विष्वन्दि लवणं सर्वं सूक्ष्मं सृष्टमलं मृदु ॥1 4 3 ॥
वातघ्नं पाकि तीक्ष्णोष्णं रोचनं कफपित्तकृत् ।

Saindhava lavaṇa:

सैन्धवं तत्र सस्वादु वृष्णं हृद्यं त्रिदोषनुत् ॥1 4 4 ॥
लघ्वनुष्णं दूशः पथ्यमविदाहानिदीपनम् ।

General properties of kṣāra:

क्षारः सर्वश्च परमं तीक्ष्णोष्णः कृमिजिल्लघुः ।
पित्तासुगृषणः पाकी छेद्यहृदो विदारणः ॥1 5 1 ॥
अपथ्यः कटुलावण्याच्छ्रुकौजः केशचक्षुषाम् ।

Hiṅgu:

हिङ्गु वातकफानाहशूलघ्नं पित्तकोपनम् ॥1 5 2 ॥
कटुपाकरसं रुच्यं दीपनं पाचनं लघु ।

Triphalā:

कषाया मधुरा पाके रुक्षा विलवणा लघुः ॥1 5 3 ॥
दीपनी पाचनी मेधा वयसः स्थापनी परम् ।
उष्णवीर्यं सराऽयुष्णा बुद्धीन्द्रियबलप्रदा ॥1 5 4 ॥
कुठवैवर्यवैवर्यपुरुषाराणविषमज्वरान् ।
शिरोऽक्षिपाण्डुह्रोगकामलाग्रहणीगदान् ॥1 5 5 ॥
सशोषणोफातीसारमेदमोहवमिक्रीन् ।
श्वासकासप्रसेकार्शः प्लीहानाहगरोदरम् ॥1 5 6 ॥
विबन्धस्वोतसां गुलमूरस्तम्भमरोचकम् ।
हरीतकी जयेद्वयाधींस्तास्तांश्च कफवातजान् ॥1 5 7 ॥
तद्वदामलकं शीतमल्नं पित्तकफापहम् ।
कटु पाके हिमं केशयमक्षमीषच्च तदगुणम् ॥1 5 8 ॥
इयं रसायनवरा त्रिफलाऽक्ष्यामयापहा ।
रोपणी त्वग्गदक्लेदमेदोमेहकफास्वजित् ॥1 5 9 ॥

Trikaṭu:

से पाके च कटुकं कफधनं मरिचं लघु ।
 श्लेष्मला स्वादुशीताऽऽद्रौं गुर्वा स्निधा च पिप्पली ॥
 सा शुष्का विपरीताऽऽतः स्निधा वृद्धा रसे कटुः ।
 स्वादुपाकाऽनिलश्लेष्मश्वासकासापहा सरा ॥162॥
 न तामत्युपयुक्तीत रसायनविधिं विना ।
 नागरं दीपनं वृद्धं ग्राहि हृद्यं विबन्धनुत् ॥163॥
 रुच्यं लघु स्वादुपाकं स्निधोष्णं कफवातजित् ।
 तद्वदार्ककमेतच्य त्रयं त्रिकटुकं जयेत् ॥164॥
 स्थौल्याग्निसदनश्वासकासश्लीपदपीनसान् ।

Bṛhat pañcamūla:

बिल्वकाशमर्थतर्कारीपाटलाटिण्ठुकैर्महत् ॥167॥
 जयेत्कषायतिक्तोष्णं पञ्चमूलं कफानिलौ ।

Laghu pañcamūla:

हस्तं बृहत्यंशुभूतीद्वयगोक्खुरकैः स्मृतम् ॥168॥
 स्वादुपाकरसं नातिशीतोष्णं सर्वदोषजित् ।

Madhyama pañcamūla:

बलापुनर्वैण्डशूर्पर्णीद्वयेन तु ॥169॥
 मध्यमं कफवातधनं नातिपित्तकरं सरम् ।

Jīvanīya pañcamūla:

अभीरुवीराजीवन्तीजीवकर्षभकैः स्मृतम् ॥170॥
 जीवनाख्यं तु चक्षुष्यं वृद्धं पित्तानिलापहम् ।

Traya pañcamūla:

तृणाख्यं पित्तजिहर्भकासेक्षुशरशालिभिः ॥171॥

CHAPTER 7

Annarakṣā Adhyāya

Definition of viruddhāhāra:

यत्किञ्चिद्दोषमुत्क्लेश्य न हरेत्तसमासतः ॥145॥

Upasthambha:

आहारशयनाब्रह्मचर्यैर्युक्त्या प्रयोजितैः ।
 शरीरं धार्यते नित्यमागारमिव धारणैः ॥152॥

Nidrā:

निद्रायत्तं सुखं दुःखं पुष्टिः काश्यं बलाबलम् ॥153॥
 वृषता क्लीबता ज्ञानमज्ञानं जीवितं न च ।
 अकालेऽतिप्रसङ्गाच्य न च निद्रा निषेविता ॥154॥
 सुखायुषी पराकुर्यात् कालरात्रिरिवापरा ।
 रात्रौ जागरणं रूक्षं, स्निधं प्रस्वपनं दिवा ॥155॥
 अरुक्षमनभिष्यन्दि त्वासीनप्रचलायितम् ।

Nidrānāśa lakṣaṇa:

निद्रानाशादङ्गमर्दिशरोगौरवजृभिकाः ।
 जाड्यग्लानिभ्मापत्तितन्ना रोगाश्च वातजाः ॥164॥

CHAPTER 8
Mātrāśītiya Adhyāya

Mātrā depends on agni & dravya:

मात्राशी सर्वकालं स्यान्मात्रा ह्यग्ने: प्रवर्तिका ।
 मात्रां द्रव्याण्यपेक्षन्ते गुरुण्यपि लघून्यपि ॥1॥
 गुरुणामर्धसौहीत्यं लघूनां नातिरूपता ।
 मात्राप्रमाणं निर्दिष्टं सुखं यावद्विजीर्यति ॥2॥

Alasaka:

पीड्यमाना हि वाताद्या युगपत्तेन कोपिताः ॥4॥
 आमेनात्रेन दुष्टेन तदेवाविश्य कुर्वते ।
 विष्टभयन्तोऽलसकं च्यावयन्तो विसूचिकाम् ॥5॥
 अधरोत्तरमार्गभ्यां सहसैवाजितात्मनः ।
 प्रयाति नोर्ध्वं नाधस्तादाहरो न च पच्यते ॥6॥
 आमाशयेऽलसीभूतस्तेन सोऽलसकः स्मृतः ।

Visūcikā:

विविधैर्वेदनोद्देवर्वाच्यादिभृशकोपतः ॥7॥
 सूचीभिरिव गात्राणि विध्यतीति विसूचिका ।

Danḍālasaka:

-अत्यर्थदुष्टास्तु दोषा दुष्टामबद्धखाः ।
 यान्तस्तिर्थत्तनुं सर्वा दण्डवत्सम्भयन्ति चेत् ॥12॥
 दण्डकालसकं नाम तं त्यजेदाशुकारिणम् ।

Apatarpaṇa:

तत्रात्पे लङ्घनं पथ्यं, मध्ये लङ्घनपाचनम् ॥121॥
 प्रभूते शोधनं, तद्धि मूलादुन्मूलयेन्मलान् ।

Ajirṇa cikitsā

लङ्घनं कार्यमामे तु, विष्टव्ये स्वेदनं भृशम् ।
 विद्यादध्यशनं भूयो भुक्तस्योपरि भोजनम् ॥

3 types of food to be discarded:

पिश्रं पच्यमपथ्यं च भुक्तं समशनं मतम् ॥33॥
 विद्यादध्यशनं भूयो भुक्तस्योपरि भोजनम् ।
 अकाले बहु चाल्यं वा भुक्तं तु विष्टमाशनम् ॥34॥
 त्रीण्यप्येतानि मृत्युं वा धोरान् व्याधीन् सृजन्ति वा ।

Stomach capacity and allotment of food:

अन्नेन कुक्षेद्वावंशो पानेनैकं प्रपूरयेत् ॥46॥
 आश्रयं पवनादीनां चतुर्थमवशेषयेत् ।

Anupāna guṇa:

अनुपानं करोत्यूर्जा तृप्तिं व्याप्तिं दृढ़ताम् ।
अन्नसङ्घातशैथिल्यविक्लितजरणानि च ॥५२॥

CHAPTER 9

Dravyādi Vijnāniya Adhyāya

Importance, nature and origin of dravya:

द्रव्यमेव रसादीनां श्रेष्ठं, ते हि तदाश्रयः ।
पञ्चभूतात्मकं तत्त्वक्षमामधिष्ठाय जायते ॥१॥
अम्बुदोन्यगिनपवननभसां समवायतः ।
तत्रिवृत्तिविशेषश्वव्यपदेशस्तु भूयसा ॥२॥

Rasa, anurasa:

तस्मात्रैकरसं द्रव्यं भूतसङ्घातसम्भवात् ।
नैकदोषास्ततो रोगास्तत्र व्यक्तो रसः स्मृतः ॥३॥
अव्यक्तोऽनुरासः किञ्चिदन्ते व्यक्तोऽपि चेष्टते ।
गुरुदयो गुणा द्रव्ये पृथिव्यादौ रसाश्रये ॥४॥
संसेषु व्यपदिश्यन्ते साहचर्योपचारतः ।

Pārthiva dravya guṇa:

तत्र द्रव्यं गुरुस्थूलस्थिरगन्धगुणोल्बणम् ॥५॥
पार्थिवं गौरवस्थैर्यमङ्गातोपचयावहम् ।

Jaliya dravya guṇa:

द्रवशीतिगुरुस्थिरगन्धमन्दसान्द्रसोल्बणम् ॥६॥
आप्यं स्नेहनविष्वन्दकलेदप्रह्लादबन्धकृत् ।

Āgneya dravya guṇa:

रूक्षतीक्ष्णोष्णविशदसूक्ष्मरूपगुणोल्बणम् ॥७॥
आग्नेयं दाहभावर्णप्रकाशपचनात्मकम् ।

Vāyavīya dravya guṇa:

वायव्यं रूक्षविशदलघुस्पर्शगुणोल्बणम् ॥८॥
रौक्ष्यलाघववैशद्यविचारग्लानिकारकम् ।

Ākāśiya dravya guṇa:

नाभ्रसं सूक्ष्मविशदलघुशब्दगुणोल्बणम् ॥९॥
सौषिर्यलाघवकरम्-

Vipāka:

जाठरेणारिना योगाद्यदुदेति रसान्तरम् ।
रसानां परिणामान्ते स विपाक इति स्मृतः ॥१०॥

Vipākaja rasa bheda:

स्वादुः पटुश्च मधुरमम्लोऽम्लं पच्यते रसः ।
तित्तोषणकषायाणां विपाकः प्रायशः कटुः ॥११॥

Drug action varies:

किञ्चिद्रसेन कुरुते कर्म पाकेन चापरम् ॥२ २॥
गुणान्तरेण वीर्येण प्रभावेणैव किञ्चन ।

Natural order of strength of rasa & others:

रसं विपाकस्तौ वीर्यं प्रभावस्तान्यपोहति ।
बलसाम्ये रसादीनामिति नैसर्गिकं बलम् ॥२ ५॥

Prabhāva:

रसादिसाम्ये यत् कर्म विशिष्टं तत् प्रभावजम् ।
दन्ती रसाद्यस्तुल्याऽपि चित्रकस्य विरेचनी ॥२ ६॥
मधुकस्य च मृद्धीका, घृतं क्षीरस्य दीपनम् ।

CHAPTER 10

Rasabhediya Adhyāya

Relationship of pañca mahābhutas with the tastes:

क्षमाभोऽग्निक्षमाम्बुतेजःखवाय्वग्न्यनिलगोनिलैः ।
द्वयोल्बणैः क्रमाद्वृत्तैमधुरादिरसोद्ववः ॥१॥

Madhura rasa lakṣaṇa:

तेषां विद्याद्रसं स्वादुं यो वक्त्रमनुलिप्ति ।
आस्वाद्यमानो देहस्य हादनोऽक्षप्रसादनः ॥२॥
प्रियः पिपीलिकादीनाम्-

Amla rasa lakṣaṇa:

-अम्लः क्षालयते मुखम् ।
हर्षणो रोमदन्तानामक्षिभ्रुवनिकोचनः ॥३॥

Lavaṇa rasa lakṣaṇa:

लवणः स्यन्दयत्यास्यं कपोलगलदाहकृत् ।

Tikta rasa lakṣaṇa:

तित्तो विशदयत्यास्यं रसनं प्रतिहन्ति च ॥४॥

Kaṭu rasa lakṣaṇa:

उद्वेजयति जिह्वाग्रं कुर्वक्षिमिचिमां कटुः ।
स्वावयत्यक्षिनामासास्यं कपोलौ दहतीव च ॥५॥

Kaṣāya rasa lakṣaṇa:

कषायो जडयेजिह्वां कण्ठस्रोतोविवन्धकृत् ।
रसानामिति रूपाणि कर्माणि-

CHAPTER 11

Doṣādi Vijnāniya Adhyāya

Chief constituents of the body:

दोषधातुमला मूलं सदा देहस्य-

Normal functions of tridoṣa:

-तं चलः ।
 उत्साहोच्छ्वासनिश्चासचेष्टवेगप्रवर्तनैः ॥१॥
 सम्यगगत्या च धातूनामक्षाणां पाटवेन च ।
 अनुगृह्णात्यविकृतः, पित्तं पक्त्यूष्मदर्शनैः ॥२॥
 क्षुत्तुर्दस्त्रियप्रथामेधाधीशौर्यतनुमार्दवैः ।
 श्लेष्मा स्थ्रित्वस्त्रिनाथत्वसन्धिबन्धक्षमादिभिः ॥३॥

Normal functions of saptā dhātu:

प्रीणनं जीवनं लेपः स्नेहो धारणपूरणे ।
 गर्भोत्पादश्च धातूनां श्रेष्ठं कर्म क्रमात्सृतम् ॥४॥

Normal functions of trimalas:

अवष्टम्भः पुरीषस्य मूत्रस्य क्लेदवाहनम् ।
 स्वेदस्य क्लेदविघृतिः-

Functions of aggravated doṣa:

-वृद्धस्तु कुरुतेऽनिलः ॥५॥
 कार्यकाण्योष्णाकामत्वकम्पानाहशकृदग्रहान् ।
 बलनिद्रेन्द्रियभ्रंशप्रलापभ्रमदीनताः ॥६॥
 पीतविष्मूत्रनेत्रत्वक्क्षुत्तुर्दाहाल्पनिद्रातः ।
 पित्तं श्लेष्माऽग्निसदनप्रसेकालस्यगौरवम् ॥७॥
 श्वेत्यशैत्यश्लथाङ्गत्वं श्वासकासातिनिद्रातः ।

Features of increased dhātu:

रसोऽपि श्लेष्मवत्तरत्तं विसर्पप्लीहविद्रधीन् ॥८॥
 कुष्ठवातास्वपिनाशसम्मोहरत्तत्वऽनेत्रमूत्रताः ॥९॥
 मांसं गण्डार्बुदग्नियगण्डोरुदरवृद्धिताः ।
 कण्ठादिष्वधिमांसं च तद्वन्मेदस्तथा श्रमम् ॥१०॥
 अल्पेऽपि चेष्टिते श्वासं स्फिक्स्तनोदरलम्बनम् ।
 अस्याद्यस्यधिदन्तांश्च मज्जा नेत्राङ्गौरवम् ॥११॥
 पर्वसु स्थूलमूलानि कुर्यात्कृच्छ्राण्यसंख्यं च ।
 अतिस्त्रीकामतां वृद्धं शुक्रं शुक्राशमरीमपि ॥१२॥

Functions of aggravated mala:

कुक्षावाध्मानमाटोपं गौरवं वेदनां शकृत् ।
 मूत्रं तु बस्तिनिस्तोदं कृतेऽप्यकृतसंज्ञताम् ॥१३॥
 स्वेदोऽतिस्वेददौर्गन्ध्यकण्डः-

Functions of decreased doṣa:

लिङ्गं क्षीणोऽनिलेऽङ्गस्य सादोऽलं भाषितेहितम् ।
 संज्ञामोहस्तथाश्लेष्मवृद्धुत्तामयसम्भवः ॥१५॥
 पित्ते मन्दोऽनलः शीतं प्रभाहानि: कफे भ्रमः ।
 श्लेष्माशयानां शून्यत्वं हृदद्रवः इलथसन्धिता ॥१६॥

Features of decreased dhātu:

रसे रौक्ष्यं श्रमः शोषो ग्लानिः शब्दासहिष्णुता ।
 रक्तेऽस्ताशिरप्रीतिशिराशैथिल्यस्तक्षताः ॥१७॥
 मांसेऽक्षग्लानिगण्डस्फिक्षुक्तासन्धिवेदनाः ।
 मेदसि स्वपनं कट्याः प्लीहो वृद्धिः कृशाङ्गता ॥१८॥
 अस्थ्यस्थितोदः शादनं दन्तकेशनखादिषु ।
 अस्थां मज्जनि सौषिर्यं भ्रमस्तिमिरदर्शनम् ॥१९॥
 शुक्रे चिरात् प्रसिद्ध्येत शुक्रं शोणितमेव वा ।
 तोदोऽत्यर्थं वृषणयोर्मेंद्रं धूमायतीव च ॥२०॥

Features of decreased malas:

पुरीषे वायुरन्त्राणि सशब्दो वेष्टयन्निव ।
 कुक्षी भ्रमति यात्पूर्वं हत्पार्श्वं पीडयन् भृशम् ॥२१॥
 मूत्रेऽलं पूत्रयेत्कृच्छ्राद्विवर्णं सास्त्रमेव वा ।
 स्वेदे रोमच्युतिः स्तब्धरोमता स्फुटनं त्वचः ॥२२॥

Āśraya-āśrayī bhāva:

तत्रास्थनि स्थितो वायुः, पित्तं तु स्वेदरक्तयोः ।
 श्लेष्मा शोषेषु, तेनैषामाश्रयाश्रयिणां मिथः ॥२६॥
 यदेकस्य तदन्यस्य वर्धनक्षपणैषधम् ।
 अस्थिमारुतयोर्नैवं, प्रायो वृद्धिर्हि तर्पणात् ॥२७॥
 श्लेष्मणाऽनुगता तस्मात् सङ्ख्यस्तद्विपर्यात् ।
 वायुनाऽनुगतोऽस्माच्च वृद्धिक्षयसमुद्धवान् ॥२८॥
 विकारान् साधयेच्छीघ्रं क्रमालङ्घनबृहणैः ।
 वायोरन्यत्र, तज्जांस्तु तैरेवोत्क्रमयोजितैः ॥२९॥

Ojas:

ओजस्तु तेजो धातूनां शुक्रान्तानां परं स्मृतम् ।
 हृदयस्थमपि व्यापि देहस्थितिनिबद्धनम् ॥३३॥
 स्तिंगं सोमात्मकं शुद्धमीषल्लोहितपीतकम् ।
 यन्नाशे नियतं नाशो यस्मिंस्तिष्ठति तिष्ठति ॥३४॥
 निष्पद्यन्ते यतो भावा विविधा देहसंश्रयाः ।
 ओजः क्षीयेत कोपक्षुद्ध्यानशोकश्रमादिभिः ॥३५॥
 विभेति दुर्बलोऽभीक्षणं ध्यायति व्यथितेन्द्रियः ।
 दुःच्छायो दुर्माना रूक्षो भवेत्क्षमाश्च तत्क्षये ॥४०॥
 जीवनीयौषधक्षीरसाद्यास्तत्र भेषजम् ।
 ओजोवृद्धौ हि देहस्य तुष्टिपुष्टिबलोदयः ॥४१॥

CHAPTER 12
Doṣabhediya Adhyāya

Seats of vāta:

पक्वाशयकटीसविक्षिप्तश्रोत्रास्थिस्पर्शनेन्द्रियम् ।
 स्थानं वातस्य, तत्रापि पक्वाधानं विशेषतः ॥१॥

Seats of pitta:

नाभिरामाशयः स्वेदो लसीका रुधिरं रसः ।
दृक् स्पर्शनं च पित्तस्य, नाभिरत्र विशेषतः ॥१२॥

Seats of kapha:

उरःकण्ठशिरःक्लोमपर्वाण्यामाशयो रसः ।
मेदो घ्राणं च जिह्वा च कफस्य, सुतामुरः ॥३॥

Prāṇa vāta:

प्राणादिभेदात्पञ्चात्मा वायुः प्राणोऽत्र मूर्धगः ।
उरःकण्ठचरो बुद्धिहृदयेन्द्रियचित्तधृक् ॥४॥
ष्टीवनक्षवथूद्वारनिःश्वासान्नप्रवेशकृत् ।

Udāna vāta:

उरःस्थानमुदानस्य नासानाभिगलांश्वरेत् ॥५॥
वाक्प्रवृत्तिप्रयत्नोर्जाबिलवर्णस्मृतिक्रियः ।

Vyāna vāta:

व्यानो हृदि स्थितः कृत्सन्देहचारी महाजवः ॥६॥
गत्यपक्षेपणोत्क्षेपणिमेषोन्मेषणादिकाः ।
प्रायः सर्वाः क्रियास्तस्मिन् प्रतिबद्धाः शरीरिणाम् ॥७॥

Samāna vāta:

समानोऽग्निसमीपस्थः कोष्ठे चरति सर्वतः ।
अन्नं गृह्णाति पचति विवेचयति मुञ्चति ॥८॥

Apāna vāta:

अपानोऽपानगः श्रोणिबस्तिमेद्रोरुगोचरः ।
शुक्रार्तवशकृन्मूत्रगर्भनिष्क्रमणक्रियः ॥९॥

Pacaka pitta:

पित्तं पञ्चात्मकनत्र पवक्वामाशयमध्यगम् ।
पञ्चभूतात्मकत्वेऽपि यत्तैजसगुणोदयात् ॥१०॥
त्वक्तद्रवत्वं पाकादिकर्मणाऽनलशब्दितम् ।
पचत्यन्नं विभजते सारकिटटौ पृथक् तथा ॥११॥
तत्रस्थमेव पित्तानां शेषाणामप्यनुग्रहम् ।
करोति बलदानेन पाचकं नाम तत्स्मृतम् ॥१२॥

Ranjaka pitta:

आमाशयाश्रयं पित्तं रञ्जकं रसरञ्जनात् ।

Sādhaka pitta:

बुद्धिमेधाभिमानाद्यैरभिप्रेतार्थसाधनात् ॥१३॥
साधकं हृद्रतं पित्तं-

Ālocaka pitta:

-रूपालोचनतः स्मृतम् ।
दृक्स्थमालोचकं-

Bhrājaka pitta:

-त्वक्स्थं भ्राजकं भ्राजनात्वचः ॥१४॥

Pañcavidha kapha:

श्लेष्मा तु पञ्चधा उरस्यः स त्रिकस्य स्ववीर्यतः ।
हृदयस्यान्नवीर्याच्च तत्स्थ एवाम्बुकर्मणा ॥१५॥
कफधामां च शेषाणं यत्करोत्यवलम्बनम् ।
अतोऽवलम्बकः श्लेष्मा यस्त्वामाशयसंस्थितः ॥१६॥
क्लेदकः सोऽन्नसङ्खातक्लेदनात् रसबोधनात् ।
बोधको रसनास्थायी शिरःसंस्थोऽक्षतर्पणात् ॥१७॥
तर्पकः सन्धिसंश्लेषाच्छ्लेषकः सन्धिषु स्थितः ।

Caya:

चयो वृद्धिः स्वधाम्येव प्रदेषु वृद्धिहेतुषु ॥२२॥
विपरीतगुणेच्छा च-

Prakopa:

-कोपस्तुन्मार्गामिता ।
लिङ्गानां दर्शनं स्वेषामस्वास्थ्यं रोगसम्भवः ॥२३॥

Praśamana:

स्वस्थानस्थस्य समता विकारासम्भवः शमः ।

Relationship between dosas & seasons:

चयप्रकोपप्रशमा वायोग्रीष्मादिषु त्रिषु ॥२४॥
वर्षादिषु तु पित्तस्य, श्लेष्मणः शिशिरादिषु ।
चीयते लघुरुक्षाभिरोषधीभिः समीरणः ॥२५॥
तद्विधस्तद्विधे देहे कालस्यौष्यान्नं कुप्यति ।
अद्विरम्लविपाकाभिरोषधीभिश्च तादृशम् ॥२६॥
पित्तं याति चयं कोर्पं न तु कालस्य शैत्यतः ।
चीयते स्निग्धशीताभिरुदकौषधिभिः कफः ॥२७॥
तुल्येऽपि काले देहे च स्कन्त्वान्नं प्रकुप्यति ।

Bāhya rogamārga:

शाखा रक्तादयस्त्वक् च बाह्यरोगायनं हि तत् ॥४४॥
तदाश्रया मषव्यङ्गण्डालज्यर्बुदादयः ।
बहिर्भागाश्च दुनर्मागुलम्शोफादयो गदाः ॥४५॥

Ābhyantara rogamārga:

अन्तःकोष्ठे महास्रोत आमपक्वाशयाश्रयः ।
तत्स्थानाः च्छर्द्यतीसारकासश्वासोदरज्वराः ॥४६॥
अन्तर्भागं च शोफाशोगुलमवीसर्पिविद्विधिः ।

Madhyama rogamārga:

शिरोहृदयबस्त्यादिमर्णयस्थानं च सन्धयः ॥४७॥
तन्त्रिवद्धाः शिरास्त्वायुक्णडराद्याश्च मध्यमः ।
रोगमार्गः स्थितास्तत्र यक्षमपक्षवधार्दिता ॥४८॥
मूर्धादिरोगाः सन्ध्यस्थित्रिकशूलग्रहादयः ।

Vṛddha doṣa karma:

संसव्यासव्यधस्वापसादक्तोदभेदनम् ॥४९॥
 सङ्गाङ्गभङ्गसङ्कोचवर्त्तहर्षणतर्षणम् ।
 कम्पपारुष्यसंविर्यशोषस्पन्दनवेष्टनम् ॥५०॥
 स्तम्भः कथायरसता वर्णः श्यावोऽरुणोऽपि वा ।
 कर्मणि वायोः पित्तस्य दाहरागोष्पाकिता: ॥५१॥
 स्वेदः क्लेदः स्तुतिः कोथः सदनं मूर्च्छनं मदः ।
 कटुकाम्लौ रसौ वर्णः पाण्डुरारुणवर्जितः ॥५२॥
 श्लेषणः स्नेहकाठिन्यकण्डूशीतत्वगोरवम् ।
 बन्धोपलेपस्तैमित्यशोफापक्त्यतिनिद्रितः ॥५३॥
 वर्णः श्वेतो रसौ स्वादुलवणौ चिरकारिता ।

CHAPTER 13 Doṣopakramaṇiya Adhyāya

Vāta doṣa cikitsā:

वातस्योपक्रमः स्नेहः स्वेदः संशोधनं मृदु ।
 स्वाद्वूललवणोष्णानि भोज्यान्यभ्यङ्गमर्दनम् ॥१॥
 वेष्टनं त्रासनं सेको मद्यं पैषिकगौडिकम् ।
 रिनग्धोष्णा बस्तयो बस्तिनियमः सुखशीलता ॥२॥
 दीपनैः पाचनैः सिद्धाः स्नेहाश्वानेकयोनयः ।
 विशेषान्मेद्यपिण्डितरसतैलानुवासनम् ॥३॥

Pitta doṣa cikitsā:

पित्तस्य सर्पिषः पानं स्वादुशीतैविरचनम् ।
 स्वादुतिक्तकवायाणि भोजनान्वौषधानि च ॥४॥
 सुगन्धिशीतहृद्यानां गन्धानामुपसेवनम् ।
 कण्ठे गुणानां हाराणां मणीनामुरसा धृतिः ॥५॥
 कर्पूरचन्दनोऽशैररनुलेपः क्षणे क्षणे ।
 प्रदोषश्वन्द्रमाः सौधं हारि गीतं हिमोऽनिलः ॥६॥
 अयन्त्रनामुखं मित्रं पुत्रः सन्दिग्धमुग्धवाक् ।
 छन्दानुवर्तिनो दारः प्रिया: शीलविभूषिताः ॥७॥
 शीताखुधारागर्भाणि गृहाणयुद्यानदीर्घिकाः ।
 सुतीर्थविपुलस्वच्छसलिलाशयसैकते ॥८॥
 सम्प्लोजलतीरान्ते कायमाने दृमाकुले ।
 सौम्या भावाः पयः सर्पिविरेकश्च विशेषतः ॥९॥

Kapha doṣa cikitsā:

श्लेषणो विधिना युक्तं तीक्ष्णं वर्मनेचनम् ।
 अन्नं रूक्षाल्पतीक्षणोष्णं कटुतिक्तकषायकम् ॥१०॥
 दीर्घकालस्थितं मद्यं रतिप्रीतिः प्रजागरः ।
 अनेकरूपो व्यायामशीता रूक्षं विमर्दनम् ॥११॥
 विशेषाद्वमनं यूषः क्षीरं मेदोद्धूषमौषधम् ।
 धूमोपवासगण्डूषा निःसुखत्वं सुखाय च ॥१२॥

Ideal treatment:

प्रयोगः शमयेद्वयाधिमेकं योऽन्यमुदीरयेत् ।
 नाऽसौ विशुद्धः शुद्धस्तु शमयेद्यो न कोपयेत् ॥१६॥

Reasons for the movement of doṣas from koṣṭha to śākhā and śākhā to koṣṭha:

व्यायामादूषणस्तैक्षण्यादहिताचरणादपि ।
 कोष्टाच्छाखास्थिमर्माणि द्रुतत्वान्मारुतस्य च ॥१७॥
 दोषा यान्ति तथा तेभ्यः स्नोतोमुखविशोधनात् ।
 वृद्ध्याऽभिष्वन्दनात्पाकात्कोष्टे वायोश्च निग्रहात् ॥१८॥

Āma:

अष्वणोऽल्पबलत्वेन धातुमाद्यमपाचितम् ।
 दुष्टमाशयगतं रसमार्म प्रचक्षते ॥२५॥

CHAPTER 14 Dvividhopakramaṇiya Adhyāya

Bṛmhāṇa-laṅghana:

बृहणं यद्वहत्त्वाय लङ्घनं लाघवाय यत् ॥२॥
 देहस्य-

Types of laṅghana:

शोधनं शमनं चेति द्विधा तत्रापि लङ्घनम् ॥४॥

Sodhana:

यदीरयेद्विर्दोषान् पञ्चधा शोधनं च तत् ।
 निरुहो वर्मनं कायशिरोरेकाऽस्वविस्तुतिः ॥५॥

Śamana:

न शोधयति यदोषान् समान्त्रोदीरयत्यपि ।
 समीकरोति विषमान् शमनं तच्च सप्तधा ॥६॥
 पाचनं दीपनं क्षुत्रद्व्यायामातपमारुताः ।

Kārṣya is better than sthoulya:

कार्श्यमेव वरं स्थौल्यात् न हि स्थूलस्य भेषजम् ॥
 बृहणं लङ्घनं वाऽलमतिमेदोऽग्निवातजित् ।

CHAPTER 15 Śodhanādigaṇa Saṅgraha Adhyāya

Chardana gaṇa dravya:

मदनपद्युक्तलभ्वानिष्विष्विशाला-
 त्रपुसकुटजमूर्वादेवदालीकृमिघ्नम् ।
 विदुलदहनचित्राः कोशवत्यौ करञ्जः
 कण्लवणवचैलासर्षपञ्चछर्दनानि ॥१॥

Virecana gaṇa dravya:

निकुम्भकुम्भत्रिफलागवाक्षी-

स्नुकशङ्खीनीनीलिनितिल्वकानि ।
शम्प्याककम्पिल्लकहेमदुराधा-
दुरधं च मूत्रं च विरेचनानि ॥2॥

Nirūha gaṇa dravya:

मदनकुटजकुष्ठदेवदाली-
मधुकवचादशमूलदारुरास्ना: ।
यवमिशिकृतवेधनं कुलत्था-
मधु लवणं त्रिवृता निरुहणानि ॥3॥

Sirovirecana gaṇa dravya:

वेल्लापामार्गव्योषधार्व्वसुराला-
बीजं शैरीवं बाहृतं शैग्रवं च ।
सारो माधूकः सैन्धवं ताक्ष्यशैलं-
त्रुट्यौ पृथ्वीका शोधयन्त्युत्तमाङ्गम् ॥4॥

Vātahara dravya gaṇa:

भद्रदारु नतं कुष्ठं दशमूलं बलाद्वयम् ।
वायु वीरतरादिश्च विद्यर्थादिश्च नाशयेत् ॥5॥

Pittahara dravya gaṇa:

दूर्वाऽनन्ता निष्वावासाऽत्मगुप्ता
गुन्नाऽभीरुः शीतपाकी प्रियदण्डः ।
न्यग्रोधादिः पद्मकादिः स्थिरे द्वे
पद्मं वन्यं सारिवादिश्च पित्तम् ॥6॥

Kaphahara dravya gaṇa:

आरग्वथादिरक्तादिर्मुष्ककाद्योऽसनादिकः ।
सुरसादिः समुस्तादिर्वत्सकादिर्बलासजित् ॥7॥

CHAPTER 16 Sneha-vidhi Adhyāya

Qualities of oleating drugs:

गुरुशीतसरस्निग्धमन्दसूक्ष्ममृदुव्रवम् ।
औषधं स्नेहं प्रायो, विपरीतं विरुक्षणम् ॥1॥

Best oleating substances:

सर्पिर्मज्जा वसा तैलं स्नेहेषु प्रवरं मतम् ।
तत्रापि चोत्तमं सर्पिः संस्कारस्यानुवर्तनात् ॥2॥
माधुर्यादविदाहित्वाज्जन्माद्येव च शीलनात् ।
पित्तध्वास्ते यथापूर्वमितरघ्ना यथोत्तरम् ॥3॥
घृतात्तैलं गुरु वसा तैलान्मज्जा ततोऽपि च ।
द्वाभ्यां त्रिभिर्शतुर्भिस्तैर्यमक्षिवृतो महान् ॥4॥

Dosage of oleating substances:

द्वाभ्यां चतुर्भिरष्टाभिर्यामैर्जर्यन्ति याः क्रमात् ॥1 7॥

हस्वमध्योत्तमा मात्रास्तास्ताभ्यश्च हसीयसीम् ।
कल्पयेद्विक्ष्य दोषादीन् प्रागेव तु हसीयसीम् ॥1 8॥

Anupāna for different unctuous substances:

वार्युष्णमच्छेदनु पिबेत् स्नेहे तत्सुखपत्तये ।
आस्योपलेपशुद्धयै च, तौवरारुष्करे न तु ॥2 3॥

Test to know the given oil is digested or not:
oil is digested or not:

जीर्णाजीर्णविशङ्कायां पुनरुष्णोदकं पिबेत् ।
तेनोदगारविशुद्धिः स्यात्ततश्च लघुता रुचिः ॥2 4॥

Paścāta karma:

उष्णोदकोपचारी स्यादब्रह्मचारी क्षपाशयः ।
न वेगरोधी व्यायामक्रोधशोकहिमातपान् ॥2 6॥
प्रवातयानयानाध्वभाष्यात्यासनसंस्थितिः ।
नीचात्युच्चोपधानाहः स्वप्नधूमरजांसि च ॥2 7॥
यान्यहानि पिबेत्तानि तावन्त्यन्यपि त्यजेत् ।

Signs & symptoms of proper, improper and excessive oleation:

वातानुलोम्यं दीप्तोऽग्निर्वर्चः स्निग्धमसंहतम् ॥3 0॥
स्नेहोद्गेवः क्लमः सम्प्रकस्निन्द्ये, रूक्षे विपर्ययः ।
अतिस्निन्द्ये तु पाण्डुत्वं द्वाणवक्त्रगुदस्वावाः ॥3 1॥

Advantages of oleation therapy:

दीप्तान्तराग्निः परिशुद्धकोष्ठः प्रत्यग्रधातुर्बलवर्णयुक्तः ।
दृढेन्द्रियो मन्दजरः शतावुः स्नेहोपसेवी पुरुषः प्रदिष्टः ॥

CHAPTER 17

Sveda-vidhi Adhyāya

Types of sudation therapy:

स्वेदस्तापोपनाहोष्मद्रवभेदाच्चतुर्विधिः ।

Tāpa sweda:

तापोऽनितप्तवसनफालहस्ततलादिभिः ॥1॥

Upanāha sweda:

उपनाहो वचाकिणवशताहादेवदारुभिः ।
धान्यैः समस्तैर्गन्धैश्च रास्सैरण्डजटामिषैः ॥2॥
उत्रिक्तलवणैः स्नेहयुक्ततक्रपयः प्लुतैः ।
केवले पवने, श्लेष्मसंसृष्टे सुरसादिभिः ॥3॥
पित्तेन पद्मकाद्यस्तु साल्वणाख्यैः पुनः पुनः ।
स्निग्धोष्णवीर्यैर्मृदुभिर्शर्मपट्टैरपूतिभिः ॥4॥
अलाभे वातजितप्रकौशेयाविकशाटकैः ।
बद्धं रात्रौ दिवा मुञ्चेन्मुञ्चेद्रात्रौ दिवाकृतम् ॥5॥

Ūṣma sweda:

ऊष्मा तूत्कारिकालोष्टकपालोपलपांसुभिः ।
पत्रभङ्गेन धान्येन करीषसिकतातुष्टैः ॥6॥
अनेकोपायसन्तापैः प्रयोज्यो देशकालतः ।

Drava sweda:

शिगुवारणकैरण्डकरञ्जसुरसार्जकात् ॥7॥
शिरीषवासावंशाक्मालतीदीर्घवृन्ततः ।
पत्रभङ्गवैर्चाद्यैश्च मांसैश्चानुपवारिजैः ॥8॥
दशमूलेन च पृथक् सहितेर्वा यथामलम् ।
स्नेहवद्धिः सुराशुक्तवारिक्षीरादिसाधितैः ॥9॥
कुम्भीर्गलन्तीर्नार्डीर्वा पूरयित्वा रुजार्दितम् ।
वासासाऽच्छादितं गात्रं स्निग्धं सिङ्गेयथासुखम् ॥10॥

Avagāha sweda:

तैरेव वा द्रवैः पूर्णं कुण्डं सर्वाङ्गेऽनिले ।
अवगाहातुरस्तिष्ठेदर्शः कृच्छ्रादिरुक्षु च ॥11॥

CHAPTER 18

Vamana-Virecana-vidhi Adhyāya

Definition of vamana-virecana:

दोषहरणमूर्ध्वभागं वमनाख्यमधोभागं
विरेचनाख्यमुभयं वा मलविरेचनाद्विरेचनमित्युच्यते ।

Suitable emetic drug according to doṣa:

कफे तीक्ष्णोष्णकटुकैः पित्ते स्वादुहिमैरिति ॥21॥
वमेत् स्निग्धाम्ललवणैः संसृष्टे मरुता कफे ।

Maximum limit for emesis:

पित्तस्य दर्शनं यावच्छेदो वा श्लेष्मणो भवेत् ॥22॥

Useful drugs in the state of absence or insufficient bouts:

हीनवेगः कणाधात्रीसिद्धार्थलवणोदकैः ।
वमेत्पुनःपुनः-

Saṃsarjana karma:

पेयां विलेपीमकृतं कृतं च
यूषं रसं त्रीनुभयं तथैकम् ।
क्रमेण सेवेत नरोऽन्नकालान्
प्रधानमध्यावरशुद्धिशुद्धः ॥29॥
यथाऽपुराणिस्तृणगोभयाद्यः
सन्धुक्यमाणो भवति क्रमेण ।
महान् स्थिरः सर्वपचस्तथैव
शुद्धस्य पेयादिभिरन्तराग्निः ॥30॥

Vamana and virecana vega and parimāṇa:

जघन्यमध्यप्रवरे तु वेगा—
शत्वार इष्टा वमने बड़ष्टौ ।
दशैव ते द्वित्रिगुणा विरेके
प्रस्थस्तथा स्याद्द्विचतुर्गनश्च ॥31॥
पित्तावसानं वमनं विरेका—
दर्ढं, कफान्तं च विरेकमाहुः ।
द्वित्रान् सविद्कानपनीय वेगान्
मेयं विरेके, वमने तु पीतम् ॥32॥

CHAPTER 19

Basti-vidhi Adhyāya

Importance and types of vasti:

वातोल्बणेषु दोषेषु वाते वा बस्तिरिष्यते ।
उपक्रमाणां सर्वेषां सोऽग्रणीस्त्रिविधस्तु सः ॥1॥
निरुहोऽन्वासनं बस्तिरुत्तरः—

Vastinetra:

तयोस्तु नेत्रं हेमादिधातुदार्वस्थिवेणुजम् ॥9॥
गोपुच्छाकारमच्छिद्रं श्लक्षणं गुलिकामुखम् ।

Vastipuṭaka:

—तत्र च योजयेत् ॥15॥
अजाविमहिषादीनां बस्तिं सुमृदितं दृढम् ।
कषायरक्तं निश्चिद्रग्रन्थियन्धशिरं तनुम् ॥16॥
ग्रथितं साधु सूत्रेण सुखसंस्थाप्य भेषजम् ।
बस्त्यभावेऽङ्गपादं वा न्यसेद्वासोऽथवा घनम् ॥17॥

Dosage of anuvāsana vasti dravya:

यथायथं निरुहस्य पादो मात्राऽनुवासने ।

Order of mixing āsthāpana vasti dravya:

माक्षिकं लवणं स्नेहं कल्कं क्वाथमिति क्रमात् ॥45॥
आवपेत निरुहाणामेष संयोजने विधिः ।

Vasti pratyāgamana kāla:

आगतौ परमः कालो मुहूर्ते मृत्यवे परम् ॥47॥

Vātahara vasti:

वातघ्नीष्ठधनिक्वायत्रिवृतासैन्धवैर्युतः ॥56॥
बस्तिरेकोऽनिले स्निग्धः स्वादुम्लोष्णो रसान्वितः ।

Pittahara vasti:

न्यग्रोधादिगणकवायथपद्मकादिसितायुतौ ॥57॥
पित्ते स्वादुहिमौ साज्जक्षीरेक्षुरसमाक्षिकौ ।

Kaphahara vasti:

आरग्वधादिनिष्कवाथवत्सकादियुतास्त्रयः ॥५ ८ ॥
रूक्षाः सक्षौद्रगोमूत्रास्तीक्ष्णोष्णकटुकाः कफे ।

Mātrā vasti:

ह्रस्वया स्नेहपानस्य मात्रया योजितः समः ॥६ ७ ॥
मात्राबस्तिः स्मृतः स्नेहः-

CHAPTER 20 Nasya-vidhi Adhyāya

Nasya:

ऊर्ध्वजनुविकारेषु विशेषान्नस्यमिष्यते ।
नासा हि शिरसो द्वारं तेन तद्व्याप्य हन्ति तान् ॥१ ॥

Bindu mātrā:

प्रदेशिन्यङ्गुलीपर्वद्वयान्मानसमुद्धतात् ॥९ ॥
यावत्पत्तत्यसौ बिन्दुदर्शाष्टौ घटकमेण ते ।
मर्शस्योत्कृष्टमध्योना मात्रास्ता एव च क्रमात् ॥१० ॥
बिन्दुद्वयोनाः कल्कादेः-

Suitable age for conducting various śodhana procedures:

न नस्यमूनसप्ताब्दे नातीताशीतिवत्सरे ॥३ ० ॥
न चोनाष्टादशे धूमः, कवलो नोनपञ्चमे ।
न शुद्धिरूपनदशमे न चातिक्रान्तसप्ततौ ॥३ १ ॥
आजन्मपरणं शस्तः प्रतिमर्शस्तु बस्तिवत् ।
मर्शवच्च गुणान् कुर्यात्स हि नित्योपसेवनात् ॥३ २ ॥
न चात्र यन्त्रणा नापि व्यापद्धयो मर्शवद्वयम् ।

Advantages of nasya:

घनोन्नतप्रसन्नत्वकृस्कन्धग्रीवास्यवक्षसः ।
दुडेन्द्रियास्तपलिता भवेयुनस्यशीलिनः ॥३ ९ ॥

CHAPTER 21 Dhūmapāna-vidhi Adhyāya

Dhūmapāna prayojana:

जत्रूर्ध्वकफवातोत्थविकाराणामजन्मने ।
उच्छेदाय च जातानां पिबेद्धूमं सदाऽऽत्मवान् ॥१ ॥

Types of dhūmapāna:

स्निग्धो मध्यः स तीक्ष्णाश्च, वाते वातकफे कफे ।
योज्यः-

Different times of administration of dhūmapāna:

क्षुतजृभितविष्मूत्रस्त्रीसेवाशस्त्रकर्मणाम् ॥५ ॥
हासस्य दन्तकाष्ठस्य धूममन्ते पिबेन्मृदुम् ।

कालेष्वेषु निशाहरनावनान्ते च मध्यमम् ॥६ ॥
निद्रानस्याञ्चनस्नानच्छर्दितान्ते विरेचनम् ।

Benefits of dhūmapāna:

कासः श्वासः पीनसो विस्वरत्वं
पृतिर्गन्धः पाण्डुता केशदोषः ।
कर्णास्याक्षिस्वावकण्डवर्तिजाडयं
तन्द्रा हिधमा धूमपं न स्पृशन्ति ॥२ २ ॥

CHAPTER 22 Gaṇḍūṣādi-vidhi Adhyāya

Types of gaṇḍūṣa:

चतुष्प्रकारो गण्डूषः स्निग्धः शमनशोधनौ ।
रोपणश्च-

Mūrdha taila:

अभ्यङ्गसेकपिचचो बस्तिश्वेति चतुर्विधम् ॥२ ३ ॥
मूर्द्धतैलम् बहुगुणं तद्विद्यादुत्तरोत्तरम् ।
तत्राभ्यङ्गः प्रयोक्तव्यो रौक्ष्यकण्डूमलादिषु ॥२ ४ ॥
अरुणिकाशिरस्तोददाहपाकव्रेषु तु ।
परिषेकः पिचुः केशशातस्फुटनधूपने ॥२ ५ ॥
नेत्रस्तम्भे च बस्तिस्तु प्रसुप्त्यर्दितजागरे ।
नासास्यशोषे तिमिरे शिरोरोगे च दारुणे ॥२ ६ ॥

Mātrā kāla:

यावत्पर्येति हस्ताग्रं दक्षिणं जानुमण्डलम् ।
निमेषोन्मेषकालेन समं मात्रा तु सा स्मृता ॥३ ३ ॥

Advantages of mūrdha taila:

कचसदनसितत्वपिञ्चरत्वं
परिफुटनं शिरसः समीरोरोगान् ।
जयति, जनयतीन्द्रियप्रसादं
स्वरहनुमूर्द्धबलं च मूर्द्धतैलम् ॥३ ४ ॥

CHAPTER 23 Āscotanāñjana-vidhi Adhyāya

Āscotana:

सर्वेषामक्षिरोगाणामादावाश्त्रोतनं हितम् ।
रुक्तोदकण्डूघर्षश्रुदाहरागनिवर्हणम् ॥१ ॥

Types of āñjana:

लेखनं रोपणं इष्टप्रसादनमिति त्रिधा ।
अञ्जनं लेखनं तत्र कथायाम्लपट्टवैः ॥१ ० ॥

रोपणं तिक्तकैर्द्रव्यैः स्वादुशीतैः प्रसादनम् ।
तीक्ष्णाङ्गनाभिसन्तप्ते नयने तत्प्रसादनम् ॥1 1 ॥

Añjana śalakā:

दशाङ्गुला तनुर्मध्ये शलाका मुकुलानना ॥1 2 ॥
प्रशस्ता, लेखने ताप्ती, रोपणे काललोहजा ।
अङ्गुली च, सुवर्णोथा रूप्यजा च प्रसादने ॥1 3 ॥

3 types of añjana acc. to mode of preparation:

पिण्डो रसक्रिया चूर्णस्त्रिधैवाङ्गनकल्पना ।
गुरी मध्ये लघौ दोषे तां क्रमेण प्रयोजयेत् ॥1 4 ॥

CHAPTER 24

Tarpaṇa Puṭapāka-vidhi Adhyāya

Necessity of protecting eyes:

सर्वात्मना नेत्रबलाय यत्त्वं
कुर्वति नस्याङ्गनतर्पणाद्यः ॥2 2 ॥
दृष्टिश्च नष्टा विविधं जगच्च
तमोमयं जायत एकरूपम् ॥2 3 ॥

CHAPTER 25

Yantra-vidhi Adhyāya

Definition of śalya:

मनःशरीरबाधकराणि शल्यानि ।

Yantra karma:

निर्धातनोन्मथनपूरणमार्गशुद्धि-
संव्यूहनाहरणबन्धनपीडनानि ।
अच्यूषणोत्त्रमननामनचालभङ्ग
व्यावर्तनर्जुकरणानि च यन्त्रकर्म ॥4 1 ॥
विवर्तते साध्ववगाहते च ग्राह्यं
गृहीत्वोद्धरते च यस्मात् ।

Specialty of kaṅkamukha yantra:

यन्त्रेष्वतः कङ्कमुखं प्रधानं स्थानेषु
सर्वेष्वधिकारि यच्च ॥4 2 ॥

CHAPTER 26

Śastra-vidhi Adhyāya

Functions of sharp instruments:

उत्पाटयपाट्यसीव्यव्यलेख्यप्रच्छानकुद्वनम् ॥2 8 ॥
छेद्यं भेद्यं व्यथो मन्थो ग्रहो दाहश्च तत्क्रियाः ।

Śastra doṣa:

कुण्ठखण्डतनुस्थूलहस्वदीर्घत्ववक्रता: ॥2 9 ॥
शस्त्राणां खरधारत्वमष्टौ दोषाः प्रकीर्तिताः ।

Jaloukā:

जलौकसस्तु सुखिनां रक्तस्त्रावाय योजयेत् ।

Different types of bloodletting in different conditions:

प्रच्छानेनैकदेशस्थं ग्रथितं जलजन्मभिः ।
होच्छुद्धादिभिः सुप्तमसुव्यापि शिराव्यधैः ॥5 3 ॥
प्रच्छानं पिण्डते वा स्यात् अवगाढे जलौकसः ।
त्वक्स्थेऽलाबुधटीशृङ्गं शिरैव व्यापकेऽसृजि ॥5 4 ॥
वातादिधाम वा शृङ्गजलौकोलाबुभिः क्रमात् ।

CHAPTER 27

Siravyadha-vidhi Adhyāya

Features of pure blood:

मधुरं लवणं किञ्चिदशीतोष्णामसंहतम् ।
पद्मन्द्रगोपहेमविशशलोहितलोहितम् ॥1 ॥
लोहितं प्रभवः शुद्धं, तनोस्तेनैव च स्थितिः ।

Features of vitiated blood:

वाताच्छ्वावारुणं रूक्षं
वेगस्त्राव्यच्छफेनिलम् ।
पित्तात् पीतासितं विस्वम-
स्कन्द्यौष्यात्सचन्द्रिकम् ॥4 0 ॥
कफात् स्निग्धमसूक्ष्माणु
तनुमतिपिच्छिलं घनम् ।
संसृष्टलिङ्गं संसर्गत्
त्रिदोषं मलिनाविलम् ॥4 1 ॥

Features of persons having pure blood:

प्रसन्नवर्णेन्द्रियमिन्द्रियार्था-
निच्छन्तमव्याहतपक्तुवेगम् ।
सुखान्वितं पुष्टिबलोपपत्रं
विशुद्धरक्तं पुरुषं वदन्ति ॥5 3 ॥

CHAPTER 28

Śalyāharāṇa-vidhi Adhyāya

Śalya gati:

वक्रजुतिर्यगूर्ध्वाधिः शल्यानां पञ्चधा गतिः ।

General features of wound having foreign body:

ध्यामं शोफरुजावन्तं स्ववन्तं शोणितं मुहुः ॥1 1 ॥
अभ्युद्रतं बुद्धदवत्पिटिकोपचितं ब्रणम् ।
मृदुमांसं च जानीयादन्तःशल्यं समासतः ॥1 2 ॥

Kinds of foreign bodies acc. to shape:

वृत्तं पृथु चतुष्कोणं त्रिपुटं च समासतः ।
अद्वयशल्यसंस्थानं ब्रणकृत्या विभावयेत् ॥18॥

Method of removal of foreign bodies:

तेषामाहरणोपायौ प्रतिलोमानुलोमकौ ।
अर्वाचीनपराचीने निहरित्तद्विपर्यात् ॥19॥

CHAPTER 29

Sastrakarma-vidhi Adhyāya

Sastra karma :

शस्त्रस्य कर्म शस्त्राकर्म शस्त्रावचारणा क्रिया तस्य विधिः
शस्त्रकर्मविधिः ।

Features of āma śopha:

ज्ञाकोऽल्पोऽल्पोष्मरुक्षसामः सवर्णः कठिनः स्थिरः ॥12॥

Features of pacyamāna śopha:

पच्यमानो विवर्णस्तु रागी बस्तिरिवाततः ।
स्फुटतीव सनिस्तोदः साङ्घमर्दविजृभिकः ॥13॥
संरम्भारुचिदाहोषात् इज्वरानिद्रतान्वितः ।
स्थानं विष्वन्दयत्याज्यं ब्रणवत्पर्शनासहः ॥14॥

Features of pakwa śopha:

पक्वेऽल्पवेगता म्लानिः पाण्डुता वलिसम्भवः ।
नामोऽनेषूत्रतिर्मध्ये कण्ठशोफादिमार्दवम् ॥15॥
सृष्टे पूयस्य सञ्चारो भवेद्वस्ताविवाम्भसः ।

Relationship of tridoṣa and śopha:

जूलं नर्तेऽनिलाहाहः पित्ताच्छोफः कफोदयात् ॥16॥
रागो रक्ताच्य पाकः स्यादतो दोषैः सशोणितैः ।

Types of bandhana:

स्वानामानुगताकारा बन्धास्तु दशं पञ्चं च ॥15.9॥
कोशस्वस्तिकमुत्तोलीचीनदामानुवेलितम् ।
उट्टवाविबन्धस्थगिकावितानोत्सङ्गोष्टक्षणाः ॥16.0॥

यमकं मण्डलाख्यं च पञ्चाङ्गी चेति योजयेत् ।

CHAPTER 30

Kṣāra-Agnikarma-vidhi Adhyāya

Supremacy of kṣāra:

सर्वशस्त्रानुशस्त्राणां क्षारः श्रेष्ठो बहूनि यत् ।
घेयभेद्यादिकर्माणि कुरुते विषमेष्वपि ॥11॥
दुःखावचार्यशस्त्रेषु तेन सिद्धिमयात्सु च ।
अतिकृच्छ्रेषु रोगेषु यच्च पानेऽपि युज्यते ॥12॥

Kṣāra guṇa:

नातिरीक्षणमृदुः श्लक्षणः पिच्छिलः शीघ्रगः सितः ।
शिखरी सुखनिर्वाप्यो न विष्वन्दी न चातिरुक् ॥12.4॥
क्षारो दशगुणः शस्त्रतेजसोरपि कर्मकृत् ।
आचूष्टिनिव संरम्भाद्वात्रमापीडयन्निव ॥12.5॥

Agnikarma is superior to kṣāra karma:

अग्निः क्षारादपि श्रेष्ठस्तद्वधानामसम्भवात् ।
भेषजक्षारशस्त्रैश्च न सिद्धानां प्रसाधनात् ॥14.0॥

Dagdha bheda:

प्रमाददग्धवत्सर्वे दुर्दग्धात्यर्थदग्धयोः ॥14.6॥
चतुर्था ततु तुच्छेन सह तुच्छस्य लक्षणम् ।
त्वगिवर्णोर्घ्यतेऽत्यर्थं न च स्फोटसमुद्भवः ॥14.7॥
सस्फोटदाहतीव्रोषं दुर्दग्धम् अतिदाहतः ।
मांसलम्बनसङ्गोचदाहधूपनवेदनाः ॥14.8॥
सिरादिनाशस्त्रृण्मूर्च्छाव्रिणगाम्भीर्यमृत्यवः ।

Treatment for various types of dagdha:

तुच्छस्याग्निप्रतपनं कार्यमुष्णां च भेषजम् ॥14.9॥
स्त्यानेऽस्वे वेदनाऽत्यर्थं विलीने मन्दता रुजः ।
दुर्दग्धे शीतमुष्णां च युद्धयादादौ ततो हिमम् ॥15.0॥
सम्यग्दग्धे तवक्षीरिप्लक्षचन्दनगौरिकैः ।
लिप्तेत्साज्यामृतैरुद्धर्वं पित्तविद्रधिवत्क्रिया ॥15.1॥
अतिदग्धे द्रुतं कुर्यात्सर्वं पित्तविसर्पवत् ।
स्नेहदग्धे भृशतरं रुक्षं तत्र तु योजयेत् ॥15.2॥

ANNEXURE : III

**Table of weights and measures mentioned in
the classics and their metric equivalents adopted
by Ayurvedic Pharmacopoeia Committee**

S. No.	Weights & Measures mentioned in Ayurveda		Metric equivalents
1.	1 Rattī	1 Guñjā	125mg
2.	8 Rattī	1 Māṣā	1g
3.	12 Māṣā	1 Karṣa (Tolā)	12g
4.	2 Karṣa	1 Śukti	24g
5.	2 Śukti	1 Pala	48g
6.	2 Pala	1 Prasṛta	96g
7.	2 Prasṛta	1 Kuḍava	192g
8.	2 Kuḍava	1 Māṇikā	384g
9.	2 Māṇikā	1 Prastha	768g
10.	4 Prastha	1 Ādhaka	3 kg 72g
11.	4 Ādhaka	1 Droṇa	12kg 288g
12.	2 Droṇa	1 Śūrpā	24kg 576g
13.	2 Śūrpā	1 Dronī	49kg 153g
14.	4 Dronī	1 Khāri	196kg 608g
15.	1 Pala	-	48g
16.	100 Pala	1 Tulā	4kg 800g
17.	20 Tulā	1 Bhāra	96kg

* In case of liquids, the metric equivalents would be the corresponding liter and milliliter.

ANNEXURE : IV

Glimpse of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

I. Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya consists 6 Sthānas and 120 Chapters as under:

- a. Sūtra Sthāna - 30 chapters
- b. Śārīra Sthāna - 06 chapters
- c. Nidāna Sthāna - 16 chapters
- d. Cikitsā Sthāna - 22 chapters
- e. Kalpa Sthāna - 06 chapters
- f. Uttara Tantra - 40 chapters

II. Table showing the name of the commentary, commentator on Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya along with their period:

S.No.	Name of the Commentary	Written by	Period
1.	Sarvāṅga Sundarā	Arunādatta	12th Cent. AD
2.	Āyurveda Rasāyana	Hemādri	13th Cent. AD
3.	Padārtha Candrikā	Candranandana	10th Cent. AD
4.	Hṛdaya Bodhikā	Śrīdāsa Paṇḍita	14th Cent. AD
5.	Nidāna Cintāmaṇi	Toḍaramalla	14th-15th Cent. AD
6.	Tattwabodha	Śivadāsa Sena	15th Cent. AD
7.	Vāgbhaṭa Maṇḍana	Bhaṭṭa Narahari	15th Cent. AD

III. Kāya, Bāla, Graha, Īrdhwāṅga, Śalya, Darinśtrā, Jarā and Vṛṣa are the eight branches of Āyurveda.

4. Briefly saying vāta, pitta and kapha the tridoṣas. Abnormal and normal states of these doṣas results in illness and fitness respectively.

5. Agni is of 4 types:

- a. Viṣamagni - due to the dominancy of vāta
- b. Tīkṣṇagni - due to the dominancy of pitta
- c. Mandāgnī - due to the dominancy of kapha
- d. Samāgnī - due to their equilibrium state

6. Koṣṭha is of 3 types:

- a. Krūra koṣṭha - vāta dominancy
- b. Mṛdu koṣṭha - pitta dominancy
- c. Madhyama koṣṭha - kapha dominancy & also in sama doṣa state

7. Prakṛti is of 7 types:

- a. Vāta prakṛti - hīna
- b. Pitta prakṛti - madhyama
- c. Kapha prakṛti - uttama
- d. Tridoṣaja - śreṣṭha
- e. Dwandaja - nindya

8. Tridoṣa guṇa:

- Vāta - Rükṣa, laghu, śīta, khara, sūkṣma, cala
- Pitta - Sneha, tīkṣṇa, uṣṇa, laghu, visra, sara, drava
- Kapha - Snigdha, śīta, guru, manda, ślakṣṇa, mṛtsna, sthira

9. Sapta dūṣya/Dhātu: Rasa, asṝk, māṁsa, medas, asthi, majjā and śukra

10. Trimalas: Mūtra, sakṛt, sweda

11. Rasas are 6 in number:

S.No	Rasa	Relation with Pañcamahābhūta	Doṣahara	Doṣa-vardhaka
1.	Madhura	Pṛthivī + Ap	Vāta, pitta	Kapha
2.	Amla	Pṛthivī + Agni	Vāta	Pitta, kapha
3.	Lavāṇa	Ap + Agni	Vāta	Pitta, kapha
4.	Tikta	Ākāśa + Vāyu	Kapha, pitta	Vāta
5.	Kaṭu	Agni + Vāyu	Kapha	Vāta, pitta
6.	Kaṣāya	Pṛthivī + Vāyu	Kapha, pitta	Vāta

12. Dravya-bheda - 3 types: Śamana, kopana, swastha-hita.

13. Dwividha vīrya: Uṣṇa, śīta

14. Vipāka is of 3 types: Madhura, amla, kaṭu

15. Gurvādi guṇa (or) Dravya guṇa (or) Dwandwa guṇa (or) Karmanya-sāmānya guṇa are 20 in number:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a. Guru x Laghu | f. Sāndra x Drava |
| b. Manda x Tīkṣṇa | g. Mrdu x Kaṭhina |
| c. Hima x Uṣṇa | h. Sthira x Sara |
| d. Snigdha x Rükṣa | i. Sūkṣma x Sthūla |
| e. Ślakṣṇa x Khara | j. Viśada x Picchila |

16. Hīnayoga, mithyāyoga and atiyoga of kāma, artha and karma leads to illness and the samyag-yoga of those three results in healthiness.

17. Sattwa, rajas and tamas are known as mahā guṇas where as rajas and tamas are considered as mānasika doṣa.

18. Two types of diseases viz. niija and āgantuja.

19. Rogādhiṣṭhāna - Śarīra (body) & manas (mind)

20. Rogī-parīkṣā is of 3 types viz. darśana, spārśana & praśna.

21. Kāla is of 2 types viz. kṣaṇādi kāla & vyādhīvasthā kāla.

22. In brief treatment is of 2 types viz. śodhana & śamana.

23. Best treatment for śarīrika & mānasika doṣas:

- Vāta - Vasti karma & taila
- Pitta - Virecana & ghṛta

c. Kapha	- Vamana & madhu		
d. Rajas, Tamas	- Dhī, dhairyā, ātmādi vijñānam		
24. Catuṣpāda & their qualities:			
a. Bhiṣak	- Dakṣa, tirdhātta ṣāstrārtha, dṛṣṭakarma, śuci		
b. Dravya	- Bahukalpam, bahuguṇam, sampannam, yogyam		
c. Upasthātā	- Anurakti, śuci, dakṣa, buddhimān		
d. Rogī	- Ādhya, bhiṣag-vaśya, jñāpaka, sattwavān		
25. Classification of diseases - Sādhyā & asādhyā			
a. Sādhyā	- Sukha-sādhyā, kṛcchra-sādhyā		
b. Asādhyā	- Yāpya, anupakrama		
26. According to Aruṇadatta brāhma muhūrta is:			
"Rātreścaturdaśo muhūrto brahma muhūrtah"			
That means 14th muhūrta of the night hours is being considered as brāhma muhūrta and which is the suitable time for vedādhyayana.			
One Muhūrta means 48 minutes. Whole night consists of 15 muhūrtas. 14th muhūrta kāla means after the completion of 13 muhūrtas. i.e. 96 minutes before sunrise, means 4.24 a.m.			
27. Danta-kāṣṭha: Arka, nyagrodha, karañja, kakubha etc. and the herbs possessing kaṣaya, kaṭu and tikta rasa. The size should be kanīnikāgra-sama sthoulya and dwādaśāṅgula pramāṇa.			
28. Contraindications for tooth brushing: Ajīrṇa, chardi, śvāsa, kāsa, jwara, ardita, trṣṇā, asyapāka, hrdaya-netra-śiro-karṇa roga.			
29. Souvīrāñjana is to be used regularly and rasāñjana once in a week to drain kapha.			
30. Tāmbūla sevana is contraindicated to kṣata, rakta-pitta, rūkṣa, netra-roga, viṣa-duṣṭa, mūrcchā, mada and śoṣa roga.			
31. Abhyāṅga is contraindicated for kapha rogī, after śodhana and during ajīrṇa state.			
32. Vyāyāma is contraindicated for vāta-pitta roga, bala, vṛuddha and during ajīrṇa state.			
33. Daśavidha pāpa: Hiṁsā, steya, anyathā kāma, paīśunya, paruṣa vacana, anṛta vacana, sambhinnālāpa, vyāpada, abhidya and dṛḍhviparyaya.			
34. Rtu-caryā:			
S.No.	Name of ḫtu	Rtu lakṣaṇa	Rtu caryā
1.	Hemanta ḫtu (Winter)	People are strengthy, power of digestion increased, nights are longer, persons feel hungry early in the morning.	Use madhura, amla, lavaṇa dravyas. Abhyāṅga with vātahara taila, mūrdha taila. Wrestling, pādāghāta, besmear the body with kurūkuma & kasturi and then dhūpa with aguru. Drink wine prepared with guḍa, take food prepared with godhūma, māṣa, ikṣu and kṣira vikāra. Spend with loving women. Use room heaters .

S.No.	Name of ṛtu	Rtu lakṣaṇa	Rtu caryā
2.	Śiśira ṛtu (Cold season)	Cold is severe, dryness is more due to the effect of ādāna kāla	Similar to hemanta ṛtu
3.	Vasanta ṛtu (Spring season)	Power of digestion decreased kapha is increased	Tikṣṇa vamana & nasya, laghu, rūkṣa bhojana, udvartana, karpūra, candana, aguru, kuñkuma lepa, purāṇa yava, godhūma, kṣoudra, jāṅgala (sulya) māṁsa, āmra rasa, drāksā surā, madhvāsava. Spend the day time in the gardens. Avoid day sleep and hard foods
4.	Grīṣma ṛtu (Summer)	Sun rays become more powerful and kapha kṣaya & vāta prakopa takes place as the days are passing away.	Avoid lavaṇa, kaṭu, amla dravya sevana, vyāyāma and exposing to sun. Use madhura, snigdha and laghu āhāra. Don't take alcohol, if necessary take highly diluted one only. Jāṅgala māṁsa rasa, māhiṣa kṣīra, pañca sāra pānaka, spend the day time in the forests and during night sleep on the terrace.
5.	Varṣā ṛtu (Rainy season)	Power of digestion decreased Water is getting dirty.	Vamana, virecana, āsthāpana vasti. Old rice jāṅgala māṁsa, madhvāriṣṭa, amla, lavaṇa, sneha, kṣoudra, easily digestible. Should not move on bear foot, avoid rain water, day sleep, exertion & exposure to sun .
6.	Śaradṛtu (Autumn)	Pitta prakopa	Tikta ghṛtapāna, virecana, raktamokṣaṇa, tikta, madhura, kaṣāya, laghu, bhojana, śāli, mudga, paṭola, madhu, jāṅgala māṁsa, harīsodaka-pāna. Besmear the body with candana, uśīra, karpūra etc. and enjoy moonlight. Avoid heavy meals, curds, oils, strong lcoholic drinks, day sleep, exposing to mist and sunlight.

35. Adhāraṇīya vega:

S.No.	Name of vega	Vega-dhāraṇa lakṣaṇa	Cikitsā
1.	Adho vāta (Flatus)	Gulma, udāvarta, ruk, klama, vāta, mūtra, puriṣa-saṅga, agni-māndya, hṛdgada	
2.	Puriṣa (Stools)	Piṇḍikodweṣṭhana, pratiṣyāya, śirorujā, urdhwavāta, parikarta, hṛdayoparodha, stools coming out from the mouth and the diseases mentioned earlier	Varti, abhyaṅga, avagāha, swedana, vasti karma, laxatives & purgatives, avapīḍaka snehapāna especially for mūtrāvarodha-janya vikāra.
3.	Mūtra (Urine)	Aṅga-bhaṅga, aśmarī. Vasti, meḍhra vañkṣaṇa vedanā	

S.No.	Name of vega	Vega-dhāraṇa lakṣaṇa	Cikitsā
4.	Udgāra (Belching)	Aruci, kampa, hṛdaya uro vibandha, ādhmāna, kāsa, hikkā	Similar to hikkāvarodhajanya vikāra
5.	Kṣavathu (Sneezing)	Sirovedanā, indriya dourbalya, manyāsthambha, ardita	Tikṣṇa dhūma, añjana, nasya, arka vilokana, sneha, sweda
6.	Trṣṇā (Thirst)	Śoṣa, aṅgasāda, bādhirya, moha, bhrama, hṛdroga	All kinds of śitalopacāra viz. food, drinks, bath, use of śīta vīrya dravyas
7.	Kṣudhā (Hunger)	Aṅgabhaṅga, aruci, glāni, kārṣya, śūla, bhrama	Laghu, snigdha, uṣṇa, amla bhojana
8.	Nidrā (Sleep)	Moha, śirogourava, akṣi-gourava, ālasya, jrmbhā, aṅgamarda	Good sleep, gentle massage
9.	Kāsa (Cough)	Kāsa-vṛddhi, śwāsa, aruci, hṛdroga, śoṣa, hikkā	Kāsahara cikitsā
10.	Śramaśwāsa (Dyspnoea on exertion)	Gulma, hṛdroga, moha	Visramaṇa, vātaghna cikitsā
11.	Jṛmbhā (Yawning)	Similar to kṣavathu	Vātaghna cikitsā
12.	Aśru (Tears)	Pīnasa, akṣi-śiro-hṛd ruk, manyāsthambha, aruci, bhrama, gulma	Good sleep, madya-pāna, hearing enjoyable stories
13.	Chardi (Vomiting)	Visarpa, koṭha, kuṣṭha, akṣikanḍu, pāṇḍu, jwara, śwāsa, kāsa, hṛllāsa, vyāṅga, śwayathu	Gandūṣa, dhūma, upavāsa, rūkṣa āhāra and then induce vomiting, vyāyāma, raktamokṣaṇa, virecana, abhyāṅga with oil mixed with kṣāra and lavaṇa
14.	Śukra (Semen)	Guhya vedanā, śwayathu, jwara, hṛdyathā, mūtrasaṅga, aṅgabhaṅga, vṛddhi, aśmarī, ṣaṇḍhatā	Food with tāmracūḍa, surā and śāli rice. Vasti, abhyāṅga, avagāha, vasti śuddhi dravya processed with milk, copulation with affectionate women

36. Drava-Dravya:

S.N.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
1.	Gaṅgāmbu	Avyakta rasa, slightly madhura śīta & laghu guṇa	Jīvana, tarpana, hṛdaya, hlādi, buddhi-prabodhaka, amṛtopama.
2.	Śīta jala		Relieves madātyaya, glāni, mūrcchā, chardi, śrama, bhrama, trṣṇā, uṣma-dāha, pitta, rakta and viṣa.
3.	Uṣṇa jala	Laghu, uṣṇa	Dīpana, pācana, kanṭhya, vasti śodhana, hikkā, ādhmāna, vāta, kapha roga, after śodhana, nava jwara, kāsa, āma, pīnasa, śwāsa, pārśwa-ruja.

S.N.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
4.	Nārikelodaka	Madhura rasa, snigdha, śīta, laghu guṇa	Vṛṣya, trṣṇā and pittahara, dipana & vasti śodhaka.
5.	Gokṣīra	Sara guṇa	Jīvanīya, rasāyana, medhya, balya, stanya-kara useful in kṣataksīṇa, śrama, bhrama, mada, alakṣmī, śwāsa, kāsa, trṣṇā, kṣudhā, jīrṇa jwara, mūtrakṛcchra, raktapitta
6.	Māhiṣa kṣīra	Guru, śīta guṇa	Useful in atyagni, anidrā.
7.	Ajā kṣīra	Laghu guṇa	Useful in śoṣa, jwara, śwāsa, raktapitta, atisāra
8.	Uṣṭra kṣīra	Lavaṇa rasa, slightly rūkṣa, laghu guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Dīpana, useful in vāta, kapha, ānāha, kṛmi, śopha, udara, arśas.
9.	Mānuṣa kṣīra		Vāta-pitta-rakta kopahara, abhighātahara, useful in eye diseases in the form of tarpaṇa, āścyotana, nasya.
10.	Avi kṣīra	Uṣṇa vīrya	Aḥṛdyā, vātavyādhihara, causes hikkā, śwāsa, pitta & kapha.
11.	Hasti kṣīra		Sthiryā-kara
12.	Ekaśapha kṣīra	Amla, lavaṇa rasa, laghu guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Śākhāvāta-hara, jaḍatā-kara
13.	Dadhi	Amla rasa, guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, amla vipāka	Grāhī, vātahara. Increases medas, śukra, bala, śleṣmā, pitta, rakta, agni & śopha. Indicated in aruci, viṣama jwara, pīnasa, mūtrakṛcchra, grahanī roga.
14.	Takra	Kaṣāya, amla rasa, laghu guṇa	Dīpana, kapha vāta hara, śopha, udara, arśas, grahanī doṣa, mūtrāgraḥa, aruci, plihā, gulma, ghṛta vyāpat, garaviṣa, pāṇḍu
15.	Nava (fresh) navanīta	Śīta vīrya	Vṛṣya, bala, vraṇa, agnivardhaka. Saṅgrāhī, useful in vāta, pitta, rakta, kṣaya, arśas, ardita & kāsa. * Butter obtained directly from milk is saṅgrāhī, raktapitta & netrarogahara.
16.	Ghṛta		Dhī, smṛti, medhā, agni, bala, āyu, śukravardhaka, cakṣuṣya; useful for bālavriddha, prajākānta, soukumarya, swarārdhī, kṣataksīṇa, parisarpa, ṣastrāgnī glāpita. Vāta, pitta, viṣa, unmada, śoṣa, alakṣmī, jwarahara, vayahsthāpaka.
17.	Ikṣu rasa	Madhura rasa, guru snigdha, sara guṇa, śīta vīrya, madhura vipāka	Bṛīhaṇa. Increases kapha and mūtra. Vṛṣya. Raktapitta hara.

S.N.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
18.	Phāṇita	Guru guṇa	Abhiṣyandī, doṣa caya kara, mūtra śodhaka
19.	Guḍa *Properly washed		Doesn't increase kapha excessively, eliminates mūtra & purīṣa.
	Impure guḍa		Increases kṛmi and the disorders of majjā, rakta, medas, māṁsa & kapha
	Purāṇa guḍa		Hṛdaya, pathya.
	Navā guḍa		Kapha-vardhaka, agnisāda.
20.	Matsyāñdikā		Vṛṣya. Useful in kṣataṅkīna, rakta, pitta & vāta roga
21.	Yava śarkarā	Tikta, madhura, kaśāya	----- do -----
22.	Madhu	Kaśāya, madhura rasa rūkṣa guṇa	Cakṣuṣya; chedī; ṭṛṣṇā, śleṣmā, viṣa, hikkā, rakta-pitta hara; cures meha, kuṣṭha, kṛmi, chardi, śwāsa, kāsa and atisara; vrāṇa śodhana, sandhāna and ropāṇa kara; vātakara.
23.	Madhu śarkarā	----- do -----	----- do -----
24.	Tila taila	Uṣṇa, tiksṇa, sūksma, vyavāyī guṇa	Twak doṣakara, acakṣuṣya, kapha hara. Makes the persons lean fatty and vice versa. Vibandhakara, kṛmighna, cures all types of disorders with appropriate processing.
25.	Eraṇḍa taila	Tikta, kaṭu, madhura rasa, sara, guru guṇa	Vardhma, gulma, vāta kapha roga, udara, viṣama jwara, pain & swelling in kaṭi, guhya, koṣṭha and prṣṭha.
	Rakta eraṇḍa	Tiksṇa, uṣṇa, picchila. Visra gandha.	
26.	Sarṣapa taila	Kaṭu rasa, tiksṇa, laghu guṇa uṣṇa vīrya	Kapha, śukra, vātahara; causes rakta-pitta. Useful in koṭha, kuṣṭha, arśas & vrāṇa.
27.	Akṣa taila	Madhura rasa, guru guṇa, ūṭīta vīrya.	Keśya, pitta-vātahara.
28.	Nimba taila	Tikta rasa, na-atyuṣṇa	Kṛmi, kuṣṭha, kaphahara
29.	Umā & kusumbha taila	Uṣṇa vīrya	Twagdoṣa kara, increases kapha & pitta.
30.	Madya	Madhura, tikta, kaṭu, amla rasa; tiksṇa, uṣṇa, laghu sūksma guṇa; amla vipāka	Dīpana, rocana, tuṣṭi-puṣṭi vardhaka; swara, ārogya, pratibhā, varṇakara; useful in nigrāṇa and atinigrā makes the lean stout; srotas śodhaka; vāta-kaphahara.
31.	Surā	Guru guṇa	Gulma, udara, arśas, grahanī, śoṣa, snehana, vātahara, medo, rakta, stanya, mūtra, kaphahara.

S.N.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
32.	Vaibhītakī sura	Laghu, tīkṣṇa guṇa	Hṛdyā, śūla, kāsa, chardi, śwāsa, vibandha ādhmāna, pīnasa, medas, vraṇa, pāṇḍu and kuṣṭha.
33.	Yava surā	Guru, rūkṣa guṇa	Viṣṭambhī, tridoṣakara.
34.	Mārdwīkāriṣṭa	Madhura rasa, sara guṇa, na-atyuṣṇa vīrya	Lekhana, hṛdyā; slightly increases pitta & vāta; useful in pāṇḍu, meha, arśas and kṛmi.
35.	Kharjūra	Guru guṇa	Vātala; inferior to Mārdwīkāriṣṭa
36.	Śarkarā madya	Madhura rasa, surabhi, laghu guṇa	Hṛdyā, na-atimada
37.	Guḍa madya		Eliminates mūtra, purīṣa, adhovāta easily. Tarpaṇa, dīpana.
38.	Sīdhu		Vāta-pittakara; sneha & śleṣmā, vikārahara, medo-śopha-udara-arśoghna.
39.	Madhvāsava	Tīkṣṇa guṇa	Chedī; meha, pīnasa, kāsahara.
40.	Śukta	Amla rasa; uṣṇa, tīkṣṇa, rūkṣa, sara guṇa; Śīta-sparṣa	Increase rakta, pitta, kapha, vātānulomaka; hṛdyā; rucikara; dīpana; pāṇḍu, netra roga & kṛmihara.
41.	Dhānyāmla	Tīkṣṇa, uṣṇa & laghu guṇa; Śīta-sparṣa	Bhedī, pittakara, śrama, klama-hara, rucya, dīpana, vasti-śūlahara, hṛdyā, vāta-kaphahara.
42.	Souvīraka, tuṣodaka	-----do-----	Kṛmi, hṛdroga, gulma, arśas, pāṇḍu.
43.	Mūtra - go, ajā, avi, māhiṣa, gaja, aśwa, khara	Lavaṇa, kaṭu rasa. Rūkṣa, tīkṣṇa, uṣṇa, laghu guṇa.	Pittala; kṛmi, śopha, udara ānāha, śūla, pāṇḍu, kapha, vāta, gulma, aruci, viṣa, świtra, kuṣṭha & arśohara.

37. Anna-swarūpa Vijñānīya:

S.No.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
1.	Śūka dhānya	Madhura rasa, kaṣāya anurasa, snigdha, laghu guṇa, Śīta vīrya, madhura vipāka	Vṛṣya, slightly constipated mūtrala, pathya.
2.	Yavaka, hayana, pāṁśu, bāṣpa, naiṣedhika	Madhura rasa, snigdha, guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, amla vipāka	Śleṣmā, pitta vardhaka, eliminates mūtra & purīṣa.
3.	Śaṣṭīka dhānya	Madhura rasa, snigdha, laghu, Śīta guṇa, Śīta vīrya	Grāhi, tridoṣahara.
4.	Mahāvṛīhī, krṣṇa vṛīhī, jātumukhī, kukkuṭāṇḍaka, lāvaka etc.	Madhura rasa, guru guṇa, amla vipāka	Pittakara; induces mūtra, purīṣa and uṣma.

S.No.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
5.	Trna dhānya kaṅgu, kodrava, nivāra, śyāmaka	Laghu, lekhana guṇa, śīta vīrya	Vāta vārdhaka, kapha-pitta-śāmaka.
6.	Yava	Madhura rasa, rūkṣa, guru, sara guṇa, śīta vīrya	Induces faeces and flatus, vṛṣya, sthairyakara, mūtra- saṅgakara, medo-kapha-pittahara. Useful in pīnasa, śwāsa, kāsa, urusthamba, kanṭha roga and twak roga.
7.	Godhūma	Madhura rasa, guru, snigdha, sara guṇa, śīta vīrya	Vṛṣya, jīvana, vāta-pitta-hara, sandhānakara, sthairyakara.
	Nandimuka godhūma	Kaṣāya, madhura rasa, laghu guṇa, śīta vīrya	Pathya
8.	Śimbī dhānya: Mudga, āḍhakī, masūra etc.	Kaṣāya, madhura rasa, laghu guṇa, śīta vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Vibandha kara, grāhī, reduces medas, kapha & raktapitta. Useful for lepa & upaseka (soup).
9.	Kulattha	Kaṣāya, madhura rasa, uṣṇa vīrya, amla vipāka	Useful in śukra doṣa, aśmarī, śwāsa, pīnasa, kāsa, arśas, kapha vāta roga. Excess use leads to raktapitta.
10.	Niṣpāva	Guru, sara, vidāhī guṇa	Increases vāta, pitta, rakta, stanya & mūtra. Useful in netraroga, śukra doṣa, kapha vriddhi, śopha, viṣa doṣa.
11.	Māṣa	Madhura rasa, snigdha, guru, sara guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Bala-śleṣmā,-mala-pitta-kara; vātahara; śukra vārdhaka & śukra recaka.
12.	Kākāṇḍolā Ātmaguptā	-----do-----	-----do-----
13.	Tila	Guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, kaṭu vipāka hima sparśa	Keśya, balya, alpa-mūtratā-medhā-agni- kapha-pitta vārdhaka.
14.	Umā bija Kusumbha bija	Madhura,tikta rasa, snigdha, guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Kapha-pittakara, causes netraroga and śukra kṣaya
15.	Jāngala māṁsa	Laghu guṇa, śīta vīrya	Vibandha kāraka. Useful in Sannipāta roga where pitta vitiated in excess, vāta moderately & kapha slightly.
16.	Śāśa (rabbit) māṁsa	Rūkṣa guṇa, śīta vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Dīpana, grāhī.
17.	Vartaka (male bustard)	Guru,snigdha guṇa slightly uṣṇa vīrya	Bṛñhaṇa
18.	Tittiri (partridge)	Guru, snigdha guṇa	Grāhī, varṇya. Medhā-agni-bala-śukra vārdhaka. Best used in vātolbaṇa sannipāta
19.	Śikhī (peacock)		In general it is not completely wholesome. Good for ears, eyes, voice and to arrest aging.

S.No.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
20.	Kukkuṭa (wild cock)		Similar to peacock, vr̄ṣya
	Pet cock	Guru guṇa	Increases kapha
21.	Cātaka (sparrow)	Snigdha guṇa	Vātaghnī, śleṣmala & śukrala.
22.	Vileśaya māṁsa	Madhura rasa, snigdha, guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Increases urine and faeces, balya, vātaghnī. Kapha-pittakara.
23.	Mahā mṛga	Lavaṇa rasa, śīta vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Māṁsa vardhaka. Useful in jīrṇa arśas, grahanī doṣa, śoṣa.
24.	Aja māṁsa	Snigdha, guru guṇa, uṣṇa virya, kaṭu vipāka	Adoṣaja, anabhiṣyandī, Br̄hmaṇa
25.	Avi māṁsa	Opposite to aja māṁsa	Br̄hmaṇa
26.	Gomāṁsa		Useful in śuṣka kāsa, śrama, atyagni, viṣama jwara, pīnasa, kārṣya, vātaroga
27.	Māhiṣa māṁsa	Guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Swapna-janaka, dṛḍhatwa, br̄hmaṇa kara.
28.	Varāhī māṁsa	Similar to māhiṣa māṁsa	Śrama hara. rucikara, śukrala, balya.
29.	Matsya/Cilcima		Kaphakara, vitiates all the tridoṣas.
30.	Śāka varga Pāṭhā, śaṭhī, śuṣa, satinaja, etc	Laghu guṇa	Tidoṣaghna, grāhī
	Suniṣaṇnaka	----- do -----	Agni vardhaka, vr̄ṣya
	Rajakṣavaka	----- do -----	Grahanī, arśo vikāraghnī
	Vāstūka	----- do -----	Mala-bhedaka
31.	Kākamācī	Sara guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Tridoṣaghna, kuṣṭha hara, Vṛṣya, rasāyana, swarya.
32.	Caṅgerī	Amla rasa, laghu, grāhī guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Dīpana. Useful in grahanī, arśas, vāta-kapha roga
33.	Paṭola	Tikta rasa, śīta vīrya, madhura vipāka	Hṛdaya, rucya, kṛmihara
34.	Bṛhatī dwaya	Tikta rasa, śīta vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Pittala, vātaghnī, dīpana, bhedī
35.	Vāsā	Tikta rasa, śīta vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Vamī & kāsaghna, raktapitta hara.
36.	Kāravella	Tikta rasa, śīta vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Dīpana, kapha hara.
37.	Vārtāka	Tikta, madhura rasa, kṣāra anurasa, uṣṇa vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Kapha-vāta hara; pittakara, agni dīpana, rucya.
38.	Karīra	Kaṣāya, madhura, tikta	Ādhmāna kara.
39.	Koṣṭatākī Avalgujā	Tikta rasa, śīta vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Bhedi Agni-dīpana.

S.No.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
40.	Taṇḍuliyaka	Madhura rasa, rūkṣa, laghu guṇa, śīta vīrya, madhura vipāka	Madātyaya; pitta, rakta & viṣa vikāra.
41.	Muñjata	Madhura rasa, snigdha, guru guṇa, śīta vīrya	Vāta-pitta hara, bṛīhaṇa ūkrala.
42.	Vidārī	Madhura rasa, guru guṇa, śīta vīrya	Vāta-pittaghna, mūtrala, jīvana, bṛīhaṇa, kanthya, vr̄ṣya, rasāyana.
43.	Jīvantī	Madhura rasa, śīta vīrya	Caksuṣya, tridoṣaghna.
44.	Kuṣmāṇḍa	Madhura rasa, guru guṇa, madhura vipāka	Vātapiṭṭha hara, vasti ūuddhi kara, vr̄ṣya.
45.	Trapuṣa	Madhura rasa, guru guṇa, madhura vipāka	Ati mūtrala.
46.	Tarkārī & varuṇa	Madhura, tikta rasa	Kaphavāta hara.
47.	Varṣābhau- 2 types Kālaśāka	Kṣāra, kaṭu , tikta rasa	Dīpana, bhedana, gara viṣa-śopha-kapha-vāta hara.
48.	Śatāvarī	Tikta rasa	Vr̄ṣya, tridoṣaghna
49.	Kāsamarda	Sara guṇa	Relieves kṝmi, kāsa and kaphotkleśa.
50.	Sarṣapa	Guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Viñmūtra baddhatā sarva doṣa kara
51.	Mūlaka (tender)	Avyakta rasa, slightly kṣāra, tikta rasa, laghu guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Useful in gulma, śwāsa, kāsa, kṣaya, vr̄ana, śleṣmā, gala roga, swarasāda, agnisāda, udāvarta, pīnasa.
	Fully grown mūlaka	Kaṭu rasa, guru guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, kaṭu vipāka	Tridoṣa kara, abhiṣyandī
	Processed with oil		Vāta hara
	Dried mūlaka		Vāta kapha hara
	Raw mūlaka		Tridoṣa kara
52.	Dhānyaka	Tikta, madhura rasa	Mūtrala, pittakara
53.	Laśuna	Kaṭu rasa, tīkṣṇa, sara, guru, snigdha, guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya kaṭu vipāka.	Hrdya, keśya, vr̄ṣya, rocana, dipana, bhagna sandhāna kara, balya and rasāyana. Useful in kilasa, kuṣṭha, gulma, arśas, meha, kṝmi, kapha, vāta, hikkā, pīnasa, śwāsa and kāsa. Vitiates rakta & pitta.
54.	Palāṇḍu	Somewhat inferior to laśuna in properties.	Śleṣmala, Na-atipittala.
55.	Gr̄ñjanaka	Tīkṣṇa, gr̄ahī guṇa	Arśas of vāta, kapha origin
56.	Sūraṇa	Viśada and laghu guṇa	Dīpana, rucya, kaphaghna, especially useful in arśas.

S.No.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
57.	<u>Phala varga</u> Drāksā	Madhura, kaṣaya rasa, snigdha, guru guṇa, śīta vīrya, madhura vipāka	Best one among the fruits. Vṛṣya, cakṣuṣya, eliminates urine & faeces. Relieves vāta, raktaguttī & tiktāsyatā. Useful in madātyaya, trṣṇā, kāsa, śramaśwāsa, swarabheda, kṣatakṣaya.
58.	Dāḍima (sweet one)	Laghu, snigdha, grāhī guṇa	Pitta pradhāna sannipata
	Sour variety	Slightly usṇa vīrya	Vāta-kapha hara
	Both varieties	Laghu, snigdha, grāhī	Rocana, dipana
59.	Moca	Madhura rasa, guru guṇa, śīta vīrya, madhura vipāka	Bṛīnhāṇa, dāha
60.	Kāśmarya	Śīta vīrya	Sakṛt-mūtra vibandhaghna. Keśya, medhya, rasayana.
61.	Priyāla	Snigdha guṇa, anuṣṇa vīrya	Vāta hara.
	Priyāla majjā	Madhura rasa	Vṛṣya, pitta-vāta hara
62.	Kola majjā	-----do-----	Relieves trṣṇā, chardi and kāsa
63.	Bilwa (pakwa)	Grāhī	Durjara, doṣala, pūtimarutam
	Bilwa (tender fruit)	Grāhī	Dīpana, kapha-vātaghnī
64.	Kapittha (āma)	Grāhī	Kanṭhaghna, doṣala
	Kapittha (pakwa)	Grāhī	Doṣaghna, hikkā, chardi, viṣa-hara
65.	Jambū	Guru, grāhī guṇa, śīta vīrya.	Vātala, kaphapitta hara, mala-mūtra bandhaka. Akanṭhyā.
66.	Āmra (tender fruit)		Vitiates vāta, pitta & rakta
	Āmra (pakwa)	Madhura, amla rasa, guru guṇa	Vāta hara, kaphakara, śukra vardhaka.
67.	Vṛkṣamlā	Laghu, rūkṣa, grāhī guṇa usṇa vīrya	Vāta-śleṣmā hara.
68.	Pīlu	Tikta, madhura rasa	Kaphavāta hara. bhedi. Relieves plihā, arśas, kṛmi, gulma.
69.	Mātuluṅga (twak)	Tikta, kaṭu rasa, snigdha guṇa	Vāta hara
	Mātuluṅga (pulp)	Madhura rasa, guru guṇa	Bṛīnhāṇa, vātaguttī hara
	Mātuluṅga (kesara)	Laghu guṇa	Useful in kāsa, śwāsa, hikkā, madātyaya, āsyāśoṣa, vāta-kapha roga, vibandha, chardi, arocaka, gulma, udara, arśas, śula, agnimāndya.

S.No.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
70.	Bhallātaka (twak, māṁsa/pulp)	Madhura rasa, śīta vīrya	Bṛīhaṇa
	Bhallātaka (seed)	Agni sama	Medhya, kaphavāta hara
71.	Ouśadha varga Lavaṇa	Lavaṇa rasa; sūkṣma, mṛdu, tīkṣṇa, uṣṇa, viṣyandī guṇa	Śṛṣṭa mala, vātaghnna, rocanā, increases digestion, kaphapitta kara.
72.	Saindhava lavaṇa	Lavaṇa, madhura rasa, laghu guṇa, anuṣṇa vīrya	Vṛṣya, hṛdaya, tridoṣa hara, pathya avidāhī, agni dīpaka
73.	Souvarcala lavaṇa	Laghu guṇa, kaṭu vipāka	Hṛdaya, sugandhi, udgāra-śodhaka, vibandhaghna, dīpaniya, ruci-prada.
74.	Biḍ lavaṇa		Urdhwā-adho kaphavātanulomana; dīpana, relieves vibandha, ānāha, śūla, gourava.
75.	Sāmudra lavaṇa	Guru guṇa, madhura vipāka	Kapha vardhaka
76.	Oudbhida lavaṇa	Tikta, kaṭu , kṣāra rasa tīkṣṇa guṇa	Utkledakara
77.	Kṛṣṇa lavaṇa	-----Similar to souvarcala lavaṇa -----	
78.	Romaka lavaṇa	Laghu guṇa	
79.	Parīṣuka lavaṇa	Kṣāra rasa, guru guṇa	Kaphakara
80.	Yavakṣāra	Kaṭu , lavaṇa rasa, tīkṣṇa, laghu guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Kṛmi hara, pitta, rakta duṣaka, pāki, chedyā, hṛdaya, vidāraṇa kara, apathyā for śukra, ojas, keśa, netra.
81.	Hiṅgu	Kaṭu rasa, laghu guṇa, kaṭu vipāka.	Useful in ānāha & śūla. Pitta prakopaka, rucya, dīpana, pācana.
82.	Harītakī	Kaṣāya rasa prādhana (all the 6 tastes except lavaṇa) Laghu, rūkṣa, sara guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, madhura vipāka	Dīpanī, pācanī, medhya, vayahsthpāka, āyuṣya, buddhi-indriya-bala-prada. Useful in: Kuṣṭha, vaivarṇya, vaisvarya, purāṇa jwara, viṣamajwara, śiro-akṣi roga, pāṇḍu, hrdroga, kāmala, grahanīroga, śoṣa, śopha, atisāra, meda, meha, vāmī, kṛmi, śwāsa, kāsa, praseka, arśas, plihā, ānāha, garaviṣa, udara, sroto-vibandha, gulma, urusthambha, aruci, kapha-vātaroga.
83.	Āmalakī	Amla rasa pradhāna (all 6 execpt lavaṇa); guru, rūkṣa, śīta guṇa; śīta vīrya; madhura vipāka.	Qualities are similar to harītakī.
84.	Vibhītakī	Kaṣāya, madhura rasa, laghu-rūkṣa guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, madhura vipāka	It is somewhat inferior to āmalakī in its qualities.

S.No.	Name of dravya	Guṇa	Karma
85.	<u>Tripalā</u> Harītakī, āmalakī & vibhitakī		Rasāyana, netraroga hara, vrāṇa-ropana, twak roga-kleda-medā-meha-kapha-rakta vikāra.
86.	<u>Caturjātaka</u> Twak, elā, patra & nāgakeśara	Tikṣṇa, rūkṣa guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya	Pitta prakopaka, rocana, dipana
87.	Marica	Katu rasa, laghu guṇa, uṣṇa vīrya, katu vipāka	Pittakara, kaphaghna
88.	Pippalī (ārdra)	Madhura rasa; guru, snigdha guṇa śīta vīrya; madhura vipāka	Śleṣmala
	Pippalī (śuṣka)	Exactly opposite qualities, katu rasa, snigdha guṇa, madhura vipāka	Vṛṣya, vāta-kapha śāmaka śwāsa-kāsa hara. Except as rasāyana it shouldn't be used excessively.
89.	Śunthī	Katu rasa; laghu, snigdha guṇa; uṣṇa vīrya; madhura vipāka	Dipana, vṛṣya, grāhī, hrdaya, vibandha hara, rucya, kaphavāta hara.
90.	<u>Trikatu</u> : Śunthī, marica & pippali		Relieves sthoulya, agnisāda, śwāsa, kāsa, ślipada, pīnasa.
91.	<u>Pañcakola</u> Pippalī, pippalī- mūla, cavya, citraka, nāgara		Relieves gulma, plihā, udara, ānāha and śūla. Best dipana
92.	<u>Bṛhat pañcamūla</u> Bilwa, kāśmarī, tarkārī, pāṭalā, tiṇṭuka	Kaṣāya tikta rasa, uṣṇa vīrya	Kaphavāta śāmaka
93.	<u>Hraswa pañcamūla</u> Bṛhatī, kaṇṭakārī, śāliparṇī, prśni- parṇī, gokṣura	Madhura rasa, na-atī śītoṣṇa vīrya, madhura vipāka	Sarva doṣa hara
94.	<u>Madhyama pañcamūla</u> Balā, punarnavā, erāṇḍa, mudga- parṇī, māṣaparṇī	Sara guṇa	Kapha-vātaghnna, na-atī pittakara
95.	<u>Jīvanīya pañcamūla</u> Abhīrū, vīra, jīvantī, jīvaka, ṛṣabhabaka		Cakṣuṣya, vṛṣya, pitta-vāta hara
96.	<u>Trāṇa pañcamūla</u> Darbha, kāsa, iksu sara, śāli		Pitta hara

38. Features of different types of food substances when gets poisoned:

S.No.	Food item	Features
1.	Māṁsa rasa (soup)	Nīla rājī (bluish lines)
2.	Kṣīra (milk)	Tāmra (copper colored lines)
3.	Dadhi (curd)	Śyāva varṇa (blackish lines)
4.	Takra (buttermilk)	Pītaśīta (yellowish white lines)
5.	Gṛhṭa (ghee)	Pāniya (lines resembling water)
6.	Mastu (whey)	Kapotābha (pigeon colored lines)
7.	Tuṣodaka	Kṛṣṇa rājī (blackish lines)
8.	Madya & amba (water)	Kālī (black colored lines)
9.	Kṣoudra (honey)	Harita (greenish lines)
10	Taila (oil)	Aruṇopama (reddish colored lines)

39. When poisonous food is thrown into fire it is observed the following:

- a. Agnirekavartah - burns with a single point of flame
- b. Sphuṭana - makes cracking sounds
- c. Śikhī kaṇṭhābha dhūma - peacock neck colored flame
- d. Arci, anarci - flame is at times sharp & some times slow
- e. Uragandhā - emits pungent smell

40. Upasthambha (3) - āhāra, nidrā and brahmacarya

41. Apatarpaṇa (laṅghana) is of 3 types - laṅghana, laṅghana-pācana, doṣāvasecana.

42. 3 types of ajīrṇa:

- a. Āmājīrṇa - due to kapha dominancy
- b. Vidagdhājīrṇa - due to pitta dominancy
- c. Viṣṭabdhājīrṇa - due to vāta dominancy

43. Rasa & anurasa: "tatra vyakto rasaḥ avyakto anurasah"

44. Aṣṭavidha vīrya:

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| a. Guru | e. Laghu |
| b. Snigdha | f. Rūkṣa |
| c. Śīta | g. Uṣṇa |
| d. Mrdu | h. Tīkṣṇa |

45. Important drugs of various gaṇas:

S.No.	Name of the gaṇa	Important dravya
1.	Madhura skandha	Gṛhṭa, swarṇa, guḍa, moca, parūṣaka, śatāvarī, pānasa, balā, atibalā, nāgabalā, yaṣṭimadhu, kṣīra, ikṣu, kṣoudra, vidāri, drākṣā.
2.	Amla skandha	Āmalakī, amlikā, mātulūṅga, dādima, amlavetasa, rajata, takra, dadhi, āmra.

S.No.	Name of the gaṇa	Important dravya
3.	Lavaṇa skandha	Saindhava lavaṇa, souvarcala lavaṇa, kr̄ṣṇa, biḍ, sāmudra lavaṇa, śīsa, kṣāra.
4.	Tikta skandha	Patola, balaka, uśīra, candana, nimba, vāsā, kaṭukī, kuṭaja, karañja, mustā, guḍuci, haridrā-dwaya, kāṁsyā, loha.
5.	Kaṭu skandha	Hiṅgu, marica, viḍaṅga, pañcakola, kuṭheruka, pitta, mūtra, bhallātaka.
6.	Kaṣāya skandha	Haritakī, vibhitakī, śīriṣa, khadira, madhu, kadamba, udumbara, muktā, pravāla, añjana, gairīka, padma, utpalā.

46. Rasa-saṁyoga bheda (63):

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------|-----------------------|------|
| a. Eka rasa saṁyoga | - 06 | d. Rasa catuṣka | - 15 |
| b. Dwi rasa saṁyoga | - 15 | e. Pañca rasa saṁyoga | - 06 |
| c. Rasa trika | - 20 | f. Ṣaḍrasa saṁyoga | - 01 |

47. Body is the combination of doṣa, dhātu & mala.

48. Prakṛta doṣa karma (Normal functions of doṣas):

S.No.	Name of the doṣa	Normal functions
1.	Vāta	Utsāha, Ucchvāsa, niḥśwāsa, ceṣṭā, vega-pravartana, samayk gatyā ca dātūnā, akṣa pāṭava
2.	Pitta	Pakti, uṣmā, darśana, kṣut, tr̄t, ruci, prabhā, medhā, dhī, śourya, tanu mārdava.
3.	Kapha	Sthiratwa, snigdhatwa, sandhibandha, kṣāma etc.

49. Āśraya-āśrayī bhāva:

- | | |
|----------|---|
| a. Vāta | - Asthi dhātu |
| b. Pitta | - Rakta & sweda |
| c. Kapha | - Rasa, mārīṣa, medas, majjā, śukra, puriṣa & mūtra |

50. Doṣa-bheda:

- | | |
|----------|--|
| a. Vāta | - Prāṇa, udāna, vyāna, samāna, apāna |
| b. Pitta | - Pācaka, rañjaka, sādhaka, alocaka, bhrājaka |
| c. Kapha | - Avalambaka, kledaka, bodhaka, tarpaka, śleṣaka |

51. Relationship between doṣas and seasons:

Doṣa	Caya	Prakopa	Praśamana
Vāta	Grīṣma	Varṣā	Śarad
Pitta	Varṣā	Śarad	Hemanta
Kapha	Śiśira	Vasanta	Grīṣma

52. Doṣa : sub type & their features:

Vāta (vāyū):

Type of vāta	Swasthāna	Sañcara sthāna	Prakṛta karma
Prāṇa vāta	Mūrdha	Uras, kanṭha	Supports buddhi, hṛdaya, indriya, citta. Responsible for ṣṭhīvana, kṣavathu, udgāra, nihśwāsa, annapraveṣa.
Udāna vāta	Uras	Nāsā, nābhi, galā	Vākpravṛtti, prayatna, urja, balavarna-smṛti-kara.
Vyāna vāta	Hṛdaya	Deha-cārī	Gati, pakṣepaṇa, utkṣepaṇa, nimeṣa, unmeṣa, sarva-kriyā.
Samāna vāta	Agni samīpa	koṣṭha	Anna-grahaṇa, pācana, vivecana & muncana.
Apāna vāta	Apāna (large intestines)	Śroni, vasti, meḍhra, uru	Śukra, ārtava, sakṛt, mūtra and garbha-niṣkramaṇa.

Pitta:

Type of pitta	Sthāna	Prakṛta karma
Pācaka pitta	Pakwa āmāśaya madhyaga	Anna pācana, sāra-kīṭa vibhājana. Gives strength to the other types of pitta.
Rañjaka pitta	Āmāśaya	Imparts color to rasa.
Sādhaka pitta	Hṛdaya	Attends the functions of buddhi, medhā, abhimāna.
Alocaka pitta	Dṛk (eyes)	Rūpa (vision)
Bhrājaka pitta	Twak	Colour and glaze of the skin.

Kapha:

Type of kapha	Sthāna	Prakṛta karma
Avalambaka	Hṛdaya	Bestows strength to other types of kapha.
Kledaka	Āmāśaya	Anna-kledana
Bodhaka	Rasanā	Rasa-bodhana
Tarpaka	Sirās	Nourishment of the sense organs.
Śleṣaka	Sandhi	Lubrication of joints.

Pañca mahābhūtas	Sense organs	Sensory faculty	Properties	Actions
Space	Ears	Hearing	* Creates natural void in the body * No distinct taste	Produces softness, lightness and porosity
Air	Skin	Touch	* Light, clear and dry. * Governs inhalation, exhalation, opening and closing of eyelids, extension and contraction of joints, locomotion and other motor functions. * slightly bitter taste	Creates dryness, lightness and emaciation.
Fire	Eyes	Visual (sight)	* Rough & bright eyes * Controls temperature and luster of body colour. * Pungent taste.	Helps in digestion, maturation, improves eye sight.
Earth	Nose	Smell	* Heavy, immobile, compact & rough. * Controls organs as teeth, nails, flesh, skin, tendons & muscles. * Sweet taste.	* Increases firmness & strength of the body. * Acts as a nutrient, emollient and purgative.
Water	Tongue	Taste	* Cold, heavy fluid * Slimy, fat and sweat by nature. * Sweet & astringent, sour & saline taste.	* Imparts glossiness. * Enhances fluid content & purgative. * Acts as nutrient, emollient and purgative.

Tridoṣa guna:

		
Vāta guna	Pitta guna	Kapha guna
Rūkṣa	Sneha	Snigdha
Laghu	Tīkṣṇa	Śīta
Śīta	Uṣṇa	Guru
Khara	Laghu	Manda
Sūkṣma	Visra	Ślakṣṇa
Cala	Sara	Mr̄tsna
	Drava	Sthira

53. Trividha roga-mārga and the related diseases:

S. No.	Roga-mārga	Diseases
1.	Bāhya - raktādayastwak	Masha, vyāṅga, gaṇḍa, alajī arbuda, bahya arśas, gulma & śopha.
2.	Ābhyanṭara - koṣṭha	Chardi, atisāra, kāsa, śwāsa, udara jwara, ābhyanṭara arśas, gulma, śopha, visarpa, vidradhi.
3.	Madhyama - marma, asthi, sandhi	Yakṣmā, pakṣavadha, ardita; mūrdhādi roga; sandhi, asthi, trika-śūla, trika-graha.

54. Dasavidha parīkṣā: Dūṣya, deśa, bala, kāla, anala, prakṛti, vaya, sattwa, sātmya & āhāra.

55. General line of treatment for tridoṣa:

S. No.	Name of doṣa	General line of treatment
1.	Vāta	Sneha, sweda, mṛdu śodhana, madhura-amlā-lavaṇa-uṣṇa bhojana, abhyaṅga, mardana, veṣṭhana, trāsana, seka, madya, sneha vasti, dīpana, pācana.
2.	Pitta	Gṛhṭa-pāna, virecana with madhura, śīta dravya, madhura, tikta, kaṣāya bhojana & ouṣadha, muktā-maṇi hara-dhāraṇa, karpūra-candana-uśīra lepa, hearing music, spend with liked persons, reside in A.C. rooms.
3.	Kapha	Tīkṣṇa vamana, virecana. Rūkṣa, tīkṣṇa, uṣṇa, katu, tikta, kaṣāya anna & ouṣadha. Purāṇa madya, vyavāya, jāgarāṇa, vyāyāma, kṣoudra, medohara dravya, dhūma, upavāsa, gaṇḍūṣa, nissukha.

56. Factors responsible for roaming dosas from koṣṭha to śākhā & śākhā to koṣṭha:

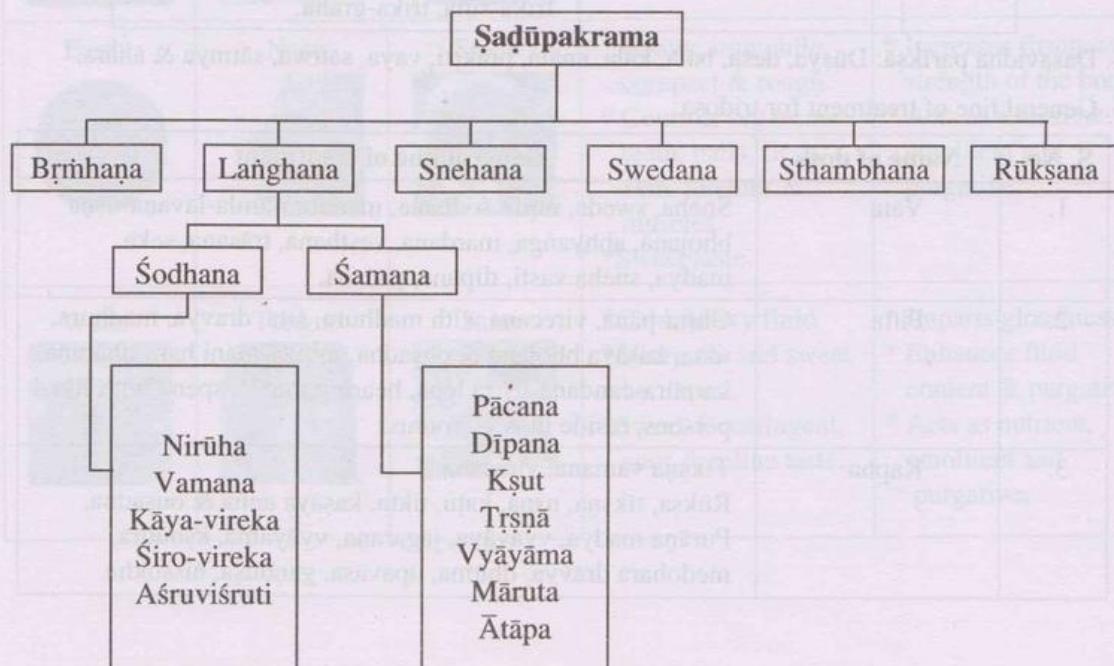
Factors responsible for traveling dosas from koṣṭha to śākhā	Factors responsible for traveling dosas from śākhā to koṣṭha
Vyāyāmāt	Vṛddhyāt
Ūṣmaṇa taikṣṇyāt	Abhiṣyandanāt
Ahitācaranāt	Pākāt
Drutatwānmārutasya ca	Srotomukha viśodhanāt
-----	Vāyośca nigrahāt

57. Ouṣadha sevana-kāla (10):

- Ananna (without food)
- Anna-ādi (before meals)
- Anna-madhya (during meals)
- Anna-anta (after meals)
- Grāsa (mixed with a morsel)
- Grāsāntara (at the end of each morsel)
- Muhurmuhuḥ (frequent administration)
- Sabhojya (mixed with food)
- Sāmudga (at the beginning & at the end of meals)
- Niśi (bedtime).

58. Upakramas are of 2 types viz. santarpaṇa (bṛīhaṇa) and apatarpaṇa (laṅghana).

59. Śadūpakrama:



60. Drugs useful in Pañcakarma therapy:

S. No.	Name of therapy	Useful drugs
1.	Vamana karma	Madana, madhūka, ikṣwāku, nimba, bimbī, kuṭaja, viḍāṅga, jīmūtaka, pippalī, elā, vacā, sarṣapa etc.
2.	Virecana karma	Dantī, trivṛt, triphalā, āragwadha, snuhī, indravāruṇī, tilvaka, kampillaka, kṣīra, mūtra etc.
3.	Nirūha vasti	Madana, kuṭaja, kuṣṭha, jīmūtaka, yaṣṭi, vacā, rāsnā, daśamūla, madhu, lavaṇa, trivṛt.
4.	Anuvāsana vasti	Oil processed with the drugs useful for nirūha vasti.
5.	Nasya karma	Apāmārga, viḍāṅga, trikaṭu, śīriṣa, bṛhatī, śigru, dāruharidrā, elā, saindhava lavaṇa.

61. Sneha dravya:

- * Sarpiḥ (ghee), taila (oil), vāsā (muscle fat) & majjā (bone marrow) are the best oleating substances.
- * Among the four, sarpiḥ is the most excellent one due to:

Mādhuryāt
Avidāhitwāt
Janmādyena ca śilanāt
Saṁskārasyānuvartanāt

62. Acchapeya: Internal administration of oleating substances directly without adding any other substance is known as acchapeya.

Yamaka: Combination of any two sneha dravyas.

Trivṛt: Combination of any three sneha dravyas.

Mahān: Combination of all the 4 oleating substances.

63. Dosage of snehapāna:

S.No.	Mātrā	Measurement
1.	Hrasiyasī, mātrā	Test dose - 30 ml
2.	Hraswa mātrā	The quantity of oil digested in 2 yāma (6 hours).
3.	Madhyama-mātrā	The quantity of oil digested in 4 yāma (12 hours).
4.	Uttama mātrā	The quantity of oil digested in 8 yāma (24 hours).

64. Classification of sneha acc. to their mode of action:

S. No.	Type of sneha	Indications	Dosage	Duration
1.	Śodhana sneha	Elimination of vitiated dosas	60 - 360 ml vitiated dosas	3-7 days
2.	Śamana sneha	Cure of disease	15 - 30 ml	21-40 days
3.	Bṛihāṇa sneha	Nourishment of body tissues	10 ml	Prolonged period

65. Prior to sneha-pāna assessment of koṣṭha is essential.
66. Ideal time for snehapāna: After the digestion of the food consumed on the previous day & 15-30 minutes after Sunrise.
67. In case of śodhana sneha medicated oil is to be administered internally for a period of minimum 3 days in mṛdu koṣṭha, 5 days in madhyama koṣṭha and a maximum of 7 days in krūra koṣṭha.
68. In general warm water is to be given as anupāna after snehapāna. But cold water should be given during the administration of uṣṇa guṇa dravyas viz. tuvaraka taila (caulmogara oil), aruṣkara taila (bhallātaka taila).

69. Test to know the given oil is digested or not:

Drinking of warm water results in pure eructation infers that the oil is completely digested. If the eructation with oily smell indicates that the oil is yet to digest.

70. Paścāt karma:

Adopt the following regimen during the course of oleation therapy and also the same number of days even after the completion of the course.

- a. Uṣṇodakopacārī - make use of warm water for all purposes.
- b. Brahmacārī - maintenance of celibacy.
- c. Kṣapāśaya - sleep only during night hours.
- d. Na vegānrodhi - should not suppress natural urges.
- e. Vyāyāma krodha śoka hima ātapa pravāta varjayet - should not indulge in exercises, anger, grief, exposing to cold, sunlight and breeze.
- f. Adhwayāna bhāṣya atyaśana sarvsthiti - should not travel long distances, excessive speaking, stay in troublesome postures for longer period.
- g. Nijātyucyopadhānāha - avoid keeping very low & very high pillow.
- h. Swapna dhūma rajāṁsi ca - avoid day sleep, contact with smoke and dust.

71. For vamana:

After snehapāna one day sweda is to be conducted and on the next day administer emetic drug.

72. For virecana:

After snehapāna 3 days sweda is essential and on the next day purgative drug is to be administered.

73. Sweda should be done after conducting internal and external oleation therapy and after the completion of the digestion of the food taken during the previous day night and in a place where it is devoid of breeze.

74. For kapha disorders - rūkṣa sweda; kapha-vāta disorders - rūkṣa snigdha sweda; medas & kaphāhvīta vāta - anagni sweda is advised.

75. Sweda is of 4 types viz: tāpa, upanāha, uṣma and drava.

76. Drugs useful for different types of sweda:

S.No.	Type of sweda	Useful drugs
1.	Tāpa sweda	Heated vasana (cloth), phala (metal plate), hastatala (palm of the hand)
2.	Upanāha sweda	Vacā, kiṇwa, śatāhvā, devadāru, dhānya, gandha dravya, rāsnā, eraṇḍa mūla, māṁsa, lavaṇa, sneha dravya, cukra, takra, kṣīra - for vāta predominant disorders: Surasādi gaṇa dravya - for vāta-kapha disorders. Padmakādi gaṇa dravya - for vāta-pitta disorders.
3.	Uṣma sweda	Utkārika, loṣṭa kapāla, upala, parīṣu, patra bhāṅga, dhānya, kariṣa (cow dung), sikatā, tūṣa.
4.	Drava sweda	Śigru, varuṇa, eraṇḍa, karañja, surasā, arjaka, śirīṣa, vāsā, varīṣa, arka, mālatī, dīrghavṛṇta, vacādi gaṇa dravya, ānūpa māṁsa, daśamūla, sneha dravya, surā, śukta, jala, kṣīra.

77. Before vamana, kaphotkliṣṭa āhāra viz. matsya, māṣa & tila should be given on the previous day night.

78. Never administer vamana dravya in the empty stomach.

79. Madya, kṣīra, ikṣu rasa or māṁsa rasa should be given to the person who is undergoing vamana, up to neck level (ākanṭha-pāna).

80. Madhu and saindhava lavaṇa should be mixed in all the emetic formulations for the sake of kapha vilayana & vicchedana.

81. One should wait for a period of one muhūrta kāla (48 minutes) for the commencement of amana vega.

82. For kapha disorders use the emetic drug s possessing tīkṣṇa, uṣṇa & kaṭu rasa.

For pitta disorders use the emetic drug s possessing madhura rasa and śīta vīrya.

For medas & kaphāvṛta vāta disorders use the emetic drug s possessing snigdha, amla & lavaṇa rasa.

83. Vamana should be conducted till the appearance of pitta or up to the complete expulsion of kapha.

84. If the bouts are insufficient administer warm water mixed with kaṇa (pippali), dhātri (āmalakī), siddhārtha (śweta sarṣapa) and saindhava lavaṇa.

85. No. of vegas, pramāṇa, anta and lakṣaṇas of vamana and virecana:

	Vamana	Virecana
Vegakī	8, 6, 4	30, 20, 10
Mānakī	2, 1½ , 1 prastha	4, 3, 2 prastha
Antakī	Pittāntam	Kaphāntam
Laiṅgakī	Samyak vamita lakṣaṇa	Samyak virikta lakṣaṇa

86. Saṁsarjana karma:

Day	Time	Pravara śuddhi	Madhyama śuddhi	Avara śuddhi
1st day	Morning	No diet	No diet	No diet
	Evening	Peya	Peya	Peya
2nd day	Morning	Peya	Peya	Vilepi
	Evening	Peya	Vilepi	Yūṣa
3rd day	Morning	Vilepi	Vilepi	Māṁsa rasa
	Evening	Vilepi	Akṛta yūṣa	Normal diet
4th day	Morning	Vilepi	Kṛta yūṣa	- do -
	Evening	Akṛta yūṣa	Akṛta māṁsa rasa	- do -
5th day	Morning	Kṛta yūṣa	Kṛta māṁsa rasa	- do -
	Evening	Kṛta yūṣa	Normal diet	- do -
6th day	Morning	Akṛta māṁsa rasa	- do -	- do -
	Evening	Kṛta māṁsa rasa	- do -	- do -
7th day	Morning	Kṛta māṁsa rasa	- do -	- do -
	Evening	Normal diet	- do -	- do -

87. Vasti is of 3 types viz. āsthāpana vasti, anuvāsana vasti & uttara vasti.

88. Vasti yantra consists of 2 parts viz. vasti netra & vasti puṭaka.

89. Vasti netra is to be fabricated with gold and other metals or with bamboo and it should be:

- a. Gopucchakara (resembles like the tail of a cow)
- b. Achidra (without holes)
- c. Ślakṣṇa (smooth)
- d. Rju (straight)
- e. Gulikā mukha (round)

90. Maximum quantity of nirūha vasti ravya is dwādaśa prasṛta i.e. 1200 ml.

91. According to the dosage anuvāsana vasti is of 3 types:

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| Sneha vasti | - $\frac{1}{4}$ of nirūha vasti i.e. 300 ml |
| Anuvāsana vasti | - $\frac{1}{2}$ of sneha vasti i.e. 150 ml |
| Mātrā vasti | - $\frac{1}{2}$ of anuvāsana vasti i.e. 75 ml |

92. Order of mixing nirūha vasti dravya:

"māksikam lavaṇam sneham kalkam kwāthamiti kramāt"

Vasti pīḍana kāla (time required to press vasti puṭaka & push vasti dravya into the rectum)- triṁśanmātrā - 30 seconds.

93. Vasti pratyāgama kāla (time required for the expulsion of administered vasti dravya through the rectum)

- a. For nirūha vasti - 1 muhūrta (48 minutes)
- b. For anuvāsana vasti - 3 yāma (9 hrs) to up to a maximum of 24 hrs,
if the patient doesn't have any complications.

94. Vasti parihāra kāla (duration of specific diet and other activities to be followed after vasti karma) - dwiparihāra kāla i.e. double the number of days.
95. Never administer anuvāsana vasti dravya in the empty stomach and āsthāpana vasti dravya after taking food.

S. No.	Type of vasti	Ingredients
1.	Vātahara vasti	Daśamūla, trivṛt, saindhava lavaṇa, eraṇḍa taila, guḍa, amla kāñjikā, uṣṇa dravyas and māṁsa rasa.
2.	Pittahara vasti	Nyagrodhādi gaṇa, padmakādi gaṇa, śarkarā, drugs having ūta vīrya and madhura rasa such as ghr̄ta, kṣīra, māksika etc.
3.	Kaphahara vasti	Āragwadhādi gaṇa, vatsakādi gaṇa, kṣoudra, gomutra, rūkṣa, tīkṣṇa, uṣṇa and katu dravya.

96. Karma vasti - 30, kāla vasti - 15 or 16, yoga vasti - 8.

97. Uttaravasti netra is called as puṣpa netra.

98. Dosage of uttaravasti dravya:

- Maximum dose in male - 1 śukti (24 ml)
- Maximum dose in female - 2 pala (96 ml)
- Medium dose in female - 1 pala (48 ml)
- Minimum dose in female - ½ pala/1śukti (24 ml)

99. Types of nasya and their indications:

S.No.	Type of nasya	Indications
1.	Virecana nasya	Śirahṣūla, galaroga, śopha, galagaṇḍa, kṛmi, granthi, kuṣṭha, apasmāra, pīnasa.
2.	Bṛīhaṇa nasya	Vātaja śūla, sūryāvarta, swara-kṣaya, nāsā śoṣa, āsyā śoṣa, vāk-saṅga, kṛcchrabodha (difficult to open lids), avabāhuka.
3.	Śamana naṣya	Nīlikā, vyāṅga, keśa doṣa, akṣirājī.

100. Nasya should not be conducted for more than 7 days.

101. Dosage of different types of nasya:

Type of nasya	Hraswa mātrā	Madhyama mātrā	Uttama mātrā
1. Nāvana	8 bindu	16 bindu	32 bindu
2. Avapīḍana	4 bindu	6 bindu	8 bindu
3. Pradhamana	2 rattī	3 rattī	4 rattī
4. Marṣa	6 bindu	8 bindu	10 bindu
5. Pratimarṣa	2 bindu	2 bindu	2 bindu

* The amount of liquid that flown after immersing two digits of the index finger in any liquid substance is known as one bindu.

103. Suitable age for conducting various śodhana procedures:

- Nasya should not be conducted for those having below 7 years & above 80 years of age (except pratimarśa nasya).
- Dhūmapana is contraindicated to those having less than 18 years of age.
- Kavala should not be done for below 5 years children.
- Śodhana is contraindicated for those are below 10 years and above 70 years of age.
- Pratimarśa nasya can be given since birth to death.

104. Dhūmapāna:

Type of dhūmapāna	Length of dhūma netra	Useful drugs
1. Madhyama (or) Śamana (or) Prāyogika	40 aṅgula	Śhallakī, lākṣā, pṛthwikā, kamala, kṣīrīvṛkṣa, śarkarā, yaṣṭi, kuṣṭha
2. Snigdha (or) Bṛihāṇa (or) Mṛdu	32 aṅgula	Aguru, guggulu, mustā, nalada, uśīra, madana, sarjarasa, bilwa, ghṛta, taila, vāsā, majjā.
3. Tīkṣṇa (or) śodhana (or) virecana	24 aṅgula	Jyotiṣmatī, haridrā, daśamūla, manahśilā, lākṣā, vacā, triphalā, Širovirecana dravya.
4. Kāsaghna	10 aṅgula	kāsahara dravya
5. Vāmaka	10 aṅgula	Vāmaka dravya
6. Vraṇa	8 aṅgula	Vraṇa śodhana & ropaṇa dravya

105. "Asañcārae mukhe purṇe gaṇḍūṣah kavalo anyathā."

106. Gaṇḍūṣa and kavala should be done till the person gets watery discharge from the nose and eyes.

107. Gaṇḍūṣa:

Type of gaṇḍūṣa	Advantages	Useful drugs
1. Snigdha	Vāta śāmaka	Madhura, amla, lavaṇa drugs processed with sneha dravya
2. Śamana	Pitta śāmaka	Decoctions of tikta, kaṣāya, madhura rasa dravya
3. Śodhana	Kapha śāmaka	Decoctions of tikta, kaṭu, amla, lavaṇa & uṣṇa vīrya dravya.
4. Ropāṇa	Mukha vraṇa ropāṇa	Decoctions of kaṣāya, tikta rasa dravya

108. Pratisāraṇa is of 3 types viz. kalka, rasakriyā & cūrṇa.

109. Mukha lepa is also of 3 types viz. doṣaghna, viṣaghna & varṇya.

110. Mūrdha taila is of 4 types viz. abhyaṅga, seka, picu & Širovasti.

111. Duration of ūrovasti:

- a. Vāta disorders - 10,000 mātrā kāla (2½ hours approximately)
- b. Pitta disorders - 8,000 mātrā kāla (2 hours approximately)
- c. Kapha disorders - 6,000 mātrā kāla (1½ hours approximately)
- d. Healthy persons - 1,000 mātrā kāla (15 mts. approximately)

112. The time taken either for moving one's right hand around his right knee joint for one time or for blinking the eyes once is known as one mātrā kāla.

113. Añjana should not be applied during night hours.

114. According to the mode of preparation añjana is of 3 types:

- a. Piñḍa - useful in severe conditions - dosage is 1 hareṇu seed
- b. Rasakriyā - useful in moderate conditions - dosage is 1-2 viḍaṅga
- c. Cūrnāñjana - useful in mild conditions - dosage is 2-3 śalākā

115. Añjana:

Type of añjana	Useful śalākā	Useful drugs
1. Lekhana	Tāmra	Kaṣāya, amla, lavaṇa, kaṭu rasa dravya
2. Ropāṇa	Loha & aṅgulī	Tikta rasa dravya
3. Prasādana	Swarṇa, rajata	Madhura rasa, śīta vīrya dravya.

116. Akṣi tarpaṇa kāla:

- a. Vartmagata roga - 100 mātrā kāla
- b. Sandhigata roga - 300 mātrā kāla
- c. Śuklagata roga - 500 mātrā kāla
- d. Kṛṣṇagata roga - 700 mātrā kāla
- e. Dr̥ṣṭigata roga - 800 mātrā kāla
- f. Adhimantha - 1000 mātrā kāla
- g. Vāta roga - 1000 mātrā kāla
- h. Pitta roga - 600 mātrā kāla
- i. Kapha roga - 500 mātrā kāla
- j. Healthy persons - 500 mātrā kāla

117. Puṭapāka:

Type of puṭapāka	Duration	Useful drugs
1. Snehana	200 mātrā kāla	Medas, majjā, vasā, māṁsa of ānūpa deśa; jīvanīya gāna dravya pound with kṣira.
2. Lekhana	100 mātrā kāla	Māṁsa, yakṛta, muktā, tāmra, lavaṇa, srotoñjana, śaṅkha, samudraphena, talaka pound with dadhi mastu.
3. Prasādana	300 mātrā kāla	Jāṅgala māṁsa, yakṛta, majjā, vasā, āntra, hr̥daya, madhura rasa dravya pound with ghṛta, stanya and kṣira.

118. "Manah śarīrabādhākaraṇī śalyāni"

Śalya is that which troubles the mind as well as the body. Yantras are the blunt instruments which help to remove the foreign bodies.

119. Yantras are 101 in number.

a. Swastika yantra	-	24
b. Saṁḍamīṣa yantra	-	2
c. Tāla yantra	-	2
d. Nāḍī yantra	-	20
e. Śalākā yantra	-	28
f. Anu yantra	-	25

120. Śamī yantra—one of the types of arśoyantra having any slit on the side and is useful to exert pressure over the piles while introducing the instrument into the rectum.

121. Yantra karmas (24):

Nirghātana,	Pūrāṇa,	Bandhana,	Vyūhana,	Parivartana,
Cālana,	Vivaraṇa,	Pīḍana,	Mārgaviśodhana,	Vikarṣaṇa,
Āharaṇa,	Vyadhana,	Unnamana,	Vinamana,	Bhañjana,
Unmathana,	Ācūṣaṇa,	Eṣaṇa,	Dāraṇa,	Rjukaraṇa.
Prakṣālana,	Pradhamana,	Añjana,	Pramarjana,	

122. Śastras are 26 in number.

123. Śastra karmas (12 +1):

Lekhana	Pāṭana	Bhedana	Chedana
Pracchanna	Vyadhana	Sīvana	Kuṭṭana
Manthana	Eṣaṇa	Grahaṇa	Uddhāraṇa
& Dahana			

124. Śastra doṣas (8):

Kuntha	Khaṇḍa	Tanu	Sthūla
Hraswa	Dīrgha	Vakra	Kharadhāra

125. Bloodletting can be done by means of:

- Pracchana (incision)
- Sirāvedhana (venesection)
- Jaloukā-prayoga (leach application)
- Śringāvacāraṇa (application of horn for aspiration)
- Alābu (gourd for cupping)
- Ghaṭī yantra (cupping with earthenware)

126. Kṛṣṇa, karbura, alagarda, indrāyudha, sāmudrika, gocandana are the six types of poisonous leaches.

127. Kapilā, piṅgalā, śaṅkumukhī, muṣikā, pāṇḍurīka, sāvarikā are the six types of non-poisonous leaches.

128. Maximum quantity of blood to be extracted is 1 prastha (768 ml).

129. While conducting venesection:

- The proximal part should be tied.
- Incise the bulged veins only.
- Incision should not be in the transverse direction.
- Use the instrument quickly and only once.
- Incision should not be too deep or superficial.
- Vital points should not be damaged.

130. Šalya gatis are 5 in number viz. vakra gati, rju gati, tiryak gati, urdhwa gati and adho gati.

131. Foreign bodies are of 4 kinds according to their shape:

- Vṛtta (circular)
- Pṛthu (broad)
- Catuškoṇa (quadrangular)
- Tripuṭa (triangular)

132. Pratiloma (reverse direction) and anuloma (in the same direction) are the two methods of removal of foreign bodies.

133. Vraṇa śopha is of 3 types viz. āma śopha, pacyamana śopha and pakwa śopha.

134. Bandhana (bandages) are of 15 types:

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. Kośa | 6. Anuvellita | 11. Utsaṅga |
| 2. Swastika | 7. Khaṭvī | 12. Goṣphaṇa |
| 3. Muttoli | 8. Vibandha | 13. Yamaka |
| 4. Cīna | 9. Sthagikā | 14. Maṇḍala |
| 5. Dāma | 10. Vitāna | 15. Pañcāṅgī |

135. Wherever medical treatment fails then only surgery is indicated.

136. Ideal qualities of a surgeon:

- Śourya (courage)
- Āśukriyā (quick action)
- Tikṣṇa ṣastra (keeping the instruments sharp)
- Asweda (doesn't perspire)
- Avepathu (shouldn't shake)
- Asammoha (should not be confused)

137. While performing surgery horizontal incision should be given in the following places viz. lalāṭa, bhrū, danta-vestaka, jatrū, kukṣi, kakṣa, akṣikuṭa, oṣṭa, kapola, gāla, vaṅkṣaṇa.

138. Traumatic wounds of recent origin should be sutured immediately.

139. Sutures are of 4 types viz.

- Goṣphaṇikā (irregular wound suturing)
- Tunna sevanī (continuous suturing)
- Vellitaka (spiral suturing)
- Rajju granthi (interrupted skin suturing)

140. Tendons of animals, threads of cotton or silk and fibers of bark obtained from trees can be used as suturing material.

141. Kṣāra is of 2 types viz.

- a. Ābhyanṭara parimārjana (internal administration)
- b. Bāhya parimārjana (external application)

142. According to the mode of preparation bāhya parimārjana is of 3 types viz. madhyama kṣāra, mṛdu kṣāra and tīkṣṇa kṣāra.

143. ♦ Tīkṣṇa kṣāra is indicated in vāta, kapha & medoroga.

- ♦ Madhyama kṣāra - arbuda & other moderate disorders.
- ♦ Mṛdu kṣāra - arśas of pitta and rakta origin.

144. Kṣāra guṇa:

1. Nāti tīkṣṇa (neither too strong)
2. Nāti mṛdu (nor too weak)
3. Śveta (white in colour)
4. Ślakṣṇa (soft)
5. Śighra (quick in action)
6. Picchila (slimy)
7. Śikharī (if falls on the ground from a little height forms like a small peak)
8. Sukhanirvāpya (easily dissolving)
9. Alparuk (causing little pain)
10. Abhiṣyandī (no exudations)

145. Kṣāra doṣa:

1. Atyuṣṇa (very hot)
2. Ati śīta (very cold)
3. Ati tīkṣṇa (very strong)
4. Ati mṛdu (very mild)
5. Ati tanu (very thin)
6. Ati ghana (very thick)
7. Ati picchila (too slimy)
8. Visarpī (spreading around)
9. Hīna auṣadha (prepared with less potent drugs)
10. Hīna pāka (inadequately prepared)

146. Dagdha is of 4 types viz. tuccha dagdha, samyak dagdha, dурдагдha & ati dagdha.

147. Tuccha dagdha should be treated with uṣṇa dravya.

148. Treat dурдагдha with cold and hot substances.

149. Sneha dagdha should be treated with rūkṣa dravyas.

ANNEXURE : V

Alphabetical Index of the Herbs of *Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya*

1. Abhīru (Śatāvarī)
2. Abhīṣuka (Pistā)
3. Ādhakī
4. Agastya
5. Agni (Citraka)
6. Agnimantha
7. Aguru
8. Airāvata
9. Ajājī (Jiraka)
10. Ajamodā
11. Akṣa (Vibhītakī)
12. Akṣoda
13. Alarka
14. Āluka
15. Āmalakī
16. Amarāhawā (Devadāru)
17. Ambaṣṭha
18. Ambhoja (Kamala)
19. Amlikā
20. Āmra
21. Āmrātaka
22. Amṛtā (Guḍūcī)
23. Anantā (Sāribā)
24. Aṅkola
25. Anuyava (Smaller variety of yava)
26. Apāmārga
27. Araṇikā (Agnimantha)
28. Ārdraka
29. Ārdrikā (Dhānyaka)
30. Ariṣṭa (Nimba)
31. Arjaka (Śweta kūtheraka)
32. Arjuna
33. Arka
34. Arukā
35. Arūḍakara (Bhallātaka)
36. Asana (Vijayasāra)
37. Aśmabhedā (Pāṣāṇabheda)
38. Āṣphoṭa (Arka)
- Asparagus racemosus
- Pistacia vera
- Cajanus cajan
- Sesbania grandiflora
- Plumbago zeylanica
- Premna integrifolia
- Aquilaria agallocha
- Gerwia sp.
- Cuminum cyminum
- Trachyspermum ammi
- Terminalia bellirica
- Juglans regia
- Calotropis gigantea
- Dioscorea species
- Emblica officinalis
- Cedrus deodara
- Cissampelos pareira
- Nelumbo nucifera
- Tamarindus indica
- Magnifera indica
- Spondias pinnata
- Tinospora cordifolia
- Hemidesmus indicus
- Alangium lamarckii
- Achyranthes aspera
- Premna integrifolia
- Zinziber officinale
- Coriandrum sativum
- Azadirachta indica
- Orthosiphon pallidus
- Terminalia arjuna
- Calotropis procera
- Prunus domestica
- Semecarpus anacardium
- Pterocarpus marsupium
- Bergenia lingulata
- Calotropis procera

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 39. Āsurī | - Brassica nigra |
| 40. Aśvakarṇa | - Dipterocarpus alatus |
| 41. Aśwamāraka (Karavīra) | - Thevetia peruviana |
| 42. Aṭarūṣaka (Vāsā) | - Adathoda vasica |
| 43. Atibalā | - Abutilon indicum |
| 44. Atichatra (Śatapuṣpā) | - Peucedanum graveolens |
| 45. Atiguḥā (Śaliparnī) | - Desmodium gangeticum |
| 46. Ativiṣā | - Aconitum heterophyllum |
| 47. Ātmaguptā | - Mucuna pruriens |
| 48. Avalgujā (Bākucī) | - Psoralea corylifolia |
| 49. Badara | - Ziziphus mauritiana |
| 50. Bahalapallava (Śigru) | - Moringa pterygosperma |
| 51. Bahula (Elā) | - Elettaria cardamomum |
| 52. Bahurasā (Ikṣu) | - Saccharum officinarum |
| 53. Balā | - Sida cordifolia |
| 54. Bāṇa (Saireyaka) | - Barleria prionitis |
| 55. Barhatā (Brīhatī) | - Solanum indicum |
| 56. Bastantrī (Chāgalantrī) | - Ipomoea pescaprae |
| 57. Bhadradāru (Devadāru) | - Cedrus deodara |
| 58. Bhallātaka | - Semecarpus anacardium |
| 59. Bhälluka (Śyonāka) | - Oroxylum indicum |
| 60. Bhārṅgī | - Clerodendrum serratum |
| 61. Bhavyā | - Dillenia indica |
| 62. Bhūnimba | - Andrographis paniculata |
| 63. Bhurja (Bhurjapatra) | - Betula utilis |
| 64. Bhustrṇā (Rohīṣa , aromatic grass) | - Cymbopogon speng |
| 65. Bhūtakeśī (Jatāmāṁsi) | - Nardostachys jatamansi |
| 66. Bilwa | - Aegle marmelos |
| 67. Bimbī | - Coccinia indica |
| 68. Bisa (Mṛṇāla (Leaf stalk of Kamala) | - Sphaeranthus indicus |
| 69. Brahmačāriṇī (Muṇḍī) | - Solanum indicum |
| 70. Brīhatī | - Osmanthus fragrans |
| 71. Buka (Vāsūka) | - Dipterocarpus turbinatus |
| 72. Chāgakarṇa (Ajākarṇa) | - Angelica archangelica |
| 73. Candā | - Santalum album |
| 74. Candana | - Oxalis corniculata |
| 75. Cāñgerī | - Acacia concinna |
| 76. Carmasahwā (Saptalā) | - Piper chaba |
| 77. Cavikā (Cavya) | - Panicum milliaceum |
| 78. Cinaka | - Tinospora cordifolia |
| 79. Chinnaruḥā (Guḍūci) | - Holoptelea integrifolia |
| 80. Cirabilwa | - Cucumis melo |
| 81. Cirbhaṭa | |

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 82. Citrā (Eraṇḍa) | - <i>Ricinus communis</i> |
| 83. Citraka | - <i>Plumbago zeylanica</i> |
| 84. Coca (Dālacīnī or Twak) | - <i>Cinnamomum tamala</i> |
| 85. Coraka | - <i>Angelica glauca</i> |
| 86. Cukra (Cukrikā) | - <i>Rumex vesicarius</i> |
| 87. Cūta | - <i>Magnifera indica</i> |
| 88. Cillī (Vāstuka) | - <i>Chenopodium album</i> |
| 89. Dāḍima | - <i>Punica granatum</i> |
| 90. Dahana (Citraka) | - <i>Plumbago zeylanica</i> |
| 91. Dantaśāṭha (Jambīra) | - <i>Citrus limon</i> |
| 92. Darbha | - <i>Desmostachya bipinnata</i> |
| 93. Dāru (Devadāru) | - <i>Cedrus deodara</i> |
| 94. Dārvī (Daruharidrā) | - <i>Berberis aristata</i> |
| 95. Dīrghavṛṇṭā (Śyonāka) | - <i>Oroxylum indicum</i> |
| 96. Devadālī (Jīmūtaka) | - <i>Luffa echinata</i> |
| 97. Devadhūpa (Sarjarasa) | - <i>Shorea robusta</i> |
| 98. Devahwāya (Devadāru) | - <i>Cedrus deodara</i> |
| 99. Dhānyaka | - <i>Coriandrum sativum</i> |
| 100. Dhanvana | - <i>Grewia tiliaefolia</i> |
| 101. Dhanvayāsa | - <i>Fagonia cretica</i> |
| 102. Dhānya | - <i>Coriandrum sativum</i> |
| 103. Dhātakī | - <i>Woodfordia fruticosa</i> |
| 104. Dhātrī | - <i>Emblica officinalis</i> |
| 105. Dhava | - <i>Anogeissus latifolia</i> |
| 106. Dhavanī | - <i>Uraria lagopoides</i> |
| 107. Dhyāmaka (Katṛṇa/Rohiṣa) | - <i>Cymbopogon Spreng</i> |
| 108. Dīrghavṛṇṭā (Śyonāka) | - <i>Oroxylum indicum</i> |
| 109. Drākṣā | - <i>Vitis vinifera</i> |
| 110. Dūrvā | - <i>Cynodon dactylon</i> |
| 111. Dwīpi (Citraka) | - <i>Plumbago zeylanica</i> |
| 112. Eḍagaja (Cakramarda) | - <i>Cassia tora</i> |
| 113. Elā | - <i>Elettaria cardamomum</i> |
| 114. Elavālu | - <i>Prunus cerasus</i> |
| 115. Eraṇḍa | - <i>Ricinus communis</i> |
| 116. Ervāru (Ervāruka) | - <i>Cucumis utilissimus</i> |
| 117. Gaṇḍīra | - <i>Albizzia julibrissin</i> |
| 118. Gataśoka (Aśoka) | - <i>Saraca indica</i> |
| 119. Gavākṣī (Indravāruṇī) | - <i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> |
| 120. Gavedhuka | - <i>Coix lachrymajobi</i> |
| 121. Ghonṭā (Badara) | - <i>Zizyphus mauritiana</i> |
| 122. Ghuṇapriyā (Ativisha) | - <i>Aconitum heterophyllum</i> |
| 123. Jingini | - <i>Lannea grandis</i> |
| 124. Godhūma | - <i>Triticum aestivum</i> |

125. Gojihwā
 126. Gokanṭaka (Gokṣura)
 127. Gopasutā, Gopī (Sāribā)
 128. Grñjanaka
 129. Guggulu
 130. Guhā
 131. Gundrā, Gunthā (Eraka)
 132. Haimavatī (Vacā)
 133. Hapuṣa
 134. Haricandana
 135. Haridrā
 136. Harītakī
 137. Hāyana (A variety of śāli)
 138. Hemadugdhā (Swarnakṣīrī)
 139. Hima (Candana)
 140. Hingu
 141. Ikṣu
 142. Indravṛkṣa (Kuṭaja/Arjuna/Dhava)
 143. Indrayava
 144. Irimeda
 145. Itkaṭa (Utkata)
 146. Jalā (Bālaka)
 147. Jaladā (Mustā)
 148. Jambīra
 149. Jambū¹
 150. Jaṭā (Jaṭila, Jaṭamāṁsi)
 151. Jātirasā (Bola)
 152. Jayā (Agnimantha)
 153. Jhunjhū
 154. Jīvantī
 155. Joṅgaka (Kṛṣṇāguru)
 156. Jurna
 157. Jyotiṣmāti
 158. Kadalī
 159. Kadamba
 160. Kadara (Śweta khadira)
 161. Kākajanghā
 162. Kākamācī²
 163. Kākāṇḍolā (Edible & cultivated variety of ātmaguptā)
 164. Kākatiktā
 165. Kālāmālā (Kṛṣṇa tulasi)
 166. Kalamba
 167. Kālamuṣkaka
- Onosma bracteatum
 - Tribulus terrestris
 - Hemidesmus indicus
 - Allium ascalonicum
 - Commiphora mukul
 - Uraria picta
 - Typha elephantina
 - Acorus calamus
 - Juniperus communis
 - Santalum album
 - Curcuma longa
 - Terminalia chebula
 - Argemone mexicana
 - Santalum album
 - Ferula foetida
 - Saccharum officinarum
 - Holarrhena antidysenterica
 - Acacia farnesiana
 - Sesbania bispinosa
 - Coleus vettiveroides
 - Cyperus rotundus
 - Citrus limon
 - Syzygium cumini
 - Nardostachys jatamansi
 - Commiphora myrrha
 - Premna integrifolia
 - (An unidentified vegetable)
 - Leptadenia reticulata
 - Aquilaria agallocha
 - Thysanolaena agrostis
 - Celastrus paniculatus
 - Musa paradisiaca
 - Anthocephalus indicus
 - Acacia suma
 - (Unidentified plant)
 - Solanum nigrum
 - Cardiospermum halicacabum
 - Ocimum sanctum
 - Ipomea reptans
 - Elaeodendron glaucum

168. Kālaśāka - *Corchorus capsularis*
 169. Kalasī (Pṛṣṇiparnī) - *Uraria picta*
 170. Kalāya - *Lathyrus sativus*
 171. Kalhāra (One of the varieties of utpala) -
 172. Kaliṅga - *Holarrhena antidysenterica*
 173. Kālīyaka - *Coscinium fenestratum*
 174. Kālodya (Gilotya) - *Ceropegia tuberosa*
 175. Kamalāhwaya - *Nelumbo nucifera*
 176. Kampillaka - *Mallotus philippinensis*
 177. Kaṇa (Pippalī) - *Piper longum*
 178. Kaṇḍukārī (Ātmaguptā) - *Mucuna pruriens*
 179. Kaṅgu (A variety of śāli) -
 180. Kaṇṭakārī - *Solanum xanthocarpum*
 181. Kapitana - *Albizia procera* (or) *Thespesia* species
 182. Kapittha - *Feronia limonia*
 183. Karamarda - *Carissa carandas*
 184. Karañja - *Pongamia pinnata*
 185. Kāravella - *Momordica charantia*
 186. Karīra - *Capparis deciduas*
 187. Karkandhu - *Zizyphus* species
 188. Karkaruka - *Cucurbita pepo*
 189. Karkaśa - *Saccharum officinarum*
 190. Karkoṭa (Karkoṭaka) - *Momordica dioica*
 191. Karpūra - *Cinnamomum camphora*
 192. Kāsa - *Saccharum spontaneum*
 193. Kāsamarda - *Cassia occidentalis*
 194. Kaśeruka - *Scirpus kysoor*
 195. Kāśmarī (Kāśmarya) - *Gmelina arborea*
 196. Kataka - *Strychnos potatorum*
 197. Katilla (Punarnavā) - *Boerhaavia diffusa*
 198. Katphala - *Myrica nagi*
 199. Kaṭwī (Kaṭukarohiṇī) - *Picrorhiza kurroa*
 200. Kebuka (Kembuka) - *Costus speciosus*
 201. Kelūta (Unidentified tuberous plant) - Yet to be identified
 202. Keśara (Nāgakeśara) - *Mesua ferrea*
 203. Khadira - *Acacia catechu*
 204. Khapūra - Gummy exudation of *Lannea grandis*
 205. Kharabusa (Marubaka) (Aromatic plant) - Yet to be identified
 206. Kharjūra - *Phoenix sylvestris*
 207. Kodrava - *Paspalum scrobiculatum*
 208. Kola - *Zizyphus jujuba*
 209. Kośavatī - *Lagenaria acutangula*
 210. Kośātakī - *Luffa acutangula*

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 211. Kramuka (Pūga) | - Areca catechu |
| 212. Kṛmighna (Kṛmijit, Viḍāṅga) | - Embelia ribes |
| 213. Kṛtavedhana | - Luffa acutangula |
| 214. Kṣavaka | - Centipeda minima |
| 215. Kṣīraśuklā (Kṣīra kākoli)
(One of the Aṣṭavarga) | |
| 216. Kṣudra sahā (Mudgaparṇī) | - Phaseolus trilobus |
| 217. Kucaīlā (A variety of pāṭhā) | |
| 218. Kulahala | - Blumea balsmifera |
| 219. Kulaka (Pathyā śāka - variety of paṭola) | - Trichosanthes sp. |
| 220. Kuliṅga (Ucchaṭa/Uṭāṅgana) | - Blepharis edulis |
| 221. Kuluttha | - Dolichos biflorus |
| 222. Kumbha (Trivṛt) | - Operculina turpethum |
| 223. Kuṇkuma | - Crocus sativus |
| 224. Kumuda | - Nymphaea alba |
| 225. Kunduruka | - Gum resin of Boswellia serrata |
| 226. Kuntalī | - Corchorus sp. |
| 227. Kuraṇṭa (Kuruṇṭaka) | - Celosia argentea |
| 228. Kuṣmāṇḍa | - Cucurbita pepo |
| 229. Kuṣṭa | - Saussurea lappa |
| 230. Kusumbha | - Carthamus tinctorius |
| 231. Kuṭaja | - Holarrhena antidysenterica |
| 232. Kuṭaraṇa (Trivṛt) | - Operculina turpethum |
| 233. Kuṭhera (Kuṭheraka) | - Orthosiphon pallidus |
| 234. Kuṭīla (Tagara) | - Valeriana wallichii |
| 235. Kutsitāmbu (Kadamba) | - Anthocephalus indicus |
| 236. Lakuca | - Artocarpus lakoocha |
| 237. Lāmbā (Ikṣwāku/TiktaLābu) | - Lagenaria siceraria |
| 238. Lāngalikā | - Gloriosa superba |
| 239. Laṣuna | - Allium sativum |
| 240. Madana (Madanaphala) | - Randia dumetorum |
| 241. Madaniyāhetu (Dhātakī) | - Woodfordia fruticosa |
| 242. Madhūka | - Madhuca indica |
| 243. Madhuka (Yaṣṭimadhu) | - Glycyrrhiza glabra |
| 244. Madhusravā (Mūrvā) | - Marsdenia tenacissima |
| 245. Mahā sahā (Māṣaparṇī) | - Phaseolus trilobus |
| 246. Mahāsrāvaṇī | - Sphaeranthus africans |
| 247. Mahāvṛkṣa (Snūhī) | - Euphorbia nerifolia |
| 248. Makūlaka (Dantī) | - Baliospermum montanum |
| 249. Mālatī | - Jasminum grandiflorum |
| 250. Mallikā | - Jasminum sambac |
| 251. Manadruma (Śālmali) | - Salmalia malabarica |
| 252. Maṇḍūkaparṇī | - Centella asiatica |

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 253. Marica | - <i>Piper nigrum</i> |
| 254. Māṣa | - <i>Phaseolus mungo</i> |
| 255. Marṣa | - <i>Amaranthus blitum</i> |
| 256. Marubaka | - <i>Ocimum bacilicum</i> |
| 257. Māṣaparṇī | - <i>Teramnus labialis</i> |
| 258. Masūra | - <i>Lens culinaris</i> |
| 259. Māṭuluṅga (Bijapūra) | - <i>Citrus medica</i> |
| 260. Meṣaśṛṅgi | - <i>Gymnema sylvestre</i> |
| 261. Miśi (Śatapuṣpā) | - <i>Peucedanum graveolens</i> |
| 262. Moca (Kadalī) | - <i>Musa paradisiaca</i> |
| 263. Mocarasa (Śālmalī) | - <i>Salmalia malabarica</i> |
| 264. Moraṭa (Mūrvā) | - <i>Marsdenia tenacissima</i> |
| 265. Mṛdwīkā | - <i>Vitis vinifera</i> |
| 266. Mṛgaliṇḍikā (Vibhītaka) | - <i>Terminalia bellirica</i> |
| 267. Mṛṇāla (Leaf stalk of kamala) |
 |
| 268. Mudga | - <i>Phaseolus radiatus</i> |
| 269. Mudgaparṇī | - <i>Phaseolus trilobus</i> |
| 270. Mūlaka | - <i>Raphanus sativus</i> |
| 271. Mūrvā | - <i>Marsdenia tenacissima</i> |
| 272. Muṣkaka | - <i>Elaeodendron glaucum</i> |
| 273. Nāḍikalāya | - <i>Corchorus capsularis</i> |
| 274. Nāgabalā | - <i>Grewia hirsuta</i> |
| 275. Nāgadantī | - <i>Croton oblongifolius</i> |
| 276. Nāgahwā (Nāgakeśara) | - <i>Mesua ferrea</i> |
| 277. Naiṣadha (Inferior variety of śāli) |
 |
| 278. Naktamāla (Karañja) | - <i>Pongamia pinnata</i> |
| 279. Nala | - <i>Phragmites maxima</i> |
| 280. Nalada (Uśira or mārīnsī) |
 |
| 281. Nalikā (Aromatic substance) | - (Yet to be identified) |
| 282. Namaskārī (Lajjālu) | - <i>Mimosa pudica</i> |
| 283. Nandī (Nandīśāka) |
 |
| 284. Nandīvṛkṣa | - <i>Ficus retusa</i> |
| 285. Nārikela | - <i>Cocos nucifera</i> |
| 286. Nata (Granthitagara) | - <i>Valeriana wallichii</i> |
| 287. Nikocaka (Horse chestnut) | - <i>Aesculus indica</i> |
| 288. Nikumbha (Danti) | - <i>Baliospermum montanum</i> |
| 289. Nīlinī | - <i>Indigofera tinctoria</i> |
| 290. Nimba (Ariṣṭa) | - <i>Azadirachta indica</i> |
| 291. Niṣpāva | - <i>Dolichos lablab</i> |
| 292. Nīvāra | - <i>Hygroryza aristata</i> |
| 293. Nyagrodha | - <i>Ficus bengalensis</i> |
| 294. Padma | - <i>Prunus puddum</i> |
| 295. Padminī | - <i>Prunus cerasoides</i> |

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 296. Palāṇḍu | - Allium cepa |
| 297. Palāśa | - Butea monosperma |
| 298. Palavata (Paravata/Guava) | - Psidium guajava |
| 299. Pālaṅkya | - Spinacia oleracea |
| 300. Paṁśuvāpya (A variety of cereal) | |
| 301. Panasa | - Artocarpus heterophyllus |
| 302. Pañcāṅgula (Eraṇḍa) | - Ricinus communis |
| 303. Pārtha (Kapotavaṇka) | - Dalbergia lanceolaria |
| 304. Pāribhadra | - Erythrina variegata |
| 305. Paripelava (Plava) | - Cyperus sp. |
| 306. Parpaṭa | - Fumaria indica |
| 307. Parūṣaka | - Grewia asiatica |
| 308. Paśugandhā (Ajagandhā) | - Gynandropsis gynandra |
| 309. Pāṭalā (Pāṭali) | - Stereospermum sauveolens |
| 310. Pāṭhā | - Cissampelos pariera |
| 311. Paṭola | - Trichosanthes cucumerina |
| 312. Patra | - Cinnamomum tamala |
| 313. Pattaṅga | - Caesalpinia sappan |
| 314. Pattūra | - Alternanthera sessilis |
| 315. Phala (Madanaphala) | - Randia dumetorum |
| 316. Phalgū | - Ficus hispida |
| 317. Phalinī (Priyaṅgu) | - Callicarpa macrophylla |
| 318. Phaṇijja, Phaṇijjaka (Marubaka) | - Ocimum basilicum |
| 319. Piḷu | - Salvadoria persica |
| 320. Piṇḍaluka | - Colocasia esculenta |
| 321. Pippala (Aśvattha) | - Ficus religiosa |
| 322. Pippali | - Piper longum |
| 323. Pītataila (Jyotiṣmatī) | - Celastrus paniculatus |
| 324. Plakṣa | - Ficus lacor |
| 325. Plava (Bhadramustā/Kaivaramustā) | - Cyperus sp. |
| 326. Prakīrya (Karaṇja) | - Pongamia pinnata |
| 327. Pratyakpuṣṭī | - Achyranthes aspera |
| 328. Pr̥thwīkā (Upakuñcikā/Bṛhat jīraka) | - Nigella sativa |
| 329. Pr̥sniparṇī | - Uraria picta |
| 330. Priyāla | - Buchanania lanza |
| 331. Priyaṅgu | - Callicarpa macrophylla |
| 332. Punarnavā | - Boerhaavia diffusa |
| 333. Puṇḍrā, Puṇḍrāḥwa (Prapouṇḍarīka) | - (It is an unidentified kanda viṣa) |
| 334. Punnāga | - Calophyllum inophyllum |
| 335. Putikā, Pūtivaraṇja (Cirabilwa) | - Holoptelea integrifolia |
| 336. Rājādana (Rājāhwā) | - Mimusops hexandra |
| 337. Rājakṣava | - Euphorbia microphylla |
| 338. Rājamāṣa | - Vigna cylindrica |

339. Rājānaka (Rañjanaka/Kampillaka)
340. Rakta candana
341. Rāsnā
342. Reṇukā (Nirguṇḍī)
343. R̄ṣabhaka (One of the drugs of Aṣṭavarga)
344. Rodhra (Lodhra)
345. Rodhrayugma
(Savara lodhra & Paṭṭikā lodhra)
346. Rujākara (Ārtagala)
(One of the saireyaka varieties)
347. Sadāphala (Udumbara)
348. Sahacara (Saireyaka)
349. Sahakāra (Āmra)
350. Saigrava (Śigru)
351. Śaileya
352. Saireyaka, Sairyaka
353. Saka (Teak)
354. Śakulādanī
355. Śāla
356. Śāli
357. Śāliparṇi
358. Śallakī
359. Śaluka (Kamala)
360. Samāṅgā (Mañjiṣṭhā)
361. Samāṅgā (Lajjālu)
362. Śamī
363. Samyaka (Āragwadha)
364. Śaṅkhinī
365. Saptacchada (Saptaparṇa)
366. Saptalā
367. Sarala
368. Śrāṅgeṣṭā (Kākatiktā)
369. Sarja
370. Sarṣapa
371. Śaṣṭikā
372. Śatāhwā (Śatapuṣpā)
373. Śathī
374. Satīna
375. Savaraka Rodhra
376. Sevya (Uśīra)
377. Śaḍgranthā (Vacā)
378. Siddhārtha
379. Śigrū
- Mallotus philippensis
 - Pterocarpus santalinus
 - Pluchea lanceolata
 - Vitex negundo
 - Symplocos racemosa
 - Ficus racemosa
 - Barleria prionitis
 - Magnifera indica
 - Moringa pterygosperma
 - Parmelia perlata
 - Barleria prionitis
 - Tectona grandis
 - Alternanthera sessilis
 - Shorea robusta
 - Oryza sativa
 - Desmodium gangeticum
 - Boswellia serrata
 - Nelumbo nucifera
 - Rubia cordifolia
 - Mimosa pudica
 - Prosopis spicigera
 - Cassia fistula
 - Clitoria ternatea
 - Alstonia scholaris
 - Acacia sinuate
 - Pinus longifolia
 - Cardiospermum halicacabum
 - Vateria indica
 - Brassica campestris var. sarson Prain
 - Oryza sativa
 - Peucedanum graveolens
 - Hedychium spicatum
 - Pisum sativum
 - Symplocos racemosa
 - Vetiveria zizanoides
 - Acorus calamus
 - Brassica campestris
 - Moringa pterygosperma

380. Śikharī (Apāmārga)
 381. Siṁhī (Bṛhatī)
 382. Śimśapā
 383. Śirīṣa
 384. Śitapākī (Odanapākī)
 385. Śleṣmātaka
 386. Snuhī
 387. Somavalka (Khadira)
 388. Spṛkkā (Not identified)
 389. Śrāvanī
 390. Śrīgātaka
 391. Śrīgavera
 392. Śrīngī (Karkaṭakasṛīngī)
 393. Śrīvāsaka (Śrīveṣṭaka)
 394. Sruvavṛkṣa (Vikañkata)
 395. Sthirā (Śāliparṇī)
 396. Sthirā-dwaya (Śāliparṇī & Pr̄śniparṇī)
 397. Sthouṇeya, Sthouṇeyaka
 398. Suniṣaṇṇa
 399. Śuṇṭhī
 400. Surabhī (Rāsnā/Śallakī/Devaḍāru/Tulasī)
 401. Surāla (Śrīveṣṭaka)
 402. Sūraṇa
 403. Surasā (Tulasī)
 404. Śūrpaparṇī (Mudgaparṇī & Māṣaparṇī)
 405. Suṣa
 406. Suṣāvī (A variety of kāravella)
 407. Suvarṇa-twak (Āragwadha)
 408. Swarṇakṣīrī
 409. Śvetāhva (Arjuna)
 410. Śyāmā
 411. Śyāmaka
 412. Tagara
 413. Tāla
 414. Tālapatṛī (Tālamūlī)
 415. Tāliṣa
 416. Tāmbūla (Piper betel)
 417. Taṇḍulīya
 418. Tāpasa Vṛkṣa (Iṅgudī)
 419. Tarkārī¹
 420. Tārkṣyaśaila (Rasāñjana)
 (Extract obtained from dāruharidrā)
 421. Tīkṣṇa vṛkṣa (Pīlu)
- Achyranthes aspera
 - Solanum indicum
 - Dalbergia sissoo
 - Albizzia lebbeck
 - (Not identified)
 - Cordia myxa
 - Euphorbia nerifolia
 - Acacia catechu
 - Sphaeranthus indicus
 - Trapa bispinosa
 - Zingiber officinalis
 - Pistacia integerrima
 - Pinus roxburghii
 - Flacourtie indica
 - Desmodium gangeticum
 - Taxus baccata
 - Marsilea minuta
 - Zingiber officinalis
 - Pinus roxburghii
 - Amorphophallus campanulatus
 - Ocimum sanctum
 - Momordica charantia
 - Cassia fistula
 - Argemone mexicana
 - Terminalia arjuna
 - Operculina turpethum
 - Echinochola frumentacea
 - Valeriana wallichii
 - Borassus flabellifer
 - Curculigo orchioïdes
 - Taxus baccata
 - Amaranthus spinosus
 - Balanites aegyptiaca
 - Clerodendrum phlomidis
 - Salvadoria persica

422. Tila	- <i>Sesamum indicum</i>
423. Tilaparṇikā	- <i>Gynandropsis pentaphylla</i>
424. Tilvaka	- <i>Symplocos racemosa</i>
425. Tiṇḍīśa	- <i>Citrullus vulgaris</i>
426. Tiniśa	- <i>Ougeinia dalbergioides</i>
427. Tiṇṭuka (Śyonāka)	- <i>Oroxylum indicum</i>
428. Trapuṣa (Karkaṭī)	- <i>Cucumis sativus</i>
429. Trāyantī (Trāyamāṇa)	- <i>Gentiana kurroo</i>
430. Tripādi (Haṁsapādi)	- <i>Adiantum lunulatum</i>
431. Trivṛt	- <i>Operculina turpethum</i>
432. Truṭi (Elā)	- <i>Elettaria cardamomum</i>
433. Tuga (Tugakṣīrī, Vaṁśalocana)	- <i>Bambusa arundinacea</i>
434. Tulasī	- <i>Ocimum sanctum</i>
435. Tumba (Alābū)	- <i>Lagenaria siceraria</i>
436. Turuṣka	- <i>Liquidamber orientalis</i>
437. Twak (Dālacīnī)	- <i>Cinnamomum zeylanicum</i>
438. Udaṅkīrya (Karañja)	- <i>Pongamia pinnata</i>
439. Uddāla	- <i>Paspalum scrobiculatum</i>
440. Udumbara	- <i>Ficus racemosa</i>
441. Umā	- <i>Linum usitatissimum</i>
442. Upodikā	- <i>Basella rubra</i>
443. Urubuka	- <i>Ricinus communis</i>
444. Urumāna (Northern Himalayan zone fruit)	- <i>Prunus armeniaca</i>
445. Uśīra	- <i>Vetiveria zizanoides</i>
446. Utpala	- <i>Nymphaea stellata</i>
447. Vacā	- <i>Acorus calamus</i>
448. Vaṁśa	- <i>Bambusa arundinacea</i>
449. Vanatiktaka	- <i>Mollugo sp.</i>
450. Vañjula (Aśoka/Tiniśa/Vetasa)	- (Yet to be identified)
451. Vanyā (Kuṭannaṭa/Śaivāla/Plava)	- (Yet to be identified)
452. Varāṅga	- <i>Cinnamomum tamala</i>
453. Varṣabhū	- <i>Trianthem portulacastrum</i>
454. Vārtāka	- <i>Solanum melongena</i>
455. Varuṇa	- <i>Crataeva nurvala</i>
456. Vāsā	- <i>Adathoda vasica</i>
457. Vāstūka	- <i>Chenopodium album</i>
458. Vātāma (Bādāma)	- <i>Prunus amygdalus</i>
459. Vatsaka (Kuṭaja)	- <i>Holarrhena antidyserterica</i>
460. Vella (Viḍāṅga)	- <i>Embelia ribes</i>
461. Vellantara (Vīratara)	- <i>Dichrostachys cinerea</i>
462. Vетra	- <i>Calamus tenuis</i>
463. Vibhītaka, Vibhītakī	- <i>Terminalia bellirica</i>
464. Viḍāṅga	- <i>Embelia ribes</i>

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 465. Vidārī | - Pueraria tuberosa |
| 466. Vidula (Nicula) | - Barringtonia acutangula |
| 467. Virala (Tinduka) | - Diospyros tomentosa |
| 468. Vīraṇā (Uśīra) | - Vetiveria zizanoides |
| 469. Vīratara | - Dichrostachys cinerea |
| 470. Viśālā (Indravāruṇī) | - Citrullus colocynthis |
| 471. Viśalyā | - Trichosanthes bracteata |
| 472. Viśamuṣṭi | - Strychnos nuxvomica |
| 473. Viśāṇikā (Karkaṭakaśīngī) | - Pistacia integerrima |
| 474. Vṛddhi (One of the drugs of Aṣṭavarga) | |
| 475. Vṛkṣādanī | - Loranthus longiflorus |
| 476. Vṛkṣāmla | - Garcinia indica |
| 477. Vṛścikālī | - Pergularia extensa |
| 478. Vṛscīva (Punarnavā) | - Boerhaavia diffusa |
| 479. Vṛṣa (Vāsā) | - Adathoda vasica |
| 480. Vyādhīghāto (Āragwadha) | - Cassia fistula |
| 481. Vyāghranakha | - Capparis horrida |
| 482. Vyāghrī (Kanṭakārī) | - Solanum xanthocarpum |
| 483. Yava | - Hordeum vulgare |
| 484. Yavaka (Smaller variety of yava) | |
| 485. Yavānī | - Trachyspermum ammi; Carum capticum |
| 486. Yojanavallī (Mañjiṣṭhā) | - Rubia cordifolia |
| 487. Yuktā (Rāsnā) | - Pluchea lanceolata |

ANNEXURE : VI

Glossary of Sanskrit Terms

Abhiṣyanda: Conjunctivitis	Āghāta: Striking, killing, a blow, stroke
Abhra vṛṇḍa: A line or mass of clouds	Agni sweda: Thermal sudation
Abhra: A cloud	Agni: Power of digestion
Abhyāṅga: Massaging the body with unctuous or oil substances	Agnidagdha: Burns
Ābhyañtara parimārjana: Internal administration	Agnikarma (Thermal cautery): It is a method of burning or scarring organic tissue by means of a hot iron rod like instrument.
Ābhyañtara rogamārga: Interior path way of diseases	Agnisāda: Weakness of digestion
Abhyasana: Repeated practice	Āhāra mātrā: Quantity of food
Abhyavaharana: Eating or taking food	Āharanā: Extraction, drawing out
Ācchādana: Covering, concealing, a covering sheath	Āhava: Wrestling
Acchapeya: Internal administration of oleating substances without adding any other substance is known as acchapeya.	Ahi: Snake
Acetana: Inanimate	Ajā: She goat
Ādāna kāla: Debilitating period	Ajarā: Not subject to old age or decay
Adhāraṇiya vega: Non-suppressible urges	Ajina: The hairy skin of animals especially of a black antelope (used as a seat or garment etc.)
Adharma: Unrighteousness, wickedness	Ajīrṇa: Indigestion
Adhimantha: Glaucoma	Akāla śayana: Sleeping at improper time
Adhvovāta: Flatus	Akāla: Untimely, premature
Adhwagamana: Walking for a long distance	Akṛta: Without processed
Ādhya: Rich, wealthy	Akṣa pāṭava: Comprising absolute ability to carry out their normal functions of all the sense organs.
Adhyardhadhārā śastra: Half edged knife	Akṣa: Axis
Ādhyaroga: Vatarakta, gout	Ākṣepaka: Convulsions
Adhyaśana: Taking food without the digestion of the food taken earlier	Akṣi: Eye
Adṛṣṭa: Invisible	Alābū: Gourd
Āgantuja roga: Exogenous diseases	Alasaka: Intestinal hypotony
Āgāra: A house	Ālasya: Lassitude
Āgāra dhūma: Soot	Alocaka: The faculty of vision, the cause of sight

Āma māṁsa: Raw or uncooked meat

Āma: Undigested food substance

Āmadoṣa: Association of undigested toxic metabolites with humours

Āmāśaya: Stomach

Āmiṣa: Flesh

Amlapitta: Hyper-acidity, gastritis

Amlodgāra: Sour eructation

Anagni sweda: Non-thermal sudation

Anagni: Without the use of fire, substance other than fire

Anarha: Not deserving; not fit

Āṇḍavṛddhi (Orchitis): It is an inflammation of one or both testis, accompanied by swelling, pain, fever, and a sensation of heaviness in the affected area.

Āṅga-gourava: Heaviness in the body

Āṅgamarda: Body ache

Āṅgāra: Charcoal

Āngārikā: A portable fire pan

Āṅgasāda: Malaise

Ānguli-trāṇaka yantra: Finger guard

Ānguṣṭa: The thumb

Ānimitta: Absence of an adequate cause or occasion

Āñjana (Collyrium): The application of drugs in the eyes using a 'śalāka' or with index fingertip.

Āñkapāda: Skin of the birds especially taken from the thigh or lower limb.

Āñkura: A sprout

Āñkuśa: A hook, a goad

Anna-rakṣā vidhi: Methods of protecting foods

Anṛta vacana: False words

Antarmukha śastra: Blade bent inwards

Anu or Upa yantra: Accessory instruments

Anubandha: Which, transmigrates from one body to another

Anugāmī: Manifested after the primary disease i.e. upadrava or complications

Anukramaṇikā: A table of contents, index showing the successive contents of a work

Anulomana gati: In the same direction

Anulomana: Sending or putting in natural or right direction, purging

Ānūpa deśa: Belonging to watery place, marshy land

Anupakrama: Unbefitting for treatment, absolutely irreversible

Anupāna: A drink taken after medicine, post-prandial drink

Anupaśaya: Any thing or circumstance that aggravates a malady

Anurakti: Affection, love, devotion

Anurasa: Secondary taste

Anuvāsana vasti: It is a type of medicated enemata in which the four types of unctuous substances are used after processing with appropriate drugs and is intended for lubrication. As it can be conducted daily it is called anuvāsana vasti.

Anuvellita bandha: Encircling bandage

Anyatovātā: Secondary referred pain in the eyeball

Apabāhuka: Brachial neuralgia

Apacī (Scrofula): A form of tuberculosis affecting the lymph nodes, especially of the neck, that is most common in children and is usually spread by unpasteurized milk from infected cows. Also called struma.

Apasmāra (Epilepsy): A neurological disorder that causes recurring seizures.

Apatānaka: Convulsive disorders

Apatantraka: Hysterical convulsions

Ārā śastra: Awl

Arbuda (Neoplasm or Benign or malignant tumor): A tumor that does not metastasize or invade and destroy adjacent normal tissue (benign).

Ārci: A ray of flame

Ardita: Facial paralysis

Ariṣṭa: Misfortune, ill omen, definite signs of death

Arjuna: Sub-conjunctival haemorrhage

Arśas (Hemorrhoids): Sprout like structures produced in the rectum by aggravated doṣas in conjunction with twak, māṁsa and medas as dūṣya is known as arśas.

Arśoyantra: Proctoscope

Asādhya roga: Incurable disease

Asātmendriyārtha samyoga: The disagreeable correlation of sense organs like ears, skin, eyes, tongue and nose with their objects sound, touch, vision, taste and smell respectively is known as asātmendriyārtha samyoga.

Āscotana: The process of instilling medicinal drops into the eyes.

Āsmari (Urinary calculus): A mineral formation lodged in the urinary tract. Kidney stones are formed when excess minerals such as calcium, are present and concentrate into a hard lump. They may exist without causing discomfort, or they may cause blockage that can interfere with normal function and cause considerable discomfort.

Āṣṭāṅga Āyurveda (Eight branches of Āyurveda): Kāyacikitsā (General Medicine), Bāla cikitsā (Pediatrics), Graha cikitsā (Dermatology), Urdhwāṅga cikitsā (E.N.T. & Ophthalmology), Śalya cikitsā (Surgery), Dāmṣṭrā cikitsā (Toxicology).

Āśma: A stone

Āsmaghana sweda: Stone bed sudation

Āśru: Tears

Āsthāpana vasti: It is a therapeutic procedure, which arrests, restricts or withdraws the advancing of age and doṣas. It is also known as kaśaya vasti as the chief drug used in this procedure is the decoction. As it provides un-imaginary effects in the body, it is also called nirūha vasti.

Asthi: Bone

Asthibhaṅga (Fracture): Any break or crack in a bone.

Āśwa: Horse

Āśwatara: Mule

Asyapāka: Stomatitis

Āṭāmukha śastra: Curved scissors

Ātapa sevana: Exposed to sun

Ati dagdha: Excessive cauterization

Ati nindrā: Excessive sleeping

Atirāga: Too much of attachment

Atisāra (Diarrhea): The frequent and excessive discharging of watery feces.

Atiyoga: Excessive utilization, performing the procedure excessively, over dose

Atyagni: Excessive digestive power

Avadhi: Boundary, limit exclusive or inclusive (in time or space), Period of time

Avagāhana: Bathing, plunging, immersing

Avanti soma: Sour gruel prepared by fermenting rice water

Avapīḍaka: In the disorders occurs due to the suppression of urine, medicated ghee is to be given internally before and after the digestion of the food in the quantum of minimum and maximum doses respectively. This method of administration of medicated ghee is known as avapīḍaka.

Avapīḍana: Pressing down, A kind of nasya (nasal administration) in which the drug used is in the form of juice.

Avara: Inferior

Avasādana: Sinking, fainting, sitting down

Avasecana: Water used for sprinkling

Avasthambha: Resting upon, supporting

Avatarāṇa: Descent

Āvi: A sheep

Ayoga: Inadequate utilization

Āyu: Life

Āyurveda: The science which imparts knowledge of life, provides longevity, contains relevant information and discusses all allied topics is known as Ayurveda.

Babhru: Large brown mongoose

Baddhodara: Intestinal obstruction

Bādhirya: Deafness

Badiśa śastra: Sharp hook

Bahuguṇam: abundance and richness in quality

Bahukalpam: having multipurpose utility

Bahupāna: Drinking of excessive alcohol

Bāhya parimārjana: External administration

Bāhya rogamārga: Exterior path way of diseases

Baka: Common crane

Bala: Strength

Bālaka: Snow wreath crane

Bandhana (Bandages): 15 types of bandages are enumerated. They differ according to the material used and according to the parts of the body to which they need to be applied.

Bhagandara (Fistula in ano): An abnormal duct or passageway in the body. A fistula may be congenital or the complication of an infection.

Bhañjana: Application of pressure or rubbing alround a part of the body

Bhāra-vahana: Carrying heavy loads

Bhāsa: Beard vulture

Bhasma: Micro-fined powder of mineral drug obtained by incineration

Bhaya: Fear

Bhedana: Excision

Bheka: Frog

Bhiṣak: Physician

Bhrama (Vertigo): The sensation of dizziness. Feeling that one is spinning or that one's surroundings are spinning around, one causing confusion and difficulty in keeping one's balance.

Bhrāṣṭra: A frying pan

Bhringāhwa: King bird of paradise

Bhū sweda: Ground bed sudation

Biḍālaka: Application of medicated paste over eyelids leaving eye lashes.

Bindu: The amount of liquid that flown after immersing two digits of the index finger in any liquid substance is equivalent to one bindu.

Bisa: Stalks of lotus

Brāhma muhūrta: It is the time, which is the second half of the last yāma (3 hours) of the night or early hours of the dawn i.e. approximately at about 4.24 am. It is the suitable time to study and obtain knowledge. It is also the time when all the three dosas are in the equilibrium state.

Bṛhat pañcamūla: Bilwa (śrīphala), kāśmarī (gambhārī), tarkārī (agnimantha), paṭala (amogha) and tiṇtuka (śyonāka).

Bṛhat trayī (Greater trio): Caraka Saṁhitā, Suśruta Saṁhitā and Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha/ Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya are collectively known as Bṛhat trayī.

Bṛmhāna: Whatever adds to the corpulence of the body is bṛmhāna or nourishing therapy.

Cakora: Chukor

Cakrāhwa: Ruddy sheldrake

Calana: Movement of the foreign object in the body from one place to another

Cāmara: Yak

Chardi (Vomiting): To expel the contents of the stomach forcibly through the mouth.

Carmakīla (Wart): A hard rough lump growing on the skin, caused by infection with certain viruses and occurring typically on the hands or feet.

Cāruṣka: A kind of deer

Cāṣa: Blue jay

Cataka: Sparrow

Caturjātaka: Trijātaka along with nāga-keśara is known as caturjātaka.

Caturvidha puruṣārthas: Dharma, Artha, Kāma, Mokṣa.

Catuṣkoṇa: Quadrangular

Catussneha: Four types of oleating substances viz. ghṛta, taila, vasā and majjā.

Caya: Accumulation

Chedana: Incision, cutting

Chidrodara: Intestinal perforation

Cilicima: Red striped fish

Cina bandha: Banner bandage

Cirāyu (Longevity): The term denoting the length or duration of the life of living beings.

Chuluki: Gangetic dolphin

Cūrṇa (Fine powder of dry drug): The dried drug is powdered finely without adding any liquid and strained through a clean cloth. Kṣoda and raja are the synonyms.

Dadhi: Curd

Dadhimastu: Whey

Dāha: Burning sensation

Dakṣatā: Efficiency

Dāma bandha: Tail of quadruped

Danta dhāvana (Tooth brushing): The natural toothbrush is made from the root of the tree *Salvadora persica*, which contains all kinds of natural nutrients, a great quantity of fluorine and silicon, vitamin C, sulphur, salvadorine, trimethylamine and several minerals like potassium, sodium, chloride, sodium bicarbonate and calcium oxides. Brushing the tooth with the natural toothbrush can be considered as the best tool to promote good oral hygiene. It prevents the formation of cavities and plaque and makes teeth whiter and enamel stronger.

Danta māṁsa: Gums

Dantaharṣa: Morbid sensitiveness of the teeth

Dantalekhana śastra: Dental scraper

Dāraṇa: Rupturing

Darśana parikṣā: Examination of the patient by means of inspection.

Daśamūla (Ten roots): Br̥hat pañcamūla and hraswa pañcamūla are collectively known as daśamūla.

Dātyūha: Gallinule bird

Dāvānala (Dāvāgni): Wild fire, forest conflagration

Dipana: Increasing the digestive fire or process but not digesting toxic metabolites.

Deśa: Habitat

Dhānyāmla: An alcoholic preparation prepared by fermenting the water in which rice and other grains are cooked.

Dhāraṇīya vega: Suppressible urges

Dhāri: Synonym of āyu, the one that prevents the body from decay.

Dhātu: Body tissues which maintains as well as nourish the body

Dhātwagni: Dhātwagni is nothing but the part or share of jatharāgni (digestive power), which is present in side of all the saptā dhātus. This is also another factor responsible for the increase or decrease of bodily tissues due to the debility and intensity of the dhātwagni respectively.

Dhūmapāna: Inhalation of medicated fumes through nostrils or through oral cavity is prescribed as a minor treatment procedure in order to dissolve the vitiated kapha in head, nose and throat.

Dhūmikā: Owlet

Dinacaryā: Daily regimen

Divyodaka or Gaṅgāmbu: Uncontaminated rain water

Doṣa: Vitiating factor, corrupting agent

Doṣa-karmaja vyādhi: Disease caused by both the factors viz. non-observance of wholesome diet schedule and lifestyle activities as well as sinful acts of previous life.

Doṣottha vyādhi: Disease caused due to non-observance of wholesome diet and regimen and simultaneous adoption of unwholesome food and activities.

Drava sweda: Conducting sudation by means of warm liquid

Dravya (Substance): The one which is a substratum of qualities and actions and which is a concomitant cause is the matter.

Dravya guṇa (Viṁśati guṇa/Dvandva guṇa/Karmanyāsāmāya guṇa/Gurvādi guṇa): They are 20 in number viz. guru (heaviness), laghu (lightness), manda (dullness), tīkṣṇa (sharpness), hima or śīta (cold), uṣṇa (hot), snigdha (unctuousness), rūkṣa (dryness), ślakṣṇa (smooth), khara (rough), sāndra (solid), drava (liquid), mṛdu (soft), kāṭhina (hard), sthira (immobile), sara (mobile), sūkṣma (minute), sthūla (bulk), viśada (clarity/non sliminess), piccila (slimness).

Dr̥ṣṭigata roga: Disorders of the vision

Durdagdha: Improper cauterization

Dūṣīviṣa: Artificial poisoning.

Duṣṭavrāṇa (Chronic ulcer): A long-standing ulcer with fibrous scar tissue at its base

Dūṣya: Which are liable to be corrupted or vitiated (viz. seven tissues of the body and the trimalas).

Dwīpi: Panther

Dvitāla: Instrument with double blade
Ekāṅga sweda: Local sudation
Ekatāla: Instrument with single blade
Ema: Black buck
Esana: Probing, exploring
Esani śastra: Sharp probe
Gandamālā (Lymphadenopathy): Swelling of more lymph nodes or lymph glands.
Gandha: Smell
Gandūṣa: Holding the liquid substances in the buccal cavity for a specific period without moving the drug is known as gandūṣa.
Garaviṣa: Artificial poisoning
Garbha śaṅku: Fetus or traction hook
Gavaya: Gayal cow
Gharṣaṇa śilā: Stone useful for rubbing the collyrium material
Ghaṭī yantra: Pot
Ghrāṇa-arśo-arbuda yantra: Nasal speculum
Ghridhra: Vulture
Gṛta: Ghee
Girivartikā: Mountain quail
Glāni: Malaise
Go: Cow
Godha: Iguana lizard
Gokarna: Deer antelope
Gomūtra: Cow's urine
Gonarda: Hill partridge
Gosphaṇa bandha: Sling bandage
Gosphaṇikā: Irregular wound suturing
Gourava: Heaviness
Grahanī roga: Amoebiasis

Grahanī: Anatomically it is a part of the abdominal cavity locates above the umbilicus and between the stomach and large intestines, where the pittadharākalā, mainly involved in the digestion of food.
Grāhi: One of the attributes of the substances that absorbs water
Granthi (Cyst): An abnormal sac containing liquid or semi liquid waste material. Cysts often do not cause symptoms and are therefore not treated; one that causes pressure or other problems may be surgically removed.
Grīdhramukha yantra: Falcon forceps
Gṛdhrasī: Sciatica
Guda-nissāraṇa: Prolapsed rectum
Gudā: Jaggery
Gulma: Tumour
Guṇa (Attribute): A principle which remains in dravya with inseparable concomitance, devoid of effort and a causative factor in the genesis of similar attribute is defined as guṇa.
Guruprāvaraṇa: Conducting sudation by covering heavy blanket.
Halimaka: Advanced stage of jaundice
Hamsa: Swan
Hamsodaka: The water which exposes to the sun during day time and to the moon during night hours and purified by the season and detoxified by the influence of agastya nakṣatra is known as hamsodaka.
Hariṇa: Deer
Hetu-viparyaya cikitsā: Treatment is opposite to their causative factors.
Hiccā (Hiccough): A sudden intake of air checked by closure of the glottis causing a

sound typical to the condition. The hiccup originates with irritation to a nerve that causes an involuntary spasm of the muscle of the diaphragm.

Hima: Kaṣāya prepared by steeping raw drugs in cold water is called hima. Six parts of water are added to the coarse powder of 1 part of the drug to be used. The mixture should then be kept overnight. Next day the drug should be ground and filtered through a clean cloth. The resultant substance is called as hima.

Hina vega: Absence or insufficient bouts

Hinayoga: Insufficient utilization

Holāka sweda: Under bed sudation

Hraswa mātrā: The quantity of oil digested in two yāma (6 hours) is called hraswa mātrā.

Hṛechūla (Angina pectoris): A dull pressure or pain in the center of the chest that may be accompanied by a burning sensation not unlike indigestion and may radiate down the left arm; an indication that the heart muscle is not getting enough oxygen during a period of stress or exertion.

Hṛdroga: Diseases of the heart.

Hṛllāsa: Nausea

Ikṣu: Sugarcane

Īrṣyā: Jealousy

Jalacara: Birds moving in water

Jaloukāvacāraṇa (Application of leeches): Leeches (jalāyuka means whose life is water, jalaukā means whose home is water) are employed to extract bad or superfluous blood and thus cure many ailments caused by vitiated blood. It is the mildest form of bloodletting and is used when venesection is not indicated.

Jāmbavouṣṭha śalākā: Jāmuna fruit probe

Jambuka: Jackal

Jāngala deśa: Desert land

Jāngala māṁisa: Meat of animals dwelling in desert like lands

Jāngama: Animal origin

Jānu: Knee

Jara: Geriatrics

Jatḥarāgni: Digestive fire

Jatu: Lac

Jentāka sweda: Sudatorium sudation

Jirṇa jwara: Chronic fever

Jivaniya pañcamūla: Abhīrū, vīra, jīvantī, jīvaka & ṛṣabhaka

Jivañjīvaka: Common mynah

Jīvitam: That keeps alive

Jṛmbhā: Yawning

Jwara (Fever): Doṣas do gets aggravated due to faulty diet and activities and reside in āmāśaya and causes rise of body temperature along with mental distress, which is known as jwara.

Kadamba: Whistling teal

Kākamukha yantra: Crow forceps

Kāla: Time

Kalka: It is a paste of coarsely powdered drugs with water or the paste of fresh leaves of herbs.

Kāmalā (Jaundice): A condition caused by bile pigments in the blood, manifested by a yellowing of the skin and other tissue, and caused by disease or other abnormality. Often a disease causing the yellowing of the skin is itself called jaundice.

Kāmbalika: It is prepared by boiling 1 part of whey and 1/8th part of green gram dāla.

When dāla boils completely, add powders of souvarcala lavaṇa, jīraka, jambīra swarasa, twak, elā, patra, lavaṅga etc. and mixed well and then use.

Kaṇakapota: Wood pigeon

Kanḍū: Itching sensation

Kanduka: A boiler or woven

Kaninikā: Inner canthus

Kaṇkamukha yantra: Heron forceps

Kaṇṭaka pañcamūla: Śwadarmṣṭrā, abhīru, saireyaka, himṣra & karamarda

Kaṇṭha śalya darśana nādi yantra: Throat speculum

Kapiñjala: Jungle bush quail

Kapota: Dove

Kāraṇḍava: Goose

Karapatra śastra: Saw

Karkaṭa: Crab

Karma (Action): Karma present in the matter is the cause of combination and separation. Karma is the action relating to something to be achieved. It doesn't require any other factor for its action.

Karmaja vyādhi: Diseases caused by the sinful acts of previous life

Karṇapūrana: Ear drops

Karṇavyadhana śastra: Needle for piercing the ear

Karpaṇa: An iron sauce pan

Karṣū sweda: Trench sudation

Kārṣya (Emaciation): The process of losing so much flesh as to become extremely thin; wasting.

Kartari śastra: Scissors

Kāsa (Cough): Sudden, noisy expulsion of

air from the lungs. Coughing is a defensive reflex that clears the lungs of excess mucous of irritating matter. The cough will persist as long as the condition that causes it, but it may be suppressed by soothing liquids or drugs that act on the cough reflex.

Kaṭi: Hip

Khaḍa: Processing buttermilk with green vegetables or pulses is known as khada.

Khadga: Rhinoceros

Khaja śastra: Churner

Khara: Donkey

Kharadhāratā: Rough edged

Khaṭwa bandha: Four tailed bandage

Kilāṭa: Inspissated milk i.e. making thick by evaporating moisture

Kledavahana: Elimination of moisture

Kledavidhṛti: Retention of moisture

Kokila: Koel

Kopana: Aggravating

Kośa bandha: Sheath bandage

Koṣṭha: Bowels

Kotha: Skin rash

Kṛcchramīla: Blepharo-spasm

Krakara: Snipe

Kṛmi (Intestinal parasites): Intestinal parasites are parasites that populate the gastro-intestinal tract. In humans, they are often spread by poor hygiene related to feces, contact with animals, or poorly cooked food containing parasites.

Kṛśarā (Khicadi): Take rice 1 part, dāla $\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ parts, salt, ginger and hiṅgu in an appropriate quantity and boil in 4 times of water, to obtain kṛśarā.

Kṛṣṇagata roga: Diseases of the cornea

Kṛta: Processed the food with oil, salt and pungent substances

Kṛtānna varga: Group of food preparations

Krodha: Anger

Krouñca: Demoiselle crane

Krūra koṣṭa: Hard bowels

Kṣāra karma: Application of caustic alkalies

Kṣāra: Alkaline substances of drugs obtained from their ashes

Kṣavathu: Sneezing

Kṣaya or Śoṣa (Cachexia): Weight loss, wasting of muscle, loss of appetite, and general debility that can occur during a chronic disease.

Kṣaya: Decrease or diminution

Kṣouma masi: Ash of silk cloth

Kṣudhā nigrahāṇa: Suppression of hunger

Kṣudhā: Hunger

Kukkubha: Crow pheasant

Kukūla: Fire made of cow dung cakes

Kuliṅgaka: Sparrow hawk

Kulmāṣa: Bengal gram, green gram, peas etc. cooked over steam

Kumbhī sweda: Pitcher bed sudation

Kumbhīra: Gavial

Kunṭha: Bluntness

Kūpa sweda: Pit sudation

Kuraṅga: Roe deer

Kurara: Fish eagle

Kurara-mukha yantra: Osprey forceps

Kūrcikā: Solid portion of curds

Kūrma: Tortoise

Kuśapatra śastra: Cataract knife

Kuṣṭharoga (Leprosy and other skin diseases): Leprosy is a mildly contagious chronic bacterial infection that causes loss of sensation.

Kuṭhārikā śastra: Axe

Kutī sweda: Cabin sudation

Kuṭṭana: Pricking

Laghu pañcamūla: Br̥hatī dwaya (br̥hatī & kanṭakārī), amśumatī dwaya (śāliparṇī & pr̥sniparṇī) and gokṣura

Lājā: Parched rice

Laṅghana: Whatever is capable to reduce the body is known as laṅghana or reducing therapy.

Latwā: Scarlet minivet

Lāvā: Common quail

Lekhana: Scarification, scraping

Lepa: Medicine in the form of paste used for external application

Lobha: Greed

Lopāka: Fox

Madātyaya: Alcoholic intoxication

Madgu: Little cormorant

Madhu śarkarā: The sediment portion of honey formed due to the preservation of honey in a bottle for a prolonged period is known as madhu śarkarā.

Madhu: Honey

Madhuhā: Honey buzzard

Madhumeha: Diabetes mellitus

Madhwāsava: Alcohol prepared from honey

Madhyama koṣṭha: Moderate bowels

Madhyama kṣāra: Moderate alkalies

Madhyama mātrā: The quantity of oil digested in four yāma (12 hours) is called madhyama mātrā

Madhyama pañcamūla: Balā, punarnavā, eraṇḍa, śūrpaparṇī dwaya (mudgaparṇī & māṣaparṇī)

Madhyama rogamārga: Middle path way of diseases

Madhyama: Average

Madya: Alcoholic preparations

Mahāmr̥ga: Animals of huge body

Mahān: The combination of all the best four oleating substances (sarpi, majjā, vasā and taila) is known as mahān.

Mahiṣa: Buffalo

Majjā: Bone marrow

Makara: Great Indian crocodile

Mākṣika: Honey

Mala: Bio-wastes

Māṁsa rasa: Mutton juice

Māṁsa: Muscular tissue, meet of animals

Manas: Mind

Mānasika roga: Psychic disorders

Maṇḍa: One part of paddy is cooked with 14 parts of water and after the rice is completely cooked, the remaining liquid portion is drained and collected as maṇḍa.

Mandāgni: Weak digestive fire

Maṇḍala bandha: Circular bandage

Maṇḍalāgra śastra: Round headed knife

Mantha kalpanā: It is a cold infusion and to prepare mantha one part of coarse powder of drug should be taken and soaked in sufficient quantity of water for 1-2 hours. When the powder becomes soft, four parts of water should be added and churned well and then filtered.

Manthana: Churning

Mārga-viśodhana: Clearing the passage

Mārjāra: Cat

Marma: Vital points

Maṣaka: Elevated mole

Mātrā kāla: The time taken either for moving one's right hand around his right knee joint for one time or for blinking the eyes once is known as one mātrā kāla.

Mātrā vasti: It is one of the types of anuvāsana vasti and its dose is equivalent to that of minimum dose of oleation therapy.

Matsya: Aquatic animals

Medas: Fatty tissue or adipose tissue

Mithyāyoga: Improper employment of the mind, speech and body by the individual

Moraṇa: Fermented buttermilk

Mrdu koṣṭha: Soft bowels

Mrdu kṣāra: Mild alkalies

Mrdu sweda: Mild sudation

Mr̥ga: Antelope or deer

Mṛgamāṭṛka: A kind of red colored hare like deer

Mṛtkapala: Pot shred

Mudrikā śastra: Finger knife

Mukha lepa: Face pack

Mukharoga: Diseases of mouth

Mūrcchā (Syncope/Fainting): Loss of consciousness caused by a temporary interruption in the flow of blood to the brain.

Mūrdha taila: Application of oil on the head. It is 4 types viz. abhyaṅga, picu, seka and vasti.

Mūṣaka: Mouse

Mūtra: Urine

Mūtrāghāta: Anuria, retention of urine

Mūtrakṛcchra: Dysuria

Mūtrāvarodha (Retention of urine):

Urinary retention also known as ischuria is a lack of ability to urinate. It is a common complication of benign prostatic hyper trophy (also known as benign prostatic hyperplasia or BPH). Urinary retention is characterized by poor urinary stream with intermittence, straining, a sense of incomplete voiding and urgency.

Nādi sweda: Steam kettle sudation

Nādi yantra: Tubular instruments

Nādivrāṇa (Sinus): It is a sack or cavity in any organ or tissue, or an abnormal cavity or passage caused by the destruction of tissue. Sinus is a chronically infected tract such as a passage between an abscess and the skin. It is however distinct from a fistula which is a tract connecting two epithelialised surfaces.

Nakha śastra: Nail parer

Nakra: Crocodile

Nānātmaja roga: Diseases which are originated with single vitiated humour only and not blended with any other humour.

Nasya karma: Errhine therapy, nasal administration

Navajwara: Acute fever

Nāvana: Nasal administration of medicated oil

Navanīta: Butter

Netra praveśana: Sunken eyes

Nidāna (Causative factors): The Sanskrit word nidāna means literally cause, or more particularly, primary cause. It is employed as a class name for investigations into the causation of disease as well as for the ascertainment of the disease.

Nidrā: Sleep

Nija roga: Endogenous disorders

Nirāma avasthā: State of homeostasis

Nirghātana: Striking out extraction of a foreign object from the body by moving it forward and backward by instrument.

Nirlajjā: Shamelessness

Niṣṭhīva: Spitting

Nisī: Night, Bedtime

Nityaga: That serves as a permanent substratum of this body

Nyāku: Antelope

Odana: Rice

Ojas (Bodily Strength/Vitality/Energy):

Ojas is the essence of seven tissues of the body, especially of the seventh viz. śukra. It pervades the entire body although its principal seat is the heart. Its flow starts from the heart and permeates every minute subdivision of the system. It is white in color, with a touch of red and yellow. It is of 2 types viz. para and apara. The normal quantity of para ojas is eight drops. It is the principal factor responsible for the effective functioning of the body and the sense organs.

Ouṣadha sevana kāla: Time of administration of drugs

Pācana: Digestion of toxic metabolites but not increases the digestive fire or process

Pāda catuṣṭaya: Four essential limbs of the treatment

Pādaghāta: Massaging the body with foot

Pakwāśaya: Large intestines

Pānaka: Syrup

Pañca kola: Pippalī, pippalīmūla, cavya, citraka & nāgara (śunṭhī)

Puñcakarma: Five bio-cleansing procedures

Puñcamahābhūta: Five basic elements viz. prthvī, ap, tejo, vāyu & ākāśa

Puñcamukha nādi yantra: Speculum with five holes

Puñcāngi bandha: Five tailed bandage

Pindu: Anaemia

Paratantra roga: Secondary diseases

Parikartikā: Cutting pain

Parināma: Transformation

Parsni: Calcaneal region/heal

Parswagraha: Pain in the flanks

Paruṣa vacana: Abusive or harsh words

Parva: Small joints

Pascāt karma: Post-operative care

Payasa: Milk pudding

Peyā: 'Peyā' is a thin gruel of rice along with its solid portion (siktha). To prepare peyā, 14 parts of water and 1 part of broken rice are taken and boil well till all the rice particles become soft.

Phalavarti: Rectal suppository

Phānita: Half cooked molasses

Phānta: It is the process of infusion, where four parts of hot water should be added to coarse powder of 1 part of the herb to be used. After some time the powder must be ground well, filtered and used with proper anupāna.

Picu: A gauze piece dipped in oil used for local application on a wound or body part.

Pidana: Pressing by finger or an instrument to allow pus etc. to come out of the abscess.

Pinasa (Chronic or hypertrophic rhinitis): Chronic rhinitis with permanent thickening

of the mucous membrane. Rhinitis is inflammation of the inner lining of the nose. It is caused by an over sensitive immune response.

Piñda sweda (Saṅkara sweda): Mixed fomentation

Piñdikodweṣṭha: Pain in the calf muscles

Pinyāka: It is the residue of sesamum, groundnut and other oil yielding seeds after extracting the entire oil from them.

Piyūṣa: Milk during the first week of calving

Plava: Pelican

Pūrva karma: Pre-operative procedure

Prabhāva: Where there is similarity in two drugs in relation to their rasa, vipāka and vīrya but inspite of this similarity these two drugs differ with regard to their action, the distinctive feature responsible for their distinctive effects not supported by their rasa, vipāka and vīrya is regarded as prabhāva.

Pracchāna: Incision

Pradhamana: Blowing, stuffing in order to clean e.g. powders into the nose with tubes

Pradhāna karma: Main operative procedure

Prajñāparādhā: Intellectual blasphemy

Prakopa: Aggravation

Prakṛti (Constitution): It is decided by the predominance of one or more dosas at the time of fertilization.

Prakṣālana: Washing with water, flushing of wound.

Pramāṇa: Anthropometry

Pramārjana: Cleansing, removing foreign objects from the eye

Prameha (Polyuria): Renal disorder characterized by the production of large volumes of pale dilute urine; often associated with diabetes.

Prāṇācārya: Royal physician

Prasahā: Animals and birds who eat by snatching

Praśamana: Alleviation

Prasanna: Pure supernatant portion of the fermented alcohol

Praseka: Excessive salivation

Praśna (Interrogation): It is regarded as one of the diagnostic aids. It is prescribed as a method of examination along with darśana (observation) and sparśana (palpation).

Pratiloma gati: Reverse direction

Pratiśyāya: Coryza

Pratoli/Muttoli bandha: Recurrent bandage

Pratuda: Packer birds

Pravara: Superior, optimum

Prāvṛ̥t̥rtu: Early rainy season

Pr̥thukā: Rice parched and flattened

Pr̥ṣṭa: Spotted deer

Pr̥thu: Broad

Purāṇa ghṛta (Old ghee): Ghee preserved for more than 100 years in the earth is called kaumbha, and if it is preserved for about 10 years, it is known as purāṇa ghṛta. If the ghee is preserved for more than 10 years it is branded as prapurāṇa ghṛta.

Purāṇa: Filling or injection

Puriṣa: Stools

Purogāmī: Manifested prior to the primary disease i.e. pūrvarūpa or premonitory symptoms)

Pūrvarūpa: Premonitory symptoms

Puṣpita: During menstruation

Puṭapāka: Soothing eyes with medicated liquids which are extracted and prepared through puṭapāka vidhi. i.e. prepare paste by pounding the drug and then wrap it with thick leaves and tie it firmly. Afterwards besmear the bolus with mud and then it is subjected to heat by keeping it in between the cow dung cakes till it becomes red hot. Afterwards take it out and allow to auto cool and then collect the juice by pounding and squeezing the paste.

Quath/Kwāṭha: It is the aqueous extract or decoction. Add 16 times water to 1 part of coarse powder and boil on mild fire till it reduces to 1/8th quantity. The liquid thus obtained is known as kaṣāya. Śṛta, quatha and niryūha are the synonyms of kaṣāya.

Rāga: It is prepared by using the juice of vṛkṣāmla, parūṣaka and jambu, added with little quantity of mustard powder, sugar candy, souvarcala lavaṇa, and saindhava lavaṇa.

Rajas: The word denotes passion, impurity and obscuration. More specifically, however, it signifies activity and change at the phenomenal level. Rajas is one of the three gunas of prakṛti. It is responsible for the variety of things and events in the world and for the manifold structure and function of the human constitution. It also determines personality types by its dominance, and the energetics in life.

Rājī: Snake fish

Rakta: Blood

Raktamokṣaṇa (Rakta śruti): Bloodletting

Raktapitta: Bleeding disorders

Raktavartma: Red jungle fowl

Rasa (Taste): It is the object of gustatory sense organ, and distinct from the objects of other sense organs. Among the tastes present in a substance that which clearly manifests is designated as rasa. Primarily ap & pṛthivī constitute the substratum for the manifestation of rasa and the other three basic elements viz. ākāśa, vāyu & tejas are only efficient causes of the manifestation of the specific qualities of the taste.

Rasa samyoga: Combination of rasas

Rasakriyā: When some decoction is again boiled till it becomes semi solid, it is termed as rasakriyā or avaleha.

Rasālā (Śrikhaṇḍa): Take fresh curds in a thick cloth and make it a bolus and then keep it by hanging throughout the night, so that the liquid portion is completely filtered. Then add fine powder of sugar candy, cardamomum etc. and can be used as rasālā.

Rasāñjana: Solidified decoction of dāru-haridrā (Berberis aristata)

Rasāyana (Rejuvenative): Prevents decay and postpones ageing

Retas: Semen

Rjugranthi: Interrupted skin suturing

Rjūkaraṇa: Straightening what has been bent

Rkṣa: Bear

Rkṣamukha yantra: Bear forceps

Rtu caryā: Seasonal regimen

Rtu sandhi: Seasonal juncture

Roga: Disease

Rogi: Patient

Rohita: Red fish

Romaharṣa: Horripilation

Rudhira: Blood

Rūkṣa sweda: Dry sudation

Rūpa: Vision

Śabda: Sound

Sādhāraṇa deśa: Moderate type of land

Sādhya roga: Curable disease

Sadvṛtta: Code of noble conduct

Śaka varga: Group of vegetables

Śakṛt: Stools

Saktū: It is a dietetic preparation. It is a fine powder of roasted yava, (barley) godhūma, (wheat) tanḍula, (rice) or läjā (parched rice) made into thick solution with water.

Samāgni: Normal digestive fire

Śalākā śastra: Probe

Śalākā yantra: Rod like instruments

Śamana: Pacification

Śāmānya: Generality

Samaśana: Taking wholesome and unwholesome foods together

Śambara: Deer with branched horns

Śambūka: Common snail

Sandamśa yantra: Pincher like instruments

Sampannam: Potent and free from infection and moisture

Samprāpti (Pathogenesis): The word samprāpti literally means arrival, attainment, appearance. It means the appearance or the actual arousal of the disease. Jāti (birth of a disease) and āgati (coming or appearance of a disease) are the synonyms of samprāpti. The synonym āgati has been explained by Cakrapāṇi as the course of the cause of disease from its origination till the

actual appearance of the disease. Thus samprāpti signifies the knowledge of the exact manner in which a certain disease has developed in a patient.

Saṁsarga: Dwidoṣaja—caused by the vitiation of any two doṣa

Saṁsarjana krama: Dietary regimen employed after Pañcakarma

Saṁskāra: Processing

Samsthara or Prastara sweda: Hot bed fomentation

Sāmudrodaka: Contaminated rain water

Sāmya: Equilibrium

Samyak dagdha: Proper cauterization

Sañcaya: Accumulation

Śāṇḍāki vāṭaka: Balls of rice dried in sun and then fried in oil

Sandhigata roga: Diseases of the joints of the eye

Śaṅkha: Conch snail

Sannipāta: Tridoṣaja—caused by the vitiation of all the tridoṣa

Saphari: Small glistening fish

Śarabha: A kind of deer; or a fabulous animal (supposed to have eight legs and to inhabit the snowy mountains; it is represented as stronger than the lion and the elephant).

Śarapada: Stark

Śarārimukha śastra: Pointed scissors

Sārasa: Sarasa crane

Śārikā: Mynah

Śāririka roga: Somatic disorders

Śarkarā: Sugar

Sarpavaktra śastra: Snakes hood shaped blade

Sarvāṅga sweda: Conduction of sudation all over the body

Śaśa: Hare

Śaśaghni: Golden eagle

Śastra koṣa: Surgical instrument case

Śastra pāyanā: Tempering

Śastra pranidhāna: Use of instruments

Śastra: Sharp instruments

Śastra-karma: Surgical procedure

Sātmya: It refers to the agreeability, suitability or wholesomeness of food, drink or conduct.

Sattwa: It is one of the three guṇas which constitute prakṛti, entering into human constitution and determining by its predominance, the personality type and temperament; a synonym of manas (mind); psychic power.

Seka: Seka is the continuous pouring of medicinal liquids viz. sneha, quatha, kṣīra etc on the eye for a specified time.

Ṣadrasas: Six types of tastes viz. madhura rasa (sweet), amla rasa (sour), lavana rasa (salt), tikta rasa (bitter), uṣana or kaṭu rasa (pungent), kaṣāya rasa (astringent).

Ṣadṛtu: Hemanta (winter), śiśira (cold), vasanta (spring), grīṣma (summer), varṣā (rainy), śarad (autumn)

Ṣadūpakrama: 6 types of treatments viz. bṛmhāṇa (nourishing therapy), laṅghana (reduction therapy), snehana (oleation therapy), swedana (sudation therapy), rūkṣāṇa (drying therapy) & sthambhana (astringent therapy).

Ṣandhatā: Impotency

Śidhu: Alcohol prepared from sugar cane juice

Sikhi: Peacock	Srmara: Wild boar
Śimbi varga: Group of pulses	Śringa yantra: Horn or instrument for cupping
Simha: Lion	Srotomukha viśodhana: Removal of the obstruction of channels
Simhamukha yantra: Lion forceps	Sthagikā bandha: Supporter bandage
Śirāharṣa: Allergic hyperemia of the eyeball	Sthāvara: Plant origin
Siravedhana (Venesection): Cutting or opening a vein is a technique employed for bloodletting.	Sthoulya: Obesity
Śiroroga: Diseases of head	Sūci śastra: Needles
Śirotpāta: Episcleritis	Suci: Cleanliness, purity, sanctity
Śīsumāra: Estuarine crocodile	Sūcikūrca śastra: Brush with spikes
Śitapitta (Urticaria): An allergic condition characterized by itchy blotches or welts	Śūka varga: Group of cereals or corn with bristles
Sivana: Sewing, suturing, stitching	Śuka: Parrot
Ślipada: Filariasis	Śuklagata roga: Diseases of the sclera
Snāyu: Tendons	Śukra: Spermatozoa
Sneha vicāraṇā: Administering the oleating substances internally by mixing them with other food substances is known as vicāraṇā.	Śukraka: Keratitis
Snigdha sweda: Moist sudation	Śukta: Fermented gruel
Śodhana: Purificatory therapeutic procedure	Śuktī: Pearl oyster
Śoka: Grief	Surā: Alcoholic preparation
Śopha: Swelling	Śuṣka kāsa: Dry cough
Śoṣa: Wasting	Swarabhaṅga or Swaranāśa: Harshness or roughness of voice or sound, due to mucus collected on the vocal cords, or to swelling or looseness of the cords.
Souvīraka: It is an alcoholic preparation prepared by fermenting the water in which the dehusked barley grains are cooked.	Swarabheda: Hoarseness of voice
Sparśa: Touch	Swarasa: Expressing the juice after pounding the fresh and healthy part of the herb by means of ulukhala yantra and then squeezing it with a piece of clean cloth is known as swarasa.
Sparśana parīkṣā: Examination of the patient by means of auscultation.	Śwāsa (Dyspnoea): A respiratory disorder characterized by difficulty in breathing.
Sphoṭa: Boils	Swasthahita: Wholesome to healthy persons; which maintains homeostasis
Śrama: Tiredness	
Śramaśwāsa: Dyspnoea on exertion	
Śrāvāṇa: Extraction of fluids, letting out evacuation of pus, secretion, draining	

Swastika bandha: Circular cross bandage

Swastika yantra: Cruciform instruments

Swatantra roga: Primary diseases

Śvāvidhā: Porcupine

Śwāvidā: Hedgehog

Sweda karma (Sudation therapy): The process which relieves stiffness, heaviness, coldness and which induces sweating is known as sweda karma.

Świtra (Vitiligo/Leucoderma): A condition in which there is an absence of natural pigment in sections of the skin or hair that appear as whitish or light patches.

Syena: Hawk

Tāḍana: Tapping

Taila: Although, literally taila means only sesamum oil (oil obtained from tila), it is generally employed for every one of the oil obtained from various resources.

Takra: Buttermilk

Tāla yantra: Picklock like instruments

Tamas: Darkness or ignorance; One of the three qualities of manas. It stands for mass, inertia, resistance to activity or conservation.

Tāmbūla: The leaf of piper betel, which together with the areca nut and catechu chewed after meal, is known as tāmbūla.

Tāmracūḍa: Cock

Tandrā (Stupor, Dullness, Lethargy): A deficiency in mental and physical alertness and activity.

Taṇḍulodaka: Rice grains of 1 part are pounded coarsely and keep them in a bowl containing 4 times water. After some time collect the water. The water thus collected is known as taṇḍulodaka.

Tāpa sweda: Conducting sudation by means of direct heat.

Tarakṣu: Hyena

Tarpaṇa: The process of soothing eyes with medicated liquid is known as tarpaṇa, where the eyes are kept drenched in medicated liquids.

Tikṣṇa kṣara: Strong alkalies

Tikṣṇāgni: Strong digestive fire

Tikṣṇāñjana: Strong collyrium

Timiṅgala: Whale

Timira (Cataract): Opacity of the lens of the eye that interferes with vision.

Timira: Immature cataract

Tittiri: Partridge

Trāsana: Sudden threatening

Tridoṣa: The three humours of the body viz. vāta, pitta and kapha; the theory of tridoṣa is formulated on the basis of observation of nature and application of the law of the uniformity of nature. Suśruta says that as Soma (the moon), Sūrya (the sun) and Vāyu (air) hold the cosmos by their functions of visarga (releasing), ādāna (receiving) and vikṣepa (dissemination) so do the three doṣas kapha, pitta & vāta in the living body.

Trijātaka: Twak, elā & patra are together called as trijātaka.

Trikaṭu: Śunṭhī, marica & pippalī

Trikūrca śastra: Instrument with three metallic spikes

Trimisatī: Thirty

Trimukha nādi yantra: Speculum with three holes

Trṇa dhānya: Grains growing wild or without cultivation

Tr̄ṇa pañcamūla: Darbha, kāsa, ikṣu, sara & śāli

Triphalā: Harītakī, āmalakī & vibhītakī are collectively known as triphalā. Recent medical research conducted by several leading academic institutions in India such as the Bhabha Atomic Research Centre and Jawaharlal Nehru University has revealed that triphalā has a significant medicinal value as a potential detoxifying and anti-cancer agent. In Ayurvedic classics the conditions viz. prameha (urinary disorders including diabetes), kuṣṭa (skin diseases including leprosy), viṣamajwara (intermittent fevers including malaria) and agnimāndya (loss of appetite) are indicated for triphalā. Triphalā is also attributed with cakṣuṣya (eye tonic) property. In Caraka Saṁhitā, triphalā is accredited with rasāyana (rejuvenator) property. Vāgbhaṭa observes that triphalā administered along with guggulu acts as best wound healer.

Tripuṭa: Triangular

Tr̄ṣṇā (Thirst): An intuitive desire for fluid. In order to maintain normal function, the body needs replenishment of fluids to replace that lost through of the lungs, sweat glands and kidneys. A number of conditions, such as stress, heavy exercise or hemorrhage or disease can increase the need. The need for the fluids is signaled by a dry feeling in the throat and mouth, because moisture evaporates rapidly from these areas when the body lacks water.

Triskandha: Hetu skandha (causative factors), liṅga skandha (signs & symptoms), ouṣadha skandha (medicines).

Trivarga: Dharma, artha, kāma

Trivṛt: The combination of any three of the

best four oleating substances (sarpih, majjā, vasā and taila) is known as trivṛt.

Tuccha dagdha: Inadequate cauterization

Tunnasevanī: Continuous suturing

Tuṣodaka: It is an alcoholic preparation prepared by fermenting the water in which the barley grains with husk are cooked.

Udakodara yantra: Canula for ascitis

Udakodara: Ascitis

Udara-vyādhī: Abdominal disorders

Udgāra: Belching

Udra: Cat-fish

Udvartana (Powder massage): Massaging the body with fine medicinal herbal powders in the opposite direction of hair follicle by applying high pressure is known as udvartana.

Ulūka: Owl

Unnamana: Elevating, uplifting

Upacakra: Sushi chukor

Upadāmśa (Syphilis): A chronic infectious disease caused by a spirochete (*Treponema pallidum*), either transmitted by direct contact, usually in sexual intercourse, or passed from mother to child in utero, and progressing through three stages characterized respectively by local formation of chancres, ulcerous skin eruptions, and systemic infection leading to general paresis.

Upanāha sweda: Conducting sudation by means of poultice

Upaśaya: Adaptability, homologation, wholesomeness

Upasthātā: Attendant

Ūrja: Strong, powerful, invigorating

Ūṣma sweda: Conducting sudation by means of steam

Uṣṇa sadana: Conducting sudation by keeping the patient in a warm room

Uṣṇodaka: It is prepared by boiling water over moderate fire and reduced to $\frac{1}{8}$ th, $\frac{1}{4}$ th or $\frac{1}{2}$ of the quantity.

Uṣṭra: Camel

Utkleśaṇa: Stirring up

Utkroṣa: Trumpeter

Utpala-patra śastra: Lancet

Utpāṭana: Up-rooting

Utsāha: Enthusiasm, eagerness, keenness

Utsaṅga bandha: Arm sling bandage

Uttama mātrā: The quantity of oil digested in eight yāma (24 hours) is called uttama mātrā

Uttara vasti: It is a type of medicated enemata, which is administered after nirūha vasti or administered into the orifice superior to anus i.e. either urethra or vagina.

Vaiśamya: Disequilibrium

Vājikaraṇa (Aphrodisiacs): Any of various forms of stimulation thought to arouse sexual excitement

Vaktra śoṣa: Dryness of the mouth

Vali: Wrinkles on the skin

Valli pañcamūla: Ajaśṛṅgī, haridrā, vidārī, sāribā, amṛtā

Vamathu: Vomiting

Vāmapārśwa śayana: Lying in left lateral position

Vānara: Monkey

Vaṅkṣaṇa: Testes

Vāntāda: Dog

Varāha: Hog

Varaka: A variety of coarse cereal grain

Vāraṇā: Elephant

Varaṭa: Spoonbill

Vardhma: Scrotal enlargement

Varjanīya: To be rejected

Varmicandrika: A kind of cat-fish

Vartaka: Male bustard

Varti: Wick

Vartikā: Female bustard

Vartīra: Rain quill

Vartmagata roga: Diseases of eyelids

Vārunī: It is a type of alcoholic preparation

Vasā: Muscle fat

Vasti karma (Medicated enemata): Administration of medicated liquid substances into the rectum by means of urinary bladder of various animals like cow, deer, goat, sheep etc. is known as vasti karma.

Vasti parihāra kāla: Maximum period of instance to follow the prescribed regimen during the course of administering medicated enemata.

Vasti piḍana kāla: Time limit to squeeze vasti puṭaka to push vasti dravya into the rectum.

Vasti pratyāgama kāla: Maximum period of withdrawal of vasti dravya

Vastidāna: Method of administration of medicated enemata

Vastinetra: A nozzle prepared by different types of metals, having a length of 12 inches with three ridges and possessing the shape of a cow's tail and is useful for administering the drug into rectum.

Vastipuṭaka: It is a pouch fabricated by means of urinary bladder of different animals like goat, sheep, buffalo etc. and is useful to fill vasti dravya during the process of administration of medicated enemata.

Vātaparyaya: Trigeminal neuralgia

Vātavyādhi: Diseases of nervous system

Vāyasa: Crow

Vellatika: Spiral suturing

Vēnu: Bamboo

Veśavāra: It is a meat preparation. The meat devoid of bones is chopped well, steamed and smashed. To this, powders of pippalī, marīca, jaggery, salt, ghee etc are added and boiled well again for a while to obtain veśavāra.

Vēṣṭana: Tight bandage

Vetasapatra śastra: Narrow blade knife

Vibandha: Circular chest bandage

Vikarṣaṇa: Drawing off, extraction by catching hold off

Vikāsi: It is an attribute of substances, which spreads into the tissues of the body before it is digested and harms the tissues and causes loosening of joints. Some ācāryas opined that it consists of tīkṣṇa guṇa (sharpness).

Vilepi: Vilepi is also a rice preparation but differs in consistency. It is more solid than peyā. To prepare vilepi, 4 parts of water and 1 part of broken rice are taken and boiled till rice is completely soft.

Vileśaya: Animals who live in burrows in earth.

Vinamana: Depressing, pressing down

Vipāka: The ingested food or drugs gets digested by jatharāgni (digestive enzymes).

The properties that emerge there after are known as vipāka. It is not the taste, but the drug itself undergoes transformation in the form of vipāka.

Virūddhāhāra: The food substances which dislodge the vitiated doṣas from their places and unable to expel them out of the body and acts as antagonistic to the tissues are known as virūddhāhāra.

Virudhaka: Germinated seeds

Virya: Potency or special capacity.

Visarga kāla: Nourishing period

Visarpa: Erysipelas

Višeṣa: Peculiarity

Viṣa dātā: The person who administers poison

Viṣamāgni: Erratic digestive fire

Viṣamajwara (Malarial fever): An infection spread by the bite of a mosquito and is characterized by high fever, profuse sweating, often with headache and a feeling of feebleness.

Viṣamāśana: Taking a lesser amount or more quantity of food ahead of time or belatedly.

Viṣkira: Gallinaceous birds

Visūcikā: Cholera

Vitāna bandha: Canopy bandage

Vivarāṇa: Exposing, opening up of a part of the body

Vivartana: Twisting, tuning round the instrument inside

Vṛddhi: Increase or aggravation

Vṛddhipatra śastra: Scalpel

Vrihimukha śastra: Trocar

Vṛka: Wolf

Vṛṣa: Aphrodisiacs

Vṛtta: Circular

Vyadhana: Puncturing, tapping

Vyādhī viparyaya cikitsā: Opposite to the disease

Vyāghra: Tiger

Vyaṅga (Hyper pigmented spots): Hyper pigmentation is a common, usually harmless condition in which patches of skin become darker in color than normal surrounding skin.

Vyavāya: Copulation

Vyavāyi: It is an attribute of substances, which pervades all over the body initially and undergoes digestion later. It is embedded with sara guṇa (mobile).

Vyāyāma: Physical exercises

Vyūhana: Uplifting or raising up in order to remove

Yamaka bandha: Double bandage

Yamaka: The combination of any two of the best four oleating substances (sarpih, majjā, vasā and taila) is known as yamaka.

Yantra: Blunt instruments

Yāpya: The expression refers to diseases which are incurable but not unmanageable.

Yavāgū: It is a gruel prepared by boiling one part of powdered cereals like paddy, wheat, barley in 6 parts of water.

Yavaka: Small variety of barley

Yavaśūkaja: Yavakṣāra

Yogym: Suitable to the patient and diseases according the region and season

Yoni-vraṇa darśana yantra: Vaginal speculum

Yūṣa: Semisolid preparation obtained by boiling any type of pulse but without rice.

*

KRISHNA-PATI (CREATION OF UNIVERSE)

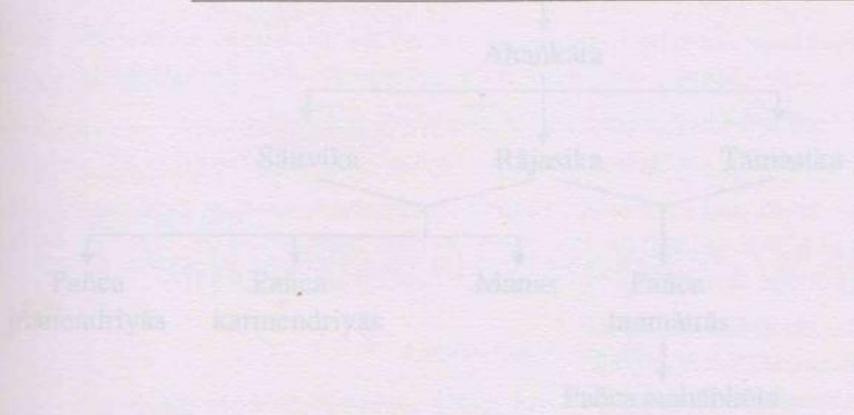
The word 'krishna' is derived from the *drishti*—*krishna drishti*, which means that he created, produced and tested. *Saptasati-karana* mentioned in Ayurveda is based on *Siddhanta* and *Vaidika* soterapeutics.

The word 'tattva' is used to denote the causative factors of the creation. According to *Niruktas* Sankara, the universe is created by twenty two (22×2) *tattwas* and mentioned that *prakrti* and *purusha* are the basic causative factors for the creation. Sankara also expressed the similar view.

Purusha prakrti *prakrti* is able to be creation-independent. When *prakrti* comes in contact with *purusha*, *prakrti* gets stimulated and united together and loses its balance, which leads to a variety of changes. These changes result in creation and the evolutionary process is as follows:

Creation of Universe

MAULIKA SIDDHĀNTA (BASIC PRINCIPLES)



According to the *Sankhya* philosophy everything in the universe looks upon as the result of the transformation within one primordial substance known as *prakrti*. The subject of the knowledge is called *guna* and the object of knowledge is *prakrti*. As *prakrti* is the primordial cause of the universe of everything excepting only soul, which is uncaused, and accounts for changes in physical, both matter and force, it is called *gunadhar*. All creation is the result of relationship established between these two. Still there is a unity which underlies this duality.

Sṛṣṭi-UTPATTI

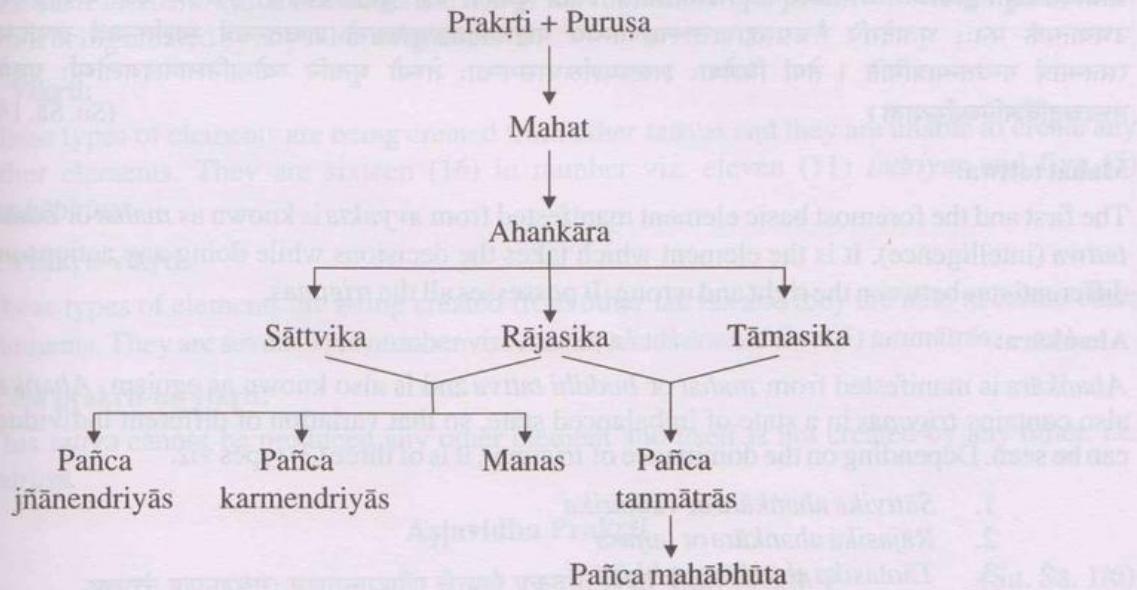
[CREATION OF UNIVERSE]

The word 'sṛṣṭi' is derived from the *dhātu*—'srji visarge', which means that is created, produced or manifested. *Sṛṣṭi-utpatti krama* mentioned in Ayurveda is based on *Sāṅkhya* and *Vaiśeṣika* philosophies.

The word 'tattwa' is used to denote the causative factors of the creation. According to *Sāṅkhya darśana*, the universe is created by twentyfive (25) tattwas and mentioned that *prakṛti* and *puruṣa* are the basic causative factors for the creation. Suśruta also expressed the similar opinion.

Neither *prakṛti* nor *puruṣa* is able to do creation independently. When *prakṛti* comes in contact with *puruṣa*, *prakṛti* gets stimulated and united together and loses its balance, which leads to a variety of changes. These changes result in creation and the evolutionary process is as follows.

Sṛṣṭi-utpatti krama



According to the *Sāṅkhya* philosophy everything in the universe looked upon as the result of the transformation within one primordial substance known as *prakṛti*. The subject of the knowledge is called *puruṣa* and the object of knowledge is *prakṛti*. As *prakṛti* is the primordial cause of the universe of everything excepting only soul, which is uncaused, and accounts for whatever is physical, both matter and force, it is called *pradhāna*. All creation is the result of a relationship established between these two. Still there is a unity which underlies this duality.

Synonyms of prakṛti:

1. *Pradhāna*: As it is the primordial substance for the creation.
2. *Avidyā*: Which is devoid of knowledge.
3. *Māyā*: Which causes for a variety of creation.
4. *Śakti*: Substratum for energy.
5. *Avyakta*: As the entire creation is concealed in it in a subtle form.

Avyakta:

सर्वभूतानां कारणमकारणं सत्त्वरजस्तमोलक्षणमष्टरूपमन्तिलस्य जगतः संभवेतुरव्यक्तं तदेकं बहूनां क्षेत्रज्ञानामधिष्ठानं समुद्र इवौदकानां भावानाम्। (Su. Śā. 1/3)

Avyakta is responsible for the creation of entire universe and is causeless for its manifestation, characterized by *triguṇas* viz. *sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas*, having eight forms (*avyakta*, *mahat*, *ahaṅkāra* and five (5) *tāmmātras*). It is one and one only and the substratum for numerous souls similar to an ocean, which is a substratum for many a number of aquatic mobile and immobile beings such as fish, lotus etc.

तस्मादव्यक्तान्महानुत्पद्यते तल्लिङ्गं एरा तल्लिङ्गाच्च महतस्तल्लक्षणं एवाहङ्कारं उत्पद्यते, स त्रिविधो वैकारिकस्तैजसो भूतादिरिति । तत्र वैकारिकादहङ्कारात्तैजससहायात्तल्लक्षणान्येवैकादशेन्द्रियाण्युत्पद्यन्ते तद्यथा—श्रोत्रत्वक्वचक्षुर्तिहायाणवाग्घस्तोपस्थपायुपादमनांसीति । तत्र पूर्वाणि पञ्च बुद्धीन्द्रियाणि, इतराणि पञ्च कर्मेन्द्रियाणि, उभयात्मकं मनः; भूतादेवपि तैजससहायात्तल्लक्षणान्येव पञ्चतन्मात्राण्युत्पद्यन्ते शब्दतन्मात्रां स्पर्शतन्मात्रां रूपतन्मात्रां रसतन्मात्रां गन्धतन्मात्रमिति । तेषां विशेषाः शब्दस्पर्शरूपरसगन्धाः तेभ्यो भूतानि व्योमानिलानलजलोर्व्यः एवमेषा तत्त्वचतुर्विंशतिव्याख्याता । (Su. Śā. 1/4)

Mahat tattwa:

The first and the foremost basic element manifested from *avyakta* is known as *mahat* or *buddhi tattwa* (intelligence). It is the element which takes the decisions while doing any actions and differentiates between the right and wrong. It possesses all the *triguṇas*.

Ahaṅkāra:

Ahaṅkāra is manifested from *mahat* or *buddhi tattva* and is also known as egoism. *Ahaṅkāra* also contains *triguṇas* in a state of imbalanced state, so that variation of different individuals can be seen. Depending on the dominance of *triguṇas*, it is of three (3) types viz.

1. *Sāttvika ahaṅkāra* or *vaikārika*
2. *Rājasika ahaṅkāra* or *taijasa*
3. *Tāmasika ahaṅkāra* or *bhūtādi*

Sāttvika ahaṅkāra with the initiation of *rājasika ahaṅkāra* leads to the formation of *ekādaśa indriyas* viz.

1. *Pañca jñānedriyās*—*srotendriya*, *twagindriya* (*sparśanendriya*), *cakṣurīndriya*, *rasanendriya* and *ghrāṇendriya*.
2. *Pañca karmendriyās*—*vāk*, *hasta*, *upasthā*, *pāyu* and *pāda*.
3. *Manas*.

- *Tāmasika ahaṅkāra* with the initiation of *rājasika ahaṅkāra* leads to the formation of:
 1. *Pañca tanmātrās* viz. *śabda tanmātrā*, *sparśa tanmātrā*, *rūpa tanmātrā*, *rasa tanmātrā* and *gandha tanmātrā*. These five (5) *tanmātrās* possess five *viśeṣa guṇas* and evolve;
 2. *Pañca mahābhūtas* viz. *ākāśa*, *vāyu*, *tejas*, *jala* and *pr̥thivī*.

In this way all the twentyfive (25) *tattvas* necessary for creation are evolved.

Classification of tattvas:

According to the *Sāṅkhya* philosophy, all the twentyfive (25) *tattvas* have been classified into four groups as under.

मूलप्रकृतिरविकृतिः महदाद्याः प्रकृतिविकृतयः सप्त ।
षोडशकस्तु विकारो न प्रकृतिर्विकृतिः पुरुषः ॥

1. <i>Prakṛti</i>	one (1)
2. <i>Vikṛti</i>	sixteen (16)
3. <i>Prakṛti-vikṛti</i>	seven (7)
4. <i>Na prakṛti-na vikṛti</i>	one (1)

1. Prakṛti:

The basic element which manifests the rest of *tattvas* is known as *prakṛti* or *mūla prakṛti*. But it is not being created by any other substance.

2. Vikṛti:

These types of elements are being created from other *tattvas* and they are unable to create any other elements. They are sixteen (16) in number viz. eleven (11) *indriyas* and five (5) *mahābhūtas*.

3. Prakṛti-vikṛti:

These types of elements are being created from other *tattvas* and they are able to create other elements. They are seven (7) in number viz. *mahat*, *ahaṅkāra* and five (5) *tanmātrās*.

4. Na prakṛti-na vikṛti:

This *tattva* cannot be produced any other element and itself is not created by any other. i.e. *puruṣa*.

Aṣṭavidha Prakṛti

अव्यक्तं महानहङ्कारः पञ्चतन्मात्राणि चेत्यष्टौ प्रकृतयः शेषाः षोडश विकाराः ।

(Su. Śā. 1/6)

“*Prakaroti-iti prakṛti*”

“*Tattvāntarotpādanatvarin prakṛtitwam*”

That which produces or creates other *tattvas* is known as *prakṛti*. Among twentyfour (24) *tattvas*; *avyakta*, *mahat*, *ahaṅkāra* and five (5) *tanmātrās* are called as *aṣṭavidha prakṛti* (causative source) and the rest of sixteen (16) are considered as *ṣoḍasha vikāra* (products).

Similarities & Dissimilarities between Prakṛti & Puruṣa

अत ऊर्ध्वं प्रकृतिपुरुषयोः साधर्म्यवैधर्म्ये व्याख्यास्यामः; तद्यथा—उभावप्यनादी उभावप्यनन्तौ उभावप्यलिङ्गौ उभावपि नित्यौ उभावप्यनपरौ उभौ च सर्वगताविति । एका तु प्रकृतिरचेतना त्रिगुणा बीजधर्मिणी प्रसवधर्मिण्य-मध्यस्थधर्मिणी चेति बहवस्तु पुरुषाश्वेतनावन्तोऽगुणा अबीजधर्माणोऽप्रसवधर्माणो मध्यस्थधर्माणश्वेति । (Su. Śā. 1/9)

Similarities between prakṛti & puruṣa:

1. *Ubhāvapyanādī*(उभावप्यनादी): Both *prakṛti* and *puruṣa* have no beginning.
2. *Ubhāvapyanantau*(उभावप्यनन्तौ): Both have no end.
3. *Ubhāvapylanīgau*(उभावप्यलिङ्गौ): Both are not having any form and any features.
4. *Ubhāvapinītyau*(उभावपि नित्यौ): Both *prakṛti* and *puruṣa* are eternal.
5. *Ubhāvapyanaparau* (उभावप्यनपरौ): Both are causeless and superior.
6. *Ubhau ca sarvagatāviti*(उभौ च सर्वगताविति): Both are omnipresent.

S. No.	Prakṛti	Puruṣa
1.	एका तु प्रकृतिः <i>Prakṛti</i> is one	बहवस्तु पुरुषाः <i>Puruṣa</i> is numerous
2.	अचेतनाः Non sentient/Inert	चेतनावन्तः Sentient/Active
3.	त्रिगुणा Possessing <i>triguṇas</i>	अगुणा Doesn't possess any <i>guṇas</i>
4.	बीजधर्मिणी Creative/Possessing the entire universe in it in a subtle form	अबीजधर्मणः Doesn't possess this quality
5.	प्रसवधर्मिण्यः Productive nature	अप्रसवधर्मणः Doesn't possess this quality
6.	अमध्यस्थधर्मिणी Non-neutral/Non indifferent	मध्यस्थधर्मणः Neutral/Indifferent

*

TANTRAYUKTI-VICĀRA

[MAJOR DEVICES]

In the good olden days each and every scientific work, irrespective of its subject matter was written in accordance with *Tantrayuktis* or the Major Devices. The scientific works written in brief need not contain all the 36 major devices. In other words the number of devices in a scientific treatise depends upon the volume of subject matter.

The word *tantryukti* comprises two constituents viz. *tantra* and *yukti*. *Tantra* means a science or scientific treatise and *yukti* means a device. Thus *tantryukti* means devices of composing a scientific treatise. It is not possible to compose a scientific work without *Tantrayuktis* or major devices.

These devices are 32 in number according to Kauṭilya and Suśruta (Uttaratantra 65th chapter), whereas Maharṣi Caraka and Vāgbhaṭa enumerated the number of *Tantrayuktis* as 36, in the 12th chapter of Siddhīsthāna of Caraka Saṁhitā and 50th chapter of Uttaratantra respectively. Bhaṭṭāra Haricandra, the commentator on Caraka Saṁhitā has recognized four (4) more devices and enumerated 40 *Tantrayuktis*.

Enumeration of *Tantrayuktis*:

षड्प्रिंशता विचित्राभिर्भूषितं तन्त्रयुक्तिभिः ।
 तत्राधिकरणं योगो हेत्वर्थोऽर्थः पदस्य च ॥
 प्रदेशोद्देशनिर्देशवाक्यशेषाः प्रयोजनम् ।
 उपदेशापदेशातिदेशार्थापत्तिनिर्णयाः ॥
 प्रसङ्गैकान्तनैकान्ताः सापवर्गो विपर्ययः ।
 पूर्वपक्षविधानानुमतव्याख्यानसंशयाः ॥
 अतीतानागतावेक्षास्वसंज्ञोद्घासमुच्चयाः ।
 निर्दर्शनं निर्वर्चनं संनियोगो विकल्पनम् ॥
 प्रत्युत्सारस्तथोद्धारः संभवस्तन्त्रयुक्तयः ।

(C. S. Siddhi 12/41-45)

1. <i>Adhikaraṇa</i>	11. <i>Apadeśa</i>	21. <i>Vidhāna</i>	30. <i>Nidarśana</i>
2. <i>Yoga</i>	12. <i>Atideśa</i>	22. <i>Anumata</i>	31. <i>Nirvacana</i>
3. <i>Hetvartha</i>	13. <i>Arthāpatti</i>	23. <i>Vyākhyāna</i>	32. <i>Sanniyoga</i>
4. <i>Padārtha</i>	14. <i>Nirṇaya</i>	24. <i>Samśaya</i>	33. <i>Vikalpa</i>
5. <i>Pradeśa</i>	15. <i>Prasaṅga</i>	25. <i>Atītāvekṣaṇa</i> or <i>Atikrāntāvekṣaṇa</i>	34. <i>Pratyutsāra</i>
6. <i>Uddeśa</i>	16. <i>Ekānta</i>	26. <i>Anāgatāvekṣaṇa</i>	35. <i>Uddhāra</i>
7. <i>Nirdeśa</i>	17. <i>Anekānta</i>	27. <i>Swasamījñā</i>	36. <i>Sambhava</i>
8. <i>Vākyāśeṣa</i>	18. <i>Apavarga</i>	28. <i>Ūhya</i>	
9. <i>Prayojana</i>	19. <i>Viparyaya</i>	29. <i>Samuccaya</i>	
10. <i>Upadeśa</i>	20. <i>Pūrvapakṣa</i>		

Sāstra Lakṣaṇa/Tantra Gunā
 (The Excellences of a Scientific Treatise)

सुमहद्याशस्त्रिव्यं रपुरुषासेवितमर्थबहुलमाप्तजनपूजितं त्रिविधशिष्यबुद्धिहितमपगतपुनरुक्तदोषमार्घं सुप्रणीत-
 सूत्रभाष्यसंग्रहक्रमं स्वाधारमनवपतितशब्दमकृष्टशब्दं पुष्कलाभिधानं क्रमागतार्थमर्थतत्त्वविनिश्चयप्रधानं संगतार्थमसंकुल-
 प्रकरणमाशुप्रबोधकं लक्षणवच्चोदाहरणवच्च तदभिप्रपद्येत शास्त्रम् । शास्त्रं ह्येवंविधममल इवादित्यस्तमो विध्यूय
 प्रकाशयति सर्वम् ।

1. Sumahadyaśaswī: It is the best scientific work which is being considered as an authoritative work and selected by the eminent scholars for reference to clarify their doubts.
2. Dhīrapuruṣāsevitam: It is a treatise to keep with them by highly intellectuals to their own learning, teaching, researching, thinking and writing.
3. Arthabahulam: A treatise which incorporates traditional views along with plentiful meanings and having a scope for the development of science.
4. Āptajanapūjitam: A treatise which is being praised by authorities and having high esteem by learned persons as it is an authentic and convinced with academic values.
5. Trividhaśisyabuddhihitam: A treatise which will be pleased by all the three types of intellectuals viz. highly intellectual, mediocre and ordinary.
6. Apagatapunaruktadoṣam: A treatise which doesn't contain reputation of topics or sub-topics.
7. Ārṣam: A treatise which is composed by *r̥sis*.
8. Supraṇīta-sūtrabhāṣya-saṅgraha-kramam: It is a treatise in which aphorisms, explanations and commentaries are composed in an orderly manner.
9. Swādhāram: It is a treatise, which is self-explanatory and doesn't require any others support to understand the subject matter.
10. Anavapatitaśabdam: It is a treatise which doesn't contain unconventional and obsolete words.
11. Akaṣṭaśabdam: It is a treatise which is devoid of words which are difficult, hard to understand and painful to ears.
12. Puṣkalābhidhānam: It is a treatise which is endowed with numerous technical terms, their synonyms, and explanation of scientific words, concepts as well as theories.
13. Kramāgatārtham: It is a treatise in which the topics are organized in a specific order and discussed in the same manner throughout the text.
14. Arthatattwaviścayapradhānam: It is a treatise which contains firm exposition of a given topic without ambiguity.
15. Saṅgatārtham: It is a treatise in which the subject matter is properly connected and is relevant.

16. Asaṅkulaprakaraṇam: It is a treatise which doesn't contain mutually contradictory chapters, sections or divisions.
17. Āśuprabodhakam: It is a treatise which gives adequate knowledge rapidly.
18. Lakṣaṇavat: It is a treatise which is embedded with rich in definitions and captions.
19. Udāharanavat: It is a treatise which contains adequate examples, similes and illustrations.

Tantra Doṣa

(The Faults or Demerits of a Scientific Treatise)

Arunadatta has enumerated the following 15 types of *tantra doṣas*:

तथा तन्त्रदोषैः पञ्चदशभिरप्रसिद्धशब्दादिभिर्वर्जितम् । (तद्यथा—) 1. अप्रसिद्धशब्दम् 2. दुःप्रणीतम्, 3. असङ्गतार्थम्, 4. असुखारोहि, 5. विरुद्धम्, 6. अतिविस्तृतम्, 7. अतिसंक्षिप्तम्, 8. अप्रयोजनम्, 9. विरुद्धम्, 10. भिन्नक्रमम्, 11. संदिग्धम्, 12. निःप्रमाणकम्, 13. असमाप्तार्थम्, 14 अपा(न)र्थकम्, 14. व्याहतम् (इति) ।

- | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Aprasiddha śabdam | 6. Ativistr̄tam | 11. Punaruktam |
| 2. Duḥprāṇītam | 7. Atisaṅkṣiptam | 12. Nihpramāṇakam |
| 3. Asaṅgatārtham | 8. Aprayojanam | 13. Asamāptārtham |
| 4. Asukhārohi padam | 9. Bhinnakramam | 14. Apā(na)rthakam |
| 5. Viruddham | 10. Sandigdham | 15. Vyāhatam |

1. Aprasiddha śabdam:

अप्रसिद्ध शब्दं नाम—यल्लोके नातीव प्रसिद्धम् ।

Usage of uncommon, infrequent, unusual and obsolete words in a treatise is known as *aprasiddha śabdam*.

Ex: '*udakyāgamanalakṣaṇam-asukhānām*'..... intercourse with a lady during menstrual period is not good for health. In this statement *udakyā* means menstrual lady, which is unpopular and not frequently used.

S. No.	Uncommon/Infrequently used words	Meaning
1.	<i>Aksīva</i> or <i>Vasira</i>	<i>Sāmudra lavaṇa</i> or common salt
2.	<i>Bhadra</i>	<i>Vṛṣabha</i> (bull)
3.	<i>Arva</i>	<i>Aśwa</i> (horse)

2. Duḥprāṇītam:

दुःप्रणीतं नाम—सूत्रभाष्यप्रयोजनरहितम् ।

It is treatise which is badly composed without aphorisms, commentary and devoid of purpose.

3. Asaṅgatārtham:

असङ्गतार्थं नाम—यत्सूत्रेणासंबद्धम् ।

It is a treatise which is composed with disconnected, inconsistent words or mutually unattached *sūtras* to leave topics with unassociated is known as *asaṅgatārtham*.

4. Asukhārohi padam:

असुखारोहि पदं नाम—यत्पदसन्निवेशस्य दुःखेनोच्चार्यते चर्कीतादिप्रायम् ।

It is a treatise which is composed with the words that are hard to pronounce and unpleasant to hear.

5. Viruddham:

विरुद्धं नाम—यत् दृष्टान्तसिद्धान्तसमयैर्विरुद्धम् ।

It is a treatise which is composed with inconsistent with an illustration or contrary to an accepted doctrine or against a rule is said to suffer from *viruddha tantra doṣa*. It is of 3 types viz.

- a) Drṣṭānta viruddha: Quoting contradictory examples or similes is known as *drṣṭānta viruddha*.

Ex.: “*ātma* is indestructible as it is not created like pot”....in this statement pot given as example as not created can be considered as *drṣṭānta viruddha*. As pot is artificial and is contrary to other objects.

- b) Siddhānta viruddha: Contrary to an established or accepted doctrine or principle is known as *siddhānta viruddha*.

Ex.: stating *madhura*, *amla* and *lavaṇa rasa dravyas* aggravates *vāta* and pacifies *kapha*.

- c) Samaya viruddha: Violation of rules prescribed by ancient seers is known as *samaya viruddha*.

Ex.: certain customs should be followed since ages for no proper reasoning like not to cut hair on Fridays, don't pull out grass, don't clap with stones.

6. Ativisṛtam:

अतिविसृतं नाम—तदाऽतिविस्तृतत्वं स्यात् ।

It is a treatise which is composed with unnecessary elaboration or discussion beyond a reasonably acceptable limit is known as *ativisṛta tantra doṣa*.

Ex.: while talking about *madhura skandha* giving detailed description of all the substances pertaining to *madhura skandha*, rich in sweetness and issuing from sweetness etc.

7. Atisaṅkṣiptam:

अतिसंक्षिप्तं नाम—यथायोगशतकप्रायम् ।

It is a treatise in which description or discussion is composed with inadequately understandable and is likely to be ambiguous.

Ex.: simply stating *triskandha* means *hetu*, *linga* and *ouṣadha* is not sufficient to understand and which requires explanation.

8. Aprayojanam:

अप्रयोजनं नाम—न कश्चिदनुतिष्ठेदिति ।

It is a treatise which is composed without mentioning the aim, purpose and utility of that scientific work is known as *aprayojanam*.

Ex.: “*prayojanam cāsyā swasthasya swāsthya rakṣaṇam āturasya vikāra praśamanam*”— maintenance of positive health in a healthy individual and giving treatment to the diseased is the purpose of Ayurveda. Similarly every scientific work should mention the purpose or utility of its contents. If there is no purpose for any knowledge it is considered useless.

9. Bhinnakramam:

भिन्नक्रमं नाम—यथा पूर्वं येनानुक्रमेणोक्तं न तेनैव निर्दिश्यते प्रयोजनान्तरसम्भवोऽपि ।

It is a treatise which is composed without adhering to the serial order in which the items are mentioned previously without any valid reason. In other words violation of the sequence of the items mentioned without any specific purpose.

Ex.: “*śārīrajānāma doṣāṇām krameṇa paramouṣadham vastirvireko vamanam*” (A.H.Su. I)— here the sequence of *śārīrika doṣas* should be taken as *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* only and line of treatment is *vasti*, *virecana* and *vamana* respectively. In the entire text the order of mentioning of *tridoṣas* should be *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* only and should not be altered without any specific reason.

10. Sandigdham:

सन्दिग्धं नाम—उभयत्र हेत्वाभासपरिग्रहात् संशयः ।

It is a treatise which is composed with doubtful, ambiguous and confused statements is known as *sandigdha tantra doṣa*. Such treatises become unworthy if the contents are not based on sound logical reasoning.

Ex.: *akālamṛtyu* (untimely death).

11. Punaruktam:

पुनरुक्तं नाम—योर्थं उक्तोऽपि पुनरुच्यते ।

It is a treatise which is composed with the descriptions and discussions something over and over again. If the same subject matter is repeated again and again the reader gets bored and do at times will be doubtful about the validity of such descriptions. Hence an ideal scientific work should be devoid of *punarukta tantra doṣa*.

12. Niṣpramāṇam:

निष्प्रमाणं नाम—प्रमाणरहितं वाक्यम् ।

It is a treatise which is composed without any authority or discussed something baselessly.

13. Asamāptyartham:

असमाप्त्यर्थं नाम—अत्र तावदुच्यते । परतोऽपि चेदित्येतत्तः समाप्तार्थत्वात्र ज्ञायते किमनेन कार्यमिति ।

It is a treatise which is composed with an incomplete discussion and abruptly closes without any conclusion. Such discussions will not provide valid knowledge.

14. Apārthakam/Anarthakam:

It is a treatise which is composed with senseless meanings.

15. Vyāhatam:

व्याहतं नाम—पूर्वया वाक्ययुक्त्याऽपरा व्याहन्यते अपरया पूर्वा वा ।

It is a treatise which is composed with mutually contradictory statements such as the earlier statements are opposed by the later ones and vice versa.

Ex.: earlier statement of *mustādi kaśāya vasti* relieves *prameha* is opposed by the later one by quoting *kaśāya vasti* is contraindicated in *prameha*.

Compositional Devices Other than Tantrayuktis

Aruṇadatta, the commentator of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya has dealt in detail, a large number of devices other than *tantrayuktis* such as 15 *vyākhyās*, 7 *kalpanās*, 20 or 21 *āśrayas* and 17 *tācchīlyas*.

Vyākhyā (Explanation):

व्याख्या अपि तन्त्रस्य गुणः । ताभिरपि तन्त्रमलंक्रियते । ताश्च पञ्चदशप्रकाराः । तद्यथा—पिण्डपदपदार्थाधिकरण-प्रकरणार्थकृच्छ्रफलोच्चितकन्यासप्रयोजनानुलोमप्रतिलोमातिसूत्रसमस्तव्याख्याः ।

An explanation, or exposition or commentary is also an essential attribute of a scientific treatise. These explanations will be definitely helpful to the reader to understand the complete knowledge of a scientific work as well as the original idea of the author. They are 15 in number.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Piṇḍa vyākhyā</i> | 6. <i>Artha vyākhyā</i> | 11. <i>Prayojana vyākhyā</i> |
| 2. <i>Pada vyākhyā</i> | 7. <i>Kṛcchra vyākhyā</i> | 12. <i>Anuloma vyākhyā</i> |
| 3. <i>Padārtha vyākhyā</i> | 8. <i>Phala vyākhyā</i> | 13. <i>Pratilostra vyākhyā</i> |
| 4. <i>Adhikarana vyākhyā</i> | 9. <i>Uccitaka vyākhyā</i> | 14. <i>Sūtra vyākhyā</i> |
| 5. <i>Prakaraṇa vyākhyā</i> | 10. <i>Nyāsa vyākhyā</i> | 15. <i>Samasta vyākhyā</i> |

1. Piṇḍa vyākhyā:

तत्र पिण्डव्याख्य नाम—सङ्घेपतया सूत्रस्त्रेणाध्यायादीनां व्याख्या । यथा (ह. शा. अ. 5/4)—

“रूपेन्द्रियस्वरच्छाया-प्रतिच्छायाक्रियादिपु ।

अन्येष्वपि च भावेषु प्राकृतेष्वनिमित्ततः ॥

विकृतिर्या समासेन रिष्टं तदिति लक्ष्येत् ।”
इत्यनेन सूत्रेण सकलरिष्टाध्यायसमाप्त उत्तः ।

Brief or summarized explanation of the chapters of the entire compendium in the form of *sūtra* is known as *piṇḍa vyākhyā*.

Ex.: by quoting the *sūtra*—“*rūpendriya-swaracchāyā-praiticchāyā-kriyādiṣu....*” gives us the complete information about *ariṣṭa lakṣaṇa*.

Similarly by quoting the *sūtra*—“*kāyabālagrahordhwāṅga....*” information about *astāṅgas* of Ayurveda is known.

2. Pada vyākhyā:

पदव्याख्या नाम—यत्पदानां छेदं कृत्वोच्चारणम् । यथा (ह.सू.अ. 1)—“अथ अतः आयुष्कामीयं अध्यायं वि आ ख्यास्यामः ।” इति सप्तपदं सूत्रं पूर्वं व्याख्यातम् ।

Splitting each and every word used in a *sūtra* by breaking up the *sandhi* in an appropriate manner is known as *pada vyākhyā* and it contains 3 components viz. (1) *sandhi-viccheda*, (2) *saṁasa-vigraha* and (3) *vyutpatti-kathana* to enable the reader to understand the text thoroughly.

Ex: *atha+ataḥ+āyuṣkāmīyam+adhyāyam+vi+ā+khyāsyāmaḥ*.

3. Padārtha vyākhyā:

पदार्थव्याख्या नाम—तेषामेव पदानां विवरणम् । यथा—अथशब्द आनन्तर्ये अधिकारे वा, अतःशब्दो हेतावित्यादि ।

Explanation of each word split in *pada vyākhyā* with exact meaning is known as *padārtha vyākhyā*.

Ex.: *atha* means after that chapter, *āyu* means life, *kāmaya* means desire.

4. Adhikarana vyākhyā:

अधिकरणव्याख्या नाम—यद्वस्तुप्रकृतमारभ्य तदनुषङ्गेण व्याख्यानमारभ्यते । यथा (ह.सू.अ. 2)—“अथातो दिनचर्याध्यायं व्याख्यास्यामः ।” इति प्रस्तुत्य “ब्राह्मे मुहूर्तं उत्तिष्ठेत्स्वस्थो रक्षार्थमायुषः ।” इत्यादिना सैव दिनचर्या विवृत्य व्याख्यायते सविस्तरा ।

A detailed description along with illustrations of the topic or subject take up for consideration is known as *adhikarana vyākhyā*.

Ex.: *athāto dinacaryādhyaṁ vyākhyāsyāmaḥ*—communicates the detailed description of daily regimen starts with wakening up from the bed.

5. Prakaraṇa vyākhyā:

प्रकरणव्याख्या नाम—यस्मिन्नर्थे सूत्रे वा प्रकृतेनाप्रकृतं साध्यते, यथा—त्रिलक्षणाद्ये चूर्णे गुणानुत्तवाऽभ्याख्ये एवमाह ‘समानं पूर्वेण’ इति । तत्र समानगुणता व्याख्याता ।

To accomplish an incidental topic by means of the one already discussed.

Ex.: knowing the utility of *trilavaṇādya cūrṇa* by means of the action of *abhayā* as both are possessing similar attributes.

6. Artha vyākhyā:

अर्थव्याख्या नाम—यत्र प्रकरणे सूत्रे वा स्वभावस्योपवर्णनं क्रियते । तद्यथा—प्रकृतिरुच्यते स्वभावः । स पुनराहारौषधद्रव्याणां स्वाभाविको गुर्वादिगुणयोगः । तद्यथा—माषमुद्रयोः सूकरैणयोश्च ।

Description of the normal, natural state of a substance in detail is known as *artha vyākhyā*.

Ex.: *gurutwa* and *laghutva* of *māṣa* and *mudga* are natural.

7. Kṛcchra vyākhyā:

कृच्छ्रव्याख्या नाम—यत्र लेशत उक्तानामविस्पष्टानां प्रकरणे सूत्रे वा अर्थानां यत्तत उद्धावनं क्रियते ।

तद्यथा (ह.सू.अ. 2/30)—“अनुयायात्प्रतिपदं सर्वधर्मेषु मध्यमाम् ।”

इति लेशतो ब्रुवाणः शास्त्रकारः सर्वेषु हेतुलिङ्गौषधादिषु मध्यमा प्रतिपदाश्रयणीयेति सूचयति ।

Elaborate description of the topic mentioned briefly in original *sūtra* is known as *kṛcchra vyākhyā*.

8. Phala vyākhyā:

फलव्याख्या नाम—यत्र वस्तुनि बहुष्वनिश्चितार्थेष्वेकीयमतेषु प्रस्तुतेषु वस्तु सारभूतं स्वमतं स्वर्मर्थमुपनिषिद्ध्यैकीयमतानि तस्मिन्नेव स्वपतेऽन्तर्भावं नयति ।

To express one's own view by including the divergent views of the others about the same subject is known as *phala vyākhyā*.

9. Uccitaka vyākhyā:

उच्चितव्याख्या नाम—यस्मिन् सूत्रे निर्दर्शनभूतान्युदाहरणानि तन्त्रान्तःसमाकृष्यार्थः शस्यते ।

To explain the meaning drawn from the example given to illustrate a concept in a *sūtra* is known as *uccitaka vyākhyā*.

10. Nyāsa vyākhyā:

न्यासव्याख्या नाम—यस्मिन्नेत्रिकारे वर्तमाने तेनाधिकरणार्थे सहितं सम्बन्धमभिवीक्ष्यान्यस्यर्थे विनिष्क्रियते ।

To raise a doubt about the meaning initially and gets clarified at a later stage by means of supporting references is known as *nyāsa vyākhyā*.

11. Prayojana vyākhyā:

प्रयोजनव्याख्या नाम—यत्सूत्रमभिधीयमानं स्वार्थस्य निष्पत्तौ निमित्तभावमुपैति ।

Explaining the specific purpose of the thought or concept expressed in the *sūtra* is known as *prayojana vyākhyā*.

12. Anuloma vyākhyā:

Explanation is according to the serial order of a mention of the items in *sūtra* is known as *anuloma vyākhyā*.

13. Pratiloma vyākhyā:

Explanation by violating the serial order of a mention of the items in *sūtra* is known as *pratiloma vyākhyā*.

14. Sūtra vyākhyā:

If the commentary gives the explanation of the *sūtras* one by one it is known as *sūtra vyākhyā*.

15. Samasta vyākhyā:

Exceptional commentary on the entire compendium is known as *samasta vyākhyā*.

KALPANĀS

Saptavidha Kalpanās

(Seven (7) Minor Devices)

After the enumeration of *tantrayuktis*; 7 types of minor devices known as *saptavidha kalpanās* are described by Aruṇadatta.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Pradhānasya kalpanā</i> | 4. <i>Leśa kalpanā</i> | 7. <i>Ājñā kalpanā</i> |
| 2. <i>Pradhānenā kalpanā</i> | 5. <i>Vidyā kalpanā</i> | |
| 3. <i>Guṇa kalpanā</i> | 6. <i>Bhakṣya kalpanā</i> | |

1. Pradhānasya kalpanā:

प्रधान कल्पना द्विधा—प्रधानस्य कल्पना प्रधानेन वा कल्पना प्रधानकल्पना।

It is also known as *para kalpanā*. Giving importance to the chief characteristic feature of the best one of the group of substances can be considered as *pradhānasya kalpanā*.

Ex.:

S.No.	Chief characteristic feature	Best one among the group
1.	Snehana	Gṛhṭa
2.	Jīvanīya	Kṣīra
3.	Sandhānakara	Madhu

*Though *taila* and *toya* are possessing *snehana* and *jīvanīya* properties respectively *ghṛta* and *kṣīra* can be considered as the best in their corresponding groups.

2. Pradhānenā kalpanā:

Giving importance to the chief substance of that particular group is known as *pradhānenā kalpanā*.

Ex.: describing milk initially while enumerating *kṣīra varga*. Mentioning the names of *gaṇas* with the name of the chief substance of that group viz. *pippalyādi gaṇa*, *vidāryādi gaṇa*, *surasādi gaṇa* etc.

3. Guṇa kalpanā:

गुणकल्पना नाम—येन धर्मेणोपेतोऽर्थः प्रयुज्यमानः समर्थो भवति । तेन धर्मेण युक्तस्य तस्यासाकगुणोऽपि गुर्वादिष्वपाठाद्बृण इति कल्प्यते ।

Certain words are possessing general meanings as well as technical meanings. Taking general sense into consideration instead of technical meaning is known as *guṇa kalpanā*.

Ex.: though the attributes of *cikitsā catuśpāda* cannot be considered as *guṇas* technically, those 16 are known as *guṇas* as a general sense.

Similarly the word *guṇa* means virtue in general sense and quality in a technical sense. Taking the general meaning virtue into consideration is known as *guṇa kalpanā*.

4. Leśa kalpanā:

लेशकल्पना नाम—अनुपदिष्टस्य विधे: कण्ठपाठेन यत् किंचित् सूत्रावयवान्तरमाश्रित्यार्थः कल्प्यते ।

To imagine by means of an inference the subject matter which was not expressed by the author properly is known as *leśa kalpanā*. This *kalpanā* corresponds to *ūhya tantrayukti*.

Ex.: though *kāla* and *akālamītyu* are not specifically described in most of the Ayurvedic treatises, it can be understood by means of *ariṣṭa lakṣaṇa* and *rasāyana* therapy.

5. Vidyā kalpanā:

विद्याकल्पना नाम—यथा सर्वविद्यानुगतार्थनिर्देशे शास्त्रकारस्य सर्वविद्यास्थानानुप्रवेश इह शास्त्रे हित इति वचनाद्विनाऽपीच्यते ।

To formulate an idea about the author's familiarity with other branches of science by means of the references quoted by him. In other words to make an assessment of the authors interdisciplinary study is known as *vidyā kalpanā*. The concept of interdisciplinary study was known to the ancient Indian scholars and the creative authors did actually put it into practice.

6. Bhakṣya kalpanā:

भक्ष्यकल्पना नाम—एतत्तदमृतं साक्षात् ।

Bhakṣya means something eatable or usable. Here in this context it is used in the sense of utility or adoption. It is also known as *bhakti kalpanā*. In short the eatable substances are utilized to explain scientific concepts.

Ex.: the science of Ayurveda is compared with Nectar.

7. Ājñā kalpanā:

आज्ञाकल्पना नाम—यस्यानुष्ठाने हेतुः सम्यगवन्तुं न शक्यः केवलमाप्तवचनं प्रमाणीकृत्यानुष्ठीयते ।

Ājñā kalpanā is the command or recommendation of a learned person regarding the code of conduct to which no specific reasoning is required.

Ex.: entire *sadvṛtta* comes under this *kalpanā*.

TĀCCHILYA

Saptadaśa Tācchilya

(Seventeen (17) Minor Devices)

The word '*tat*' means 'that' and '*śila*' means 'like'. Hence *tācchilya* means like that. Usage of similar words, similar meanings of an object also stand for *tācchilya*. Aruṇadatta considered

the *tācchīlya* to be an inevitable device of scientific writing and enumerated the following 17 types.

सप्तदश ताच्छील्यादी(नी)त्युक्तम् । तद्यथा— 1. ताच्छील्यम्, 2. अवयवः, 3. विकारः, 4. सामीप्यम्, 5. पूर्यस्त्वम्, 6. प्रकारः, 7. गुणिगुणविभवः, 8. संसक्तता, 9. तद्धर्मता, 10. स्थानम्, 11. तादर्थ्यम्, 12. साहचर्यम्, 13. कर्म, 14. गुणनिमित्तता, 15. चेष्टानिमित्तता, 16. मूलसंज्ञा, 17. तात्स्थ्यम् इति ।

1. <i>Tācchīlya</i>	7. <i>Guṇiguṇa-vibhava</i>	13. <i>Karma</i>
2. <i>Avayava</i>	8. <i>Samsaktatā</i>	14. <i>Guṇa-nimittata</i>
3. <i>Vikāra</i>	9. <i>Taddharmatā</i>	15. <i>Ceṣṭā-nimittata</i>
4. <i>Sāmīpya</i>	10. <i>Sthāna</i>	16. <i>Mūlasamījnā</i>
5. <i>Bhūyastwa</i>	11. <i>Tadarthyā</i>	17. <i>Tātsthyaṁ</i>
6. <i>Prakāra</i>	12. <i>Sāhacarya</i>	

1. *Tācchīlya*:

ताच्छील्यं नाम—यत्केनचिदेवं धर्मसादृश्येन युक्तो भावस्ताच्छील्यमुच्यते ।

Similarity of one or more qualities between two objects is known as *tācchīlya*.

Ex.: a person in sleep and the body part affected with numbness do not have the sensation of environment. Here in the above example, loss of sensation is the common property between the person and affected body part.

2. *Avayava*:

अवयवो नाम—यत्रैकदेशोदाहरणे क्रियमाणेऽनुकूलोऽन्योऽपि तज्जातीयकोऽर्थो लभ्यते ।

Inferring the unspoken statements through the expressed ones is known as *avayava tācchīlya*.

Ex.:

Expressed statement—a person gets back to his normal health when *doṣas* come to normalcy through *laṅghana*.

Unspoken statement—if *doṣas* don't come to normalcy or *laṅghana* is not performed the person cannot be free from the diseased state.

* *Avayava tācchīlya* can be included or can be considered as *arthāpatti tantrayukti*.

3. *Vikāra*:

विकारो नाम—विपरीतक्रिया । यथा विकारसंज्ञ्या प्रकृतिरपि लभ्यते । प्रकृतिसंज्ञ्या च विकारः ।

Vikāra means *viparīta-kriyā*, the opposite action. Use of the same nomenclature to those substances both in natural and unnatural forms is known as *vikāra tācchīlya*.

Ex.: in general the word '*sāka*' is used for the vegetables in their natural state. The same word is used even after it is cooked and lost its natural form.

4. *Sāmīpya*:

Proximity or closeness in qualities of different substances is known as *sāmīpya*.

Ex.: *sneha guṇa* is the similar attribute of all the oleating substances.

5. Bhūyastwa:

भूयस्त्वं नाम—यदेकस्मिन् वर्तमानमाधिक्येन क्वचिल्लभ्यते ।

Describing the abundance and plenteous of something. Giving importance to the predominant quality of a substance is also known as *bhūyastwa*.

Ex.: salt increases the taste of the food (though other substances or tastes increase the food taste, salt is predominantly used for the purpose).

6. Prakāra:

प्रकारो नाम—यो यस्य समानधर्मा स तस्य प्रकारः ।

Mentioning of the substances used similar in nature or same kind is known as *prakāra*.

Ex.: during the process of emesis, *eranda-nāla* will be helpful for tickling the throat to induce the bouts. There is no hard and fast rule to use only *eranda-nāla* for that purpose and can be used any other stems having similar nature.

7. Guṇiguṇa vibhava:

गुणगुणिविभवो नाम—क्वचित् गुणानि गुणशब्दे नोक्तानि । गुणश्च गुणिवद्यथा ।

A quality (*guṇa*) being expressed as a substance (*guṇī*) and vice versa is known as *guṇaguṇī vibhava*.

Ex.: *pārthiva* (*agni*) digests *pārthiva dravyas*. In general sense *pārthiva* is a *guṇa*. But here it is used to express the substance *agni*.

8. Saṁsaktatā:

संसक्तता नाम—यदेकस्य बहुभिः सम्बन्धः । यथा विद्यमानेष्वपि तत्रान्येषु सम्बन्धेषु तस्यैव व्यपदेशः क्रियते ।

To group a substance under a particular class in spite of having features of some other class due to its intimate relationship is known as *saṁsaktatā*.

Ex.: honey is grouped under *madhura varga* in spite of possessing *kaśaya rasa*. It is because of the predominance of sweet taste of honey.

9. Taddharmatā:

तद्वर्मतानामन्येन तथाभूतं स तद्वर्मतामासाद्य दर्शनात्तमेवाख्यां लभते ।

To compare the substances possessing similar quality, nature and action is known as *taddharmatā*. It is similar to *upamāna*.

Ex.: comparing unskilled physician with the envoy of death (Yama).

Utilization of *nimbawak* in place of *madanaphala* for emesis as both are having similar action.

10. Sthāna:

स्थानं नाम—यत्र स्थानिना स्थानं स्थानेन वा स्थानी व्यपदिश्यते ।

To speak of *sthāna* (the residence) of the one that resides (*sthānī*) and vice versa is known as *sthāna tāccchilya*. In other words it is nothing but expressing one for the other. By naming either *sthāna* or *sthānī* the second one also can be understood.

Ex.: *jihwā* tastes *rasas*. Actually *rasanendriya* which resides in *jihwā* is responsible for taste. Either by saying *jihwā* or *rasanendriya* it can be known what is happening.

11. Tādarthyā:

तादर्थं नाम—यत्प्रयोजनार्थं प्रवर्तते यो भावस्तेनैव व्यपदिश्यते ।

Every substance possesses a specific action. To name the substance after the purpose for which it is used is known as *tādarthyā*.

Ex.: *madanaphala* and other substances possess *chardana* or emetic action. By designating such substances as *chardanāni* is *tādarthyā*.

12. Sāhacarya:

साहचर्यं नाम—यो येन नित्यं सम्बन्धं उपलभ्यते, स तस्मात् सम्बन्धात्तमेव सम्बन्धशब्दं लभते ।

Constant association and intimate relationship is known as *sāhacarya*.

Ex.: knowledge of fire by seeing the smoke as those are closely associated.

13. Karma:

कर्म नाम—यत्र कर्म कर्मेति चोपचर्यते ।

To speak of inaction as an action or an absence as presence is known as *karma tāccchilya*.

Ex.: for instance in a sentence it is spoken as the seers went into meditation. Here meditation, the state of leaving all activities or a state of inaction is being talked as an action.

14. Guṇa-nimittatā:

गुणनिमित्तं नाम—यत्कस्य विभूतिः प्रशंसादिका ख्याप्यते ।

Designating or to name something after a praiseworthy quality in it. In other words admiring a substance by its virtues is known as *guṇa-nimittatā tāccchilya*.

Ex.: observance of celibacy helps one to achieve righteousness, reputation or respect, longevity and utmost purity. Taking this into account if stated that *brahmacharya* itself is *dharmya*, *yaśasya*, *āyuṣya* etc., it is considered as the usage of *guṇa-nimittatā tāccchilya*.

15. Ceṣṭā-nimittatā:

चेष्टानिमित्तं नाम—यस्मिन्नाममात्रं क्रियया भवति भावस्य ।

Comparing two substances with their similarity in action and not by their qualities is known as *ceṣṭā-nimittatā tāccchilya*.

Ex.: as knowledge shines like a lamp. Here the knowledge and the lamp are compared—as they are having similarity in action i.e. throwing away the darkness or ignorance.

16. Mūla-samjñā:

मूलसंज्ञा नाम—या लोकेऽन्यस्मिन्नर्थे प्रसिद्धा तन्त्रे चान्यस्मिन् (अर्थे) निवेशिता ।

Make use of certain words in their technical meaning in the scientific treatises rather than general sense is known as *mūla-samjñā tācchīlya*.

Ex.: the technical meaning of *rūpa* in Ayurveda is symptoms of a disease condition, whereas in general sense it is known as shape, color, beauty etc.

17. Tātsthyaṁ:

तात्स्थयं नाम—यदन्यस्यैवार्थस्य तत्स्थत्वादन्यस्यैव कल्प्यते ।

Inferring one for the other in view of its close inherence or co-existence is known as *tātsthyaṁ*.

Ex.: a person may complain pain in the bladder. Pain is experienced by the person but not by the organ. Since the bladder and the person have inherent relationship; the bladder denotes the person only.

ARTHĀŚRAYA

(Supporting Devices)

Similar to *tantrayuktis*, *vyākhyās* and *kalpanās*; *arthāśrayas* are also helpful in getting complete knowledge of scientific works. An *āśraya* means a prop or a support. These *āśrayas* gives support to a scientific concept to keep it in position. Aruṇadatta, the commentator of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya has enumerated 20 *arthāśrayas*. Whereas Śaṅkara Śarmā, the author of *tantrayuktis* added one more and total becomes 21 i.e. *ekavimśati arthāśrayas* as under.

विंशत्याश्रया भवन्ति । यथा—1. आदिलोपः, 2. मध्यलोपः, 3. अन्तलोपः, 4. उभयपदलोपः, 5. आदिमध्यान्तलोपः, 6. वर्णोपजननम्, 7. ऋषिकिलष्टम्, 8. तन्त्रशीलम्, 9. तन्त्रसंज्ञा, 10. प्राकृतम्, 11. समानतन्त्रप्रत्ययः, 12. परतन्त्रप्रत्ययः, 13. हेतुहेतुकर्धर्मः, 14. कार्यकारणर्धर्मः, 15. आद्यन्तविपर्ययः, 16. शब्दान्तरम्, 17. प्रत्ययः, 18. उपनयः, 19. सम्भवः, 20. विभवः (इति) ।

1. Ādilopa	8. Rṣi-kliṣṭa	15. Kāryakāraṇa dharma
2. Madhya lopa	9. Tantraśīla	16. Ādyanta viparyaya
3. Anta lopa	10. Tantrasamjñā	17. Śabdāntaram (Śabdānyatwa)
4. Ubhayapada lopa	11. Prākṛtākhya	18. Pratyaya dharma
5. Ādimadhyānta lopa	12. Samānatantra pratyaya	19. Upanaya
6. Upadhā (Upādhī) lopa	13. Paratantra pratyaya	20. Sambhava
7. Varṇopajanana	14. Hetuhetuka dharma	21. Vibhava

1. Ādi lopa:

आदिलोपो नाम—यत्सूत्रे आदिपदं लुप्तं

Ellipses or omission of a word or words in the beginning of a statement is known as *ādi lopa*.

Ex.: *rasa* causes *briñhāṇa*, *prīṇana*, *vṛṣya*, *cakṣusya* and *vraṇahara*. Here *rasa* refers to *mātīsarasa* and the word *mātīsa* is missing.

2. Madhya lopa:

मध्यलोपो नाम—यत्सूत्रे मध्यपदं लुप्तं

Ellipses or omission of a word or words in the middle of a statement is known as *madhya lopa*.

Ex.: *drava-dravya-vijñānīya* is the name of the chapter mentioned in *Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha* by Vāgbhaṭa. But actually it should be *drava-dravyaswarūpa-vijñānīya*. Here the middle word *swarūpa* is missing.

3. Anta lopa:

अन्तलोपो नाम—यत्सूत्रे अन्तपदं लुप्तं

Ellipses or omission of a word or words at the end of a statement is known as *anta lopa*.

Ex.: In the description of *raktavaha sirās*, it is written as “*vāta-raktavaha sirās, pitta-raktavaha sirās, kaphah punah*”. Here the words *raktavaha sirās* are missing at the end.

Similarly in the statement “*sarpah te pīta mārutah*”, the word ‘*iva*’ is missing at the end.

4. Ubhayapada lopa:

उभयपदलोपो नाम—यत्सूत्रे आदिपदं अन्तपदं लुप्तं वा आदिपदं मध्यपदं लुप्तं वा मध्यपदं अन्तपदं लुप्तं वा

Ellipses or omission of words at two places i.e. in the middle and at the end of a statement is known as *ubhayapada lopa*. Here simply by hearing the initial words of the statement it is understood completely, though the later words are missing.

Ex.: though the food contains all the six tastes, during the process of digestion it is transformed into *madhura vipāka* initially. By this statement it can be understood the missing words such as.... Later on it converts into *amla* and *kaṭu vipāka* by the influence of *pitta* and *vāta* respectively.

5. Ādimadhyānta lopa:

आदिमध्यान्तलोपो नाम—यत्सूत्रे आदिपदं मध्यपदं अन्तपदं लुप्तं

Ellipses or omission of words at all the three places is known as *ādimadhyānta lopa*. This is absolutely an undesirable device, as it is very difficult to understand more likely to err in interpreting. These ellipses can be provided by only a learned person.

6. Upādhi lopa:

उपधालोपो नाम—यत्सूत्रे अन्तपदस्य पूर्वपदं लुप्तं

Aruṇadatta did not mention *upādhi lopa* *āśraya*, whereas Śaṅkara Śarmā and Bhāṭṭāra Haricandra quoted in their works. Absence of a condition is known as *upādhi lopa*.

7. Varṇopajanana:

वर्णोपजननं नाम—यत्रानुक्तो ग्रन्थे वर्ण आचार्येण पश्चाद् व्याख्याकाल उपजन्यार्थोऽभिधीयते

Supply of the missing word by the commentators in the later stage is known as *varṇopajanana*. Aruṇadatta himself quoted that it is identical with *vākyasēṣa* type of *tantrayuktī*.

8. Rṣi-kliṣṭa:

ऋषिक्लिष्टं नाम—यदृषी ऋषिपुत्रो वाऽसमाहितचित्ततयाऽशत्त्या वा किंचित्पदजातम् (जातं) भृष्टमुच्चारितवान् तथैव तल्लोके प्रयुज्यते ।

When a preceptor in a state of inattention or physical inability mispronounces a word, it is received as it is by the student and gains popularity.

Ex.: the correct word is 'roma', but due to mispronunciation the word 'loma' has become popular.

9. Tantraśīla:

तन्त्रशीलं नाम—या तन्त्रकारणं प्रकृतिः स्वभाव इत्यर्थः ।

Adopting a twofold method of exposition viz. explaining certain topics in briefly and certain topics elaborately (wherever necessary) for the benefit of the readers is known as *tantraśīla*.

10. Tantra-samjñā:

तन्त्रसंज्ञा नाम—यत्कस्मिंश्चिदर्थे मध्ये व्याख्यायमाने स्वतन्त्रसिद्धोदाहरणं तत्प्रमाणार्थमुच्यते ।

Accepting a specific meaning from several meanings of a technical term by taking the context into account is known as *tantra-samjñā*.

Ex.: the word 'rasa' may be having several meanings, but in the context of Rasaśāstra it should be taken as mercury.

11. Prākṛtākhya:

प्राकृतं नाम—प्रस्तुतसंदर्भम् ।

Interpretation of the words in a scientific treatise according to the context is known as *prākṛtākhya*.

Ex.: (a) in the context of war, the word 'saindhava' should be taken to mean a 'horse' and when it is that of medicine; it should be taken to mean 'rock salt'.

(b) while describing *oudbhida-gaṇa dravyas* as *kṣāra*, *kṣīra*, *phala*, *puṣpa*, *bhasma* etc. in the present context—*kṣīra* means milky latex and not to mean milk of a cow.

12. Samāna-tantra pratyaya:

समानतन्त्रप्रत्ययो नाम—यत्साध्यस्य कस्यचिदर्थस्य साधनासानुपलब्धमाने स्वतन्त्राद्वा प्रत्यये समानेभ्यस्तन्त्रेभ्यः प्रत्यय इति ।

To establish a concept by consulting another scientific work on one's own discipline is known as *samāna-tantra pratyaya*. Do at times the author fails to explain the concept and expects the commentator to fill the lacuna. The commentator accomplishes the task with the help of this *āśraya* by referring the scientific works of the same discipline.

13. Paratantra pratyaya:

परतन्त्रप्रत्ययो नाम—यस्यार्थस्य प्रसिद्धितो न स्वकीयमुदाहरणं शक्यमभिधातुं नाष्टन्त्रेभ्यो भिषक् तन्त्रेभ्यः ।

Taking references from other allied scientific works to explain a topic is known as *paratantra pratyaya*.

Ex.: referring *vaiśeṣika darśana* for knowing more about *ṣad padārthas* mentioned in Ayurveda.

14. Hetu-hetuka dharma:

हेतुहेतुकधर्मो नाम—या हेतु हेतुकेन धर्मो ज्ञायते ।

Hetu means a major or potential cause. *Hetuka* means a minor or incidental cause. To infer *dharma* after knowing both *hetu* and *hetuka* is known as *hetu-hetuka dharma*. In other words—when a number of causes are mentioned for an effect, considering the more reasonable and the potent cause is known as *hetu-hetuka dharma*. This *āśraya* helps to draw a line of demarcation between the major and minor causes of an effect.

Ex.: *pittātisāra* leads to *raktātisāra*. Here *pitta* is the primary cause for *raktātisāra* and not the *atisāra*.

15. Kārya-kāraṇa dharma:

कार्यकारणधर्मो नाम—यत्र कार्यसंज्ञया कारणं निर्दिश्यते कारणसंज्ञया वा कार्यम् । तत्र कार्यसंज्ञया तावत्कारणं निर्दिश्यते ।

To speak of an effect as a cause and cause as an effect in a secondary sense is known as *kārya-kāraṇa dharma*.

Ex.: *rogas* do at times called as *doṣas* and vice versa.

16. Ādyanta viparyaya:

आद्यन्तविपर्ययो नाम—पूर्वं हृत्यं सुखेनावगाह्यते पश्चात्प्रभूतमिति न्यायात् ।

To alter the sequence of the arrangement of the chapters or subject matter contrary to previous one or the original order according to *pratijñā vākyā* for valid reasons is known as *ādyanta viparyaya*.

17. Śabdānyatwa:

शब्दान्यत्वं नाम—यदर्थं पर्यायशब्दं वर्णयन्ति शास्त्रकृतः ।

To recommend or make a note of identical scientific terms is known as *śabdānyatwa*. These synonyms will be helpful for clear understanding of a scientific work without any ambiguity.

Ex.: *pāpmā*, *jwara*, *vyādhi*, *vikāra*, *duḥkha*, *āmaya*, *yakṣmā*, *ātanka*, *gada*, *badha* etc. are the synonyms for *roga*.

18. Pratyaya dharma:

प्रत्ययधर्मो नाम—यो न च हेतुहेतुधर्मोपपत्तिमात्रेण च केनचिद्देतुत्वेन व्यपदिश्यते ।

Keeping the real cause of the effect hidden and giving importance to the insignificant cause is known as *pratyaya dharma*.

Ex: though *prajñāparādha* is the real cause for *unmāda*, giving undue importance to the insignificant cause of invasion of *piśācas*.

19. Upanaya:

उपनयो नाम—सत्रहेतप्रस्तावेन यत्रान्यत्प्रकरणमपनीयते ।

Upanaya is to draw near or closer. That means deliberating the allied subject matter in introducing a major topic.

Ex.: after introducing the topic on the quantity of food (*mātrāhāra adhyāya*), begins to discuss about the disease condition '*visūcikā*', resulting from excessive intake of food.

20. Sambhava:

स्वभावो नाम—यत्स्त्रं प्रकरणं वा विधीयमानमर्थस्य व्यापकत्वात् सुकलेन शास्त्रेण व्याख्यायते ।

Mentioning the major topics or subject matter briefly, what the author intended to discuss in detail in his work is known as *sambhava arthāśraya*.

Ex.: mentioning of “*kāyabalagraha....jarāvṛṣān*” reveals that the author intended to explain in detail about all the 8 branches of Ayurveda in his work.

21. Vibhava:

विभवो नाम—विभवकल्पनाया शास्त्र्यायां विशेषः ।

Since Aruṇadatta's manuscript is mutilated after the word *bhangya*..... it is not possible to formulate a precise idea about *vibhava*.

INDEX

Abhakta	220	Advantages of oleation therapy	265
Abhyāṅga	33, 334	Advantages of reducing therapy	227
Ābhyanṭara parimārjana	413	Advantages of sneha and sweda	291
Ābhyanṭara rogamārga	207	Advantages of souvīrāñjana	31
Absorption of foreign bodies	395	Advantages of sudation therapy	276
Action of doṣas according to their state	196	Advantages of the bandage	409
Action to be taken to protect from blood intoxication	374	Advantages of tongue scraping	30
Ādāna kāla	44	Āgantuja roga	61
Adhāraṇīya vega	55	Āgneya dravya guṇa	167
Adhobhakta	221	Agni	9
Adhvovāta	56	Agnikarma	418
Adhyāya-saṅgraha	23	Agnikarma-vidhi	419
Administer purgative drug after mild oleation	290	Ahaṅkāra	510
Administer sneha nasya after virecana nasya	316	Āhāra mātrā lakṣaṇa	155
Administer vasti before purgation in case of rūkṣa and others	290	Ajā kṣīra	71
Administration of another nirūha vasti	302	Ajā māṁsa	107
Administration of rasāyana and vājikaraṇa yoga	60	Ajīṛṇa cikitsā	159
Administration of tāmra bhasma & swarṇa bhasma	143	Ajīṛṇa sāmānya lakṣaṇa	160
Advantages of āścotana	339	Ākāśiya dravya guṇa	168
Advantages of bath	36	Ākāśodaka	69
Advantages of body massage	33	Akṣa taila	81
Advantages of eardrops	34	Akṣi tarpaṇa	345
Advantages of exercises	34	Alābū	376
Advantages of foot massage	34	Alābū yantra	357
Advantages of gargles	32	All the substances are medicines	168
Advantages of head massage	34	All the therapies can be included under laṅghana and bṛiñhāṇa	231
Advantages of mūrdha taila	337	Ālocaka pitta	200
Advantages of nasya	31, 320	Āma	218
Advantages of nourishing therapy	227	Āmalakī	129
		Āmaviṣa	156
		Ambaṣṭhādi gaṇa	249
		Amla gaṇa	179
		Amla rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	175

Amla rasa lakṣaṇa	174	Asthigata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
Amlikā	126	Asthi-sandhigata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
Āmra	124	Āṭamukha śastra	365
Anantara bhakta	222	Ati bṛīhaṇa	228
Āṅguli śastra	366	Ati dagdha	421
Āṅguli-trāṇaka yantra	356	Ati laṅghana	229
Āñjana	31,339	Ātmaguptā	93
Āñjana śalāka	341	Attributes of tridoṣa	10
Āñjana vidhi	343	Avagāha sweda	269
Āñjanadi gaṇa	241	Avalambaka śleṣmā	201
Antarikṣa jala	69	Avalgujā	112
Antarmukha śastra	365	Avi kṣīra	72
Anu śastra	368	Avi māṁsa	107
Anu yantra	360	Avyakta	510
Anulomana	391	Ayurvedāvatarāṇa	4
Anupāna	163	Bādāma	122
Anupāna for different unctuous substances	260	Badiśa śastra	366
Anupāna guṇa	164	Bahu sirāvedhana	383
Anurasa	167	Bāhya parimārjana	413
Anuvāsana after āsthāpana	303	Bāhya rogamārga	206
Anuvāsana vasti	296	Bandage with leaves	410
Anuvāsana vidhi	297	Bandaging methods	406
Anuvellita bandha	407	Benefits of dhūmapāna	327
Anuyava	91	Benefits of kavala	331
Apāna vāta	199	Benefits of purificatory therapies	291
Apatarpaṇa in āma	157	Best line of treatment for psycho-somatic disorders	20
Appointment of prāṇācarya	138	Best oleating substances	255
Ārā śastra	368	Bhagandara yantra	356
Āragwadhādi gaṇa	242	Bhallātaka	125
Ārdraka	132	Bhrājaka pitta	200
Arkādi gaṇa	246	Biḍa lavaṇa	128
Arśo yantra	355	Bileśaya	101
Asanādi gaṇa	243	Bilwa	123
Asātmendriyārtha saṁyoga	204	Bloodletting	370
Āścotana	338	Bodhaka śleṣmā	201
Āścotana dravya according to doṣa	338	Bṛhat pañcamūla	132
Āśraya-āśrayī bhāva	192	Bṛhatī dwaya	111
Aṣṭavidha prakṛti	511	Bṛīhaṇa	224
Aṣṭavidha vīrya	168	Bṛīhaṇa nasya	312
Āśrayas (supporting devices)	526	Bṛīhaṇa sneha	259
Aśru (tears)	59		
Āsthāpana vasti	292		

Capacity of the stomach and the allotment of food	163	Complications of touching poisonous food and the management	141
Caṭaka māṁsa	106	Complications of wounds, if not bandaged	409
Caution regarding sirāvedhana	386	Compositional devices other than tantrayuktis	518
Caya	202	Conduct oleation and sudation in between purificatory measures	290
Cāṅgerī	110	Contraindicated areas for suturing	405
Chapters of Cikitsā-sthāna	24	Contraindicated foods	403
Chapters of Kalpa-Siddhi-sthāna	24	Contraindicated for tarpaṇa and puṭapāka	349
Chapters of Nidāna-sthāna	24	Contraindicated for thermal cautery	419
Chapters of Śārira-sthāna	24	Contraindicated persons for doing exercises	35
Chapters of Sūtra-sthāna	24	Contraindicated places and seasons	413
Chapters of Uttara-tantra	25	Contraindication for bath	37
Chardana gaṇa dravyas	232	Contraindications for anuvāsana vasti	294
Chardi	59	Contraindications for applying bandage	410
Caturjātaka	130	Contraindications for āsthāpana vasti	293
Chavikā	132	Contraindications for cleaning the teeth	30
Chief constituents of the body	187	Contraindications for day sleep	149
Cili	115	Contraindications for kṣara-prayoga	413
Cina bandha	407	Contraindications for nasya	314
Ciribilwāṅkura	116	Contraindications for venesection	379
Citraka	132	Dadhi	73
Classification of diseases according to origin	18	Dāḍima	121
Classification of nasya according to the type of drug used	313	Dāma bandha	407
Classification of sleep	151	Dāṇḍalasaka	156
Classification of sneha dravyas according to their mode of action	259	Danta-dhāvana	27
Classification of tattwas	511	Danta-lekhana ḍastra	367
Classification of vasti according to number	305	Danta-pātana yantra	359
Classification of water	63	Dāraṇa	399
Clinical features of alasaka	155	Darbhamūlādi mukha lepa	333
Clinical features of decreased state of mala	192	Daśavidha pāpa	37
Clinical features of visūcikā	156	Daśavidha parīksā	210
Collection and preservation of leaches	373	Definition of Ayurveda	3
Combinations of doṣas	211	Definition of gaṇḍūṣa and kavala	331
Combinations of tastes	184	Definition of nasya	312
Commencement of drug action	289	Definition of saṁsarga and sannipāta	10
Complications of akāla śayana	149	Definition of sweda	266
Complications of oleation therapy and their management	263	Definition of vamana and virecana	277
Complications of poisonous leach application and their management	372	Definition of viruddhāhāra	145
		Description of aṣṭa prakṛti	511
		Description of dhātus and malas	11

Description of lāva and others	108	Doṣa, dhātu, mala and sroto duṣṭi	195
Description of sharp instruments	363	Doṣāvasecana	158
Description of tridoṣa	7	Doṣottha vyādhī	209
Dhamanīgata śalya lakṣaṇa	389	Drākṣā	120
Dhāna	97	Drava sweda	268
Dhānyaka	118	Dravyaguṇa	15
Dhānyāmla	85	Dressing schedule	404
Dhāraṇa kāla	349	Drug action	171
Dhāraṇīya vega	55, 60	Drugs required for stopping bleeding	386
Dhūma dravya	325	Drugs useful for bṛīhaṇa nasya	313
Dhūma netra	323	Drugs useful for madhyama dhūmapāna	325
Dhūmapāna prayoga	317	Drugs useful for śamana nasya	313
Dhūmapāna prayojana	321	Drugs useful for sneha dhūmapāna	325
Dhūmapāna vidhi	323	Drugs useful for tīkṣṇa dhūmapāna	325
Diet according to doṣa	304	Drugs useful for virecana nasya	313
Diet regimen	386	Drugs useful in various types of gaṇḍūṣa	328
Diet schedule after anuvāsana vasti	298	Duration of gaṇḍūṣa & kavala dhāraṇa	32
Differences between ādāna kāla and visarga kāla	45	Durdagdha	420
Different kinds of instruments	351	Duties and responsibilities of prāṇācārya	138
Different types of bloodletting in different conditions	377	Dwividha roga	209
Different types of laṅghana therapies	226	Effects of bloodletting	375
Directions for treatment of different doṣas	215	Effects of marṣa and pratimarṣa	319
Disadvantages of excessive exercises	35	Effects of poisonous food in the mouth and the management	141
Discrimination of dhānya	94	Effects of proper sleep	148
Disease and health	18	Effects of snehapāna	260
Diseases caused by vitiation of blood	379	Effects of suppression of natural urges and their management	56
Distinct places (sites) of tridoṣa	7	Effects of treatment	61
Doctrine of eight folds potency	169	Effects of uṣṇa & śīta vīrya dravya	170
Dominancy of mahābhūta and the drug action	168	Effects of vigil, day sleep & dosing	149
Dosage of anuvāsana vasti dravya	296	Ekaśapha kṣīra	72
Dosage of āsthāpana vasti dravya	295	Elādi gaṇa	251
Dosage of āsthāpana vasti dravya according to some other authorities	301	Eligible persons for bṛīhaṇa sneha	259
Dosage of different types of nasya	314	Eligible persons for oleation therapy	256
Dosage of oleating substances	258	Emesis and purgation according to doṣas	278
Dosage of Uttaravasti dravya	306	End results of adopting the code of right conduct	41
Doṣa bheda	198	Enumeration of tantrayuktis	513
Doṣa karma vyādhī	209	Equipment required for kṣāra karma	416
Doṣa vaisamya	204	Eraṇḍa taila	80
		Eṣaṇī	364

Essential equipment and instruments for añjana	341	Features of increased vāta	207
Examination of intensity of disease	210	Features of nindrā-nāśa	150
Factors determining the incurability of diseases	23	Features of non-poisonous leaches	372
Factors influencing good prognosis	22	Features of pacyamāna śopha	398
Factors responsible for bad prognosis	22	Features of pakwa śopha	398
Factors responsible for roaming doṣas from koṣṭha to śākhā and śākhā to koṣṭha	216	Features of poisonous curries or side dishes	139
Factors responsible for the accumulation, aggravation and alleviation of doṣas	201	Features of poisonous food taken by the birds and animals	140
Factors responsible for the manifestation of all the diseases	60	Features of poisonous food when thrown into fire	140
Favorable instance to administer āsthāpana vasti	299	Features of poisonous foods	139
Features of āma śopha	397	Features of poisonous leaches	371
Features of ati pakwa śopha	399	Features of proper, excessive and insufficient vomiting	375
Features of decreased asthi dhātu	191	Features of pure blood	378
Features of decreased majjā dhātu	191	Features of sāma and nirāma doṣa	217
Features of decreased mala	192	Features of suitable bandage cloth	402
Features of decreased māṁsa dhātu	191	Features of the persons having pure blood	387
Features of decreased medo dhātu	191	Features of three types of diseases	208
Features of decreased mūtra	192	Features of twigs useful for brushing	27
Features of decreased rakta dhātu	191	Features of visūcikā manifested by tridoṣa	156
Features of decreased rasa dhātu	191	Features of vitiated blood	385
Features of decreased śukra dhātu	191	Features of wounds having a foreign body	388
Features of decreased sweda	192	Four kinds of foreign bodies according to the shape	391
Features of drying therapy	263	Functions of aggravated kapha	189
Features of excessive quantity of food	155	Functions of aggravated pitta	189
Features of inadequate quantity of food	155	Functions of aggravated vāta	188
Features of increased asthi dhātu	189	Functions of decreased kapha	191
Features of increased kapha	208	Functions of decreased pitta	190
Features of increased majjā dhātu	190	Functions of decreased vāta	190
Features of increased mala	190	Functions of normal kapha	187
Features of increased māṁsa dhātu	189	Functions of normal pitta	187
Features of increased medo dhātu	189	Functions of normal vāta	187
Features of increased mūtra	190	Functions of seven body tissues	12
Features of increased pitta	207	Functions of sharp instruments	369
Features of increased rakta dhātu	189	Gaṇḍūpadamukha yantra	358
Features of increased rasa dhātu	189	Gaṇḍuṣa	32
Features of increased śukra dhātu	190	Gaṅgāmbu	65
Features of increased sweda	190	Garbha ūṇku	359
		General instructions for the removal of foreign bodies	396

General line of treatment for kapha disorders	How & when to brush?	28
215	Hraswa mātrā	258
General line of treatment for pitta disorders	Ideal anupāna	163
214	Ideal qualities of a surgeon	401
General line of treatment for tridoṣa	Ideal treatment	216
20	Identification of the site of the foreign body	390
General line of treatment for vāta disorders	Ignorant physician	399
214	Ikṣu varga	76
General properties kuṣmāṇḍa and others	Ill effects of wrong prescription	211
113	Immediate steps to be taken after vastidāna	302
General properties moca and other fruits	Importance and types of vasti	292
121	Importance of practical knowledge	208
General properties of all kṣāras	Importance of sirāvedhana	378
129	Importance of sneha and sweda—a simile	291
General properties of kalamba etc	Importance of śodhana therapy	60
115	Importance of taila as nasya dravya	319
General properties of kūthera etc	Importance of vasti	310
118	Importance of venesection	378
General properties of lavaṇa	Importance, nature and origin of dravya	166
127	Incision is contraindicated in āma śopha	399
General properties of milk	Indication of surgical therapy	397
71	Indication of the substances having specific taste in specific season	52
General properties of pāṭhā and other vegetables	Indications and contraindications for emesis	278
109	Indications and contraindications for purgation	279
General properties of patola and others	Indications for añjana	339
110	Indications for anuvāsana vasti	293
General properties of śūka dhānyā	Indications for āsthāpana vasti	293
89	Indications of day sleep	149
General properties of the six tastes and their exceptions	Indications of different unctuous substances according to seasons	257
183	Indications of different unctuous substances in various disease conditions	256
Ghanāśma sweda	Ineligible for peyādi karma	289
271	Influence of rasas over doṣas	14
Gharṣaṇa śīlā	Innumerable combinations of tastes	186
341	Instruction to wear herbs on the head	402
Ghaṭī yantra	Instructions regarding copulation	151
358, 376	Instructions regarding sleep	150
Ghrāṇa arśo arbuda yantra		
356		
Ghṛṭa		
75		
Godhūma		
91		
Gokṣīra		
71		
Gomāṁsa		
107		
Goṣphāṇa bandha		
407		
Grāsāntara		
222		
Grīṣma ṛtu		
333		
Grīṣma ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā		
48		
Grīvā sirāvedhana		
383		
Guḍa		
77		
Guda arśas		
416		
Guḍūcyādi gaṇa		
242		
Harītakī		
129		
Hemanta ṛtu		
333		
Hemanta ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā		
46		
Hetu		
16		
Hetuvi-parīta & vyādhivi-parīta cikitsā		
158		
Hīna mātrā		
331		
Hiṅgu		
129		
Hot water		
69		

Insufficient, excessive and proper signs & symptoms of dhūmapāna	326	Karṇapūraṇa	336
Jala varga	63	Kārṣya is better than sthoulya and its reasons	230
Jalacara	103	Kartari	366
Jaliya dravya guṇa	167	Kāsa	58
Jaloukāvacāraṇa	371	Kāsaghna dhūmapāna	326
Jaloukāvacāraṇa vidhi	373	Kāsamarda	117
Jāmbavouṣṭha śalākā	360	Kaṣāya rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	177
Jambu	123	Kaṣāya rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Jāṅgala māṁsa guṇa	105	Kaṣāya varga	182
Jentāka sweda	272	Kāśmarī phala	122
Jihwā sirāvedhana	382	Kaṭu rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	176
Jirṇa lakṣaṇa	262	Kaṭu rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Jiryamāṇa lakṣaṇa	262	Kaṭu varga	182
Jivanīya gaṇa	240	Kausumbha śāka	117
Jivanīya pañcamūla	135	Kavala dhāraṇa	331
Jivantī	113	Khaja ṣastra	368
Jṛmbhā	58	Khala	98
Kākamāci	110	Khaṭwa bandha	407
Kākāṇḍolā	93	Kinds of vasti according to their action	305
Kāla	43, 205	Kledaka śleṣmā	201
Kāla-bheda	43	Kola majjā	123
Kāla vasti	305	Kola phala	126
Kalāya	92	Kolamajjādi mukha lepa	333
Kaliyakādi mukha lepa	333	Koradūṣa	90
Kāmbalika	98	Koṣa bandha	406
Kaṇakapota	106	Koṣṭātakī	112
Kaṇṭaka pañcamūla	137	Koṣṭha	9
Kaṇṭha śalya darśana nādī yantra	354	Koṣṭhagata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
Kaphahara dravya gaṇa	238	Krakara	106
Kaphahara vasti	304	Kṛṣṇa lavaṇa	128
Kapittha	123	Kṛtānna varga	94
Karapatra ṣastra	366	Kṣāra	412
Kāravella	111	Kṣāra doṣa	415
Kari (abhi) kṣīra	72	Kṣāra guṇa	415
Kari	111	Kṣāra karma	416
Karma or prajñāparādhā	205	Kṣārapaka vidhi	413
Karma vasti	305	Kṣavatha	57
Karmaja vyādhi	209	Kṣīṇa dhātu karma	191
Karna roga	416	Kṣīṇa doṣa karma	190
Karna śodhana śalākā	359		
Karṇapāli vyadhana ṣastra	368		

Kṣīṇa mala karma	192	Madhura rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Kṣīra varga	70	Madhyabhakta	221
Kṣudhā	58	Madhyama/Prāyogika dhūmapāna	324
Kukkuṭa	106	Madhyama kṣārapāka vidhi	414
Kuluttha	92	Madhyama mātrā	259, 331
Kuluttha yūṣa	96	Madhyama pañcamūla	133
Kumbhī sweda	271	Madhyama rogamārga	207
Kumudādi mukha lepa	333	Madya varga	82
Kūpa sweda	271	Mahāguṇa	18
Kūrca śastra	367	Mahāmṛga	103
Kuśapatra śastra	365	Mahāmṛga māṁsa	107
Kuṣmāṇḍa	113	Mahat tattwa	510
Kuṭhārikā śastra	365	Māhiṣa kṣīra	71
Kuṭī sweda	272	Māhiṣa māṁsa	107
Laghu pañcamūla	133	Majjā	82
Lājā	97	Māṁsa rasa	96
Laṅghana	158, 224	Māṁsa varga	99
Laṅghana-pācana	158	Māṁsagata śalya lakṣaṇa	388
Laśuna	119	Management of bleeding	375
Lavaṇa gaṇa	180	Management of complications	303
Lavaṇa rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	175	Management of complications due to ati dagdha	417
Lavaṇa rasa lakṣaṇa	174	Management of mūrchā	316
Leaches to be discarded for therapeutic use	373	Management of the complications arises due to the incision given to apakwa śopha	404
Lekhana puṭapāka	348	Mānasika doṣa	18
Lekhanāñjana	340	Maṇḍa	94
Length of dhūmanetra	323	Maṇḍala bandha	408
Length of incision	400	Maṇḍalāgra śastra	363
Likuca	126	Maṅgalācaranā	2
Line of treatment for increased and decreased state of rakta etc	194	Marica	131
Line of treatment for sthānika and sthānagata doṣa	216	Marmagata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
Line of treatment for the above 3 types of diseases	209	Māṣa	93
Line of treatment for tiryaggata doṣa	217	Masūradālamukha yantra	358
Line of treatment for vṛuddhi & kṣaya	196	Mātrā depends upon agni & dravya swabhāva	154
Madhu	78	Mātrā kāla	337
Madhu śarkarā	79	Mātrā vasti	306
Madhura gaṇa	177	Matsya	104
Madhura rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	175	Matsya & cilicima māṁsa	107
		Mātuluṅga	125
		Maximum limit for emesis	282

Maximum limit to conduct gaṇḍuṣa and kavala	330	Nādīvraṇa yantra	357
Maximum limit to conduct nirūha vasti	305	Nakha ūstra	367
Measurement of leaches	373	Nārī kṣīra	72
Measures to be followed in the absence of bouts	287	Narikelodaka	70
Measures to be taken for the management of inflammation before surgery	397	Nāśāroga	416
Measures to be taken if given drug is not expelled	298	Nasya	31
Measures to get good sleep	150	Nasya māṭrā	314
Measures to protect the wound	402	Nasya vidhi	315
Measures to treat residual blood	386	Natural order of strength of rasa and others	171
Method of discarding unwholesome diet	147	Nature of aggravation and subsidence of doṣas	203
Method of preservation of leaches	375	Nature of body strength according to the seasons	45
Method of suturing the dry wound	405	Navanīta	75
Methods of removal of foreign bodies	392	Necessity of consuming all the six tastes in all the six seasons	52
Methods of removal of foreign bodies from the eyes	395	Necessity of peyādi krama	289
Mode of action of emetics and purgatives	277	Necessity of protecting eyes	350
Mode of administration of dhmāpana nasya	313	Necessity of purificatory therapy	60
Mode of administration of oleating substances	258	Need of bloodletting for a second time	375
Moment to remove the leach	374	Nidrā	58, 148
Mṛdu kṣārapaka vidhi	414	Nimba taila	82
Mṛga	99	Nirūha gaṇa dravyas	235
Mṛnala, bisa etc	114	Nirūha vasti kalpanā	300
Mucuṭī or mucuṇṭī yantra	353	Niruha vasti vidhi	299
Mudga	92	Niṣpāva	92
Mudga yūṣa	96	Niśi	223
Muhurmuhuh	222	Non thermal sudation	267
Mukha lepa	332	Normal functions of saptā dhātu	188
Mūlaka	117	Normal functions of trimalas	188
Muñjāta	112	Number of anuvāsana according to doṣa	303
Mūrdha taila	334	Nyagrodhādi gaṇa	250
Muṣakādi gaṇa	247	Obesity and its causes	228
Mustādi gaṇa	250	Odana	95
Mūtra	56	Ojas	195
Mūtra varga	86	Operative procedure	400
Nadī jala	67	Opinion of Caraka on vīrya	169
Nadī sweda	270	Order of mixing āsthāpana vasti dravya	301
Nadī yantra	354	Other food to be discarded	162
		Oudbhida lavaṇa	128
		Ouṣadha sevana kāla	219
		Ouṣadha varga	127

Pācaka pitta	200	Pittahara dravya gaṇa	238
Pāda catuṣṭaya	20	Pittahara vasti	304
Padmakādi gaṇa	241	Pliable diseases	22
Pālaṅkya	112	Pūrva karma	261, 280, 286
Palāñḍu	119	Post-operative care	260, 303, 339, 401, 416
Pālevata	125	Post-operative care of suturing	405
Pāna anārha jala	67	Prabhāva	171
Pānaka	96	Pracchāna	376
Pañcakola	132	Pradhāna karma	262, 280, 286
Pañcamukha yantra	354	Prāgbhakta	221
Pañcāṅgī bandha	408	Prakopa	202
Pañcavidha kapha	201	Prākṛta dhātu karma	188
Pañcavidha pitta	200	Prākṛta doṣa karma	187
Pañcavidha vāta	199	Prākṛta mala karma	188
Paratantra roga	209	Prakrti	9
Pārthiva dravya guṇa	167	Pramada dagdha bheda	417
Parihāra kāla	349	Pramārjanī śalākā yantra	359
Pariṣeka	268, 334	Prāṇa vāta	199
Parūṣakādi gaṇa	241	Prasādana puṭapāka	348
Paścāt karma	260, 262, 283, 288, 349, 385	Prasādanāñjana	340
Pāṭana	399	Prasaha	101
Paṭola	110	Praśamana	202
Paṭolādi gaṇa	242	Prātahkālotthāna	26
Pattura	116	Pratiloma	391
Persons eligible for nourishing therapy	226	Pratimarṣa nasya	317
Persons eligible for reducing therapy	226	Pratimarṣa nasya indications and contraindications	318
Persons eligible for sudation therapy	275	Pratisāraṇa	332
Persons not eligible for oleation therapy	256	Pratoli/Muttoli bandha	406
Persons not eligible for sudation therapy	274	Pratuda	100
Persons not eligible for treatment	60	Pratyāñjana	332, 340, 344
Peyā	95	Preparation of aṇutaila	319
Phala varga	120	Preparation of dhūmavarti	325
Phāṇita	77	Preparation of vasti yantra	295
Physician's responsibility	211	Pṛthukā	97
Picu	335	Priyālā	122
Pīlu phala	124	Priyaṅgu	90
Piṇḍa sweda	269	Priyaṅgu-ambaṣṭhādi gaṇa	249
Piṇḍaluka	118	Procedure for vamana	264
Piṇ्यāka	96	Procedure for virecana	263
Pippali	131	Procedure of āścotana	338
Pippalimūla	132	Procedure of cleaning eyes	343

Procedure of elimination in case of mandāgni and krūra koṣṭha	290	Quantity of uttaravasti dravya	308
Procedure of gandūṣa dhāraṇa	330	Rāga	98
Procedure of sirāvedhana at other places not mentioned in the text	383	Rājakṣava	109
Procedure of treating doṣas according to their stages	216	Rājamāṣha	92
Procedure of venesection	381	Rakta śāli	89
Procedure of washing eyes	343	Rakta-pāka	399
Procedure to eliminate doṣas	218	Rañjaka pitta	200
Procedures to be adopted for the management of nija & āgantuja roga	61	Rasa	13, 166
Proper and excessive signs and symptoms of sthambhana therapy	274	Rasa-utpatti	173
Proper signs and symptoms of snigdha nasya	317	Rasāla	96
Proper signs and symptoms of thermal cauterization	420	Rasaśeṣājīrnā	160
Properties of ārdra drākṣā etc	126	Rationality in washing eyes	344
Properties of caustic alkalies	412	Reason for increase or decrease of body tissues	195
Properties of kola & other fruits	126	Reasons for administration of mild drugs to the weak persons etc	289
Properties of mūlaka according to the change of its state	118	Reasons for not flowing of the blood freely even after giving proper incision	384
Properties of swedana and sthambhana drugs	274	Reasons for paying interest and hatredness of substances	196
Properties of the flesh obtained from different body parts	108	Reasons for writing the text, Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya	2
Properties of water according to the source of availability	67	Receptacles of diseases	18
Properties of water available from different soils	66	Recommended diet during oleation therapy	260
Properties of water due to the dominancy of five basic elements	66	Recommended food during night hours	163
Purpose of Ayurveda	3	Recommended food to be taken daily	162
Puṭapāka vidhi	348	Recommended or ideal regimen for the consumption of food	161
Qualities of an ideal attendant	21	Recommended or ideal time for the consumption of food	164
Qualities of an ideal drug	20	Recommended tastes of food substances to be taken at the start, middle and end of meal	163
Qualities of an ideal patient	21	Regimen after copulation	152
Qualities of an ideal physician	20	Regimen after taking food	165
Qualities of oleating drugs	255	Regimen after wound healing	411
Qualities of prāṇacārya	138	Regimen for promotion of health	62
Quantity of blood to be extracted	375	Regimen of right conduct	38
		Regimen to be adopted after purificatory measures	61
		Relationship between doṣas and pañcamahābhūta	198

Relationship between doṣas and seasons		Śalya that should not be hammered or removed	391
	203, 219		
Relationship between rasa & vīrya and rasa & guṇa	184	Sāmadoṣa cikitsā	218
Relationship between the doṣas and the age, day, night and diet	8	Śamana	225
Relationship of pañca mahābhūtas with the tastes	173	Śamana gaṇḍuṣa	329
Relationship of tridoṣas and swelling	398	Śamana nasya	313
Removal of asthigata śalya	393	Śamana sneha	259
Removal of hṛdayagata śalya	393	Samāna vata	199
Removal of insects from the ears	395	Sandariṣa yantra	353
Removal of invisible foreign bodies	392	Śāmī phala	124
Removal of jatu śalya	394	Śāmī yantra	356
Removal of kanṭha srotogata śalya	394	Sarīsarjana krama	283
Removal of kanṭhagata śalya	394	Saṁstara sweda	270
Removal of pakvāśayagata śalya	394	Sāmudga	222
Removal of sirā & snāyugata śalya	392	Sāmudra lavaṇa	128
Removal of the insects from the ear	395	Samyagyoga lakṣaṇa	303
Removal of tiryaggata śalya	391	Samyak dagdha lakṣaṇa	417
Removal of vāta and others	394	Sandhigata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
Removal of water from the ears	395	Śaṅku yantra	358
Replication of purgative drug administration	287	Saptadaśa tācchilya (17 minor devices)	522
Rtu sandhi	53	Saptavidha kalpanās (7 minor devices)	521
Rodhrādi gaṇa	245	Śarad ṛtu	333
Rogī-roga parīkṣā	18	Śarad ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	51
Romaka lavaṇa	128	Sārivādi gaṇa	241
Ropāṇa gaṇḍuṣa	329	Śarkarā	77
Ropanāñjana	340	Sarpaphaṇa-mukhī yantra	359
Sabhakta	222	Sarpavaktra śastra	364
Sādhaka pitta	200	Sarṣapa śāka	117
Sadvṛtta	38	Sarṣapa taila	81
Sadyo sneha yoga	264	Śaśa (rabbit) māṁsa	105
Sagrāsa	222	Śaṣṭika dhānyā	89
Saindhava lavaṇa	127	Śastra doṣa	369
Śāka varga	109	Śastra grahaṇa vidhi	359
Sakṛt	56	Śastra koṣa	370
Saktū	97	Śāstra lakṣaṇa/Tantra guṇa	514
Śalākā yantra	358	Śastra pāyanā	379
Śalya gati	388	Śastrakarma	397
Śalya nirghātana nādī yantra	355	Śastrakarma vidhi	400
		Śastras	362
		Śatāvarī	116
		Śauca vidhi	27
		Seats of doṣas	198

Seats of kapha	198	Sirāgata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
Seats of pitta	198	Śirah seka	334
Seats of vāta	198	Sirāvedhana for the second time	385
Śādava	98	Śirāvyadha	378
Śadūpakrama	225	Śirovasti	335
Shape and size of vastinatra according to age	294	Śirovasti vidhi	335
Śleśaka śleśmā	201	Śirovirecana gaṇa dravyas	236
Signs & symptoms of diminution of ojas and its management	196	Śiśira ṛtu	333
Signs & symptoms of proper, improper and excessive oleation	262	Śiśira ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	47
Signs and symptoms during the process of digestion and after the completion of digestion	262	Site of venesection in various diseases	380
Signs and symptoms of excessive emesis	283	Six recipes of mukha lepa	333
Signs and symptoms of excessive snigdha nasya	317	Snaihika dhūmapāna	324
Signs and symptoms of excessive sudation and its management	274	Snāna	36
Signs and symptoms of improper, proper and excessive purgation	287	Snāyugata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
Signs and symptoms of insufficient emesis	282	Sneha vicāraṇā	258
Signs and symptoms of insufficient snigdha nasya	317	Snehana puṭapāka	347
Signs and symptoms of obesity	228	Snehapāna vidhi	261
Signs and symptoms of poisonous substances when reaches the stomach and intestines	142	Snigdha or snaihika gaṇḍuṣa	328
Signs and symptoms of proper emesis	283	Śodhana	225
Signs and symptoms of proper sudation	273	Śodhana gaṇḍuṣa	329
Signs and symptoms of proper, insufficient and excessive virecana nasya	317	Śodhana sneha	259
Signs of proper, inadequate and excessive incision	384	Śodhana therapy	254
Śikhī mārīṣa	106	Some other causes for indigestion	160
Śimbī dhānyā	92	Śopha (swelling)	397
Śimbī varga	92	Souvarcalā lavaṇa	127
Śin̄himūlādi mukha lepa	333	Special features of alasaka	156
Similarities & dissimilarities between prakṛti & puruṣa	512	Specialty of kaṇkamukha yantra	361
Simile regarding metals and eyes	342	Specific features of various poisonous food items	139
		Śramaśwāsa	58
		Śṛṅga yantra	357
		Śṛṅgāvacāraṇa	376
		Śr̄ṣṭi-ūtpatti (creation of universe)	509
		Srotogata śalya lakṣaṇa	389
		Steps to be followed for the removal of deeply lodged foreign bodies	396
		Sthagika bandha	407
		Sūcī	367
		Sucking of vitiated blood	373
		Suitable age for conducting various Śodhana procedures	318
		Suitable areas for horizontal incision	401

Suitable conditions for the application of ālābū and ghaṭī yantra	376	Takra	74
Suitable conditions for the application of śṛṅga yantra	376	Tāla phala	122
Suitable diet for sthūla and kṛṣṇa	230	Tāla yantra	354
Suitable diseases for conducting thermal cautery on the muscle	418	Tālisādi mukha lepa	333
Suitable diseases for conducting thermal cautery on the skin	418	Tāmbūla sevana niṣedha	33
Suitable emetic drug according to doṣa	282	Tāmra ṣalākā	336
Suitable gauze pack	404	Taṇḍūliyaka	112
Suitable places for suturing	405	Tantra doṣa (the faults or demerits of a scientific treatise)	515
Suitable places for thermal cautery	418	Tantrayukti vicāra	513
Suitable season for elimination of doṣas	219	Tantrayuktis (major devices)	513
Suitable time for administration of añjana	341	Tāpa sweda	267
Suitable time for oleation therapy	257	Tarpaka śleṣmā	201
Suitable time for the elimination of vitiated doṣas	61	Tarpaṇa vidhi	346
Suitable time for tīkṣṇāñjana	342	Test for identification of gaṅgāmbu & sāmudrodaka	66
Śūka varga	88	Test to know the given oil is digested or not	266
Śukra	59	The best meat to be taken and the meat to be discarded	108
Sumukha	118	Thermal cautery is superior to caustic alkalies	267
Suniṣaṇṇa	109	Thermal sudation	267
Śunṭhi	131	Three secondary supporters of life	147
Superior and inferior varieties among vegetables	120	Three types of añjana according to mode of preparation	341
Supremacy of caustic alkalies	412	Three types of dravyas	14
Sūraṇa, bhūkanda	119	Three types of etiological factors	204
Surasā	118	Tīkṣṇa dhūmapāna	324
Surasādi gaṇa	246	Tīkṣṇa kṣārapāka vidhi	414
Suturing	404	Tikta gaṇa	180
Suturing procedure	405	Tikta rasa karma and the complications of their excessive use	176
Swastika bandha	406	Tikta rasa lakṣaṇa	174
Swastika yantra	352	Tila	93
Swatantra roga	209	Tila taila	80
Sweda vidhi	273	Time limit to conduct śirovasti in different disorders	336
Śyāmādi gaṇa	251	Time schedule for different śodhana procedures	309
Symptoms of āmājīrṇa	159	Times of administration of dhūmapāna	322
Symptoms of vidagdhājīrṇa	159	Times of administration of nasya	315
Symptoms of viṣṭabdhājīrṇa	159		
Synonyms of prakṛti	510		
Taila varga	80		

Total number of chapters and sections of this treatise	25	Types of bloodletting	371
Trapuṣa	113	Types of buttermilk	74
Treatment for ajīrṇa	157	Types of deśa and their relationship with doṣas	19
Treatment for alasaka	157	Types of dhūmapāna	321
Treatment for ati dagdha	421	Types of diseases	21
Treatment for drowning	395	Types of food to be discarded	161
Treatment for durdagdha	421	Types of gaṇḍuṣa	328
Treatment for emaciation	230	Types of honey	79
Treatment for obesity	228	Types of kāla	19
Treatment for saṁsargaja and sannipātaja doṣa	215	Types of kṣāra	412
Treatment for samyak dagdha	421	Types of laṅghana	225
Treatment for sneha dagdha	421	Types of nasya	312
Treatment for throat obstruction	395	Types of non-thermal sudation	275
Treatment for tuccha dagdha	421	Types of putapāka	347
Treatment for visūcikā	157	Types of sudation therapy	266
Tridoṣahara vasti	304	Types of sutures	405
Trijātaka	130	Types of treatment	19
Trikaṭu	132	Ubhayārthakāri cikitsā	159
Trimukha yantra	354	Udakodara yantra	357
Trīṇa dhānya	90	Udāna vāta	199
Trīṇa pañcamūla	135	Udgāra	57
Triphalā	129	Udvartana	36
Trīṣṇā	57	Uma-kusumbha bija	93
Triskandha	16	Unabsorbed foreign bodies	396
Trividha roga	208	Unsuitable conditions for tīkṣṇāñjana	342
Trividha rogamārga	206	Unsuitable places for horizontal incision	401
Tuccha dagdha	420	Upacakraka	106
Tumba, kaliṅga etc	114	Upanāha sweda	267
Twakgata śalya lakṣaṇa	388	Upanāśikā sirāvedhana	382
Twigs useful for cleaning the teeth	27	Upodikā & cuñcu	113
Two kinds of treatment	224	Use of different instruments for the removal of various types of foreign bodies	392
Two types of vīrya	169	Useful drugs in the state of absence or insufficient bouts	282
Type of bandage differs from the site	408	Useful liquids in gaṇḍuṣa	329
Types of ajīrṇa	159	Uṣakādi gaṇa	244
Types of añjana	340	Ūṣma sweda	268
Types of anuvāsana vasti	297	Ūṣṭra kṣīra	71
Types of apatarpaṇa	158	Utpala patra ṣastra	364
Types of bāhya parimārjana according to the mode of preparation	414	Utsaṅga bandha	407
Types of bandages	406	Uttama mātrā	259

Uttaravasti	306	Vidāryādi gaṇa	240
Uttaravasti in females	307	Vilambikā	160
Uttaravasti in males	306	Vilepi	284
Uttaravasti netra	306	Vipāka	15, 170
Uttaravasti vidhi	309	Vipākaja rasa bheda	170
Vacā-haridrādi gaṇa	248	Viratarādi gaṇa	245
Vallī pañcamūla	136	Virecana gaṇa dravyas	233
Vamana and virecana vega and parimāṇa	285	Virecana nasya	312
Vamana dhūma	326	Virecana vidhi	286
Vamana vidhi	279	Viruddhāhāra	143
Varṇśakarīra	116	Vīrya	15, 168
Varāha māṁsa	107	Visarga kāla	44
Varjanīya roga lakṣaṇa	23	Viṣadātā	140
Varjanīya rogī lakṣaṇa	23	Viśkira	99
Varṣā ṛtu	333	Vitāna bandha	407
Varṣā ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	50	Vraṇa dhūma	326
Varṣābhu & kālaśaka	116	Vraṇopacāra	403
Vārtāka	111	Vṛddha dhātu karma	189
Vārtāka & tittiri māṁsa	106	Vṛddha doṣa karma	188
Vartma roga	416	Vṛddha mala karma	190
Varuṇādi gaṇa	243	Vṛddhi-kṣaya	13, 192
Vasā	82	Vṛddhipatra śastra	363
Vasantā ṛtu	333	Vṛihimukha śastra	365
Vasantā ṛtu lakṣaṇa & caryā	47	Vṛṣa	111
Vasti—definition	292	Vyākhyā	518
Vasti netra	294	Vyāna vāta	199
Vasti pratyāgama kāla	302	Vyāyāma	34
Vasti puṭaka	295	Vyoṣādi yoga	229
Vasti yantra	295	Ways and means of gaining practical knowledge	370
Vastis are three only	304	Worms in wounds	410
Vāstūka	109	Wounds associated with doṣas should not be made to heal	410
Vātahara dravya gaṇa	237	Yamaka bandha	407
Vātahara vasti	304	Yantra karma	360
Vatsakādi gaṇa	247	Yava	91
Vāyavīya dravya guṇa	168	Yava kṣāra	128
Veśavāra	97	Yavaka	94
Vetasa patra śastra	365	Yavaka and other varieties of śāli dhānya	89
Vibandha	407	Yoga vasti	305
Vibhītakī	129	Yoni-vraṇa darśana yantra	356
Vicitra pratyayārabdha dravya	172		
Vidārī	113		

SYLLABUS

Maulika Siddhānta evam Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya-Sūtrasthāna

(Basic Principles and Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya : An ancient text of Ayurveda)

Theory - One Paper : 100 marks

Teaching Hours : 120 hours

Part-A (60 marks)

- ♦ Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Sūtra sthāna-Adhyāya (1 to 15)

Part-B (40 marks)

- ♦ Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Sūtra sthāna-Adhyāya (16 to 30)
- ♦ Description of Aṣṭa prakṛti
- ♦ Śāstra lakṣaṇa (tantra), Tantraguṇa, Tantradoṣa, Tācchīlya, Arthāśraya, Kalpanā

*

ABOUT THE BOOK

This book **Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya : Sūtra Sthāna** is first of its kind in the history of Ayurvedic literature, which has been presented with a maximum number of illustrations for better understanding the subject matter by the freshly joined students of Ayurveda. As a teacher of the concerned subject for the past 15 years, the author has identified the necessity of proper study material in English language to cater the needs of 1st year BAMS students. Keeping this in view the author has made an attempt to incorporate the translation of the text along with the related matter compiled from other Compendiums in the form of notes. The book is supplemented with Annexure containing Important Essay & Short Questions, Important Ślokas to be learnt by heart, Alphabetical Index of the Herbs, Table of Weights and Measures, Glimpse of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya and Glossary of Sanskrit Terms. The present text book is primarily written for undergraduate students of Ayurveda as per latest CCIM Syllabus 2012. However, it is hoped that Teachers, PG Scholars and General Practitioners would also find it useful as a reference book.

ISBN : 978-93-82443-86-5



DR. R. VIDYANATH, Best Teacher Awardee for the year 2010 is currently working as PG Professor & HOD Ayurveda Saṅhitā at BRKR Govt. Ayurvedic College, Hyderabad. He has obtained his MD (Ayurveda) from Gujarat Ayurveda University, Jamnagar and PhD from Dr. NTR University of Health Sciences, Vijayawada. He had also undergone special training in Pañcakarma from International Institute of Ayurveda, Coimbatore. He served as a Lecturer, Asst. Professor and Professor at all the three Government Ayurvedic Colleges of Andhra Pradesh and completed 27 years of service. As an author as well as co-author 15 books on Ayurveda were at his credit. He is a Member, Board of Studies, Dr. NTR University of Health Sciences; Examiner PG and UG Courses and Paper-setter for various universities. Also a reviewer for peer reviewed journals. He had also presented more than 45 scientific papers at National and International Seminars and published 27 papers in reputed journals. Organized 5 ROTP, CME Programmes and conducted more than 50 Free Medical camps. He had also Produced *Amruta Varshini*—a videocassette on “Pañcakarma” and *“Ayurveda Hitopadeśam”*—an audiocassette on tenets of life.

CHAUKHAMBA SURBHARATI PRAKASHAN, VARANASI